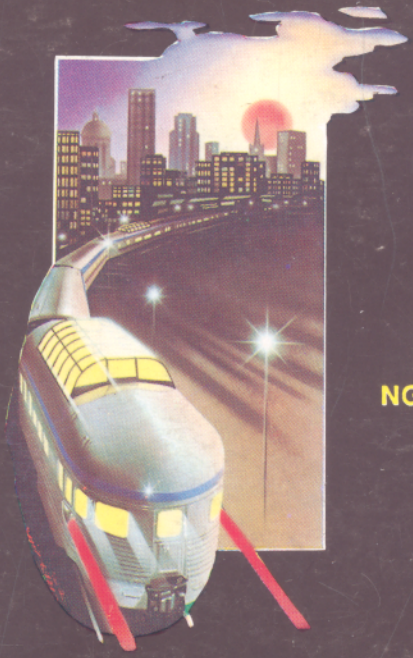
Streamline ENGLISH

BERNARD HARTLEY & PETER VINEY

DESTINATIONS

Student's book - Workbook

Speechwork - Achievement Tests



NEW EDITION

- Vocabulary
- Grammar
- New Transcription
- E-E Explanations
- Listening
- Tests
- Translations

HƯỚNG DẪN HỌC BỘ *Streamline English*

Dịch và chú giải

TRẦN VĂN THÀNH

NGUYỄN THANH YẾN

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN THÀNH PHỐ HỒ CHÍ MINH

Streamline ENGLISH

BERNARD HARTLEY & PETER VINEY

DESTINATIONS

Student's book - Workbook

Speechwork - Achievement Tests

Dịch và chú giải

TRẦN VĂN THÀNH - NGUYỄN THANH YẾN

Cùng sự cộng tác của

LÊ HUY LÂM - PHẠM TẤN QUYỀN - TRƯƠNG HOÀNG DUY

- Vocabulary
- Grammar
- New Transcription
- E-E Explanations
- Listening
- Tests
- Translations

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN THÀNH PHỐ HỒ CHÍ MINH

"© Oxford University Press"

"This adaptation of **Streamline ENGLISH** DESTINATIONS *originally published in English in 1990 is published by arrangement with Oxford University Press."*

Tập sách này được dịch và chú giải dựa theo nguyên tác bản tiếng Anh quyển **Streamline ENGLISH** DESTINATIONS (Xuất bản năm 1990), theo thỏa thuận với ***Oxford University Press.***

LỜI GIỚI THIỆU

Lần đầu tiên bộ sách "Hướng dẫn học STREAMLINE ENGLISH được thực hiện công phu với các điểm đặc biệt sau đây :

*1. Kết hợp sách **Student's book, Workbook, Speechwork và Tests** vào chung một quyển sách với đầy đủ nội dung, kèm theo **phần dịch và chú giải**; cách trình bày rõ, đẹp và tiện sử dụng.*

*2. **Từ vựng (Vocabulary)** : toàn bộ từ vựng và tên riêng (Proper names) của phần bài học và bài tập được **trình bày theo thứ tự ABC** để tiện tham khảo.*

*Một cải tiến quan trọng của quyển Streamline Destinations này là phần Vocabulary được thêm **từ loại** (Parts of speech), sử dụng hệ thống **Phiên âm quốc tế mới; giải thích từ bằng tiếng Anh** kèm nghĩa tiếng Việt và có **thí dụ minh họa** cùng các **từ cùng gốc** giúp người học dễ nhớ và dùng chính xác.*

*3. **Ngữ pháp** : Ngữ pháp có thay đổi hoặc mở rộng phần diễn giải nhằm thuận tiện cho người học đỡ phải tra cứu ở các sách ngữ pháp khác.*

4. Phần dịch được sắp xếp song song rất tiện đối chiếu. Chúng tôi chủ trương không dịch và giải bài tập trong phần Student's book, mà chỉ dịch và hướng dẫn làm bài tập và các thí dụ mẫu trong phần Workbook.

*5. **Luyện kỹ năng nghe** : Cứ **mỗi 4 Units** có một **bài nghe** trích từ quyển Speechwork kèm theo **băng cassette** và **tapescript** với các dạng bài tập luyện mẫu câu Nghe-Nói mang tính giao tiếp cao và đồng thời củng cố các bài đã học.*

*6. **Bài kiểm tra** : Sau **mỗi 20 Units** có phần **tóm tắt các chủ điểm** của từng Unit (Learning points) và bài kiểm tra (Test) có kèm theo thang điểm nhằm giúp người học tự đánh giá khả năng tiếp thu của mình khi qua mỗi chặng học.*

*7. Các **mục tục ngữ** (Proverbs), **các từ viết tắt thông dụng** trong tiếng Anh (Common Abbreviations in English), **các biển hiệu thông dụng** cần biết (Common signs) được ghi ở cuối một số bài nhằm cung cấp cho người học những hiểu biết thiết thực và bổ ích.*

Chúng tôi mong những cải tiến trên đáp ứng được yêu cầu học tập của bạn đọc và chân thành cám ơn những ý kiến của bạn đọc để lần tái bản sau được tốt hơn.

TRẦN VĂN THÀNH - NGUYỄN THANH YẾN

BẢNG ĐỐI CHIẾU PHIÊN ÂM ANH VIỆT

Phiên âm Quốc tế	Tương đương tiếng Việt	Thí dụ
æ	φ	man, cat, sat
e	e	shed, led
ɪ	i	sit, six, hit
ɒ	o	hot, not, got
ʌ	â	run, come, sun
ʊ	u	put, good, food
ɑ:	a	far, car
i:	i:	meet, meal, feel
ɔ:	ɔ:	or, nor, oar
ɜ:	ơ	learn, first, fur
u:	u:	boot, pool, cool
ju:	iu	tube, use, new
eɪ	ây	cake, Jane, came
aɪ	ai	five, nine
ɔɪ	oi	boy, coil, toy
au	au	cow, now, out
eə	eơ	where, fair
ɪə	iơ	hear, fear, near
uə	uơ	sure, poor
əu	âu	nose, bone
dʒ	φ	Jock, July
ʃ	s	shut, ship
tʃ	φ	child, check
θ	φ	thing, three
ð	φ	this, these, that

. Ký hiệu ":" biểu thị nguyên âm được đọc kéo dài

BẢNG HƯỚNG DẪN CÁC CHỮ VIẾT TẮT

adj	adjective	tính từ
adv	adverb	trạng từ
approv	approving	nghĩa tích cực
n	noun	danh từ
v	verb	động từ
prep	preposition	giới từ
conj	conjunction	liên từ
interj	interjection	thán từ
idm	idiom	thành ngữ
phr.v	phrasal verb	động từ ghép
pron	pronoun	đại từ
aux.v	auxiliary verb	trợ động từ
Brit	British	tiếng Anh của Anh
derog	derogatory	khinh rẻ
esp	especially	đặc biệt
fml	formal	trang trọng
infml	informal	thân mật
pl	plural	số nhiều
pp	past participle	quá khứ phân từ
pres p	present participle	hiện tại phân từ
pt	past tense	quá khứ
rhet	rhetorical	mỹ từ
sb	somebody	một người nào đó
sing	singular	số ít
sl	something	vật gì đó
US	United States	tiếng Anh của Mỹ
usu	usually	thường thường

REFERENCE

- **A.S Hornby**, 1992. Advanced Learner's Dictionary, *OUP*
- **L.G Alexander**, 1992. Longman English Grammar, *Longman*.
- **L.G Alexander**, 1992. Longman English Grammar Practice, *Longman*
- J. **Eastwood**, 1992. Oxford Practice Grammar, *OUP*

Unit 1 Arrivals

Đến nơi

VOCABULARY

- **age** *(n)* /eɪdʒ/ time, period =khoảng thời gian
- **announce** *(v)* /ə'naʊns/ notice = thông báo
  announcement *(n)* /ə'naʊnsmənt/ notice = sự thông báo
- **apology** *(n)* /ə'pɒlədʒɪ/ excuse = sự xin lỗi
  apologize *(v)* /ə'pɒlədʒaɪz/ (to sb for st) say one is sorry = xin lỗi
  apologetic *(adj)* /ə,pɒlə'dʒetɪk/ (about/for st)
  He was deeply — about his late arrival.
- **autograph** *(n)* /'ɔ:təgrɑ:f/ person's signature = chữ ký riêng
  I've got lots of famous footballers' — s.
- **cheap day return** *(n)* /tʃi:p deɪ rɪ'tɜ:n/ vé khứ hồi trong ngày
- **else** *(adv)* /els/ in addition to or apart from = khác
  Ask somebody — to help you.
- **fault** *(n)* /fɔ:lt/ mistake = lỗi
- **financial director** *(n)* /faɪ'nænʃl dɪ'rektə/ giám đốc tài chính
  finance *(n)* /faɪ'næns, 'fɪnæns/
- **platform** *(n)* /'plætfɔ:m/ flat surface where passengers get on and off trains = sân ga
- **rail fare** *(n)* /reɪl feə/ train ticket = giá vé tàu lửa
- **return** *(n)* /rɪ'tɜ:n/ ticket to a place and back = vé khứ hồi
- **sales representative** *(n)* /seɪlz repri'zentətɪv/ đại diện hãng buôn
- **single** *(n)* /'sɪŋgl/ ticket to a place = vé một bận
- **someone** *(indef pro)* /'sʌmwʌn/ a certain person = một người nào đó

EXPRESSIONS

There you are	Anh đây rồi
Here you are	Dạ thưa đây nè
I beg your pardon ?	Xin lỗi tôi chưa nghe kịp
A : Do you fancy a coffee ?	A : Anh dùng tách cà phê nhé ?
B : Yes, I'd love one	B : Dạ, được lắm đó.
Shall I take one of your bags ?	Để tôi xách dùm cái túi của chị nhé ?
I haven't seen you for ages	Lâu quá tôi không gặp anh / chị

PROPER NAMES

Anglo Exports /'æŋgləʊ 'ekspɔ:ts/	Jason Douglas /'dʒeɪsn 'dʌgləs/
Bond /bɒnd/	John Benson /'dʒɒn 'bensn/
Charles Archer /tʃa:lz 'a:tʃə/	Nick Fowler /'nɪk 'faʊlə/
Continental Computers /kɒntɪ'nentl kəm'pju:təz/	Paddington /'pædɪŋtən/
Dorothy /'dɒrəθɪ/	Pauline /'pɔ:li:n/
Elton John /'eltən 'dʒɒn/	Philip Mason /'fɪlɪp 'meɪsn/
Exeter /'eksɪtə/	Sarah /'seərə/
Exeter St. David /-'seɪnt 'deɪvɪd/	Terry Donovan /'terɪ 'dɒnəvən/
Harry Shiner /'hærɪ 'ʃaɪnə/	Ward /wɔ:d/

USAGE

Do remember to learn by heart the following expressions. They are nearly formuli (công thức) in our daily contact and / or conversation. Use a dictionary or ask your teacher for their meanings.

GREETINGS

Hello
Hi

Good-	morning
	afternoon
	evening

Hullo
Good night
Good bye
(Bye)-bye
So long

ENQUIRIES

Excuse me - Yes ?

How	are	you ?
	is	(s)he ?
	are	they ?
	is	Jone ?

Did	you	have a	good	time ?
	(s)he		nice	trip ?
	they		pleasant	journey?
	Jone			summer?
	Mary			
	.....			

How's it going ?
How's things ?
How do you do ?
Pleased to meet you

Did	you	enjoy	your	trip ?
	(s)he		her/his	journey?
	they		their	summer?
	.....			vacation ?
				....

INTRODUCTION :

Can	I	introduce	Mr. .....
Could	we	(you to)	Mrs .....
May			Miss .....
			Ms. .....
			Madam .....
			Sir .....

RESPONSES:

I	am	fine
We	are	O.K
S(He)	is	great
They	are	very well
		pretty well
		all right

Not at all
That's all right
That's O. K
Any time
My pleasure
Don't mention it
Your're (always) welcome

I	'd like to	Mr. .....
We	introduce	Mrs. .....
	(you to)	Miss .....
		Ms. .....
		Madam ...
		Sir .....

THANKS

Thank you very much
a lot
ever so much
a million

Thanks (a lot)

APOLOGIES

(I beg your) Excuse me / Pardon / Pardon me

I'm / We're sorry

I'm / We are very / terribly sorry

GRAMMAR NOTES :

1. Offer of help :

Shall I / We } bare infinitive... ?

Ex :

- *Shall* I *take* your coat ?
- *Shall* we *carry* your cases upstairs, sirs ?

2. I haven't seen you for ages (an informal way of saying that two or more people have not seen one another for a really long time)

Similarly :

I haven't seen you	for an eternity months/years the last few years recently in recent weeks

"Long time, no see !" is very, very informal

A Excuse me... Mr Ward ?
B Yes ?
A I'm Charles Archer, from Continental Computers. How do you do ?
B How do you do ? Thank you for coming to meet us.
A Not at all. Did you have a good trip ?

A : Xin lỗi ông... Ông là ông Ward phải không ạ ?
B : Chính tôi. Ông cần gì ạ ?
A : Tôi là Charles Archer, thuộc Công ty Continental Computers. Xin chào ông.
B : Xin chào ông. Cảm ơn đã ra đón chúng tôi.
A : Không có chi. Chuyến đi của các ông suông sẻ cả chứ ?

B Yes, thank you. Oh, I'd like you to meet Philip Mason. He's our sales manager.

A How do you do ?

Exercise 1

A Mrs Bond ?

B . . . .

A I'm Steven Robson, from Anglo Exports. How do you do ?

B . . . .

C Sarah !

D Hi.

C Hi. I haven't seen you for ages. How's things?

D All right. And you ?

C Fine. How's work ?

D OK. Do you fancy a coffee ?

C Oh, yes, I'd love one.

E Hello, Dorothy.

F Hello, Margaret. How are you ?

E Very well, thanks, and you ?

F Oh, I'm fine. How's the family ?

E They're all fine. My car's just outside the station. Shall I take one of your bags ?

F Oh, yes... thank you.

B : Vâng, cảm ơn. À, tôi xin giới thiệu đây là ông Philip Mason, ông là trưởng phòng Kinh doanh của công ty chúng tôi.

A : Xin chào ông.

A That's all right. Did you have a nice journey?

B . . . .

A Oh, may I introduce John Benson ? He's our financial director.

B . . . .

C : Sarah !

D : Chào bạn.

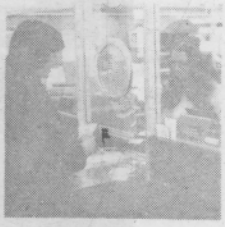
C : Chào. Lâu lắm rồi mới gặp bạn. Lúc này ra sao ?

B : Ổn cả. Còn bạn ?

C : Tốt thôi. Công việc ra sao ?

D : Bình thường. Uống cà phê nhé ?

C : Được đấy.



E : Chào Dorothy.

F : Chào Margaret, chị khỏe không ?

E : Khỏe lắm. Cảm ơn, còn chị ?

F : Tôi khỏe. Gia đình chị ra sao ?

E : Mọi người vẫn mạnh khỏe. Xe của tôi đậu ngay ngoài ga. Tôi mang giúp chị một túi xách nhé ?

F : Vâng. Cảm ơn chị.

G Good morning.

H Good morning.

G Single to Exeter, please.

H £14.70, please.

G There you are. Thank you... er... what time's the next train ?

H 10.25.

G Thank you.

G : Chào cô.

H : Xin chào.

G : Cho tôi một vé một lượt đi Exeter.

H : Dạ 14.70 pounds.

G : Đây nhé. Cảm ơn... à, chuyến tàu kế tiếp là chuyến mấy giờ nhỉ ?

H : 10g25 ạ.

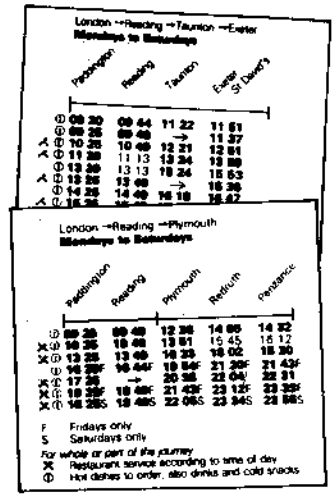
G : Cảm ơn cô.

Exercise 2

Look at the conversation between G and H, and practise two similar conversations, one for Exeter St David's, and one for Penzance.

Rail Fares	Exeter St David's	Penzance
Single	£14.70	£25.80
Return	£23.40	£47.90
Cheap day return*	£17.40	£28.10

* *You must return on the same day.*



I Hello, there !

J I beg your pardon ?

I Hello ! How are you getting on ?

J Fine, thank you... sorry... do I know you?

I Yes, it's me, Nick Fowler !

J Sorry, I don't think I know you.

I Aren't you Harry Shiner ?

J Er, no... I'm afraid not.

I Oh, I'm terribly sorry, I thought you were someone else !

I : Xin chào.

J : Xin lỗi ?

I : Chào anh ! Dạo này ra sao rồi ?

J : Ổn cả, cảm ơn... xin lỗi... Không biết tôi có quen ông không ?

I : Có chứ, tôi đây mà, Nick Fowler đây mà.

J : Xin lỗi. Hình như tôi không quen ông.

I : Bộ anh không phải là Harry Shiner sao ?

J : Ồ, không... Tôi e là không...

I : Ô, hết sức xin lỗi. Tôi đã nhầm anh với người khác mất rồi.

Exercise 3

Listen to the announcements at London – Paddington. Look at the example and complete the chart in the same way.

Number	Train Time	Platform Number	From	To
1	10.25	5	Lon. (London)	Ex. (Exeter St David's)
2				
3				
4				
5				

Exercise 4

How are you ?

Very well, thanks, and you ?

1 Hi !
2 Good afternoon.
3 I'm very sorry.
4 Thank you very much for helping me.
5 How do you do ?
6 Aren't you Elton John ?
7 How are you getting on ?
8 Excuse me.
9 Here you are.
10 Goodbye !

PRACTICE

Language summary

Greetings

Formal

A *How do you do ?*
B *How do you do ?*

Polite, friendly

A *Hello. How are you ?*
B *Very well, thanks, and you ?*
A *I'm fine, thanks.*

Very familiar, casual

A *Hi !*
B *Hi !*
A *How's things ?/ How are you getting on ?*
B *All right../O.K./ Not bad.*

Neutral

A *Good morning/afternoon/evening.*
B *Good morning, etc.*

Introductions

I'd like you to meet.../ May I introduce...?/ Hello, I'm...

Thanks and accepting thanks

A *Thanks./ Thank you./ Thank you for coming to meet me.*
B *That's all right./ Not at all.*

Polite enquiries and responses

A *How's work/the family ?*
B *All right./ O.K./ Fine.*
A *Did you have a good trip ?*

Apologies

Sorry./ I'm terribly sorry.
I'm afraid not.

Exercise

Look at the pictures. Read all the sentences carefully and use them in the spaces below to make conversations. Use each sentence once only.

Bài tập

Xem các bức tranh này. Đọc kỹ các câu trong khung rồi điền vào chỗ trống dưới đây để có các mẩu đàm thoại. Mỗi câu chỉ dùng một lần.

A .....
B .....
A .....
B .....

A .....
B .....

A .....
B .....
A .....
B .....

A .....
B .....
C .....

A .....
B .....
A .....
B .....

A .....
B .....
A .....
B .....

A Oh, I'm terribly sorry!	**A** Good morning. Mrs Cooper.	**A** I'm all right. Did you have a pleasant flight?
A Annette ! Hello, how are you ?	**B** Fine, how are you ?	**B** Good morning.
B How do you do, Mr Grunt.	**A** Dad, this is Charley Grunt.	**A** Aren't you Paul McCartney ?
B Good morning, Mr Cobley.	**B** Yes, I'd love one.	**C** Hi !
A Hello, can I have your autograph ?	**A** Hello, Mike. I haven't seen you for ages.	**B** Hello, Peter. How's the family ?
B Yes, thanks. And thank you for coming to meet me.	**B** I beg your pardon ?	**A** May I introduce Tom Cobley ? He's our new sales representative.
B I'm afraid I'm not. Sorry.	**B** That's all right. It wasn't your fault	
A They're all O.K. Do you fancy a quick drink ?		

Unit 2 Is Everything Ready ?

Mọi việc đã sẵn sàng chưa ?

VOCABULARY

- **admit** *(v)* /ədˈmɪt/ confess = thừa nhận
- **arrange** *(v)* /əˈreɪndʒ/
  arrangements *(n)* /əˈreɪndʒmənts/ plan, preparation = sự sắp xếp
  I'll make ~ for you to be met at the airport
- **audience** *(n)* /ˈɔːdɪəns/ group of people who have gathered together to hear or watch sb/st = khán, thính giả
  The ~ was/were enthusiastic on the opening night of the play
- **branch office** *(n)* /brɑːntʃˈɒfɪs/ văn phòng chi nhánh
- **comedian** *(n)* /kəˈmiːdɪən/ actor or actress who plays comic parts = diễn viên hài
- **compère** *(n)* /ˈkɒmpeə/ person who introduces the performers in a variety programme = người điều khiển chương trình
  compère *(v)*
- **contract** *(n)* /ˈkɒntrækt/ (with sb) (for st/to do st) legally binding agreement = bản hợp đồng
  I'm not a permanent employee; I'm working here on a fixed term ~.
- **credits** *(n)* /ˈkredɪts/ (also ~ titles) list of actors, director, cameraman etc who worked on a film, TV programme... shown at the beginning or end = danh sách những người thực hiện chương trình
- **entrance** *(n)* /ˈentrəns/ (to st) passage by which one enters st = lối vào
  I'll meet you at the ~ to the theatre.
- **extract** *(v)* /ɪkˈstrækt/ select and present (passages, words, examples, etc) from a book, speech, etc : trích ra
- **extract** *(n)* /ˈekstrækt/ passage selected (from a book, film, etc) = đoạn trích
  She read out ~ from his letters
- **hovercraft** *(n)* /ˈhɒvəkrɑːft/ (plural unchanged) vehicle that is capable of moving over land or water = loại tàu có thể chạy trên đất liền hoặc dưới nước
- **monitor** *(n)* /ˈmɒnɪtə/ device used to observe, record or test st = máy theo dõi
  a heart ~
- **preparations** *(n)* /prepəˈreɪʃnz/ (for st/to do st) thing done to prepare for st = những việc chuẩn bị
  The country is making ~ for war/to go to war
  prepare *(v)* /prɪˈpeə/
- **production assistant** *(n)* /prəˈdʌkʃn əˈsɪstənt/ trợ lý sản xuất
- **relative** *(n)* /ˈrelətɪv/ person who is related to another; relation = bà con, họ hàng
  a close / near / distant ~ of hers
- **running order** *(n)* /ˈrʌnɪŋ ˈɔːdə/ thứ tự xuất hiện
- **subject** *(n)* /ˈsʌbdʒɪkt/ topic, theme = chủ đề
  an interesting ~ of conversation
- **title** *(n)* /ˈtaɪtl/ word used to show a person's rank or used in speaking to or about him = chức vụ
- **warm-up** *(n)* /ˈwɔːmʌp/ act or period of preparing for a game, performance, etc. By practising gently = khởi động, hoạt động chuẩn bị

EXPRESSIONS

Is that all clear ?	Tất cả đã rõ rồi chứ ?
There's just one thing	Chỉ còn một điều này
Is everything ready ?	Mọi thứ đã sẵn sàng hết chưa ?
I think that's everything	Chắc là đủ hết rồi đó

PROPER NAMES

Jason Douglas /dʒeɪsn 'dʌgləs/
Pauline /pɔ:li:n/
Terry Donovan /terɪ 'donovən/

USAGE

Notice this :

1. Record a
   - song/poem/story
   - music tape/music disc
   - speech
   - program
   - one's voice
   - conversation/dialogue
   - talk
   - game
   - sporting event
   - football/ tennis / basketball / volleyball — match

2. Be prepared
   - for something
   - to do something

3. As
   - usual
   - always
   - often
   - ever

4. Just (Adverb) : used in imperatives (mệnh lệnh) to call attention to something or to soften something (làm cho người ta chú ý cái gì hoặc làm giảm một mệnh lệnh)

   Ex : - Just listen to him
   - Just wait here

5. Tell (a) joke(s) : đùa, giỡn, tếu
   crack

GRAMMAR NOTES (with your teacher's help)

THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE

I. Formula : WILL/SHALL + BE + V-ING

II. USAGE : (three uses)

There are three basic uses of the Future Continuous :

1. We use it to emphasize actions that will be in progress in the near or distant future, especially when we imagine ourselves doing something.

   By this time tomorrow, I'll be lying on the beach. (not "I will lie")

2. The continuous "softens" the effect of **will + verb** and sounds more polite.

   When will you finish these letters (e.g boss to assistant)

   When will you be seeing Mr.White ? (e.g assistant to boss)

If we say *I'll work on this tomorrow* we may be stating an intention.

If we say *I'll be working on this tomorrow*, we are simply referring to future time.

3. We use the Future Continuous like the present continuous for planned actions.

   We'll be spending the winter in Australia

is the same as :

   We're spending the winter in Australia.

"This is Your Life" is one of the most popular programmes on British and American television. Every week a famous person is invited to a television studio, without knowing that he or she will be the subject of the programme. The compère meets the person outside the studio and says "This is your life !". The person then meets friends and relatives from his or her past and present. Studio 4 is where the programme is recorded. The programme begins at eight o'clock. It's 6.45 now and the director is checking the preparations with his new production assistant. The subject of tonight's show will be an actor, Jason Douglas. The compère, as usual, will be Terry Donovan.

Director Let's just check the arrangements. We're bringing Jason Douglas here in a studio car – he thinks he's coming to a discussion programme ! The driver has been told to arrive at exactly 7.55. Now, the programme begins at eight o'clock. At that time Jason will be walking to the studio. Terry Donovan will start his introduction at 8.01, and Jason will arrive at 8.02. Terry will meet him at the studio entrance... Camera 4 will be there. Then he'll take him to that seat. It'll be on Camera 3. Jason will be sitting there during the whole programme. For most of the show Terry will be standing in the middle, and he'll be on Camera 2. The guests will come through that door, talk to Terry and Jason... and then sit over there.

Director Now, is that all clear ?
Production Assistant Yes... there's just one thing.
Director Well, what is it ?
PA Who's going to look after the guests during the show ?
Director Pauline is.
PA And where will they be waiting during the show ?

"Đây là cuộc đời của bạn" là một trong những chương trình được ưa thích nhất trên hệ thống truyền hình của Anh và Mỹ. Hàng tuần, một nhân vật có tiếng tăm được mời đến thu hình mà không hề biết trước rằng mình sẽ là nhân vật chính của chương trình. Người điều khiển chương trình gặp nhân vật đó bên ngoài phòng thu hình và tuyên bố : "Đây là cuộc đời của bạn !". Sau đó, nhân vật chính sẽ gặp lại các bạn bè và thân nhân của mình trước đây cũng như hiện nay. Phòng thu số 4 là nơi chương trình được thực hiện. Chương trình bắt đầu lúc 8 giờ. Bây giờ đã là 6g45 và đạo diễn đang kiểm tra lại công tác chuẩn bị với người trợ lý sản xuất mới của ông ta. Nhân vật chính của buổi trình diễn tối nay sẽ là một nam diễn viên điện ảnh, Jason Douglas. Người điều khiển chương trình, như thường lệ, sẽ là Terry Donovan.

Đạo diễn : Chúng ta hãy kiểm tra lại công tác chuẩn bị. Chúng ta đang đưa Jason Douglas đến đây bằng xe của đài truyền hình – anh ta nghĩ là mình đang đến dự một chương trình thảo luận ! Tài xế đã được dặn là phải đến đài truyền hình vào đúng 7g55. Chương trình bắt đầu lúc 8 giờ. Vào lúc đó Jason sẽ đang bước đến phòng thu. Terry Donovan sẽ bắt đầu lời giới thiệu vào lúc 8g01, và Jason sẽ đến lúc 8g02. Terry sẽ gặp anh ta ở cửa phòng thu... Máy quay số 4 sẽ hướng về phía đó. Sau đó Terry sẽ đưa anh ta về chỗ ngồi đàng kia. Máy quay số 3 sẽ hướng về đó. Jason sẽ ngồi ở chỗ đó suốt cả chương trình. Phần lớn thời gian của chương trình Terry sẽ đứng ở giữa phòng thu và máy quay số 2 sẽ thu hình anh. Khách mời sẽ vào phòng thu, nói chuyện với Terry và Jason, và sau đó ngồi ở đàng kia.

Đạo diễn : Tất cả đã rõ cả chứ ?
Trợ lý sản xuất : Rõ... chỉ còn một điều này.

Đạo diễn : Điều gì vậy ?
Trợ lý sản xuất : Thế ai sẽ phụ trách phía khách mời trong buổi diễn ?
Đạo diễn : Pauline.
Trợ lý đạo diễn : Và họ sẽ chờ ở đâu ?

Director In Room 401, as usual. Pauline will be waiting with them, and she'll be watching the show on the monitor. She'll tell them two minutes before they enter.

PA I think that's everything.

Đạo diễn : Trong Phòng 401, như thường lệ, Pauline sẽ ngồi chờ cùng với họ, và cô ấy sẽ quan sát buổi trình diễn qua máy kiểm tra. Cô ấy sẽ báo cho họ biết 2 phút trước khi họ vào phòng thu.

Trợ lý đạo diễn : Tôi nghĩ vậy là ổn cả rồi.

Northern T.V

Programme This is Your Life
Date 3rd Nov.
Studio 4
Subject Jason Douglas
Compère Terry Donovan
Director Chris Price

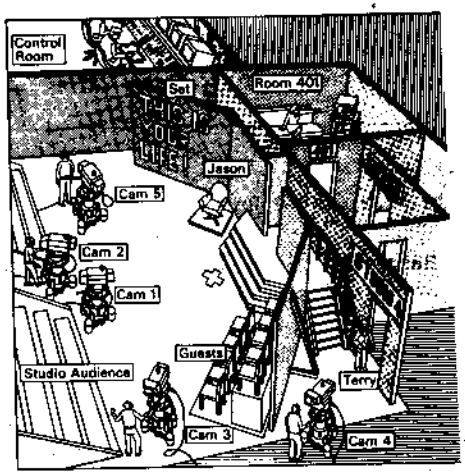
Running order

Pre-show
7.00 Admit studio audience.
7.30 "Warm-up" (Comedian tells jokes to studio audience).
7.55 Studio car arrives. (7 minute walk to studio.)

Show
8.00 Start videotape, titles & music.
8.01 Terry introduces show.
8.02 Jason arrives. Terry greets him.

Guests
8.03 Jason's sister from Australia.
8.05 His schoolteacher.
8.08 Maria Montrose, actress.
8.10 Father
8.13 Mother
8.15 Charles Orson, film director.
8.18 His first girlfriend.
8.20 Steve Newman, actor (his best friend).
8.22 Norma Phillips, film critic.
8.25-8.28 Show videotape extract from Jason's latest film.
8.29 His brothers and sisters.
8.30 Show ends. Start videotape, credits and music.

Post-show
8.30-8.45 Studio audience leaves.
8.45 Champagne party for Jason and guests.



Exercise 1

Each of the guests will say a few words about Jason.

A Who'll be speaking at 8.06 ?

B His schoolteacher will.

Ask and answer about : 8.04, 8.10, 8.16, 8.19, 8.23.

Exercise 2

A What'll be happening at 7.45 ?

B *A comedian will be telling jokes to the audience.*

Ask and answer about : 7.57, 8.35 and 9.00.

Exercise 3

The guests will be waiting in Room 401 from 7.50 until they enter.

A *How long will his sister be waiting ?*

B *She'll be waiting for thirteen minutes.*

Ask and answer about the other guests.

PRACTICE

Language summary

I, He, She	*'ll*	*be doing it*	*at 6.*	*The flight leaves at 8.30.*
It, We	*will*		*from 6 until 7.*	*I'm meeting him tomorrow.*
You, They	*won't*		*during the programme.*	*We'll begin at about 6.30.*
	will not		*for 10 minutes.*	

Exercise 1

Timetables

A When does the next flight to Rome leave?

B It leaves at quarter to nine.

A And at what time does it get to Rome ?

B At five past eleven. It takes two hours and twenty minutes.

Look at the timetables.

Make four more conversations like this.

Bài tập 1

Thời khóa biểu

A : Chuyến bay kế tiếp đi Rome chạy lúc mấy giờ ?

B : Lúc 9 giờ kém 15.

A : Vậy, nó sẽ đến Rome lúc mấy giờ ?

B : Lúc 11g05. Chuyến bay mất 2 giờ 20 phút.

	From	To	Depart	Arrive
FLIGHT	London	Rome	08.45	11.05
BUS	High Street	Crimea Road	10.00	10.20
TRAIN	Bristol	Swansea	17.15	18.53
BOAT	Dover	Calais	22.30	23.45
HOVERCRAFT	Calais	Ramsgate	14.30	15.10

Exercise 2 **Bài tập 2**

Keith Gordon is playing golf tonight.
He's meeting Tom Harris at 6 o'clock.
They'll drive to the golf course, and they'll begin at about 6.30.
They'll probably finish at 9.00.
They'll be playing golf from 6.30 until 9 o'clock.

Keith Gordon sẽ chơi golf tối nay.
Anh ấy sẽ gặp Tom Harris lúc 6g.
Họ sẽ lái xe đến sân golf và sẽ bắt đầu khoảng 6g30.
Có lẽ họ sẽ kết thúc lúc 9g.
Họ sẽ chơi golf từ 6g30 đến 9 giờ.

Use these words and write a similar paragraph :
Janet/ tennis/ Rosie/ 5.30/ walk/ tennis club/ begin/ 5.45/ finish 7.00

Exercise 3

Arrangements

Keith Gordon is the manager of an insurance company. This is his diary for tomorrow.

He's meeting Miss Granger at 9.15.

Make five more sentences.

Bài tập 3

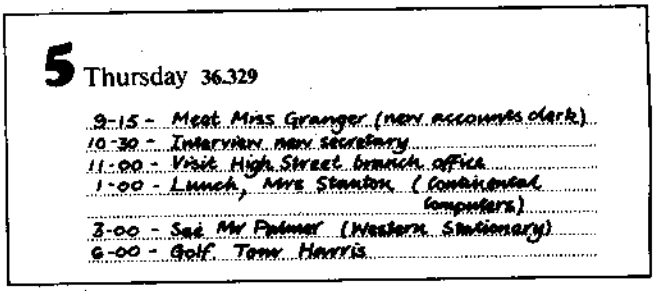
Những việc sắp xếp

Keith Gordon là giám đốc công ty bảo hiểm. Đây là lịch công tác của ông cho ngày mai.

Ông sẽ gặp Cô Granger lúc 9g15.

Đặt thêm 5 câu nữa.

1 .....
.....
2 .....
.....
3 .....
.....
4 .....
.....
5 .....
.....



Exercise 4

Vivian Townsend is a fashion buyer for a large department store. Tomorrow she's flying to Rome on business. This is her diary.

8.30 *What'll she be doing at 8.30 ?*
She'll be waiting for her flight at Heathrow Airport.

Write questions and answers for : 10.00/15.00/18.00/21.30/23.45.

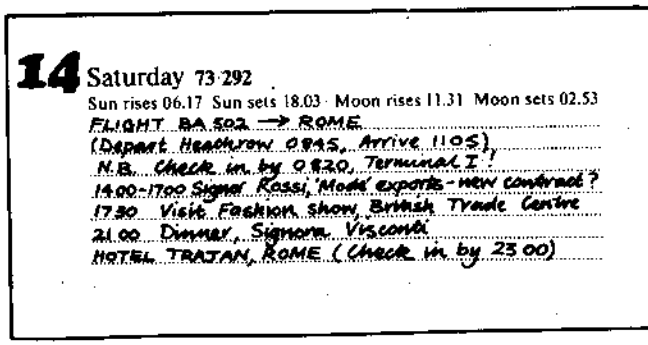
Bài tập 4

Vivian Townsend là người đi mua hàng thời trang cho một cửa hàng bách hóa lớn. Ngày mai cô sẽ đáp máy bay đi công tác ở Rome. Đây là lịch công tác của cô.

8.30 Cô ấy sẽ làm gì lúc 8g30 ?
Cô ấy sẽ chờ chuyến bay ở phi trường Heathrow.

Viết các câu hỏi và trả lời với : 10g/ 15g/ 18g/ 21g30/ 23g45.

10.00.....
.....
15.00.....
.....
18.00.....
.....
21.30.....
.....
23.45.....
.....



Unit 3 This Is Your Life !

Đây là cuộc đời của bạn !

VOCABULARY

- **astrology** *(n)* /ə'strɒlədʒɪ/ study of the positions of the stars and movements of the planets in the belief that they influence human affairs = chiêm tinh, tướng số.
  astrologer *(n)* /ə'strɒlədʒə/
  astrological *(adj)* /ˌæstrə'lɒdʒɪkl/
- **autobiography** *(n)* /ˌɔːtəbaɪ'ɒgrəfɪ/ story of a person's life written by that person = tự truyện *She has just written her ~*
  autobiographic, autobiographical *(adj)* /ˌɔːtəbaɪə'græfɪk/ /-ɪkl/ *His novels are largely autobiographical.*
- **biography** *(n)* /baɪ'ɒgrəfɪ/ story of a person's life written by sb else = tiểu sử
  biographer *(n)* /baɪ'ɒgrəfə/
- **brilliant** *(adj)* /'brɪlɪənt/ talented; oustanding = có tài, xuất sắc
  brilliance *(n)* /'brɪlɪəns/
- **christen** *(v)* /'krɪsn/ (esp passive) = give a name to sb at a ceremony = đặt tên thánh *The child was ~ed Mary.*
  christening *(n)* /'krɪsnɪŋ/ = baptism = Lễ đặt tên thánh
- **ex-husband** *(n)* /ˌeks 'hʌzbənd/ *former* husband = chồng cũ
- **furious** *(adj)* /'fjʊərɪəs/ (with sb) (at st) full of violent anger = giận dữ
  She was absolutely ~ at his behaviour.
  fury *(n)* /'fjʊərɪ/ wild and violent anger
  Speechless with ~.
- **graduate** *(v)* /'grædʒʊeɪt/ (in st) (at / from st) complete a course for a degree = tốt nghiệp *She ~ d from Cambridge with a degree in law.*
  graduation (n) /ˌgrædʒʊ'eɪʃn/
- **initiate** *(v)* /ɪ'nɪʃɪeɪt/ cause st to begin = bắt đầu, đề xướng
  ~ plans; schemes; social reforms
- **leading** *(adj)* /'liːdɪŋ/ in first positions = hàng đầu *the ~ runners.*
- **maiden name** *(n)* /'meɪdn neɪm/ woman's family name before her marriage = nhũ danh
- **marital status** *(n)* /ˌmærɪtl 'steɪtəs/ (fml) whether one is married, single or divorced = tình trạng hôn nhân
- **movie** *(n)* /'muːvɪ/ cinema film = phim ảnh
- **profession** *(n)* /prə'feʃn/ paid occupation, esp one that requires advanced education and training = nghề nghiệp
  professional *(adj)* /prə'feʃənl/
- **scream** *(v)* /skriːm/ (at sb) give a long piercing cry of fear, pain or excitement = thét to *She ~ ed (out) at me in anger.*
- **specially** *(adv)* /'speʃəlɪ/ especially, particularly = đặc biệt *I enjoyed the evening, but the meal wasn't ~ good*
- **stage name** *(n)* /steɪdʒ neɪm/ name used as an actor = tên sân khấu, nghệ danh
- **stone's throw** /'stəʊnz θrəʊ/ = stone's cast = a very short distance = quãng ngắn *We live a stone's throw from here.*
- **take part** *(v)* /teɪk pɑːt/ = join = tham gia
- **voice** *(n)* /vɔɪs/ sounds formed in the larynx and uttered through the mouth, esp by a person speaking or singing = giọng
  Speak in a loud, rough, husky, gentle ~
- **zoologist** *(n)* /zəʊ'ɒlədʒɪst/ expert in zoology
  zoology (n) /zəʊ'ɒlədʒɪ/

EXPRESSIONS

I don't believe it	tôi không tin đâu
It's great to be here	ở đây thật là tuyệt
all the way from	suốt đường từ
even in those days	thậm chí / ngay cả dạo đó
to be brought up	được nuôi dưỡng
to break up	đổ vỡ
to be engaged to someone	hứa hôn với ai

PROPER NAMES

Balaclava	/bælə'kla:və/	Lane End	/'leɪn 'end/
Charles Orson	/'tʃa:lz 'ɔ:sn/	Maria Montrose	/mə'rɪə mɒn'trəʊz/
East Ham	/'i:st'hæm/	Stanley Hooper	/'stænlɪ'hu:pə/
Graham Smith	/'greɪəm 'smɪθ/	Sydney	/'sɪdnɪ/
Hollywood	/'hɒlɪwʊd/		

USAGE (use a dictionary or ask your teacher for the meaning)

1. Leading actor/actress reporter journalist activist

2.

Man	of the	day
Woman		year
Journalist		decade
Reporter		century
Singer		
Writer		
Story		
Subject		

3. Take a part in something/ doing something

Take a part in a rebellion
one's revolution
conspiracy/plot
programme/effort

Ex : He was sent to prison for the *leading part*
he had *taken in* the revolution

Take a greater / major / minor / small } part in

Take a(n) important / essential / (in) significant / decisive / leading role / share

4. It's great / nice / wonderful to be here / there

5.

Fall	off the	horse
(dis) mount	one's	horse
ride	one's	horse
sit	one's	horse

6. Be in a (great) fury = be in an extremely great anger

7. Drama /'dra:mə/
Dramatic /drə'mætɪk/ đầy kịch tính
Dramatist (n) (writer of plays)
Dramatize (v) : chuyển thể thành kịch
/'dræmətaɪz/

GRAMMAR NOTES

Review **To be going + to infinitive**
Present continuous
will + bare infinitive

Ask your teacher for help

Terry Good evening and welcome to 'This is Your Life'. This is Terry Donovan speaking. We're waiting for the subject of tonight's programme. He's one of the world's leading actors, and he thinks he's coming here to take part in a discussion programme... I can hear him now... yes, here he is ! Jason Douglas... This is your life !

Jason Oh, no... I don't believe it ! Not me...

Terry Yes, you ! Now come over here and sit down. Jason, you were born at number 28 Balaclava Street in East Ham, London on July 2nd 1947. You were one of six children, and your father was a taxi driver. Of course, your name was then Graham Smith.

Terry Now, do you know this voice ? 'I remember Jason when he was two. He used to scream and shout all day.'

Jason Susan !

Terry Yes... all the way from Sydney, Australia... she flew here specially for this programme. It's your sister, Susan Fraser !

Jason Susan... why didn't you tell me... oh, this is wonderful !

Terry Yes, you haven't seen each other for 13 years... take a seat next to him, Susan. You started school at the age of five, in 1952, and in 1958 you moved to Lane End Secondary School.

Terry Do you remember this voice ? 'Smith ! Stop looking out of the window !'

Jason Oh, no ! It's Mr Hooper !

Terry Your English teacher, Mr Stanley Hooper. Was Jason a good student, Mr Hooper ?

Mr Hooper Eh ? No, he was the worst in the class... but he was a brilliant actor, even in those days. He could imitate all the teachers!

Terry Thank you, Mr Hooper. You can speak to Jason, later. Well, you went to the London School of Drama in 1966, and left in 1969. In 1973 you went to Hollywood.

Terry : Xin chào các bạn, và mời các bạn theo dõi chương trình "Đây là cuộc đời của bạn". Tôi là Terry Donovan. Chúng ta đang đợi nhân vật chính của chương trình tối nay. Anh ta là một trong những diễn viên hàng đầu của thế giới, và anh ta nghĩ là anh ta đang đến đây để tham dự một chương trình mạn đàm. Bây giờ tôi có thể nghe tiếng nói của anh ta... vâng, anh ta đây rồi ! Jason Douglas... Đây là cuộc đời của bạn !

Jason : Ô, không... Tôi không tin đâu ! Không phải tôi...

Terry : Phải, chính anh đó ! Nào đến đây và mời anh ngồi. Jason, anh chào đời ở số nhà 28 đường Balaclava ở Đông Ham, Luân Đôn vào ngày 2 tháng 7, 1947. Gia đình anh có 6 anh chị em và ba anh là một tài xế taxi. À, dĩ nhiên hồi đó tên anh là Graham Smith.

Terry : Nào, anh có nhận ra giọng nói này không ? "Tôi còn nhớ Jason khi nó hai tuổi. Nó thường la hét suốt cả ngày !"

Jason : Susan !

Terry : Đúng rồi... Mãi tận Sydney, nước Úc sang đây... Chị ấy bay sang đây chỉ vì chương trình này thôi đấy nhé. Chị của anh, Susan Fraser.

Jason : Susan... Sao chị lại không báo trước cho em hả... A, thật là tuyệt.

Terry : Phải rồi, chị em của anh đã không có dịp gặp nhau suốt cả 13 năm nay rồi... Mời chị ngồi kế bên anh ấy, Susan. Anh bắt đầu đi học lúc 5 tuổi, vào năm 1952, và đến năm 1958 anh chuyển về trường trung học Lane End.

Terry : Anh có nhớ giọng nói này không ? "Smith ! Không được nhìn ra cửa sổ nữa !".

Jason : Ô, không ! Ông Hooper đây mà !

Terry : Thầy giáo Anh văn của anh, ông Stanley Hooper. Thưa ông Hooper, hồi đó Jason có học giỏi không ?

Ô. Hooper : Sao ? Không, anh ta tệ nhất lớp... nhưng ngay từ hồi đó anh ta đã là một diễn viên xuất sắc rồi. Anh ta có thể bắt chước điệu bộ của tất cả giáo viên!

Terry : Cảm ơn ông Hooper. Ông có thể nói chuyện với Jason sau. Tiếp tục nhé. Rồi anh đi học trường Kịch nghệ Luân Đôn vào năm 1966, và ra trường năm 1969. Năm 1973 anh đi Hollywood.

Terry Do you know this voice ?. 'Hi Jason... Can you ride a horse yet ?'

Jason Maria !

Terry Maria Montrose... who's come from Hollywood to be with you tonight.

Maria Hello, Jason... it's great to be here. Hello, Terry. Jason and I were in a movie together in 1974. Jason had to learn to ride a horse... well, Jason doesn't like horses very much.

Jason Like them ! I'm terrified of them !

Maria Anyway, he practised for two weeks. Then he went to the director... it was Charles Orson... and said, 'What do you want me to do ? Charles said, 'I want you to fall off the horse'. Jason was furious. He said, 'What ? Fall off ! I've been practising for two weeks... I could fall off the first day... without any practice !'

Terry : Anh có nhớ giọng nói này không ? "Chào Jason... Cưỡi ngựa được chưa nào?".

Jason : Maria !

Terry : Maria Montrose... người đã từ Hollywood đến đây để gặp anh tối nay.

Maria : Chào Jason... Thật thú vị được có mặt ở đây. Chào Terry. Jason và tôi cùng đóng một phim vào năm 1974. Jason phải học cưỡi ngựa... Mà Jason chẳng hề thích ngựa cho lắm.

Jason : Thích chúng nó à ! Tôi còn phát khiếp lên được vì chúng nó.

Maria : Dù sao anh ta cũng tập dượt 2 tuần. Sau đó anh ta đi gặp đạo diễn... lúc đó là Charles Orson... và nói, "Ông muốn tôi phải làm sao nào ?". Charles nói "Tôi muốn anh phải té xuống từ lưng ngựa !". Jason tức phát điên lên được. Anh ta nói "Cái gì ? Té ngựa hả ! Tôi tập dượt cả 2 tuần nay rồi... Không cần tập dượt gì cả tôi cũng có thể té ngựa từ buổi đầu tiên kia mà !"

Look at this

Ask questions, and complete the form for another student.

Northern T.V.

Programme : This is your life
Date : 3rd. November
Studio : 4
Subject : Jason Douglas
Compère : Terry Donovan
Director : Chris Price
Surname : Smith
First name(s) : Graham Anthony
(stage name : Jason Douglas)
Date of birth : 2/7/47
Nationality : British
Place of birth : London, England
Education : Lane End Secondary 1958-65
London School of Drama 1966-69
Address : 3280 Sunshire Boulevard, Hollywood, California.
Marital status : Single
Profession : Actor

Northern T.V.

Programme :
Date :
Studio :
Subject :
Compère :
Director :

Surname :
First name(s) :

Date of birth :
Nationality :
Place of birth :
Education :
Address :

Marital status :
Profession :

PRACTICE

Language summary

Name What's your name ? I'm/ My name's (Jason Douglas).
Date & Place of Birth When/ Where were you born ? I was born on July 2nd/ in London.
Nationality Where are you from ?/ Where do you come from ? I'm British./ I come from Britain.
Marital Status Are you married ? Yes, I am./ No, I'm not. I'm single.
Address What's your address ?/ Where do you live ? I live at.../ My address is (3280 Sunshine Boulevard).
Education Where were you educated ?/ Where did you go to (school) ? I went to.../ I was educated at Lane End Secondary School.
Profession What do you do ?/ What's your job ? I'm an actor./ I work in a bank.

Exercise 1 **Bài tập 1**

Family Name	.....	.....	.....
First Name(s)	.....	.....	.....
Date of Birth	.....	.....	.....
Place of Birth	.....	.....	.....
Nationality	.....	.....	.....
Address	.....	.....	.....
Education	.....	.....	.....
Profession	.....	.....	.....
Marital Status	.....	.....	.....

Read these three texts and complete the forms above.

My name's Maria... Maria Montrose. Now, what can I tell you about myself ? Let's begin at the beginning. I was born on March 23rd – I'd prefer not to tell you the year ! I was the youngest of three children. I've got two brothers. Los Angeles is my home town. I was brought up and went to school there – Beverley Hills High, then on to Stanford University. I graduated in Drama. I got married in 1966 when I was only 23, but it broke up after a couple of years. Montrose was my ex-husband's name, but I still use it in my career. My maiden name was Mankowitz. I've been very lucky in my career as an actress. I still live in L.A. I've got an apartment in the San Andreas Tower on Sunset Drive..

Đọc bài này rồi điền vào mẫu đơn trên :

Tên tôi là Maria... Maria Montrose. Tôi có thể nói gì với các bạn về bản thân tôi bây giờ ? Hãy bắt đầu từ đầu nhé. Tôi sinh vào ngày 23 tháng 3. Tôi thích không nói với các bạn về năm sinh của tôi. Tôi là con út trong gia đình có 3 con. Tôi có hai anh trai. Quê hương tôi là Los Angeles. Tôi được nuôi nấng và đi học ở đó. Trung học Beverley Hills và rồi học đại học Stanford. Tôi tốt nghiệp ngành kịch nghệ. Tôi lập gia đình năm 1966 khi tôi chỉ mới 23 tuổi. Nhưng rồi cuộc hôn nhân đổ vỡ sau vài năm. Montrose là tên chồng cũ của tôi nhưng tôi vẫn dùng trong nghề nghiệp của mình. Nhũ danh của tôi là Mankowitz. Tôi rất may mắn trong cuộc đời diễn viên của mình. Tôi vẫn đang sống ở L.A. Tôi có một căn hộ ở San Andreas Tower trên đường Sunset.

I was christened Stanley after my father, Stanley George Hooper, who had been, among other things, the mayor of Preston. I've been a teacher all my life in different parts of the country I now teach at Preston Grammar School, where I went to school myself before going on to Liverpool University to study English. I'm a widower now. My wife died three years ago and I live with my eldest daughter at 26, Poplar Avenue, Preston which is only a stone's throw from where I was born in 1925. I'm a great believer in astrology. I'm a Taurus myself, having been born on 25th May.

Tôi được đặt tên thánh là Stanley theo tên cha tôi, Stanley George Hooper, ngoài một số việc khác ông đã từng là thị trưởng của thị trấn Preston. Tôi là giáo viên cả đời ở nhiều miền khác nhau trong nước. Hiện tôi đang dạy ở trường Trung học Preston, ngôi trường tôi cũng từng học trước khi vào đại học Liverpool để học tiếng Anh. Hiện giờ tôi góa vợ. Vợ tôi qua đời cách đây 3 năm và tôi sống với đứa con gái lớn nhất ở số 26, đại lộ Poplar, Preston, chỉ cách nơi tôi đã sinh ra năm 1925 một quãng ngắn. Tôi rất tin vào tướng số. Tôi sinh vào năm Kim Ngưu, ngày 25 tháng 5.

EDINBURGH EVENING NEWS

12 Dec

LOCAL GIRL OFF TO AFRICA

Jeannie Macpherson, who was in town visiting her parents for her birthday yesterday, is off to Kenya, where she'll be working in a national park. 22-year-old Jeannie was educated at the Carnegie Academy for Girls, and the University of St Andrews, where she has just qualified as a zoologist. Jeannie, of 17 Glencoe Road, is engaged to local dentist Hamish Maclean.

TIN BUỔI TỐI EDINBURGH

12 tháng 12

CÔ GÁI ĐỊA PHƯƠNG SANG CHÂU PHI

Jeannie Macpherson, cô gái đang ở tỉnh ngày hôm qua đã đến thăm bố mẹ nhân ngày sinh nhật của mình, sẽ đi sang Kenya để làm việc ở công viên quốc gia. Cô Jeannie 22 tuổi đã học ở Nữ Học viện Carnegie và đại học St Andrews nơi cô vừa tốt nghiệp ngành động vật học. Jeannie ở số nhà 17 đường Glencoe đã đính hôn với một nha sĩ trong vùng là Hamish Maclean.

Exercise 2

1 Interview a student in your class and write a short biography of him/ her like the one above.

2 Write a short autobiography.

Bài tập 2

1. Phỏng vấn một học viên trong lớp bạn và viết một bài tiểu sử ngắn về anh/ chị ấy, giống bài viết trên đây.
2. Viết một bài tự truyện ngắn.

Notes to learners : Do remember to review your stock of vocabulary and the best way to learn new words is to pronounce them accurately and to memorize them in contents, i.e in connection with their examples.

Unit 4 The Monte Carlo Rally

Cuộc đua xe hơi Monte Carlo

VOCABULARY

- **compete** *(v)* /kəm'pi:t/ (against / with sb) = try to win st by defeating others who are trying to do the same = cạnh tranh, thi thố.
  competition (n) /ˌkɒmpə'tɪʃn/ contest = cuộc thi
  competitive *(adj)* /kəm'petətɪv/
  competitor *(n)* /kəm'petɪtə/ *contestant* = người dự thi
- **condition** *(n)* /kən'dɪʃn/ present state of a thing = tình trạng, điều kiện
- **consist** *(v)* /kən'sɪst/ (of st) be composed or made up of st = bao gồm
  The committe ~ s of ten members.
- **constant** *(adj)* /'kɒnstənt/ happening again and again = thường xuyên
  This entrance is in ~ use; do not block it.
  constantly *(adv)* /- lɪ/ continuously, frequently
- **consumption** *(n)* /kən'sʌmpʃn/ using up of food, energy, resources, etc = sự tiêu thụ
  consume *(v)* /kən'sju:m/ *use st up* = tiêu thụ
  consumer *(n)* /- mə/ person who buys goods or uses services *Consumers are encouraged to complain about faulty goods.*
- **deposit** *(n)* /dɪ'pɒzɪt/ payment of a part of a larger sum the rest of which is to be paid later = tiền đặt cọc *The shop promised to keep the goods for me if I pay a ~.*
  deposit *(v)* /dɪ'pɒzɪt/ *I had to ~ 10% of the price of the house.*
- **engine capacity** *(n)* /'endʒɪn kə'pæsətɪ/ dung tích máy
- **graph** *(n)* /grɑ:f/ line or lines showing the variation of two quantities = đồ thị
  graphic *(adj)* /'græfɪk/
- **height** *(n)* /haɪt/ measurement from the bottom to the top of a thing = chiều cao
  high *(adj)* /haɪ/
- **length** *(n)* /leŋθ/ measurement or extent from end to end = chiều dài.
  long *(adj)* /lɒŋ/
- **maximum speed** *(n)* /'mæksɪməm spi:d/ tốc độ tối đa
- **medium wave** *(n)* /'mi:dɪəm weɪv/ sóng trung bình
- **motoring** *(n)* /'məʊtərɪŋ/ driving in a car = việc lái xe
- **points system** *(n)* /pɒɪnts 'sɪstəm/ hệ thống điểm
- **rallying point** *(n)* /'rælɪɪŋ pɒɪnt/ điểm tập trung
- **stage** *(n)* /steɪdʒ/ platform on which plays are performed to an audience = sân khấu
  He was on ~ for most of the play.
- **unhurt** *(adj)* /ʌn'hɜ:t/ without injury or pain = không bị thương tích
- **urban cycle** *(n)* /'ɜ:bən,saɪkl/ chạy trong thành phố
- **width** *(n)* /wɪdθ, wɪtθ/ measurement from side to side = chiều rộng
  wide (adj) /waɪd/
- **withdraw** *(v)* /wɪð'drɔ:/ go away from a place or from other people = rút lui. *He talked to us for an hour and then withdrew.*

PROPER NAMES

Place Names

Barcelona	/ˌbɑ:sɪ'ləʊnə/
Belgrade	/'belgreɪd/
Clermont - Ferrand	/kleɔ'mɒnt 'ferand/
Copenhagen	/kəʊpən'heɪgən/
Dover	/'dəʊvə/
Frankfurt	/'fræŋkfɜ:t/
Geneva	/dʒə'ni:və/
Madrid	/mə'drɪd/
Monte Carlo	/'mɒntɪ 'kɑ:ləʊ/
Stockholm	/'stɒkhəʊm/

Men's Names

Danielle Bernard	/dænɪəl 'bɜ:na:d/
Hannu Larsen	/'hænju 'la:sen/
Russel Cook	/'rʌsl 'kʊk/
Sandro Rossi	/'sændrəu 'rɒsɪ/

Cars' Names

Audi Quattro	/ɔ:dɪ 'kwætrəu/
Renault Gordini	/rə'nəu gɔ:'dɪnɪ/
Talbot Sunbeam	/'tɔ:lbət 'sʌnbi:m
Lotus	'ləutəs/

USAGE (use a dictionary or ask your teacher for help)

1. Motoring
   racing
   sporting event
   boating
   motocycling
   bicycling

2. rallying
   starting point
   meeting
   The finish
   finishing point
   line

4. win ⟶ winner
   lose loser
   win a match
   game
   race
   contest
   competition
   tournament

Ex : The winner'd take it all, the loser standing small

At all events : whatever is so (or in any events)
In either event : whichever
In that event (= in that case, situation)
In the event of = in case of

3. Race ⟶ horse race
   motor race
   bicycle race
   motorcycle race

5. average
   maximum
   minimum
   rapid
   fast speed
   slow
   snail
   great
   enormous
   high
   controllable

GRAMMAR NOTES

The PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS in contrast with THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

I. I have been doing or I have done ?

A. Present perfect continuous (*have been doing*) or present perfect (*have done*) ?

Compare :

have been doing

We use present perfect continuous for an action over a period :

*A strong wind **has been blowing** all day*

have done

We use the present perfect for a complete action

*The wind **has blown** our fence over*

The choice of form depends on whether we see the action as continuing over a period or as complete. Compare :

OVER A PERIOD (**have been doing**)	COMPLETE (**have done**)
*Tim **has been repairing** his bike. He's got oil on his hands.*	Tim has repaired his bike. It goes all right now.
*I've **been writing** an essay. I'm tired now.*	*I've **written** an essay. I can hand it in now.*
We normally use the continuous form with a phrase saying how long :	We use the simple form with a phrase saying how many :
*Mandy **has been picking** apples all afternoon.*	Mandy ***has picked hundreds** of apples.*
*I've **been writing** letters **since this morning**.*	*I've **written ten** letters.*

B. Actions and states

We cannot normally use the continuous form for a state

*I've **known** the secret for a long time.* NOT I've been/knowing

*The Browns **have had** that car for at least ten years.*

*We've never **been** very happy here.*

Live and **work** (=have a job) can be continuous or not, with little difference in meaning;

*We've **been living** here since 1988.* Or *We've **lived** here since 1988.*

*Tom **has been working** at the bank for three years now.* OR *Tom **has worked*** at the bank for three years now.

THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS in contrast with THE FUTURE PERFECT

II. Will be doing and will have done

Look at this conversation :

Don : *I need to know all the arrangements. Can you phone me tomorrow ?*

July : *Yes, I'll phone you tomorrow afternoon at about three.*

Don: *Oh, I'll be out then. **I'll be playing** golf. But **I'll finished*** by about five.

Judy : *Well, I'll **be passing*** your house at half past five. It's on my way home. I'll call in and see you.

A. will be doing for continuous actions

We use **will be** + ing-form for an action over a period of future time. It means that we will be in the middle of an action :

*I'll be out. **I'll be playing** golf.* *This time next week **we'll be driving** through France.*

Compare these sentenses :

*The band **will play** when the President enters.*

(The President will enter and then the band will play)

*The band **will be playing** when the President enters.*

(The band will start playing before the President enters.)

B. will be doing for routine actions

We also use **will be** + ing-form for an action which is the result of a routine :

*I'll **be passing** your house this afternoon. It's on my way home from work.*

*Barbara **will be cleaning** the flat tomorrow. She always does it on Sundays.*

Compare the present continuous and **will be doing** :

Arrangement : *I'm seing Nigel tomorrow. We've arranged to meet.*

Routine : *I'll be seeing Nigel tomorrow. We work in the same department.*

We can use **will be doing** to ask if someone's plans fit in with what we would like them to do:

How long will you be using this computer ? - You can have it in a minute.

C. **will have done**

We use **will have** + a past participle for something before a future time, something what we will finish before a time in the future :

*We'll **have finished** our game of tennis by six o'clock.*

(The game will be at an end before six o'clock.)

*The book isn't very long. I'll **have read** it by lunch time.*

*The Watsons **will have lived** here ten years next April.*

The Monte Carlo Rally, which started in 1911, is Europe's most famous motoring event. Competitors leave from several points around Europe and follow routes of approximately equal length to a rallying point which will be Geneva this year. They then follow a single route to the finish. The rally consists of five daily stages, beginning on Sunday morning, and each competitor will have driven about 3000 kilometres by Thursday night. It is not a race. The winner is decided on a points system. Drivers have to maintain an average speed between control points, and there are also special tests of driving skill in different conditions on the way.

Cuộc đua xe hơi Monte Carlo, lần đầu tiên được tổ chức vào năm 1911, là cuộc đua nổi tiếng nhất của châu Âu. Các tay đua phát xuất từ nhiều nơi khác nhau ở châu Âu và đi theo các lộ trình có độ dài xấp xỉ bằng nhau để đổ về một điểm tập trung – năm nay là Geneva. Sau đó họ sẽ theo cùng một đường đua duy nhất để về đích. Cuộc đua gồm 5 chặng, mỗi chặng một ngày, bắt đầu vào sáng chủ nhật, và đến đêm thứ năm thì mỗi tay đua sẽ vượt được khoảng 3000 km. Đây không phải là một cuộc tranh tài về tốc độ. Người thắng cuộc được quyết định theo một thang điểm. Các tay đua phải giữ một tốc độ trung bình giữa những điểm kiểm soát; ngoài ra còn có những cuộc sát hạch đặc biệt về kỹ năng lái xe trong những điều kiện khác nhau trên đường đua.

Motoring news

This is Radio Wessex on 203 metres, medium wave. It's nine o'clock on Monday 25th January and this is Barry King reporting from Dover. The British competitors in the Monte Carlo Rally have just arrived here at the end of the second stage in this year's competition. Russell Cook, who's driving a Sunbeam Lotus, is leading. The Triumph driven by Tony Bond, who won last year's rally, crashed in Yorkshire this morning. Tony was unhurt but will be unable to continue. Seven other cars have withdrawn due to bad weather conditions. Tonight the cars, which left from Glasgow on Sunday morning, will be crossing the English Channel.

Tin về cuộc đua

Đây là đài Wessex phát trên bước sóng 203 mét, băng sóng trung. Bây giờ là 9g ngày thứ hai 25 tháng giêng; Barry King đang tường thuật với các bạn từ Dover. Các tay đua Anh tham dự cuộc đua Monte Carlo vừa mới tới đây vào cuối chặng hai trong cuộc so tài năm nay. Russell Cook, người cầm lái chiếc Sunbeam Lotus, đang dẫn đầu. Chiếc Triump do Tony Bond cầm lái, người đã đoạt giải năm rồi, đã bị lật ở Yorkshire vào sáng hôm nay. Tony không bị thương tích gì, nhưng sẽ không có khả năng tiếp tục dự đua được nữa. Bảy chiếc xe khác đã bỏ cuộc vì thời tiết xấu. Tối hôm nay, đoàn xe của các tay đua Anh, khởi hành từ Glasgow vào sáng chủ nhật sẽ vượt qua eo biển Manche.

Driver Russell Cook
Nationality British **Age** 28
Starting point Glasgow
Car Talbot Sunbeam Lotus
Engine capacity 2172 cc
Maximum speed 196 km/h
Petrol consumption :
urban cycle
15.59 litres/100 km
constant 90 km/h
13.1 litres/100 km
Length 3.82 m
Width 1.60 m
Height 1.39 m

Driver Danielle Bernard
Nationality French **Age** 31
Starting point Lisbon
Car Renault 5 Gordini
Engine capacity 1397 cc
Maximum speed 176 km/h
Petrol consumption :
urban cycle
11.2 litres/100 km
constant 90 km/h
6.1 litres/100 km
Length 3.50 m
Width 1.52 m
Height 1.39 m

Driver Hannu Larsen
Nationality Finnish **Age** 32
Starting point Helsinki
Car Audi Quattro
Engine capacity 2144 cc
Maximum speed 220 km/h
Petrol consumption :
urban cycle
15.69 litres/100 km
constant 90 km/h
7.91 litres/100 km
Length 4.40 m
Width 1.72 m
Height 1.34 m

Driver Sandro Rossi
Nationality Italian **Age** 30
Starting point Athens
Car Fiat 131
Engine capacity 1585 cc
Maximum speed 168 km/h
Petrol consumption :
urban cycle
11.92 litres/100 km
constant 90 km/h
6.99 litres/100 km
Length 4.26 m
Width 1.65 m
Height 1.39 m

Exercise 1
Look at the first driver.
What's his name ?
His name's Russell Cook.
Where does he come from ?
He comes from Britain
How old is he ? He's 28.
Ask and answer about the other drivers.

Exercise 2
Look at the first car. (All statistics are for production cars.)
What make is it ? It's a Sunbeam Lotus.
How fast can it go ? The top speed is 196 km/h.
How much petrol does it use ? 15.59 litres per 100 km around town, and 13.1 litres at a constant 90 km/h.
How long is it ? 3.82 m.
How wide is it ? 1.60 m.
How high is it ? 1.39 m.
Ask and answer about the other cars.

Exercise 3
Look at the drivers and the cars.
Danielle Bernard's older than Sandro Rossi.
Russell Cook isn't as old as Danielle Bernard.
Hannu Larsen's the oldest.
Make comparisons about the cars using : fast/long,/wide/high/economical.

Exercise 4
Look at the first driver. All the cars started on Sunday morning.
Where is he now ? He's in Dover.
Where did he start ? He started from Glasgow.
How long has he been driving ? He's been driving for two days.
How many kilometres has he driven ? 1205 km.
Ask and answer about the other drivers.

Exercise 5
Look at the first driver. It's Monday night.
Where will he be tomorrow night ? He'll be in Clermont-Ferrand.
What will he be doing tomorrow ? He'll be driving from Dover to Clermont-Ferrand.
Ask and answer about Wednesday and Thursday.
Do the same for the other drivers.

Exercise 6
Look at the first driver.
On Tuesday night he'll be in Clermont-Ferrand.
How far will he have driven on Tuesday ? He'll have driven 640 km.
Ask and answer about Wednesday and Thursday.
Do the same for the other drivers.

PRACTICE

Language summary

He's / *They've*	*been doing it*	*for 2 hours.* / *since 6 o'clock.*
	done (a lot).	

How	*long* / *much* / *many*	*have they* / *has he*	*been doing it ?* / *done ?*

What will he be doing tomorrow ?
He'll be doing (this).

How	*much* / *many*	*will*	*he* / *they*	*have done ?*
He / *They*	*'ll* / *will*	*have done (a lot).*		

big/bigger/biggest... as big as...
economical/more economical/the most economical

Exercise 1

How many cars were they making per week in February ? 750.

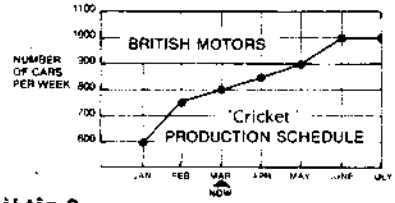
Ask and answer for the other months on the graph.

1 .....
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....

Bài tập 1

Họ đã sản xuất bao nhiêu chiếc xe hơi mỗi tuần trong tháng Hai ? 750.

Hỏi và trả lời với những tháng khác trên biểu đồ.



Exercise 2

Look at the graph.

They made 2,400 cars in January, 3,000 in February and 3,200 in March. So they have made 8,600 cars.

How many will they have made by the end of April ?

They'll have made 11,600.

Ask and answer for May and June.

Bài tập 2

Nhìn vào biểu đồ.

Họ đã sản xuất 2400 xe hơi vào tháng giêng; 3000 chiếc vào tháng 2 và 3.200 chiếc vào tháng 3. Như vậy họ đã sản xuất được 8.600 chiếc xe.

Vào cuối tháng 4 họ sẽ sản xuất được bao nhiêu chiếc ?

Họ sẽ sản xuất được 11.600 chiếc.

Hỏi và trả lời với tháng 5 và tháng 6.

1 .....
2 .....

Exercise 3

David and Andrea Brent got married two years ago. They want to buy a house. They've both been working overtime, and they are able to save £100 a month. They began saving exactly one year ago, in July. They don't need to save all the money, but they need £2,500 as a 10% deposit. Write full answers.

How long have they been married ?

They've been married for two years.

Bài tập 3

David và Andrea Brent cưới nhau cách đây 2 năm. Họ muốn mua một căn nhà. Cả hai đều làm thêm ngoài giờ và họ có thể dành dụm được 100 pounds mỗi tháng. Họ bắt đầu tiết kiệm cách đây đúng 1 năm, vào tháng 7. Họ không cần dành dụm tất cả số tiền, nhưng chỉ cần 2500 pounds làm 10% tiền đặt cọc. Viết trả lời đầy đủ cho các câu hỏi sau đây :

Họ đã cưới nhau bao lâu rồi ?

Họ đã cưới nhau được 2 năm.

1 How long have they been saving ? .....
2 How much do they save monthly ? .....
3 How much have they already saved ? .....
4 How much will they have saved by December ? .....
5 Will they have saved enough by next June ? .....
6 When will they have saved enough ? .....

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Unit 1-4

DIALOGUE A

Listen

Receptionist Good morning. Pickwick School of English. Yes, I see. We're very busy today, I'm afraid.The new students have just arrived. We've got to interview them all. Yes. Yes. I'll phone you later.
Tom 'Morning.
Receptionist Good morning.Can you tell me your name, please ?
Tom Brown. Thomas Brown.
Receptionist How do you spell 'Brown' ? Is that B-R-A-U-N ?
Tom Eh ? No...'course not. B-R-O-W-N. When can I see Mr Walters ?
Receptionist In a moment. Take a seat over there.

Pronunciation
-Pickwick /pɪkwɪk/
-Thomas Brown /'tɒməs braʊn/
-Walters /'wɔ:ltəz/
Expressions
-In a moment = very soon
-Take a seat = sit down

Listen and repeat

A1 *Listen*
A: 'Morning
B: Good morning.
C: Good morning.

Now you do the same
'Morning .....Good morning.
'Afternoon .....Good afternoon.
'Evening .....Good evening.

A2 *Listen*
A: My name's Brown.
B: How do you spell 'Brown' ?
Is that B-R-O-W-N ?
C: How do you spell 'Brown' ?
Is that B-R-O-W-N ?
A: My name's Smith.
B: How do you spell 'Smith' ?
Is that S-M-I-T-H ?
C: How do you spell 'Smith' ?
Is that S-M-I-T-H ?

Now you do the same
My name's Brown .....How do you spell 'Brown' ?
Is that B-R-O-W-N ?
My name's Smith.....How do you spell 'Smith' ?
Is that S-M-I-T-H ?
My name's Newman .....How do you spell 'Newman' ?
Is that N-E-W-M-A-N ?
My name's Hilton .....How do you spell 'Hilton' ?
Is that H-I-L-T-O-N ?

Prounciation
-Brown /braʊn/ -Smith /smɪθ/ -Newman /'nju:mən/
-Hilton /'hɪltən/

Dialogue B

Listen

Mr Walters Ah, come in. Come in. It's Thomas, isn't it ?
Tom Er...yes. Yes.I suppose so.
Mr Walters Right, Thomas. Where do you come from ?
Tom Me ? London.
Mr Walters No, no. You don't understand. Where do you come from ? What nationality are you ?
Tom That's a funny question.
Mr Walters Not really. Look. Where were you born ?
Tom Where were you born ? In a bed. I think - ha, ha, ha. No, I was born in London.

Vocabulary
-suppose (v) /sə'pəʊz/
-funny (adj) /'fʌnɪ/ =causing amusement
=buồn cười.

Listen and repeat

B1 *Listen*

A: Where were you born ?
B: Where were you born ?
C: Where were you born ?

A: Where do you come from ?
B: Where do you come from ?
C: Where do you come from ?

Now you do the same

Where were you born ? .....Where were you born ?
Where do you come from ? .....Where do you come from ?
What's your name ? .....What's your name ?
What's your job ? .....What's your job ?
When were you born ? .....When were you born ?
What do you do ? .....What do you do ?
What's your address ? .....What's your address ?

Dialogue C

Listen

Mr Walters And what's your date of birth ?
Tom What ? I don't think it's any of your business.
Mr Walters I'm sorry. We ask everybody that.
Tom All right. It's 3.2.59...the third of February 1959.
Mr Walters And where did you go to school ?
Tom Pardon ?
Mr Walters Where were you educated ?
Tom It's none of your business !
Mr Walters Are you married ?
Tom No I'm single.
Mr Walters Ah, good. Now What's your home address and telephone number ?
Tom Eh ?

Vocabulary

-educate (v) /'edʒukeɪt/ =teach

Expressions

-It's none of your business =It's no business of yours =It's not the thing that you are rightly concerned with or interested in = không phải là việc của anh, chuyện đó không liên can gì đến anh.

Listen and repeat

C1 *Listen*

A: 3.2.59
B: The third of February 1959.
C: The third of February 1959.
A: 4.8.68
B: The fourth of February 1968.
C: The fourth of February 1968.

Now you do the same

3.2.59 .....The third of February 1959.
4.8.68 .....The fourth of August 1968.
1.12.70 .....The first of December 1970.
2.9.71 .....The second of September 1971.
11.11.11 .....The eleventh of November 1911.
12.5.74 .....The twelfth of May 1947.

C2 *Listen*

A: What's your date of birth ?
B: I don't think it's any of your business.
C: I don't think it's any of your business.
A: Oh, go on ! Tell me your date of birth !
B: It's none of your business !
C: It's none of your business !

Now you do the same

What's your date of birth ? .....I don't think it's any of your business.
Oh,go on ! Tell me your date of birth ! .....It's none of your business !
How much money do you earn ? .....I don't think it's any of your business.
Oh, come on ! Tell me how much you earn ! .....It's none of your business !

Dialogue D

Listen

Mr Walters Have you got a job ?
Tom Yes, thanks.

Mr Walters Well, What do you do ?
Tom Why are you asking me all these questions ?
Mr Walters Because I'm a teacher. Your English is quite good.
Tom What do you mean, 'quite good' ? It's as good as yours !
Mr Walters Hold on... Aren't you one of the new students ?
Tom Me ? No...I'm the window cleaner.I've just come to clean the windows, that's all !
Listen and repeat

---

01 *Listen*

A: Your English is quite good.
B: It's as good as yours !
C: It's as good as yours !

A: Your car's quite fast.
B: It's as fast as yours !
C: It's as fast as yours !

Now you do the same

Your English is quite good ..... It's as good as yours !
Your car's quite fast ..... It's as fast as yours !
Your writing's quite good ..... It's as good as yours !
Your flat's quite big ..... It's as big as yours !

LISTENING

Jo Sarah ! Hello...how lovely to see you ! Is this the new baby ?
Sarah Yes.
Jo Ooh...isn't he beautiful ? Coochie-coochie-coo... Ah, What a lovely strong boy you are...
Sarah It's a girl.
Jo Oh, Sorry. They all look the same at this age, don't they ? How old is she ?
Sarah Eleven weeks. She was born on the 6th of May.
Jo Where was she born ? Sandpool Hospital ?
Sarah No, she was born at home.
Jo Really ?
Sarah Yes. The other two were born in hospital. It was marvellous this time. Paul was with me all the time, and I listened to music !
Jo Mmm...how much did she weigh ?
Sarah Three and a half kilos.
Jo She is lovely. What do the other two think of her ?
Sarah Well, Kathy's a bit jealous...but they're both very interested.
Jo And how are you, Sarah ? I'm sorry, I didn't ask...
Sarah Exhausted ! I'm not getting much sleep.One or another of them always seems to be awake.
Jo You're looking well, though.
Sarah Oh, yes.I'm OK.Just tired, that's all.
Jo Anyway, I've got to go, or I'll be late. Wait a minute, I forgot ! What's her name ?
Sarah Claire,Claire Diana.
Jo Claire...mmm. That's a nice name. Well,goodbye,Sarah. See you soon. 'Bye' bye Claire.

Vocabulary
-marvellous (adj) /'ma:vələs/ =wonderful
-jealous (adj) /'dʒeləs/ =envious = ghen
-exhausted (adj) /ɪg'zɔ:stɪd/ =very tired.
-awake (adj) /ə'weɪk/ =not asleep
-Claire Diana /kleədaɪ'ænə/

Now listen again and answer the questions when you hear this sound [BELL]

1

Jo Sarah ! Hello... how lovely to see you ! Is this the new baby ?
Sarah Yes.
Jo Ooh...isn't he beautiful ? Coochie-coochie-coo...Ah, what a lovely strong boy you are...

Sarah It's a girl.
Jo Oh,sorry. They all look the same at this age, don't they ? How old is she ?
Sarah Eleven weeks. She was born on the 6th of May.

2
Jo Where was she born ? Sandpool Hospital?
Sarah No, She was born at home.
Jo Really ?
Sarah Yes.The other two were born in hospital. It was marvellous this time. Paul was with me all the time, and I listened to music !
Jo Mmm...How much did she weigh ?
Sarah Three and a half kilos

3
Jo She is lovely. What do the other two think of her ?
Sarah Well, Kathy's a bit jealous...but they're both very interested.
Jo And how are you, Sarah ? I'm sorry, I didn't ask...
Sarah Exhausted ! I'm not getting much sleep. One or another of them always seems to be awake.

4
Jo You're looking well, though.
Sarah Oh, yes. I'm OK. Just tired, that's all.
Jo Anyway, I've got to go, or I'll be late. Wait a minute, I forgot ! What's her name ?
Sarah Claire. Claire Diana.
Jo Claire...mmm. That's a nice name. Well, goodbye, Sarah. See you soon. 'Bye' bye Claire.

BELL
What sex is the baby ? .....It's a girl.
How old is she ? .....She's eleven weeks.
When was she born ? .....She was born on the 6th of May.

BELL
Where was she born ? .....She was born at home.
What did she weigh ? .....She weighed 3 1/2 kilos.

BELL
How many children has Sarah got ?
.....She's got three children.
Why is she tired ? Because she isn't getting much sleep.

BELL
What's the baby's first name ?
.....Claire.
What's the baby's middle name ?
.....Diana.

Responses

Listen and reply in the most natural way

1 How do you do.
2 Hi, there !
3 Oh, I'm terribly sorry. It was an accident.
4 Excuse me...
5 Here you are.
6 Thank you very much indeed.
7 How are you getting on ?
8 Hello...Aren't you the Princess of Wales ?

Open conversation

Listen and reply

A: Can you tell me your name, please ?
B: . . . . . .
A: Could you spell your surname ?
B: . . . . . .
A: Thank you. Where do you come from ?
B: . . . . . .
A: Were you born there ?
B: . . . . . .
A: Are you married ?
B: . . . . . .
A: Where were you educated?
B: . . . . . .
A: And what do you do ?
B: . . . . . .
A: Thank you. That's all. That's the end of section one.

Unit 5 Out Of Work

Thất nghiệp

VOCABULARY

- **applicant** *(n)* /'æplɪkənt/ (for st) person who applies for a job = người nộp đơn xin việc
  As the wages were low, there were few applicants for the job.
  apply *(v)* /ə'plaɪ/ (to sb for st) *You should apply immediately, in person or by letter.*
- **careers Advisory Service** *(n)* /kə'rɪəz əd'vaɪzərɪ 'sɜ:vɪs/ office where advice about occupations is given = văn phòng hướng nghiệp
- **column** *(n)* /'kɒləm/ part of a newspaper regularly dealing with a particular subject = mục, cột đăng trên báo
  the fashion ~ = mục thời trang
- **dental receptionist** *(n)* /'dentl rɪ'sepʃənɪst/ person who receives customers at the dentist office = tiếp viên ở phòng nha sĩ.
- **economic difficulty** *(n)* /ɪkə'nɒmɪk 'dɪfɪkʌltɪ/ trouble in economy = khó khăn về kinh tế
- **employment** *(n)* /ɪm'plɔɪmənt/ act of employing = sự thuê, mướn
  employ *(v)* /ɪm'plɔɪ/ (sb in / on st) give work to sb, usu for payment *They ~ed her to look after the baby.*
  employer *(n)* /ɪm'plɔɪə/ person or company that employs others
  employee *(n)* /em-, ɪm'plɔɪi:/ person who works for sb or for a company in return for wages.
  unemployment = state of joblessness
- **full-time** *(adj)* /ful taɪm/ ≠ part-time = trọn thời gian ≠ ngoài giờ, bán thời gian

EXPRESSIONS

now and then = sometimes	thỉnh thoảng
you see...	như anh thấy đó...
day after day	ngày này sang ngày khác
that's all	thế thôi
out of work	thất nghiệp
on my own	một mình

- **job satisfaction** *(n)* /dʒɒb sætɪs'fækʃn/ sự thỏa mãn về công ăn việc làm
- **point of view** *(n)* /pɔɪnt əv vju:/ viewpoint = quan điểm
- **production manager** *(n)* /prə'dʌkʃn 'mænɪdʒə/ giám đốc sản xuất
- **redundancy pay** *(n)* /rɪ'dʌndənsɪ peɪ/ trợ cấp thôi việc
- **redundant** *(adj)* /rɪ'dʌndənt/ no longer needed for any available job and therefore dismissed = trở nên dư, thừa và bị sa thải
  become / be made / find oneself ~
- **refusal** *(n)* /rɪ'fju:zl/ sự từ chối
  refuse *(v)* /rɪ'fju:z/ say that one is unwilling to give, accept or do st = từ chối *~ a gift / an offer / an invitation*
- **security** *(n)* /sɪ'kjuərətɪ/ freedom from danger = an ninh
  secure *(adj)* /sɪ'kjuə/ (about st) not feeling worry, doubt, etc. *feel ~ about one's future.*
- **seek** *(v)* /si:k/ look for = tìm kiếm
- **sit around** (v) /sɪt ə'raʊnd/ ngồi quanh quẩn
- **skill** *(n)* /skɪl/ (at st / doing st) ability to do st well = kỹ năng *listening / writing ~*
- **steel mill** *(n)* /sti:l mɪl/ nhà máy thép
- **textile industry** (n) /'tekstaɪl 'ɪndəstrɪ/ ngành kỹ nghệ dệt
- **tights** *(n)* /taɪts/ = pantihose = pantyhose = vớ da phụ nữ
- **unemployment benefit** *(n)* /ˌʌnɪm'plɔɪmənt 'benɪfɪt/ trợ cấp thất nghiệp
- **youth** *(n)* /ju:θ/ young people = thanh niên, tuổi trẻ

at my age	vào tuổi tôi
in order of importance	theo thứ tự quan trọng
can't stand	không chịu được
to be fed up with = to be bored with	chán ngấy
'Situations vacant'	cần người

PROPER NAMES

George Morley /dʒɔ:dʒ'mɔ:li/ Tracy Chapman /treisi 'tʃæpmən/

Lancastrian textiles /læŋ'kæstriən 'tekstaiłz/

USAGE (use a dictionary or ask your teacher for the meaning)

1. be out of work
   out of job
   (un)employed
   jobless
   dismissed
   sacked
   fired
   laid off
2. Spare time
   leisure time
   free time
3. Hold up = delay, postpone, put off
4. Impress (v)
   Impression (n)
   Impressive (adj)
   → Make a good impression on someone /bad
   (gây ấn tượng tốt/xấu cho ai)
   • Impress someone with something
   • be impressed by /with ...
5. Ask someone for something
   Ask someone for money
   help
   assistance
   his opinion / advice
6. be interested in something
   become doing something
   • have an interest in something
   take thích thú, quan tâm về cái gì đó
7. Be feared of
   afraid of
   frightened of
   fearful of
8. Live on one's own
   by oneself
   alone
9. Part-time employment
   full-time employee
   study
   student
   job
10. Hour after hour
    day - day
    week - week
    month - month
    year - year

GRAMMAR NOTES

I. Word formation N + V (-ER, -OR...)

To leave shool	→	school-leaver
make law	→	law-maker
do one's hair	→	hair-doer
dress one's hair	→	hair-dresser
open a can	→	can-opener
seek a job	→	job-seeker
tell fortune	→	fortune-teller

II. For - preposition of purpose : Study the following sentences. How can you rephrase them by using "for" ?

Ex. 1. They come to evening classes to learn English

2. John was advised to apply to that head office so that he could get a new job
3. I have travelled all the way from Ho Chi Minh City, two hundred kilometres away, to have a talk with you.
4. They were queueing in front of the cinema to buy tickets for the film in which Alain Delon played one of the main roles - "The red Sun"
5. "She comes here to meet you. Why don't you greet her decently" ? He said.

III. Verb pattern S + V + V-ing

Hereafter are some of the verbs followed by a V-ing form (or **gerund**). Some of these verbs can also be followed by a to-infinitive (ask your teacher to identify them & tell you the difference) : *love, like, hate, like, dislike, enjoy, start, begin, commence, stop, end, cease, continue, go on, keep on, give up, consider, mind, admit, advise, avoid, defend, excuse, fancy, fear, finish, forbid, forget, can't help, can't bear, can't endure, leave off (=stop), miss, practise, remember, risk, can't stand, suggest, try, understand.* An V-ing

form can also be found after **prepositions.**
Ex :- She is afraid *of staying* alone at home.
- He agreed *in selling* it to me

Similarly : die from / of, tired of, bored with, insist on, assist in...
(Ask your teacher to give you more examples)

In Britain a lot of people are out of work. Tracey Chapman is 18, and she left school a year ago. She lives in the North East, an area of high youth unemployment. She hasn't been able to find a job yet.

'My dad just doesn't understand. He started working in a steel mill when he was 15. Things are different now, but he thinks I should start bringing home some money. Oh, I get my unemployment benefit, but that isn't much and I'm fed up with queuing for it every Thursday. I hate having to ask my mum and dad for money. Oh, my mum gives me a couple of pounds for tights now and then, but she can't stand seeing me at home all day. I've almost given up looking for a job. I buy the local paper every day but I'm really tired of looking through the "Situations Vacant" column. There are 50 applicants for every job. I was interested in being a dentist's receptionist because I like meeting people, but now I'd take any job at all. People ask me why I don't move to London, but I don't want to leave my family and friends. Anyway, I'm scared of living on my own in a big city.'

Tracey Chapman went to the Careers Advisory Service. She had to complete this questionnaire.

Ở nước Anh có rất nhiều người đang bị thất nghiệp. Tracey Chapman năm nay 18 tuổi, và cô thôi học cách đây một năm. Cô ta sống ở vùng Đông Bắc, một vùng có tỷ lệ thất nghiệp cao trong giới trẻ. Cô ta vẫn chưa thể kiếm được việc làm.

"Chỉ đơn giản là cha tôi không hiểu. Ông ta bắt đầu làm việc trong một xưởng cán thép khi mới 15 tuổi. Bây giờ mọi thứ đều khác đi rồi, nhưng ông ta nghĩ là tôi phải bắt đầu kiếm tiền để phụ giúp gia đình. Ồ, tôi cũng nhận được trợ cấp thất nghiệp đấy, nhưng số tiền đó có nhiều nhặn gì lắm đâu, và tôi đã chán ngấy cảnh phải sắp hàng để nhận trợ cấp vào mỗi thứ năm. Tôi ghét phải xin tiền bố mẹ. Thỉnh thoảng mẹ cũng cho tôi vài pounds để mua áo quần lặt vặt(*), nhưng bà không chịu nổi khi thấy tôi ở nhà cả ngày. Tôi hầu như đã bỏ chuyện đi kiếm việc. Mỗi ngày tôi đều mua báo nhưng tôi đã thực sự chán đọc cột "Tìm người". Việc nào cũng có cả 50 người xin làm. Lúc trước tôi muốn được làm tiếp viên cho một phòng khám nha khoa vì tính tôi thích giao tiếp, nhưng bây giờ thì tôi sẵn lòng nhận bất cứ việc gì. Có người hỏi tôi là tại sao không lên London sống, nhưng tôi không muốn xa gia đình và bạn bè. Nói cho đúng thì tôi sợ phải sống một mình trong một thành phố lớn !"

QUESTIONNAIRE

1 Are you seeking
a full-time employment ? ☐
b part-time employment ? ☐

2 Which of these is most important for you? (Please number 1-5 in order of importance.) money ☐ people ☐ security ☐ job satisfaction ☐ an interesting job ☐

3 Do you like	Yes	No
a meeting people ?	☐	☐
b working alone ?	☐	☐
c working with other people ?	☐	☐
d working with your hands ?	☐	☐
e travelling ?	☐	☐

4 What do you like doing in your free time?

(*) tights (còn gọi là pantihose, pantyhose) loại vớ da của phụ nữ.

George Morley is 54. Until last year he was a production manager in the textile industry. He had worked for the same company since he left school. He had a good job, a fourbedroomed house and a company car. When his company had to close because of economic difficulties, he became redundant.

'It's funny really... I don't feel old, but it isn't easy to start looking for a job at my age. I've had so many refusals. Now I'm frightened of applying for a job. All the interviewers are twenty years younger than me. You see, I'm interested in learning a new skill, but nobody wants to train me. I can see their point of view. I'll have to retire in ten years. It's just... well, I'm tired of sitting around the house. I've worked hard for nearly forty years and now I'm terrified of having nothing to do. When I was still with Lancastrian Textiles I was bored with doing the same thing day after day, but now I'd really enjoy doing a job again... any job really. It's not the money... I got good redundancy pay, and the house is paid for... and I've given up smoking... no, it's not just money. I just need to feel... well, useful... that's all.'

Exercise 1

I like meeting people.

Make sentences about yourself with :

love/enjoy/ don't like/ dislike/ hate/ can't stand.

Exercise 2

I'm scared of living on my own.

Make sentences about yourself with :

afraid of/frightened of/terrified of.

George Morly năm nay 54 tuổi. Cho tới năm ngoái ông ta còn là trưởng phòng sản xuất trong ngành dệt. Ông ta đã liên tục làm việc cho một công ty duy nhất từ khi rời ghế nhà trường. Ông ta đã có một việc làm tốt, một căn nhà bốn phòng ngủ và xe hơi do công ty cấp. Khi công ty của ông ta phải đóng cửa vì khó khăn kinh tế thì ông ta đã trở nên dư thừa trong biên chế.

"Thật là buồn cười... Tôi chưa cảm thấy già cỗi gì, nhưng ở tuổi tôi mà phải bắt đầu đi tìm việc thì chẳng dễ dàng gì. Tôi đã nhận được quá nhiều lời từ chối rồi. Bây giờ tôi đâm ra ngại đi xin việc. Tất cả những người phỏng vấn tôi đều trẻ hơn tôi hàng 20 tuổi. Bạn biết đó, tôi muốn học kỹ năng mới nhưng chẳng ai muốn huấn luyện tôi cả. Tôi có thể thấy được quan điểm của họ. Tôi sẽ phải về hưu trong 10 năm nữa mà. Chẳng qua... là tôi chán phải ngồi lì ở trong nhà. Suốt gần 40 năm nay tôi đã làm việc cật lực và bây giờ tôi sợ phải ngồi không chẳng có việc gì để làm. Khi tôi còn làm cho Liên hiệp dệt Lancastrian tôi chán ngấy chuyện phải làm mỗi một việc giống nhau ngày này sang ngày khác, nhưng bây giờ thì tôi thật sự muốn làm một việc gì đó... việc gì cũng được. Vấn đề không phải là để kiếm tiền... Tôi được trả trợ cấp thôi việc khá hậu, tiền mua nhà thì đã trả hết rồi, và tôi đã bỏ hút thuốc... Không, chẳng phải chỉ là tiền bạc thôi đâu. Tôi chỉ cần được cảm thấy là mình... mình còn có ích,... vậy thôi.

Exercise 3

I'm bored with doing the same thing.

Make sentences about yourself with :

fed up with/tired of/interested in.

Exercise 4

I gave up smoking.

Make sentences about yourself with :

start/begin/stop/give up.

PRACTICE

Language summary

I	*enjoy* *love* *like* *don't like* *dislike* *can't stand* *hate*	*doing it.*	*I'm*	*afraid of* *terrified of* *frightened of* *scared of* *tired of* *bored with* *fed up with* *interested in*	*doing it.*	*I*	*began* *started* *stopped* *gave up*	*doing it.*

Exercise

Look at this.

football
- I like playing football.
- My brother began playing football at school.
- I enjoy reading about football.
- She's fed up with watching football on T.V.
- I'm always interested in hearing the football results.

or something else...

Now select one of the verbs from the language summary, and make a sentence using an '...ing' form with each of these words.

1 house . . . . . .

2 bed . . . . . .

3 job . . . . . .

4 friends . . . . . .

5 crowded airports . . . . . .

6 adventure stories . . . . . .

7 self-service restaurants . . . . . .

8 beach . . . . . .

9 classical music . . . . . .

10 money . . . . . .

11 spare time . . . . . .

12 on holiday . . . . . .

Bài tập

Xem mẫu này :

bóng đá
- Tôi thích chơi bóng đá
- Anh tôi bắt đầu chơi bóng đá ở trường.
- Tôi thích đọc sách báo về bóng đá.
- Chị ấy chán xem bóng đá trên T.V.
- Tôi luôn luôn thích nghe kết quả các trận bóng đá.

hoặc một điều gì khác...

Bây giờ hãy chọn một trong những động từ trong phần tóm tắt ngôn ngữ và đặt một câu dùng dạng "-ing" với từng chữ này.

13 supermarket . . . . . .

14 cars . . . . . .

15 children . . . . . .

16 homework . . . . . .

17 English . . . . . .

18 advertisements on television . . . . . .

19 horror films . . . . . .

20 arguments . . . . . .

21 important people . . . . . .

22 quiz games . . . . . .

23 presents . . . . . .

24 alarm-clock . . . . . .

Unit 6 Getting A Job

Tìm việc làm

VOCABULARY

- **ability** *(n)* /ə'bɪlətɪ/ power to do st physical or mental = khả năng
  able *(adj)* /'eɪbl/
- **advantage** *(n)* /əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ/ (over sb) condition that gives one superiority or success = lợi thế, sự thuận lợi
  advantageous *(adj)* /,ædvən'teɪdʒəs/
  disadvantage *(n)* /dɪsəd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ/ sự bất lợi
- **chew** *(v)* /tʃu:/ grind food between the teeth = nhai
- **clerk** *(n)* /klɑ:k/ secretary = thư ký
- **curriculum vitae** *(n)* /kə'rɪkjuləm 'vi:taɪ/ brief accounts of sb's previous career, usu submitted with an application for a job = bản lý lịch
- **detail** *(n)* /'di:teɪl/ chi tiết
- **enclose** *(v)* /ɪn'kləʊz/ put st in an envelope letter, parcel; etc *A cheque for ten pounds is ~ d.*
  enclosure *(n)* /ɪn'kləʊʒə/ thing that is enclosed *several ~ s in the envelope*
- **essential** *(adj)* /ɪ'senʃl/ necessary, most important = thiết yếu
- **firm** *(n)* /fɜ:m/ (infml) business company = công ty kinh doanh
- **impression** *(n)* /ɪm'preʃn/ ấn tượng
  impress *(v)* /ɪm'pres/ (sb with st) gây ấn tượng
- **involve** *(v)* /ɪn'vɒlv/ entail = liên quan tới
  involvement *(n)* /ɪn'vɒlvmənt/
- **junior** *(adj)* /'dʒu:nɪə/ (to sb) lower in rank or standing than sb = cấp dưới, ít thâm niên
- **layout** *(n)* /'leɪaʊt/ way in which the parts of st are arranged according to a plan = cách bố trí, cách trình bày
- **leaflet** *(n)* /'li:flɪt/ printed sheet of paper, usu folded and free of charge, containing information = tờ truyền đơn, tập sách mỏng phát không

EXPRESSIONS

be bothered *(v)* /bi: 'bɒðəd/ bận lòng
be faced by /bi: feɪst baɪ/ đương đầu
be held up /bi: held ʌp/ bị giữ lại, bị kẹt

- **nanny** *(n)* /'nænɪ/ child's nurse cô bảo mẫu
- **National insurance** *(n)* /'næʃənəl ɪn'ʃɔ:rəns/ Bảo hiểm quốc gia
- **neatly** *(adv)* /'ni:tlɪ/ tidily = tươm tất, dàng hoàng
- **personnel department** *(n)* /,pɜ:sə'nel dɪ'pɑ:tmənt/ department in a firm deals with employees, esp with their appointment and welfare = Phòng nhân sự trong công ty
  personnel officer *(n)* /,pɜ:sə'nel 'ɒfɪsə/ person who works at the personnel department
- **prospect** *(n)* /'prɒspekt/ expectation = triển vọng *I see little ~ of an improvement in his condition*
- **shorthand typist** *(n)* /'ʃɔ:hænd,taɪpɪst/ person who can type special quickly – written symbols = thư ký đánh máy tốc ký
- **slouch** *(v)* /slaʊtʃ/ stand, sit or move in a lazy way = tỏ vẻ uể oải *Don't ~ ! Stand up straight !*
- **spelling mistake** *(n)* /'spelɪŋ mɪs,teɪk/ mistake about spelling = lỗi chính tả
- **technique** *(n)* /tek'ni:k/ method of doing st, esp in the arts or sciences = kỹ thuật *applying modern ~ s to a traditional craft*
- **testimonial** *(n)* /,testɪ'məʊnɪəl/ written statement testifying to a person's character, abilities or qualifications : giấy chứng nhận *She sent a ~ from her former employer when applying for the post.*
- **tidy** *(adj)* /'taɪdɪ/ neat, in an orderly way = gọn gàng
- **trainee** *(n)* /treɪ'ni:/ person being trained for a job, etc = nhân viên tập sự *a ~ salesman.*
- **unlined** *(adj)* /ʌn'laɪnd/ without lines = không có đường kẻ
- **vacancy** *(n)* /'veɪkənsɪ/ unfilled position or post = chỗ trống, chưa có người làm. *We have vacancies for typists.*

GRAMMAR NOTES

(for unit 6 & 7) (use a dictionary to look up for the meaning of the verbs)

Verb pattern : S + V + to-infinitive

The following verbs are followed by a to-infinitive which expresses :

1. Purpose :

Ex : Stop to smoke
Come to see you
Dress to look tidy
Eat and drink to survive
Write to tell you about...
Work to earn one's living
Drink and smoke to chase away my sorrow

2. Non-purpose : (No shade of purpose)

Ex : Try to do better
Want to go
Refuse to help
Begin to rain
Intend not to see
Learn to swim
Like to come

Forgot to post ... (Where "forget" has the meaning of no longer having a memory of or not being able to call to mind, it is followed by the gerund)

Prefer to start
Decide not to go
Have to go
Need to stay
Hope to have a better life
Never thought (expected) to see you here
Thinks to ... (has the idea that he can or will) deceive us.
Ask your teacher to clarify this difference

V + to-infinitive

A statement about a particular occasion (especially with would like & should like)

Verb + V-ing

A general statement

Ex : 1. He likes *swimming* very much. So he thinks he likes *to swim* there but not to sit still on the beach all morning, *watching* how the others do it.

2. He loved *dancing* very much. But he loved *to dance* with Mary but not with anybody else however beautiful "she" might be.

In Britain there is a special service for school leavers, The Careers Advisory Service, which helps young people who are looking for their first jobs. Careers Officers give practical advice on interview techniques, application forms, letters, pay, National Insurance and Trade Unions. This is an extract from a leaflet which is given to young people by Dorset Careers Service.

Ở nước Anh có một cơ quan đặc biệt dành cho những người mới rời ghế nhà trường, đó là phòng Tư vấn hướng nghiệp, nơi giúp các thanh niên đang muốn tìm việc làm đầu đời của mình. Các nhân viên làm việc ở đây cung cấp các lời khuyên thực tiễn về kỹ thuật trả lời phỏng vấn, đơn xin việc, thư tín giao dịch, lương bổng, bảo hiểm quốc gia và nghiệp đoàn. Dưới đây là đoạn trích từ một tập hướng dẫn được phát cho thanh niên tại Phòng tư vấn hướng nghiệp Dorset.

THE INTERVIEW

You've got an interview for a job – good ! So now for the hard work. To do well at an interview you need to put in some thought first. The employer wants to know if you are the person he wants, so you'll be asked about yourself. Think about it now.

What do I do well ? School activities ?
What are my good points ?
School subjects ?
Why would I like this job ?
Previous work ?
Spare-time interests ? Saturday job ?
What is my family like ?
What do I like doing and why ?
What do I not like doing and why ?
You will want to ask questions too.
The job itself ? Can I see where I
Training ? would be working ?
Prospects ? Hours ?
Further Education ? £ £ £ £ ?
Conditions ?
Write your questions down and take them with you.

BEFORE THE INTERVIEW

1 Find out what you can about the firm.
2 Find out the interviewer's name and telephone number.
3 Find out where the interview is.
4 Find out how long it will take to get there.
5 Make sure you know what the job involves.
6 Dress to look clean and tidy.

AT THE INTERVIEW

1 Do arrive early. Phone if you're held up.
2 Do try to smile.
3 Do show interest in the job and ask questions.
4 Do be polite.
5 Don't panic, even if faced by more than one person.
6 Don't slouch around and look bored.
7 Don't smoke or chew.
8 Don't give one word answers or say you don't care what you do.

PHỎNG VẤN

Bạn được hẹn phỏng vấn để đi làm – tốt lắm ! Bây giờ hãy chuẩn bị cho công việc gay go này. Để gặt hái thành công đầu tiên bạn cần phải suy nghĩ một chút.

Phía tìm người muốn xác định xem bạn có phải là người mà họ cần hay không, vì vậy họ sẽ hỏi bạn về bản thân bạn. Bây giờ hãy suy nghĩ xem :

Ta làm giỏi việc gì ? Các hoạt động lúc còn đi học ?
Ưu điểm của ta là gì ?
Các môn đã học ?
Tại sao ta thích công việc này ?
Việc làm trước đây ?
Sở thích lúc rỗi rảnh ? Việc làm ngày thứ bảy ?
Gia đình của ta như thế nào ?
Ta thích làm việc gì và tại sao ?
Ta không thích làm việc gì và tại sao ?
Bạn cũng có thể muốn hỏi người ta nữa chứ
Công việc ra sao ? Có thể đi xem nơi sẽ làm việc
Huấn luyện ? được không ?
Triển vọng ? Giờ giấc ?
Cơ hội để học tập cao hơn ? Tiền bạc ?
Điều kiện ?
Hãy viết ra các câu hỏi của bạn và đem theo.

TRƯỚC KHI ĐƯỢC PHỎNG VẤN

1. Cố tìm hiểu càng nhiều càng tốt về công ty.
2. Tìm biết tên người phỏng vấn và số điện thoại của người đó.
3. Tìm biết cuộc phỏng vấn sẽ diễn ra ở đâu.
4. Tìm biết xem phải mất bao lâu để đến đó.
5. Phải biết chắc chắn những điều liên quan tới công việc bạn sắp làm.
6. Ăn mặc gọn gàng và sạch sẽ.

TRONG LÚC PHỎNG VẤN

1. Nhớ đến sớm. Gọi điện thoại cho họ nếu bạn bị kẹt.
2. Cố cười tươi.
3. Tỏ ra quan tâm đến công việc và đặt câu hỏi về công việc đó.
4. Phải tỏ ra lịch sự.
5. Đừng mất bình tĩnh, cho dù được phỏng vấn bởi nhiều người.
6. Đừng uể oải lừ đừ và trông chán chường.
7. Đừng hút thuốc hoặc nhai kẹo.
8. Đừng trả lời cộc lốc hoặc nói rằng bạn bất cần biết

Look at these job advertisements.

Trainee computer programmer
Good opportunity for a start in computers. Ability at maths is essential. Application forms from : Personnel Department, Continental Computers, Honeywell Rd., Bournemouth.

Fernside Engineering
Require a junior clerk for the accounts department. Apply in writing to : The Personnel Officer, Fernside Engineering, Western Rd., Poole.

Shop assistant
A vacancy for a smart, lively young person. Good prospects. Please write to :
Mrs J. Frost, 'Cool Boutique', 39 High St., Dorchester.

Applying by letter

1 Remember that first impressions are important.
2 Write clearly and neatly on good notepaper, unlined if possible.
3 Check for spelling mistakes. Use a dictionary if you are not sure of a word.
4 Describe yourself, your qualifications and your experience clearly.
5 If the advertisement asks you to write for an application form you will not need to give detailed information in your letter.
6 Address the letter and the envelope clearly.

44 Deepdale Road.
Boscombe,
Bournemouth,
BH92 7JX
4th April, 1982

The Personnel Department,
Continental Computers,
Honeywell Road,
Bournemouth

Dear Sir or Madam,

I read your advertisement in yesterday's 'Evening Echo'. I am interested in training as a computer programmer. Could you please send me an application form, and any further details.

Yours faithfully,
Joanne Evans

Hãy đọc các quảng cáo việc làm sau đây.

Lập trình viên máy tính tập sự
Một cơ hội tốt để bắt đầu làm việc trong ngành máy tính. Thiết yếu phải có khả năng về toán học. Nhận đơn xin việc tại: Phòng tổ chức, Công ty máy tính Continental, Đường Honeywell, Bournemouth.

Công ty xây dựng Fernside
Cần một thư ký cho phòng Kế toán.
Đơn xin việc gửi về : Trưởng phòng Tổ chức, Công ty Xây dựng Fernside, Đường Western, Poole.

Nhân viên bán hàng
Cần tuyển một người trẻ tuổi, lanh lợi, có ngoại hình khá. Triển vọng tốt. Viết thư về:
Bà J. Frost, "Cool Boutique", số 39 đường High, Dorchester.

Viết đơn xin việc

1. Hãy nhớ rằng ấn tượng đầu tiên rất quan trọng.
2. Viết thư trên giấy tốt, không kẻ hàng nếu được, trình bày gọn gàng và sạch sẽ.
3. Nhớ kiểm tra lỗi chính tả. Hãy tra tự điển nếu có từ nào bạn không chắc đúng.
4. Tự giới thiệu về mình, trình bày các văn bằng và kinh nghiệm một cách rõ ràng.
5. Nếu quảng cáo chỉ yêu cầu viết đơn xin việc thì bạn không cần phải nêu chi tiết trong thư.
6. Viết địa chỉ trong thư và trên bì thư một cách rõ ràng.

44 Đường Deepdale,
Boscombe,
Bournemouth,
BH 92 7JX
Ngày 4 tháng 4 năm 1982

Kính gửi : Phòng Tổ chức,
Công ty máy tính Continental,
Đường Honeywell,
Bournemouth.

Thưa Ông/Bà,

Tôi đọc thấy quảng cáo cần người của quý ông/bà trên báo "Evening Echo" số hôm qua. Tôi rất muốn được đào tạo thành lập trình viên máy tính. Xin ông/bà vui lòng gửi cho tôi một đơn xin việc, và các chi tiết có liên quan.

Trân trọng
Joanne Evans.

PRACTICE

Look at this

Business Letters

Hãy xem

Thư thương mại

Addressed to	Beginning	Ending
The Personnel Manager *National Video Ltd.*	*Dear Sir,* *Dear Madam,*	*Yours,* *Yours faithfully, (GB)*
The Manager *Western Insurance Co.*	*Dear Sir or Madam,*	*Yours truly, (GB or US)*
J. Sainsbury plc	*Dear Sirs, (GB)*	
The Midland Bus Company	*Gentlemen. (US)*	
Messrs Welch and Cheater	*Dear Sir or Madam,*	
Mr M. Smith/Michael Smith	*Dear Mr Smith,*	*Yours sincerely,*
M. Smith, Esq., (GB formal)		*Yours,*
Mrs Smith	*Dear Mrs Smith,*	
Miss Smith	*Dear Miss Smith,*	
Ms Smith	*Dear Ms Smith,*	

Notes

* 'Messrs' is used for two or more persons, e.g. Messrs Brown and Green/Messrs Williams and Son/Messrs Arkwright Bros. (brothers). But is not used for limited companies, e.g. Alan and White Ltd/Macdonald and Sons plc (public limited company).

* When signing a letter, women often put 'Mrs' or 'Miss' in brackets after the name, e.g. Mary Green (Miss). If you are replying to a letter and you do not know if it is 'Mrs' or 'Miss', then you can write 'Mary Green' or 'Ms M. Green'.

Ghi chú :

'Messrs' được dùng cho hai người hay hơn, ví dụ Messrs Brown and Green/ Messrs Williams and Son/ Messrs Arkwright Bros. (brothers). Nhưng từ này không được dùng cho các công ty trách nhiệm hữu hạn, ví dụ Alan and White Ltd/ Macdonald and Sons plc (public limited company).

* Khi ký tên cuối thư, phụ nữ thường đặt 'Mrs' hay 'Miss' trong dấu ngoặc sau tên mình, ví dụ Mary Green (Miss). Nếu bạn hồi âm cho một lá thư và bạn không biết là 'Mrs' hay 'Miss' thì bạn ghi 'Mary Green' hay 'Ms M. Green'.

Exercise 1

Imagine you are being interviewed by a careers officer. Complete the conversation.

Careers Officer Please take a seat.
You .....
Careers Officer Now, What's your name ?
You .....

Bài tập 1

Hãy tưởng tượng bạn đang được một người phụ trách tuyển người làm việc phỏng vấn. Hoàn thành bài đàm thoại sau đây.

Careers Officer Ah, yes. Now, where did you go to school ?
You .....

Careers Officer Fine. What about qualifications... er... exam passes ?
You .....
Careers Officer What about school subjects... which were your favourite ones ?
You .....
Careers Officer And your best ones ?
You .....
Careers Officer What subjects didn't you like studying ?
You .....
Careers Officer Why ?
You .....
Careers Officer And hobbies... what do you like doing in your spare time ?
You .....
Careers Officer What sort of job do you want to do ?
You .....
Careers Officer Why do you think you'd like doing that ?
You .....
Careers Officer Well, thank you very much.

Exercise 2
Look at this.

Bài tập 2
Hãy xem

CHILDREN'S NURSE required for British Family with two children (ages 2 and 5) living in Brussels. Driving licence essential. French an advantage. Please write giving brief details of qualifications and experience to : Mrs Arnold, International Employment Agency, 12, Knight Street, London W4A 2BZ

Here is a reply to the advertisement. Write it out with the correct layout and punctuation.

Đây là thư hồi âm cho mẩu quảng cáo trên. Viết lại thư này theo đúng kiểu trình bày một lá thư và chấm ngắt câu đúng.

4 king henry avenue stratford england 30th july 1982 mrs arnold international employment agency 12 knight street london W4A 2BZ dear mrs arnold I saw the advertisement for a children's nurse in todays daily mail I am a qualified nanny with a national diploma in childrens nursing from the stratford institute for further education I have been working as a nanny in paris for the last year and I am very interested in this position I speak good french and hold a current driving licence I enclose a testimonial from my previous employer I look forward to hearing from you yours sincerely tricia potter miss.

Exercise 3

Job advertisements may ask you for a 'c.v.' or 'curriculum vitae'. Look at the advertisement, the curriculum vitae and the letter of application.

Curriculum vitae

Name Viola Hathaway

Address Flat 2, Midsummer Court, Primrose Gardens, Charchester, CH8 3UB

Date of Birth 13/12/65

Education Northam Comprehensive
Appleby School of Commerce

Qualifications CSE in English, Maths, Biology, French, Appleby School of Commerce.
Diploma in shorthand and typing

Experience None

Interests travel, dancing, music

Reference Mrs Angela Appleby, B.A. Appleby School of Commerce, High Street, Charchester, CH2 4AY.

Look at these two advertisements. Reply to one of them. Write out your own curriculum vitae, a letter of application, and the envelope.

SALES PERSONS wanted for expand partment store. In record department, ladies fashions, electrical goods and bookshop. Please write with c.v. to Sparks and Fraser plc, Oxford St, London, WA736Y.

Bài tập 3

Các mẫu quảng cáo cần việc có thể yêu cầu bạn về lý lịch. Hãy xem mẫu quảng cáo trên, lý lịch và đơn xin việc làm.

SHORTHAND-TYPIST Opportunity for junior shorthand-typist with travel agency. Please send c.v. with application–Box No. 342, Charchester Evening Post, Hornby St, Charchester CH1 1WX.

Flat 2, Midsummer Court,
Primrose Gardens,
Charchester CH8 3UB
4th September 19

Box No. 342
Charchester Evening Post

Dear Sirs,

I would like to apply for the position of shorthand-typist. I have just completed a one-year course in commercial studies at the Appleby School of Commerce. I enclose my curriculum vitae.

Yours faithfully,
Viola Hathaway
Viola Hathaway (Miss)

Xem hai mẫu quảng cáo này. Hồi âm cho một trong hai. Viết lý lịch của bạn, đơn xin việc và phong bì.

CLERK required for general office duties. Good opportunity for school leaver. Excellent prospects for promotion. Apply enclosing c.v., to Cox and Rogers, Bourne Avenue, Tadworth, TTH2 8PV.

Unit 7 Battle of Trafalgar Street

Trận chiến ở phố Trafalgar

VOCABULARY

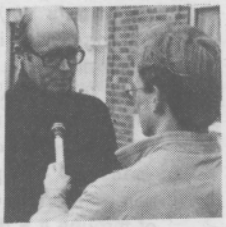
- **battle** *(n)* /'bætl/ any contest or struggle = trận chiến *Their whole life was a constant ~ against poverty.*
- **block of flats** *(n)* /blɒk əv flæts/ large building divided into separate flats or offices = dãy nhà
- **bloody** *(adj)* /'blʌdɪ/ (Brit infml) (used to stress anger or annoyance) = khốn kiếp *What the ~ hell are you doing ?*
- **by-pass** *(n)* /'baɪpɑːs/ road by which traffic can go round a city, busy area, etc instead of through it = đường vòng (để tránh vị trí nào trên đường chính) *If we take the ~ we'll avoid the town centre.*
- **county council** *(n)* /'kaʊntɪ 'kaʊnsl/ hội đồng quận
- **crisis** *(n)* /'kraɪsɪs/ time of great difficulty or danger = thời kỳ khủng hoảng *a financial, political ~*
- **delay** *(v)* /dɪ'leɪ/ put off, postpone hoãn lại *I was ~ ed by the traffic.*
- **demolish** *(v)* /dɪ'mɒlɪʃ/ pull or knock down phá bỏ *They've ~ ed the slum district* (khu nhà ổ chuột)
  demolition *(n)* /ˌdemə'lɪʃn/ *the ~ of the houses.*
- **eject** *(v)* /ɪ'dʒekt/ (from st) be thrown quickly from an aircraft in an emergency, so that one can descend by parachute *As the plane fell rapidly towards the ground, the pilot had to ~*
  ejection *(n)* /ɪ'dʒekʃn/
  ejector seat *(n)* seat in an aircraft that allows the pilot to eject
- **housing officer** *(n)* /'haʊzɪŋˌɒfɪsə/ person who is in charge of houses = nhân viên nhà đất
- **ideal** *(adj)* /aɪ'dɪəl/ most suitable = lý tưởng *~ weather for a holiday*
- **nearby** *(adj)* /'nɪəbaɪ/ not far away = gần đó *a ~ town*
  nearby *(adv)* /nɪə 'baɪ/ at a short distance from = gần đó *They live ~*
- **negotiation** *(n)* /nɪgəʊʃɪ'eɪʃn/ discussion aimed at reaching an agreement = sự điều đình, thương lượng *The price is a matter of / for ~*
  negotiate *(v)* /nɪ'gəʊʃɪeɪt/
  negotiable *(adj)* /nɪ'gəʊʃɪəbl/
- **official** *(n)* /ə'fɪʃl/ officer = cán bộ, viên chức
- **press** *(v)* /pres/ try repeatedly to persuade sb = giục giã, khẩn khoản *They are ~ ing us to make a quick decision.*
- **proposal** *(n)* /prə'pəʊzl/ action of suggesting = sự đề nghị
  propose (v) /prə'pəʊz/ suggest
- **prosecute** (v) /'prɒsɪkjuːt/ (sb for st / doing st) bring a criminal charge against sb in a court of law = truy tố *He was ~ d for exceeding the speed limit.*
  prosecution *(n)* /ˌprɒsɪ'kjuːʃn/
  prosecutor *(n)* /'prɒsɪkjuːtə/
- **protest** *(n)* /prəʊtest/ action that shows one's strong disapproval = sự phản đối
  protest (v) /prə'test/ (about / against / at st) = phản đối *She ~ ed strongly at being called a snob.*
- **resident** *(n)* /'rezɪdənt/ person who lives in a place = người cư trú
  resident *(adj)* *the town's ~ population* = not tourists or visitors
  residential *(adj)* *a ~ area / district* = one having no offices, factories
  residence *(n)* /'rezɪdəns/ (fml) house, esp a large or impressive one
- **shower** *(v)* /'ʃaʊə/ (sb with st) cause (a great number of things) to fall on sb = tưới *The falling wall ~ ed dust on us.*
- **sit-in** *(n)* /sɪt ɪn/ protest made by sitting in = cuộc biểu tình ngồi. *a ~ at the city council offices.*
- **site** *(n)* /saɪt/ place where st has happened for a particular activity = nơi, chỗ *the ~ of the battle.*
- **social work** *(n)* /'səʊʃl wɜːk/ profession of people who work in the social services = công tác xã hội. *She wants to do ~ when she finishes college.*

social worker *(n)* ~ *s visiting people just out of hospital.*

- **story** *(n)* /'stɔ:rɪ/ (US) (Bri) storey) = floor = tầng *a house of two storeys.*
- **stubborn** *(adj)* /'stʌbən/ obstinate = cứng đầu, bướng *be too ~ to apologize.*
  stubbornness *(n)*
- **sub-standard** *(adj)* /sʌb 'stændəd/ below the usual standard = dưới tiêu chuẩn ~ *goods.*
- **summit** *(n)* /'sʌmɪt/ meeting between the heads of two or more governments, esp of the world's most powerful countries = Hội nghị cấp cao *a ~ talk / meeting / conference.*

PROPER NAMES

Alan Nelson	/'ælən 'nelsn/
Florence Hamilton	/'flɒrəns 'hæmɪltən/
Hardy	/'ha:dɪ/
Pennine	/'penaɪn/
Tadworth	/'tædwə:θ/
Trafalgar	/trə'fælgə(r)/



USAGE (for units 6 & 7) (use a dictionary to look up for the meaning of the new words)

1. Because of + Noun or noun equivalent
Because + clause

Ex : *Because of bad weather conditions* we had to postpone the climb until the following
noun
day which was expected to be a little better

⟶ *Because the weather conditions were (very) bad,* we had to postpone the climb
Clause
until the following day ...

2. Any (used for emphasis)

Ex : Don't move *any* closer
(I want you not to move further, or else...)

We also have : any better
nearer
farther
longer

3. I am not moving
going (pre.continuous) ⟶ strong refusal (= will/would not...)
telling

GRAMMAR VERB + to - infinitive

These verbs can be followed directly by a to - infinitive or a that - clause : *agree, aim, arrange, beg, can't afford, choose, claim, contrive, decide, demand, determine, expect, fail, hope, hurry, intend, learn, manage, offer, plan, prefer, prepare, pretend, promise, refuse, resolve, swear, threaten, want, wish.*

EX : - I *decided to ask* for my money back - I *can't afford to buy* a car.
- Can you *manage to move* the desk on your own ?

Phần lớn các động từ trên chỉ về tương lai nên thường ít khi có Perfect infinitive đi sau. Tuy nhiên trừ các động từ chỉ sự dự định, hy vọng... và Perfect Infinitive tương đương với cách dùng của thì Future Perfect.

EX : I *hope* (d) *to have finished* by 12.

Thursday, 21st October

Last night, for the third time this week, police and County Council officials had to turn and run when they were showered with boiling water from the upstairs window of No 10 Trafalgar Street. They were hoping to speak to Mrs Florence Hamilton, an 83-year-old widow, who is still refusing to leave her home. Every other house in the street has been demolished. The Council are planning to build four 20-storey blocks of flats in the area. All the other residents agreed to move when the Council offered to provide them with new flats nearby. On Tuesday evening a social worker who wanted to speak to Mrs Hamilton was attacked and badly bitten by one of her dogs.

Radio report 1

This is Pennine Radio News, Alan Nelson reporting from Trafalgar Street. Mr Hardy, the Tadworth Housing Officer, has agreed to speak to us.

Alan Now, Mr Hardy, has the situation changed since last night ?

Hardy No, it hasn't. Mrs Hamilton is still there, and she's still refusing to talk to us.

Alan Well, what are you going to do ?

Hardy It's a very difficult situation. We'd like her to come out peacefully. The police don't intend to prosecute her... but she's a very stubborn lady !

Alan Stubborn ? Yes, well, it is her home.

Hardy I agree, and it's been her home for a long time, I know. But nobody else refused to move. You see, a lot of people in this area are living in sub-standard accommodation and we are going to build over 300 flats on this site. Families are expecting to move into them next year ! It's all being delayed because of one person !

Alan But Mrs Hamilton was born in that house.

Hardy Of course, of course. But we have promised to give her a modern flat immediately, a very nice flat which is ideal for an elderly person living alone.

Alan So, what happens next ?

Tối hôm qua, lần thứ ba trong tuần này, cảnh sát và các viên chức Hội đồng Hạt đã phải quay đầu tháo chạy khi họ bị đội nước sôi từ cửa sổ tầng trên của căn nhà số 10 phố Trafalgar. Họ đã hy vọng được nói chuyện với bà Florence Hamilton, một góa phụ 83 tuổi, người vẫn đang khước từ việc rời khỏi căn nhà của bà ta. Tất cả các căn nhà khác trên phố này đều đã bị phá đổ. Hội đồng hạt đang lên kế hoạch xây dựng 4 lô chung cư 20 tầng trong khu vực này. Tất cả cư dân có liên quan, trừ bà Hamilton, đều đã đồng ý dọn đi khi hội đồng đề nghị cấp cho họ những căn hộ mới ở gần đó. Vào tối thứ ba, một nhân viên công tác xã hội tìm cách nói chuyện với bà Hamilton đã bị một trong những con chó của bà ta tấn công và bị cắn gây thương tích trầm trọng.

Bản tin số 1 của Đài phát thanh

Đây là chương trình tin tức của Đài Pennine, Alan Nelson đang tường thuật cho các bạn từ phố Trafalgar. Ông Hardy, nhân viên nhà đất Tadworth, đã đồng ý tiếp chuyện với chúng tôi.

Alan : Thưa ông Hardy, từ tối qua đến giờ tình hình đã có gì thay đổi chưa ?

Hardy : Chưa có gì cả. Bà Hamilton vẫn ở đó, và bà ta vẫn từ chối nói chuyện với chúng tôi.

Alan : Vậy các ông định làm gì ?

Hardy : Đây là một tình huống rất khó khăn. Chúng tôi muốn bà ta ra đi một cách êm thấm. Cảnh sát không có ý định truy tố bà ta... nhưng bà ta bướng bỉnh ghê quá.

Alan : Bướng bỉnh à ? Nhưng đó là nhà của bà ta kia mà.

Hardy : Tôi đồng ý, và tôi biết căn nhà đó đã bao lâu nay là nhà của bà ta. Nhưng chẳng có ai khác từ chối dọn đi cả. Ông thấy đó, rất nhiều người trong vùng này đang sống trong điều kiện nhà ở dưới mức cho phép và chúng tôi sẽ xây dựng hơn 300 căn hộ lên đây. Nhiều hộ gia đình đang mong mỏi được dọn vào ở trong năm tới. Tất cả đều bị đình hoãn chỉ vì một cá nhân thôi.

Alan : Nhưng bà Hamilton đã chào đời trong căn nhà đó mà.

Hardy : Dĩ nhiên, dĩ nhiên, nhưng chúng tôi đã hứa cấp cho bà ta một căn hộ hiện đại ngay lập tức, một căn hộ rất đẹp, lý tưởng cho một người có tuổi sống một mình.

Alan : Vậy thì sắp tới chuyện gì sẽ xảy ra nữa?

Hardy I don't know. I really don't... but we can't wait forever. The police will have to do something soon. It won't be easy. She's got two very big dogs, and they don't like strangers !

Radio report 2

We have also managed to arrange an interview with Mrs Hamilton. She has decided to speak to us but she has demanded to see me alone.

Mrs Hamilton !

Mrs H. Who are you ?

Alan I'm Alan Nelson... Pennine Radio News.

Mrs H. Well... don't come any closer, or I'll let the dogs out. Down Caesar ! Sit, boy !

Alan I'm sure our listeners would like to hear your side of the story.

Mrs H. There's not much to say. I'm not moving ! I was born here, I had my children here, and I intend to die here.

Alan But the Council really need to have this land, and they have arranged to provide a new flat for you...

Mrs H. Oh, yes. I know, but I can't take my dogs with me... and I need to have company. My dogs are all I've got. Down boy !

Alan How long can you stay here ?

Mrs H. Oh, I've got plenty of food. The Council have threatened to cut off the water and electricity, but I'll be all right.

Alan Well, thank you, Mrs Hamilton... and good luck !

Mrs H. And you can tell the Council from me... I want another house where I can keep my dogs, not a little flat in a bloody high-rise block !

Hardy : Tôi không biết, thật tình là không biết,... nhưng chúng tôi không thể chờ đợi mãi. Cảnh sát sắp phải làm một điều gì đó. Chẳng phải là dễ dàng gì đâu. Bà ta có 2 con chó cực lớn, mà chúng thì lại không thích người lạ !

Bản tin số 2 của đài phát thanh

Chúng tôi cũng đã sắp xếp được một cuộc phỏng vấn với bà Hamilton. Bà ta đã quyết định tiếp chuyện với chúng tôi, nhưng yêu cầu là chỉ tiếp một mình tôi thôi.

Bà Hamilton !

Bà H : Ông là ai ?

Alan : Tôi là Alan Nelson. Ban tin tức của đài Pennine.

Bà H : Này... Đừng đến gần nữa, nếu không tôi thả chó ra đấy. Ngồi xuống, Caesar ! Ngồi xuống đi nào.

Alan : Tôi tin là thính giả của đài chúng tôi rất muốn nghe câu chuyện từ phía bà.

Bà H : Chẳng có gì nhiều để nói cả. Tôi không có đi đâu ! Tôi ra đời ở đây, sinh con đẻ cái ở đây, và tôi sẽ nhắm mắt ở đây.

Alan : Nhưng Hội đồng thực sự cần miếng đất này, và họ đã thu xếp cho bà một căn hộ mới rồi mà.

Bà H : Tôi biết, nhưng như vậy thì tôi không thể đem những con chó theo cùng... mà tôi cần có bạn. Bây giờ tôi chỉ còn có chúng thôi. Ngồi xuống nào, con !

Alan : Bà liệu ở đây được bao lâu ?

Bà H : Ồ, tôi còn nhiều thức ăn lắm. Hội đồng dọa sẽ cắt nước và điện, nhưng tôi chẳng có hề hấn gì đâu.

Alan : Thôi xin cảm ơn bà, bà Hamilton... Chúc bà may mắn !

Bà H : Và anh có thể nhắn với Hội đồng giùm tôi... Tôi muốn có một căn nhà khác để có thể nuôi được bọn chó chứ không phải là một căn hộ bé xíu trong một tòa nhà cao tầng khốn kiếp đâu.

Exercise

'... a Social Worker who wanted to speak to Mrs Hamilton...' 'wanted to speak' is 'verb + to(do)'. Go through the page and underline the other examples of verbs with 'to (do)'.

PRACTICE

Language summary

Verb + infinitive

hope to (do)	*want to (do)*	*manage to (do)*	*threaten to (do)*
refuse to (do)	*would like to (do)*	*decide to (do)*	*had to (do)*
plan to (do)	*intend to (do)*	*demand to (do)*	*have to (do)*
offer to (do)	*expect to (do).*	*need to (do)*	*going to (do)*
agree to (do)	*promise to (do)*	*arrange to (do)*	

Exercise 1

(refuse) *The Chairman refused to comment.*

Continue.

Bài tập 1

(từ chối) *Vị chủ tịch từ chối không chịu bình luận.*

Hãy tiếp tục.

Bank crisis
'NO COMMENT' was all the Chairman of Southland Bank would say this morning. The bank closed its doors at noon on Tuesday and has not opened since.

Another fighter crashes
ANOTHER F42 fighter plane has crashed. It happened over the English Channel this morning. The pilot escaped unhurt. He ejected two miles off the coast and was picked up by an air/sea rescue helicopter.

1 (manage) . . . . . .

Factory sit-in
FACTORY WORKERS at Darnley Chemicals are continuing their sit-in in protest at the management's closure proposals. A spokesman for the workers said 'We shall not be moved'.

2 (refuse) . . . . . .

Tax cuts on the way
THERE WILL be tax reductions in the next financial year. 'We will not break our word to the people who voted for us at the last election', the Prime Minister stated at a City banquet last night.

3 (promise) . . . . . .

Olympic gold ?
BEN DOE, the British 400-metre champion, ran his fastest time this year at Crystal Palace last night. After the race Doe commented 'Now for the Olympics. Only the gold will be good enough for me'.

4 (expect) . . . . . .

Nurses offered 8%
AN INCREASE of 8% is the latest pay offer to nurses. The government say that this is their final offer, but nurses' leaders will probably press for further negotiations.

5 (offer) . . . . . .

Stan Walsh unhappy
EASTFIELD UNITED manager Brian Huff admitted today that he had received a transfer request from striker Stanley Walsh. Walsh has been unhappy at Eastfield for some time and feels that he would be happier with a new club.

6 (would like) . . . . . .

July summit
IT WAS announced today that world leaders will meet in London in July. There has been some disagreement about the time and place, but these problems have now been solved.

7 (agree) . . . . . .

New by-pass for Tadworth
TADWORTH Council voted 20-16 in favour of a new by-pass last night. The decision came after weeks of discussion. The work will begin next spring and should take eighteen months to complete.

8 (decide) . . . . . .

Strike threat
MINERS' LEADERS are very unhappy with the Coal Board's latest pay offer of £10 a week on basic pay. The miners will vote on Wednesday but miners' leaders have already said that they will recommend industrial action.

9 (threaten) . . . . . .

Spring wedding of the year
THE DUKE of Mercia yesterday announced his engagement to Lady Diana Marks, the second daughter of Earl Marks. The wedding will take place in April. The Duke, aged 42, met Lady Diana, 22, in St. Moritz last winter.

10 (intend) . . . . . .

Unit 8 Sending A Card

Gởi thiệp

VOCABULARY

- **bronze** *(n)* /brɒnz/ work of art, eg a statue, made of bronze = đồ bằng đồng thiếc *a fine collection of ~ s*
  bronze *(adj)* /brɒnz/ *a ~ vase / statue / bowl*
- **cancer research** *(n)* /'kænsə rɪ'sɜ:tʃ/ careful study in order to discover new facts or information about cancer = việc nghiên cứu bệnh ung thư
  researcher *(n)*
- **donation** *(n)* /dəʊ'neɪʃn/ thing donated = tiền, vật quyên góp *a ~ to / for Amnesty International*
  donate *(v)* /dəʊ'neɪt/ give money, goods, esp to a charity *~ large sums to relief organizations*
- **emerald** *(n)* /'emərəld/ bright green precious stone = ngọc lục bảo *two diamonds and an ~*
- **engagement** *(n)* /ɪn'geɪdʒmənt/ agreement to marry = sự đính hôn *Their ~ was announced in the local paper.*
  engagement ring *(n)* ring that a man gives to a woman when they agree to marry.
- **funeral** *(n)* /'fju:nərəl/ ceremony of burying or burying dead people = đám tang
- **gain** *(v)* /geɪn/ obtain, win = thu lượm, gặt hái *~ sb's affections*
- **gift** *(n)* /gɪft/ present = quà tặng
- **greetings card** *(n)* /'gri:tɪŋz kɑ:d/ card for greeting = thiệp chúc mừng
- **holiday maker** *(n)* /'hɒlədeɪ 'meɪkə/ person who is on holiday = người đi nghỉ mát *The beach was full of ~ s.*
- **ivory** *(n)* /'aɪvərɪ/ creamy-white bone-like substance forming the tusks of elephants ngà voi
- **jade** *(n)* /dʒeɪd/ hard, usu green, stone from which ornaments, etc are carved = ngọc bích *a ~ vase / necklace.*
- **lace** *(n)* /leɪs/ vải ren *a wedding dress made of ~*
- **linen** *(n)* /'lɪnɪn/ đồ vải lanh
- **pearl** *(n)* /pɜ:l/ ngọc trai, ngọc qui
- **pottery** *(n)* /'pɒtərɪ/ earthenware pots, etc made by hand = đồ gốm *a valuable collection of Japanese ~.*
- **promotion** *(n)* /prə'məʊʃn/ raising or being raised to a higher rank or position = sự thăng quan tiến chức. *gain / win ~.*
  promote *(v)* /prə'məʊt/ (esp passive) sb to st *He worked hard and was soon ~ d.*
- **retire** *(v)* /rɪ'taɪə/ (from st) give up one's regular work because of old age or poor health = nghỉ hưu *retire on a pension at 60.*
  retirement /rɪ'taɪəmənt/ retiring or being retired from work. *There have been several retirements in my office recently.*
- **ruby** *(n)* /'ru:bɪ/ type of red jewel = hồng ngọc
  ruby *(adj)* *deep red ~ lips*
- **sapphire** *(n)* /'sæfaɪə/ clear, bright blue jewel = ngọc xa phia
- **St Valentine's Day** *(n)* /seɪnt 'væləntaɪnz deɪ/ 14 February = day for sweethearts, lovers = ngày dành cho những người yêu nhau
- **willing** *(adj)* /'wɪlɪŋ/ ready, eager to help = sẵn lòng

EXPRESSIONS

- With deepest sympathy với sự cảm thông sâu sắc nhất
- congratulations on... chúc mừng nhân dịp...
- lose a daughter and gain a son mất con gái và có con trai
- As you know... như anh biết đó...
- at the same time đồng thời
- to be sorry rất tiếc
- née /neɪ/ (được dùng sau tên người đàn bà đã lập gia đình và đặt trước họ cha) = nhũ danh (Vd : (Mrs. Jane Smith, née Brown)
- to be delighted to = to be happy to rất vui mừng
- to be willing to = to be ready to sẵn sàng
- to be upset rất đau lòng

PROPER NAMES

English words are not pronounced the way they are written. English & American names are even more difficult to pronounce. It is important for the learners to pronounce the following names correctly.

Albert Edward	/ælbət 'edwəd/	Gladys	/'glædɪs/
Alison	/'ælɪsn/	Guildford	/'gɪldfəd/
Balmoral	/bæl'mɒrəl/	Harold	/'hærəld/
Blake	/'bleɪk/	Harper	/'hɑ:pə/
Brewer Harold	/'bru:ə 'hærəld/	Jesica Charlottle	/'dʒésɪkə 'ʃɑ:lət/
Brixton	/'brɪkstn/	Linda	/'lɪndə/
Christ	/kraɪst/	Kevin	/'kevɪn/
Christine	/'krɪsti:n/	Maidstone	/'meɪdstəun/
Christmas	/'krɪsməs/	Merrick Colin	/'merɪk 'kɒlɪn/
Croydon	/'krɔɪdn/	Sarah Roberts	/'seərə'rɒbəts/
David	/'deɪvɪd/	St. George	/'seɪnt 'dʒɔ:dʒ/
Doris Hilda	/'dɒrɪs 'hɪldə/	Stewart-forsyth	/'stju:ət fɔ:'saɪθ/
Easter	/'i:stə/	Sutton	/'sʌtn/
Emily Clare	/'emɔlɪ 'kleə/	Taylor	/'teɪlə/
Enid	/'enɪd/	Valentine	/'vælənta:ɪn/
Freddie	/'fredɪ/	Walter Brown	/'wɔ:ltə 'braun/

USAGE

Notice this
tens of
hundreds of
thousands of + plural noun
millions of
billions of
trillions of

And :
tens of thousands of
Or :
hundreds of millions of
etc.

Then is it wrong or right to say :

Ex :1. I have got tens of letter to copy for my boss.

2. My boss has 3 thousand workers but we each receive only 3 thousands every month.

GRAMMAR NOTES

Adjective pattern

ADJECTIVE + TO-INFINITIVE

We can use a *to - infinitive* after adjectives in a variety of ways, for example :

1. We use a *personal subject* (he, she, etc..) or we use it with adjectives like these : *clever, foolish, generous, good, polite, right, wrong, rude, selfish, silly, wicked.*

Instead of : He was **kind** (enough) **to help** us
She was **silly** not **to buy** it.

We can say: It was **kind** (of him) **to help** us.
It was **silly** (of her) not **to buy** it.

We can also say : He was **so good/kind** (etc.) **as to help** us.

2. We use only a *personal subject* (He, She, It, or name) with these adjectives. *afraid, anxious, ashamed, careful, curious, eager, fit, free, frightened, glad, keen, sorry.*

EX : John is **eager to please** (Not : "It is eager to")
I'm **sorry to have troubled** you

3. We use a *personal subject* or *it*, but not *of him*, etc. with these adjectives :
agreeable, amusing, boring, difficult, easy, hard, impossible.

EX : John is **easy to please.**
It is **easy to please** John.

Greetings cards are big business in Britain. Millions of cards are sent every year, and you can buy cards for nearly every special occasion. There are cards for Christmas, New Year, Easter, birthdays, engagements, funerals, St Valentine's day, Mother's Day, Father's Day, retirement, illness, passing examinations and driving tests, promotions, and the picture postcards sent by holidaymakers.

Sản xuất và mua bán các loại thiệp là một hoạt động kinh doanh rộn rịp ở nước Anh. Mỗi năm người ta gửi đi hàng triệu tấm thiệp, và bạn có thể chọn mua những tấm thiệp vào hầu như tất cả các dịp đặc biệt. Có thiệp Giáng sinh, năm mới, Phục sinh, sinh nhật, đính hôn, chia buồn tang lễ, ngày thánh Valentine, ngày nhớ ơn mẹ, ngày nhớ ơn cha, dịp về hưu, bệnh tật, chúc thi đậu và chúc lấy được bằng lái xe, chúc mừng được thăng tiến và các bưu ảnh dành cho những người đi nghỉ mát.

To Linda & David,
We were delighted to hear about the twins ! It's lovely to have two at the same time... double the happiness (and double the work !) We're willing to help at any time. Don't hesitate to ask.
Lots of Love,
Alison & Kevin.

Linda và David thân mến,
Rất vui mừng nhận được tin bạn sinh đôi. Có 2 bé cùng một lúc thật là tuyệt... hạnh phúc gấp 2 lần (và bận rộn cũng gấp 2 lần!). Chúng tôi sẵn sàng giúp các bạn vào bất cứ lúc nào. Nếu cần chớ có ngần ngại gì nhé.
Thân mến,
Alison & Kevin.

Christine
Best Wishes
On your Wedding
It was very nice to read about your wedding. I expect your parents are sorry to lose a daughter but happy to gain a son ! My best wishes to you and your new husband.
Sarah Roberts

Christine
Gửi đến bạn những lời chúc tốt đẹp nhất nhân dịp thành hôn.
Rất vui khi đọc thấy tin về lễ thành hôn của bạn. Theo tôi, ba má của bạn sẽ buồn vì mất đi một người con gái nhưng sẽ vui hơn vì có thêm một người con trai ! Gửi đến bạn và ông xã những lời chúc tốt đẹp nhất.
Sarah Roberts

Best Wishes for Your 21st Birthday
You've never been 21 before. Now you've got the key of the door. It's really great to be 21. Now you are a man, my son.
Love, Dad

Chúc mừng Sinh nhật thứ 21 của con
Trước đây con chưa bao giờ có hạnh phúc được tròn 21 tuổi. Bây giờ con đã giữ trong tay chiếc chìa khóa để mở cửa vào đời. Tuổi 21 đối với con người thật là tuyệt vời. Con đã là một người lớn rồi đó, con của ba.
Thương, Ba

To Harold and Enid,

Congratulations on your Silver Wedding

Twenty-five years together ! I was really surprised to hear it. You don't look old enough to have a silver wedding !
Very best wishes,

Gladys

With Sincere Sympathy

I was very sad to learn about Albert's death. It is difficult to know what to say. As you know, I worked with him for thirty years. He was a wonderful person... he was always ready to help everyone. He will be sadly missed. I am sorry, but I was too ill to come to the funeral

Yours sincerely
Walter Brown

Get Well Soon

I was very upset to hear about your accident. I enclose some magazines. You'll need something interesting to look at ! I hope the nurses are nice.

All the best.

Freddie

Gửi 2 bạn Harold và Enid.

Chúc mừng Hôn lễ Bạc.

Hai mươi lăm năm chung sống ! Tôi thật sự ngạc nhiên khi biết điều này. Khó mà tin 2 bạn kỷ niệm Hôn lễ Bạc vì trông các bạn hãy còn trẻ quá !
Chúc các bạn những điều tốt đẹp nhất,

Gladys

Thành thật chia buồn

Tôi rất buồn khi được tin Albert đã từ trần. Thật khó mà biết phải nói những gì trong dịp này. Như bà đã biết, tôi đã làm việc với ông nhà suốt 30 năm trời. Ông nhà là một người tuyệt vời... ông luôn sẵn lòng giúp đỡ mọi người. Ai trong chúng tôi cũng tiếc thương ông ấy. Tôi rất tiếc đã không thể đến dự đám tang của ông ấy vì bị bệnh.

Thân kính,
Walter Brown

Chúc chóng bình phục

Tôi rất buồn nghe tin bạn gặp tai nạn. Tôi gửi kèm mấy cuốn tạp chí trong thư này. Tôi nghĩ là bạn sẽ cần có cái gì đó để đọc cho vui ! Hy vọng là các cô y tá trong bệnh viện đều dễ thương.

Chúc mọi điều tốt lành
Freddie

SOUTH LONDON NEWS MARCH 6

BIRTHS

TAYLOR. On March 5th at Maidstone General Hospital, to Linda (nee Blake) and David, twin daughters, Jessica Charlotte and Emily Clare. Thanks to all the hospital staff.

MARRIAGES

STEWART-FORSYTH. On March 4th at St. George's Church, Croydon, between Michael, eldest son of Mr and Mrs R. F. Stewart of Queen's Rd., Croydon, and Christine, only daughter of Mr and Mrs B. Forsyth of Balmoral Ave., Guildford.

DEATHS

HARPER. On March 3rd peacefully. Died at home, aged 87 years. ALBERT EDWARD, dearly loved husband of Doris Hilda. Service at sacred Heart Church, Sutton. No flowers please. Donations to Cancer Research.

BIRTHDAY GREETINGS

MERRICK Colin. Twenty-one today. Congratulations darling ! Love from Mum, Dad, Dave and Julie.

SILVER WEDDING

BREWER Harold and Enid. Married on March 6th – twenty-five years ago today – in Brixton. Love and congratulations, Peter, Val and the kids.

Wedding anniversaries

The traditional gifts to give for each one :

1st paper	7th wool	13th lace	35th jade
2nd cotton	8th bronze	14th ivory	40th ruby
3rd leather	9th pottery	15th glass	45th sapphire
4th linen	10th tin	20th china	50th gold
5th wood	11th steel	25th silver	55th emerald
6th iron	12th silk	30th pearl	60th diamond

Exercise

Can you suggest a suitable gift for each anniversary ?

2nd anniversary

A cotton table-cloth or some cotton towels

PRACTICE

Language summary

Adjective + infinitive

I	*'m*	*delighted to (hear)...*	*It*	*is*	*lovely to (hear)...*
	was	*willing to (help)...*		*was*	*nice to (know)...*
He	*is*	*sorry to (lose)...*		*will be*	*difficult to*
She	*was*	*happy to (gain)...*		*has been*	*(know)...*
We	*are*	*sad to (learn)...*			*great to (be)...*
		ready to (help)...			*interesting to*
You	*were*	*surprised to (hear)...*			*(look at)...*
They		*upset to (hear)...*			

I was too (ill) to (come)...

You don't look (old) enough to (be)...

Exercise 1

I heard about all your problems. I was very sad.

I was very sad to hear about your problems.

Continue.

1 I'll be able to help you next week. You know that I'm always willing.
. . . . . .

2 You can send that cheque today. It's ready. . . . . .
. . . . . .

3 Congratulations ! I read about the birth of your son in the paper. I was really delighted ! . . . . . .
. . . . . .

4 I was surprised when I saw you on T.V. last night. . . . . .
. . . . . .

Bài tập 1

Tôi nghe nói về tất cả những điều rắc rối của bạn. Tôi rất buồn.

Tôi rất buồn khi nghe nói về các điều rắc rối của bạn.

Hãy tiếp tục.

5 We found out about the burglary at your home this morning. All of us were upset. . . . . .
. . . . . .

6 I'm sorry, but I must say that this work isn't good enough ! . . . . . .
. . . . . .

7 We received your photographs in today's post. We were very happy.
. . . . . .

8 It was great ! We were on holiday in Italy for two weeks. . . . . .
. . . . . .

9 It was interesting. We went round all the art galleries in Florence. . . . .
. . . . . .

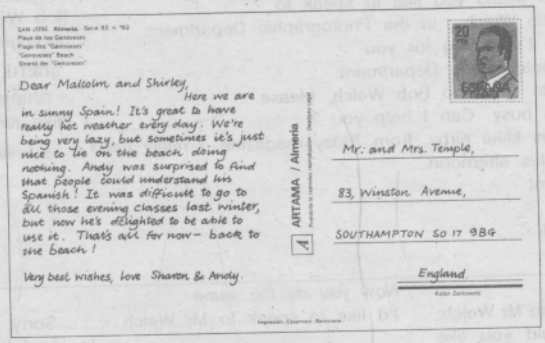
10 We visited St. Mark's Square in Venice. It was lovely. . . . . .
. . . . . .

11 It was nice. We had excellent food every day. . . . . .
. . . . . .

12 It will be difficult. We'll have to eat English food again when we get back from holiday ! . . . . . .

Exercise 2

Look at this.



John and Ellen Ross are on holiday in London. Use these prompts and write a card to their friends, Bobby and Pam Barnes in Dallas, Texas. They live at 1134, Westfork Boulevard.

John và Ellen Ross đang đi nghỉ ở Luân Đôn. Dùng các từ gợi ý này và viết một bưu thiếp cho bạn bè của họ, Bobby và Pam Barnes ở Dallas, Texas. Họ ở số 1134, đại lộ Westfork.

interesting/museums and palaces/ surprised/ discover/ hotel prices/ very high/ not difficult/ get round London/ great/ the Queen/ Buckingham Palace/ happy/ you again/ next week/ pleased/ you willing/ us/ at the airport/ nice/ home

Exercise 3

Imagine that you are on holiday in a foreign country. Choose a place, and write a postcard to some friends at home.

Bài tập 3

Hãy tưởng tượng bạn đang đi nghỉ ở nước ngoài. Chọn một địa điểm và viết 1 bưu thiếp cho vài người bạn ở quê nhà.

Exercise 4

She's a university professor, but she looks pretty stupid !

She doesn't look intelligent enough to be a university professor.

Continue.

1 She's a doctor. She looks very young.
. . . . . .

2 He's a professional footballer. He looks pretty old to me. . . . . .
. . . . . .

3 He's a famous boxer. He looks pretty weak ! . . . . . .
. . . . . .

Bài tập 4

Bà ấy là một giáo sư đại học nhưng trông có vẻ hơi đần.

Bà ấy trông có vẻ không đủ thông minh để làm giáo sư đại học.

Hãy tiếp tục.

4 That car won the Monte Carto Rally. It looks pretty slow ! . . . . . .
. . . . . .

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Units 5-8

Dialogue A

Listen

Operator Wessex Visuals.
Mike Hello, I'd like to speak to Mr Welch, please.
Operator Sorry, who would you like to speak to ?
Mike Mr Welch... Bob Welch... in the Photographic Department.
Operator Hold on... It's ringing for you.
Sally Sally West. Photographic Department.
Mike Hello. I want to speak to Bob Welch, please.
Sally I'm afraid he's busy. Can I help you ?
Mike Perhaps. This is Mike Kirby, from *Today* magazine. I really need to speak to Bob this afternoon.
Sally It sounds urgent.
Mike It *is* urgent.
Sally Just a moment...

Listen and repeat

Vocabulary
- Wessex Visuals /'wesɛks 'vɪʒuəlz/
- Bob Welch /bɒb welʃ/
- photographic Department /ˌfəʊtə'græfɪk dɪ'pɑ:tmənt/ phòng nhiếp ảnh
- Mike Kirkby /maɪk 'kɜ:bɪ/

A1 *Listen*

A : I'd like to speak to Mr Welch.
B : Sorry, who would you like to speak to ?
C : Sorry, who would you like to speak to ?

A : I want to speak to Miss Ramsbottom.
B : Sorry, who do you want to speak to ?
C : Sorry, who do you want to speak to ?

Now you do the same

I'd like to speak to Mr Welch ..... Sorry, who would you like to speak to ?
I want to speak to Miss Ramsbottom ..... Sorry, who do you want to speak to ?
I really need to see Mrs Spencer ..... Sorry, who do you need to see ?
I have to talk to Charles Renfrew ..... Sorry, who do you have to talk to ?

Pronunciation
- Ramsbottom /ræmzˈbɒtəm/
- Spencer /'spensə/
- Charles Renfrew /tʃɑ:lz ren'fru:/

A2 *Listen*

A : It sounds urgent.
B : It *is* urgent.
C : It *is* urgent.
A : They sound serious.
B : They *are* serious.
C : They *are* serious.

Now you do the same

It sounds urgent ..... It *is* urgent.
They sound serious ..... They *are* serious.
They sound important ..... They *are* important.
It sounds dangerous ..... It *is* dangerous.

Dialogue B

Listen

Sally I'm sorry. I really can't disturb him now. He's working on some photographs.
Mike Oh. I'll phone him back in quarter of an hour, then.
Sally He won't have finished in quarter of an hour, I'm afraid. He'll still be working then. Can I ask him to phone you ?
Mike Hmm. I think the photos are for me. When will he have finished ?
Sally I can't ask him. He's in the dark room. But he began doing them at three. They'll take nearly an hour. Yes, I think he'll have finished by 4 o'clock.
Mike 4 o'clock ? Oh dear. We must have them by 4.30 at the latest !

Listen and repeat

B1 *Listen*

A : I'll phone him back in quarter of an hour.
B : He won't have finished in quarter of an hour, I'm afraid.
C : He won't have finished in quarter of an hour, I'm afraid.
A : I'll call her back in two days.
B : She won't have finished in two days, I'm afraid.
C : She won't have finished in two days, I'm afraid.

Now you do the same

I'll phone him back in quarter of an hour.....He won't have finished in quarter of an hour, I'm afraid.
I'll call her back in two days.....She won't have finished in two days, I'm afraid.
I'll phone them back in three hours.....They won't have finished in three hours, I'm afraid.
I'll ring you back in half an hour.....I won't have finished in half an hour, I'm afraid.

B2 *Listen*

A : He hasn't finished yet.
B : When will he have finished ?
C : When will he have finished?
A : I haven't done it yet.
B : When will you have done it?
C : When will you have done it?

Now you do the same

He hasn't finished yet.....When will he have finished ?
I haven't done it yet.....When will you have done it ?
She hasn't completed it yet.....When will she have completed it ?
They haven't made it yet.....When will they have made it ?

B3 *Listen*

A : He began doing them at 3. They'll take nearly an hour.
B : He'll have finished by 4 o'clock.
C : He'll have finished by 4 o'clock.
A : She started typing at 2.30. It'll take nearly half an hour.
B : She'll have finished by 3 o'clock.
C : She'll have finished by 3 o'clock.

Now you do the same

He began doing them at 3. They'll take nearly an hour .....He'll have finished by 4 o'clock.
She started typing at 2.30. It'll take nearly half an hour .....She'll have finished by 3 o'clock.
They began washing up at 4.45. It'll take nearly quarter of an hour.....They'll have finished by 5 o'clock.
She started working at 10.15. It'll take nearly three-quarters of an hour .....She'll have finished by 11 o'clock.

B4 *Listen*

A : He's working now. He began at 3.
B : He began working at 3.
C : He began working at 3.
A : She's driving now. She started at 4.
B : She started driving at 4.
C : She started driving at 4.

Now you do the same

He's working now. He began at 3.....He began working at 3.
She's driving now. She started at 4.....She started driving at 4.
They're eating now. They began at 8.....They began eating at 8.
We're doing it now. We started at 6.....We started doing it at 6.

Dialogue C

Listen

Sally You need them at 4.30 ?
Mike Yes. Look, I'll come and collect them. I'll be there by 4.30... if I hurry. I won't park the car. I won't have time. Could he bring them to me ?
Sally Yes... Yes, I'm sure he could. Where will you be waiting ?
Mike Outside the main entrance. I'll be driving a white Austin Ambassador. /ɔ:stɪn æm'bæsədə/
Sally Right. 4.30 then.

Listen and repeat

C1 *Listen*

A : I'll be waiting.
B : Where will you be waiting ?
C : Where will you be waiting ?

A : she'll be waiting.
B : Where will she be waiting ?
C : Where will she be waiting ?

C2 *Listen*
A : a white car.
B : I'll be driving a white car.
C : I'll be driving a white car.
A : a blue raincoat.
B : I'll be wearing a blue raincoat.
C : I'll be wearing a blue raincoat.

Now you do the same
I'll be waiting.....Where will you be waiting ?
she'll be waiting .....Where will she be waiting ?
they'll be waiting.....Where will they be waiting ?
he'll be waiting.....Where will he be waiting ?
Now you do the same
a white car.....I'll be driving a white car.
a blue raincoat.....I'll be wearing a blue raincoat.
an old bicycle.....I'll be riding an old bicycle.
a newspaper.....I'll be reading a newspaper.

Dialogue D

Listen

Bob Mike !
Mike Bob ! Have you got the photos ?
Bob Here they are.
Mike They look pretty good. Well done.
Bob It was an interesting subject. I enjoyed taking them.
Mike Yes. Sorry to hurry you. I was afraid of missing the next issue of the magazine.
Bob That's OK. See you !
Mike See you ! 'Bye !

Listen and repeat

D1 *Listen*
A : I took these photographs.
B : I enjoyed taking them.
C : I enjoyed taking them.
A : He painted this picture.
B : He enjoyed painting it.
C : He enjoyed painting it.

Now you do the same
I took these photographs..... I enjoyed taking them.
He painted this picture.....He enjoyed painting it.
She made that skirt .....She enjoyed making it.
They decorated their house.....They enjoyed decorating it.

D2 *Listen*
A : He was afraid. He didn't want to miss it.
B : He was afraid of missing it.
C : He was afraid of missing it.
A : They were scared. They didn't want to fly.
B : They were scared of flying.
C : They were scared of flying.

Now you do the same
He was afraid. He didn't want to miss it..... He was afraid of missing it.
They were scared. They didn't want to fly.....They were scared of flying.
She was frightened. She didn't want to meet him. :
..... She was frightened of meeting him.
He didn't want to be there. He was terrified
..... He was terrified of being there.

Listening

*Listen to these people talking about their likes and dislikes, and answer the questions when you hear this sound *BELL*

1

Woman I live on my own and I've never liked doing housework, but at least hoovering isn't too bad. I don't mind pushing a vacuum cleaner round the carpet. Actually, the one thing I really can't stand... really, is washing-up. If I were very rich, I'd have paper plates and throw them away every day !

***BELL**

What doesn't she like doing ?
.....She doesn't like doing housework.
Does she dislike hoovering ?
.....She doesn't mind hoovering.
What can't she stand doing ?
.....She can't stand washing-up.

2

Man It's funny really. My father loved doing it. He'd spend all day in the garden. I was never interested. I suppose I just don't like gardening. Oh, I like sitting in the sun watching the flowers grow... but not the work. Gardening's hard work, really.

3

Woman My pet dislike ? Television, I suppose. You know what happens nowadays. People eat watching it. They switch it on when they get home from work and stay there until it finishes. I get bored. It's killed conversation. People have forgotten how to talk to each other.

4

Man When I was younger I loved driving. I had an old Mini and every weekend I used to go out in it. Then I got a job as a sales representative. After a couple of years I was tired of driving. I was really fed up with spending 5 or 6 hours a day in a metal box. Now... I hate it. I really do.

***BELL**

What was he never interested in ?
.....He was never interested in gardening.
What did his father think about gardening ?
.....He loved gardening.
What does the speaker like doing in the garden ?
.....He likes sitting in the sun watching the flowers grow.

***BELL**

What does she get bored with doing ?
.....She gets bored with watching television.
Does she enjoy watching television ?
.....No, she doesn't.

***BELL**

What did he love doing when he was younger?
.....He loved driving.
How did he feel after a couple of years as a sales representative ?.....He was tired of driving.
What was he fed up with doing ?
.....He was fed up with spending 5 or 6 hours a day in a metal box.
What does he hate doing now ?
.....He hates driving.

Open conversation

Listen and reply

A : Tell me something that you like doing.
B : .....
A : What don't you like doing ?
B : .....
A : Is there anything you are scared of doing ?
B : .....
A : What are you interested in doing ?
B : .....
A : And what are you bored with doing ?
B : .....
A : Are you tired of doing this lesson ?
B : .....
A : Well. It's finished now. That's the end of section two.

Unit 9 Marriage Guidance Council

Văn phòng hướng dẫn hôn nhân

VOCABULARY

- **accuse** *(v)* /ə'kju:z/ (sb of st) say that sb has done wrong, is guilty = tố cáo ~ *sb of cheating, cowardice, theft*
  accusatory *(adj)* /ə'kju:zətərɪ/ ~ *remarks, glances*
  accused *(n) (pl unchanged)* /ə'kju:zd/ person charged in a criminal case = bị cáo *The ~ was / were acquitted of the charge.*
  accuser *(n)* /ə'kju:zə/ người tố cáo
- **advise** *(v)* /əd'vaɪz/ (sb against st / doing st) give advice to sb; recommend = khuyên nhủ *The doctor ~ d (me to take) a complete rest*
  They ~ d her against marrying quickly.
  advice *(n)* /əd'vaɪs/ lời khuyên *act on / follow / take sb's ~*
  adviser *(n)* người khuyên nhủ
  advisory *(adj)* /əd'vaɪzərɪ/ cố vấn, khuyên *an ~ committee, body, role*
- **allow** *(v)* /ə'laʊ/ permit sb to do st = cho phép *My boss doesn't ~ me to use the telephone.*
  allowable *(adj)* /ə'laʊəbl/ that can be allowed by law ~ *expenses.*
- **argue** *(v)* /'ɑ:gju:/ (with sb) (about / over st) express opposite opinion; quarrel = tranh cãi *Don't ~ with your mother.*
  arguable *(adj)* /'ɑ:gjʊəbl/ *This account contains many ~ statements.*
  argument *(n)* /'ɑ:gjʊmənt/ disagreement; quarrel *We agreed without much further ~*
- **collect** *(v)* /kə'lekt/ call for and take away sb, st = đón, rước
- **cotton wool** *(n)* /'kɒtn wʊl/ bông gòn
- **counseller** *(n)* /'kaʊnsələ/ adviser = người khuyên răn, người giúp ý kiến *a wise ~ in time of need.*
  counsel *(v)* /'kaʊsəl/ give professional advice to *I would ~ caution in such a case.*
  counselling *(n)* /'kaʊsəlɪŋ/ advice *financial ~*
- **embarrass** *(v)* /ɪm'bærəs/ cause sb to feel awkward or ashamed = làm lúng túng, ngượng ngùng *I was ~ ed by his comments about my clothes*
  embarrassing *(adj)* *an ~ incident, question, mistake.*
  embarrassment *(n)* *He suffered much ~ in his youth.*
- **forbid** *(v)* /fə'bɪd/ not allow = cấm đoán *Her father forbade their marriage.*
  forbidding *(adj)* looking unfriendly, threatening = đáng sợ *a ~ appearance, look, manner.*
- **inconsiderate** *(adj)* /ɪnkən'sɪdərət/ not caring about the feelings of other people; thoughtless = vô tâm *~ remarks/ behaviour.*
- **individually** *(adv)* /ˌɪndɪ'vɪdʒʊəlɪ/ cá nhân, riêng lẻ
  - **marriage guidance council** *(n)* /'mærɪdʒ 'gaɪdəns 'kaʊnsl/ organization that gives advice on the problems of married couples = phòng hướng dẫn hôn nhân
- **organization** *(n)* /ˌɔ:gənaɪ'zeɪʃn/ tổ chức
- **pass judgement** *(v)* /pa:s 'dʒʌdʒmənt/ xét xử
- **persuade** *(v)* /pə'sweɪd/ (sb into / out of st) cause sb to do st by arguing or reasoning with him = thuyết phục. *He is easily ~ d.*
  persuasion *(n)* /pə'sweɪʒn/ *Defeated by her powers of ~, I accepted.*
  persuasive *(adj)* /pə'sweɪsɪv/ convincing *a ~ manner, arguments, reasons.*
- **qualified** *(adj)* /'kwɒlɪfaɪd/ having completed the relevant training or examination = đủ tư cách, phẩm chất *a ~ doctor*
  She's extremely well ~ for the job.
- **quarrel** *(v)* /'kwɒrəl/ argue = cãi cọ
- **remind** *(v)* /rɪ'maɪnd/ - tell sb to do st he may have forgotten = nhắc *~ me to answer that letter.*
  - (sb of st) cause sb to remember or be newly aware of sb / st = gợi nhớ *This song ~ s me of my hometown.*
- **resent** *(v)* /rɪ'zent/ feel bitter, indignant or angry about = ghen tức *Does she ~ my being here ?*
  resentful *(adj)* /rɪ'zentfʊl/ *a ~ silence, comment*

resentment *(n)* /rɪ'zentmənt/ *feel, show no resentment against / towards anyone.*

- **wrap** *(v)* /ræp/ cover st = gói, bọc
I have ~ ped (up) the parcels and they're ready to be posted.

EXPRESSIONS

How have things been ? sự việc ra sao rồi
much the same cũng y như vậy thôi
After all.. sau rốt...
I'm so glad you could come tôi rất mừng vì anh đã đến
I'll be honest... tôi sẽ chân thật
to make enquiries tò mò, thắc mắc

PROPER NAMES

Barbara Harris /'ba:brə 'hærɪs/
Malcolm /'mælkəm/
Murray /'mʌrɪ/

USAGE

Notice this :

1. be married (to someone)
   (get) engaged
   single
   divorced
   separated (from)
   widowed
   estranged (from)
2. Kids = children
3. Persuade somebody to do something (*thuyết phục ai làm cái gì*)
4. That's it/ so that's that : formula used to indicate the finality or the end of a story, a discussion, a debate... (*lời nói kết thúc một câu chuyện, đàm luận*)
5. Have rows
   quarrels with someone
   arguments

GRAMMAR NOTES (ask your teacher to clarify these notes)

1. Accusative and infinitive = (pro) + to -infinitive

2. Verb pattern : S + V + (pro) noun + to -infinitive

1. Somes verbs must normally always be followed by a noun or pronoun when used with a *to - infinitive* :
advise, allow, assist (giúp đỡ), bribe (hối lộ), cause, caution, challenge (thách thức), charge, command, compel (bắt buộc, thúc ép), condemn (ép buộc), dare (thách thức), defy (thách thức), direct, drive (thúc ép), enable, encourage, entitle (có quyền), forbid, force, impel (ép buộc), implore (cầu khẩn), incite (khuyến khích), induce (xui khiến), instruct, invite, oblige, order, permit, persuade, prefer, press (thúc giục), recommend, remind, request, teach, tell, tempt (cám dỗ), urge, warn.
All these verbs can be used in the passive as well as the active
Ex : I *advise* you to have to leave or you *were advised* to leave.

2. Adjective pattern

Too
Enough + Adjective + to-infinitive
So

These adverbs "too", "enough" and "so" used with "to be"

Ex : 1. They are too *tired* to *talk* in the evening.

2. This pair of shoes is too *big to go* in that suitcase
3. She is *old* enough *to get* married.

Malcolm and Barbara Harris have been married for nearly fifteen years. They've got two children, Gary aged thirteen, and Andrea, who is eleven. During the last couple of years Malcolm and Barbara haven't been very happy. They argue all the time. Barbara's sister advised them to go to the Marriage Guidance Council. There is one in most British towns. It's an organization which allows people to talk with a third person about their problems. This is their third visit, and Mrs Murray, the counsellor, always sees them.

Barbara's interview

Mrs Murray Ah, come in Barbara. Take a seat. Is your husband here ?

Barbara Yes, he's waiting outside. He didn't want to come here this week, but... well, I persuaded him to come.

Mrs Murray I see. How have things been ?

Barbara Oh, much the same. We still seem to have rows all the time.

Mrs Murray What do you quarrel about ?

Barbara What don't we quarrel about, you mean ! Oh, everything. You see, he's so inconsiderate...

Mrs Murray Go on.

Barbara Well, I'll give you an example. You know, when the children started school, I wanted to go back to work again, too. So I got a job. Well, anyway, by the time I've collected Gary and Andrea from school, I only get home about half an hour before Malcolm...

Mrs Murray Yes ?.

Barbara Well, when he gets home, he expects me to run around and get his tea. He never does anything in the house !

Mrs Murray Mmm.

Barbara And last Friday ! He invited three of his friends to come round for a drink. He didn't tell me to expect them, and I'd had a long and difficult day. I don't think that's right, do you ?

Mrs Murray Barbara, I'm not here to pass judgement. I'm here to listen.

Barbara Sorry. And he's so untidy. He's worse than the kids. I always have to remind him to pick up his clothes. He just throws them on the floor. After all, I'm not his servant. I've

Malcolm và Barbara Harris đã lấy nhau được gần 15 năm nay. Họ có 2 con, Gary 13 tuổi và Andrea, 11 tuổi. Hai năm trở lại đây Malcolm và Barbara không được hạnh phúc lắm. Họ gây gổ với nhau luôn. Chị của Barbara khuyên họ đến văn phòng tư vấn hôn nhân. Hầu như ở tỉnh nào trong nước Anh cũng có một văn phòng như vậy. Đó là một tổ chức tạo điều kiện cho người ta trao đổi với một người thứ ba về những vấn đề của mình. Đây là lần gặp thứ ba của họ, và bà Murray, người hướng dẫn, luôn luôn tiếp chuyện với họ.

Cuộc phỏng vấn Barbara

Bà Murray : Á, vào đây Barbaba. Ngồi xuống đi nào. Chồng cô có đến không ?

Barbara : Dạ có, ảnh đang đợi ngoài kia. Kỳ này ảnh không muốn đi, nhưng... em đã thuyết phục ảnh phải đi.

Bà M : Ra thế. Tình hình ra sao rồi ?

B : Ồ, y như cũ. Tụi em vẫn dường như lúc nào cũng cãi nhau được.

Bà M : Thế 2 bạn cãi nhau về chuyện gì nào?

B : Chắc chị muốn nói là còn chuyện gì nữa mà tụi em không cãi nhau ! Tất cả mọi chuyện chị ạ. Chị biết đó, ảnh vô tâm lắm...

Bà M : Cô nói tiếp đi.

B : Để em lấy ví dụ cho chị nghe. Chị biết không, khi mấy cháu bắt đầu đi học thì em cũng muốn đi làm lại. Vậy nên em nhận một việc. Và khi em đón xong Gary và Andrea từ trường thì em chỉ về nhà trước Malcolm có nửa tiếng thôi...

Bà M : Rồi sao nữa ?

B : Vậy mà khi ảnh về nhà, ảnh cứ cho là em phải chạy lăng xăng và pha trà cho ảnh. Ảnh chẳng có làm việc gì trong nhà cả.

Bà M : Ừm... ừm.

B : Thứ sáu vừa rồi chứ đâu xa xôi gì. Ảnh mời ba người bạn về nhà nhậu. Ảnh không hề báo trước cho em để chuẩn bị, mà hôm đó em đã phải làm việc khá căng thẳng suốt ngày rồi. Em nghĩ như vậy là quá tệ, phải không chị ?

Bà M : Barbara, tôi không ngồi đây để phán xét ai đúng ai sai đâu. Tôi chỉ ngồi nghe thôi.

B : Em xin lỗi. Và ảnh còn hết sức bừa bãi nữa. Ảnh còn tệ hơn cả bọn trẻ. Em luôn luôn phải nhắc ảnh thu dọn quần áo. Ảnh chỉ việc vứt bừa chúng xuống nền nhà. Nói cho cùng thì em đâu có phải là đầy tớ của

got my own career. Actually, I think that's part of the trouble. You see, I earn as much money as he does.

Malcolm's interview

Mrs Murray Malcolm ! I'm so glad you could come.

Malcolm Hello, Mrs Murray. Well, I'll be honest. Barbara had to force me to come, really.

Mrs Murray Does it embarrass you to talk about your problems ?

Malcolm Yes, it does. But I suppose we need to talk to somebody.

Mrs Murray Barbara feels that you... well, you resent her job.

Malcolm I don't know. I would prefer her to stay at home, but she's very well qualified... and I encouraged her to go back to work. Now the kids are at school, she needs an interest... and I suppose we need the money.

Mrs Murray How do you share the housework?

Malcom I try to help. I always help her to wash up, and I help Gary and Andrea to do their homework while she does the dinner. But she doesn't think that's enough. What do you think ?

Mrs Murray I'm not here to give an opinion, Malcolm.

Malcolm I think we're both too tired, that's all. In the evenings we're both too tired to talk. And Barbara... she never allows me to suggest anything about the house or about the kids. We always have the same arguments. She's got her own opinions and that's it. Last night we had another row. She's forbidden the kids to ride their bikes to school.

Mrs Murray Why ?

Malcolm She thinks they're too young to ride in the traffic. But I think they should. She always complains about collecting them from school. But you can't wrap children in cotton-wool, can you ?

ảnh. Em cũng có nghề nghiệp riêng chứ. Thực ra em nghĩ đó cũng là một phần của các rắc rối. Chị thấy đó, em kiếm ra tiền cũng ngang với anh ấy.

Cuộc phỏng vấn Malcolm

Bà M : Malcolm ! Tôi rất vui mừng là anh tới được.

M : Xin chào bà Murray. À, phải thành thật mà nói rằng Barbara đã ép tôi phải đi.

Bà M : Anh thấy bối rối khi phải nói về những vấn đề của mình sao ?

M : Cũng có đấy. Nhưng tôi nghĩ là chúng tôi cần phải nói chuyện với một người nào đấy.

Bà M : Barbara cảm thấy là anh... ở, anh bực mình vì cô ấy đi làm.

M : Tôi cũng không biết nữa. Tôi muốn cổ ở nhà hơn, nhưng cô ấy rất có năng lực... và tôi đã khuyến khích cô ấy đi làm trở lại. Bây giờ bọn trẻ đã đi học, cổ cũng cần có việc gì đó để đeo đuổi... và tôi nghĩ là chúng tôi cũng cần tiền.

BM : Thế hai người chia xẻ việc nhà như thế nào ?

M : Tôi cố gắng phụ giúp cô ấy. Tôi luôn giúp cổ rửa chén bát, và giúp Gary và Andrea làm bài tập trong khi cổ làm cơm tối. Nhưng cổ không nghĩ như vậy là đủ. Bà nghĩ sao ?

Bà M : Tôi không ngồi đây để trình bày ý kiến của mình đâu Malcolm.

M : Tôi nghĩ là cả hai chúng tôi đều quá mỏi mệt, chỉ có vậy thôi. Vào buổi tối ai cũng quá mệt nên không buồn chuyện trò gì cả. Còn Barbara nữa... cổ không bao giờ cho tôi có ý kiến gì về chuyện nhà cửa hoặc con cái. Lúc nào chúng tôi cũng cãi nhau về ngẫn ấy chuyện. Cổ cứ khăng khăng giữ ý kiến của cổ và cứ thế. Tối hôm qua chúng tôi lại cãi nhau nữa. Cổ cấm bọn trẻ đi học bằng xe đạp.

Bà M : Sao vậy ?

M : Cổ nghĩ rằng bọn chúng còn nhỏ quá chưa thể đi xe một mình ngoài đường được. Nhưng tôi thì nghĩ ngược lại. Cổ luôn luôn kể lể là phải đón chúng về nhà. Nhưng chúng ta đâu có thể lúc nào cũng bọc con nít trong nhung lụa được, phải không bà ?

Exercise 1

'Barbara's sister advised *them* to go...'

There are fifteen sentences like this. Underline them or write them out.

Exercise 2

They're very tired. They can't talk.

They're too tired to talk.

Continue.

1 They're very young. They shouldn't ride to school.

2 He's very old. He can't go to work.

3 We were very surprised. We couldn't say anything.

4 She's very ill. She shouldn't go out.

PRACTICE

Language summary

Someone	*advised*	*me*	*to (do)*	*something.*	*I'm (not)*	*here*	*to*	*do it.*
	allowed	*you*				*there*		*listen.*
	encouraged	*him*						*give an opinion.*
	expected	*her*			*He's*	*too*	*young*	*to (do) it.*
	forbade	*us*					*tired*	
	forced	*them*			*We seem to have rows all the time.*			
	helped	*Malcolm*						
	invited	*the children*						
	persuaded							
	preferred							
	reminded							
	told							
	wanted							
It	*embarrassed*							

Exercise 1

'If I were you, Mrs Huggins, I'd take traveller's cheques,' said the Bank Manager.

(advise) *The Bank Manager advised her to take traveller's cheques.*

Continue.

1 Don't forget to fasten your seat belts, the flight attendant said.
(remind) . . . . . .

2 'I can't fill in this form,' he said. 'Don't worry, I'll help you,' said the secretary.
(help) . . . . . .

3 'Would you like to see my paintings, Judy ?' he said.
(invite) . . . . . .

Bài tập 1

"Bà Huggins à, giá như tôi là bà, tôi sẽ dùng sec du lịch", ông giám đốc ngân hàng nói.

(khuyên) Ông Giám đốc ngân hàng khuyên bà ta dùng sec du lịch.

Hãy tiếp tục

4 'Stay on at school, Sandra, and take your exams,' the careers officer said.
(advise) . . . . . .

5 'You must play well today,' the manager said. 'It's the most important match of the season.'
(want) . . . . . .

6 'Business should improve soon,' said the Minister.
(expect) . . . . . .

7 'Go away, all of you !' she shouted. 'Leave me alone !'
(tell) . . . . . .

8 'You can't come into this discotheque wearing jeans, Miss,' the doorman said.
(not allow) . . . . . .

9 'You mustn't come home late,' said Sarah's father.
(forbid) . . . . . .

10 'Can I go out, Dad ?' Well, I think you really should stay in and finish your homework.'
(prefer) . . . . . .

11. 'Don't be too disappointed, Mr Jones. Take the test again. You'll probably pass it next time.' the driving instructor said.
(encourage) . . . . . .

12 'Don't argue. Just follow that car !' the policeman ordered the taxi-driver. 'All right, all right...' he replied.
(force) . . . . . .

13 'I'd rather not do it.' 'Oh, come on, Sam, you must.' 'No... really.' 'Oh, come on.' 'Oh... all right then.'
(persuade) . . . . . .

14 'I didn't want to do it. It was too embarrassing... but I had to,' he said.
(embarrass) . . . . . .

Exercise 2

Read this statement. Complete the spaces, selecting verbs from the language summary. Do not use the same verb twice.

Bài tập 2

Đọc tờ trình này. Điền vào các chỗ trống, chọn các động từ trong phần tóm tắt ngôn ngữ. Không dùng cùng một động từ 2 lần.

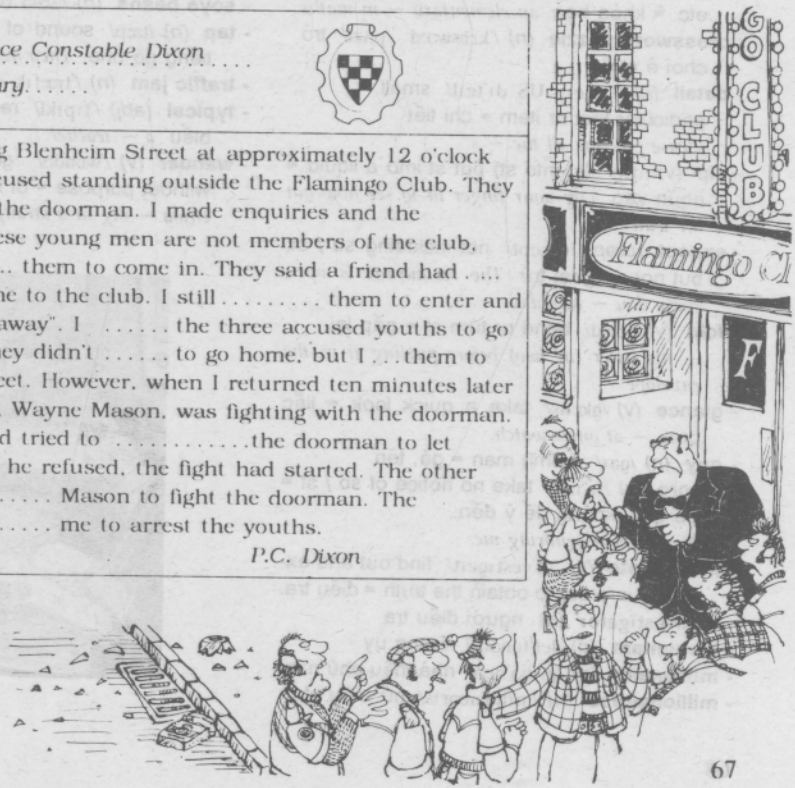
Tadworth Police

Statement by . *Police Constable Dixon* . . . . . .

Date . . *27th. February*. . . . . .

I was walking along Blenheim Street at approximately 12 o'clock when I saw the accused standing outside the Flamingo Club. They were arguing with the doorman. I made enquiries and the doorman said, "These young men are not members of the club, and I refused to ..... them to come in. They said a friend had . ... .them to come to the club. I still . . . . . them to enter and . . . . . .them to go away". I . . . . . the three accused youths to go home. They said they didn't . . . . . to go home, but I . . . them to move along the street. However, when I returned ten minutes later one of the accused, Wayne Mason, was fighting with the doorman. Apparently they had tried to . . . . . .the doorman to let them in, and when he refused, the fight had started. The other youths were . . . . . Mason to fight the doorman. The doorman . . . . . me to arrest the youths.

P.C. Dixon



Unit 10 A Funny Thing Happened To Me

Một chuyện buồn cười xảy đến cho tôi

VOCABULARY

- **afford** *(v)* /ə'fɔ:d/ have enough money, time for = đủ khả năng *They walked because they couldn't ~ (to take) a taxi.*
- **avoid** *(v)* /ə'vɔid/ keep oneself away from sb / st = tránh *~ driving in the centre of town.*
  avoidable *(adj)* /ə'vɔidəbl/
  avoidance *(n)* /ə'vɔidəns/ *Tax ~*
- **buddy** *(n)* /'bʌdi/ (infml esp US) friend = bạn thân *Hi there, ~ ! He and I were ~ ies at school.*
- **buffet** *(n)* /'bufei/ counter where food and drink may be bought and consumed, esp in a railway station or on a train = toa, quầy phục vụ ăn uống.
- **casually** *(adv)* /'kæʒuəli/ by chance = tình cờ, ngẫu nhiên *meet sb ~*
- **course** *(n)* /kɔ:s / series of lessons, lectures, etc. = khóa học *an elementary ~ in maths.*
- **crossword puzzle** *(n)* /'krɒswɔ:d 'pʌzl/ trò chơi ô chữ
- **detail** *(n)* /'di:teil, US di'teil/ small, particular fact or item = chi tiết *Please give me all the ~ s.*
- **dip** *(v)* /dip/ (st into st) put st into a liquid = nhúng vào *Dip your finger in to see how hot the water is.*
- **except** *(prep)* /ik'sept/ not including sb / st; but not = ngoại trừ *The restaurant is open every day ~ Monday.*
- **fold** *(v)* /fould/ bend or turn st = gấp lại *~ the letter (in two) before putting it in the envelope*
- **glance** *(v)* /glɑ:ns/ take a quick look = liếc qua *~ at one's watch.*
- **guy** *(n)* /gai/ (infml) man = gã, tên
- **ignore** *(v)* /ig'nɔ:/ take no notice of sb / st = bỏ qua, không để ý đến. *You've been ignoring me.*
- **investigate** *(v)* /in'vestigeit/ find out and examine in order to obtain the truth = điều tra.
  investigator *(n)* người điều tra
- **Lieutenant** *(n)* /lef'tenənt/ Trung úy
- **millionaire** *(n)* /miljə'neə/ nhà triệu phú nam
- **millionairess** *(n)* /miljə'neəris/ nữ triệu phú
- **nasty** *(adj)* /'nɑ:sti / unpleasant, disgusting = đáng ghét *a ~ smell, taste, sight.*
- **pop** *(v)* /pɒp/ (st across, in st) put st somewhere quickly or suddenly = cho vào, bỏ. *~ a letter in the post.*
- **pretend** *(v)* /pri'tend/ make believe = giả vờ *She ~ ed that she was not at home when we rang the bell.*
  pretension *(n)* /pri'tenʃn/
- **relieved** *(adj)* /ri'li:vd/ feeling relief = trút gánh nặng, nhẹ nhõm *a ~ look, smile, expression. We were ~ to hear you were safe.*
  relief *(n)* /ri'li:f/ The drug gives some ~ from pain
- **shocked** /ʃɒkt/ bị sốc, hoãng
- **stare** *(v)* /steə/ look steadily = nhìn chằm chặp *They all ~ ed in / with amazement.*
- **soya beans** *(n)* /'sɔiə bi:n/ đậu nành
- **tap** *(n)* /tæp/ sound of a quick light blow = tiếng gõ nhẹ *They heard a ~ at the door.*
- **traffic jam** *(n)* /'træfik dʒæm/ nạn kẹt xe
- **typical** *(adj)* /'tipikl/ representative = tiêu biểu *a ~ teacher*
- **wander** *(v)* /'wɒndə/ go from place to place without purpose = đi lang thang. *enjoy ~ ing in a strange town.*

EXPRESSIONS

get stuck /get stʌk/ bị mắc kẹt

make a fuss *(v)* /meɪk ə fʌs/ làm ầm lên

in fact sự thực, thực tế

I couldn't believe my eyes ! tôi không thể tin vào mắt mình

reach across /riːtʃ ə'krɒs/ với qua

USAGE

Notice this :

1. At that time of week
   this month
   year
   season

2. Get stuck in a traffic jam (bị kẹt xe)
Ex : We *got stuck* in a traffic jam this morning. So we were late for work

3. Carry on with something : continue (doing something)

4. There was nothing special about him
   cheap
   gentle

GRAMMAR NOTES

TO DO

1. Do + the + V-ing

Ex : do the cooking
ironing
shopping
washing
cleaning
bathing
gardening
booking

These verbal expressions indicate the action described by the very verbs that have the suffix [-ing].

2. Do + noun

Ex : do one's task
job
work
duty
homework
assignment
service

Here "do" means "perform" or "work at"

3. Do + an academic Subject (*Môn học*)

Ex : Do maths
history
physics
economics

TO MAKE

1. Make + Noun The meaning of this formation is equivalent to that of the verb derived from the nouns. However, English speakers prefer these verbal idiomatic expressions as they are more colorful and graceful.

Ex : Make a decision → decide
make an attempt → attempt
make a suggestion → suggest

2. Make + Noun as a fixed phrase

Ex : Make a bed
speech
noise
date

DO & MAKE + OBJECT

1. An object can be separated from its verb. This is *not true* when we use the nouns - derived verbs alone. (This explains N°1 - To make)

Ex : • Make a decision → That is a very difficult *decision* for the president to *make*.

• Make a suggestion → It would be a very valuable *suggestion to make* if it could be made possible.

2. A modifier can be used with the object

Ex : 1. He has made *a stupid* mistake.

2. She has done *her dirty* work.

3. The gentleman made *his kind* offer of help to the lady.

4. The businessman did make *several* arrangements with your honourable company.

• Make an excuse → He is late today and how good *an excuse* he had *made*.

• Do the shopping → The last *shopping* he *did* was on August 12th. Since then he had not been found anywhere.

etc.

A funny thing happened to me last Friday. I'd gone to London to do some shopping. I wanted to get some Christmas presents, and I needed to find some books for my course at college (you see, I'm a student). I caught an early train to London, so by early afternoon I'd bought everything that I wanted. Anyway, I'm not very fond of London, all the noise and traffic, and I'd made some arrangements for that evening. So, I took a taxi to Waterloo station. I can't really afford taxis, but I wanted to get the 3.30 train. Unfortunately the taxi got stuck in a traffic jam, and by the time I got to Waterloo, the train had just gone. I had to wait an hour for the next one. I bought an evening newspaper, the "Standard", and wandered over to the station buffet. At that time of day it's nearly empty, so I bought a coffee and a packet of biscuits... chocolate biscuits. I'm very fond of chocolate biscuits. There were plenty of empty tables and I found one near the window. I sat down and began doing the crossword. I always enjoy doing crossword puzzles.

After a couple of minutes a man sat down opposite me. There was nothing special about him, except that he was very tall. In fact he looked like a typical city businessman... you know, dark suit and briefcase. I didn't say anything and I carried on with my crossword. Suddenly he reached across the table, opened my packet of biscuits, took one, dipped it into his coffee and popped it into his mouth. I couldn't believe my eyes ! I was too shocked to say anything. Anyway, I didn't want to make a fuss, so I decided to ignore it. I always avoid trouble if I can. I just took a biscuit myself and went back to my crossword.

Thứ sáu rồi tôi đã gặp phải một chuyện ngộ nghĩnh. Tôi lên London đi mua sắm. Tôi muốn mua một vài thứ quà Giáng sinh và một ít sách cho chương trình học ở Đại học (các bạn biết đó, tôi là sinh viên). Tôi đã đón chuyến xe lửa khởi hành sớm đi London, vì vậy vào quá trưa là tôi đã mua xong những thứ tôi cần. Tuy nhiên, tôi không mấy thích London, tất cả sự ồn ào và xe cộ đông đúc như vậy, và lại, tôi cũng có sắp đặt trước vài chuyện phải làm chiều tối hôm đó. Vì vậy, tôi thuê một chiếc taxi về ga Waterloo. Thường thì tôi không có nhiều tiền lắm để lúc nào cũng đi taxi, nhưng lần này tôi muốn đón kịp chuyến tàu 3g30. Thật không may, chiếc taxi gặp nạn kẹt xe, và đến lúc tôi tới ga Waterloo thì xe lửa vừa mới đi mất rồi. Tôi lại phải chờ một tiếng nữa để đón chuyến xe kế tiếp. Tôi mua một tờ báo buổi chiều, tờ "Standard", và đi lửng thửng vào quán ăn của nhà ga. Vào giờ đó quán ăn hầu như vắng tanh, và tôi mua một tách cà phê và một gói bích qui,... bích qui sô-cô-la. Tôi luôn luôn thích bích qui sô-cô-la. Có rất nhiều bàn trống và tôi chọn một bàn gần cửa sổ. Tôi ngồi xuống và bắt đầu chơi ô chữ. Tôi lúc nào cũng thích chơi ô chữ.

Vài phút sau một người đàn ông ngồi vào bàn, đối diện với tôi. Trông ông ta chẳng có gì đặc biệt, ngoại trừ là ông ta rất cao. Nói cho đúng thì ông ta trông giống như một thương gia điển hình bạn thường thấy trong thành phố... bạn biết đấy, mặc bộ com-lê sẫm và xách cặp táp. Tôi chẳng nói gì cả và cứ tiếp tục chơi ô chữ. Thình lình ông ta với tay lên bàn, mở hộp bánh bích qui của tôi, nhón lấy một cái, nhúng vào cà phê và bỏ vào miệng. Tôi không còn tin vào mắt mình nữa ! Tôi quá sững sờ không nói được lời nào. Tuy vậy, tôi chẳng muốn làm lớn chuyện nên tôi quyết định cứ tảng lờ đi. Tôi luôn tránh rắc rối nếu có thể được. Tôi cũng lấy một cái và tiếp tục chơi ô chữ.

When the man took a second biscuit, I didn't look up and I didn't make a sound. I pretended to be very interested in the puzzle. After a couple of minutes, I casually put out my hand, took the last biscuit and glanced at the man. He was staring at me furiously. I nervously put the biscuit in my mouth, and decided to leave. I was ready to get up and go when the man suddenly pushed back his chair, stood up and hurried out of the buffet. I felt very relieved and decided to wait two or three minutes before going myself. I finished my coffee, folded my newspaper and stood up. And there, on the table, where my newspaper had been, was my packet of biscuits.

Khi ông ta lấy một chiếc bích qui thứ hai, tôi không buồn nhìn lên mà cũng chẳng nói gì. Tôi làm bộ như đang say sưa với trò ô chữ. Vài phút sau, tôi thản nhiên thò tay ra, lấy chiếc bánh cuối cùng và liếc nhìn ông ta. Ông ta đang trừng mắt nhìn tôi một cách phẫn nộ. Tôi bối rối bỏ bánh vào miệng và quyết định bỏ đi. Tôi đang chuẩn bị đứng lên đi thì người đàn ông nọ bỗng nhiên đẩy lùi ghế lại, đứng phắt lên và hấp tấp bước ra khỏi quán ăn. Tôi cảm thấy nhẹ nhõm và quyết định ngồi nán lại hai hay ba phút nữa trước khi đi. Tôi uống xong tách cà phê, gấp tờ báo lại và đứng lên. Và kia, trên bàn, nơi tôi để tờ báo trước đó, là hộp bánh bích qui của tôi.

Look at this :

'I'd gone to London to *do* some shopping.'
'I always enjoy *doing* crossword puzzles.'

'I'd *made* some arrangements.'
'I didn't want to *make* a fuss.'
'I didn't *make* a sound'

Do	Make
shopping	arrangements
work	an offer
homework	a suggestion
housework	a decision
cleaning	an attempt
washing up	an effort
gardening	an excuse

Do	Make
military service	a mistake
mathematics,	a noise
history,	a phonecall
literature, etc.	a date
(at school)	a profit
something	a bed
interesting	a cake
a (boring) job	a speech
	trouble

Exercise

I always do my homework.
We have to do military service in my country.
I never make a fuss.
I made my bed this morning.

Write ten sentences, five with 'do' and five with 'make'.

PRACTICE

Language summary

do and *make*.
He went somewhere to do something.
I'd made some arrangements.

Exercise 1

Complete the spaces with the appropriate forms of 'do' and 'make'.

Bài tập 1

Điền vào chỗ trống với các dạng phù hợp của 'Do' và 'MAKE'.

STAN SLADE – PRIVATE EYE

My name's Slade, Stan Slade, private investigator. The story begins one Saturday morning in June. I hadn't been very busy. In fact I'd . . . . only two jobs in a month. This big fat guy came into my office. He looked rich, very rich indeed – you know, fur coat, big cigar. He threw $1,000 on the table. He said, 'That's for one week. You're working for me.' Well, I don't usually . . . . . $1,000 in a month. 'What . . . . . you want me to . . . . . ?' I said. He sat down.

'This is an important job, Slade. I don't want you to . . . . . any mistakes, O.K. ? I want you to . . . . arrangements to follow my wife. Here's her photograph. She's much younger than me and well- I want to know everything she . . . , everything ! I want to know what time she gets up, when she . . . . . the housework when she . . . . . the beds, when she . . . . . the washing-up. I want every detail. Find out when she goes out, where she . . . . . the shopping and what she buys. I want to know when she . . . . . a phone call, and who she phones. Can you . . . . . that ?' 'Sure,' I said. 'She won't know I'm there. I won't . . . . . any fuss, and I won't . . . . . any noise'.

'Right,' said the big guy. 'By the way, can I . . . . . a suggestion ?' 'Sure, you're paying,' I said. ' . . . . . sure she doesn't see you. She's got some nasty friends, and they could . . . . . a lot of trouble for you.'

The fat guy left my office. I looked at the photo he'd given me, and the address. 'Well,' I thought to myself, 'I suppose I should go out and . . . . . some work'.

Exercise 2

These are some of Slade's notes.

Service station – gas ($30)

She went to the service station to get some gas.

Write five more sentences like this.

Bài tập 2

Đây là một số điều ghi chép của Slade.

Trạm xăng - xăng (30 đô la).

Chị ấy đến trạm xăng để đổ một ít xăng.

Viết thêm 5 câu giống mẫu.

9.00 Got up, made coffee	Supermarket – groceries
10.45 Left house	Drugstore – shampoo, vitamin pills
Service station- gas ($30)	Newstand – magazine
Coffee shop – made a phone call	Dress shop – collect coat
	11.32 return home

Exercise 3

This is the rest of Slade's story. Complete the spaces with the appropriate forms of 'do' and 'make'.

Bài tập 3

Đây là phần câu chuyện còn lại của Slade. Điền vào chỗ trống với các dạng thích hợp của "Do" và "MAKE".

It was pretty boring. I hoped that she would . . . something interesting, but nothing happened. On the third day I parked outside her apartment building, as usual. I began . . . . a crossword. I heard footsteps. Suddenly there was a tap on the window. I looked up. It was my old buddy, Lieutenant O'Casey of the 18th Precinct, Los Angeles Police Department.

' . . . . . me a favour, O'Casey,' I said, 'go away I've got a job to . . . . . ?'So have I, Slade', he replied. 'A lady has . . . . . a complaint. She says you've been following her. Have you been trying to . . . . . a date or something ?' 'O.K, O.K., O'Casey. I'm working for her husband.' 'Don't . . . me laugh, Slade ! She isn't married. Who's paying you ?' I described the fat guy O'Casey laughed. ' . . . . . he ask you to . . . . . a report on all her movements ?' 'That's right'.

'Well,' said O'Casey slowly, 'the lady is Laura Van Gilt, the millionairess. You remember, her father . . . . . a fortune out of soya beans. This fat guy sounds like Pete Greenstreet, the international jewel thief !'

Unit 11 Polite Requests

Những lời yêu cầu lịch sự

VOCABULARY

- **actually** *(adv)* /'æktʃuəli/ really = thực ra
  What did he – say ?
- **address** *(v)* /ə'dres/ (st to sb) direct to sb / st = nói *Please – all complaints to the manager.*
  (sb as st) use in speaking to = gọi
  Don't – me as 'colonel'. I'm only a major.
- **annoy** *(v)* /ə'nɔi/ irritate = làm khó chịu
  His constant sniffing – s me.
  annoyance *(n)* /ə'nɔiəns/ sự khó chịu
  a look of –.
- **ballroom** *(n)* /'bɔ:lru:m/ large room used for dancing
- **bloke** *(n)* /blouk/ (Brit infml) man = thằng, gã
- **bow tie** *(n)* /bou 'tai/ nơ bướm thắt ở cổ áo
- **character** *(n)* /'kærəktə/ person with an individuality = nhân vật
- **clap** *(v)* /klæp/ strike together = vỗ, dập
  She – ped her hands in delight.
- **confused** *(adj)* /kən'fju:zd/ unable to think clearly; bewildered = bối rối *All your changes of plan have made me totally –.*
  confusion *(n)* /kən'fju:ʒn/ bewilderment, embarrassment *gazing in – at the strange sight.*
- **deaf** *(adj)* /def/ unable to hear = điếc
- **dinner jacket** /'dinə 'dʒækit/ áo nghi lễ
- **good looking** *(adj)* /gud 'lukiŋ/ having a pleasing appearance = xinh, đẹp
  She's terribly –.
- **lemonade** /,lemə'neid/ lemon juice = nước chanh
- **lift** *(v)* /lift/ (sb / st up) raise sb / st to a higher position = nhấc lên *I – me up, mummy. I can't see.*
- **luggage rack** /'lʌgidʒ ræk/ kệ để hành lý.
- **multi – storey** /'mʌlti stɔ:ri/ having several floors = nhiều tầng
- **posh** *(adj)* /pɒʃ/ (infml) elegant, smart = bảnh bao, diện kẻng *a – car / hotel*
  You look very – in your new suit.
- **rack** *(n)* /ræk/ cái giá, cái kệ
- **scarf** *(n)* /ska:f/ piece of material worn for ornament or warmth round the neck or (by women) over the shoulders or hair.
- **shy** *(adj)* /ʃai/ timid and nervous = e thẹn
  He was too – to speak to her.
- **stage** *(n)* /steidʒ/ sân khấu
- **stuffy** *(adj)* /'stʌfi/ not having much fresh air = ngột ngạt *a smoky, – pub.*
- **terrified** *(adj)* /'terifaid/ feeling terror, very afraid = sợ hãi *– of the dark. I'm – at the prospect of being alone in the house.*
  terrify *(v)* /'terifai/ sb with terror; make very frightened *– ied his children with ghost stories.*

EXPRESSIONS

The only trouble was... điều rắc rối duy nhất là...
The same age as bằng tuổi
Good evening, ladies and gentlemen
kính thưa quí vị khán giả
To be in a queue xếp hàng

Ghi chú : Khi bạn cần yêu cầu ai làm gì một cách lịch sự, điều quan trọng là phong cách đề nghị của bạn chứ không phải là việc chọn ngôn ngữ. Bạn có thể nói "I wonder if you'd mind helping me ?" với vẻ bất lịch sự, hoặc là "Give me 20p, please" bằng thái độ lịch sự và thân thiện.

PROPER NAMES

Max Midwall /'mæks 'midwɔ:l/ Wigan /'wigən/

GRAMMAR NOTES

The request we make are well received or not depend on how we make them. English speech is formally divided into 3 degrees of politeness and/or formality (very) formal, semi-formal, and (very) informal. (Here we do not deal with such concepts as vulgarity and colloquialism). Notice how the degree of politeness and/or formality in the following requests decreases :

1.	Might May Could Can	I we	have	the	pleasure honour	of + Noun ... ? V-Ing

2.	I	wonder	if you would	be kind enough	to-Infinitive... ?
	We			so kind as	
				have the goodness + to-Infinitive ... ?	

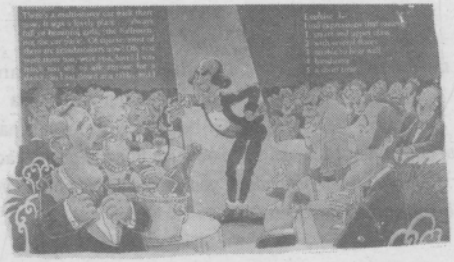
3.	Would you	be kind enough so kind as have the goodness	to-Infinitive... ?

4.	Would Do	you mind + V-Ing... ?

5.	Would Will Could Can	you (please) + bare infinitive.... ?

6.	Would Do	you like to-Infinitive... ?

7. **Imperative** As far as experience goes what is important is not to make a polite request what it should be but to make it what it really is.



Max Millwall used to be a popular comedian on British radio. He's nearly 70 now, but he still performs in clubs in the Midlands and North of England. He's on stage now at the All-Star Variety Club in Wigan.

Max Millwall từng là một diễn viên hài được mến mộ trên đài phát thanh Anh quốc. Bây giờ ông ta đã 70 tuổi, nhưng vẫn còn trình diễn trong các câu lạc bộ ở miền Trung du và miền Bắc nước Anh. Lúc này ông ta đang trình diễn tại Câu lạc bộ Tạp kỹ gồm các diễn viên ngôi sao tại Wigan.

Well, good evening, ladies and gentlemen... and others ! It's nice to be back in Wigan again. Well, I have to say that, I say it every night. I said it last night. The only trouble was that I was in Birmingham. I thought the audience looked confused ! Actually, I remember Wigan very well indeed. Really ! You know, the first time I came here was in the 1930s. I was very young and very shy... thank you, mother. No, you can't believe that, can you ? Well, it's true. I was very young and very shy. Anyway, the first Saturday night I was in Wigan, I decided to go to the local dance-hall. Do you remember the old 'Majestic Ballroom' in Wythenshawe Street ? There's a multi-storey car park there now. It was a lovely place... always full of beautiful girls, (the ballroom, not the car park). Of course, most of them are grandmothers now ! Oh, you were there too, were you, love ? I was much too shy to ask anyone for a dance. So I sat down at a table, and I thought I'd watch for a while. You know, see how the other lads did it. At the next table there was a lovely girl in a blue dress. She'd arrived with a friend, but her friend was dancing with someone. This bloke came over to her, he was very posh, wearing a dinner-jacket and a bow tie ! Well, he walked up to her and said, 'Excuse me, may I have the pleasure of the next dance ?' She looked up at him (she had lovely big blue eyes) and said 'Eh ? What did you say ?' So he said, 'I wonder if you would be kind enough to dance with me... er... if you don't mind.' 'Eee... no, thank you very much,' she replied.

A few minutes later, this other chap arrived. He had a blue suit, a nice tie, and a little moustache. He gave her this big smile, and said, "Would you be so kind as to have the next dance with me ?' 'Pardon ?' she said. I thought to myself 'She's a bit deaf... or maybe she hasn't washed her ears recently.'

'Would you mind having the next dance with me ?' he said, a bit nervously this time. 'Eee, no thanks, love. I'm finishing my lemonade,' she replied. 'Blimey ! I thought. This looks a bit difficult.'

Xin chào, quý bà quý ông... và các quý vị khác! Trở lại Wigan lần này thật là tuyệt. À, tôi phải nói câu này, đêm nào cũng nói câu này cả. Tối hôm qua tôi cũng nói như vậy. Điều xui xẻo duy nhất là tối hôm qua tôi lại đang ở Burmingham mới chết chứ. Tôi nghĩ là tối qua khán giả ngơ ngác chẳng hiểu gì cả. Thực ra mà nói, tôi còn nhớ Wigan rất rõ. Thật đấy ! Các bạn biết không, lần đầu tiên tôi đến đây là vào những năm 1930... Lúc ấy tôi hãy còn rất trẻ và rất rụt rè... cam ơn, má. Các bạn không tin điều đó sao ? Vậy mà đúng thật đó. Lúc đó tôi hãy còn rất trẻ và rất rụt rè. Tuy nhiên, ngay đêm thứ bảy đầu tiên ở Wigan tôi đã quyết định đến sàn nhảy tại đây. Các bạn có nhớ sàn nhảy "Majestic Ballroom" hồi trước ở đường Wythenshawe không ? Bây giờ ở đó là nhà đậu xe hơi nhiều tầng rồi. Đó là một nơi dễ thương... luôn luôn đầy những thiếu nữ xinh đẹp (tôi nói là sàn nhảy chứ không phải là nhà đậu xe đâu nhé). Dĩ nhiên phần lớn các cô nàng ấy bây giờ đã là bà ngoại bà nội cả rồi ! À, lúc đó cưng cũng ở đó nữa sao ? Tôi quá e thẹn chẳng dám mời ai nhảy cả. Vì vậy tôi ngồi vào bàn và nghĩ là mình nên ngồi xem một chốc đã. Các bạn biết đó, để xem người ta mời bạn gái nhảy như thế nào. Ở bàn kế bên có một cô gái rất dễ thương mặc áo đầm xanh. Cô nàng đến đó với một người bạn, nhưng người này đang nhảy với ai đó. Rồi một tên tiến lại gần cô ta, hắn trông rất bảnh bao, mặc áo nghi lễ và thắt nơ bướm ! Hắn tiến gần cô ta và nói "Xin lỗi, xin được hân hạnh nhảy với cô bản kế tiếp, được không ạ ? Cô ta ngước lên nhìn hắn (cô ta có cặp mắt to màu xanh hết sức dễ thương, và nói "Sao? Anh nói gì ạ ?" và hắn nói, "Tôi không biết là cô có vui lòng nhảy với tôi không ạ... nếu không phiền cô". "À, không được đâu, cảm ơn anh nhiều lắm nhé !" Cô ta trả lời.

Vài phút sau một gã khác lò dò bước tới. Hắn mặc bộ đồ xanh, thắt một chiếc cà vạt đẹp và để ria mép lún phún. Hắn toác miệng cười với cô ta, và nói "Cô có vui lòng nhảy với tôi bản kế tiếp không ?" "Sao ạ ?" Cô ta trả lời. Tôi thầm nghĩ cô ta hơi điếc... hoặc có lẽ gần đây cô ta chưa hề rửa tai lần nào !

"Cô có vui lòng nhảy với tôi bản kế tiếp không ạ ?" Lần này hắn nói với giọng hơi run. "A, không, cảm ơn anh. Tôi đang uống cho hết ly đá chanh !" Cô ta trả lời ! Ái chà ! Tôi nghĩ ! Trông ra hơi khó đấy !

Then this third fellow came over. He was very good-looking, you know, black teeth, white hair... sorry, I mean white teeth, black hair ! 'May I ask you something ?' he said, ever so politely. 'If you like,' she answered. 'Can I... I mean... could I... no, might I have the next dance with you ?' 'Oooh, sorry,' she said. 'My feet are aching. I've been standing up all day at the shop.'

By now, I was terrified. I mean, she'd said 'no' to all of them ! Then this fourth character thought he'd try.

"Would you like to dance ?' he said. 'What ?' she replied. She was a lovely girl, but I didn't think much of her voice ! 'Do you want to dance?' he said. She looked straight at him. 'No', she said. That's all. 'No'. Well, I decided to go home. I was wearing an old jacket and trousers, and nobody would say that I was good-looking! Just as I was walking past her table, she smiled. 'Er... dance ?' I said. 'Thank you very much,' she replied. And that was that ! It's our fortieth wedding anniversary next week.

Exercise 1

Go through and underline all the 'requests'. How many are there ?

Exercise 3

Find expressions that mean :

1 smart and upper class
2 with several floors

A Mike...
B Yes ?
A Shut the door will you ? It's freezing in here!
B Right... sorry.

close window/cold
open door/very hot

C Karen...
D Yes ?
C Lend me 20p. I've left my purse in the office.
D Oh, OK. Here you are.
C Thanks.

£1/wallet/ 50p/handbag

Rồi gã thứ ba bước đến. Hắn trông rất đẹp trai, các bạn biết đấy, răng đen, tóc trắng... xin lỗi, ý tôi muốn nói là răng trắng, tóc đen ! "Xin phép được hỏi cô một chút", hắn nói rất lịch sự. "Xin mời ông" cô ta trả lời "Tôi có thể... à... không biết liệu tôi có thể nhảy bản kế tiếp với cô được không ạ ?", "Ô, xin lỗi," Cô ta nói "Chân tôi mỏi như cả rồi. Suốt ngày nay tôi phải đứng bán hàng ở tiệm".

Tới lúc này thì tôi phát hoảng lên rồi. Cô ta đã khước từ tất cả bọn họ ! Rồi một gã thứ tư nghĩ là hắn sẽ thử xem sao.

"Xin mời cô nhảy", hắn nói. "Cái gì ?" Cô ta trả lời. Cô ta là một cô gái dễ thương, nhưng tôi lại chẳng thích giọng nói của cô ta chút nào ! "Cô có muốn nhảy không ?" Hắn nói. Cô ta nhìn thẳng vào mặt hắn ! "Không". Cô ta nói. Chỉ có vậy. "Không". Tôi quyết định ra về. Lúc đó tôi đang mặc một chiếc áo vét và chẳng ai dám bảo rằng tôi đẹp trai cả ! Ngay khi tôi đi ngang qua bàn của cô ta, cô ta mỉm cười ! "Nhảy không ?" Tôi nói. "Cảm ơn nhiều", cô ta trả lời. Vậy đó. Tuần tới là kỷ niệm 40 năm ngày cưới của chúng tôi.

Exercise 2

There are six words that mean 'man'. What are they ?

3 unable to hear well
4 handsome
5 a short time

A : Mike...
B : Gì đó ?
A : Làm ơn đóng cửa lại đi. Trong này lạnh phát cóng lên được.
B : Rồi... xin lỗi.

C : Karen.
D : Gì đó ?
C : Cho tôi mượn 20 p. Tôi để quên ví ở trong cơ quan rồi.
D : Được. Đây nè.
C : Cam ơn.

E Excuse me, could you pass me the sugar ?
F Oh, yes. Of course. There you are.
E Thank you very much.

vinegar salt pepper

E : Xin lỗi, làm ơn chuyển cho tôi lọ đường có được không ?
F : Vâng, đĩ nhiên. Đây nhé.
E : Cám ơn nhiều.

G Can I help you ?
H Oh, thank you. Would you mind putting my case on the rack ?
G Not at all. There you are.
H Oh, thank you so much. You're very kind.

luggage/up there bags/rack

G : Tôi giúp bà nhé ?
H : Ồ, cám ơn. Phiền ông để va li này lên giá được không ?
G : Được chứ. Xong rồi đó.
H : Ồ, cám ơn nhiều. Ông tử tế quá.

I Excuse me. It's a bit stuffy in here. Do you mind if I open the window ?
J No, no. I don't mind at all. I feel like some fresh air too.

cold/close/cold too

I : Xin lỗi. Trong này hơi ngộp. Tôi mở cửa ra có làm phiền anh không ?
J : Không sao. Chẳng có gì phiền cả. Tôi cũng muốn có một chút không khí mát mẻ.

feels hot/stuffy too

K Excuse me, Mrs Howe. May I ask you something ?
L Yes, Wendy, What is it ?
K May I have the day off next Friday ?
L Well, we're very busy. Is it important ?
K Er, yes, it is, really. It's my cousin's wedding.
L Oh, well ! Of course you can.

K : Xin lỗi bà Howe. Xin phép được hỏi bà một chút.
L : Được, Wendy. Nói đi.
K : Tôi xin phép nghỉ ngày thứ sáu tới được không ạ ?
L : À, chúng ta đang rất bận rộn đây. Chuyện đó có quan trọng lắm không?
K : Có thực sự là vậy. Đó là lễ cưới của em họ tôi.
L : Ồ, vậy thì đĩ nhiên là được.

Tuesday Wednesday Thursday cousin brother nephew niece

M Can I help you, sir ?
N I beg your pardon ?
M Can I help you, sir ?
N Oh, no... no, thank you. I'm just looking.

madam miss

M : Ông cần gì ạ ?
N : Cô nói sao ạ ?
M : Thưa ông, ông cần chi ?
N : Ôi, không... cám ơn. Tôi chỉ đang xem thôi.

pardon ? sorry ?

O Good morning.

P Good morning. I wonder if you can help me. I'm trying to find a Christmas present, for my father.

O Might I suggest a tie ?

P Hmm... perhaps. Could you show me some ties ?

wedding/cousin/some towels

Q Excuse me...

R Yes ?

Q I wonder if you'd be kind enough to get me one of those tins... on the top shelf. I can't reach it.

R Certainly. There you are.

Q Thank you very much indeed.

packet jar box bottle

O : Xin chào ông.

P : Chào cô. Không biết cô có giúp tôi được không. Tôi đang tìm một món quà giáng sinh cho ba tôi.

O : Tôi đề nghị một cái cà vạt được không?

P : Hmm... có lẽ được. Cho tôi xem một số cà vạt đi.

birthday/sister/scarf

Q : Xin lỗi.

R : Gì ạ ?

Q : Không biết ông có thể vui lòng giúp tôi lấy một hộp trên kia không.... ở ngăn trên cùng đó. Tôi với không tới.

R : Được chứ. Đây nè ba.

Q : Cám ơn ông nhiều lắm.

PRACTICE

Language summary

Requests and enquiries

Lend me 20p.

Shut the door, will you ?

Do you want a coffee ?

Would you like a coffee ?

Can I	*ask you something ?*
Could I	
May I	
Might I	
Do you mind if I	
I wonder if I could	
Would you mind if I	*asked you something ?*

Would you mind doing something ?.

I wonder if you'd mind doing something ?

Would you be kind enough to do it ?

Would you be so kind as to do it ?

I wonder if you can/could help me ?

Not at all.

I don't mind at all.

Thank you so much.

No, thanks. I'm just looking.

Note. When you make a polite request, it is often the *way* that you say something which is important, not the choice of a particular expression. You can say 'I wonder if you'd mind helping me ?' in a rude way, or 'Give me 20p, please, 'in a polite and friendly way.

Exercise 1

You're in a hot and stuffy room. The corridors are closed.

Would you mind opening a window ?

Bài tập 1

Bạn đang ở trong căn phòng nóng bức và ngột ngạt. Các cửa đều đóng.

Chị chịu phiền mở cánh cửa sổ ra nhé ?

1 Your case is on a luggage rack. It's much too heavy for you to lift down.

. . . . . .

2 You have just answered the phone. There's a pan of milk on the cooker, and it's boiling over. . . . . .

. . . . . .

3 You work in an office. You're talking to a very important customer. Another employee has just come in. (She didn't knock on the door). She wants you to sign a birthday card for the office boy.

. . . . . .

Exercise 2

You want to ask someone a very personal question. You can say :

A *May I ask you something ?*

or B *Do you mind if I ask you something ?*

or C *Would you mind if I asked you something ?*

Write three questions for each of these.

1 You want to leave work early tonight. Ask your boss.

2 You're in someone's house. You feel like having a cigarette.

3 You've just discovered that you haven't got any money. The banks close in twenty minutes. Ask your boss for permission.

4 You're at a party. You've just been introduced to 'Nicola Barker'. She's about the same age as you. You don't want to address her as Miss Barken.

Exercise 3

1 You're in a shop. The assistant has just said "Can I help you ?' You only came into the shop because it's raining. What might you say ?

2 You're sharing a table in a restaurant. The other person at the table has just said. 'Do you mind if I smoke ?' You're a smoker yourself. What do you say ?

3 You're in a queue in a self-service restaurant with your best friend. You haven't got any change. You need 35p for a cup of coffee. What do you say to him ?

4 You're in a shoe shop. The assistant has shown you several pairs of shoes, but you really want to see a pair in the window. . . . . .

. . . . . .

5 It's a cold winter's day. Someone has just opened a window.

. . . . . .

Bài tập 2

Bạn muốn hỏi một người nào đó một câu hỏi rất riêng tư. Bạn có thể nói :

A : Cho phép tôi hỏi chị một điều nhé ?

hoặc : B : Tôi hỏi chị một điều chị có phiền lòng không ?

hoặc : C : Nếu tôi hỏi điều này chị có phiền không ?

Viết 3 câu hỏi cho mỗi tình huống sau :

Bài tập 3

1. Bạn đang ở trong một cửa hàng. Người bán hàng vừa nói : "Anh cần mua chi?" Bạn chỉ vào cửa hàng vì trời đang mưa. Bạn sẽ trả lời thế nào ?

4 You're at a friend's house and you have to make an important long distance phone call. What do you say?

5 You go into a café. The only free seat is at a table with other people. What might you say to them ?

6 You're on the beach, sunbathing. The people next to you have their radio on, and it's annoying you. What might you say ?

Unit 12 A Trip To Spain

Chuyến đi Tây Ban Nha

VOCABULARY

- **boutique** *(n)* /bu:'ti:k/ small shop selling clothes and other articles of the latest fashion = cửa hàng nhỏ bán đồ thời trang
- **corskrew** *(n)* /kɔ:kskru:/ cái mở nút bấc
- **documentary** *(n)* /ˌdɔkjʊ'mentrɪ/ documentary film or radio or TV programme = phim, chương trình tư liệu
  a ~ on / about drug abuse.
- **fish hook** /'fɪʃ hʊk/ lưỡi câu
- **label** *(n)* /'leɪbl/ piece of paper, cloth, metal on an object describing its nature, name... cái nhãn *put a ~ on one's luggage.*
- **lobby** *(n)* /'lɔbɪ/ porch, entrance-hall or ante-room = hành lang. *the ~ of a hotel, theatre*
- **magnifying glass** /'mægnɪfaɪŋ glɑ:s/ kính phóng đại
- **newstand** *(n)* /'nju:zstænd/ bookstall = quầy sách báo
- **pack** *(v)* /pæk/ put st in a container for transport or storing = gói đồ đạc
- **sales representative** /seɪlz,reprɪ 'zentətɪv/ đại diện hãng buôn
- **small change** *(n)* /smɔ:l tʃeɪndʒ/ coins of low value = tiền lẻ *I've no small change.*
- **suck** *(v)* /sʌk/ roll st with the tongue while holding it in the mouth = ngậm, mút
  a child that ~ s its thumb.
- **television presenter** /telə'vɪʒn prɪ'zentə/ người giới thiệu chương trình trên truyền hình
- **tip** *(v)* /tɪp/ give a small sum of money to (a waiter, taxi-driver...) = thưởng, cho tiền (nước) *tip the porter 50p.*
- **toiler bag** /'tɔɪlɪt bæg/ bag containing articles like hair brushes, combs, hand mirror, etc. = túi đựng đồ cá nhân
- **underclothes** *(n)* /'ʌndəkləʊðz/ underwear = đồ lót

EXPRESSIONS

I'll give you a hand mẹ sẽ giúp con một tay
Don't fuss đừng ầm ĩ
There's nothing to worry about không có gì phải lo cả
There's plenty of time còn nhiều thời gian chán mà
Have a good trip ! chúc đi vui vẻ nhé

Look after yourself ! giữ gìn sức khỏe đó
By train / taxi / bus / plane bằng tàu lửa / taxi / xe buýt / máy bay
at the other end ở phía đầu kia
down the side phía bên hông
inside bên trong
on top lên đến nóc, đầy ứ

PROPER NAMES

Heathrow	/'hi:θrəʊ/	Norman Garrard	/nɔ:mən 'gærəd/
Madrid	/mə'drɪd/	Southampton	/saʊ'θæmptən/
		Woking	/'wəʊkɪŋ/

USAGE

1. Go on business	đi công tác / công chuyện
2. Go in = fit in	để vừa vào (cái gì)
3. Go on top	đưa, đặt, để trên cùng

GRAMMAR NOTES

Noun Pattern

Noun + to-infinitive

1. In this pattern, the noun is often one that is identical (trùng với) with, or is connected with (liên quan với), a verb that can be used with a to-infinitive (see unit 6)

Ex : 1. Another *attempt to climb* the mountain will be made next year (= They will *attempt to climb* the mountain again next year)

2. Anne's *desire to please* her mother-in-law was clear to all of us (= Anne clearly *desired to please* her mother-in-law)

3. You have not kept your *promise to write* to me more frequently (=You *promised to write* to me more frequently)

etc.

2. The noun is also one that has a corresponding (tương ứng) adjective that is used with a to-infinitive

Ex : 1. His *anxiety to go* was obvious.
(= he was obviously anxious to go)

2. He was filled with *ambition to become* famous.
(= he was ambitious to become famous)

3. I feel doubtful about his *ability to do* the work.
(= Is he able to do the work, I wonder)

etc.

3. The infinitive may in some cases be looked upon as the equivalent of a relative clause. It is often passive in meaning.

Ex :1. He has a large family to support
(= that he must support or his family to *be supported*)
passive

2. Is this the way to do it ?
(= in which it *should be done*)
passive

3 There are many difficulties to overcome
(= *to be overcome* or that will have to be overcome)
passive

(Ask your teacher for examples on 1, 2 & 3 if this should be advisable)

Norman Garrard is a trainee sales representative. He's 22, and he works for a company that sells toys. He's going to Spain on business. It's his first business trip abroad, and he's packing his suitcase. He lives with his parents, and his mother is helping him, and fussing.

Mrs Garrard Norman... haven't you finished packing yet ?

Norman No, Mum. But it's all right. There isn't much to do.

Mrs Garrard Well, I'll give you a hand. Oh, there isn't much room left. Is there anywhere to put your toilet bag ?

Norman Garrard là một đại diện thương mại tập sự. Anh ta 22 tuổi, đang làm việc cho một công ty bán đồ chơi. Anh ta sắp đi Tây Ban Nha lo công chuyện. Đây là chuyến đi công tác ra nước ngoài lần đầu tiên của anh ta, và anh ta đang sắp xếp hành lý. Anh ta ở với bố mẹ, và mẹ của Garrard đang lăng xăng giúp anh ta.

Bà Garrard : Norman này... con sắp đặt xong cả chưa?

Norman : Chưa mẹ à. Nhưng ổn cả thôi. Đâu có phải làm gì nhiều.

Bà Garrard : Để mẹ giúp một tay. Ồ, chẳng còn mấy chỗ trong này. Có chỗ nào để túi đựng đồ vệ sinh của con không ?

Norman Yes, yes... it'll go in here. Now, I've got three more shirts to pack... they'll go on top... but there's another pair of shoes to get in. I don't know where to put them.

Mrs Garrard Put them down the side. Right. I think we can close it now.

Norman Right. Where's the label ?

Mrs Garrard Which label, dear ?

Norman The airline label to put on the suitcase. Ah, here it is.

Mrs Garrard Now, have you got the key ?

Norman Which key ?

Mrs Garrard The key to lock the case, of course.

Norman It's in the lock, Mum. Don't fuss. There's nothing to worry about. There's plenty of time.

Mrs Garrard Have you forgotten anything ?

Norman I hope not.

Mrs Garrard And you've got a safe pocket to keep your passport in ?

Norman Yes, it's in my inside jacket pocket.

Mrs Garrard Have you got a book to read on the plane ?

Norman Yes, it's in my briefcase.

Mrs Garrard And has everything been arranged ?

Norman What do you mean ?

Mrs Garrard Well, is there someone to meet you at the other end ?

Norman Oh yes. The Spanish representative's meeting me at the airport.

Mrs Garrard And you've got somewhere to stay tonight ?

Norman I hope so ! Now, everything's ready. I'll just have to get some pesetas at the airport. I'll need some small change to tip the porter, but that's all.

Norman : Có, có... cho nó vào đây. Bây giờ con còn phải sắp thêm vào ba cái áo sơ mi nữa... chúng sẽ nằm ở bên trên này... nhưng lại còn có thêm một đôi giày nữa chứ. Con chưa biết phải sắp chúng vào chỗ nào nữa.

Bà Garrard : Để chúng bên hông vali ấy. Được rồi. Mẹ nghĩ là có thể đóng nắp vào được rồi đấy.

Norman : Rồi. Cái nhãn đâu rồi ?

Bà Garrard : Nhãn nào, con ?

Norman : Nhãn của hãng hàng không để gắn vào vali. À, đây rồi.

Bà Garrard : Thế con có chìa khóa chưa ?

Norman : Chìa khóa nào hở mẹ ?

Bà Garrard : Thì chìa khóa để khóa vali chứ chìa khóa nào nữa.

Norman : À, nó đang ở trong ổ khóa kia mẹ. Mẹ đừng có cuống lên, có gì đâu mà phải lo. Còn khối thì giờ.

Bà Garrard : Con có quên gì không ?

Norman : Hy vọng là không.

Bà Garrard : Con có một chiếc túi an toàn để mà đựng hộ chiếu đấy chứ ?

Norman : Vâng. Con để nó ở túi trong của áo vét.

Bà Garrard : Con có sách để đọc trên máy bay chưa?

Norman : Dạ có rồi, nó ở trong cặp của con.

Bà Garrard : Vậy mọi thứ đã sắp xếp xong chưa ?

Norman : Ý mẹ nói sao ?

Bà Garrard : À, có người nào đón con ở sân bay bên kia không ?

Norman : Dạ có rồi. Nhân viên đại diện phía Tây Ban Nha sẽ đón con ở phi trường.

Bà Garrard : Và con có nơi nào để nghỉ lại tối nay chưa ?

Norman : Con hy vọng là có ! Bây giờ mọi thứ đã chuẩn bị xong rồi. Con chỉ còn phải đổi vài đồng peseta ở phi trường nữa thôi. Con sẽ cần đến một ít tiền lẻ để puộc boa cho người khuân vác va li, vậy thôi.

Mrs Garrard Well, have a good trip, dear... and look after yourself.

Norman Thanks, Mum.

Mrs Garrard Oh ! I nearly forgot ! Here are some sweets to suck on the plane, you know, when it's coming down.

Norman Oh. Mum... don't worry. I'll be all right, really ! I'll see you next week.

Exercise 1

Norman lives in Southampton. He went by taxi to the station, then by train to Woking, then by bus to Heathrow and finally by plane to Madrid. How can you get to your nearest international airport ? Which is the best way for you ?

Exercise 2

Norman made a list. Look at it.

He remembered to pack his shirts.

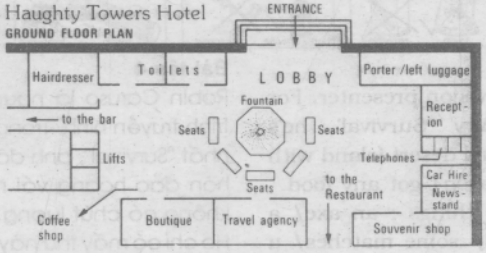
He forgot to pack his raincoat.

Write seven sentences.

PRACTICE

Language summary

Noun + infinitive	Pronoun/adverb + infinitive	Verb + infinitive
I've got three more shirts to pack. *Have you got a book to read on the plane ?* *Which key ? The key to lock the case.*	*Is there anywhere to put it ?* *There's nothing to worry about.* *You've got somewhere to stay tonight.*	*Remember to do.../ forget to do...*



Exercise 1

Mr Stephens has just arrived at the Haughty Towers Hotel. His room isn't ready yet.

Mr Stephens *Is there anywhere to leave my bags ?*

Bà Garrard : Chúc con lên đường bình an... nhớ giữ gìn cẩn thận.

Norman : Cảm ơn mẹ.

Bà Garrard : Ồ ! Suýt nữa mẹ quên mất ! Con cầm lấy một ít kẹo để ngậm khi lên máy bay, con biết đó, khi máy bay hạ cánh.

Norman : Kia mẹ... đừng lo mà ! Con sẽ ổn cả thôi, thật mà ! Tuần tới con sẽ gặp lại mẹ.

Exercise 3

Imagine that you have just been on a plane. The airline has lost your suitcase. Think about the clothes you would pack for a one week holiday in London, in Spring. Make a list of the clothes you had in your suitcase.

One dark blue woollen pullover.

One brown leather belt.

Bài tập 1

Ông Stephens vừa đến khách sạn Haughty Towers. Phòng của ông chưa chuẩn bị xong.

Ô. Stephens : Có chỗ nào để các túi xách của tôi không ?

Receptionist Yes, you can leave them with the hotel porter, over there.

What other questions with '... anywhere to...' might he ask ?

Exercise 2

Haven't you finished packing yet ? (3 more shirts)

No, I've got three more shirts to pack.

1 Have you finished work yet ? (several more letters) . . . . . .

2 Have you done all your homework ? (2 more exercises) . . . . . .

Exercise 3

The Livingstone family are on their first camping holiday. They've just unloaded the car, and they've forgotten several important things.

1 *They remembered to bring some tins, but they forgot to bring a tin-opener.*

Look at the pictures below and write four more sentences.

Tiếp tân : Có, ông có thể để đồ đạc cho người khuân vác của khách sạn, ở đằng kia kìa.

Ông ấy có thể hỏi thêm các câu hỏi nào khác với "... anywhere to..."

Bài tập 2

Anh chưa gói đồ đạc xong à ? (3 áo sơ mi nữa).

Chưa, tôi còn phải xếp thêm 3 áo sơ mi nữa.

3 Haven't you finished that book yet ? (4 more chapters) . . . . . .

4 Have you addressed all the letters yet? (a few more) . . . . . .

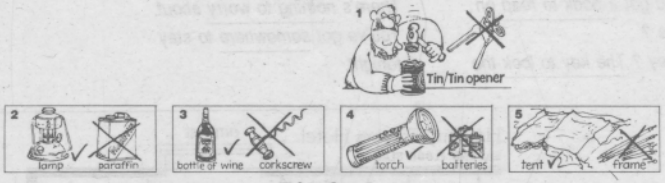
5 Have you made all the arrangements ? (a couple more phone calls) . . . . . .

Bài tập 3

Gia đình Livingstone đang trong kỳ đi cắm trại đầu tiên của họ. Họ vừa chất đồ đạc trên xe xuống và họ đã quên nhiều món quan trọng.

1. Họ nhớ mang vài hộp thiếc, nhưng họ quên mang theo cái mở hộp.

Nhìn vào tranh dưới đây và viết thêm 4 câu nữa.



Exercise 4

Robin Caruso is a television presenter. For his latest documentary 'Survival', he's spending two weeks on a desert island with a cameraman. They haven't got any food. They've just got these things : an axe/ a gun/ some fish-hooks/ some matches/ a hammer and nails/ a two-way radio/ a pen and paper/ a magnifying glass/ some books/ plenty of fresh water/ a knife.

They've got a two-way radio to use in emergencies.

Write ten more sentences.

Bài tập 4

Robin Caruso là người giới thiệu chương trình truyền hình. Trong bộ phim tài liệu mới nhất "Survival", anh đã qua 2 tuần trên một hòn đảo hoang với người quay phim. Họ không có chút lương thực gì.

Họ chỉ có mấy thứ này : một cái rìu/ một cây súng/ vài lưỡi câu/ một số diêm quẹt/ một cái búa và đinh/ một cái radiô thu phát/ một cây viết và giấy/ kính phóng đại/ vài quyển sách/ nhiều nước ngọt/ một con dao.

Họ có một cái đài thu phát để dùng trong trường hợp khẩn cấp.

Viết thêm 10 câu nữa.

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Units 9-12

Dialogue A

Listen Sharon's still at school. She's leaving next year. She's gone to the Careers Advisory Service.
Mrs Cooper Hello, there. Do come in... It's Sharon, isn't it ?
Sharon That's right. Sharon Harper.
Mrs Cooper My name's Mrs Cooper, and I'm the Careers Officer. Is this your first visit ?
Sharon Yes, er... my teacher told me to come.
Mrs Cooper Told you ? Didn't you want to come, then ?
Sharon Yes, I did. But... isn't it a bit of a waste of time ? I mean, it's nearly impossible to find a job round here !
Mrs Cooper It *is* difficult to find a job, Sharon. But nothing's impossible !

Listen and repeat

A1 *Listen*

A : Who told you to come ? Was it your teacher ?
B : Yes. My teacher told me to come.
C : Yes. My teacher told me to come.
A : Who persuaded them to do it ? Was it their father ?
B : Yes. Their father persuaded them to do it.
C : Yes. Their father persuaded them to do it.

Now you do the same

Who told you to come ? Was it your teacher ?
..... Yes. My teacher told me to come.
Who persuaded them to do it ? Was it their father ?
..... Yes. Their father persuaded them to do it.
Who asked her to be quiet ? Was it her sister ?
..... Yes. Her sister asked her to be quiet.
Who helped him to finish it ? Was it his boss ?
..... Yes. His boss helped him to finish it.

A2 *Listen*

A : I can't get a job. It's nearly impossible.
B : It's nearly impossible to get a job.
C : It's nearly impossible to get a job.
A : We can't find a flat. It's very difficult.
B : It's very difficult to find a flat.
C : It's very difficult to find a flat.

Now you do the same

I can't get a job. It's nearly impossible ..... It's nearly impossible to get a job.
We can't find a flat. It's very difficult ..... It's very difficult to find a flat.
They can't understand. It isn't easy ..... It isn't easy to understand.
She can't find a job. It's quite hard ..... It's quite hard to find a job.

Dialogue B

Listen It's 20 minutes later.
Mrs Cooper You've answered all my questions, Sharon. Now, what would you like to do ?
Sharon Er... You won't tell any of my friends, will you ? They'd laugh.
Mrs Cooper I'm here to help you, Sharon. Of course I won't tell anybody.
Sharon Well, I'd like to be a policewoman.
Mrs Cooper A policewoman ? That sounds interesting.
Sharon Am I old enough to apply ?
Mrs Cooper Hmm. You're too young to join the police, but there are several training schemes...

Listen and repeat

B1 *Listen*

A : I want to help you. That's why I'm here.
B : I'm here to help you.
C : I'm here to help you.

Now you do the same

I want to help you. That's why I'm here ..... I'm here to help you.

A : He'll answer your questions. That's why he's there.
B : He's there to answer your questions.
C : He's there to answer your questions.

B2 *Listen*

A : I'm not very old. Can I apply?
B : Am I old enough to apply ?
C : Am I old enough to apply ?
A : He isn't very tall. Can he be a policeman ?
B : Is he tall enough to be a policeman ?
C : Is he tall enough to be a policeman ?

B3 *Listen*

A : She wants to join the police, but she's very young.
B : She's too young to join the police.
C : She's too young to join the police.
A : He wants to be a policeman, but he's very short.
B : He's too short to be a policeman.
C : He's too short to be a policeman.

He'll answer your questions. That's why he's there .....He's there to answer your questions.
We want to listen. That's why we're here .....We're here to listen.
She'll tell you about it. That's why she's there ..... She's there to tell you about it.

Now you do the same

I'm not very old. Can I apply ? ..... Am I old enough to apply ?
He isn't very tall. Can he be a policeman ?.....Is he tall enough to be a policeman ?
They aren't very fit. Should they play football ? .....Are they fit enough to play football ?
She isn't very strong. Is she able to lift it ? .....Is she strong enough to lift it ?

Now you do the same

She wants to join the police, but she's very young ..... She's too young to join the police.
He wants to be a policeman, but he's very short ..... He's too short to be a policeman.
They want to play football, but they're a bit old .....They're too old to play football.
She wants to lift it, but she's rather weak.....She's too weak to lift it.

Dialogue C

Listen

Sharon How can I find out about the training schemes ?
Mrs Cooper I'll phone and ask them to send you some information. They'll probably arrange to see you, if that's all right.
Sharon Oh, yes. Thank you, Mrs Cooper.
Mrs Cooper You'll have to work hard, Sharon. There'll be exams to pass.
Sharon I'm willing to work hard. I just want to do a useful job.
Mrs Cooper I'm sure you'll be successful, Sharon. Now, take this form home. There are just a few questions to answer... then could you post it back to me ?

Listen and repeat

C1 *Listen*

A : You'll have to work hard. Are you willing ?
B : Yes, I'm willing to work hard.
C : Yes, I'm willing to work hard.
A : You'll have to begin soon. Are you ready ?
B : Yes, I'm ready to begin soon.
C : Yes, I'm ready to begin soon.

Now you do the same

You'll have to work hard. Are you willing ?.....Yes, I'm willing to work hard.
You'll have to begin soon. Are you ready ? .....Yes, I'm ready to begin soon.
You'll have to work at night. Are you happy about that ? .....Yes, I'm happy to work at night.
You'll have to pass exams. Are you able ? .....Yes, I'm able to pass exams !

C2 Listen

A : There'll be exams. You'll have to pass them.
B : There'll be exams to pass.
C : There'll be exams to pass.
A : There are some questions. Could you answer them ?
B : There are some questions to answer.
C : There are some questions to answer.

Now you do the same

There'll be exams. You'll have to pass them
..... There'll be exams to pass.
There are some questions. Could you answer them ?
..... There are some questions to answer.
There'll be lots of jobs. Will you be able to do them ?
..... There'll be lots of jobs to do.
There are the laws. Can you learn about them ?
..... There are the laws to learn about.

Exercise

Listen

A : enjoyed
B : I enjoyed doing it.
C : I enjoyed doing it.

A : threatened
B : I threatened to do it.
C : I threatened to do it.

A : scared
B : I was scared of doing it.
C : I was scared of doing it.

Now you do the same

enjoyed..... I enjoyed doing it.
threatened..... I threatened to do it.
scared..... I was scared of doing it.
gave up..... I gave up doing it.
couldn't stand..... I couldn't stand doing it.
bored..... I was bored with doing it.
managed..... I managed to do it.
arranged..... I arranged to do it.
fed up..... I was fed up with doing it.
promised..... I promised to do it.

Listening

You are going to hear two people requesting things. One's a man, the other's a woman. You will have to say which one is being more polite, the man or the woman. Remember that it is not simply the words they use, but how they say them. Listen.

1

Man Waiter ! I wonder if you'd be kind enough to bring me a coffee. I've been sitting here for ten minutes.
Woman Excuse me ! Er... another coffee, please.

Which one's being more polite ?..... The woman.

2

Man Hello, can I have a ticket for tonight's concert, please ?
Woman Hello, can I have a ticket for tonight's concert, please ?

Which one ?..... The man.

3

Man Jim, give me a pen... mine's broken.
Woman Jill, give me that pen ! Thank you.

Which one ?..... The man.

4

Man Do you mind if I smoke ?
Woman Do you mind if I open the window ?

Which one ?..... The man.

5

Man Could you type this ? I'll need three copies.
Woman Could you post this for me ? Thank you.

Which one ?..... The woman.

6

Man I'm sorry, but would you mind putting out your cigarette ?
Woman I'm sorry, but would you mind putting out your cigarette ?

Which one ?..... The man.

Open conversation

Listen and reply. Imagine that you are at the Careers Office. Answer Mrs Cooper's questions

A : Hello, there.
B : .....
A : What's your name ?
B : .....
A : Are you looking for a full-time or a part-time job ?
B : .....
A : And what would you like to do ?
B : .....
A : Why are you interested in doing that ?
B : .....
A : Do you like meeting people ?
B : .....
A : What do you like doing in your free time ?
B : .....
A : What sort of things don't you like doing ?
B : .....
A : Why ?
B : .....
A : What school subject did you enjoy most ?
B : .....
A : Were you good at it ?
B : .....
A : Fine. Do you want to ask any questions ?
B : .....
A : Thanks for coming.
B : .....
A : That's the end of section three.

Notes to Learners : Try to comple every task in the Listening Consolidation Part and record your voice from time to time. This may help you improve your listening and speaking skill

Unit 13 Flying To Spain

Đáp máy bay đến Tây Ban Nha

VOCABULARY

- **agent** *(n)* /'eɪdʒənt/ person who acts for or manages the affairs of other people in business = đại diện hãng
  an insurance ~, a travel ~.
- **air traffic controls** *(n)* /eə'træfɪk kən'trəul/ = đài kiểm soát không lưu
- **baggage reclaim** *(n)* /'bægɪdʒ rɪ'kleɪm/ place where people can take back their baggage = nơi lấy hành lý gửi.
- **catering** *(n)* /'keɪtərɪŋ/ providing food, etc. for social events = sự cung cấp thực phẩm
  Who did the ~ for your son's wedding ?
  cater *(v)* /keɪtə/ (for st/sb) provide food and services, esp at social functions. *~ for a party, banquet.*
  caterer *(n)* /'keɪtərə/ *person whose job is providing food for large social events.*
- **chapel** *(n)* /'tʃæpəl/ place for christian worship by Non conformists = nhà thờ không theo quốc giáo
- **clearance** *(n)* /'klɪərəns/ clearing, removing or tidying st = sự làm sạch, dọn quang
  slum ~, ~ sale.
- **departure lounge** *(n)* /dɪ'pa:tʃə laundʒ/ place where passengers wait to board the plane = phòng chờ đợi ở sân bay
- **descent** *(n)* /dɪ'sent/ descending, landing = sự hạ cánh, đáp xuống
  descend *(v)* /dɪ'send/ go down = hạ xuống
- **destination** *(n)* /ˌdestɪ'neɪʃn/ place to which st/ sb is being sent or going = nơi đến
  ToKyo was our final ~.
- **disabled facilities** *(n)* /dɪs'eɪbld fə'sɪlətɪz/ = đồ dùng cho người tàn tật
- **extinguish** *(v)* /ɪk'stɪŋgwɪʃ/ put out = dập tắt
- **fasten** *(v)* /'fa:sn/ tie = cột chặt
- **fortify** *(v)* /'fɔ:tɪfaɪ/ support or strengthen = củng cố, tăng cường.
- **landing card** *(n)* /'lændɪŋ ka:d/ form for people to fill in before landing or entering a country = phiếu đáp, thẻ vào một quốc gia.
- **permit** *(v)* /pə'mɪt/ allow = cho phép
  Dogs are not ~ ted in the building.
  permission *(n)* /pə'mɪʃn/ *You have my ~ to leave.*
- **pleasure** *(n)* /'pleʒə/ state of being happy or satisfied = sự vui lòng. *It gives me great ~ to welcome our speaker.*
- **proceed** *(v)* /prə'si:d, prəu-/ go on = tiến hành *Work is ~ ing slowly.*
- **purpose** *(n)* /'pɜ:pəs/ intention = mục đích
  Getting rich seems to be her only ~ in life.
- **regret** *(v)* /rɪ'gret/ feel regret about = hối tiếc
  I ~ that I cannot help.
  regret *(n)* /rɪ'gret/ express, feel ~ at / *about a missed opportunity*
  regrettable /- əbl/ *~ failures, losses, mistakes.*
- **remain** *(v)* /rɪ'meɪn/ stay in the same place = lưu, ở lại *I ~ in London until May.*
- **slight** *(adj)* /slaɪt/ not serious or important = chút ít *a ~ headache.*
- **smoking materials** *(n)* /'sməʊkɪŋ mə'tɪərɪəlz/ = thuốc hút
- **sparkling** *(adj)* /'spa:klɪŋ/ lively, bright = lấp lánh
- **spirits** *(n)* /'spɪrɪts/ strong distilled alcoholic drink = rượu mạnh. *Whisky, brandy, gin and rum are all ~.*
- **tariff** *(n)* /'tærɪf/ duty to paid on imports = thuế quan *Raise ~ barriers against foreign goods.*
- **trolley** *(n)* /'trɒlɪ/ xe đẩy tay
- **turbulence** *(n)* /'tɜ:bjələns/ unrest, disturbance = sự náo động *Political, social ~.*
  turbulent *(adj)* disturbed *a city with a ~ past.*

EXPRESSIONS

without delay /wɪ'ðaut dɪ'leɪ/ không trì hoãn

make sure /meɪk ʃuə/ bảo đảm

GRAMMAR NOTES VERB + INFINITIVE

afford	choose	help	offer	swear
agree	decide	hesitate	prepare	threaten
appear	expect	hope	pretend	undertake
arrange	fail	learn	promise	want
ask	happen	manage	refuse	wish

Examples : She *pretended not to see* me.
He *failed to keep* his promise.
They *managed to launch* another attack.
She *threatened to take* revenge.
I *decided to sell* my black and white T.V.
The boy *wanted to be* a doctor when he grew up.
We *agreed to have* a meeting.

At the airport

Norman is at Heathrow Airport. He's checked in. He's been through Passport Control and he's in the Departure Lounge. Listen to the announcements. Look at the chart, look at the example, and complete the chart in the same way.

FLIGHT DEPARTURES INFORMATION
TIME NOW 11.45

Carrier	Flight	Time	Destination	Information
British Airways	BA 412	12.00	Amsterdam	Last call Gate 17
S.A.S				
Iberia				
Alitalia				
Olympic Airways				
Sabena				

In flight

Norman is now on the plane. Listen to the four announcements, and answer these questions.

1 What's the pilot's name ?
How long will the delay be ?
When will they arrive in Madrid ?
What are they waiting for ?

2 Where is the plane ?
What kind is it ?
How high is it ?
How fast is it going ?
How hot is it in Madrid ?
What's the weather like ?
Why should the passengers remain in their seats ?

Ở sân bay

Norman đang ở phi trường Heathrow. Anh ta đang làm thủ tục đăng kiểm. Anh ta đã qua khâu kiểm tra hộ chiếu và bây giờ đang ở phòng đợi. Hãy lắng nghe các thông báo chuyến bay. Nhìn vào bảng ghi, xem ví dụ mẫu và điền vào bảng theo cùng cách thức.

Trên chuyến bay

Bây giờ Norman đang ở trên máy bay. Hãy nghe bốn thông báo và trả lời các câu hỏi sau đây :

1. Tên của phi công là gì ?
Chuyến bay sẽ bị chậm bao lâu ?
Khi nào họ sẽ đến Madrid ?
Họ đang chờ đợi gì ?

2. Máy bay đang ở đâu ?
Nó là loại máy bay gì ?
Nó đang bay ở độ cao bao nhiêu ?
Nó đang bay với vận tốc bao nhiêu ?
Ở Madrid nhiệt độ là bao nhiêu ?
Thời tiết ra sao ?
Tại sao hành khách phải ngồi lại ghế ?

3 What's the plane beginning to do ?
What two things should the passengers do?
When can they start smoking again ?

4 What should the passengers do ?
When can they stand up ?

Lunch on the plane

Steward Here's your tray, sir.

Norman Oh, thank you.

Steward Would you like something to drink ?

Norman Er... yes, please. Some red wine.

Steward That's 100 pesetas.

Norman Thanks. Can I pay in British money?

Steward Of course. You needn't pay now, I'll collect it later.

Landing-cards

Steward Spanish national or non-Spanish, sir ?

Norman Er... I'm British.

Steward Would you mind completing this landing card, sir ?

Norman Right. Thank you.

Landing-card
Family name GARRARD
Forename(s) NORMAN IAN
Father's name DUNCAN ALISTAIR
Place of birth WINCHESTER
Nationality BRITISH
Passport no N1054372
Permanent address 37 CUNARD AVENUE, SOUTHAMPTON, ENGLAND
Point of departure LONDON (HEATHROW)
Destination MADRID
Date 14.4.83 *Signature* N./GARRARD

Passport control

Official Passport, please. Thank you. Where have you come from, sir ?

Norman London.

Official And what's the purpose of your visit... business or pleasure ?

Norman Business.

Official Fine... and how long will you be staying here ?

Norman Just for five days.

Official Thank you, Mr Garrard. I hope you enjoy your visit.

3. Máy bay bắt đầu làm gì ?
Hai điều hành khách phải làm là gì ?
Khi nào thì họ có thể hút thuốc lại ?

4. Hành khách phải làm gì ?
Khi nào họ có thể đứng lên ?

Bữa ăn trưa trên máy bay.

Tiếp viên : Khay thức ăn của ông đây, thưa ông.

Norman : Ồ, cám ơn.

Tiếp viên : Ông có dùng thức uống gì không?

Norman : Vâng. Cho tôi rượu vang đỏ.

Tiếp viên : Thưa ông 100 pesetas.

Norman : Cám ơn. Tôi trả bằng tiền Anh được không?

Tiếp viên : Dĩ nhiên là được, thưa ông. Ông không cần phải trả tiền ngay bây giờ. Tôi sẽ đi thu sau.

Phiếu đáp

Tiếp viên : Quốc tịch Tây Ban Nha hay nước khác, thưa ông ?

Norman : À... tôi người Anh.

Tiếp viên : Xin ông vui lòng điền vào phiếu đáp này.

Norman : Được rồi... Cảm ơn.

Phiếu đáp
Họ : GARRARD
Tên : NORMAN IAN
Tên cha : DUNCAN ALISTAIR
Nơi sinh : WINCHESTER
Quốc tịch : ANH
Số hộ chiếu : N1054372
Địa chỉ thường trú : 37 CUNARD AVENUE, SOUTHAMPTON, ANH QUỐC
Nơi đi : LONDON (HEATHROW)
Nơi đến : MADRID
Ngày 14.4.83 *Ký tên* N. GARRARD

Bàn kiểm tra hộ chiếu

Nhân viên : Làm ơn xuất trình hộ chiếu. Cám ơn. Ông từ đâu đến, thưa ông ?

Norman : London

Nhân viên : Và mục đích chuyến đi của ông là... công vụ hay đi chơi ?

Norman : Công vụ.

Nhân viên : Được rồi... ông dự định sẽ ở đây bao lâu?

Norman : Chỉ 5 ngày thôi.

Nhân viên : Xin cám ơn, ông Garrard. Hy vọng ông sẽ hài lòng với chuyến đi này.

PRACTICE

Exercise 1 **Bài tập 1**

1 *Car Hire*

2 .....

3 .....

4 .....

5 .....

6 .....

7 .....

8 .....

9 .....

10 .....

11 .....

12 .....

13 .....

14 .....

15 .....

16 .....

17 .....

18 .....

These are some of the signs which you might see at an airport. Look at the example. Look at the expressions below. Put the correct ones under the signs.

Đây là một số biển hiệu bạn có thể thấy ở sân bay. Nhìn vào thí dụ. Xem các cụm từ dưới đây. Đặt các cụm từ đúng vào dưới các biển hiệu này.

Information	Chỉ dẫn	*Emergency Medical Services*	Cứu cấp
Bar	Quán rượu		
Self-help trolleys	Xe đẩy	*Hotel Reservations*	Đăng ký khách sạn
Taxis	Taxi	*Airline Bus*	Xe buýt hàng không
Baggage Reclaim	Lấy hành lý	*Passport Control*	Kiểm tra hộ chiếu

Customs		Hải quan	*Chapel*		Nhà thờ
Banks and	*Currency*	Ngân hàng và	*Restaurant*		Nhà hàng
	Exchange	chuyển đổi tiền	*Disabled Facilities*		Phương tiện cho người tàn tật
Nursery		Nhà trẻ	*Transfer Passengers*		Hành khách chuyển tàu, xe
Post Office		Bưu điện			

Exercise 2

Bài tập 2

LONDON – LISBON

DEPART : London, Heathrow Airport Terminal 2 (Minimum check- in time 60 mins)
London, Gatwick Airport G (Minimum check-in time 20 mins)

ARRIVE Lisbon Airport

(a) – 707 on Th Fr Sa 25 Jun – 1 Aug
(b) – 707 on Su 28 Jun – 2 Aug
(y) – One-hour earlier from 27 Sep

Frequency	Aircraft Dep	Aircraft Arr	Via	Transfer Times	Flight	Air-craft	Class & Catering
Daily	1055 G	1330(y)	non-stop		BA436	73S	CM ◯
Daily ex We Su	1440	1705(y)	non-stop		TP453	727(a)	Y ⓧ
We su from 1 Apr	1440	1705(y)	non-stop		TP483	727	Y
Mo Th Su	1640 G	1915(y)	non-stop		BA438	73S	CM ◯
Th Su from 9 Aug	1825	2205(y)	Oporto		TP485	727(b)	Y ⓧ

Look at this conversation.

A Would you mind giving me some information about flights to Lisbon ?
B Not at all. Which day of the week would you like to travel ?
A Sunday, if possible.
B What time of day ?
A As early as possible.
B Then I'd recommend the 10.55 flight – it gets in at 1.30.
A Does that go from Gatwick or Heathrow ?
B Gatwick.
A Yes, that would be all right.

Now write a similar conversation for someone who wants to fly late on Thursday.

Xem bài đàm thoại này :

A Ông chịu phiền cho tôi hỏi thăm các chuyến bay đi Lisbon nhé ?
B Không có chi. Ông muốn đi ngày nào trong tuần ?
A Nếu được, ngày chủ nhật.
B Giờ nào trong ngày ?
A Càng sớm càng tốt.
B Thế thì tôi đề nghị ông chuyến 10g55 – nó đến lúc 1g30
A Chuyến bay đó đi từ Gatwick hay Heathrow ?
B Gatwick.
A Vâng, thế thì được.

Bây giờ bạn viết một bài đàm thoại tương tự cho người muốn đi muộn hơn vào ngày thứ 5.

Exercise 3

Some British friends are coming to your country for a short stay.
Write down five things that you would recommend them to do.
I'd recommend them to hire a car.

Bài tập 3

Một số bạn người Anh sẽ đến nước bạn nghỉ ngắn ngày.
Viết 5 điều bạn sẽ đề nghị họ làm.
Tôi sẽ đề nghị họ thuê một chiếc xe hơi.

Exercise 4

Imagine that you are planning a visit to Britain.
What would you like to see ?
What would you expect to eat ?
What would you hope to do ?

Bài tập 4

Hãy tưởng tượng bạn đang lập kế hoạch viếng thăm nước Anh.
Bạn thích xem gì ?
Bạn mong được ăn gì ?
Bạn hy vọng làm gì ?

Unit 14 Money

VOCABULARY

Tiền tệ

- **alter** *(v)* /ˈɔːltə/ (cause st/sb to) become different = thay đổi *I didn't recognize him because he had ~ ed so much.*
  alterable *(adj)* /ˈɔːtərəbl/
  alteration *(n)* /ˌɔːtəˈreɪʃn/ changing; making a change = sự thay đổi *How much ~ will be necessary ?*
- **aluminium** *(n)* /ˌæljuˈmɪnɪəm/ (US **aluminum** /əˈluːmɪnəm/ chemical element, a light silvery metal = nhôm
- **amount** *(n)* /əˈmaʊnt/ quantity = số lượng *a large ~ of work, money, furniture.*
- **banker's card** *(n)* /ˈbæŋkəz kɑːd/ cheque card = thẻ ngân phiếu
- **barter** *(v)* /ˈbɑːtə/ (st for st) exchange (goods, property, etc) for other goods, etc without using money = trao đổi *~ wheat for machinery.*
  barter *(n)* /ˈbɑːtə/ exchange of goods for other goods without using money. *On these islands a system of ~ is used.*
- **base** *(v)* /beɪs/ (st on st) use st as grounds, evidence, etc for st else = dựa trên *I base my hopes on the good news we had yesterday.*
- **bear** *(v)* /beə/ show (st); carry visibly; display = mang *I saw a tombstone bearing the date 1602.*
- **bone** *(n)* /bəʊn/ xương
  bony *(adj)* /ˈbəʊnɪ/ full of bones = xương xẩu *This fish is very ~.*
- **cattle** *(n)* /kætl/ animals such as cows, bulls and bullocks, bred for their milk or meat = mục súc.
- **cheque counterfoil** *(n)* /tʃek ˈkaʊntəfɔɪl/ stub; part of a cheque which can be detached and kept as a record = cùi chi phiếu
- **coincide** *(v)* /ˌkəʊɪnˈsaɪd/ (with st) be identical or similar to st else = trùng hợp. *Her taste in music ~ s with her husband's.*
  coincidence *(n)* /kəʊˈɪnsɪdəns/
- **contain** *(v)* /kənˈteɪn/ have, hold st within itself = chứa đựng *The atlas ~ s forty maps.*
- **copper** *(n)* /ˈkɒpə/ chemical element, a common reddish – brown metal = đồng
- **credit card** *(n)* /ˈkredɪt kɑːd/ card that allows its holder to buy goods and services on credit = thẻ tín dụng
- **currency** *(n)* /ˈkʌrənsɪ/ money system in use in a country = tiền tệ *trading in foreign ~ ies.*
- **design** *(n)* /dɪˈzaɪn/ drawing or outline from which st may be made = mẫu, kiểu *~ s for a dress, a garden, an aircraft.*
- **develop** *(v)* /dɪˈveləp/ grow gradually = phát triển *The argument ~ ed into a bitter quarrel.*
  development *(n)* /-mənt/
- **disc shaped** *(adj)* /dɪsk ʃeɪpt/ hình cái đĩa
- **divisible** *(adj)* /dɪˈvɪzəbl/ that can be divided = có thể chia cắt được *8 is ~ by 2 and 4, but not by 3.*
  divide *(v)* /dɪˈvaɪd/
  division *(n)* /dɪˈvɪʒn/
- **durable** *(adj)* /ˈdjʊərəbl/ lasting for a long time = bền *a ~ peace, friendship; trousers made of ~ material.*
- **economy** *(n)* /ɪˈkɒnəmɪ/ nền kinh tế
  economic *(adj)*
- **face value** *(n)* /feɪs ˈvælju:/ giá trị bên ngoài
- **feather** *(n)* /ˈfeðə/ lông
- **fraudulent** *(adj)* /ˈfrɔːdjʊlənt/ deceitful, dishonest = gian lận
  fraudulence *(n)* /ˈfrɔːdjʊləns/
- **goods** *(n)* /gʊdz/ thing for sale, merchandise = hàng hóa *cheap, expensive, low – quality, high – quality ~.*
- **gradual** *(adj)* /ˈgrædʒʊəl/ not sudden *~ progress.*
  gradually *(adv)* /- dʒʊlɪ/ by degrees, little by little = dần dần *Things ~ improved.*
- **grain** *(n)* /greɪn/ ngũ cốc
- **increasingly** *(adv)* /ɪnˈkriːsɪŋlɪ/ more and more = càng ngày càng tăng *~ difficult, important.*
- **initial** *(v)* /ɪˈnɪʃəl/ mark or sign st with one's initials = ký, viết tên tắt vào *~ here, please.*
- **irrespective of** *(prep)* /ˌɪrɪˈspektɪv əv/ not taking account of or considering st/sb. *The laws apply to everyone ~ race, creed or colour.*
- **issue** *(v)* /ˈɪsju:/ put into circulation = phát hành

- **lead** *(n)* /led/ heavy soft metal of dull greyish colour = chì
- **lettering** *(n)* /'letərɪŋ/ letters or words, esp with reference to their visual appearance = chữ *The ~ on the poster is very eye - catching.*
- **monetary** *(adj)* /'mʌnɪtrɪ/ of money or currency = thuộc tiền bạc *the international ~ system.*
- **nickel** *(n)* /'nɪkl/ chemical element, a hard silver white metal = Kền *~ plated* = mạ kền
- **parallel lines** *(n)* /'pærəlel laɪnz/ đường song song
- **period** *(n)* /'pɪərɪəd/ length of time = giai đoạn *a ~ of three years.*
- **primitive** *(adj)* /'prɪmɪtɪv/ of or at an early stage of social development = sơ khai, nguyên thủy *~ culture, customs, tribes (bộ lạc)*
- **reason** *(n)* /'ri:zn/ cause of st = lý do *Give me your ~ s for going.*
  reasonable *(adj)* /-əbl/ hợp lý
- **recognizable** *(adj)* /'rekəgnaɪzəbl - rekəg'naɪzəbl/ that can be recognized = nhận được
  recognize *(v)*
- **safeguard** *(v)* /'seɪfgɑ:d/ (sb/st) protect, guard sb/st = bảo vệ *We found a way of ~ ing our money.*
- **security** *(n)* /sɪ'kjuərətɪ/ freedom from danger or worry = sự an ninh, an toàn *Children who lack the ~ of a good home.*
  secure *(adj)* /sɪ'kjuə/
- **shell** *(n)* /ʃel/ vỏ sò
- **skull** *(n)* /skʌl/ sọ
- **society** *(n)* /sə'saɪətɪ/ xã hội
- **structure** *(n)* /'strʌktʃə/ cấu trúc
- **tusk** *(n)* /tʌsk/ ngà voi
- **unsatisfactory** *(adj)* /ʌnsætɪs'fæktərɪ/ not satisfactory = không thỏa đáng
  satisfy *(v)* /'sætɪsfaɪ/ = làm thỏa mãn
  satisfaction *(n)* /sætɪs'fækʃn/ = sự thỏa mãn
- **various** *(adj)* /'veərɪəs/ 1. of several kinds = đa dạng *tents in ~ shapes and sizes.*
  2. more than one; individual and separate = khác nhau *for ~ reasons.*
- **washing – up liquid** *(n)* /wɒʃɪŋ ʌp 'lɪkwɪd/ Chất tẩy giặt
- **wealth** *(n)* /welθ/ large amount of money, property, etc. = tài sản *a man of great ~.*
- **zinc** *(n)* /zɪŋk/ = kẽm

GRAMMAR NOTES — **THE PASSIVE FORM**

Here after are some of the passive formulity for simple & compound tenses and modal verbs.

1. Tenses

Simple present	am / is / are	+ past participle
Simple past	was / were /	+ "
Simple future	will / shall be	+ "
Present continuous	am / is / are being	+ "
Past continuous	was / were being	+ "
Present perfect	have / has been	+ "
Past perfect	had been	+ "
Future perfect	will / shall have been	+ "

2. Modal verbs

can / could May / might	be + past participle
Would Should	be + past participle
Ought to	be + past participle

Besides

Need have to must	be + past participle
be going about	to + be + past participle

Uses of the Passive

The Passive is not just a different form of the active. It has its own uses and is very common in English. It would be hard to think of the active forms of sentences like :

Rome *wasn't built* in a day.

The origin of the universe *will never be explained.*

We use the passive mainly in three ways :

+ When we don't want to take responsibility for st

The matter will be dealt with soon.

(We don't know or want to say who'll deal with it)

+ when we want to focus on a happening, not who or what did it :

Our roof was damaged in last night's storm.

(We are concerned about the roof)

+ When we want to avoid 'vague subjects' like *one, someone, they,* etc.

The form has to be signed.

(Not "Someone / One has to sign the form".)

English spoken (Not "One speaks English")

Shoes repaired (Not "One repairs shoes".)

The Passive with verbs of "saying" and "believing" :

We need to be sure of our facts when we say:

He was a Spy in World War II.

If we are not sure of our facts, we can express caution by saying :

It is said (that) he was a Spy in World War II.

He is said to be a Spy in World War II.

We can express caution in three ways, with :

1. ***It* (+ passive + *that* - clause) with : *agree, believe, consider, decide, hope, know, say.***

It is said (that) there is plenty of oil off our own coast.

2. ***There* (+ passive + *to be*) with : allege, believe, fear, know, report, say, suppose, think.**

There is said to be plenty of oil off our own coast.

3. ***Subject* (not *It*) (+ passive + to - infinitive) with : allege, believe, consider, know, say.**

Jane is said to know all there is to know about chimpanzees.

Money is used for buying or selling goods, for measuring value and for storing wealth. Almost every society now has a money economy based on coins and paper notes of one kind or another. However, this has not always been true. In primitive societies a system of barter was used. Barter was a system of direct exchange of goods. Somebody could exchange a sheep, for example, for anything in the market-place that they considered to be of equal value. Barter, however, was a very unsatisfactory system because people's precise needs seldom coincided. People needed a more practical system of exchange, and various money systems developed based on goods which the members of a society recognized as having value. Cattle, grain, teeth, shells, feathers, skulls, salt, elephant tusks and tobacco have all been used. Precious metals gradually took over because, when made into coins, they were portable, durable, recognizable and divisible into larger and smaller units of value.

A coin is a piece of metal, usually disc-shaped, which bears lettering, designs or numbers showing its value. Until the eighteenth and

Tiền được dùng để mua bán hàng hóa, để đo lường giá trị và để tích lũy của cải. Hầu như xã hội nào trong thời đại này cũng có một nền kinh tế tiền tệ dựa trên tiền cắc hoặc tiền giấy dưới hình thức này hay hình thức khác. Tuy nhiên, điều này không phải bao giờ cũng đúng. Trong các xã hội sơ khai, người ta đã dùng một hệ thống trao đổi ngang giá. Trao đổi ngang giá là một hệ thống trao đổi trực tiếp hàng hóa. Chẳng hạn, người ta có thể đổi một con cừu lấy bất kỳ một thứ nào ngoài chợ mà người ta cho là có ngang giá trị. Tuy vậy, trao đổi ngang giá là một hệ thống rất phiền toái bởi vì nhu cầu chính xác của mọi người ít khi trùng hợp với nhau. Người ta cần một hệ thống trao đổi thực tiễn hơn, và nhiều hệ thống tiền tệ khác nhau đã phát triển dựa trên những hàng hóa mà mọi thành viên trong xã hội đều thừa nhận là có giá trị. Trâu bò, ngũ cốc, răng, vỏ sò, lông chim, xương sọ, muối, ngà voi và thuốc lá đều đã được dùng. Các kim loại quý dần dần thay thế các thứ kể trên bởi vì, khi được đúc thành tiền cắc, chúng dễ mang, bền, dễ nhận ra và có thể được chia thành các đơn vị có giá trị lớn hơn hoặc nhỏ hơn.

Một đồng cắc là một miếng kim loại, thường là hình tròn, mang chữ, hình hoặc số biểu thị giá trị của nó. Mãi đến thế kỷ 18 và 19, các đồng cắc còn được định giá trị dựa

nineteenth centuries coins were given monetary worth based on the exact amount of metal contained in them, but most modern coins are based on face value, the value that governments choose to give them, irrespective of the actual metal content. Coins have been made of gold (Au), silver (Ag), copper (Cu); aluminium (Al), nickel (Ni), lead (Pb), zinc (Zn), plastic, and in China even from pressed tea leaves. Most governments now issue paper money in the form of notes, which are really 'promises to pay'. Paper money is obviously easier to handle and much more convenient in the modern world. Cheques, bankers' cards, and credit cards are being used increasingly and it is possible to imagine a world where 'money' in the form of coins and paper currency will no longer be used. Even today, in the United States, many places – especially filling stations – will not accept cash at night for security reasons.

trên lượng chính xác kim loại chứa đựng trong đó, nhưng hầu hết các đồng cắc hiện nay đều dựa trên giá trị bề mặt, nghĩa là giá trị mà các chính phủ định cho chúng, bất kể lượng kim loại thực sự chứa đựng trong đó là bao nhiêu. Các đồng tiền cắc đã được chế tạo từ vàng (Au), bạc (Ag), đồng (Cu), nhôm (Al), nickel (Ni), chì (Pb), kẽm (Zn), plastic, và ở Trung Quốc, thậm chí còn từ lá trà ép nữa. Phần lớn các chính phủ ngày nay phát hành tiền giấy, về thực chất chỉ là "những phiếu hứa sẽ trả tiền !" Tiền giấy rõ ràng là dễ mang hơn và thuận tiện hơn trong thế giới hiện đại. Chi phiếu, ngân phiếu và thẻ tín dụng đang được dùng một cách rộng rãi và hoàn toàn có thể tưởng tượng ra một thế giới mà trong đó "tiền tệ" dưới dạng tiền cắc và tiền giấy sẽ không còn được sử dụng nữa. Thậm chí ngày nay, ở nước Mỹ, nhiều nơi- đặc biệt là các trạm xăng- từ chối nhận tiền mặt vào ban đêm vì các lý do an ninh.

Exercise 1

Find expressions which mean :

1 A place to buy petrol.
2 A place where goods are bought and sold.
3 The period between 1801 and 1900.
4 The bony structure of the head.
5 Round and flat in shape.
6 An exchange of goods for other goods.

Exercise 2

Find words which mean :

1 Can be divided.
2 Lasts a long time.
3 Can be carried.
4 Can be recognized.

Exercise 3

Put these words in the correct places in the sentences below :

coins/cash/currency/money.

1 The... of Japan is the yen.
2 She has got a lot of... in her bank account.
3 It costs £10 if you're paying...It'll be more if you pay by cheque.
4 Can you change this pound note into... for the coffee machine ?

Exercise 4

Money is used for buying goods
means : You can buy goods with it.
Write similar sentences which mean :

1 You can measure value with it.
2 You can store wealth with it.
3 You can sell things for it.

Exercise 5

Money is used for buying and selling goods.
People use money for buying and selling goods.
Change these sentences in the same way.

1 A system of barter was used.
2 Cattle, grain and tobacco have all been used.
3 Paper currency will no longer be used.
4 Cheques, bankers' cards and credit cards are being used.

Exercise 6

Somebody could exchange a sheep.
A sheep could be exchanged.
Change these sentences in the same way.

1 People needed a more practical system.
2 Most governments now issue paper money in the form of notes.
3 Filling stations will not accept cash at night.

Exercise 7

Money *is used for buying things.*
Shampoo *is used for washing your hair.*
Make sentences with : knife/ pen/ key/ camera/ suitcase/ saucepan/ toothpaste/ detergent/wallet/hair-dryer.

Exercise 8

A place where you can fill your petrol tank is a *filling station*.

Complete these sentences.

1 A special room where you can wait is a...
2 A pill which helps you to sleep is a....
3 A licence which allows you to drive is a....
4 A glove which boxers wear is a...
5 Oil you can cook with is...
6 A pool where you can swim is a....
7 Special liquid you can wash up with is....
8 A boat with sails is a....

PRACTICE

Language summary

It is / They are | *used for doing something.*

Someone does it... it is done.
Someone should do it... it should be done.
Someone can do it... it can be done.

Filling station, cooking oil, boxing glove, waiting room, sleeping pill, etc.
Someone cannot do it... it cannot be done.
Someone's doing it... it's being done.
Someone must do it... it must be done.

Exercise 1

Read this carefully. It is part of a leaflet issued by The National Westminster Bank.

Use the blank cheque below, and write out a cheque to the Wessex Gas Company for £98.05.

Bài tập 1

Đọc kỹ mục này. Đây là một phần tờ giới thiệu do Ngân hàng quốc gia Westminster phát hành.

Dùng ngân phiếu trống dưới đây; viết một ngân phiếu đến Công ty xăng dầu Wessex nhận 98,05 pounds

Know your cheques

Cheque counterfoil
This will help you keep an accurate record of your account.

Cheque number
This number identifies the particular cheque and should be quoted in correspondence concerning the cheque

Crossing
These two parallel lines indicate that the cheque is 'crossed'. This safeguards both you and recipient as the cheque can only be paid into a bank account and cannot be cashed

Your account number
This number is unique to your account and will need to be quoted when crediting your account with cash or cheques

The account name
This is the way your branch will know your account and should be quoted together with the account number in any correspondence

Bank sorting code
This combination of numerals identifies your branch when the cheque is being processed by the Bank

Writing your cheques

Cheque counterfoil
Enter the date, the amount paid and the payee when you write the cheque. This will enable you to keep an up-to-date record of your account

Payee
Write the name of the individual or company to whom you are making payment here. Make sure it is in the complete form they require

When withdrawing cash from the Bank write the word 'Cash' at this point.

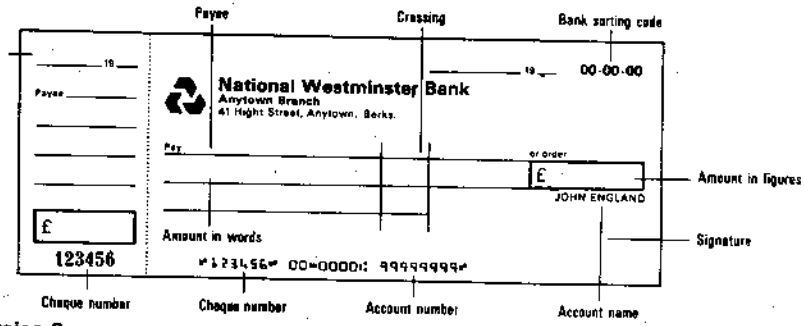
Amount in words
Enter the amount in words at this point on the cheque Ensure that no gaps are left in the cheque for fraudulent additions. The various acceptable alternative versions are shown below

Date
Make sure you date your cheque clearly and include the day, month and year

Signature
Be sure this is your normal signature and that it matches the sample signature you gave to the Bank when opening the account (Any alterations you make to the cheque when making it out must be initialled)

Amount in figures
Enter the amount in figures at this point on the cheque. Make sure it is the same as the amount in words. The various acceptable alternative versions are shown below

Twenty-nine pounds 69 £29·69
Twenty-nine pounds 08 £29·08
Twenty-nine pence £0·29



Exercise 2

Find words in the texts which mean :

1 a person who receives something.
2 something extra.
3 the local office of a large organization.
4 a change.
5 section of a cheque kept by the sender as a record.

Exercise 3

You should quote the number in any correspondence.

The number should be quoted in any correspondence.

Continue.

1 You can only pay the cheque into a bank account. . . . . .
2 You cannot cash it. . . . . .
. . . . . .
3 You will need to quote the number.
. . . . . .
4 The bank is processing the cheque.
. . . . . .

Exercise 4

This number identifies the cheque.

The cheque is identified by this number.

Continue.

1 The bank sorting code identifies your branch.
2 You should write the name of the payee here.

Bài tập 2

Tìm từ trong bài đọc có nghĩa :

6 unfilled space.
7 exchange of letters.
8 person's name written by him/herself.
9 being the only one of its type.
10 person to whom something is paid.

Bài tập 3

Bạn nên ghi rõ con số trong bất cứ thư từ giao dịch nào.

Con số cần ghi rõ trong bất cứ thư từ giao dịch nào.

Hãy tiếp tục

5 Do not leave any gaps in the cheque.
. . . . . .
6 We show the various acceptable versions below. . . . . .
. . . . . .
7 You must initial any alterations.
. . . . . .
. . . . . .

Bài tập 4

Con số này xác nhận ngân phiếu.

Ngân phiếu này được con số này xác nhận.

Hãy tiếp tục.

3 You should write the word 'cash' here.
4 You must date your cheque clearly.
5 You should enter the amount in figures at this point.

Exercise 5

What do you think these sentences mean ?

1 'Crossed cheques safeguard both you and the recipient.'

☐ **A** Crossed cheques are cheaper for both you and the recipient.

☐ **B** Crossed cheques are quicker for both you and the recipient.

☐ **C** Crossed cheques protect both you and the recipient.

2 'Ensure that no gaps are left for fraudulent additions.'

☐ **A** If you leave a gap, someone may dishonestly write in extra words or figures.

☐ **B** If you leave a gap, the bank may make mistakes when adding it up.

☐ **C** If you leave a gap, someone may think you want to cheat them.

Exercise 6

Look at the cheque on the previous page. Mr England wants to pay in some money to his bank. He has got a cheque for £85-00, another for £20, and £50 in £10 notes. See if you can complete the 'Bank Giro Credit'.

Bài tập 5

Bạn nghĩ các câu này có nghĩa gì ?

3 'Be sure your normal signature matches the sample signature you gave to the bank.'

☐ **A** When you sign a cheque, always write your signature in the same place.

☐ **B** When you sign a cheque, be sure that your signature is the same as the one you gave to the bank.

☐ **C** When you sign a cheque, be sure that you use the same colour ink as in the signature you gave to the bank.

4 'Any alterations you make to the cheque must initialled.'

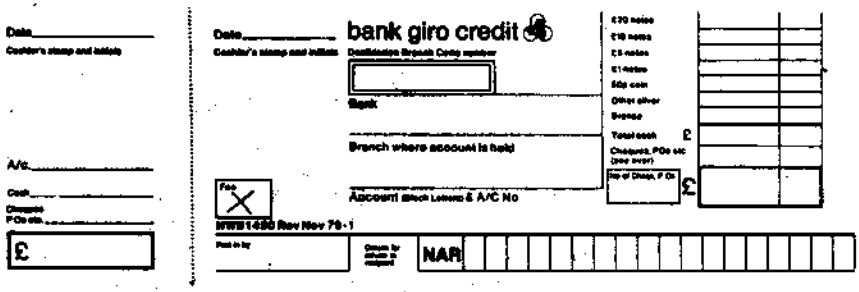
☐ **A** John Smith would write 'John Smith' next to any alterations.

☐ **B** John Smith would write 'J. Smith' next to any alterations.

☐ **C** John Smith would write 'J.S.' next to any alterations.

Bài tập 6

Nhìn ngân phiếu ở trang trước. Ô. England muốn gửi vào nhà băng của ông một số tiền. Ông ấy có một ngân phiếu 85 pounds, một ngân phiếu khác 20 pounds và 50 pounds bằng tiền giấy 10 pounds. Thử xem bạn có thể hoàn thành "Phiếu tín dụng của Ngân hàng Giro" không.



Unit 15 Money, Money, Money

Tiền tệ

VOCABULARY

- **annual** *(adj)* /'ænjuəl/ 1- happening every year = hàng năm ~ *event, meeting, report, show* 2- calculated for the year = tính theo năm *an ~ income, production.*
- **antique** *(adj)* /æn'ti:k/ belonging to the distant past = cổ xưa
  antique *(n)* object that is old and valuable, esp one that is of interest to collectors = đồ cổ *an ~ shop.*
- **appalling** *(adj)* /ə'pɔ:liŋ/ (infml) shocking, extremely bad = dễ sợ
  I've never seen such ~ behaviour.
  appal *(v)* /ə'pɔ:l/ fill sb with horror, shock deeply *The newspaper reports of starving children ~ led me.*
- **beads** *(n)* /bi:dz/ necklace made of beads = chuỗi hạt
- **bill** *(n)* /bɪl/ (sb for st) send sb a bill = tính hóa đơn *I can't pay for the books now, will you ~ me (for them) later ?*
- **brass** *(n)* /bra:s/ bright yellow metal made by mixing copper and zinc = đồng thau.
  ~ doorknobs, buttons.
- **budget** *(n)* /'bʌdʒɪt/ plan of how money will be spent over a period of time, in relation to the amount of money available = ngân quĩ *a weekly ~.*
- **bum** *(n)* /bʌm/ (infml esp US) lazy irresponsible person = kẻ vô công rồi nghề, kẻ ăn bám.
- **dart** *(v)* /da:t/ move suddenly and quickly = lao tới, phóng tới *She ~ ed into the doorway to hide.*
- **debt** *(n)* /det/ sum of money owed to sb that has not yet been paid = tiền nợ *If I pay all my ~ s I'll have no money left.*
- **deposit** *(n)* /dɪ'pɒzɪt/ payment of a part of a larger sum, the rest of which is to be paid later = tiền cọc.
- **expenditure** *(n)* /ɪk'spendɪtʃə/ action of spending = sự tiêu xài *The ~ of money on weapons.*
- **expenses** *(n)* /ɪk'spensɪz/ money spent in doing a specific job or for a specific purpose = phí tổn. *Who's meeting the ~ of your trip?*
- **foyer** *(n)* /'fɔɪeɪ/ entrance hall or large open space where people can meet or wait : phòng giải lao *I'll meet you in the ~ at 7 a.m.*
- **gambling** *(n)* /'gæmblɪŋ/ cờ bạc
- **greenback** *(n)* /'gri:nbæk/ (US infml) US banknote = giấy bạc Mỹ
- **hire – purchase** *(n)* /haɪə 'pɜ:tʃəs/ (Brit) (US in'stalment plan) method of purchase by which the buyer pays for an article in instalment = mua trả góp. *We're buying a TV on ~.*
- **hoard** *(n)* /hɔ:d/ carefully collected and guarded store of money, food or other treasured objects = kho trữ, của dành dụm *a miser's ~.*
- **illegal** *(adj)* /ɪ'li:gl/ against the law, not legal = bất chính
- **jargon** *(n)* /'dʒa:gən/ technical or specialized words = biệt ngữ, từ chuyên môn. *She uses so much ~ I can never understand her explanations.*
- **legible** *(adj)* /'ledʒəbl/ clear enough to be read easily = dễ đọc, đọc được
  The inscription was still ~.
- **limey** *(n)* /'laɪmɪ/ (US slang) British person, usu male = người Anh.
- **lottery** *(n)* /'lɒtərɪ/ way of raising money by selling numbered tickets and giving prizes to the holders of numbers selected at random = xổ số *a ~ ticket.*
- **mattress** *(n)* /'mætrɪs/ fabric case filled with soft or springy material and used for sleeping on = tấm nệm
- **misery** *(n)* /'mɪzərɪ/ great suffering or discomfort = sự đau khổ *living in ~ and want.*
  miserable *(adj)* /'mɪzrəbl/ = wretched *~ from cold and hunger.*
- **money-box** *(n)* /'mʌnɪ bɒks/ small closed box with a slot in the top, into which coins are put as a method of saving money = ống heo bỏ tiền tiết kiệm
- **overdraft** *(n)* /'əʊvədra:ft/ amount of money by which a bank account is overdrawn = sự rút quá số tiền ở ngân hàng *I took out an ~*

to pay for my new car.

overdraw *(v)* /ˌəʊvəˈdrɔː/ draw more money from (a bank account) than the amount that is in it.

- **owe** *(v)* /əʊ/ (sb for st, sth to sb) be in debt to sb = nợ *He owes (his father) £50. He owes £50 to his father.*
- **partition** *(n)* /pɑːˈtɪʃn/ bức vách ngăn
- **pick** *(v)* /pɪk/ nhặt lấy
- **pillow** *(n)* /ˈpɪləʊ/ cushion used to support the head, esp in bed = cái gối
- **propose** *(v)* /prəˈpəʊz/ suggest = đề nghị. *The committee ~ d that new legislation should be drafted.*

  proposal *(n)* /prəˈpəʊzl/
- **quid** *(n)* /kwɪd/ (pl unchanged) (Brit infml) one pound sterling = đồng pound Anh *Can you lend me five ~ ?*
- **receipt** *(n)* /rɪˈsiːt/ (for st) written statement that st has been received = biên nhận

EXPRESSIONS

How much do you want for this plate ?
I'm only asking £15 for it
It's worth every penny
It's a real bargain
You must be joking
to turn white
to crane over
This note is legal tender
to cough up (lóng)
to utilise an accreditisation facility

get a ~ for your expenses.

- **stall** *(n)* /stɔːl/ table, stand or small open – fronted shop = quầy, sạp *a fruit ~ in the market.*

  stallholder /ˈstɔːlhəʊldə/ person who rents or owns and runs a stall = chủ tiệm, sạp
- **tan** /tæn/ brown colour of the skin after exposure to the sun = màu da rám nắng *get a good ~.*
- **utilize** /ˈjuːtəlaɪz/ (fml) make use of st = tận dụng *~ the available tools*

  utilization *(n)* /ˌjuːtəlaɪˈzeɪʃn/
- **wad** /wɒd/ banknotes folded, rolled or held together = cuộn giấy bạc, tiền
- **water cooler** *(n)* /ˈwɒtə ˈkuːlə/ máy nước lạnh
- **waver** /ˈweɪvə/ (between st and st) hesitate esp about making a decision or choice = lưỡng lự, ngập ngừng *While we were ~ ing, somebody else bought the house.*

Ông tính cái đĩa này bao nhiêu tiền ?
Tôi chỉ tính 15 pounds thôi
Rất đáng đồng tiền
Thật là rẻ rồi, giá hời rồi
Anh chỉ đùa thôi, chắc là anh đùa đấy thôi
trở nên trắng bệch
nghểnh cổ qua
Giấy bạc này hợp pháp
phun ra, nhả ra
tận dụng các phương tiện ngân hàng

GRAMMAR NOTES

FOCUS : Simple present, present perfect and simple past questions

Compare : Do you think it's a good idea ? Have you bought anything on hire purchase ? What ? Did you pay a deposit ?

Bargaining

Lucy is in the Portobello Road street market in London. She's looking at an antique stall, and she's just seen a brass plate. She collects brass ornaments and she's interested in buying it. Listen to her conversation with the stall-holder, and answer these questions.

1 How much does he say it's worth ?
2 How much is he asking for it ?
3 What does 'quid' mean ?
4 He suggests four different prices. Write them down.
5 She makes four offers. Write them down.

Mặc cả

Lucy đang ở chợ trời đường Portobello ở London. Cô ta đang nhìn vào một sạp bán đồ cổ và vừa mới trông thấy một cái đĩa bằng đồng thau. Cô ta sưu tầm các đồ trang trí bằng đồng thau và cảm thấy thích mua cái đĩa này. Hãy nghe cuộc đối thoại của cô ta với người chủ sạp và trả lời các câu hỏi sau đây :

1. Ông ta nói nó đáng giá bao nhiêu ?
2. Ông ta đòi giá bao nhiêu ?
3. Từ "quid" nghĩa là gì ?
4. Ông ta đề nghị bốn giá khác nhau. Hãy viết ra.
5. Cô ta trả 4 tiếng. Hãy viết ra.

Some English saying about money :

"Neither a borrower nor a lender be."

From 'Hamlet' by William Shakespeare.

Have you ever borrowed money from anyone? Who from ? How much ?

Have you ever lent money to anyone ? Who to? How much ?

Are you in debt at the moment ? (i.e. Do you owe anyone any money ?)

Does anyone owe you any money ? Who ? How much ?

"Look after the pennies, and the pounds will look after themselves."

Do you save money ? Are you saving for anything at the moment ? What ?

Do you keep your money **a** in the bank ? **b** in a safe ? **c** in a money-box ? **d** under the bed ?

Have you got a bank account ? Do you get any interest ? What's the rate of interest ? If you had a bank overdraft, how much interest would you have to pay ?

"Live now – pay later."

Have you bought anything on hire purchase ? What ? Did you pay a deposit ? Do you think it's a good idea / Have you got a credit card ? Which one ? (Visa ? American Express ? Diner's Club ? Access ?

When you pay cash, do you ask for a discount? Do you usually get it ?

"Annual income twenty pounds, annual expenditure nineteen nineteen and six, result happiness. Annual income twenty pounds, annual expenditure twenty pounds ought and six, result misery."

Mr Micawber from 'David Copperfield' by Charles Dickens.

Do you spend more than you earn, or less than you earn ?

Do you have a budget for your money ?

Do you keep a record of your expenses ?

"A fool and his money are soon parted."

Where do you keep your money ? a in a purse b in a wallet c in a handbag d in a pocket

If you keep it in a pocket, which pocket do you keep it in ?

Một số thành ngữ tiếng Anh liên quan đến tiền bạc :

"Đừng làm người đi vay cũng như làm người cho vay"

(Trích từ "Hamlet" của William Shakespeare)

Bạn có bao giờ vay tiền của ai chưa ?

Của ai ? Bao nhiêu ?

Bạn có bao giờ cho ai vay tiền chưa ? Cho ai ? Bao nhiêu ?

Bạn có đang mắc nợ không ?

Có ai nợ tiền bạn không ? Ai ? Bao nhiêu ?

"Hãy chăm sóc những đồng penny, rồi những đồng pound sẽ tự chăm sóc lấy chúng"

Bạn có để dành tiền không.? Bạn có đang để dành tiền để mua cái gì đó không ? Bạn định mua cái gì ?

Bạn giữ tiền a. Trong ngân hàng ? b. Trong két sắt ? c. Trong hộp đựng tiền ? d. Dưới giường ?

Bạn có trương mục trong ngân hàng không ? Bạn có được tiền lãi không ? Lãi suất là bao nhiêu ? Nếu bạn rút lố số tiền bạn có trong trương mục thì bạn phải trả lãi bao nhiêu?

"Hãy vui sống đi, rồi trả tiền sau"

Bạn có mua trả góp cái gì không ? Cái gì ? Bạn có phải trả tiền cọc không ?

Bạn có cho như vậy là một ý kiến hay không?

Bạn có thẻ tín dụng không ? Loại nào ? (Visa? American Express ? Diner's club ? Access ?)

Khi bạn trả bằng tiền mặt, bạn có yêu cầu được giảm tiền không ? Thường thì bạn có được giảm không ?

"Thu nhập hàng năm hai mươi bảng, chi tiêu hàng năm 19 pound 19 shilling và 6 penny, kết quả là hạnh phúc. Thu nhập hàng năm hai mươi bảng, chi tiêu hàng năm 20 pound 6 penny, kết quả là bất hạnh !

(Lời nói của Ô. Micawber trong truyện "David Copperfield" của Charles Dickens)

Bạn tiêu xài nhiều hơn số tiền bạn kiếm được hay ít hơn?

Bạn có ngân sách chi tiêu không ?

Bạn có ghi lại các khoản chi tiêu của mình không ?

"Kẻ ngu chẳng giữ tiền được lâu"

Bạn cất tiền ở đâu ?

a. Trong ví nữ. b. Trong bóp đựng tiền của nam.c. Trong túi xách. d. Trong túi. Nếu bạn giữ tiền trong túi, bạn để trong túi nào?

a inside jacket-pocket
b back trouser-pocket
c side trouser-pocket
d top front jacket-pocket

Have you ever had your pocket picked ?
When you stay in a hotel, do you hide your money ? Where ?
a in your suitcase **b** under the mattress **c** in the pillow **d** in a book **e** somewhere else
Is gambling legal or illegal in your country ? Do people bet ? What do they bet on ?
a cards **b** horses **c** dogs **d** football **e** boxing **f** national lottery **e** something else.

a. Túi trong áo vét
b. Túi quần sau
c. Túi quần bên
d. Túi trên của áo vét.

Có bao giờ bạn bị móc túi chưa ?
Khi bạn nghỉ trong một khách sạn, bạn có cất giấu tiền đi không ? Bạn cất ở đâu ?
a. Trong vali. b. Dưới nệm. c. Trong gối.
d. Trong một cuốn sách. e. Một nơi nào khác.
Ở quốc gia của bạn cờ bạc được coi là hợp pháp hay bất hợp pháp ? Người ta có đánh cá không ? Người ta cá cuộc về cái gì ?
a. Bài tây. b. Ngựa. c. Chó.
d. Bóng đá. e. Quyền Anh. f. Vé số.
e. Cái gì khác.

"The customer is always right."

Have you bought anything this week ? What ?
What did it cost ? Was it worth it ?
Was it new or second-hand ?
Was it a bargain ? Did you get a receipt ?

"Khách hàng luôn luôn đúng"

Tuần này bạn có mua gì không ? Vật gì ?
Nó giá bao nhiêu ? Nó có đáng tiền không ?
Nó mới hay xài rồi ?
Nó có phải là một món hời không ? Bạn có lấy hóa đơn không ?

PRACTICE

I remember once booking into a Los Angeles hotel where I was handed a form asking me how I proposed to settle my bill. Since I proposed to settle in cash, I wrote 'Cash', and the desk clerk turned white under his California tan. You would have thought I was offering to pay him in Indian beads.

'You don't wish to utilise an accreditisation facility, Mr Waterhouse ?' he said in that appalling jargon which I'm sure is now taught in high schools instead of English.

No thank you. I'll pay cash.
'Travellers' cheques, would that be, Mr Waterhouse ?'
No. Cash. These things. Dollars.
I showed him a few greenbacks and he stared at them as if they were an interesting collection of foreign stamps.
'One moment, sir.'

Tôi nhớ lại có một lần tôi đăng ký vào khách sạn Los Angeles, nơi đó người ta đưa cho tôi một tờ khai hỏi tôi cách tôi để nghị thanh toán hóa đơn. Vì tôi để nghị trả bằng tiền mặt, Tôi ghi "Cash", và người thư ký ngồi ở bàn mặt trắng bệch ra dưới màu da California rám nắng của anh ta. Bạn có thể nghĩ là tôi sẵn sàng trả anh ta bằng hạt chuỗi Ấn Độ.
"Ông không muốn tận dụng các phương tiện ngân hàng à, ông Waterhouse ?" anh ta nói với tiếng chuyên nghiệp dễ sợ đó mà tôi biết chắc là bây giờ được dạy ở các trường phổ thông thay cho tiếng Anh.
- Không, cảm ơn. Tôi sẽ trả tiền mặt.
- Vậy là ngân phiếu du lịch phải không ông Waterhouse ?
- Không, tiền mặt. Tiền đây. Đô la đây.
Tôi đưa anh ta xem vài tờ giấy bạc và anh ta nhìn chăm chăm như nhìn vào bộ sưu tầm tem nước ngoài thú vị.
- Thưa ông chờ một chút.

Exercise 1

Find words which mean :

1 lobby
2 readable
3 wild and foolish
4 ask
5 brown colour, of sunburnt skin
6 a collection of banknotes folded or rolled together
7 language full of specialist words
8 hesitate

Exercise 2

1 'He turned white', because

☐ **A** he was embarrassed.
☐ **B** he was angry.
☐ **C** he was shocked.

2 'He gave me a funny look', means

☐ **A** he smiled at me.
☐ **B** he looked at me suspiciously.
☐ **C** he looked at me and laughed.

3 'We'd be happy to bill your company', means

☐ **A** we don't mind sending the account to your firm.
☐ **B** we'd like your company to send us a bill.
☐ **C** would you like us to telephone your company.

4 'To utilise an accreditisation facility', means

☐ **A** to borrow some money.
☐ **B** to pay by cheque.
☐ **C** to use a credit card.

Bài tập 1

Tìm từ có nghĩa là :

9 to move quickly and suddenly
10 banknotes in US dollars
11 a small ball of wood or glass with a hole through it
12 to make easy
13 to stretch one's neck to see something
14 a thin dividing wall
15 in normal use
16 go in

Bài tập 2

5 'Keep an eye on the Limey Bum', means

☐ **A** watch the poor Englishman.
☐ **B** follow the cement salesman.
☐ **C** watch the man with the green bottom.

6 'People trying to book in as Mr & Mrs Smith', means

☐ **A** a husband and wife whose real names are Smith.
☐ **B** a man and woman who do not want to use their real names.
☐ **C** a famous husband and wife team of hotel thieves.

7 'I coughed up my wretched hoard of dollars', means

☐ **A** I was nervous because I paid with counterfeit money.
☐ **B** I asked him to look after my money.
☐ **C** paid in cash.

8 'This note is legal tender', means

☐ **A** this note must be accepted by law if offered in payment.
☐ **B** this note is made of paper.
☐ **C** this note is a document for use by lawyers.

PROVERBS:

- *There is no rose without a thorn*
  Hồng nào mà chẳng có gai.
- *Easy come easy go*
  Của thiên trả địa.
- *Seeing is believing*
  Tai nghe không bằng mắt thấy.

He darted into the inner office and I saw secretarial heads craning over the partition and giving me the kind of look I expect they normally reserved for people trying to book in as Mr and Mrs Smith. In a moment the manager appeared.

'Glad to know you, Mr Waterhouse. We hope you'll have a pleasant stay with us, and for your further enjoyment at this time we'd like to extend accreditisation facilities. We accept any regular credit card or if it's your pleasure we'd be happy to bill your company.'

'I don't want accreditisation facilities, thank you. I want to pay cash.' Again I produced my wad of dollars pointing out that on each one of them was printed in legible type : 'This note is legal tender for all debts, public and private.'

The manager read the words for himself, checked the signature that had been put to this reckless promise (Dorothy Andrew Katia, Treasurer to the United States), and seemed to waver.

'As a formality, Mr Waterhouse, could I request that you produce some identification at this time ?

I showed him my passport, my driving licence, a bill for the water rates and a letter from my brother. He examined them with care.

'These seem to be in order, Mr Waterhouse. To facilitate our accounting process at this time, could I request that you pay in advance ?

So I coughed up my wretched hoard of dollars and he held them up to the light then put them away in a cupboard. One day, I imagine, he'll take them out and show them to his grandchildren.

I stayed in the hotel a week and every time I entered the foyer a man sitting near the water-cooler lowered his newspaper and gave me a funny look. I learned later that he was the hotel detective. He must have been told to keep an eye on the limey bum who couldn't afford to live on credit.

From 'Taking the Credit', an article by Keith Waterhouse, in *Mondays, Thursdays*. Michael Joseph, 1976.

Anh ta lao vào văn phòng bên trong và tôi thấy mấy cái đầu thư ký nghểnh cổ qua bức vách ngăn nhìn tôi với cái vẻ họ hay nhìn những người cố gắng đăng ký vào Một lát sau ông giám đốc xuất hiện.

- Vui sướng được biết ông, Ô. Waterhouse. Chúng tôi mong ông rất vui khi lưu lại đây với chúng tôi, và để ông được vui hơn nữa, lúc này chúng tôi đang mở rộng các phương tiện tín dụng. Chúng tôi nhận bất kỳ phiếu tín dụng hoặc nếu ông vui lòng, chúng tôi sẵn sàng gửi hóa đơn đến công ty của ông".

"- Tôi không cần các phương tiện ngân hàng, xin cảm ơn ông. Tôi muốn trả tiền mặt." Một lần nữa tôi chìa ra đống tiền đô la của tôi và chỉ rõ là trên mỗi tờ đều có in hàng chữ dễ đọc : "Giấy bạc này hợp pháp cho tất cả mọi chi trả, công lẫn tư". Ông giám đốc đọc hàng chữ này, kiểm tra chữ ký được đặt vào lời hứa táo bạo này (Dorothy Andrew Katia, Thống đốc Ngân hàng Mỹ) và dường như do dự.

- Ông Waterhouse à, theo thủ tục – Xin ông xuất trình ít giấy tờ tùy thân bây giờ nhé ?

Tôi đưa ông ta xem tờ hộ chiếu của tôi, bằng lái xe, hóa đơn tiền nước và một lá thư của anh tôi gửi. Ông ta xem cẩn thận.

- Những thứ này dường như được rồi ông Waterhouse ạ. Để dễ dàng cho việc tính toán sổ sách của chúng tôi lúc này, xin ông vui lòng trả trước nhé ?

Thế là tôi đổ ra những đồng đô la đau khổ của tôi và ông ta đưa lên ánh đèn rồi cất vào trong tủ. Tôi tưởng tượng một ngày nào đó ông ta sẽ đem nó ra cho con cháu xem.

Tôi lưu lại khách sạn một tuần và mỗi lần tôi đi vào phòng giải lao một người đàn ông ngồi gần máy nước lạnh đều hạ tờ báo xuống nhìn tôi với vẻ kỳ kỳ. Sau đó tôi biết anh ta là thám tử của khách sạn. Chắc là anh ta được giao nhiệm vụ theo dõi tay người Anh không đủ sức trả bằng tín phiếu.

USAGE

Notice this

to be	reported	missing
	believed	wounded
	affirmed	injured
	said	killed
	rumored	dead

GRAMMAR NOTES

Verb pattern

S + V + (pro)noun + bare infinitive

Such verbs as make, let, help, bid, know are followed by a (pro)noun + bare infinitive.

EX : 1. He *let* me *keep* the camera.
2. We *helped* the old man *carry* his cases upstairs.
3. They *made* me *do* it.
4. What *makes* you *think* so ?
5. *Let* me *go*.
6. *Have* you ever *known* her *lose* her temper (nổi nóng) ?

However when sentences of this pattern are put into passive voice a to - infinitive is needed.

Ex :1. They made me do it → I *was made to do* it.
2. Let me go → I *am allowed to go*.

INSIDE STORY

"NEWS" REPORTER MISSING IN MANDANGA

Julian Snow, the "Daily News' war correspondent, who is covering the civil war in Mandanga, has been reported missing.

He was last seen yesterday morning driving his Land Rover near the front line. The vehicle was found yesterday evening, but there was no sign of him. It is possible that he was ambushed and captured by guerilla forces. Snow has been a war correspondent for many years and has covered a number of conflicts, including Vietnam, Kampuchea, Zimbabwe and the Middle East.

STOP PRESS

JULIAN SNOW FREE War correspondent alive and well. Julian Snow walked into a government forces camp this morning, after spending two weeks with MLF (Mandanga Liberation Front) guerrillas. His exclusive story will appear in tomorrow's 'Daily News'.

PHÓNG VIÊN TỜ "TIN TỨC" MẤT TÍCH Ở MANDANGA

Julian Snow, phóng viên chiến trường của báo "Tin hàng ngày", người đang theo dõi cuộc nội chiến ở Mandanga, đã được loan báo là mất tích.

Anh ta còn được trông thấy lần cuối cùng vào sáng hôm qua lúc anh ta đang lái chiếc Land Rover gần chiến tuyến. Người ta đã tìm thấy chiếc xe này vào tối hôm qua, nhưng không có dấu vết gì của anh ta cả. Có thể anh ta đã bị quân du kích phục kích và bắt giữ. Snow đã là phóng viên chiến trường nhiều năm nay và đã đưa tin về một số các cuộc xung đột, bao gồm cả Việt Nam, Kampuchia, Zim-ba-bu-ê và Trung Đông.

TIN GIỜ CHÓT

JULIAN SNOW ĐƯỢC PHÓNG THÍCH –

Phóng viên chiến trường này còn sống và vẫn bình an. Julian Snow bước vào một căn cứ của quân chính phủ sáng hôm nay, sau khi đã trải qua 2 tuần với du kích quân MLF (Mặt trận giải phóng Mandanga). Câu chuyện độc quyền này sẽ xuất hiện trên báo "Tin hàng ngày" số ngày mai.

Unit 16 Inside Story

Chuyện bí mật

VOCABULARY

- **alive** *(adj)* /ə'laɪv/ living, not dead = sống
  She was still ~ when I reached the hospital.
- **ambush** *(n)* /'æmbuʃ/ surprise attack from a hidden position = sự mai phục, phục kích
  They laid an ~ for the enemy patrol
  ambush *(v)* make a surprise attack on (sb) from a hidden position = phục kích
  ~ an enemy patrol.
- **armed** *(adj)* /a:md/ có vũ trang
  arm *(v)* /a:m/ ~ oneself / sb (with st) supply or equip oneself / sb with weapons. *The mob ~ ed themselves with stick and stones.*
- **blindfold** *(v)* /'blaɪndfəuld/ cover the eyes of sb with a bandage, cloth, etc so that he cannot see. *~ a prisoner.*
  blindfold *(n)* such a cover for the eyes.
  blindfold *(adj) (adv)* with the eyes blindfolded
  I could do that ~. = easily
- **captivity** *(n)* /kæp'tɪvətɪ/ state of being captive = sự giam cầm *He was held in ~ for three years.*
  captive *(adj)* /'kæptɪv/ held as a prisoner
  captive *(n)* captive person or animal *Three of the ~ s tried to escape.*
- **capture** *(v)* /'kæptʃə/ take sb / st as a prisoner = bắt giữ *~ an escaped convict.*
- **cell** *(n)* /sel/ very small room for one or more prisoners in a prison = xà lim, phòng giam
- **civil war** *(n)* /'sɪvl wɔ:/ nội chiến
- **conflict** *(n)* /'kɒnflɪkt/ struggle, fight = sự xung đột *Soldiers involved in armed ~.*
- **correspondent** *(n)* /ˌkɒrɪ'spɒndənt/ person who contributes news or comments regularly to a newspaper = phóng viên *a war ~ .*
- **cover** *(v)* /'kʌvə/ = - place st over = bao phủ, che; - deal with = dự, liên quan tới

- **exclusive** *(adj)* /ɪk'sklu:sɪv/ reserved for or limited to the person (s) or group concerned= độc quyền *The interview is ~ to this magazine.*
- **film** *(n)* /fɪlm/ make a film of = quay phim
  They're ~ ing a new comedy.
- **force** *(n)* /fɔ:s/ organized body of armed and specially trained people = lực lượng
  peace – keeping ~ s.
  force *(v)* /fɔ:s/ compel, oblige = ép buộc
  The thief ~ d her to hand over the money.
- **front line** *(n)* /frʌnt laɪn/ line of fighting which is closest to the enemy = tiền tuyến
- **guerilla** *(n)* /gə'rɪlə/ person engaged in fighting in small secret groups = du kích
  ~ war, warfare.
- **missing** *(adj)* /'mɪsɪŋ/ that cannot be found = mất tích *The child had been ~ for a week.*
- **prayer** *(n)* /preə/ (for st) solemn request to God or to an object of worship = lời cầu nguyện
- **release** *(v)* /rɪ'li:s/ (sb/st from st) set free = thả, phóng thích *~ a prisoner.*
- **sack** *(v)* /sæk/ (infml esp Brit) dismiss (sb) from a job; fire = đuổi, sa thải *be ~ ed for incompetence.*
- **treat** *(v)* /tri:t/ (sb as / like st) behave in a certain way towards sb = cư xử *They ~ their children very badly.*
- **vehicle** *(n)* /'vɪəkl/ (esp fml) conveyance such as a car, lorry used for transporting goods or passengers on land = xe cộ
  motor ~ s = cars, buses, motorcycles.
- **warder** *(n)* /'wɔ:də/ (Brit) person who works as a guard in a prison; jailer
- **weapon** *(n)* /'wepən/ thing used for causing physical harm = vũ khí
  They were carrying ~ s.

EXPRESSIONS

on my way trên đường đi
no sign of him không có dấu vết gì của anh ấy
in the first place trước hết, trước tiên
to say one's prayers cầu nguyện

PROPER NAMES

Dominic Beale	/'dɒmɪnɪk 'bi:l/	Mandanga	/mæn'dæŋgə/
Julian Snow	/'dʒulɪən 'snəu/	Middle East (or Mid East)	/'mɪdl i:st/ /'mɪd i:st/
Kampuchea	/ˌkæmpu'tʃɪə/	Zimbabwe	/zɪm'ba:bwɪ/
Land Rover	/'lænd 'rəuvə/		

IBC NEWS

This is IBC News. Julian Snow, the missing 'Daily News' reporter, was interviewed this morning by Dominic Beale of IBC News in Mandanga.

Beale Julian, can you tell us how you were captured in the first place ?

Snow Well, I was on my way to visit a village near the front line. I came round a bend in the road and there was a tree lying across the road. I only just managed to stop in time ! Suddenly, armed men appeared on all sides!

Beale What did you do ?

Snow What would you do ? I just sat there with my hands in the air ! Anyway, they made me get out of the Land Rover, and made me lie on the ground... I thought 'This is it ! They're going to shoot me !' I started saying my prayers !

Beale What happened next ?

Snow Well, they searched me. Of course, I didn't have any weapons, just a camera. It's funny, they let me keep it. Then they tied my hands together and blindfolded me. Then they made me get in the back of a truck and lie under some sacks. I've no idea where they took me, except that it was quite a large training camp. I was there for ten days.

Beale Were you treated well ?

Snow Yes, I suppose I was. They let me walk about the camp and they let me take photographs, but they wouldn't let me photograph any faces. I was able to interview some of the leaders.

Beale How did you escape ?

Snow I didn't ! They put me back in the truck, blindfolded me again, drove for a few hours, then made me get out, pointed me in the direction of town and let me go !

Beale And what exactly did the guerrilla leaders say about the situation ?

Snow Ah ! Well, if you want to know that, you'll have to buy tomorrow's 'Daily News'...

BẢN TIN CỦA ĐÀI IBC

Đây là bản tin của đài IBC. Julian Snow, phóng viên mất tích của tờ "Tin hàng ngày" đã được phỏng vấn sáng hôm nay bởi Dominic Beale của phân xã IBC ở Mandanga.

Beale : Julian, anh có thể kể cho chúng tôi nghe thoạt tiên anh đã bị bắt giữ như thế nào không?

Snow : À, lúc đó tôi đang trên đường tới thăm một làng gần chiến tuyến. Tôi quẹo cua và thấy một thân cây chắn ngang lộ. Tôi chỉ còn kịp thắng lại ! Thình linh những người có vũ trang xuất hiện từ mọi phía.

Beale : Rồi anh làm gì ?

Snow : Còn biết làm gì nữa ? Tôi chỉ ngồi trên xe giơ hai tay lên trời. Rồi họ bắt tôi rời khỏi chiếc Land Rover và nằm xuống đất... Tôi nghĩ "Thế là tàn đời ! Họ sắp bắn mình đây!" Tôi bắt đầu cầu nguyện.

Beale : Rồi sao nữa ?

Snow : À, họ lục soát người tôi. Dĩ nhiên tôi đâu có vũ khí, chỉ có chiếc máy ảnh thôi. Thật là ngộ, họ cho tôi giữ nó. Rồi họ trói 2 tay tôi lại và bịt mắt tôi. Sau đó họ bắt tôi leo lên phía sau xe cam nhông và nằm dưới một số bao hàng. Tôi chẳng biết họ đưa tôi đến đâu cả, ngoại trừ cảm nhận là nơi đó là một trại huấn luyện lớn. Tôi đã ở đó trong 10 ngày.

Beale : Họ đối xử với anh có tốt không ?

Snow : Tôi cho là tốt. Họ cho tôi đi lại trong trại và cho tôi chụp hình, nhưng không cho tôi chụp hình bất cứ khuôn mặt nào. Tôi còn được phỏng vấn một số nhà lãnh đạo.

Beale : Làm sao anh tẩu thoát được ?

Snow : Tôi đâu có tẩu thoát ! Họ đưa tôi ra xe trở lại, lại bịt mắt tôi, lái xe đi vài tiếng đồng hồ, rồi ra lệnh cho tôi xuống xe, chỉ cho tôi hướng về thị xã và cho tôi đi đấy chứ.

Beale : Thế các lãnh đạo du kích đã nói về tình hình hiện nay như thế nào ?

Snow : À, nếu anh muốn biết điều đó thì anh phải mua tờ "Tin hàng ngày" số ngày mai...

Exclusive !

JULIAN SNOW's inside story ! In today's issue, Julian Snow tells his exclusive story. He was captured by Mandangan guerrillas two weeks ago. They forced him to go with them to their camp. However they allowed him to keep his camera, and to interview guerrilla leaders. Turn to page two for the story of his captivity !

Độc quyền !

Chuyện bí mật do Julian Snow kể lại : Trong số hôm nay, Julian Snow kể lại câu chuyện *độc quyền* của anh ta. Anh ta đã bị các du kích quân Mandanga bắt giữ hai tuần trước đây. Họ đã bắt anh ta theo họ về căn cứ. Tuy vậy họ đã cho phép anh ta giữ lại máy ảnh và phỏng vấn các lãnh đạo du kích. Xem câu chuyện anh ta bị bắt giữ ở trang 2.

Exercise

When I was younger, my parents made me go to bed early.
When I was younger, my parents didn't let me go out in the evenings.
Write true sentences about when you were younger.

PRACTICE

Language summary

make/let	*someone*	*do*	*something.*
force/allow	*someone*	*to do*	*something.*

He was seen. He was driving a Land Rover.
He was seen driving a Land Rover.

I promised not to (do it).

Exercise 1

Norman Barker is in prison. He's writing to his mother. The letter begins :
Write five sentences with 'make', five with 'let' and five with 'don't let'.

Bài tập 1

Viết 5 câu với 'make', 5 câu với 'let' và 5 câu với 'don't let'

Parkwood Maximum Security Prison

REGULATIONS, 'C' WING

All prisoners must.

1 get up at 5 o'clock
2 go to bed at 7.30
3 clean their own cells
4 wear prison uniform at all times
5 work in the prison workshops
6 obey all orders from the warders

Prisoners may

1 have two visitors per month
2 write up to 3 letters a week
3 purchase cigarettes and sweets from the prison shop
4 earn up to £2 a week in the workshops
5 watch T.V. for 1 hour per day

Prisoners may not

1 have any alcoholic beverages
2 smoke in their cells
3 have radios or cassette-players
4 bring money into the prison
5 leave their cells without permission

SIGNED *Harold NP Vicar, Prison Governor*

Exercise 2

Joey Godber was in prison for two months. He has just been released. He says he was innocent, and is very angry about his time in prison. He's telling a friend about it.

'It was terrible ! They forced us to get up at 5 o'clock. They only allowed us two visitors a month, and they didn't allow us to smoke in our cells !'

Write four sentences with 'forced', four with 'allowed' and four with 'not allowed'.

Exercise 3

Somebody saw him. He was driving a Land Rover. *He was seen driving a Land Rover.*

Continue.

1 Somebody heard him. He was shouting for help. . . . . .

2 Someone filmed her. She was waving to the crowds. . . . . .

3 Somebody saw it. It was moving slowly. . . . . .

PROVERBS

- *Easier said than done*
  Nói thì dễ chứ làm mới khó
- *Out of sight, out of mind*
  Xa mặt cách lòng
- *One swallow does not make a summer*
  Con én không làm nên mùa xuân

Bài tập 2

Joey Godber ở tù 2 tháng. Anh ta vừa được thả ra. Anh ta nói là anh ta vô tội và rất giận về thời gian anh ở trong tù. Anh ta đang nói với một người bạn về việc đó.

"Thật kinh khủng. Họ buộc tôi phải dậy lúc 5g. Họ chỉ cho phép chúng tôi có 2 người khách mỗi tháng, và họ không cho phép chúng tôi hút thuốc trong phòng giam !".

Viết 4 câu với "forced", 4 câu với "allowed" và 4 câu với "not allowed".

Bài tập 3

Một người nào đó trông thấy hắn. Hắn đang lái chiếc Land Rover. *Hắn bị trông thấy đang lái chiếc Land Rover.*

Hãy tiếp tục

4 Somebody recorded them. They were telling jokes. . . . . .

5 Someone photographed them. They were swimming in the sea. . . . . .

Dialogue A

Listen

Philip Clark has broken his leg in a road accident. He's in hospital now.
Zoe Oh, excuse me !
Nurse Yes ?
Zoe Would you mind telling me the way to Ward 3 ? I think I'm lost.
Nurse Certainly. It's on the next floor. Just turn left at the top of these stairs.
Zoe Thank you.
Nurse Who are you looking for ?
Zoe My brother... Philip Clark.
Nurse Oh, yes. I know him. Well, don't stay too long. He needs rest.
Zoe Oh, no. I won't stay too long... I promise.

Vocabulary

- Ward *(n)* /wɔ:d/ separate part for a particular group of patients = khu (trong bệnh viện)

Listen and repeat

A1 Listen

A : Ward 3.
B : Would you mind telling me the way to Ward 3 ?
C : Would you mind telling me the way to Ward 3 ?
A : the main entrance.
B : Would you mind telling me the way to the main entrance?
C : Would you mind telling me the way to the main entrance?

Now you do the same

Ward 3..... Would you mind telling me the way to Ward 3 ?
the main entrance..... Would you mind telling me the way to the main entrance ?
the maternity ward..... Would you mind telling me the way to the maternity ward ?
the pharmacy..... Would you mind telling me the way to the pharmacy ?

A2 Listen

A : I won't stay long. I promise.
B : I promise not to stay long.
C : I promise not to stay long.
A : I won't make a noise, I promise.
B : I promise not to make a noise.
C : I promise not to make a noise.

Now you do the same

I won't stay long. I promise..... I promise not to stay long.
I won't make a noise. I promise..... I promise not to make a noise.
I won't disturb him. I promise..... I promise not to disturb him.
I won't tell her. I promise..... I promise not to tell her.

Dialogue B

Listen

Zoe Phil ! Hi, how are you ?
Phil Zoe ! Thanks for coming. I'm all right. Just fed up with being in bed, that's all.
Zoe What's it like ? The nurses seem very nice.
Phil You know what hospitals are like. They won't let you watch TV or read after 9.30. They make you go to sleep.
Zoe Make you ? What do you mean ? You can't force someone to go to sleep.
Phil You can ! They give you a sleeping pill. Then, at 5.30 they make you get up and wash and shave !
Zoe At 5.30 ?
Phil Hmm. But then they won't let you have breakfast 'til 8. I was starving this morning !

Listen and repeat

Vocabulary

- to be fed up with = to be bored with = chán ngấy
- to starve /stɑ:v/ = to suffer severely or die from hunger = chết đói

starving *(adj)* /'stɑ:vɪŋ/ = very hur

B1 Listen

A : Mr Clark ! You can't watch TV !
B : They won't let me watch TV.
C : They won't let me watch TV.
A : Mr Clark ! I'm afraid smoking is forbidden !
B : They won't let me smoke.
C : They won't let me smoke.

B2 Listen

A : Mr Clark ! It's 9.30. Now, go to sleep... there's a good boy.
B : They make me go to sleep at 9.30.
C : They make me go to sleep at 9.30.
A : Mr Clark ! Come on, now. Get up ! It's 5.30 already...
B : They make me get up at 5.30.
C : They make me get up at 5.30.

Now you do the same

Mr Clark ! You can't watch TV !..... They won't let me watch TV.
Mr Clark ! I'm afraid smoking is forbidden.....They won't let me smoke.
Mr Clark ! It's 9.30. You must stop reading.....They won't let me read.
Mr Clark ! Give me that ! You know breakfast is at 8 o'clock..... They won't let me have breakfast 'til 8.

Now you do the same

Mr Clark ! It's 9.30. Now, go to sleep... there's a good boy .....They make me go to sleep at 9.30.
Mr Clark ! Come on, now. Get up ! It's 5.30 already .....They make me get up at 5.30.
Mr Clark ! Haven't you shaved yet ? Hurry up ! .....They make me shave.
Mr Clark ! You must do exercises. Now, don't argue. Hands up !..... They make me do exercises.

Dialogue C

Listen

Zoe You do look funny, Phil. With your leg up in the air.
Phil Ha, ha.
Zoe I'm sorry. What's this handle for ?
Phil It's used for lifting my leg up and down. Don't pull it... Aargh !
Zoe Ooh... sorry. Is there anything you need ? I can bring it in tomorrow.
Phil Just some shaving cream.
Zoe By the way, the police have found the driver who hit you.
Phil Great ! How did they catch him ?
Zoe He was seen driving away by two or three people. Someone took his registration number.

Listen and repeat

C1 Listen

A : shaving cream
B : It's used for shaving.
C : It's used for shaving.
A : cooking oil
B : It's used for cooking.
C : It's used for cooking.

C2 Listen

A : He was seen. He was driving away.
B : He was seen driving away.
C : He was seen driving away.
A : They saw him. He was holding a bottle.
B : They saw him holding a bottle.
C : They saw him holding a bottle.

Now you do the same

shaving cream .....It's used for shaving.
cooking oil.....It's used for cooking.
swimming pool.....It's used for swimming.
washing-up liquid.....It's used for washing-up.

Now you do the same

He was seen. He was driving away..... He was seen driving away.
They saw him. He was holding a bottle..... They saw him holding a bottle.
They found him. He was drinking whisky..... They found him drinking whisky.
He was caught. He was driving a stolen car.....He was caught driving a stolen car.

Dialogue D

Listen

Zoe What's that ?
Phil It's the bell to tell you the end of visiting time.
Zoe Can't I stay a bit longer ?
Phil No. They won't allow you to stay after 8.
Zoe Won't allow ? They can't force me to leave, can they ?
Phil Not really. But they've got a lot of work to do. Zoe, can you come tomorrow ?
Zoe Of course. Sleep well... oh, you will anyway, won't you !

Listen and repeat

D1 Listen

A : Will they let me stay after 8?
B : No, they won't allow you to stay after 8.
C : No, they won't allow you to stay after 8.
A : Will they let me bring you a radio ?
B : No, they won't allow you to bring me a radio.
C : No, they won't allow you to bring me a radio.

Now you do the same

Will they let me stay after 8 ?.....No, they won't allow you to stay after 8.
Will they let me bring you a radio ?..... No, they won't allow you to bring me a radio.
Will they let me smoke ?..... No, they won't allow you to smoke.
Will they let me bring you some whisky ?.....No, they won't allow you to bring me some whisky.

D2 Listen

A : They'll make you leave.
B : They can't force me to leave, can they ?
C : They can't force me to leave, can they ?
A : They'll make you turn it off.
B : They can't force me to turn it off, can they ?
C : They can't force me to turn it off, can they ?

Now you do the same

They'll make you leave..... They can't force me to leave, can they ?
They'll make you turn it off.....They can't force me to turn it off, can they ?
They'll make you stop smoking.....They can't force me to stop smoking, can they ?
They'll make you take it away.....They can't force me to take it away, can they ?

Listening

Listen

'This is Radio Wessex News. Last night the self-service filling station in St Michael's Road, Watermouth, was robbed for the fourth time in a year. Mr Tony King, the owner of the filling station is with us in the studio tonight. What exactly happened, Mr King ?

'It was just after midnight. A black Jaguar pulled onto the forecourt. Two men got out. I saw them filling the car, then both of them walked over to the cash window... I don't allow anyone to come into the shop after dark. They asked to pay by credit card, so I turned round to get the sales vouchers. When I looked back, one of them was pointing a gun at me. They forced me to unlock the door, and they came in and made me sit on a chair. Then they tied me to the chair. They emptied the cash register. They took about three hundred quid... oh, and three car stereos. They were worth about seventy quid each. Then they drove away. I was there for about 20 minutes. Then a girl arrived to buy petrol. She let me go, and I phoned the police.'

New words :

- forecourt *(n)* /'fɔ:kɔ:t/ large open area or courtyard in front of a building, esp the front of a filling station where petrol is sold.
- voucher *(n)* /'vaʊtʃə/ = receipt

Now listen again and answer the questions when you hear this sound * **BELL**

1

'This is Radio Wessex News. Last night the self-service filling station in St Michael's Road, Watermouth, was robbed for the fourth time in a year. Mr Tony King, the owner of the filling station is with us in the studio tonight. What exactly happened, Mr King ?'

'It was just after midnight. A black Jaguar pulled onto the forecourt. Two men got out. I saw them filling the car, then both of them walked over to the cash window... I don't allow anyone to come into the shop after dark.'

2

'They asked to pay by credit card, so I turned round to get the sales vouchers. When I looked back, one of them was pointing a gun at me.'

3

'They forced me to unlock the door, and they came in and made me sit on a chair. Then they tied me to the chair. They emptied the cash register.'

4

'They took about three hundred quid... oh, and three car stereos. They were worth about seventy quid each. Then they drove away. I was there for about 20 minutes. Then a girl arrived to buy petrol. She let me go, and I phoned the police.'

* **BELL**

What time was it ?.....It was just after midnight.
What kind of car was it ?.....It was a black Jaguar.
What did he see them doing ?.....He saw them filling the car.
What doesn't he allow customers to do after dark ?.....He doesn't allow them to come into the shop.

* **BELL**

How did they ask to pay ?.....They asked to pay by credit card.
What did he turn round to do ?.....He turned round to get the sales vouchers.

* **BELL**

What did they force him to do ?.....They forced him to unlock the door.
Where did they make him sit ?.....They made him sit on a chair.

* **BELL**

How much cash did they take ?.....They took about three hundred pounds.
What were the car stereos worth ?.....They were worth about seventy pounds each.
Who let him go ?.....A girl let him go.

Open conversation

Listen and reply

A : Have you bought anything recently ?
B : .....
A : What was it ?
B : .....
A : How much did it cost ?
B : .....
A : Do you think it was worth it ?
B : .....
A : How did you pay ?
B : .....
A : Did you get a receipt ?
B : .....
A : Are you pleased with it ?
B : .....
A : That's the end of section four.

RECOGNIZING SIGNS (các biển hiệu cần biết)

For Sale = Hàng bán
For Rent = Cho thuê

- **Beware of dog** = Coi chừng chó dữ
- **Keep off the grass** = Đừng đi trên cỏ

Unit 17 Preferences

Sở thích

VOCABULARY

- **aerobatic** *(adj)* /ˌeərəˈbætɪk/ nhào lộn trên không
  aerobatics *(n)* spectacular feats performed with aircraft, esp as part of a display *The ~ were the best part of the show* - **aerobatic display team** = đội biểu diễn nhào lộn trên không
- **alternative** *(adj)* /ɔːlˈtɜːnətɪv/ available in place of st else; other = khác *find ~ means of transport*
- **available** *(adj)* /əˈveɪləbl/ that can be obtained = có sẵn *You will be informed when the book becomes ~*
- **beige** *(adj) (n)* /beɪʒ/ (of a) very light yellowish brown = màu be *a ~ carpet.*
- **bug** *(n)* /bʌg/ rệp
- **bust** *(n)* /bʌst/ sculpture of a person's head, shoulders and chest = tượng bán thân
- **choice** *(n)* /tʃɔɪs/ act of choosing between two or more possibilities = sự lựa chọn
  choose *(v)* /tʃuːz/
- **collar** *(n)* /ˈkɒlə/ band, upright or folded over, round the neck of a shirt, coat, dress = cổ áo *turn one's ~ up against the wind.*
- **cords** *(n)* /kɔːdz/ corduroy trousers = quần nhung kẻ *a man wearing blue ~.*
- **custard** *(n)* /ˈkʌstəd/ món sữa trứng
- **feature** *(v)* /ˈfiːtʃə/ give a prominent part to (sb/ st) = cho vai chính *a film that ~ s a new French actress*
- **flying display** *(n)* /flaɪŋ ˈdɪspleɪ/ biểu diễn bay
- **funfair** *(n)* /fʌnfeə/ collection of outdoor amusements, stalls and side shows, usu in a park = hội chợ
- **greyhound** *(n)* /ˈgreyhaund/ large, thin, fast – running dog used in racing = chó săn để đua *~ racing.*
- **kidney** *(n)* /ˈkɪdnɪ/ thận
- **maroon** *(adj) (n)* /məˈruːn/ (of a) brownish red *a ~ jacket.*
- **navy blue** *(adj) (n)* /neɪvɪ bluː/ màu xanh biển
- **package** *(n)* /ˈpækɪdʒ/ parcel = gói hàng
  package *(v)* make st into or put st into a package = đóng gói
  packaging *(n)* materials for packing goods = bao bì
- **pale** /peɪl/ (of colours) not bright or vivid = nhạt *~ blue eyes; ~ sky.*
- **pirate** *(n)* /ˈpaɪərət/ person on a ship who attacks and robs other ships at sea = tên cướp biển
- **plaice** *(n)* /pleɪs/ (pl unchanged) type of flatfish with reddish spots, eaten as food = cá bơn
- **preference** *(n)* /ˈprefrəns/ (for st) liking for st more than st else = sự ưa thích hơn *There is milk and cream – do you have a ~ ?*
  prefer *(v)* /prɪˈfɜː/ like st better
- **pure** *(adj)* /pjuə/ not mixed with any other substance = thuần, nguyên chất
- **reggae** *(n)* /ˈregeɪ/ type of West Indian popular music and dance with strong rhythms = tên loại nhạc Pop
- **speedway** *(n)* /spiːdweɪ/ 1.- track for fast driving and racing, esp by motorbikes = trường đua mô tô 2.- sport of racing motorbikes= môn đua mô tô *Do you like ~ ?*
- **subtitle** *(n)* /ˈsʌbtaɪtl/ (usu pl) words printed on a film that translate the dialogue of a foreign film = phụ đề
- **tennis tournament** *(n)* /ˈtenɪs ˈtɔːnəmənt/ series of contests of skill between a number of competitors, often on a knock-out basis = đấu quần vợt
- **unbeatable** *(adj)* /ʌnˈbiːtəbl/ that cannnot be defeated or surpassed = không hạ nổi *The Brazilian team is regarded as ~.*
- **waxworks** *(n)* /ˈwæksweːks/ place where lifelike wax models of famous people are shown to the public = viện bảo tàng đồ sáp *take the children to the ~.*
- **wrestling** *(n)* /ˈreslɪŋ/ sport in which people wrestle = môn đấu vật *Watch (the) ~ on television.*

EXPRESSIONS

In stock /ɪn stɒk/ hiện đang có ở kho It's not worth it thật không xứng chút nào

What are you doing tomorrow night ? chị định làm gì tối mai ?

GRAMMAR NOTES EXPRESSING PREPERENCES

1. I like it
   Which do you like ?
   I'd like to do it.
   What would you like to do ?
2. I prefer it
   Which do you prefer ?
   I'd prefer to do it
   What would you prefer to do ?
3. I'd rather do it.
   I'd rather not do it
   I'd much rather do it
   Which would you rather do ?
4. I like both
   I don't like either of them
   I don't fancy any of them

A What are you doing tomorrow night ?
B Nothing. Why ?
A Well, do you like jazz ?
B Yes, I do, very much.
A Which do you like best ? Modern or traditional ?
B I like both, really.
A There's a 'Weather Report' concert at the Hammersmith Odeon. Would you like to come ?
B Oh, yes ! They're my favourite group.

C Lisa, look over here. They've got a very good selection of Levi cords.
D Oh, yes ! And they've got my size, too.
C But only in navy blue and black. Which do you prefer ?
D Hmm. I don't like either of them very much. I really wanted green.
C They haven't got green in your size. Go on, try a pair on.
D No, no. I'd prefer to look somewhere else.
E Have you decided yet ? What do you want to see ?
F 'A Moment of Peace' is on at the Continental. I'd like to see that.
E Would you really ? Oh, I'd rather see 'War in Space'.
F Oh, no ! The reviews were terrible.
E I know, but it sounds fun. 'A Moment of Peace' is in French, and I'd rather not have to read subtitles.
F Then how about 'California Sunset' ?
E I'd rather not... I can't stand Steve Newman.
F Well, you choose.
E I don't fancy any of them. I'd much rather stay in and watch TV !
G What do you fancy ?
H I don't know. There isn't much choice, is there ?

A : Tối mai cô định làm gì ?
B : Chẳng làm gì cả. Sao ?
A : Cô thích nhạc Jazz không ?
B : Rất thích
A : Cô thích loại nào nhất ? Hiện đại hay truyền thống?
B : Thực ra tôi thích cả hai.
A : Có một buổi hòa nhạc tại rạp Hammersmith Odeon do ban "Weather Report" biểu diễn. Tôi mời cô đi dự nhé ?
B : Ồ, vâng. Họ là nhóm mà tôi ưa thích đó.

C : Lisa, nhìn đây nè. Họ có cả một loạt Jeans Levi rất đẹp.
D : Ồ, vâng. Có cả cỡ của tôi nữa.
C : Nhưng chỉ có màu xanh dương và đen thôi. Bạn thích màu nào ?
D : Cả hai màu này tôi đều không thích lắm. Tôi chỉ muốn màu lục thôi.
C : Họ lại không có màu lục cho cỡ quần của bạn. Thôi kệ, thử một chiếc đi.
D : Thôi, tôi thích đi kiếm ở chỗ khác hơn.
E : Bạn quyết định chưa ? Bạn muốn xem phim nào ?
F : Rạp Continental đang chiếu "Một khoảnh khắc êm đềm" tôi muốn xem phim đó.
E : Thật vậy sao ? Tôi muốn xem "Chiến tranh trong không gian" hơn.
F : Thôi đừng ! Các bài phê bình chê phim đó dữ lắm.
E : Tôi biết, nhưng cái tựa có vẻ ngộ nghộ. "Một khoảnh khắc êm đềm" nói tiếng Pháp, mà tôi không thích đọc phụ đề.
F : Vậy thì phim "Hoàng hôn California" vậy ?
E : Tôi không thích... Tôi không chịu nổi Steve Newman.
F : Thôi được, bạn chọn đi.
E : Tôi chẳng thích phim nào cả. Tôi thích ở nhà xem TV hơn nhiều.
G : Bạn thích món nào ?
H : Tôi không biết nữa. Đâu có nhiều món cho mình chọn, phải không ?

G No, there isn't, really. What would you rather have ? Steak and kidney or plaice ?

H I can't make up my mind. I'd rather have a hamburger.

G We can ask for the full menu, if you like.

H No, it's not worth it. I'll have the plaice.

G : Ừ, quả là không có nhiều. Bạn thích món nào hơn? Bíp tết và thận hay cá bơn ?

H : Tôi không biết phải chọn gì nữa. Tôi thích dùng một cái bánh kẹp thịt hơn.

G : Nếu bạn muốn thì chúng ta có thể yêu cầu xem thực đơn toàn bữa.

H : Thôi, chẳng đáng phải làm như vậy. Tôi sẽ dùng cá bơn vậy.

What's on in London

Jazz

Modern Jazz
★ **Weather Report** Hammersmith Odeon £2.50–£4

Traditional Jazz
★ **New Orleans Jazz Band**
'The Bull' Barnes 75p

Pop

Rock
★ **Ian Dury and the Blockheads**
Rainbow Theatre £3–£6

Reggae
★ **Burning Spear** Strand Lyceum £2.50–£4.50

CORD TROUSERS
LEVI & WRANGLER
Navy blue light blue black green maroon dark brown grey

Cinema

ABC 1&2

1 WAR IN SPACE (A) 2.00/5.15/8.15

2 CIRCUS OF HORROR (X) 1.00/4.30/8.00

★ **Gaumont**
'California Sunset' (X)
Starring Steve Newman
3.10, 5.50, 8.30

★ **Continental**
'A Moment of Peace' (U)
(Jean le Brun) 1.10, 3.30, 6.00, 8.35

★ **Classic**
Humphrey Bogart in 'Casablanca' (A)
2.15, 4.15, 6.15, 8.15

★ **Odeon**
'Juke Box – 1958' (AA)
Separate programmes
2.45, 5.30, 8.20

Red Lion

Try our lunchtime special

Minestrone soup
Chicken soup
Steak & kidney pie
Plaice & chips
Apple pie & custard
Vanilla ice-cream

MAIL ORDER
PURE SILK SHIRTS
AND BLOUSES

Available in white/cream/beige/pale blue/grey. When ordering, please state colour preference and give alternative choices. We expect a huge demand!

UNBEATABLE VALUE £14.95
Men's sizes (collar) 14–17½
Ladies' sizes (bust) 32–40

Name .....
Address .....
Please send me .... shirt (s)
blouse (s)
I enclose .... plus £1 post & packaging
Size .... Colour 1st choice .....
2nd choice .....
3rd choice .....

POSTAL FASHIONS LTD,
62A JAMES HILL, COVENTRY

PRACTICE

Language summary

I like it.... I'd like to do it.
Which do you like best ?
I prefer it... I'd prefer to do it.
Which do you prefer ? Which would you prefer to do ?
I'd rather do it./I'd rather not do it./I'd much rather do it.
Which would you rather do ?

I like both.

I don't	*like* / *fancy*	*either* / *any*	*of them.*

There isn't much choice.
I can't make up my mind.

Entertainments

Exercise 1

Waxworks/circus
Which would you prefer to see, the waxworks or the circus ?
I'd prefer to see the waxworks.
Write questions and answers.
1. funfair/concert.
2. flying display/ painting exhibition.

Bài tập 1

Viện bảo tàng đồ sáp/ gánh xiếc
Anh thích đi xem cái nào hơn, viện bảo tàng đồ sáp hay gánh xiếc ?
Tôi thích xem viện bảo tàng đồ sáp hơn.
Viết các câu hỏi và trả lời với :

Exercise 2

speedway/wrestling
Where would you rather go?
I'd rather go to the speedway.
Write questions and answers.
1 football/tennis.
2 dance theatre/greyhound racing.

Bài tập 2

trường đua mô tô/ đấu vật.
Anh thích đi đâu hơn ?
Tôi thích đi đến trường đua mô tô hơn.
Viết các câu hỏi và trả lời với :

Exercise 3

Look at 'Entertainments'.
I'd like to see the speedway.
I wouldn't like to see the wrestling.
Write ten more sentences.

Bài tập 3

Hãy nhìn vào mục "Giải trí".
Tôi thích xem đua mô tô.
Tôi không thích xem đấu vật.
Viết thêm 10 câu nữa.

Exercise 4

How about wrestling or speedway tonight ?
or *I'd rather go to the speedway.*
or *I'd prefer to go to the speedway.*
or *I'd rather not see either.*
or *I don't fancy either. I'd much rather see the football.*
Now answer these questions.

1. Shall we go to the flying display or the dance theatre ?
2. How about the circus or the concert ?
3. Which do you fancy, the tennis or the greyhound racing ?
4. Where would you rather go, the funfair or the waxworks ?
5. I don't really fancy the football. I'd prefer to go to the painting exhibition. What about you ?

Bài tập 4

Hãy đi xem đấu vật hay đua mô tô tối nay nhé ?
Tôi thích đi xem đua mô tô hơn.
Tôi không thích xem cái nào cả.
Tôi không thích cái nào cả.
Tôi thích xem bóng đá nhiều hơn.

Exercise 5

Look at the Language summary.
Answer these questions.

1 Which colour do you like best ?
2 Which do you prefer, tea or coffee ?
3 Where would you prefer to live, the city or the country ?
4 Which would you rather eat, lamb or beef ?

Bài tập 5

Nhìn vào bản tóm tắt ngôn ngữ.
Trả lời các câu hỏi sau :

1. Bạn thích nhất màu nào ?
2. Bạn thích gì hơn, trà hay cà phê ?
3. Bạn thích sống ở đâu hơn, thành thị hay nông thôn ?
4. Bạn thích ăn gì hơn, thịt cừu hay thịt bò?

PROVERBS

- *Time and tide wait for no man.*
Thời giờ thấm thoát thoi đưa.
Nó đi đi mãi có chờ đợi ai

Unit 18 Where Have All The Fans Gone ?

Những người hâm mộ đã đi đâu hết rồi ?

VOCABULARY

- **action replay** *(n)* /'ækʃn ri'pleɪ/ replaying of a recorded incidence in a game = sự chiếu lại phần đã qua *an action replay of a penalty kick.*
  replay *(v)* /,ri:'pleɪ/ play again (a football match that was drawn).
- **attendance** *(n)* /ə'tendəns/ number of people present = số hiện diện *They're expecting a large ~ at the meeting.*
  attend *(v)* /ə'tend/ be present at
  ~ school, church, etc.
- **ban** *(v)* /bæn/ officially forbid st = cấm
  The Government has ~ ned the use of chemical weapons.
- **blame** *(v)* /bleɪm/ (sb for st, st on sb) say that sb is responsible for st done or not done. *I don't ~ you = I think your action was justified.*
- **competitive** *(adj)* /kəm'petɪtɪv/ of competition = mang tính ăn thua *~ sports*
  competitor *(n)* /kəm'petɪtə/ person who competes
  compete *(v)* /kəm'pi:t/ (against / with sb) try to win st by defeating others who are trying to do the same. *Several companies are ~ ting for the contract.*
- **deliberate** *(adj)* /dɪ'lɪbərət/ intentional = cố tình *a ~ insult, act, lie.*
- **discipline** *(n)* /'dɪsɪplɪn/ training, esp of the mind and character, aimed at producing self-control, obedience, etc. = kỹ luật *school ~.*
- **encourage** *(v)* /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ/ give support, hope to sb = khuyến khích *Don't ~ bad habits in a child.*
  encouragement *(n) The teacher's words were a great ~ to him.*
  encouraging *(adj) ~ words, news, signs.*
- **facilities** *(n)* /fə'sɪlətɪz/ aids = những tiện nghi, phương tiện *sports ~, ~ for study.*
- **fan** *(n)* /fæn/ enthusiastic admirer or supporter of st / sb = người hâm mộ *football, cinema ~ s.*
- **field** *(n)* /fi:ld/ open space used for a specified purpose = sân cỏ *baseball, cricket ~.*
- **football ground** *(n)* /'fʊtbɔ:l graund/ stadium = sân bóng
- **football league** *(n)* /'fʊtbɔ:l li:g/ liên đoàn bóng đá
- **foul** *(adj)* /faʊl/ dirty and disgusting = xấu, tục
- **gang** *(n)* /gæŋ/ group of young people, usu males in their teens and early twenties, who are typically troublesome = nhóm, bọn
- **identify** *(v)* /aɪ'dentɪfaɪ/ show, prove who or what sb / st is = xác định *Can you ~ your umbrella among this lot ?*
  identification *(n)* /aɪ,dentɪfɪ'keɪʃn/ *The ~ of the accident victims took some time.*
- **major** *(adj)* /'meɪdʒə/ great, important = chính yếu ≠ minor
- **manifesto** *(n)* /mænɪ'festəʊ/ public declaration by a political party, ruler, etc of principles and policy = bản tuyên ngôn *publish, issue a ~.*
- **pedestrian** *(n)* /pɪ'destrɪən/ person walking in the street = người đi bộ *Two ~ s and a cyclist were injured when the car skidded.*
- **referee** *(n)* /,refə'ri:/ person who controls matches, prevents rules being broken = trọng tài
- **regular** *(adj)* /'regjʊlə/ happening or done repeatedly = đều đặn, thường xuyên
  ~ breathing, have ~ habits.
- **soccer** *(n)* /'sɒkə/ in Britain now used mainly in newspapers and on radio and TV.
  measures to curb soccer violence.
- **solution** *(n)* /sə'lu:ʃn/ answer to a problem, difficulty = giải pháp *She can find no ~ to her financial troubles.*
  solve *(v)* /sɒlv/
  solvable *(adj)*
  problems that are not immediately ~.
- **striker** *(n)* /straɪkə/ attacking player whose most important role is to try to score goals = tiền đạo
- **sympathize** *(v)* /'sɪmpəθaɪz/ (with sb / st) express sympathy *I ~ with you; I've had a similar unhappy experience myself.*
  sympathy *(n)* **sympathizer** *(n)*

sympathetic *(adj)*

- **telly** *(n)* /'telɪ/ television
- **terrace** *(n)* /'terəs/ flight of wide shallow steps, eg for spectators at a sports ground = khán đài.

- **violence** *(n)* /'vaɪələns/ violent conduct, esp of an unlawful kind = hành động thô bạo
  The use of ~ against one's attackers.
  violent *(adj)* /'vaɪələnt/

EXPRESSIONS

go broke /gəu brəuk/ phá sản, trở nên túng thiếu
send off /send ɒf/ đuổi ra
beware of cẩn thận, coi chừng

PROPER NAMES

Bert Woods	/'bɜ:t 'wʊdz/	Jimmy Mc. Tavish	/'dʒɪmɪ mək 'tævɪʃ/
Brian Huff	/'braɪən 'hʌf/	Kenvin Dolan	/'kenvɪn 'dɒlən/
Chelsea	/'tʃelsi:/	Miami Galaxy	/'maɪəmɪ 'gæləksɪ/
East Field United	/'i:st 'fi:ld ju'naɪtɪd/	Michael Parkhurst	/'maɪkl 'pa:kɜ:st/

GRAMMAR NOTES

Advisability → Necessity = "a scale of choice"

We can use modals and other verbs to express advisability on a scale which reflects a degree of choice. We use the following words to give advice or say what is necessary :

SHOULD & OUGHT TO : Ought to is slightly stronger than *Should* in that it is sometimes used to refer to regulations or duties imposed from the outside.

EX : You *should see* a doctor. You *ought to vote* in the next election.

Should is more likely in questions and negatives.

HAD BETTER is stronger, even a warning. The speaker expects that the action will really happen.

EX : - You'*d better* see a doctor. - It's cold. You *had better* wear a coat.

HAVE TO, HAVE GOT TO, MUST express necessity or obligation. *Have to, have got to* (less formal) and *must* (= in my opinion, you have no choice)

EX : You *have to / have got to / must* see a doctor

We tend to prefer *must* :

1. When we refer to ourselves (with I/We)
   EX : I really *must weed* this garden.
2. With *you* to express urgency.
   EX : You *must phone* home at once.
3. in public notices :
   EX : Cyclists *must* dismount.
4. pressing invitations or advice.
   EX : You *must come* and see us.

We often use *have to / have got* to to refer to outside authority.

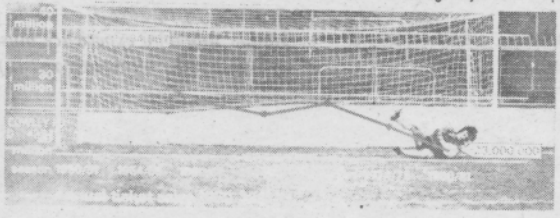
EX : I *have (got) to pay* my road tax soon.

'Good evening and welcome to the 'Michael Parkhurst Talkabout'. In tonight's 'Talkabout' we're looking at the problem of soccer's missing millions. Since 1950 attendance at football matches has fallen by nearly fifty per cent. Many clubs are in financial trouble, and tonight we hope to identify the major causes and discuss some possible solutions.

First of all, we'll hear from one of soccer's lost millions, Mr Bert Woods from London, who used to be a regular Chelsea supporter.'

"Xin chào các bạn tham dự chương trình thảo luận" Michael Parkhurst Talkabout". Trong chương trình thảo luận tối nay chúng ta sẽ bàn đến vấn đề hàng triệu người hâm mộ đã quay lưng với sân bóng. Kể từ năm 1950 đến nay, số người đến sân bóng xem giao đấu đã giảm đi một nửa. Nhiều câu lạc bộ đang gặp phải khó khăn tài chính, và hôm nay chúng tôi hy vọng sẽ chỉ ra được các nguyên nhân chủ yếu và thảo luận một số giải pháp có thể áp dụng được.

Đầu tiên chúng ta sẽ nghe ý kiến của một trong hàng triệu người đã thôi không đến sân bóng để xem giao đấu nữa, ông Bert Woods, người London, người đã từng là cổ động viên thường xuyên cho đội Chelsea".



'I stopped going five or six years ago. I'd rather stay at home and watch it on telly. You get a better view and I like the action replays. I'm too afraid to go now, really ! All this violence, you know. When I was a lad there was the occasional fight on the terraces, but nothing like you see these days – whole gangs of teenagers who aren't interested in football. Somebody ought to do something about it ! These kids aren't real fans, they just come looking for trouble. The police ought to sort out the real fans from the troublemakers. You know, I always used to go with my dad, but I wouldn't take my kids. There's too much foul language. And I don't only blame the kids. There ought to be more discipline at home and in schools.'

'Thank you, Mr Woods. Let's go over to Brian Huff, the manager of East-field United, one of our most successful clubs. Brian.'

'I sympathize with Mr Woods, and there are plenty of people like him. Anyway, we'd better do something about it, or we'll all go broke ! The clubs and players must share the blame. Football's big business, and it's very competitive. Winning has become the most important thing. There's too much violence on the field. Referees have to get tougher with players. They should send off players for deliberate fouls. The other problem is television. There's too much football on TV, and they only show the most exciting parts, goals, fouls and violence. People are bored when they see the real game. Anyway the clubs started talking about these problems ten years ago, and nothing's been done. We'd better not spend another ten years talking. We'd better do something, and do it soon !'

'Our next guest is a young fan. Kevin Dolan, a Manchester United supporter, who is sixteen years old. What do you think, Kevin ?'

'Well I'm not one of soccer's missing millions. I never miss a match. I've travelled all over the country with United and I've never been in trouble. I blame the media for most of this violence. They only show young people when they're doing something wrong. They ought not to give so much publicity to trouble-makers. It only encourages the others, doesn't it ? The

"Tôi đã ngưng đến sân xem giao đấu năm sáu năm nay rồi. Tôi thà ở nhà xem TV còn hơn. Xem TV rõ hơn và tôi thích những pha chiếu lại. Thực ra tôi quá ngán ngẩm việc phải đến sân. Các bạn biết đó, tất cả những cảnh hung bạo này. Khi tôi còn là một cậu bé thỉnh thoảng cũng có những trận ẩu đả trên sân, nhưng chẳng giống với những gì các bạn thấy ngày nay đâu – cả đám choai choai nào có ham mê gì bóng đá. Người ta phải làm một điều gì đó về vấn đề này đi chứ ! Bọn nhóc này đâu có phải là những người hâm mộ đúng nghĩa, chúng chỉ đến để gây sự thôi. Cảnh sát phải sàng lọc những người hâm mộ thực sự ra khỏi bọn gây rối. Các bạn biết không, lúc nhỏ tôi luôn đi xem bóng đá với bố tôi, nhưng bây giờ tôi lại không dám dẫn con cái đi theo. Có quá nhiều từ ngữ tục tằn. Và tôi không chỉ đổ lỗi cho bọn trẻ đâu. Phải có nhiều kỷ luật hơn nữa ở gia đình cũng như học đường".

"Xin cảm ơn, ông Woods. Chúng ta hãy nghe Brian Huff, ông bầu của Câu lạc bộ Eastfield United, một trong những câu lạc bộ thành công nhất của chúng ta. Xin giới thiệu Brian".

"Tôi thông cảm với ông Woods, và có rất nhiều người như ông ta. Dù sao tốt hơn là chúng ta phải nên làm điều gì đó chứ nếu không thì tất cả chúng ta sẽ phá sản mất ! Các câu lạc bộ và những cầu thủ phải cùng chia xẻ trách nhiệm. Bóng đá là chuyện làm ăn có tầm vóc lớn và nó mang tính ăn thua rất cao. Việc thắng cuộc đã trở thành điều quan trọng nhất rồi. Có quá nhiều bạo lực trên sân cỏ. Trọng tài phải cứng rắn hơn nữa với các cầu thủ. Họ phải đuổi các cầu thủ cố tình chơi xấu ra khỏi sân. Vấn đề còn lại chính là truyền hình. Bây giờ trên truyền hình người ta phát đi chương trình bóng đá nhiều quá, và họ chỉ chiếu những pha gay cấn nhất thôi, ghi bàn, chơi xấu và ẩu đả. Công chúng cảm thấy nhàm chán khi họ xem một trận đấu thực sự. Tuy nhiên, các câu lạc bộ đã bắt đầu nói về những vấn đề này cả 10 năm trước đây rồi mà chẳng có ai làm được điều gì cả. Tốt hơn là chúng ta đừng bỏ thêm 10 năm nữa để mà nói suông. Chúng ta phải làm một điều gì đó, và phải làm ngay".

"Khách mời kế tiếp của chúng ta là một cổ động viên trẻ tuổi: Kevin Dolan, 16 tuổi, cổ động viên của đội Manchester United. Anh nghĩ sao, Kevin ?".

"Tôi không phải là một trong hàng triệu người đã quay lưng với sân cỏ. Tôi chưa bao giờ bỏ qua một trận nào. Tôi đã đi khắp đất nước với đội United mà chưa bao giờ gặp phiền phức gì cả. Theo tôi các phương tiện truyền thông đại chúng phải chịu trách nhiệm về phần lớn các chuyện bạo hành trên sân cỏ. Họ chỉ tập trung vào giới trẻ khi những người này đang hành động sai quấy. Không nên làm cho bọn gây rối trở nên nổi bật, điều đó chỉ

violence always starts when there's a TV camera near. If they banned alcohol from football grounds, there'd be much less trouble.' 'Thank you, Kevin. Our last speaker is Jimmy MacTavish, the ex-Scotland striker who has just returned from the United States after spending two years with Miami Galaxy. Well, Jimmy. What ought we to do ?'

'I agree with a lot of what's been said, Michael, but hadn't we better look at some solutions ? I've been playing in the States for the last two seasons and I haven't seen any violence over there. A football match is a day out for the family. More than half the supporters are women and children, and there are much better facilities. Everybody gets a comfortable seat. There are good restaurants and there's entertainment before and after the game, and at half-time. Football stadiums are old, cold and dirty over here. We'd better take a good look at American soccer. I think we've got a lot to learn ! Entertainment is what football is all about and we'd better not forget it !'

khuyến khích những kẻ khác thôi, có đúng vậy không ? Bạo hành luôn luôn bắt đầu khi có một máy thu hình ở gần đó. Nếu người ta cấm đem rượu vào sân thì sẽ có ít rắc rối hơn nhiều". "Cảm ơn, Kevin. Người phát biểu cuối cùng là Jimmy Mac Tavish, trước đây là trung phong của đội Scốtlen, người vừa mới trở về từ nước Mỹ sau 2 năm thi đấu cho câu lạc bộ Miami Galaxy Jimmy. Chúng ta nên làm gì ?"

"Tôi đồng ý với những gì người ta đã nói nảy giờ, Michael, nhưng có phải tốt hơn chúng ta nên xét đến một số giải pháp không ? Hai mùa bóng vừa qua tôi đã chơi ở Mỹ mà chưa từng thấy có chút bạo hành nào ở đó. Một trận đá banh là một dịp để gia đình người ta đưa nhau đi chơi. Hơn một nửa cổ động viên là phụ nữ và trẻ con, còn tiện nghi thì tốt hơn ở ta nhiều lắm. Ai cũng có chỗ ngồi thoải mái. Nhà hàng phục vụ rất tốt, và trước, sau cũng như ở khoảng nghỉ 2 hiệp bao giờ cũng có các tiết mục giải trí cả. Còn ở đây sân vận động của chúng ta vừa cũ kỹ, lạnh lẽo vừa dơ bẩn. Tốt hơn chúng ta nên nhìn vào bóng đá Mỹ để mà bắt chước, tôi nghĩ có nhiều thứ phải học người ta lắm. Bóng đá chỉ là để tiêu khiển thôi và tốt hơn chúng ta đừng có quên điều đó !".

Exercise Find words which mean :

1 television or TV
2 forbidden
3 not accidental
4 stadium
5 boy
6 young person or child
7 disgusting
8 without money
9 an action against the rules
10 share the same feelings.

PRACTICE

Language summary

They ought to (do it). They ought not to (do it). What ought they to do ?

We	*'d / had*	*better / better not.*	*do it.*	*To spend time (doing something).*
Hadn't we better do it ?				*We've got a lot to do.*
				Winning has become the most important thing.

Exercise 1

I need some money, and the bank closes in 10 minutes.
You'd better go now. or You'd better hurry.

Continue.

1 We've got a long journey, and the petrol tank is almost empty. . . . .
. . . . . .

2 He's getting married on Saturday, but he hasn't got a suit. . . . . .
. . . . . .

Bài tập 1

Tôi cần một ít tiền và nhà băng sẽ đóng cửa trong 10 phút nữa.
Tốt hơn anh nên đi ngay bây giờ/ hoặc Tốt hơn anh nên nhanh lên
Hãy tiếp tục

3 Her car's in a 'no parking' area and a policeman's coming. . . . . .
. . . . . .

4 He's just spilt coffee on her new dress.
. . . . . .

5 It's her parents' wedding anniversary tomorrow. . . . . .

6 There's a fire in the kitchen, and they can't put it out. . . . . .

Exercise 2

Look at these signs. Make sentences about each one.

1 *You'd better not smoke.*

Bài tập 2

Nhìn các biển hiệu này.
Đặt câu về mỗi biển hiệu.

1. Tốt hơn anh không nên hút thuốc.

Exercise 3

Every day, I spend eight hours	*in bed.*
	sleeping.

I spend two hours watching television.

Make four sentences like this about yourself.

Bài tập 3

Mỗi ngày; tôi nằm 8 tiếng trên giường
Tôi ngủ 8 tiếng đồng hồ.
Tôi xem truyền hình 2 giờ đồng hồ.

Exercise 4

It's important to win.
Winning is important.
Make sentences.

1 It is dangerous to smoke.
2 It's easy to learn English.
3 It's a waste of time to get angry.

Bài tập 4

Thắng cuộc là điều quan trọng. Thắng cuộc thì quan trọng.
Đặt câu.

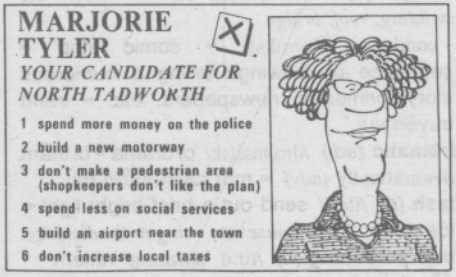
4 It's stupid to drive too fast.
5 It's relaxing to watch television.
6 It's nice to be on holiday.

Exercise 5

There is a local government election in Tadworth next week. The candidates for the North Tadworth district are Mike Legg and Marjorie Tyler. These are their election manifestos.

Bài tập 5

Có một cuộc bầu cử chính quyền địa phương tuần tới. Các ứng cử viên trong quận phía bắc Tadworth là Mike Legg và Marjorie Tyler Đây là kế hoạch tranh cử của họ.



Mike Legg is speaking at a political meeting. *'I think they ought to spend more money on education. They're spending far too much on roads that we do not need. We ought not to build new roads.'*
Make four sentences with 'ought(not) to' for Mike.
Make six sentences for Marjorie.

Mike Legg đang nói tại cuộc họp chính trị. "Tôi nghĩ họ nên chi tiêu thêm tiền cho giáo dục. Họ đang tiêu quá nhiều cho đường sá mà chúng ta không cần. Chúng ta không nên xây đường mới.
Đặt 4 câu với "ought(not) to" cho Mike.

Đặt 6 câu cho Marjorie.

Unit 19 Night Flight

Chuyến bay đêm

VOCABULARY

- **aisle** *(n)* /aɪl/ passage between rows of seats on a plane = lối đi trên máy bay
- **black** *(adj)* /blæk/ of the very darkest colour.
  blackness *(n)* /'blæknɪs/ sự tối đen
  blacken *(v)* /'blækən/ become very dark
- **bodyguard** *(n)* /'bɒdɪgɑ:d/ man or group of men whose job is to protect an important person = vệ sĩ *The President's ~ is / are armed.*
- **bump** *(v)* /bʌmp/ against / into st / st = collide with st = đụng sầm vào
  bump *(n)* collision *The two children collided with a ~.*
- **buzzer** *(n)* /'bʌzə/ electrical device that produces a buzzing sound as a signal = chuông điện
- **care** *(n)* /keə/ 1. (over st / in doing st) serious attention or thought = sự chú ý *You should take more ~ over your work.*
  2. (for sb) sympathetic concern = sự chăm sóc *a mother's ~ for her children.*
- **circle** *(n)* /'sɜ:kl/ move in a circle, esp in the air = chạy, lượn vòng vòng *The plane ~ d the airport before landing.*
- **collapse** *(v)* /kə'læps/ fall down because of illness, tiredness, etc. = qui, gục xuống *He ~d in the street and died on the way to hospital.*
  collapse *(n)* = sudden fall *the ~ of the building, roof, bridge.*
  - **comics** *(n)* /'kɒmɪks/ = comic strip = sequence of drawings telling a humorous story, printed in newspapers, etc. = tranh truyện vui
- **dramatic** *(adj)* /drə'mætɪk/ of drama = bi thảm
  dramatically *(adv)* = một cách thảm hại
- **flash** *(n)* /flæʃ/ send out a brief bright light = lóe sáng *A lighthouse was ~ ing in the distance.*
- **food poisoning** *(n)* /fu:d 'pɔɪzənɪŋ/ nhiễm độc thức ăn
- **gauge** *(n)* /geɪg/ instrument for measuring the amount or level of st = dụng cụ đo lường
  fuel gauge *(n)* /'fju:əl geɪdʒ/ đồng hồ đo mức xăng *a speed, rain gauge.*
- **galley** *(n)* /'gælɪ/ kitchen in a ship or an aircraft = nhà bếp (trên tàu, máy bay)
- **groan** *(v)* /grəun/ make a deep sad sound when in pain or to express despair = rên rỉ *She ~ ed with pain.*
- **ground control** *(n)* /graund kən'trəul/ đài kiểm soát ở mặt đất
- **halt** *(n)* /hɔ:lt/ temporary stop = sự dừng lại tạm thời *Work came to a ~ when the machine broke down.*
  halt *(v)* = stop temporarily = dừng tạm
- **horizon** *(n)* /hə'raɪzn/ the line at which the earth and sky appear to meet = chân trời *The sun sank below the ~.*
  horizontal *(adj)* /ˌhɒrɪ'zɒntl/ *a ~ line.*
- **jam** *(v)* /dʒæm/ (st) (cause st to) become immovable or unworkable because st has stuck = làm mắc kẹt, kẹt *The key turned halfway and then jammed.*
  jammed *(adj)* /dʒæmd/ bị mắc kẹt
- **lower** *(v)* /'ləuə/ let or bring (sb / st) down = hạ thấp xuống *~ the sails, a flag, a window.*
- **moan** *(n)* /məun/ long, low, mournful sound, usu expressing regret, pain or suffering = tiếng rên xiết *the ~ s of the wounded.*
  moan *(v)* rên xiết *He was ~ing all night long.*
- **resign** *(v)* /rɪ'zaɪn/ give up (one's job, position, etc) = từ chức, xin thôi
  The Minister ~ ed (from office).
- **revive** *(v)* /rɪ'vaɪv/ bring (sb / st) back to health, or consciousness = làm hồi tỉnh lại *She fainted but the brandy soon ~ ed her.*
- **revival** *(n)* /rɪ'vaɪvl/ sự hồi tỉnh *the patient's speedy ~ after her operation.*
- **routine** *(adj)* /ru:'ti:n/ usual, regular = thường lệ, bình thường
  routine *(n)* fixed and regular way of doing things = lệ thường *She found it difficult to establish a new ~ after retirement.*
- **runway** *(n)* /'rʌnweɪ/ prepared surface along which aircraft take off and land = đường băng
- **screech** *(v)* /skri:tʃ/ make a harsh high-pitched sound = rít lên *The car ~ ed as the car stopped.*
  screech *(n)* screeching sound = tiếng rít *The ~ of tyres, eg when a car is cornering fast.*
- **severe** *(adj)* /sɪ'vɪə/ very bad, intense = nghiêm trọng *~ pain, injuries, a ~ attack of toothache.*
- **shortly** *(adv)* /'ʃɔ:tlɪ/ in a short time; not long;

soon = mau, chẳng mấy chốc, ngay tức thì *I'll be with you ~.*

- **slump** *(v)* /slʌmp/ fall heavily = gục xuống *They found her ~ ed over the steering wheel.*
- **tarmac** *(n)* /'ta:mæk/ area surfaced with broken stone mixed with tar, esp on an airfield = đường băng
- **thump** *(n)* /θʌmp/ noise struck heavily = tiếng va chạm mạnh. *The sack of cement hit the ground with a ~.*
- **tremendous** *(adj)* /trɪ'mendəs/ very great, immense = khổng lồ, to lớn *a ~ explosion.*
- **vast** *(adj)* /va:st/ immense = bao la, rộng lớn *a ~ expanse of desert, water, snow.*

EXPRESSIONS

How the hell are we going to do it ? — chúng ta phải làm cái quái gì để hạ cánh xuống đây
Any chance of a job ? — có cơ may nào xin được việc làm không
estimated time of arrival (ETA) — giờ đến được tiên đoán, ước định
doubled up with pain — co rúm, gập mình lại vì đau
to put out = to extinguish = dập tắt
to take exercise = tập thể dục
on one's own = by oneself = một mình
to take one's time = cứ thư thả
to be bored with = chán, ngấy

PROPER NAMES

Brisbane /'brɪsbeɪn/
Christmas Eve /'krɪstməs 'i:v/

GRAMMAR NOTES

For a review of to-infinitive and bare infinitives after verbs, see units 5, 6, 7, 9, 11, 13 and 16

'This is Captain Cook speaking. Our estimated time of arrival in Brisbane will be one a.m., so we've got a long flight ahead of us. I hope you enjoy it. Our hostesses will be serving dinner shortly. Thank you.'

"Tôi là Cook, trưởng phi hành đoàn. Giờ đến Brisbane theo dự kiến sẽ là 1 giờ sáng, vì vậy chúng ta còn cả một hành trình dài phía trước. Tôi hy vọng quý vị sẽ hài lòng về chuyến bay này. Các nữ tiếp viên của chúng tôi sẽ phục vụ bữa ăn tối ngay sau đây. Xin cảm ơn".

It was Christmas Eve 1959, and the beginning of another routine flight. The hostesses started preparing the food trays. A few of the passengers were trying to get some sleep, but most of them were reading. There was nothing to see from the windows except the vast blackness of the Australian desert below. There was nothing unusual about the flight, except perhaps that the plane was nearly full. A lot of the passengers were travelling home to spend Christmas with their families. The hostesses started serving dinner.

Đó là đêm Giáng sinh 1959, khởi đầu của một chuyến bay bình thường khác. Các nữ tiếp viên bắt đầu chuẩn bị các khay thức ăn. Một vài hành khách đang cố ngủ một chút, nhưng phần lớn thì đang đọc sách báo. Từ cửa sổ nhìn xuống chẳng có gì khác ngoài khoảng tối mênh mông của sa mạc Úc châu bên dưới. Chuyến bay này chẳng có gì bất thường, có lẽ ngoại trừ một điều rằng máy bay gần như kín chỗ. Nhiều hành khách đang bay về nhà để đón Giáng sinh với gia đình. Các nữ tiếp viên bắt đầu phục vụ bữa ăn tối.

It was a smooth and quiet flight. The hostesses had finished collecting the trays, and they were in the galley putting things away when the first buzzers sounded. One of the hostesses went along the aisle to check. When she came back she looked surprised. 'It's amazing', she said. 'Even on a smooth flight like this two people have been sick.'

Đó là một chuyến bay êm ả và yên tĩnh. Các nữ tiếp viên đã thu lại các khay thức ăn và đang thu dọn các thứ trong khoang bếp thì những tiếng chuông đầu tiên reo lên. Một nữ tiếp viên đi dọc theo lối đi giữa các hàng ghế để kiểm tra. Khi trở lại, cô ta trông có vẻ ngạc nhiên "Thật lạ lùng", cô ta nói "Một chuyến bay êm ả như vậy mà lại có đến 2 người bị mệt".

Twenty minutes later nearly half the passengers were ill - dramatically ill. Several were moaning and groaning, some were doubled up in pain,

20 phút sau gần một nửa hàng khách đều bị bệnh – bệnh nguy kịch. Nhiều người đang rên rỉ vì đau, một số co gập người lại và 2 người đã hôn mê. May mắn là trên máy

and two were unconscious. Fortunately there was a doctor on board, and he was helping the hostesses. He came to the galley and said, 'I'd better speak to the captain. This is a severe case of food poisoning. I think we'd better land as soon as possible.' 'What caused it ?' asked one of the hostesses. 'Well', replied the doctor, 'I had the beef for dinner, and I'm fine. The passengers who chose the fish are ill.' The hostess led him to the flight deck. She tried to open the door. 'I think it's jammed,' she said. The doctor helped her to push it open. The captain was lying behind the door. He was unconscious. The co-pilot was slumped across the controls, and the radio operator was trying to revive him.

bay có một bác sỹ và ông ta đến giúp các tiếp viên. Ông bước vào nhà bếp và nói "Tôi cần phải gặp trưởng máy bay. Đây là một ca ngộ độc thức ăn rất nghiêm trọng. Chúng ta phải hạ cánh càng sớm càng tốt". Một nữ tiếp viên hỏi "Cái gì đã gây ra trường hợp ngộ độc này ?". Bác sĩ trả lời "Tôi dùng thịt bò trong bữa ăn vừa rồi và tôi không sao cả. Những hành khách dùng món cá đang bị bệnh". Cô tiếp viên dẫn ông ta đến buồng lái. Cô ta gắng mở cửa "Tôi nghĩ là cửa bị kẹt", cô nói. Bác sĩ giúp cô ta đẩy cửa mở ra. Trưởng phi hành đoàn đang nằm bất tỉnh ngay sau cửa. Phi công phụ đang gục bên bàn điều khiển, còn nhân viên vô tuyến điện đang cố hồi sức cho ông ta.

The doctor quickly examined the two pilots. 'They just collapsed,' said the radio operator. 'I don't feel too good myself'. 'Can you land the plane ?' said the doctor. 'Me ? No, I'm not a pilot. We've got to revive them !' he replied. 'The plane's on automatic pilot. We're OK for a couple of hours.' 'I don't know,' said the doctor. 'They could be out for a long time.' 'I'd better contact ground control,' said the radio operator. The doctor turned to the hostess. 'Perhaps you should make an announcement, try to find out if there's a pilot on board.' 'We can't do that !' she said, 'It'll cause a general panic.' 'Well how the hell are we going to get this thing down ?' said the doctor.

Bác sĩ nhanh chóng khám hai phi công. "Họ tự nhiên quỵ xuống", nhân viên vô tuyến điện nói "Tôi cũng cảm thấy khó chịu trong người ! Bác sĩ hỏi "Anh cho máy bay hạ cánh được không ?" "Tôi ấy à ? Không, tôi đâu phải là phi công. Chúng ta phải làm cho họ tỉnh lại thôi !" ông ta trả lời. "Máy bay đang ở chế độ lái tự động. Chúng ta có thể an toàn trong một hai giờ nữa" Bác sĩ nói. "Tôi không chắc đâu. Họ có thể sẽ bất tỉnh lâu hơn". "Tốt hơn tôi phải tiếp xúc với đài kiểm soát ở mặt đất", Nhân viên vô tuyến nói. Bác sĩ quay lại nhìn cô tiếp viên "Có lẽ cô phải thông báo xem trong hành khách có ai là phi công không". "Không thể làm thế được đâu!" cô ta nói. "Nó sẽ gây một sự náo động trong hành khách". "Vậy chúng ta phải làm cái quái gì để có thể hạ cánh cái của nợ này được ?" Bác sĩ thốt lên.

Suddenly the hostess remembered something. 'One of the passengers... I overheard him saying that he'd been a pilot in the war. I'll get him.' She found the man and asked him to come to the galley. 'Didn't you say you used to be a pilot ?' she asked. 'Yes... why ? The pilot's all right, isn't he ?' She led him to the flight deck. They explained the situation to him. 'You mean, you want me to fly the plane ?' he said. 'You must be joking. I was a pilot, but I flew single-engined fighter planes, and that was fifteen years ago. This thing's got four engines!' 'Isn't there anybody else ?' he asked. 'I'm afraid not,' said the hostess. The man sat down at the controls. His hands were shaking slightly. The radio operator connected him to Air Traffic Control. They told him to keep flying on automatic pilot towards Brisbane, and to wait for further instructions from an experienced

Thình lình cô tiếp viên nhớ ra điều gì "Một hành khách... tôi nghe loáng thoáng ông ta nói là ông ta đã từng làm phi công trong thời chiến. Tôi sẽ tìm ông ta". Cô đi tìm người đàn ông đó và mời ông ta vào nhà bếp. "Ông nói ông là phi công phải không ?" cô ta hỏi. "Phải... nhưng mà sao ? Phi công máy bay không sao đấy chứ ?". Cô ta dẫn ông ta vào buồng lái. Họ giải thích tình hình hiện tại cho ông ta nghe. "Sao, quý vị muốn tôi điều khiển chiếc máy bay này à ? Quý vị đang giỡn đó chắc. Tôi đã là phi công, nhưng tôi lái máy bay chiến đấu một động cơ, mà lại cách đây tới 15 năm rồi. Chiếc này có tới 4 động cơ lận mà".

"Chứ không còn ai khác nữa sao ?" ông ta hỏi. "Tôi e là không" cô tiếp viên trả lời. Người đàn ông ngồi xuống bên bàn điều khiển, tay ông ta run lên nhẹ nhẹ. Nhân viên vô tuyến nối máy cho ông ta liên lạc với đài kiểm soát không lưu. Họ yêu cầu ông ta cho duy trì chế độ lái tự động về hướng Brisbane, và chờ đợi nghe chỉ dẫn tiếp theo của một phi công có kinh nghiệm. Một giờ sau các ánh đèn

pilot. An hour later the lights of Brisbane appeared on the horizon. He could see the lights of the runway shining brightly beyond the city. Air Traffic Control told him to keep circling until the fuel gauge registered almost empty. This gave him a chance to get used to handling the controls. In the cabin the hostesses and the doctor were busy attending to the sick. Several people were unconscious. The plane circled for over half an hour. The passengers had begun to realize that something was wrong. 'What's going on ? Why don't we land ?' shouted a middle-aged man. 'My wife's ill. We've got to get her to hospital !' A woman began sobbing quietly. At last the plane started its descent. Suddenly there was a bump which shook the plane. 'We're all going to die !' screamed a man. Even the hostesses looked worried as panic began to spread through the plane. 'It's all right!' someone said, 'The pilot's just lowered the wheels, that's all.' As the plane approached the runway they could see fire trucks and ambulances speeding along beside the runway with their lights flashing. There was a tremendous thump as the wheels hit the tarmac, bounced twice, raced along the runway and screeched to a halt. The first airport truck was there in seconds. 'That was nearly a perfect landing. Well done !' shouted the control tower. 'Thanks,' said the man, 'Any chance of a job ?'

của thành phố Brisbane xuất hiện ở chân trời. Người phi công bất đắc dĩ đã có thể thấy các ánh đèn dọc theo đường băng chiếu sáng rực ở phía bên kia thành phố. Đài kiểm soát không lưu yêu cầu ông ta cứ lượn vòng quanh phi trường cho đến khi nào đồng hồ báo xăng chỉ mức gần cạn xăng. Điều này cho phép ông ta làm quen với các thao tác trên bàn điều khiển. Trong khoang máy bay các cô tiếp viên và bác sĩ đang bận rộn chăm sóc những người bệnh. Lúc này nhiều người đã bất tỉnh. Máy bay cứ bay vòng hơn nửa tiếng đồng hồ và hành khách đã bắt đầu nhận ra có điều gì đó bất thường. "Chuyện gì vậy ? Tại sao lại không hạ cánh chứ ?" một người đàn ông trung niên la lên. "Vợ tôi bị bệnh. Phải đưa bà ta vào bệnh viện". Một người phụ nữ bắt đầu khóc thút thít. Cuối cùng máy bay bắt đầu hạ độ cao. Thình lình có một tiếng va chạm mạnh làm máy bay rung chuyển. "Chúng ta sắp chết mất !" một người đàn ông la lên. Ngay cả những cô tiếp viên cũng trông có vẻ lo lắng khi sự hốt hoảng bắt đầu lan ra khắp máy bay. "Không sao đâu !" có ai đó thốt lên. "Phi công chỉ vừa mới thả bánh xe ra, có vậy thôi". Khi máy bay tiến gần đường băng người ta có thể thấy xe cứu hỏa và xe cứu thương lao vun vút cặp bên hông đường băng với đèn nhấp nháy liên hồi. Có một tiếng dụng mạnh dữ dội khi các bánh xe chạm đường băng, nảy lên hai lần, máy bay chạy lướt trên đường băng và thắng rít lại. Chỉ trong nháy mắt chiếc xe đầu tiên của phi trường đã xuất hiện !" "Cuộc hạ cánh gần như tuyệt hảo. "Khá lắm !" đài kiểm soát la lên. "Cảm ơn", người phi công bất đắc dĩ nói "Có cơ may nào xin được một việc làm không ?".

PRACTICE

Exercise

Look at these sentences. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form, 'do', 'to do' or 'doing'.

He enjoys *sitting* in the sun. (sit)

Bài tập

Xem các câu sau đây. Đặt động từ trong ngoặc vào dạng thích hợp, "do", "to do", hay "doing".

1 Put that cigarette out ! You are not allowed . . . . . in here. (smoke)
2 It's hot in here. Would you mind . . . . . the window ? (open)
3 He found the work difficult, but he managed . . . . . the examination. (pass)
4 I never read Shakespeare now, because they made me . . . . it at school. (study)
5 She always travels by train or boat because she's afraid of . . . . . (fly)

6 'Let's go out tonight.' 'All right. Where do you want . . . . . ?' (go)
7 You're overweight. You ought . . . . . more exercise. (take)
8 This is a very beautiful village, but there's nowhere . . . . . in the evening. (go)
9 When I first visited Britain, I couldn't get used to . . . . . on the left. (drive)
10 There's a lot of traffic. We'd better not . . . . . the road here. (cross)
11 I don't know why she resigned. She seemed . . . . very happy here. (be)
12 I'm tired of . . . . . television every evening. (watch)
13 Her doctor advised her . . . . . a specialist. (see)
14 I'll help you. I'm sure you aren't strong enough . . . . . it on your own. (lift)
15 He spends all his time . . . . . comics. (read)
16 My parents were very strict. They wouldn't let me . . . . . out late in the evenings. (stay)
17 A kettle is used for . . . . . water. (boil)
18 He's working too hard. He's too tired . . . . . anything when he gets home. (do)
19 The robbers forced the manager . . . . the safe. (open)
20 I hope . . . my brother in Australia next year. (visit)
21 He's not interested in . . . . . money, his father's a millionaire. (earn)
22 Don't give up yet, we must keep . . . . . (try)
23 I'd rather . . . . . happy than rich. (be)
24 He needed bodyguards because several people had threatened . . . him. (kill)
25 I was very happy . . . . . your news. (hear)
26 Take your time. I don't mind . . . . . (wait)
27 I'd rather not . . . . . about that. (talk)
28 We're going to Oxford tomorrow. Would you like . . . . . with us ? (come)
29 He won't be long. He's just got two more phone calls . . . . . (make)
30 She didn't want to go to work, so she pretended . . . . . ill. (be)
31 I gave up . . . . . five years ago. (smoke)
32 I'm bored with . . . . . the same clothes every day. (wear)
33 The book was very difficult . . . . (understand)
34 Neither of them could find a job, so they both decided . . . . . (emigrate)
35 She's very confident. She expects . . . . . the election. (win)
36 I'm not here . . . . . my time ! (waste)
37 They won't let you . . . . . the United States without a visa. (enter)
38 He joined the navy . . . . . the world. (see)
39 I wonder if you'd be kind enough . . . . . me ? (help)
40 Charlie Chaplin films always make me . . . . . (laugh)

RECOGNIZING SIGNS (các biển hiệu cần biết)

- Extrance : Lối vào
- Exit : Lối ra
- Push : Đẩy vào
- Pull : Kéo ra
- Danger : Nguy hiểm
- Emergency Exit : Lối ra khi nguy cấp
- Fire Escape : Lối ra khi có hỏa hoạn
- Fire Alarm : Hệ thống báo cháy

Unit 20 The Junk Shop

VOCABULARY

- **antique** *(n)* /æn'ti:k/ = old and valuable thing = đồ cổ
- **beauty contest** *(n)* /'bju:tɪ 'kɒntest/ cuộc thi hoa hậu
- **bug** *(v)* /bʌg/ fit (a room, telephone, etc) with a hidden microphone for listening to conversations = đặt máy ghi âm nghe trộm *This office is ~ ged*
- **dealer** *(n)* /'di:lə/ person, trader who sells esp. individual objects and has a specialized knowledge of these = người mua bán *She's an antique/ used - car ~.*
- **fair** *(adj)* /feə/ average; moderately good = phải chăng *a ~ price.*
- **fashionable** *(adj)* /'fæʃnəbl/ used or visited by people following a current fashion = sang trọng, tân thời *a ~ hotel, resort.*
- **fortune** *(n)* /'fɔ:tʃu:n/ large amount of money = gia tài *She made a considerable ~ selling waste materials.*
- **frame** *(n)* /freɪm/ border of wood, metal, etc in which a picture is enclosed or set = khung *a picture ~, a window ~.*
- **gymnast** *(n)* /'dʒɪmnæst/ vận động viên thể dục dụng cụ
- **identity** *(n)* /aɪ'dentɪtɪ/ lai lịch, nét để nhận diện

EXPRESSIONS

We're in luck chúng mình thật là may
They're worth a fortune đáng cả một gia sản
I know what I'm doing tôi biết rõ điều mình đang làm
There's no market for them không có thị trường tiêu thụ, những cái đó khó bán lắm
You must be mad chắc anh khùng rồi

PROPER NAMES

Constable	/'kʌnstəbl/
Griffiths	/'grɪfɪθs/
Justin Wedgewood	/'dʒʌstɪn 'wedʒwʊd/
Kensington	/'kenzɪŋtən/
Lenny Smith	/'lenɪ smɪθ/
Welsh	/welʃ/
Victoria	/vɪk'tɔ:rɪə/

Cửa hàng bán đồ cũ

- **imitation** *(n)* /ˌɪmɪ'teɪʃn/ thing produced as a copy of the real thing = vật giả mạo. *That's not an original Van Gogh, it's an ~.*
- **junk** *(n)* /dʒʌŋk/ old or unwanted thing that is sold cheaply = đồ linh tinh, đồ cũ *a junk shop*
- **landscape** *(n)* /'lændskeɪp/ 1. scenery = phong cảnh 2. a picture showing a view of the countryside = tranh phong cảnh *an exhibition of ~ s by local artists.*
- **murderer** *(n)* /'mɜ:dərə/ kẻ sát nhân **murder** *(v)* /'mɜ:də/ sát nhân
- **parade** *(n)* /pə'reɪd/ formal gathering of groups for inspection = đoàn người tập hợp để điều tra
- **superb** *(adj)* /su:'pɜ:b/ excellent, splendid = tuyệt vời *a ~ player, painting, view.*
- **suspect** *(n)* /'sʌspekt/ person suspected of a crime = người bị tình nghi *The police are interrogating two ~ s.* **suspect** *(v)* /sə'spekt/ = nghi ngờ = mistrust *I ~ the truth of her statement.*
- **trick** *(n)* /trɪk/ thing done in order to deceive sb. = mẹo, mánh *We need a ~ to get past the guards.*
- **wrestler** *(n)* /'reslə/ người đấu vật

By the way à này
How much will you give me for it ? bà tính cái này bao nhiêu ?
Shall we say £50 ? chúng tôi trả 50 pounds nhé
It was nice doing business with you mua bán với bà thật làm tôi hài lòng
It's a deal ! đồng ý với giá đó.

PROVERBS

- *Grasp all lose all*
  Tham thì thâm
- *More haste, less speed.*
  Dục tốc bất đạt.

Notice this :

1. be in luck to be in | good / bad / better | luck

2. Have/ take a | good / better / closer / clearer | look at st / view of st

3. do business with

Ex : Mr. Gorbachev is the man he can do business with.

4. deal : agreement on certain terms for buying st.

It's a deal = I agree to your terms.

Grammar

SPECULATING ABOUT THE PRESENT
Suy đoán về các tình huống hiện tại

1) May, might, could be can be used to refer to possibility (việc có thể được)

May, might expresses the idea that something is very possible. We can use them for the present or the future.

EX : There *may / might* be some tickets left. (perhaps there are some left).
The train *may / might* be late.

We can also use **could** to say that something is possible.

EX : - You *could* win £100,000 !
- It *could* be good fun.

2) Must be, can't be is used to express deduction (sự suy diễn)

EX : - The story *must* be a joke. It can't *be* true.
(Chắc là chuyện đùa thôi. Không thể có thật được)

- Dave isn't answering the phone.
He *must* be out.
(Dave không trả lời điện thoại. Chắc là anh ấy đi vắng).

- A : I need a rest.
B : But we haven't been working long. You *can't be* tired yet.
(A : Tôi cần nghỉ.
B : Nhưng chúng ta làm việc chưa lâu mà. Anh chưa thể nào mệt đâu).

Notes : The negative of *must be* is *can't be*, not *mustn't be*.

EX : You've only just eaten. You *can't be* hungry again.

Justin Wedgewood and Lenny Smith are antique-dealers. They've got a very successful business. They travel around the country, buying antique furniture and paintings from junk-shops and from elderly people, and then they sell them from their shop in Kensington, a fashionable part of London. Today they're in a small Welsh town. Justin's just come out of a little junk-shop, and he seems very excited.

Justin Lenny, we're in luck ! There's a painting in there, a landscape, it's a good one. I thought it might be valuable, so I had a good look at the signature. It isn't very clear. I think it may be a Constable.

Justin Wedgewood và Lenny Smith là những người mua bán đồ cổ. Họ làm ăn rất khấm khá. Họ đi đây đó mua bàn ghế cổ và các tranh cổ từ các cửa hàng lạc xoong và những người đứng tuổi rồi sau đó đem về bán lại tại cửa hàng của họ ở Kensington, một khu phố sang trọng ở London. Hôm nay họ đang có mặt ở một thị trấn nhỏ thuộc xứ Wales. Justin vừa bước ra từ một cửa hàng lạc xoong nhỏ và anh ta trông có vẻ rất phấn khởi.

Justin : Này Lenny, chúng ta gặp may rồi ! Có một bức tranh trong đó, tranh phong cảnh, đẹp lắm. Tớ nghĩ là nó có thể có giá trị nên nhìn kỹ chữ ký. Nó không mấy rõ ràng nhưng tớ nghĩ có thể nó là bức tranh của Constable*

(*) John Constable = a famous English landscape artist. (1776-1837) họa sĩ nổi tiếng người Anh chuyên vẽ tranh phong cảnh.

Lenny A Constable ? It can't be ! They're all in art galleries. They're worth a fortune !

Justin Well, someone found one two years ago. This might be another. It's dirty and it isn't in very good condition.

Lenny How much do you think it's worth ?

Justin I don't know. It may be worth a hundred thousand, it might even be worth more !

Lenny Be careful, Justin. We'd better use the old trick.

Justin Right. There's a chair in the window. It must be worth about five pounds. I'll offer the old lady fifty quid for it. She'll be so pleased that she won't think about the painting.

Lenny Don't say you want the painting, say you want the frame. OK ?

Justin Fine, you'd better wait in the van. I'd rather do this on my own.

Lenny Er... Justin, check the signature before you give her fifty quid for the chair.

Justin Don't worry, Lenny. I know what I'm doing.

Mrs Griffiths I'll be with you in a minute.

Justin Hello. I'm interested in that chair in the window.

Mrs Griffiths What ? That old thing ? It's been there for years !

Justin Has it ? Er... it's very nice. I think it could be Victorian.

Mrs Griffiths Really ?

Justin Yes, I think I'm right. I've seen one or two other chairs like it. I think I could get a good price for that in London. I'll offer you fifty pounds.

Mrs Griffiths Fifty ! You must be mad, man !

Justin No, no. It's a fair price.

Mrs Griffiths Well, then, it's yours.

Justin There you are then, fifty pounds. Goodbye. Oh, by the way, that painting's in a nice frame.

Mrs Griffiths It's a nice picture, dear. Early nineteenth century, I've heard.

Lenny : Tranh của Constable à ? Không thể được. Tất cả chúng đều ở trong những nhà trưng bày nghệ thuật cả rồi. Chúng đáng giá cả một gia tài đó nhé.

Justin : À, thì hai năm trước có người đã tìm thấy một bức đó. Đây có thể là một bức khác. Nó trông có vẻ dơ dáy và xơ xác lắm.

Lenny : Cậu nghĩ nó đáng giá bao nhiêu ?

Justin : Tớ không biết. Có thể là một trăm ngàn, mà cũng có thể hơn.

Lenny : Này Justin, hãy cẩn thận nhé. Tốt hơn cả là nên dùng mẹo cũ.

Justin : Đúng vậy. Có một chiếc ghế trong tủ kiếng. Nó chắc chỉ đáng chừng 5 pounds, nhưng tớ sẽ trả bà già 50 đồng. Bà ta sẽ mừng lắm chẳng thiết gì đến bức tranh nữa đâu.

Lenny : Chớ nói là cậu muốn mua bức tranh; nói là cậu muốn mua cái khung thôi, nghe chưa ?

Justin : Tốt lắm. Cậu cứ chờ trong xe. Tớ sẽ lo liệu vụ này một mình thôi.

Lenny : Nè... Justin, nhớ kiểm tra chữ ký trước khi cậu mua cái ghế ấy với giá 50 đồng đấy nhé.

Justin : Đừng lo, Lenny. Tớ biết việc tớ làm chứ.

Bà Griffiths : Đợi một chút nhé. Tôi ra ngay.

Justin : Chào bà. Tôi thích cái ghế trong khung kính kia.

Bà G. : Sao ? Cái thứ cũ mèm đó hả ? Nó nằm đó hàng mấy năm nay rồi.

Justin : Vậy hả ? À... nó đẹp quá. Tôi nghĩ có thể nó thuộc đời Victoria đấy.

Bà G. : Vậy sao ?

Justin : Chắc là đúng vậy. Tôi đã nhìn thấy một hai cái loại này. Tôi nghĩ là tôi có thể bán nó với giá cao ở London. Tôi trả bà 50 pounds đấy.

Bà G. : 50 ! Anh điên rồi chắc.

Justin : Không đâu. Giá đó là phải rồi.

Bà G. : Thôi được. Bán cho anh đó.

Justin : 50 pounds đây nhé. Xin chào bà. Ở, bức tranh kia có cái khung khá đẹp.

Bà G. : Nó là một bức tranh đẹp đấy chứ anh bạn. Đầu thế kỷ 19 đấy, đó là tôi nghe người ta nói vậy.

Justin Oh, no... no, it can't be. I've seen lots like it. It must be twentieth century. There's no market for them. Still, I could use the frame.

Mrs Griffiths All right. How much will you give me for it ?

Justin Er... how about twenty pounds ?

Mrs Griffiths Oh, no, dear. It must be worth more than that. It came from the big house on the hill.

Justin Did it ? Let me have another look at it. Yes, the frame is really nice. I'll give you a hundred.

Mrs Griffiths Oh, dear, I don't know what to do. You see, I like that painting myself.

Justin All right, a hundred and twenty. That's my final offer.

Mrs Griffiths Shall we say... a hundred and fifty ?

Justin OK. It's a deal.

Mrs Griffiths Shall I wrap it for you ?

Justin No, no. I've got the van outside. It was nice doing business with you. Goodbye !

Mrs Griffiths Bye-bye, dear. Thank you.

Mrs Griffiths Owen ?

Mr Griffith Yes, my love ?

Mrs Griffiths I've sold another of your imitation Constables. You'd better bring another one downstairs, if the paiht's dry. The gentleman who bought it seemed very pleased with it.

Justin : Không đâu... không thể được. Tôi đã thấy nhiều bức tranh như vậy rồi. Ắt hẳn là tranh thế kỷ 20 thôi. Chẳng bán được đâu. Tuy nhiên tôi có thể dùng cái khung.

Bà G. : Được rồi. Thế anh trả bao nhiêu ?

Justin : Ờ... hai mươi pounds nhé ?

Bà G. : Không được đâu anh bạn à. Nó đáng giá nhiều hơn chứ. Nó xuất xứ từ cái biệt thự trên đồi kia kia.

Justin : Vậy hả ? Để tôi xem lại. Ờ, cái khung đẹp thật đấy. Tôi trả bà 100 pounds.

Bà G. : Ô, trời. Tôi không biết phải làm sao đây. Anh bạn biết đó, tôi cũng thích bức tranh này.

Justin : Thôi được. 120. Tôi trả tiếng chót đấy.

Bà G. : Trăm rưỡi nhé ?

Justin : Đồng ý.

Bà G. : Tôi bọc lại cho anh nhé ?

Justin : Không cần. Xe cửa tôi đậu ở ngoài. Buôn bán với bà dễ chịu lắm. Thôi chào bà.

Bà G. : Chào anh. Cảm ơn nhé.

Bà G. : Owen này ?

Ông G. : Gì đó em ?

Bà G. : Em vừa mới bán xong một bức tranh nhái kiểu Constable của anh. Anh mang xuống một bức nữa đi, nếu như sơn khô rồi. Ông bạn đi mua nó trông có vẻ hài lòng lắm.

Look at this

I'm certain... I'm almost certain...	It must be...	I think it's possible... (but a little less possible than 'may')	It might be...
I think it's possible...	It could be... It may be...	I think it's nearly impossible... I think it's impossible...	It can't be...

PRACTICE

Language summary

I'm certain . . . *I'm almost certain . . .*	*It must be . . .*	*(I think) it's possible, but unlikely . . .*	*It might be . . .*
(I think) it's possible . . .	*It could be . . .* *It may be . . .*	*(I think) it's nearly impossible . . .* *(I think) it's impossible . . .*	*It can't be . . .*
		I thought it might be . . . (past) *I think it may be . . . (present)*	

Exercise 1

What's that in the sky ? Is it from outer space ?

(impossible) *It can't be from outer space.*

Continue.

1 Is this table Victorian ?
(possible) . . . . . .

2 Who's that ? I think it's Prince Charles !
(possible, but unlikely) . . . . . .

Exercise 2

A spy has 'bugged' this hotel room. (He's hidden a small microphone somewhere.) Where do you think it is ?

It could be under the bed.

It might even be under the pillow.

Write sentences with 'could', 'may' and 'might'.

1 .....
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....
7 .....
8 .....

Exercise 3

'Mr J. Smith'

What do you think his first name might be?

It could be John. It could be James. It could be Joseph. It might be Julius !

Continue.

1. Miss M. Brown . . . . . .
2. Mr R. Green . . . . . .

Exercise 4

The police are looking for a murderer. They know it was a thin man of average height, in his 30s with short hair, a moustache and glasses. These are the six suspects in a police identity parade..

It can't be Chapman, because he hasn't got a moustache.

Write four sentences with 'can't', and one with 'must'.

Bài tập 1

Cái gì ở trên bầu trời kia ? Phải nó từ ngoài không gian không ?

(không thể) *Không thể từ ngoài không gian được.*

Hãy tiếp tục :

3 He's got a private plane. is he very rich ?
(almost certain) . . . . . .

4 That woman says she's 130 years old.
(almost impossible) . . . . . .

Bài tập 2

Một điệp viên đã đặt máy ghi âm nghe trộm phòng khách sạn. (Hắn đã dấu cái micrô nhỏ một nơi nào đó). Bạn nghĩ nó ở đâu?

Có thể nó ở dưới gầm giường.

Thậm chí nó có thể ở dưới gối.

Hãy đặt câu với "could" "may" và "might".

Bài tập 3

'Ông J. Smith'

Bạn nghĩ tên của ông ta có thể là gì ?

Có thể là John. Có thể là James. Có thể là Joseph. Có thể là Julius.

Hãy tiếp tục :

3 Mrs J. Roberts . . . . . .
4 Mr B. Evans . . . . . .
5 Mr S. Williams . . . . . .

Bài tập 4

Cảnh sát đang tìm kẻ sát nhân. Họ biết đó là người đàn ông gầy có chiều cao trung bình, ở độ tuổi 30, có tóc ngắn, bộ râu mép và đeo kính. Đây là 6 người tình nghi trong bộ hồ sơ của cảnh sát.

Không thể nào là Chapman, vì hắn không có râu mép.

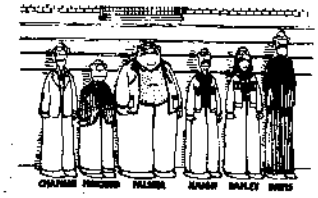
Viết 4 câu với "can't" và 1 câu với "must".

1 .....
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....

Exercise 5

My grandmother can remember the first car in our town. *She must be very old.*
Continue.

1 My sister won the 'Miss World' beauty contest last year. . . . . .
2 My father has got a Rolls-Royce and a Ferrari. . . . . .
3 My brother's only twelve, but he's going to university next year. . . . . .
4 My uncle's in prison. . . . . .
5 My mother goes to church twice a day . . . . . .
6 My cousin jumped off the Empire State Building. . . . . .
7 My grandfather thinks he's Napoleon . . . . . .
8 My aunt's a professional wrestler. . . . . .



Bài tập 5

Bà tôi có thể nhớ chiếc xe hơi đầu tiên trong tỉnh chúng tôi. *Chắc là bà già lắm rồi.*
Hãy tiếp tục.

9 Our dog bites every visitor to the home. . . . . .
10 My father-in-law hasn't washed for five years. . . . . .
11 My nephew weighs 100 kilos. . . . . .
12 My nieces are both champion gymnasts . . . . . .
13 Our house has got five bedrooms . . . . . .
14 My paintings have been exhibited in a gallery. . . . . .
15 Three cars have crashed on that bend this year. . . . . .
16 My brother-in-law runs for 10 km every morning. . . . . .

RECOGNIZING SIGNS (các biển hiệu cần biết)

- No Littering	: Cấm xả rác
- No Admission	: Cấm vào
- No Smoking	: Cấm hút thuốc
- Step up	: Coi chừng bước lên bậc thềm
- Step down	: Coi chừng bước xuống bậc thềm

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Units 17 – 20

Dialogue A

Listen

Frank and Betty Crawford live in London. It's Friday evening.
Betty Frank, what shall we do tomorrow ?
Frank Tomorrow ?
Betty Yes. It's Saturday. I'm fed up with staying at home every weekend. Let's go somewhere interesting.
Frank Where, for example ?
Betty I don't know. What about... Oxford or Cambridge ?
Frank I don't fancy driving, Betty. I've been driving all week.
Betty Oh, come on. It'll be a change.
Frank No, really. I'd rather not.
Betty Then we'll go by train. Where would you rather go, Oxford or Cambridge ?
Frank Huh... I'd prefer to go to Oxford, I suppose. We've been to Cambridge before.
Betty All right. We'll go tomorrow morning.

Proper names
- Frank /fræŋk/
- Betty Crawford /'betɪ'krɔ:fəd/
- Oxford /'ɒksfəd/
- Cambridge /'keɪmbrɪdʒ/

Listen and repeat

A1 Listen
A : Do you fancy playing golf tomorrow ?
B : No, I'd rather not.
C : No, I'd rather not.
A : Let's go out for a drink !
B : No, I'd rather not.
C : No, I'd rather not.

Now you do the same
Do you fancy playing golf tomorrow ?..... No, I'd rather not.
Let's go out for a drink !.....No, I'd rather not.
Why don't you come to the disco ? ..... No, I'd rather not.
Shall we go and see my grandmother ? ..... No, I'd rather not.

A2 Listen
A : We could go to Oxford or Cambridge.
B : Where would you rather go?
C : Where would you rather go?
A : We could play tennis or squash.
B : What would you rather play?
C : What would you rather play?

Now you do the same
We could go to Oxford or Cambridge..... Where would you rather go ?
We could play tennis or squash .....What would you rather play ?
We could visit Ann or Maria .....Who would you rather visit ?
We could travel on Saturday or Sunday..... When would you rather travel ?

A3 Listen
A : Oxford or Cambridge ? I'd rather go to Cambridge.
B : I'd prefer to go to Oxford.
C : I'd prefer to go to Oxford.
A : Tennis or squash ? I'd rather play squash.
B : I'd prefer to play tennis.
C : I'd prefer to play tennis.

Now you do the same
Oxford or Cambridge ? I'd rather go to Cambridge .....I'd prefer to go to Oxford.
Tennis or squash ? I'd rather play squash .....I'd prefer to play tennis.
Ann or Maria ? I'd rather visit Maria ..... I'd prefer to visit Ann.
Saturday or Sunday ? I'd rather travel on Sunday ..... I'd prefer to travel on Saturday.

Dialogue B

Listen

Betty Two cheap day returns to Oxford, please.
Clerk That's £11.80, please. £12. Thank you... 20p change.
Betty When's the next train ?
Clerk Er... That's the 10.05 from Platform 2. But you'd better hurry. It's 10 o'clock now.
Betty Thanks. 'Bye.

Listen and repeat

B1 Listen

A : If you don't hurry, you'll miss it.
B : You'd better hurry.
C : You'd better hurry.
A : If she doesn't come to work, she won't get paid.
B : She'd better come to work.
C : She'd better come to work.

Now you do the same

If you don't hurry, you'll miss it ..... You'd better hurry.
If she doesn't come to work, she won't get paid
..... She'd better come to work.
If they don't listen, they won't learn anything
..... They'd better listen.
If he doesn't leave now, he'll be late
..... He'd better leave now.

Dialogue C

Listen

Betty Come on, Frank. Quickly...Phew ! We caught it just in time.
Frank Huh, huh, huh. I can't breathe ! Why did we have to run, Betty ? There's another train in half an hour.
Betty Don't make a fuss, Frank. Let's find a seat.
Frank Ooh, Betty ! We'll never find a seat. There are people standing in the corridors.
Betty We'd better stand here, then. It's only an hour.
Frank Hang on. There's an empty compartment here.
Betty Frank ! We'd better not sit there. It's a first class compartment.
Frank Come on, Betty. It doesn't matter.
Betty Frank... Hadn't we better stand ?
Frank No. Don't be silly. Come on !

Listen and repeat

New words

- compartment *(n)* /kəm'pɑ:tmənt/ = any of the section into which a larger area or enclosed space, esp a railway carriage, is divided (toa, ngăn)

C1 Listen

A : Why don't we sit there ?
B : We'd better not sit there.
C : We'd better not sit there.
A : Why doesn't he have a cigarette ?
B : He'd better not have a cigarette?
C : He'd better not have a cigarette?

Now you do the same

Why don't we sit there ? ..... We'd better not sit there.
Why doesn't he have a cigarette ?..... He'd better not have a cigarette.
Why don't they climb over the fence ?..... They'd better not climb over the fence.
Why doesn't she get off the train ?..... She'd better not get off the train.

C2 Listen

A : I don't want to stand.
B : I know, but hadn't we better stand ?
C : I know, but hadn't we better stand ?
A : I don't want to go there.
B : I know, but hadn't we better go there ?
C : I know, but hadn't we better go there ?

Now you do the same

I don't want to stand..... I know, but hadn't we better stand ?
I don't want to go there ..... I know, but hadn't we better go there ?
I don't want to stay here ..... I know, but hadn't we better stay here ?
I don't want to do it..... I know, but hadn't we better do it ?

Dialogue D

Listen

Guard Tickets, please. Tickets, please.
Betty Frank ! Give him the tickets..... go on. He knows you're not asleep.
Guard Thank you. Just a minute, these are second class tickets. You can't sit here !
Frank Why not ? We've paid. The train's full. You ought to have more carriages... or more trains.

Guard Possibly. But this is a first class carriage and you ought not to be here. You'd better move, or you can buy a first class ticket.
Frank Well, I'm not moving... and I'm not paying.
Betty Frank ! I think we ought to pay. How much is it ?
Guard £8.40... each.
Frank/Betty We'll move !
Listen and repeat

New words
carriage /kærɪdʒ/ railway coach for carrying passengers = xe lửa
a first – / second – class ~

D1 Listen

A : You haven't got enough carriages !
B : You ought to have more carriages.
C : You ought to have more carriages.
A : There aren't enough trains !
B : There ought to be more trains.
C : There ought to be more trains.

Now you do the same

You haven't got enough carriages !..... You ought to have more carriages.
There aren't enough trains ! ..... There ought to be more trains.
You haven't got enough seats ! ..... You ought to have more seats.
The train isn't clean !..... It ought to be clean.

D2 Listen

A : You're here... you haven't got a ticket.
B : You ought not to be here.
C : You ought not to be here.
A : He's in first class. He hasn't got a ticket.
B : He ought not to be in first class.
C : He ought not to be in first class.

Now you do the same

You're here. You haven't got a ticket..... You ought not to be here.
He's in first class. He hasn't got a ticket..... He ought not to be in first class.
She's smoking. It's a 'No Smoking' compartment ..... She ought not to be smoking.
The train's late. It didn't leave on time..... It ought not to be late.

Exercise

Listen

A : I ought
B : I ought to do it.
C : I ought to do it.

A : I'd better
B : I'd better do it.
C : I'd better do it.

Now you do the same

I ought..... I ought to do it.
I'd better..... I'd better do it.
I'd prefer..... I'd prefer to do it.
I'd rather..... I'd rather do it.
I'll make you ..... I'll make you do it.
I'll force you ..... I'll force you to do it.
I'll allow you..... I'll allow you to do it.
I'll let you..... I'll let you do it.

Listening

Listen to these people talking about their preferences and answer the questions when you hear this sound *BELL

1

Woman Hmm. I like the black one really, but it's too expensive. I suppose I'd better get the blue one after all. Yeah... the blue one, please.

*** BELL**

Which one does she prefer ?..... She prefers the black one.

2

Man When I leave college ? Oh, no question... I'd like to be a musician. The problem is I'm not very good at it, you know. I'm going to qualify next year and I'm going to be a computer programmer... I hope.

*** BELL**

Which would he prefer to be, a musician or a computer programmer ?..... He'd prefer to be a musician.

3

Woman It's so difficult to decide, isn't it ? I do like both of them very much. They're both beautiful. No, I can't make up my mind between the pink one and the grey one. I'm just going to close my eyes and pick one up... oh, the grey one. Well, I'm quite happy with that.

4

Man Oh, dear. Egg on toast and beans on toast. I can't say that I fancy either of them. After all, there isn't really much choice. Still, I suppose I'd better eat something... oh, the beans are a bit cheaper. I'll have the beans.

* **BELL**

Which one does she prefer ?..... She likes both of them. OR She can't make up her mind.

* **BELL**

Which would he rather have, the egg or the beans ? .....He doesn't like either of them, or he doesn't fancy either of them.

Open conversation

Listen and reply

A : Sit down. There's only one menu, I'm afraid. Which would you rather have, tomato soup or chicken soup ?

B : .....

A : OK. What's next ? Which do you prefer, steak or fish ?

B : .....

A : There's a choice of potatoes or rice. Which do you like best ?

B : .....

A : Right. Desserts. Not much choice, I'm afraid. You can have ice-cream or apple pie.

B : .....

A : Then it's tea or coffee. Which do you prefer ?

B : .....

A : Fine. I'll call the waiter. That's the end of section five.

PROVERBS

- Let bygones be bygones
  Hãy để cho quá khứ lùi vào dĩ vãng
- Handsome is as handsome does
  Cái nết đánh chết cái đẹp
- When in Rome, do as the Romans do
  Nhập gia tùy tục
- In the country of the blind the one-eyed man is King
  Trong xứ mù kẻ chột làm vua

GRAMMAR POINTS from Unit 1 to Unit 20

Unit 1 : . *Greetings*

A : How do you do ?
B : How do you do ? (*formal*)
A : Hello, how are you ?
B : Very well, thanks, and you ?
A : I'm fine, thanks (*polite, friendly*)
A : Hi !
B : Hi !
A : How's things ? / How are you getting on? (*very familiar, casual*)

Good morning / afternoon / evening (*neutral*)

. **Introductions**

I'd like you to meet... / May I introduce... ? / I'm...

. *Polite enquiries and responses*

A : How's work ? / How's the family ?
B : All right / O.K / Fine
Did you have a good trip / journey ?

. *Thanking and accepting thanks*

A : Thanks / Thank you / Thank you for coming to meet me.
B : That's all right / Not at all.

. *Apologies* :

Sorry / I'm terribly sorry / I'm afraid not.

Unit 2 : *Future Continuous* in contrast with *Simple Future*.

I'll be doing it. *I'll do* it.

Unit 3 : *Personal identification* : name, date and place of birth, nationality, education, address, marital status and profession.

Unit 4 : *Future Perfect*

How far *will* she *have driven* ?
She'*ll have driven* 600 km.

Unit 5 : *Verb + -ing form* (1)

+ can't stand, dislike, don't like, enjoy, hate, like, love / *doing* it
+ be afraid of, terrified of, frightened of, scared of, tired of, bord with, fed up with, interested in / *doing* it.
+ begin, start, stop, give up / *doing* it.

Unit 6 : - *Talking about yourself.*

- *Interviews*
- *Format for formal letters.*

Unit 7 : *Verb + infinitive*

hope, refuse, plan, offer, agree, want, would like to, arrange, threaten, intend, expect, promise, manage, decide, demand, need to, have to, going to / *do*

Unit 8 : - *Congratulating / expressing sympathy.*

- *Informal letter endings.*
- *adjective + infinitive* (1)

I'm delighted / willing / sorry / happy / sad / ready / surprised / upset *to do it.*
It's lovely / nice / difficult / great / interesting *to do.*

- *Enough / too + infinitive*

You don't look old enough to be...
I was too ill to come...

Unit 9 : - *Verb + object + infinitive*

advise, allow, encourage, expect, forbid, force, help, invite, persuade, prefer, remind, tell, want *me / him to do* st.

- *Adj + infinitive* (2)

He's *too* young *to do* it.

- *Here / There + infinitive*

I'm not here / there to give an opinion.

- *Seem + infinitive*

We seem to have rows all the time.

Unit 10 : *Do* in contrast with *MAKE*

He went to London to *do* the shopping.
I've *made* some arrangements.

Unit 11 :

- *Polite requests*
- *Use of – ing form*

Would you mind doing... ?

- *Use of infinitive*

Would you be kind enough to do... ?
Would you be so kind as to do... ?

Unit 12 : - *Noun + infinitive*

- *Pronoun / Adverb + infinitive*

Is there anywhere to put it ?
There's nothing to worry about.
You've got somewhere to stay tonight...
There isn't much to do.

- *Remember / forget to do...*
- *I hope so / I hope not.*

Unit 13 : - *Verb + infinitive*

expect, recommend sb, would like, hope *to do.*

Unit 14 : *Revision of active / passive transformations.*

Unit 15 : *Simple present, present perfect* and *simple past questions.*

Unit 16 :

- *Infinitive structures with* and *without to.*

force, allow sb to do st.
make, let sb do st.

- *-ing form*

He was seen. He was driving his Land Rover.
He *was seen driving* his Land Rover.

Unit 17 :

Stating preferences

I like it... I'd like to do it.
Which do you like best ?
I prefer it. I'd prefer to do it.
Which do you prefer ? Which would you prefer to do ?
I'd rather do it. I'd rather not do it.
I'd much rather do it.
Which would you rather do ?

I like both.
I don't like / fancy | either / any | of them
There isn't much choice.
I can't make up my mind.

Unit 18 : *Advisability* and *desirability*
Should, ought to, had better, must, have to, have got to.

Unit 19 : *Revision* and *consolidation of infinitive and –ing form patterns.*
try to do, keep doing, get used to doing, tell / ask / help sb to do.

Unit 20 : Speculating about the present (1)
I'm (almost) certain... It *must be...*
I think it's possible... It *could be...*
It *may be...*
I think it's possible but unlikely...
It *might be...*
I think it's nearly impossible... It *can't be...*

TEST 1 UNITS 1 – 20

SECTION 1

Put a ring around the best word or phrase to complete the sentence.

1. Would you mind (to open / open / opening/ I open) the window, please ?
2. Detergent is normally (use / usually / to use / used) for washing clothes.
3. When I bought my car, I had to (lend / borrow/ owe / save) the money from the bank.
4. Shall we watch the film, the news or the football ?
   Oh, switch off the TV. I don't fancy (all / three/ either / any) of them.
5. After the operation, the doctors wouldn't (let / allow / to let / allowing) him get out of bed for three days.
6. She drove into town (to make / for doing / making / to do) some shopping.
7. Mr Smith, can't I see you later today ? Er, yes. Come at any time, Jenny.
   Oh, you'd better not come between one and two. I (shall / be/ 'll be / 'll) having luch then.
8. You'll need some small change (to / because/ so / for) tip the porter.
9. Flight SK526 to Stockholm is now (bored / on board / aboard / boarding) at Gate 4.
10. He can't speak to you...
    He'll (has / to be / have / –) finished by them.
11. Her teacher (advised / suggested / made / tell) her to go to the Careers Advisory service.
12. I don't speak French at all, but I'm very interested (with / by / in / of) learning it.
13. I'm sorry to hear you're ill. I hope you get (best / good / not ill / well) soon.
14. We had a terrible row. I'd rather not (told / to tell / tell / telling) you what we said !
15. Do you mind if I turn up the heater ?
    (Yes, I do / Not at all / No, thanks / Yes) I could too. It's a good idea.
16. I think people in cars (ought to / should / 'd better / must) wear safety belts.
17. We (- / hadn't / 'd / would) better hurry, or we'll miss the bus !
18. Hey ! That's my coat. It (could / certain / certainly / must) be ! It's got my name in it. Look !
19. Hello ? This is Jane. We've got a lot to do at the office.
    I (might be / might / might have / possibly) late home this evening.
20. Hello, Anne. I haven't seen you for ages ! How are you ?
    Oh, (how do you do ? / very well thanks, and you ? / I'm pleased to meet you.
    My name's Anne good afternoon, I'm Anne).

Mark : Out of : 20

SECTION 2

Read the conversation carefully and complete the spaces.

Maria and Paul have just parked their car outside a supermarket. It's Friday afternoon and they're going to do their shopping for the weekend.

Maria Oh, Paul ! Look, over there in that blue car. Look at that poor dog !

Paul Mmm. It must ..... over so hot in there. All of the windows are .....

Maria Poor thing. It ..... be thirsty. It's panting and panting. I really think people.....not to leave pets locked up in cars like that.

Paul No. Especially on a .... day like today.

Maria It looks awful, Paul. It must have been..... there for ages. They could ..... left it some water, after all.

Paul Perhaps we'd ..... go and look for its owner. If we ask in the supermarket, they'll ..... an announcement, I'm sure.

Maria If I..... the owner, I'd be ashamed to admit it. It's so cruel.

Paul Well, sometimes people don't think. It's a blue Escort estate, registration DFX 618Z.

Mark : Out of : 10

SECTION 3

Read the passage below and put the verbs in brackets in the correct form :
do / does / 'll do / did / would to / had done / would have done.
e.g. If I saw him. **I would say** (say) 'hello'

GUARD STOPS ESCAPE – SINGLE-HANDED

Our report today comes from Slade Prison, on the Isle of Wight. The notorious mass-murderer, Maxim Grossburger, who killed thirteen people between 1976 and 1982, tried to break out of prison during an exercise period. He was stopped by a 26-year-old guard, Alan Pryor. Pryor told the story to our reporter. "It was during the exercise period. The prison governor had come into the yard to inspect the prisoners. Suddenly Grossburged grabbed him around the neck. "If anyone.....(try) to stop me, I .... (kill) him now !" he shouted. He had a long kitchen knife. He started pushing the governor towards the gate. Grossburger !" I yelled. "Even if you got out, we ....(catch) you again. Nobody would help you. If I ..... (be) you, I'd surrender now". Grossburger stopped. "I want to die !" he screamed. "Unless you....(unlock) that door at once, the governor .....(die) with me !" The governor was scared. If you had known. Grossburger, you .....(be) scared too. After all, he had killed thirteen people already. Suddenly I had an idea. You see, Grossburger is violent, but he's also stupid, and crazy. Totally crazy. "Grossburger !" I shouted. "It's Friday today. It's your favourite lunch, fish and chips. If you escaped, you .....(miss) it".

Urgh ? he grunted. He looked at me. He's a huge man, but his eyes are tiny. Really tiny. "Fish and chips ..... today ? He let the governor go. "Oh, then I'll escape tomorrow". We led him back to his cell. It was very simple. If we ..... (try) to stop him by force, he would certainly have killed the governor. Just think, if the menu had been different, the governor .....(die) !"

SECTION 4

Read this passage.

I've always been a careful driver. Always. I think that's something to be proud of. In fact I've only ever had one accident in my life, and that wasn't serious. Just a little knock, that's all. It must have happened thirteen ..... or perhaps fourteen years ago. I had a job as a van driver. I still have actually. I was driving home from Birmingham. The van was one of those long wheel-bas Ford Transits, and it didn't have any back windows. For security you know. It just had door mirrors. It was a filthy night, pouring down, and the journey was very slow indeed. I was starving hungry and it was getting late. I saw a sign ahead for a village. It was Kiddleworth, I think. Anyway, I remembered passing a sweet shop there that stayed open late at night. As I said, the rain was belting down. I decided to get some chocolate. There was a big parking space outside the shop and I drove straight in. Because of the rain I moved into the passenger seat, slid the door open ....it had sliding doors .....and dashed into the shop. I put the correct money on the counter, grabbed a Mars Bar, and went straight back into the van through the open passenger door. I looked carefully in the door mirrors and put it into reverse. Crash ! I smashed straight into a Mini. It must have parked behind me during the few seconds I was in the shop, and it was too small to see in the door mirrors. It was my fault. If van drivers can't see, they're supposed to walk round the van. I just forgot. But I've never had an accident since.

Answer these questions with complete sentences.

He says two things that mean 'It was raining heavily'.
What are they ?

1 .....
2 .....What did he remember doing ?
3 .....What did he stop to buy ?
4 .....Why didn't he see the Mini when he arrived ?
5 .....Why couldn't he see the Mini in the door mirrors ?
6 .....What did he forget to do ?
7 .....What should he have done ?
8 .....How long had he been in the shop ?
9 .....What's his job nowadays ?
10 .....

Mark : Out of : 10

TOTAL MARKS :
Section 1.....
Section 2.....
Section 3.....
Section 4.....
TOTAL =.....x 2 =..... %

Unit 21 Noisy Neighbours

Những người hàng xóm ồn ào

VOCABULARY

- **bang** *(v)* /bæŋ/ strike st deliberately and violently, often in order to make a loud noise = đập mạnh
- **bury** *(v)* /'berɪ/ place (a dead body) in a grave = chôn cất *He was buried with his wife.*
  burial *(n)* /'berɪəl/ burying = việc chôn cất *Cremation is more common than burial in some countries.* Ở một số nước, việc hỏa thiêu thì thông dụng hơn việc chôn cất.
- **farewell** *(n)* /ˌfeə'wel/ saying goodbye = sự tiễn biệt *make one's last ~ s. a ~ party, speech / gift*
  farewell *(interj)* goodbye *Farewell until we meet again !*
- **hammer** *(v)* /'hæmə/ hit or beat (st) with a hammer = gõ búa *I could hear him hammering (away) in the house next door.*
- **milkman** *(n)* /'mɪlkmən/ man who goes from house to house delivering and selling milk = người đưa sữa
- **nosey** *(adj)* /'nəʊzɪ/ (infml) over curious; rudely inquisitive = tò mò toc mạch *I've always found her unbearably ~.*
- **pan** *(n)* /pæn/ cái soong
- **pot** *(n)* /pɒt/ cái bình
- **row** *(n)* /raʊ/ (infml) noisy or violent argument; quarrel = sự cãi lộn *I think they've had a ~.*
- **saw** *(v)* /sɔ:/ (pt sawed, pp sawn /sɔ:n/) cut something with a saw = cưa, xẻ
  saw *(n)* cái cưa
- **spade** *(n)* /speɪd/ tool for digging, with a wooden handle and a broad metal blade = cái xẻng *a garden ~.*
  spadeful *(n)* /'speɪdful/ amount (of earth, etc) carried on a spade. *three ~ s of sand.*
- **swallow** *(v)* /'swɒləʊ/ allow (esp food or drink) to go down the throat = nuốt *Taking pills is easy; just put them in your mouth and ~.*
- **sword** *(n)* /sɔ:d/ gươm, kiếm
- **tank** *(n)* /tæŋk/ large container, usu for liquid = chậu, bể cá *keep tropical fish in a glass ~.*

EXPRESSIONS

Thank goodness for that ! thật là may, cảm ơn chúa !

Go back to sleep ! đi ngủ lại đi

behind ≠ ahead of = sau ≠ trước, sớm hơn

to have a row = cãi cọ

to have a look = nhìn, xem qua

in half = phân nửa

GRAMMAR NOTES

Speculating about the present (2)

We use *must, may, might, can't* be + V-ing to express speculation or deduction (sự suy đoán hay suy diễn) about something happening at the moment of speaking.

It is also possible to use *to be* + probably / possible + V-ing to say the same thing.

EX : - They *must be having* another party. Có lẽ họ lại đang tiệc tùng nữa rồi.

- He *might be burying* her body. Chắc là hắn đang chôn xác bà ta.
- They *can't be sleeping* through that noise. Chắc họ không tài nào ngủ được với sự ồn ào này.

Usage

to have + nouns

to have a row, a party, a good time, a haircut, a look, a bath, a shave, a swim...

Sybil Sidney ! Sidney ! Wake up !

Sidney Eh ! What ? What's the matter ? It can't be eight o'clock already !

Sybil No, it's half past one. It's those people next door again. Listen !

Sidney Oh, yes. They must be having another party.

Sybil Listen to that ! They must be waking up the whole street. And they've got three young children. They can't be sleeping through that noise. It's disgusting ! Somebody should call the police ! Sidney, wake up !

Sidney Eh ? I wasn't asleep, dear. They're all laughing. They must be having a good time! They never invite us, do they ?

Sybil Sidney !

Sidney Yes, dear. What is it now ?

Sybil Listen ! They must be leaving.

Sidney Thank goodness for that ! Maybe we'll get some sleep.

Sybil I hope so. It's nearly three o'clock. Goodnight, dear.

Sidney Oh, hell ! They're having a row, now.

Sybil I'm not surprised. They always have rows after parties.

Sybil Oh ! They must be throwing the pots and pans again.

Sidney No. I think that was a plate, dear, or maybe the television. They'll be sorry in the morning.

Sybil Sidney ! Wake up !

Sidney Eh ! Oh, what's that ?

Sybil He can't be hammering at this time of night.

Sybil What time is it ?

Sybil Four o'clock. What can they be doing at four o'clock in the morning ?

Sidney I can't hear any voices. Go back to sleep, Sybil.

Sybil Sidney ! Listen. There's someone in the garden next door.

Sidney Eh ? It must be the milkman.

Sybil No, it can't be. It's too early. It's only quarter to five. Who could it be ? You'd better have a look.

Sidney All right. Ooh ! It's Mr Sykes, and he's carrying a spade.

Sybil : Sidney, Sidney, dậy đi !

Sidney : Cái gì vậy ? Đâu đã 8 giờ !

Sybil : Không, mới chỉ 1 giờ rưỡi thôi. Lại những người hàng xóm kế bên nữa. Nghe kìa.

Sidney : Ừ, đúng rồi. Chắc lại đang mở tiệc tùng nữa đây.

Sybil : Nghe kìa. Họ chắc đang đánh thức cả phố này mất. Mà họ lại có 3 đứa con nít nữa chứ. Làm sao mà bọn nhỏ ngủ được với cái tiếng ồn này. Bực mình quá! Ai đó phải gọi cảnh sát chứ ! Sidney, dậy đi !

Sidney : Sao ? Anh đâu có ngủ. Họ đang cười kìa. Chắc là họ đang vui lắm ! Chẳng bao giờ họ mời mình, phải không ?

Sybil : Sidney !

Sidney : Gì đó em ? Lại chuyện gì nữa?

Sidney : Nghe kìa. Chắc họ đang ra về.

Sidney : Tạ ơn trời phật ! Có lẽ chúng mình sẽ còn ngủ được một chút.

Sybil : Hy vọng là vậy. Gần ba giờ sáng rồi. Ngủ ngon nhé anh.

Sidney : Ô, quỷ thần ơi ! Bây giờ họ lại cãi nhau nữa chứ.

Sybil : Có gì lạ đâu. Sau tiệc tùng bao giờ họ cũng cãi nhau.

Sybil : Ồ – Chắc họ lại đang ném nồi niêu xoong chảo nữa.

Sidney : Không, chắc là một cái đĩa, hoặc có thể là cái TV. Sáng mai họ sẽ hối hận cho mà coi.

Sybil : Sidney ! Dậy đi.

Sidney : Ư... Cái gì vậy ?

Sybil : Khuya khoắt vậy mà hắn lại gõ búa là sao ?

Sybil : Mấy giờ rồi nhỉ ?

Sybil : Bốn giờ rồi. Bốn giờ sáng mà lại đi làm cái gì nhỉ ?

Sidney : Anh chẳng nghe thấy tiếng ai cả. Thôi ngủ lại đi, Sybil.

Sybil : Sidney ! Nghe kìa. Có ai ở trong vườn nhà bên.

Sidney : Hả ? Chắc là người giao sữa đó mà.

Sybil : Không phải đâu. Còn sớm quá. Mới có 5 giờ thiếu mười lăm. Ai thế nhỉ ? Anh nhìn xem đi.

Sidney : Thôi được. Ô ! Ông Sykes, và ông ta đang cầm một chiếc xẻng.

Sybil Oh, no ! You don't think he's killed her, do you ?

Sidney Well, we haven't heard her voice for a while. No, she's probably sleeping.

Sybil But what can he be doing at this time of night ?

Sydney If he has killed her, he might be burying the body !

Sybil What ! You don't think so, do you ?

Sidney Well, he can't be planting potatoes, can he ? I suppose you want me to phone the police ?

Sybil No. Ask him what he's doing first !

Sidney Hello, there, Mr Sykes. You're up early this morning.

Mr Sykes I haven't been to bed yet. We had a party last night. I hope we didn't keep you awake.

Sidney Oh, no. We didn't hear anything, nothing at all.

Mr Sykes Well, it was a pretty noisy party. My wife knocked over the goldfish tank while we were clearing up. The poor fish died. I'm just burying them before the children wake up.

Sybil : Ô trời ! Anh không nghĩ là ổng đã giết bà rồi đấy chứ ?

Sidney : À, từ nảy giờ không nghe tiếng bả. Mà không. Chắc là bả ngủ rồi.

Sybil : Vậy thì giờ này ông ta làm gì cơ chứ?

Sidney : Nếu ổng đã giết bả thì có thể là ổng đang chôn xác bả.

Sybil : Sao ? Anh không nghĩ là điều đó đã xảy ra chứ?

Sidney : Chẳng có lý nào ông ta lại đang trồng khoai tây, phải không ? Chắc em muốn anh kêu cảnh sát chứ gì ?

Sybil : Không. Trước hết phải hỏi ông ta đang làm gì cái đã.

Sidney : Xin chào ông Sykes. Sáng nay ông dậy sớm quá.

Ô. Sykes : Tới giờ này tôi cũng chưa đi ngủ nữa. Tối qua chúng tôi có tiệc. Hy vọng là chúng tôi không làm ông bà mất giấc ngủ.

Sidney : Ồ không. Chúng tôi có nghe thấy gì đâu.

Ô. Sykes : Bữa tiệc hơi ồn ào. Bà nhà tôi lỡ tay làm vỡ chậu cá vàng trong khi chúng tôi đang dọn dẹp. Bầy cá tội nghiệp đã chết. Tôi vừa đem chúng đi chôn trước khi bọn trẻ thức dậy.

Exercise

What do you think your parents/ brothers/ sisters/ friends are doing at this moment ?

If you think you know what they are doing answer with :

They must be doing this. *They can't be doing that.*

They're probably doing this.

If you don't know, use :

They could/may/might be doing this. or : *They're possibly doing this.*

What about the President of the USA/ the Queen of England/ the students in the class next door/ the director of the school/ a famous pop star/ a famous sports personality ?

PRACTICE

Language summary

They	*must* *may* *might* *can't*	*be doing (it).*	*She's*	*probably* *possibly*	*doing (it).*
			to have a row/a party/a good time/a look		

Exercise 1

Catherine's sitting in the cinema.
She must be watching a film/She's probably watching a film.
What do you think these people are doing?

1 James is sitting in a restaurant.
. . . . . .

2 Sarah's walking through an art gallery.
. . . . . .

3 Richard's sitting in a football stadium.
. . . . . .

Bài tập 1

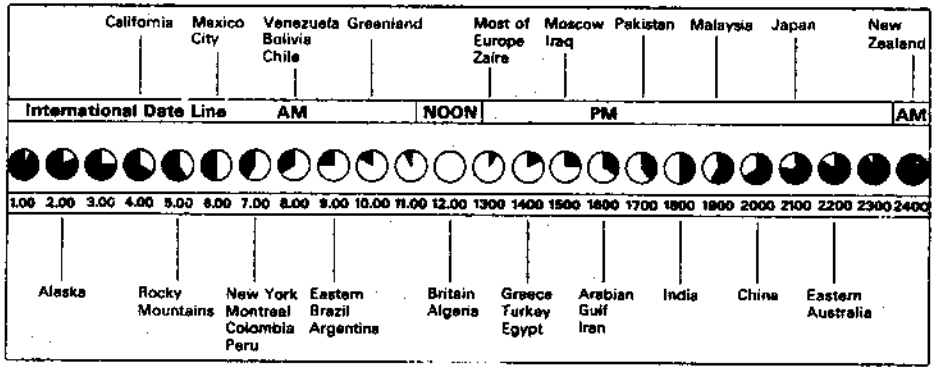
Catherine đang ngồi trong rạp chiếu bóng.
Chắc là chị ấy đang xem phim./Có lẽ chị ấy đang xem phim.
Bạn nghĩ những người này đang làm gì ?

4 Emma's in her car, on the motorway.
. . . . . .

5 Thomas and Victoria are sitting in the library. . . . . .
. . . . . .

Exercise 2

Bài tập 2



Alaska's four hours behind Mexico.
China's eight hours ahead of Britain.
Write four more sentences.

1 . . . . . .
2 . . . . . .

Alaska sau Mexico 4 giờ.
Trung Quốc trước Anh 8 giờ.
Viết thêm 4 câu nữa :

3 . . . . . .
4 . . . . . .

Exercise 3

Write four sentences using '... behind my country' and 'ahead of my country'.

1 . . . . . .
2 . . . . . .

Bài tập 3

Viết 4 câu dùng "... sau nước tôi" và "trước nước tôi".

3 . . . . . .
4 . . . . . .

Exercise 4

What time is it in this country now ?
Look at this example.
I live in Britain. I'm writing this at 2 p.m.

What do you think someone is doing in Alaska ?
It's 3 a.m. *They must be sleeping/They're probably sleeping.*
What do you think someone is doing in Malaysia ?

Bài tập 4

Bây giờ là mấy giờ ở nước này ?
Hãy xem thí dụ này.
Tôi sống ở Anh. Tôi đang viết bài này lúc 2g chiều.
Bạn nghĩ một người nào đó đang làm gì ở Alaska ?
Bây giờ là 3g sáng. *Chắc là họ đang ngủ/Có lẽ họ đang ngủ.*
Bạn nghĩ một người nào đó đang làm gì ở Malaysia ?

It's 9 p.m. *They're probably not working./They may be having dinner./They might be talking to some friends./They might be watching television.*

Choose six places, and write sentences about what people might be doing now.

Alaska. They must be sleeping. They're probably sleeping.

1 .....

2 .....

3 .....

Exercise 5

Look ! He's sawing that woman in half !

He can't be sawing her in half. It must be a trick.

Continue.

1 Look ! He's eating fire ! .....
.....

2 Look ! He's floating in mid-air !
.....

3 Look ! He's making that woman disappear ! .....
.....

4 Look ! That dog's speaking to him !
.....

Bây giờ là 9g tối. *Có lẽ họ không đang làm việc/ Có lẽ họ đang ăn tối/ Có lẽ họ đang nói chuyện với bạn bè./ Có lẽ họ đang xem tivi.*

Chọn 6 địa điểm và viết các câu về những gì người ta ở đó đang làm bây giờ.

Alaska. Chắc họ đang ngủ. Có lẽ họ đang ngủ.

4 .....

5 .....

6 .....

Bài tập 5

Nhìn kìa. Ông ta đang cưa người đàn bà đó ra làm đôi !

Ông ta không thể nào cưa đôi bà ấy ra được. Chắc là thủ thuật thôi.

Hãy tiếp tục.

5 Look ! He's taking money from his ear !
.....

6 Look ! He's pulling rabbits from his hat ! .....

7 Look ! He's taking birds out of his mouth ! .....

8 Look ! He's swallowing a sword !
.....

RECOGNIZING SIGNS

- Elevator : (US) Thang máy
- Lift : (Bri) Thang máy
- Stairs : Cầu thang
- Up : Lên
- Down : xuống
- Dilivery in Rear : Bản hiệu treo trước cửa cho biết đến giao hàng hóa hoặc đồ vật gì thì đi ngã sau

Unit 22 You're In The Army Now !

Bạn đang ở trong quân đội !

VOCABULARY

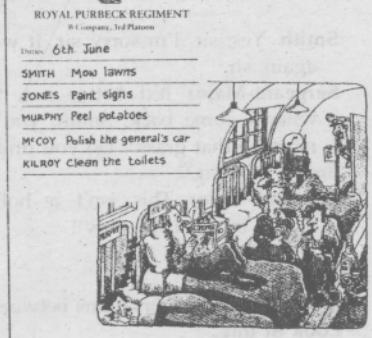
- **barracks** *(n)* /'bærəks/ building or groups of building for soldiers to live in = doanh trại
  As punishment, the men were confined to ~.
  (hình phạt) (bị nhốt)
- **colonel** *(n)* /'kɜ:nl/ army officer between the ranks of lieutenant – colonel and brigadier, commanding a regiment = đại tá
- **duty roster** *(n)* /'dju:tɪ'rɒstə/ list of names showing duties to be performed and the times at which those named are to perform them = Bản phân công trực.
- **lawn** *(n)* /lɔ:n/ area of closely – cut grass in the garden of a house or a public park = bãi cỏ *In summer we mow our ~ once a week.*
  lawn-mower = máy cắt cỏ
- **laze** *(v)* /leɪz/ (~ about / around) be lazy = làng nhàng, lè phè quanh quẩn *spend the afternoon lazing around (the house).*
- **mow** *(v)* /məʊ/ (pt mowed, pp mown /məʊn/ or mowed) cut grass using a machine with blades = cắt cỏ bằng máy
- **peel** *(v)* /pi:l/ (~ st for sb) take the skin off (fruit, etc) lột vỏ *~ a potato, a banana, an apple*
  Would you ~ me an orange ?
- **platoon** *(n)* /plə'tu:n/ group of soldiers, a subdivision of a company, acting as a unit under the command of a lieutenant= trung đội
- **polish** *(v)* /'pɒlɪʃ/ (cause st to) become smooth and shiny by rubbing = đánh bóng
  ~ furniture/ shoes with a cloth.
  polish *(n)* - sự đánh bóng *give the floor a thorough ~.*
  - dầu bóng *furniture, floor, shoe ~.*
  polisher *(n)* máy đánh bóng *a floor ~.*
  polished *(adj)* - sáng bóng *~ wood.*
  - chải chuốt *~ manners.*
- **recruit** *(v)* /rɪ'kru:t/ gain sb as a recruit = tuyển quân *~ new members (to the club)*
  recruit *(n)* = lính mới *new, recent, raw ~.*
  recruitment *(n)* = sự tuyển quân
- **refund** *(v)* /ri:'fʌnd/ pay back (money received) trả lại tiền đã chi trước
  refund *(n)* /'ri:fʌnd/ repayment
  refundable *(adj)* *a non – ~ deposit.*
- **regiment** *(n)* /'redʒɪmənt/ unit divided into squadrons = trung đoàn *an attack by three tank ~ s.*
- **sauna** *(n)* /'sɔ:nə, 'saʊnə/ sự tắm hơi, nhà tắm hơi
- **sergeant – major** *(n)* /'sa:dʒənt meɪdʒə/ thượng sĩ
- **solarium** /sɔʊ'leərɪəm/ nhà tắm nắng *The new sports centre has saunas and solariums.*

GRAMMAR NOTES **Obligations - duties - Preferences**

They	should shouldn't ought to ought not to are supposed to are not supposed to would rather would rather not had better (not)	be doing it

Notes : We use *be supposed* to for what we expect to happen because it is the normal way of doing things or because sb has ordered or arranged it.

Ex : You *are* not *supposed to walk* on the grass
Theo lẽ anh không nên đi trên cỏ
You *were supposed to be* here at 10.30, you know.
Đúng ra chị phải có mặt lúc 10.30 chị biết không ?



It's Saturday afternoon at Botherington Army Camp. The new recruits are supposed to be working, but they aren't. The Colonel's away today and they're lazing around in the barracks. The Sergeant-Major has just opened the door. He's brought the duty roster with him, so he knows exactly what each of them should be doing.

Sergeant-Major 'Hello, hello... what's going on here ?'

Buổi chiều thứ bảy ở trại lính Botherington. Các tân binh lẽ ra phải đang làm việc, nhưng họ lại không làm. Hôm nay đại tá đi vắng và họ đang lê la trong trại. Thượng sĩ vừa mở cửa. Ông ta mang theo lịch trực nhật, vì vậy ông biết chính xác người nào phải làm gì.

Thượng sĩ : "Này, này... Cái gì ở đây thế này?"

Exercise 1

Look at Smith in the picture. Ask and answer about the other soldiers.

1 *What's he doing ?*
He's sitting on the bed.
He's drinking.
He's listening to the radio.

2 *Should he be drinking ?*
No he shouldn't.
Should he be mowing the grass ?
Yes, he should.

3 *What should he be doing ?*
He should be mowing the grass.
What shouldn't he be doing ?
He shouldn't be sitting on the bed.
He shouldn't be drinking.
He shouldn't be listening to the radio.

Exercise 2

Smith ought to be mowing the grass, he ought not to be drinking.
Write similar sentences about the other soldiers.

Sergeant-Major Smith ! What are you doing ?

Thượng sĩ : Smith ! Cậu đang làm gì đó ?

Smith I'm listening to the radio, sir.

Smith : Thưa thượng sĩ, tôi đang nghe đài.

Sergeant-Major And what are you supposed to be doing, Smith ?

Thượng sĩ : Thế lẽ ra cậu phải làm gì ?

Smith I'm not sure, sir.

Smith : Dạ tôi cũng không rõ lắm.

Sergeant-Major Well, let me tell you, Smith. You are supposed to be mowing the lawn !

Thượng sĩ : Được rồi, để tôi nói cho cậu rõ, Smith. Lẽ ra cậu phải đang cắt cỏ.

Smith Yes, sir. I'm sorry sir. It won't happen again, sir.

Smith : Thưa vâng. Tôi xin lỗi, thưa thượng sĩ. Tôi sẽ không tái phạm nữa.

Sergeant-Major It'd better not, Smith. And when I come back, Smith, you'd better be mowing that grass ! Do you understand ?

Thượng sĩ : Tốt hơn là cậu không nên tái phạm, Smith. Và khi tôi quay lại, tốt hơn là cậu đang cắt cỏ chứ không phải đang làm gì khác ! Cậu hiểu chứ ?

Smith Yes, sir.

Smith : Rõ, thưa thượng sĩ.

Sergeant-Major This isn't a holiday camp. You're in the army now !

Thượng sĩ : Đây không phải là trại nghỉ mát. Bây giờ cậu đang ở trong quân ngũ mà.

Exercise 3

Make similar conversations between the Sergeant-Major and the other soldiers.
Look at this.

Exercise 4

Smith's mowing the grass.
He'd rather not be mowing the grass.
He'd rather be lying on the beach.

Make sentences about the other soldiers.

Exercise 5

What are you doing ?
What would you rather be doing?
Make five sentences.

PRACTICE

Language summary

They	*should (not)/ought (not) to/are (not) supposed to had better (not)/would rather (not)*	*be doing it.*

Exercise 1

Mr Tucker is a businessman. He's very overweight, and his company has just sent him to a health farm. It's his first day.

A *He's drinking lemon juice.*
B *He'd rather not be drinking lemon juice.*
C *He'd rather be drinking champagne.*

Bài tập 1

Ông Tucker là thương gia. Ông ta rất nặng cân và công ty ông vừa cử ông ta đến trại chăm sóc sức khoẻ. Đây là ngày đầu tiên của ông ta.

A Ông ta đang uống nước chanh.
B Ông ta không nên uống nước chanh thì hơn.
C Ông ta nên uống rượu champagne thì hơn.

A .....
B .....
C .....

A .....
B .....
C .....

A .....
B .....
C .....

A .....
B .....
C .....

CONINGHAM HALL HEALTH FARM

PATIENT	Robin Tucker
SCHEDULE	3rd December
6.30 - 7.00	Breakfast (1 glass lemon juice)
7.00 - 8.00	Running (5 km)
8.00 - 8.15	Cold shower
8.30 - 9.15	Weight training, gym
9.30 - 9.50	Rowing machine
10.00 - 10.30	Sauna
10.30 - 11.15	Massage
11.30 - 12.00	Lunch (one carrot, one glass lemon juice)
12.30 - 13.00	Solarium
13.30 - 14.00	Swimming pool
14.15 - 15.15	Resting

Bài tập 2

Đây là ngày thứ hai : Ông Tucker đã biến khỏi trại chăm sóc sức khoẻ. Họ không thể nào tìm được ông ta cả buổi sáng.

Exercise 2

It's the second day. Mr Tucker has disappeared from the health farm. They haven't been able to find him all morning. At 6.45 the Director said : *'Where's Mr Tucker ? He's supposed to be having breakfast !'*
What did he say at the following times ?

Lúc 6g45 ông Giám đốc nói : *"Ông Tucker đâu ? Lẽ ra giờ này ông ta phải đang ăn sáng.*
Ông giám đốc nói gì vào các giờ sau đó.

7.30 .....
8.10 .....
8.45 .....
9.40 .....
10.15 .....

Exercise 3

Look at Exercise 2. Make sentences with 'He should be doing..' and 'He ought to be doing...'

1 .....
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....

Exercise 4

At 3 o'clock the Director received a phone call from a nearby club. They asked him to come and collect Mr Tucker. When he got there, this is what he found.

Director Mr Tucker ! You aren't supposed to be sitting in a club !

Write three more sentences.

1 .....
.....
2 .....
.....
3 .....
.....

Exercise 5

Look at Exercise 4.

Make four sentences with 'You ought not to be doing...' and four with 'You shouldn't be doing...'

Exercise 6

The Director said, 'This isn't good enough, Mr Tucker. Coningham Hall is very expensive. If you want to stay, you'll have to follow our programme. If not, you'll have to leave and we will not be able to refund your money, so tomorrow, at 6.45 you'd better be having breakfast !'

Look at the Schedule in Exercise 2, and write ten sentences with 'You'd better...' and four sentences with 'You'd better not...'

11.00 .....
11.45 .....
12.45 .....
1.45 .....
2.45 .....

Bài tập 3

Xem bài tập 2. Đặt câu với "He should be doing..." và "He ought to be doing..."

6 .....
7 .....
8 .....
9 .....
10 .....

Bài tập 4

Lúc 3g ông Giám đốc nhận được một cú điện thoại từ một câu lạc bộ gần đó. Họ đề nghị ông đến đón ông Tucker về. Khi ông giám đốc đến, đây là điều ông nhìn thấy :

GĐ : Ông Tucker ! Lẽ ra ông không được ngồi ở Câu lạc bộ.

Viết thêm 3 câu nữa.

Bài tập 5

Xem bài tập 4.

Đặt 4 câu với "You ought not to be doing..." và 4 câu với "You shouldn't be doing..."

Bài tập 6

Ông giám đốc nói, "Như vậy thì không tốt đâu ông Tucker à. Coningham Hall rất đắt. Nếu ông muốn ở, ông sẽ phải theo chương trình của chúng tôi. Nếu không ông sẽ phải rời khỏi đây và chúng tôi không thể nào hoàn tiền lại cho ông, vì vậy ngày mai, lúc 6g45 tốt hơn ông nên ăn sáng !"

Nhìn thời khóa biểu trong bài tập 2, viết 10 câu với "You'd better..." và 4 câu với "You'd better not..."

Unit 23 Migration

Sự di trú

VOCABULARY

- **adopt** *(v)* /ə'dɒpt/ take over and use st as one's own = chọn *~ a name, a style of dress.*
- **amputate** *(v)* /'æmpjuteɪt/ cut off (a diseased or an injured limb) by surgical operation = cắt rời (bộ phận thân thể)
  Her arm was so badly injured they will have to ~ (it).
- **Arctic tern** *(n)* /'a:ktɪk tɜ:n/ nhạn biển bắc cực
- **attach** *(v)* /ə'tætʃ/ connect st with st = gắn liền, dính *Do you ~ any importance to what he said ?*
- **bar magnet** *(n)* /ba:'mægnɪt/ cục nam châm
- **bat** *(n)* /bæt/ con dơi
- **badge** *(n)* /bædʒ/ thing worn to show a person's rank, membership of a society = huy hiệu
- **breeding** *(n)* /'bri:dɪŋ/ producing of young by animals = sự sinh sản *the ~ season.*
- **breeding – ground** *(n)* /'bri:dɪŋ graund/ place where animals go to produce their young = nơi sinh sản
- **carsticker** *(n)* /'kɑ:stɪkə/ nhãn dán xe hơi
- **chick** *(n)* /tʃɪk/ young bird just before or after hatching = con chim con
- **circuit** *(n)* /'sɜ:kɪt/ line, route or journey around a place = đường vòng quanh
  The earth takes a year to make a ~ of the sun.
- **clifftop** *(n)* /'klɪftɒp/ steep face of rock at the edge of the sea = mõm đá
- **coastline** *(n)* /'kəustlaɪn/ shape or outline of a coast = bờ biển *rocky, rugged ~.*
- **compulsion** *(n)* /kəm'pʌlʃn/ (to do st) compelling or being compelled = sự cưỡng bách *I refuse to act under ~.*
- **cradle** *(v)* /kreɪdl/ (sb / st in st) place or hold sb / st in a cradle = bế ẩm, nâng niu
  ~ a child in one's arms.
- **crawl** *(v)* /krɔ:l/ move slowly, with the body on or close to the ground, or on hands and knees = bò *A snake crawling along (the ground).*
- **creature** *(n)* /'kri:tʃə/ living being, esp an animal = tạo vật *Your dog's a ferocious ~ !*
- **crush** *(v)* /krʌʃ/ press or squeeze (sb / st) hard so that there is breakage or injury = đè nát, đè bẹp *Don't ~ the box, it has flowers in it.*
- **cuddly** *(adj)* /'kʌdlɪ/ (infml) pleasant to cuddle = dễ ôm ấp, vuốt ve
  cuddle *(v)* /kʌdl/ hold (sb, st, each other) close and lovingly in one's arms = ôm ấp
  The lovers kissed and ~ d on the sofa.
- **eel** *(n)* /i:l/ con lươn, cá chình.
- **estuary** *(n)* /'estʃuərɪ/ wide river mouth into which the tide flows = cửa sông .
  The Thames ~.
- **exhaustion** *(n)* /ɪg'zɔ:stʃən/ total loss of strength, extreme tiredness = sự kiệt sức
  They were in a state of ~ after climbing the mountain.
  exhausted *(adj)* /ɪg'zɔ:stɪd/ very tired
- **extinction** *(n)* /ɪks'tɪŋkʃn/ state of being extinct = sự tuyệt giống *a tribe threatened by / with ~.*
  extinct *(v)* /ɪk'stɪŋkt/ no longer in existence = tuyệt giống *If we continue to destroy the countryside many more animals will become ~.*
- **feature** *(n)* /'fi:tʃə/ distinctive characteristic, aspect = đặc điểm *an interesting ~ of city life.*
- **flock** *(n)* /flɒk/ group of sheep, goats or birds of the same kind = bầy, đàn *a ~ of wild geese.*
- **frog** *(n)* /frɒg/ con ếch
- **giant panda** *(n)* /dʒaɪənt ˌpændə/ gấu trúc
- **glide** *(v)* /glaɪd/ move along smoothly and continuously = lướt, trượt
  Silently the boat ~ d past.
- **hectare** *(n)* /'hekteə, 'hekta:/ (abbr *ha*) measure of area in the metric system, equal to 10,000 square metres = mẫu, hec ta
- **infant** *(n)* /'ɪnfənt/ child, young during the first few years of life = đứa bé, con nhỏ
  ~ s, older children and adults.
- **insect** *(n)* /'ɪnsekt/ côn trùng
- **instinct** *(n)* /'ɪnstɪŋkt/ natural inborn tendency to behave in a certain way without reasoning or training = bản năng
  Birds learn to fly by ~.
- **larva** *(n)* /'la:və/ (pl larvae /'la:vi:/ insect in the first stage of its life, after coming out of the egg = ấu trùng, cá con

A carterpillar is the larva of a butterfly.

- **lemming** *(n)* /'lemɪŋ/ chuột lem
- **magnetic field** *(n)* /mæg'netɪk fi:ld/ từ trường
- **mammal** *(n)* /'mæml/ any of the class of animals that give birth to live offspring and feed their young on milk from the breast = động vật có vú
- **maul** *(v)* /mɔ:l/ injure (a person or an animal) by tearing his or its flesh = đánh thâm tím, hành hạ *He died after being ~ ed by a tiger.*
- **mate** *(v)* /meɪt/ (of birds or animals) (cause to) come together to have sexual intercourse and produce young = kết đôi
- **migration** *(n)* /maɪ'greɪʃn/ migrating = di trú
  migrate *(v)* /maɪ'greɪt/ (of animals) go from one place to another with the seasons, esp to spend the winter in a warmer place = di trú. *These birds ~ to North Africa in winter.*
- **mystery** *(n)* /'mɪstərɪ/ điều bí ẩn
- **navigate** *(v)* /'nævɪgeɪt/ 1. move along, over or through (a sea, river, etc) = di chuyển dưới nước. 2. find the position and plot the course = định hướng
- **pigeon** *(n)* /'pɪdʒɪn/ chim bồ câu
- **plunge** *(v)* /plʌndʒ/ fall into (st) suddenly and with force = nhảo xuống *They ~ d in = dived into the water.*
- **presumably** *(adv)* /prɪ'zju:məblɪ/ it may be presumed = giả định, cho là

EXPRESSIONS

in captivity = bị giam hãm, câu thúc
to roll over = lăn tròn
on - off = thỉnh thoảng

One of the greatest mysteries of nature is the instinct to migrate. Every year millions of creatures feel the need to move for one reason or another. Most of us have seen the arrival or departure of migrating flocks of birds. Migration, however, is not confined to birds, but can be seen in reptiles (for example turtles, frogs), insects (butterflies, locusts), fish (eels, salmon, tunny) and mammals (reindeer, seals, lemmings, whales, bats). Many of these creatures succeed in navigating over long distances. How exactly they manage to do this still remains a mystery. There are several possibilities. They may navigate by using one or more of the following :

She is aware of the difficulties, ~ ?

- **reindeer** *(n)* /'reɪndɪə/ con hươu
- **reptile** *(n)* /'reptaɪl/ any of the class of cold – blooded, egg-laying animals including lizards, tortoises, crocodiles, snakes, etc with relatively short legs or no legs at all = động vật bò sát
- **ring** *(n)* /rɪŋ/ vòng đeo
  ring *(v)* = put a ring round = đeo vòng
- **round trip** *(n)* /raʊnd trɪp/ journey to one or more places and back again, often by a different route = chuyến đi khứ hồi
- **romance** *(n)* /rəʊ'mæns/ love affair = chuyện tình
- **salmon** *(n)* /'sæmən/ cá hồi
- **sonar** *(n)* /'səʊnɑ:/ phương pháp định hướng bằng sóng âm thanh
- **suicide** *(n)* /'su:ɪsaɪd/ killing oneself intentionally = tự sát *four cases of ~.*
- **symbol** *(n)* /'sɪmbəl/ object, image that suggests st else = vật tượng trưng *The lion is the ~ of courage.*
- **theory** *(n)* /'θɪərɪ/ lý thuyết
- **tunny** *(n)* /tʌnɪ/ cá ngừ
- **turtle** *(n)* /'tɜ:tl/ rùa
- **vicious** *(adj)* /'vɪʃəs/ (of animals) savage and dangerous = dữ dằn
- **whale** *(n)* /weɪl/ cá voi

GRAMMAR NOTES

Notice the following sentences :

- They may navigate *by using* the stars
- They may navigate *by using* the sun
- The eel navigates *by using* its sense of smell

Một trong những bí ẩn lớn nhất của thiên nhiên là bản năng di cư. Mỗi năm hàng triệu sinh vật cảm thấy có nhu cầu phải di chuyển vì lý do này hay lý do khác. Phần lớn chúng ta đều đã chứng kiến sự đới đến hoặc ra đi của các đàn chim di cư. Tuy nhiên, sự di cư không chỉ giới hạn ở loài chim mà còn được thấy ở loài bò sát (ví dụ như rùa, ếch), côn trùng (bươm bướm, châu chấu), cá (cá chình, cá hồi, cá ngừ) và động vật có vú (hươu, hải cẩu, chuột lem, cá voi, dơi). Nhiều con vật trong số này có thể vượt những chặng đường rất xa. Làm sao chúng lại có thể thực hiện điều này vẫn còn là một bí ẩn. Có thể có nhiều khả năng. Chúng có thể định hướng dựa vào một hoặc nhiều thứ sau :

1 The sun.
2 The stars.
3 The Earth's magnetic field. (When a small bar magnet is attached to a pigeon, it is unable to navigate.)
4 A sense of smell.
5 Geographical features. (Birds flying from North Africa to France seem to follow coastlines and valleys.)
6 Changes in temperature. (Salmon can detect a change in water temperature as small as 0.03°C.)
7 Sound. (Whales and bats seem to use sonar.)

Experiments suggest that these navigational abilities are partly instinctive. In one famous experiment a young seabird from the island of Stokholm, off the Welsh coast, was taken across the Atlantic by plane to Boston, 5100 km away. It was released, and was back in its nest twelve and a half days later.

The Arctic Tern

This seabird holds the record for long-distance migration. Arctic Tern breed in Northern Canada, Greenland, Northern Europe, Siberia and Alaska. In late August they set off on a 17,500 km journey which takes them south, past the West coasts of Europe and Africa to the tip of Southern Africa (14,000 km in 90 days). They then fly round to the Indian Ocean and down to Antarctica, where they spend the Antarctic summer. On the way back they sometimes make a complete circuit of Antarctica before returning to their breeding-grounds. The round trip is over 35,000 km in eight months (240 km a day when they are flying.) The Arctic Tern sees more hours of daylight than any other creature, because it experiences two summers a year, one in the Arctic region, and one in the Antarctic. These regions have almost constant daylight in summer. One tern, which was ringed in Norway as a chick, died in exactly the same place, twenty-seven years later. Presumably, it had made the journey twenty-seven times.

1. Mặt trời.
2. Các vì sao
3. Từ trường của trái đất (khi có một thanh nam châm nhỏ được gắn vào chân con bồ câu, nó sẽ không còn định hướng được nữa).
4. Khứu giác.
5. Các đặc điểm địa lý (những con chim bay từ Bắc Phi tới Pháp dường như bay theo các đường bờ biển và thung lũng).
6. Sự thay đổi nhiệt độ (cá hồi có thể phát hiện sự thay đổi về nhiệt độ ở trong nước có độ nhạy đến 0,03 độ C).
7. Âm thanh (cá voi và dơi dường như dùng phương pháp phản âm để định vị)

Các cuộc thí nghiệm cho thấy rằng các khả năng định vị này một phần là do bản năng. Trong một cuộc thí nghiệm được nhiều người biết tới, một con chim biển còn non đã được đưa bằng máy bay từ đảo Stokholm, ngoài khơi bờ biển xứ Wales, vượt Đại Tây dương đến Boston, cách đó 5100 km. Người ta phóng thích nó, và nó đã bay về tổ mười hai ngày rưỡi sau đó.

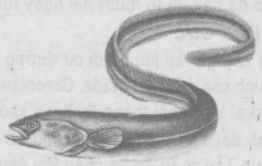
Nhạn biển Bắc cực

Loài chim biển này giữ kỷ lục về di cư đường dài. Nhạn biển Bắc cực sinh sản ở Bắc Canada, Greenland, Bắc Âu, Siberia và Alaska. Vào cuối tháng 8 chúng khởi đầu một cuộc hành trình dài 17500 km, đưa chúng về phía Nam qua bờ biển phía Tây châu Âu và châu Phi đến cực Nam châu Phi (14000 km trong 90 ngày). Sau đó chúng bay vòng về Ấn Độ dương xuống tận Nam cực và ở lại đó suốt mùa hè. Trên đường quay về, đôi khi chúng bay giáp vòng Nam cực trước khi trở về nơi sinh sản. Cuộc hành trình cả đi lẫn về này dài hơn 35000 km thực hiện trong 8 tháng (240 km một ngày khi bay). Nhạn biển Bắc cực thấy mặt trời nhiều hơn bất kỳ sinh vật nào khác, bởi vì chúng có đến 2 mùa hè trong một năm, một ở vùng Bắc cực và một ở Nam cực. Những vùng này hầu như lúc nào cũng có ánh sáng mặt trời vào mùa hè. Một con nhạn biển, được đeo vòng vào chân ở Na Uy khi còn nhỏ để tiện theo dõi, đã chết đúng tại chỗ ban đầu 27 năm sau đó. Có thể giả định là nó đã thực hiện cuộc hành trình này tới 27 lần.

(*) SONAR system for detecting and locating objects under water by means of reflected sound waves = hệ thống định vị bằng cách phát ra sóng âm, sau đó thu nhận lại sóng phản hồi.

The European Freshwater Eel

European Freshwater Eels, which look like snakes but are really fish, begin and end their lives in the Sargasso Sea, southeast of Bermuda. As eggs and larvae they drift for three years towards Europe, changing both shape and colour as they reach the fresh-water estuaries of European rivers. They spend the next nine to nineteen years in rivers, streams, lakes and ponds. As they approach old age they seem to have an unexplained compulsion to return to the Sargasso Sea to breed. Many eels which have found their way into ponds and lakes come out of the water and travel overland, gliding through damp grass. When they reach the sea, they make their way to the Sargasso, where they breed and die. No eels make the journey twice. The eel has an acute sense of smell, which is used for navigation in local waters, but inherited memory seems the only explanation for their migration to the Sargasso.



Cá chình nước ngọt châu Âu

Cá chình nước ngọt châu Âu, trông giống như rắn nhưng thật ra là cá, bắt đầu và kết thúc cuộc sống của chúng ở biển Sargasso, đông nam Bermuda. Khi còn là trứng và cá con, chúng trôi giạt trong 3 năm sang châu Âu, thay đổi cả về hình dáng và màu sắc khi chúng tới các cửa sông nước ngọt của các con sông châu Âu. Chúng ở trong các con sông, suối, hồ, ao trong 9 tới 19 năm tiếp theo. Khi chúng gần đến tuổi chết, dường như chúng có một thôi thúc không thể giải thích nổi là phải trở về biển Sargasso để sinh sản. Nhiều con cá chình sống ở trong ao, hồ nhảy ra khỏi nước và lướt trên cạn, trườn mình qua những lớp cỏ ẩm ướt. Khi chúng ra tới biển, chúng tìm đường về Sargasso để đẻ trứng rồi chết. Không có con cá chình nào lại thực hiện cuộc hành trình này tới 2 lần. Loài cá này có khứu giác rất nhạy dùng để định hướng trong các vùng nước nơi chúng sống, nhưng sự di truyền ký ức dường như mới là lời giải thích duy nhất cho sự di cư của chúng đến Sargasso.

The Lemming

The Brown Lemming is a small mammal (10-18cm long) found all over Northern Canada, Scandinavia and Northern Russia. Lemmings usually make short, annual migrations in spring, travelling by night and feeding and sleeping by day. Every three or four years, however, they make much longer migrations in large numbers. The lemming population seems to change over a three or four year cycle, from one lemming per four hectares to between 400 and 700 lemmings per four hectares. Migration seems to be a method of population control, and is most spectacular in the well-known 'mass suicides', where thousands of lemmings plunge over cliff tops into the sea, and swim till they die of exhaustion. These 'mass suicides' only occur infrequently, and then only in Norway where

Chuột lem

Chuột lem nâu là loại động vật có vú nhỏ con (dài 10-18cm) được tìm thấy khắp miền Bắc Canada, bán đảo Scandinavia và Bắc Nga. Chuột lem thường thực hiện các cuộc di cư ngắn ngày vào mùa xuân hàng năm, di chuyển ban đêm và ăn ngủ vào ban ngày. Tuy nhiên, cứ mỗi 3 hoặc 4 năm chúng lại thực hiện các cuộc di cư xa hơn và đông hơn. Quần thể chuột lem hình như thay đổi theo một chu kỳ 3 hoặc 4 năm, từ 1 chuột lem trên 4 hecta đến khoảng 400-700 chuột lem trên 4 hecta. Di cư dường như là một phương pháp hạn chế sự phát triển dân số, và rất ngoạn mục trong những cuộc "tự sát tập thể" được nhiều người biết đến, khi mà hàng ngàn chuột lem nhảy từ các mỏm núi xuống biển và bơi mãi cho đến khi chết vì kiệt sức. Những cuộc "tự sát tập thể" này xảy ra không thường xuyên, và chỉ ở Na Uy, nơi mà núi giáp biển. Không ai rõ điều gì đã thôi thúc chúng hành động như vậy, nhưng cũng có hai thuyết : Một cho rằng các con

mountains touch the sea. Nobody knows what makes them do it, but there are two theories. One is that migrating lemmings cross rivers and lakes and can't tell the difference between a river and the sea. The other, more interesting theory is that they are migrating towards ancient breeding-grounds which existed beneath the North Sea millions of years ago, when the sea-level was lower.

PRACTICE

THE GIANT PANDA

The giant panda is probably the most valuable and popular zoo animal. They live in the steep mountains of Western China. About 1000 giant pandas still survive in the wild, but only a very few have ever been seen alive outside China. In 1961 it was adopted as the symbol of the World Wildlife Fund and the panda has become a familiar sight on T-shirts, badges and carstickers. It is certainly popular with children and regularly rates in the top ten of children's favourite animals. The arrival of a panda at a zoo can turn a loss into a healthy profit.

Giant pandas can live for up to 20 years, and a big male can weigh 150 kilos. They live on a diet of rock-hard bamboo stems. They can eat 4 kilos at a sitting and may chew for 12 hours a day. Their dependence on bamboo is the main threat to their survival. The bamboo plant dies off about every 100 years and when this last happened in 1975, nearly 150 pandas died. This threat of extinction has led to the setting up of a panda research centre in China with $1 million being contributed by the World Wildlife Fund. More than 30 giant pandas have been born alive in Chinese zoos. The first breeding in captivity was at Peking zoo in September 1963. The mother, Li-Li, cradled her infant, Ming-Ming, in her arms day and night. The first two births in the West were both to Ying - Ying in Mexico City zoo. Unfortunately she rolled over on the first baby and crushed it. The second was born in 1981. It is not easy to mate pandas in captivity and in the late '60's Chi-Chi from London zoo, and An-An, from Moscow zoo, had a very on-off romance with no results.

A new born panda weighs only 125 grams and measures less than 15 cm. The female panda is

chuột lem di cư đã vượt qua sông, hồ và không phân biệt được sông với biển. Thuyết kia, thú vị hơn, cho rằng chúng đang tìm về các vùng sinh đẻ xa xưa của tổ tiên chúng ở dưới lòng Biển Bắc hàng triệu năm trước đây, khi mà mực nước biển còn thấp hơn.

GẤU TRÚC

Gấu trúc có lẽ là loại thú sở thú quí và phổ biến nhất. Chúng sống trong những ngọn núi dốc ở phía tây Trung Quốc. Khoảng 1000 gấu trúc khổng lồ vẫn còn sinh tồn trong vùng hoang dã, nhưng rất ít con được tìm thấy sống ngoài Trung Quốc. Vào năm 1961 gấu trúc được chọn làm biểu tượng của Quĩ Dã thú Thế giới và gấu trúc đã trở thành hình ảnh quen thuộc trên các áo thun, huy hiệu và nhãn dán xe hơi. Chắc chắn nó rất phổ biến với trẻ con và thường được xếp trong bảng 10 con thú được trẻ con ưa thích nhất. Việc gấu trúc có mặt ở sở thú có thể chuyển sự thất thoát thành nguồn lợi lành mạnh.

Gấu trúc có thể sống tới 20 năm, và một con gấu trúc đực lớn có thể cân nặng 150 kí. Chúng ăn thân tre cứng như đá. Chúng có thể ăn 4 kí mỗi lần và có thể nhai 12 tiếng 1 ngày. Sự lệ thuộc vào tre là mối hiểm họa chính cho sự sinh tồn của chúng. Cây tre chết gốc cứ mỗi 100 năm và khi việc này xảy ra vào năm 1975, gần 150 gấu trúc chết. Sự đe dọa diệt chủng này đã đưa tới việc thành lập trung tâm nghiên cứu gấu trúc ở Trung Quốc với sự đóng góp 1 triệu đô la của Quĩ Dã Thú thế giới.

Hơn 30 con gấu trúc sinh ra ở các sở thú Trung Quốc sống được. Việc sinh sản đầu tiên trong sự câu thúc này là ở sở thú Bắc Kinh vào tháng 9 năm 1963. Gấu mẹ Li Li bế con nó, Ming-Ming trong tay cả ngày đêm. Hai lần sinh đầu tiên ở phương Tây đều do Ying-Ying ở sở thú thành phố Mexico. Không may gấu mẹ lăn qua gấu con đầu tiên và đè bẹp nó. Gấu con thứ 2 ra đời năm 1981. Kết đôi gấu trúc bị câu thúc không phải là điều dễ dàng và vào cuối thập niên năm 60, Chi-Chi ở sở thú Luân Đôn và An-An ở sở thú Moscow, thỉnh thoảng giao cấu nhưng không có kết quả gì.

Gấu trúc mới sinh cân nặng chỉ 125g và dài dưới 15cm. Gấu cái nặng hơn gấu con lúc mới sinh tới 800 lần và

800 times heavier than her baby at birth and the baby is 3-4 months old before it can crawl. It is pinkish-white at birth without dark markings and the familiar black eyes.

Although very slow moving and peaceful, the panda can be vicious when angry. A keeper at Chicago zoo was so badly mauled by Mei-Lai, a big male panda, that he had to have his arm amputated. But for most of us the giant panda remains a lovable, cuddly, living teddy bear.

Exercise 1

1 'Their dependence on bamboo is the main threat to their survival', means

☐ **A** they often fall from bamboo plants and injure themselves.

☐ **B** the unreliability of the bamboo plant is the greatest danger to pandas, because it is the only food they eat.

☐ **C** pandas use bamboo sticks to defend themselves against other pandas.

2 'A panda research centre', is a place where people

☐ **A** look for pandas.

☐ **B** look after pandas.

☐ **C** study the panda.

3 'They can eat 4 kilos at a sitting', means the panda

☐ **A** can eat 4 kilos at one mealtime.

☐ **B** eats 4 kilos every time it sits down.

☐ **C** always eats 4 kilos at one mealtime.

4 'It was adopted as the symbol of the World Wildlife Fund', means

☐ **A** they decided to use a picture of a panda to represent their organization.

☐ **B** they decided to look after only giant pandas.

☐ **C** they keep one giant panda in a cage at their headquarters.

Exercise 2

Find words which mean :

1 a piece of metal or cloth, with a picture, design or lettering, which you can wear

2 a label which is stuck on a car

3 to join with others in giving money

4 to turn the body sideways from a lying position

5 to press with great force so there is breaking or injury

gấu con phải tới 3-4 tháng mới bò được. Lúc sinh ra nó có màu trắng hơi hồng không có vết đen nào và có đôi mắt đen quen thuộc.

Mặc dù di chuyển chậm chạp và hiền hòa, gấu trúc có thể rất dữ dằn lúc giận dữ. Một người trông coi ở sở thú Chicago bị một con gấu đực Mei-Lai đánh như tử đến nỗi phải bị cắt cụt cánh tay. Nhưng đối với hầu hết chúng ta gấu trúc vẫn là chú gấu nhồi bông sống dễ thương, dễ vuốt ve.

Bài tập 1

5 'The arrival of a panda at a zoo can turn a loss into a healthy profit', means that

☐ **A** a zoo which buys a panda can sell it for more than it paid.

☐ **B** more people pay to visit a zoo, and it stops losing money and starts making a good profit.

☐ **C** because more paying visitors come to the zoo, the zoo has more money to look after the animals' health, and can sell them for more money.

6 'About 1000 giant pandas still survive in the wild', means there are 1000 giant pandas and

☐ **A** they are all very savage.

☐ **B** their movements are controlled.

☐ **C** they still live outside zoos in their natural habitat.

7 'The panda regularly rates in the top ten of children's favourite animals', means

☐ **A** all children always vote for the panda as their favourite animal.

☐ **B** the panda is usually voted as one of the ten most popular animals by children.

☐ **C** children think that the panda is one of the ten most common animals in the world.

Bài tập 2

Tìm các từ có nghĩa là :

6 to move slowly pulling the body along the ground

7 often seen, well known

8 bad tempered and dangerous

9 hurt or injured by an animal

10 part of the body cut off

Unit 24 Murder At Gurney Manor

Án mạng tại trang viên Gurney

VOCABULARY

- **billiard room** *(n)* /'bɪljəd ru:m/ phòng chơi bida.
- **butler** *(n)* /'bʌtlə/ chief male servant of a house = quản gia
- **collapse** *(v)* /kə'læps/ fail completely or suddenly; break down = phía sau
  The enterprise ~ through lack of support.
- **convertible** *(n)* /kən'və:təbl/ car with a roof that can be folded down or removed = xe hơi bỏ mui được
- **deserve** *(v)* /dɪ'zə:v/ be st or have done st for which one should receive (a reward, special treatment) = xứng đáng *She ~ d a reward for her efforts.*
- **disabled** *(adj)* /dɪs'eɪbld/ unable to use a limb or limbs = tàn tật *a ~ child in a wheelchair.*
  the disabled = people who are disabled.
  walking aids for the ~.
- **drawing – room** *(n)* /'drɔ:ɪŋ ru:m/ living – room = phòng khách
- **drugs** *(n)* /drʌgz/ ma túy
- **estate** *(n)* /ɪ'steɪt/ all the money and property that a person owns, esp that which is left at death : gia sản *Her ~ was divided between her four children.*
- **French window** *(n)* /ˌfrentʃ 'wɪndəʊ/ one of a pair of doors with long glass panes, usu opening onto a garden or a balcony = cửa bên hông nhà
- **gamble** *(v)* /'gæmbl/ play games of chance, etc for money = cờ bạc *He spends all his time gambling in the casino.*
  gambler *(n)* = person who gambles = tay cờ bạc *a habitual ~.*
  gamble *(n)* = act of gambling
- **gossip column** *(n)* /'gɒsɪp 'kɒləm/ informal writing about people and social events, eg in newspapers = cột ngồi lê đôi mách
- **grab** *(v)* /græb/ grasp st suddenly or roughly = chộp, vồ lấy *He just ~ bed the bag from my hand and ran off.*
- **heir** *(n)* /eə/ (to st) person with the legal right to receive property, etc when the owner dies. *be ~ to a large fortune.*
  heiress /'eərɪs, eə'res/ female heir.
- **jealous** *(adj)* /'dʒeləs/ showing resentment of possible rivals in love = ghen *a ~ husband, ~ looks.*
  jealousy *(n)* /'dʒeləsɪ/ = being jealous *a lover's ~.*
- **manor** *(n)* /'mænə/ unit of land under the feudal system, part of which was used by the lord of the manor, the rest being farmed by tenants = thái ấp
  manorial *(adj)* /mə'nɔ:rɪəl/
- **murder** *(n)* /'mə:də/ unlawful killing of a human being intentionally = vụ án mạng *be guilty of ~.*
  murder *(v)* (sb with st) kill unlawfully and intentionally
  murderer *(n)*
- **pay – rise** *(n)* /peɪ raɪz/ rise in pay = sự tăng lương
- **pistol** *(n)* /'pɪstl/ súng lục
- **property** *(n)* /'prɒpətɪ/ possession, real estate = tài sản, của cải
- **propose** *(v)* /prə'pəʊz/ offer marriage to sb formally = cầu hôn *He had ~ d marriage, unsuccessfully, twice already.*
- **reject** *(v)* /rɪ'dʒekt/ refuse to accept (sb / st) = chối từ *~ a gift, a suggestion. She ~ ed his offer of marriage.*
- **reputation** /ˌrepjʊ'teɪʃn/ what is generally said or believed about the abilities, qualities of sb, st = danh tiếng, tai tiếng *a school with an excellent ~, a good / bad ~ as a doctor.*
- **scandal** *(n)* /'skændl/ talk about the bad things people are thought to have done = vụ xì căng đan *spread ~. Have you heard the latest scandal ?*
- **scorching** *(adj)* /'skɔ:tʃɪŋ/ very hot = như thiêu đốt *a ~ day. It's ~ outside.*
  scorching *(adv)* = extremely *~ hot.*
  scorcher *(n)* (Brit infml) very hot day
  Whew ! It's a real ~ today !
- **shot** *(n)* /ʃɒt/ act of shooting a gun; sound of this = phát súng *hear ~ s in the distance.*
- **wheelchair** *(n)* /'wi:ltʃeə/ chair with wheels, in

which sb who is unable to walk can move himself or be pushed along = xe lăn

She had polio as a child and spent the rest of her life in a ~.

PROPER NAMES :

Agatha /'ægəθə/	Charteris /'tʃa:tərɪs/	Gurney /'gɜ:nɪ/
Bentley /'bentlɪ/	Chivers /'tʃɪvəz/	Tom Giles /tɒm 'dʒaɪlz/
Celia Smart /'si:lɪə 'sma:t/	Gillespie /gɪ'lespɪ/	Tristan /'trɪstən/

USAGE (use a dictionary if necessary)

Notice this

1. be found
   - dead
   - injured
   - wounded
   - unconcious
   - missing
   - killed
   - murdered

2. make / take notes

3. Take statements (listen to & record...)

4. Support one's family/parents

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. "She did not say a word "can be emphatically rewritten : *Not* a word *did* she *say*.

(expanded) Inversion of subject & verb

For the negative & half - negative adverbs such as : Hardly (ever), never, seldom, not a (no), under no circumstance, only in that case, for no reason at all...

Ex : 1. He seldom came there ⟶ *Seldom did* he *come* there

2 For *no* reason at all *did* the murderer *kill* Lord Gurney at his manor (ie. The murderer killed Lord Gurney for no reason at all...)

(Make some more sentences yourself)

2. Past tenses :

Past tenses	**Simple past**	- Regular verbs : [-ed] - Irregular verbs : see column 2 of the E.I.V. Table
	Past continuous	was/were + V-ing
	Past perfect	had + past participle
	Past perfect continuous	had been + V-ing.

(Ask your teacher to brief you their basic uses)

3. Reported Speech (or Indirect speech)

(1) Basic concepts (Meditate on the following two concepts)

a. Reported or indirect : what a speaker says or writes is resaid or rewritten to (a) third person (s) / people. It is no longer direct

b. Introductory verbs : the verbs that introduce a reported or direct speech.

Ex : 1. He said, "I have been to Paris once"

2. She asked her father, "Can I go out this evening ?"

3. He requested to his boss, "Do give me one day off, sir" *Say/ ask/ request...* are called introductory verbs.

(2) Types of Reported speech :

a. Statements (affirmative & negative statements)

b. Yes-No Questions , Wh- Questions , Tag Questions, Choice Questions, "or" Questions

c. Requests or commands (positive and negative)

(3) Necessary changes

a. Shift of tense :

1. No shift of tense for the quoted material when the introductory verb is not in a past tense.

Ex :1. He says, "I am going to London next week"

⟶ He *says* that he *is going* to London the following week

2. I am sure she *will say*, "You are stupid, John"

⟶ I *am* sure she *will say* that John *is* stupid.

3. A shift of tense for the quoted material is necessary when the introductory verb is in a past tense. The tenses change according to this rule.

Direct speech		Indirect speech
Simple present	→	Simple past
Present continuous	→	Past continuous
Present perfect	→	Past perfect
Simple past	→	Past perfect
Present perfect continuous	→	Past perfect continuous
Past continuous	→	Past perfect continuous
will/shall	→	would/should
can	→	could
may	→	might
have to	→	had to
must	→	must (or had to)
ought to	→	ought to

Ex : (Ask your teacher for more examples)

1. She said, "I was in the drawing - room, writing some letters, job applications actually"
   ⟶ She *said* (that) she *had been* in the drawing - room, writing some letters, job applications actually
2. He said to the inspector, "I was taking my evening walk when I heard the shots"
   ⟶ He *told* the inspector (that) he *had been taking* his evening walk when he *had heard* the shots.

b. Words of time, place...

Direct speech			Indirect speech	
Here		→	There	
This		→	That	
These		→	Those	
Now		→	Then	
Ago		→	Before	
Today		→	That day	
Tomorrow		→	The next/following	day
Tomorrow	morning	→	The following	morning
	afternoon	→		afternoon
	evening	→		evening
	night	→		night
Yesterday/	morning	→	The previous day /	morning
	afternoon	→	(the day before)	afternoon
	evening	→	(the morning before)	evening

Last	week	→	The previous	week
	month	→		month
	year	→		year
	January	→		January

(4) Change of pronouns (Subject & object) & possessive Adjectives :

This change should be made properly. Study the following example carefully.

Ex : The new manager said to his new employees, "I want you to come here not now but tomorrow morning as today I am busy meeting with your Trade Union leaders"

⟶ The new manager *told his* new employees (that) he *wanted them* to come *there* not then but the *following* morning as *that* day he *was* busy meeting with *their* Trade Union Leaders.

REPORTED STATEMENTS

Notes

- Introductory verbs : Say (to) and verbs of similar meaning
- Say → to tell
- "That" can be omitted

Ex : He said to us, "I thought it was Chivers shooting birds in the garden again."

- When more than one statement is reported, it is neccessary to repeat the introductory verb (or the conjunction "that") to make those statements coherent.

Ex : He said, "When I heard the shots, I ran across the lawn through the trees towards the house. I saw Gillespie running towards the library" (2 statements).

⟶ He said that when he *had heard* the shots he *had run* across the lawn through the trees towards the house and (said) that he *had seen* Gillespie running towards the library.

("And" is added before the last statement)

The addition of more appropriate introductory verb to a series of reported statements can only be made when learners are at a more advanced level. Ask your teacher for information you are really desirous to know.

PART 1

Lord Gurney was found dead on the library floor of his country house in Norfolk. He had been shot five times. The police have been called. There are six people in the house and they all heard the shots at about nine o'clock. The police have taken statements and made the following notes about each of the six people.

LADY AGATHA GURNEY, 62

Married to Lord Gurney for thirty-five years.
Disabled - has been in a wheel-chair since a riding accident, twelve years ago.
Very jealous woman.
Had a row with Celia Smart in the afternoon.
Told Lord Gurney to sack her.
After long argument, Lord Gurney refused to sack her.

PHẦN 1

Chủ trang viên Gurney được phát hiện nằm chết trên sàn thư viện trong căn nhà miền quê của ông ta ở Norfork. Ông ta bị bắn 5 phát đạn. Cảnh sát được gọi đến. Có 6 người ở trong nhà và tất cả đều nghe các phát súng vào khoảng 9 giờ. Cảnh sát đã lấy lời khai và ghi chú như sau về từng người một.

BÀ AGATHA GURNEY, 62 TUỔI

Lấy ngài Gurney đã 35 năm nay.
Bị tàn tật – phải ngồi trên xe lăn sau một tai nạn ngã ngựa 12 năm trước
Rất ghen tuông.
Đã gây gổ với Celia Smart vào buổi chiều.
Yêu cầu ngài Gurney đuổi cô ta
Sau khi cãi nhau một hồi lâu, ngài Gurney không chịu đuổi cô ta.

Lady Agatha's statement.

I was in my room. My bedroom's on the ground floor because I can't walk. I was reading. I heard the shots; there were four or five. I wheeled myself into the hall. The door of the library was open. Miss Smart was standing in the doorway, screaming. Gillespie was standing at the French windows. The gun was on the floor by the body.

CELIA SMART, 24

Secretary to Lord Gurney.

Young, beautiful, intelligent – works to support her sick mother.

Employed by Lord Gurney for a year. Report in gossip column in today's 'Daily News' that she had been seen last Saturday with Tristan Gurney at a new disco, 'The Charteris Club' in London's Mayfair.

Lord Gurney very angry about it. Threatened to sack her, but didn't.

Celia Smart's statement.

I was in the drawing-room, writing some letters, job applications actually. I heard the shots, ran across the hall, the library door was open... poor dear Horace was lying in a pool of blood. I started screaming. Gillespie came in through the French windows, they were open. Then Lady Agatha arrived. She didn't say a word. She just stared at me.

TRISTAN GURNEY, 33

Lord Gurney's only son.

Reputation as a playboy and international gambler.

Thrown out of boarding-school and the army.

Has large gambling debts.

Arrested last year for possessing drugs.

Is heir to the Gurney estate – will inherit £2 million.

Lord Gurney had refused to give him any more money.

Tristan's statement.

I was in the billiard room. I was practising. Suddenly there were five shots. I thought it was Chivers shooting birds in the garden again. Then

Lời khai của bà Agatha :

Tôi đang ở trong phòng. Phòng ngủ của tôi ở tầng trệt vì tôi không leo lầu được. Lúc đó tôi đang đọc sách. Tôi nghe tiếng súng; 4 hay 5 phát gì đó. Tôi lăn xe vào hành lang. Cửa thư viện đang mở. Cô Smart đang đứng ở lối ra vào và đang thét lên. Gillespie đang đứng ở cửa hông. Khẩu súng nằm trên sàn bên cạnh xác chết.

CELIA SMART, 24 TUỔI

Thư ký của ngài Gurney.

Trẻ, đẹp, thông minh – làm việc để nuôi mẹ đang bị bệnh.

Làm việc cho ngài Gurney đã một năm nay.

Có bài viết trong cột chuyện gẫu trên báo "Tin hàng ngày" số hôm nay cho rằng có người đã nhìn thấy cô ta đi chơi với Tristan Gurney hôm thứ bảy rồi ở một vũ trường disco mới mở "Câu lạc bộ Charteris" ở khu Mayfair trong London.

Ngài Gurney đã nổi trận lôi đình về chuyện này.

Dọa đuổi cô ta, nhưng không làm.

Lời khai của Celia Smart

Tôi đang ở trong phòng khách, viết thư, nói cho chính xác là viết đơn xin việc. Tôi nghe tiếng súng, liền chạy qua hành lang, cửa thư viện đang mở... Horace yêu quí tội nghiệp đang nằm trên vũng máu. Tôi la lên. Gillespie chạy vào từ cửa hông, chúng đang mở. Rồi bà Agatha đến. Bà ta không nói lời nào cả, chỉ nhìn tôi trừng trừng.

TRISTAN GURNEY, 33 TUỔI

Con trai độc nhất của ngài Gurney.

Nổi tiếng ăn chơi và là tay cờ bạc quốc tế.

Bị tống cổ khỏi trường nội trú và quân ngũ

Đang mắc nợ lớn vì bài bạc.

Bị bắt năm rồi vì tồn trữ ma túy.

Là người thừa kế bất động sản Gurney – sẽ thừa kế 2 triệu pounds.

Ngài Gurney khước từ cho anh ta thêm tiền.

Lời khai của Tristan

Tôi đang ở trong phòng bi-da, đang tập. Thình lình tôi nghe 5 phát súng. Ban đầu tôi nghĩ chắc là chú Chivers đang bắn chim trong vườn. Thế rồi tôi nghe một tiếng thét,

I heard a scream. It sounded like Celia, so I opened the connecting door to the library and saw father lying there, Gillespie at the window, and Celia and mother together in the main doorway. I couldn't believe my eyes.

MAJOR CHIVERS, 60

At school and in the army with Lord Gurney.
Was army pistol-shooting champion. Drinks heavily.
Drives a Bentley.
Doesn't work – spends time shooting and fishing.
Was Managing-Director of Gurney Property Ltd.
Went to prison for two years when the company collapsed with debts of £1/2 million after a big property scandal.
Has lived at Gurney Manor since leaving prison.

Major Chivers' statement.

I was by the lake, fishing in my usual place. When I heard the shots, I hurried through the trees towards the house. I saw Gillespie running across the lawn towards the library. When I got there, everybody was in the room, except Tom Giles, the gardener. Poor old Gurney was dead. I was absolutely sure he was dead. After all, I was in the army for twenty years.

GILLESPIE, 65

Butler. Has worked for the Gurneys for nearly fifty years.
Retires in two months.
Likes good wine and good food. Takes Lady Agatha out every day in her wheelchair.
Knows everything about the family. Had long argument with Lord Gurney in the morning.
Knows Celia – Smart's father very well-introduced her to Lord Gurney.

Gillespie's statement.

I was taking my evening walk. I had just come out of the kitchen door, I was walking round the corner of the house when I heard shooting. I ran across the lawn to the French windows. I saw Lord Gurney's body, and Miss Smart in the doorway.

chừng như là của Celia, nên tôi mở cửa thông với thư viện và thấy bố tôi đang nằm đó, Gillespie ở cửa hông, và Celia với mẹ tôi cùng đứng ở lối ra vào. Tôi không còn tin ở mắt mình nữa.

THIẾU TÁ CHIVERS, 60 TUỔI

Cùng đi học và ở trong quân ngũ với ngài Gurney
Từng là vô địch môn bắn súng ngắn trong quân đội. Uống rượu như hũ chìm.
Lái xe Bentley.
Không làm lụng gì cả – suốt ngày bắn chim với câu cá.

Từng là Giám đốc điều hành Công ty hữu hạn Gurney Property.
Bị bỏ tù 2 năm khi công ty phá sản với số nợ nửa triệu pounds sau một vụ tai tiếng lớn về tài sản.

Từ lúc ra tù đến giờ ở trong trang viên Gurney.

Lời khai của thiếu tá Chivers

Lúc đó tôi đang ở ven hồ, câu cá ở nơi tôi thường ngồi, khi nghe tiếng súng, tôi băng nhanh qua các lùm cây chạy về nhà. Tôi thấy Gillespie chạy qua sân cỏ về phía thư viện. Khi tôi đến đó, mọi người đều có mặt ở trong phòng ngoại trừ Tom Giles, người làm vườn. Ông bạn già Gurney tội nghiệp đã chết. Tôi chắc chắn là ông ta đã chết rồi. Tôi đã ở trong quân ngũ 25 năm nên không thể nào lầm được.

GILLESPIE, 65 TUỔI

Quản gia. Đã làm việc cho gia đình Gurney gần 50 năm nay.
Hai tháng nữa sẽ về hưu.
Thích rượu và đồ ăn ngon.
Hàng ngày đẩy xe đưa bà Agatha đi dạo.
Biết mọi thứ liên quan đến gia đình Gurney
Đã cãi nhau với ngài Gurney vào buổi sáng.
Biết rõ cha của Celia Smart – đã giới thiệu cô ta cho ngài Gurney.

Lời khai của Gillespie

Tôi đang đi dạo. Tôi vừa mới bước khỏi cửa nhà bếp và quẹo khúc cuối góc nhà thì nghe tiếng súng. Tôi chạy băng qua sân về phía cửa hông. Tôi thấy xác của ngài Gurney, và cô Smart ở lối ra vào.

TOM GILES, 29

Gardener.

Often goes fishing with the Major.

Proposed marriage to Celia Smart, but was rejected.

Been in trouble with the police several times, for fighting in the village pub. Has a violent temper.

Had argument about a pay rise earlier in the day.

Tom Giles' statement.

I was working in the kitchen garden. I heard shots, but that's not unusual around here. Lord Gurney and the Major are very fond of shooting. Then I heard lots of screaming and shouting, so I went into the house through the kitchen door to see what was happening. They were all there. I wasn't sorry. He deserved it. Everybody hated him.

TOM GILES, 29 TUỔI

Làm vườn.

Thường đi câu cá với thiếu tá.

Ngỏ lời cầu hôn với Celia Smart, nhưng bị cự tuyệt.

Đã từng gặp rắc rối với cảnh sát nhiều lần vì đánh nhau trong quán nhậu.

Tính tình hung bạo.

Sáng sớm nay đã cãi vã to tiếng đòi tăng lương.

Lời khai của Tom Giles

Tôi đang làm việc trong vườn nhà bếp. Tôi nghe tiếng súng nhưng đó chẳng phải là điều lạ lắm gì ở đây. Ngài Gurney và ông thiếu tá ưa bắn chim lắm. Rồi tôi nghe nhiều tiếng la hét, nên tôi vào nhà qua cửa bếp để xem chuyện gì xảy ra. Họ thảy đều có mặt ở đó. Tôi chẳng thấy thương tiếc gì lão ta. Đáng đời lão. Ai cũng ghét lão cả.

PRACTICE

Language summary

Revision of Past Tenses Question Tags

Exercise 1

'I still can't believe it happened. I drive a convertible MGB, and it was a scorching hot day so the roof was down. I had taken off my jacket, and put it on the passenger seat. Anyway, I was driving along Edgeware Road and I stopped at some traffic lights. I was sitting there, listening to the radio and waiting for the lights to change. Suddenly a young man reached over the side of the car, grabbed my jacket and disappeared into the crowd. The lights went green and all the cars behind me began blowing their horns. I just didn't know what to do ! My wallet was in the inside jacket pocket, so was my cheque book... and my credit cards.

Answer these questions.

Bài tập 1

Tôi vẫn không thể tin là chuyện đó đã xảy ra. Tôi lái chiếc xe mui trần MGB và đó là ngày nóng như thiêu đốt nên tôi hạ mui xuống. Tôi đã cởi áo khoác ra và để nó lên chỗ ngồi của khách. Dù sao thì tôi cũng đã lái đi được dọc đường Edgeware và dừng lại ở các đèn giao thông. Tôi đang ngồi đó, nghe đài và chờ đèn đỏ sang xanh. Thình lình một gã thanh niên đến bên cạnh xe, chụp lấy cái áo khoác của tôi và mất biến vào đám đông. Đèn bật xanh và tất cả xe sau tôi bắt đầu nhấn kèn inh ỏi. Tôi không biết phải làm sao ! Cái ví của tôi ở trong túi trong của áo khoác, cả sổ ngân hàng của tôi nữa... và tín phiếu của tôi.

Trả lời các câu hỏi sau đây :

1 What kind of car does he drive ? .....
2 What was the weather like ? .....
3 What had he done ? .....
4 Where had he put his jacket ? .....
5 Where was he driving ? .....
6 Where did he stop ? .....
7 What was he doing ? .....
8 What did the young man do ? .....
9 What did the other cars begin doing ? .....
10 What was in his jacket ? .....

Exercise 2

He parked on the pavement and phoned the police. A policeman arrived, and they went into a nearby coffee bar and sat down. He told the policeman what had happened. The policeman wrote it all down, and then checked through the statement.

The roof was down, *wasn't it ?*

Write in the question tags.

1 You'd taken your jacket off, ...

2 You'd put it on the passenger seat . . . . . .

3 You were driving along Edgeware Road . . . . . .

4 You stopped at the traffic lights, ...

5 You were listening to the radio, ...

Bài tập 2

Anh ta đậu xe vào lề và điện thoại cho cảnh sát. Một viên cảnh sát đến, rồi họ vào một quán cà phê gần đó và ngồi xuống. Anh ta kể cho viên cảnh sát chuyện đã xảy ra. Viên cảnh sát ghi lại hết và rồi kiểm tra lại qua lời khai.

Mui xe hạ xuống, *phải không ?*

Điền vào các câu hỏi đuôi.

6 You weren't looking at the street, ...

7 He grabbed your jacket, ...

8 You didn't see his face, ...

9 He ran into the crowd, ...

10 The other cars began blowing their horns, ...

Exercise 3

It's a nice day, *isn't it ?*

It isn't a nice day, *is it ?*

1 You aren't hungry, ...
2 He smokes, ...
3 You don't drive, ...
4 She'd gone, ...
5 He hasn't got a car, ...
6 You'd rather play tennis, ...
7 He'll see us later, ...
8 You'd better not do it, ...
9 There weren't enough tickets, ...

Bài tập 3

Hôm nay đẹp trời đấy chứ ?

Hôm nay không được đẹp trời lắm phải không ?

10 He couldn't stop smoking, ...
11 You've got enough, ...
12 There was a lot, ...
13 You won't tell anybody, ...
14 I'm not late, ...
15 They all speak English, ...
16 You're supposed to be helping, ...
17 You'd rather not play, ...
18 They'd prefer to stay in, ...

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Units 21-24

Dialogue A

Listen Graham and Sandra work in a small branch of a bank. It's 2.30 in the afternoon.
Sandra Graham...
Gramham Yes ?
Sandra Don't look now, but there's a man at the table over there.
Graham So ?
Sandra He looks suspicious. He's writing something. He could be making notes... for a robbery.
Graham Sandra ! He must be writing a cheque.
Sandra Do you think so ? He's been there for twenty minutes, so he can't be writing a cheque, can he ?
Listen and repeat

New words
- suspicious *(adj)* /sə'spɪʃəs/ (about / of st / sb)
showing suspicion : dáng nghi ngờ *I'm very ~ about her motives.*
suspicion *(n)*
suspect *(v)*

A1 Listen
A : He's writing a cheque I'm almost certain !
B : He must be writing a cheque.
C : He must be writing a cheque.
A : They're waiting for someone.. I'm sure !
B : They must be waiting for someone.
C : They must be waiting for someone.

Now you do the same
He's writing a cheque. I'm almost certain !
..... He must be writing a cheque.
They're waiting for someone.
I'm sure !..... They must be waiting for someone.
She's carrying a gun. I'm almost sure !
..... She must be carrying a gun.
He's making notes. I'm certain !
..... He must be making notes.

A2 Listen
A : He isn't writing a cheque. That's impossible !
B : He can't be writing a cheque.
C : He can't be writing a cheque.
A : They aren't waiting to cash cheques. I'm certain !
B : They can't be waiting to cash cheques.
C : They can't be waiting to cash cheques.

Now you do the same
He isn't writing a cheque. That's impossible !
..... He can't be writing a cheque.
They aren't waiting to cash cheques. I'm certain !
..... They can't be waiting to cash cheques.
She isn't waiting to change money. I'm sure !
..... She can't be waiting to change money.
He isn't waiting to see the manager. I know !
..... He can't be waiting to see the manager.

A3 Listen
A : Is he making notes ? It's possible.
B : He could be making notes.
C : He could be making notes.
A : Is he drawing a plan ? It's possible, you know
B : He could be drawing a plan.
C : He could be drawing a plan.

Now you do the same
Is he making notes ? It's possible
..... He could be making notes.
Is he drawing a plan ? It's possible
..... He could be drawing a plan.
Is he planning a robbery ? We don't know, really
..... He could be planning a robbery.
Is he carrying a gun ? It's possible
..... He could be carrying a gun.

Dialogue B

Listen
Graham What do you think we should do ?
Sandra We'd better tell Mr Mannering. He *is* the manager, after all.
Graham Have you seen him this afternoon ? I haven't.

Sandra He should be in his office. He's supposed to be meeting someone at 2.45.
Graham He isn't there. He must be playing golf again.
Sandra Graham !
Graham It's always the same. He ought to be working, but he's at the golf club.
Sandra He *is* the manager, Graham. Oh, dear. Perhaps you should go and talk to him... the man, I mean.
Graham Me ? No, thank you !
Listen and repeat

B1 Listen

A : I thought he was meeting someone. He isn't there.
B : Well, he's supposed to be meeting someone.
C : Well, he's supposed to be meeting someone.
A : I thought they were working this afternoon. They aren't here.
B : Well, they're supposed to be working this afternoon.
C : Well, they're supposed to be working this afternoon.

Now you do the same

I thought he was meeting someone. He isn't there
..... Well, he's supposed to be meeting someone.
I thought they were working this afternoon. They aren't here ..... Well, they're supposed to be working this afternoon.
I thought he was sitting in his office. He isn't
..... Well, he's supposed to be sitting in his office.
I thought she was talking to customers. She isn't !
..... Well, she's supposed to be talking to customers.

B2 Listen

A : He ought to be here. He's at the golf club.
B : He ought to be working.
C : He ought to be working.
A : He ought not to be at the golf club, but he is.
B : He ought not to be playing golf.
C : He ought not to be playing golf.

Now you do the same

He ought to be here. He's at the golf club
..... He ought to be working.
He ought not to be at the golf club, but he is
..... He ought not to be playing golf.
He should be here. He's at the golf club
..... He should be working.
He shouldn't be at the golf club, but he is
..... He shouldn't be playing golf.

Dialogue C

Listen

Graham I'm going to push the alarm button. The police'll be here in a couple of minutes.
Sandra Oh, Graham ! You can't. We don't know that he's a robber... we just think he might be. Perhaps you ought to... just telephone the police.
Graham Oh, all right.
Operator Emergency. Which service, please ?
Graham Police.
Police Central Police Station.
Graham Er... this is the National Midland Bank, the North Road Branch. A man's been sitting in the bank, writing notes for twenty minutes. We think he must be... no, he may be planning a robbery.
Police We're on our way.
Listen and repeat

C1 Listen

A : Is he a robber ? It's possible.
B : He may be a robber.
C : He may be robber.
A : Is he a robber ? It *is* possible, but unlikely.
B : He might be a robber.
C : He might be a robber.

Now you do the same

Is he a robber ? It's possible ..... He may be robber.
Is he a robber ? It *is* possible, but unlikely
..... He might be a robber.
Is she a robber ? It's impossible ! ..... She can't be robber.
Are they robbers ? I'm certain they are !
..... They must be robbers.

C2 Listen

A : Is he planning a robbery ? It's possible.
B : He may be planning a robbery.
C : He may be planning a robbery.
A : Is he writing ? I'm certain.
B : He must be writing.
C : He must be writing.

Now you do the same

Is he planning a robbery ? It's possible
.....He may be planning a robbery.
Is he writing ? I'm certain.....He must be writing.
Is he waiting for someone ? It's possible, but unlikely
.....He might be waiting for someone.
Is he hoping to see the manager ? That's impossible
.....He can't be hoping to see the manager.

Dialogue D

Listen

Sandra Graham... look ! He's getting up. He's got a big briefcase. You don't think there's anything in it, do you ?

Graham There could be a gun. There might even be a... bomb ! Oh, Sandra ! What are we going to do ?

Sandra He's going over to that woman, the one that's just walked in.

Woman Hello, darling. Sorry I'm late.

Man Late ! I've been waiting for twenty minutes. Anyway I managed to write a couple of letters. Let's go and have a cup of coffee...

[SOUND OF APPROACHING POLICE SIRENS]

Listen and repeat

D1 Listen

A : Perhaps a gun, or even a bomb !
B : There could be a gun. There might even be a bomb !
C : There could be a gun. There might even be a bomb !
A : Perhaps a razor, or even a knife !
B : There could be a razor. There might even be a knife !
C : There could be a razor. There might even be a knife !

Now you do the same

Perhaps a gun, or even a bomb !
.....There could be a gun. There might even be a bomb !
Perhaps a razor, or even a knife !
.....There could could be a razor. There might even be a knife !
Perhaps a pistol, or even a shotgun !
.....There could be a pistol. There might even be a shotgun !
Perhaps a knife, or even a grenade !
.....There could be a knife. There might even be a grenade !

Sound exercise

In this exercise you are going to hear some sounds

Listen

[BATH BEING DRAWN]

A : Is that a bath or a shower?
B : It could be a shower, but it sounds more like a bath to me.
C : It could be a shower, but it sounds more like a bath to me.

[VACUUM CLEANER]

A : Is that a washing machine or a vacuum cleaner ?
B : I could be a washing machine, but it sounds more like a vacuum cleaner to me.
C : It could be a washing machine, but it sounds more like a vacuum cleaner to me.

Now you do the same

[BATH BEING DRAWN]

Is that a bath or a shower ?.....It could be a shower, but it sounds more like a bath to me.

[VACUUM CLEANER]

Is that a washing machine or a vacuum cleaner ?
..... It could be a washing machine, but it sounds more like a vacuum cleaner to me.

[SHOWER]

Is that a bath or a shower ?..... It could be a bath, but it sounds more like a shower to me.

[BABY CRYING]

Is that a cat or a baby ?.....It could be a cat, but it sounds more like a baby to me.

Listening

In this exercise you are going to hear sounds. After the sound you will be asked a question. Listen to the example

[TIMBER] What do you think is happening?

You could reply :
'A man may be hammering.'
'A man could be knocking on a door.'
'A man might be cutting wood.'
or you might reply with something else.

Listen

1 What do you think is happening ? .....
[TIMBER] What's she doing ?.....
2 Where do you think this is ?.....
[VACUUM CLEANER] What do you think this is ? .....
3 Where do you think this is ?.....
[AIRPORT CONCOURSE] What do you think they're watching ?.....
4
[PIGS]
5
[CONCERT HALL]
6
[FOOTBALL MATCH]

In fact you heard a man cutting wood, a vacuum cleaner, the sound of an airport, some pigs, a concert hall and some people watching a football match.

That's the end of section six.

Unit 25 Murder At Gurney Manor (2)

Án mạng tại trang viên Gurney (2)

VOCABULARY

- **alibi** *(n)* /'ælɪbaɪ/ (law) formal statement or evidence that a person was in another place at the time of a crime = chứng cớ ngoại phạm *The suspects all had good ~ s for the day of the robbery.*
- **brave** *(adj)* /breɪv/ (of a person) courageous = can đảm *He was very ~ about his operation.* (of an action) showing courage *a ~ act, deed, speech.*
  bravery *(n)* /'breɪvərɪ/ courage = lòng can đảm *a medal for ~ in battle.*
- **care** *(n)* /keə/ sympathetic concern = sự chăm sóc *Old people need loving ~ and attention.*
- **document** *(n)* /'dɒkjʊmənt/ paper, form, etc giving information about st, evidence or proof of st = tài liệu *study all the ~ s in a case.*
  documentary *(adj)* /,dɒkjʊ'mentrɪ/ consisting of documents *~ proof, evidence, sources.*
- **evidence** *(n)* /'evɪdəns/ (law) information that gives a reason for believing st or proves st = chứng cớ *There wasn't enough ~ to prove him guilty.*
- **fingerprint** *(n)* /'fɪŋgəprɪnt/ mark made by the tip of a finger on a surface and used for identifying people, esp criminals = dấu tay *take the prisoner's ~ s.*
- **inspector** *(n)* /ɪn'spektə/ (Brit) police officer between the ranks of chief-inspector and sergeant = phó thanh tra

EXPRESSIONS

a skeleton in the cupboard điều bí mật (xấu hổ) của gia đình phải dấu kín

to be in charge /ɪn tʃa:dʒ/ phụ trách

PROPER NAMES

Marples /'ma:plz/

Watts /wɒts/

- **hijack** *(v)* /'haɪdʒæk/ seize control of (an aircraft) in order to force it to go to a new destination = cướp máy bay *The plane was ~ ed while on a flight to Delhi.*
- **jungle** *(n)* /'dʒʌŋgl/ rừng nhiệt đới
- **memory** *(n)* /'memərɪ/ power of the mind by which facts can be remembered; individual person's power to remember *He has a good / bad ~ for dates.*
- **motive** *(n)* /'məʊtɪv/ (for st) that which causes sb to act in a particular way; reason = động cơ *The police could not find a ~ for the murder.*
- **outsider** *(n)* /,aʊt'saɪdə/ person who is not a member of a group, society = người ngoài cuộc *Women feel like ~ s in that club.*
- **parachute** *(v)* /'pærəʃu:t/ drop by parachute from an aircraft. *Supplies were parachuted into the earthquake zone.*
  parachutist *(n)* /'pærəʃu:tɪst/ = người nhảy dù
  parachute *(n)* = cái dù
- **penniless** *(adj)* /'penɪlɪs/ having no money, very poor = nghèo *a ~ old man.*
- **Sergeant** *(n)* /'sa:dʒənt/ (Brit) police officer with a rank below that of an inspector = Hạ sĩ cảnh sát.
- **skeleton** *(n)* /'skelɪtn/ bộ xương
- **suspect** *(n)* /'sʌspekt/ person suspected of a crime = kẻ bị tình nghi
  The police are interrogating two ~ s.
  suspect *(v)* /sə'spekt/ mistrust; feel doubt about. *What made you ~ her of having taken the money ?*

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. "He's more clever than he looks". Why don't we say "He is cleverer than he looks" ? Study this:

Ex : He is *more* old *than* he was (is)

Notice that we use "more...than" for short adjectives

when we want to make a comparison with the very subject but not with anybody else (so sánh với chính mình)

2. SPECULATING ABOUT THE PAST (1)

Modal Perfect :

We can use a modal verb (e.g. **may, could**) with the perfect (e.g. **have done**) :

Sue : Where's Alec, I wonder ? We *ought to have started* fifteen minutes ago.
Phil : He *may have lost* his way. It isn't very easy to find this place.
Sam : We *should have come* here together.
Sue : He *could have forgotten* all about it, I suppose.
Kay : He *can't have forgotten*, I reminded him only this morning.
Phil : Well, something *must have delayed* him.

A. may have and might have

We use **may / might have** to say that very possibly something happened in the past :

*He **may have lost** his way.* *(= Perhaps he has lost his way.)*
*You **might have left** your keys at work.* *(= Perhaps you left them at work.)*

We can also use the negative to say that possibly something did not happen :

*Tom **mightn't have heard** the news.* *(= Perhaps he didn't hear the news.)*
*I **may not have put** everything away in the right place.*

B. could have

We use **could have** to say that possibly something happened in the past :

*Someone **could have taken** the keys from your bag.*
(= It is possible that someone took the keys from your bag.)

We also use **could have** for an opportunity that we didn't take or a possible result that didn't really happen :

*We **could have gone** out somewhere, but we were too tired.*
*You were very lucky. There **could have been** a terrible accident.*

We use **couldn't have** to say that it is impossible that something happened :

*Phil **couldn't have taken** a bus yesterday. There aren't any buses on Sundays.*
(= It is impossible that he took a bus yesterday.)

C. must have and can't have

We use **must have** for things in the past that we see as logically true. We use **can't have** for things we see as logically impossible :

*My watch says only ten past. It **must have stopped.***
*You've spent five minutes on the job. You **can't have done** it properly.*

D. should have and ought to have

We use **should have** and **ought to have** when something was the best thing to do, but we didn't do it :

*We didn't play very well. We **should have played** better.*
*I got lost. - Sorry, I **ought to have drawn** you a map.*

PART 2

Inspector Marples is in charge of the case. Sergeant Watts is his assistant. They're in the library.

Marples Where is everybody, Sergeant ?
Watts They're all in the drawing-room, sir. Constable Dickson's with them. What do you think, sir ?

Phần 2

Thanh tra Marples đảm nhiệm vụ án này. Hạ sĩ cảnh sát Watts là phụ tá của ông ta. Họ đang ở trong thư viện.

Marples : Này Hạ sĩ, mọi người đâu cả rồi?
Watts : Thưa ngài, họ đang ở trong phòng khách. Cảnh sát viên Dickson đang làm việc với họ. Ngài nghĩ sao?

Marples It could have been any one of them, couldn't it ? We don't know what skeletons are in the cupboard ! It may have been two of them together. It might even have been all of them. Nobody seems very sad !

Watts No, sir. Lord Gurney was a very unpopular man in the village. Nobody liked him. It could have been an outsider.

Marples No, no, Watts. It must have been one of them. Let's look at the evidence.

Watts It seems to me that everybody has got a motive, sir, and nobody's got an alibi. They all say they were alone when it happened.

Marples Yes, and there are no finger-prints on the gun.

LADY AGATHA ?

Watts It couldn't have been her, sir.

Marples Why not, Watts ?

Watts Well, she's in a wheelchair. She can't move very fast. Anyway, they've been married for thirty-five years. It can't have been her.

Marples Most murders are inside the family, Watts, and there is a door between her room and the library.

Watts Ah, yes, sir. But it was locked !

Marples Doors have keys, Watts !

Watts But why would she want to kill him ?

Marples Miss Smart's a very attractive young woman. We don't know what was going on. She could have been jealous.

Watts But, sir, he was over sixty ! He was old enough to be her father !

Marples Ah, well, Watts, he was a good-looking man, and very rich !

MAJOR CHIVERS ?

Marples What about the Major, Watts ? He's a strange fellow.

Watts I've been thinking about that. It can't have been him, sir !

Marples Really ! Why not ?

Watts Why would he need to fire five times ? He was an army-pistol champion. He could have killed him with one shot.

Marples Maybe he did, Watts. Maybe he did.

Watts I don't understand, sir.

Marples : Thủ phạm có thể là bất cứ ai trong số họ, đúng không nào ? Chúng ta không biết có vụ bê bối nào trong gia đình này đây! Có thể là 2 kẻ cộng tác với nhau. Mà cũng có thể là tất cả bọn họ thông đồng. Chẳng ai trông có vẻ buồn não cả.

Watts : Đúng vậy, thưa ngài. Ngài Gurney chẳng được ai ưa trong làng này. Không ai ưa ông ấy cả. Cũng có thể là một kẻ từ bên ngoài gia đình đã giết ông ấy.

Marples : Không đâu, Watts. Phải là một người trong số họ. Hãy xem các bằng chứng.

Watts : Tôi thấy dường như ai cũng có một động cơ để mà giết ông ta cả, mà không ai lại có bằng chứng ngoại phạm. Ai cũng nói là họ chỉ có một mình khi án mạng xảy ra.

Marples : Đúng vậy, và chẳng hề có dấu tay trên khẩu súng.

BÀ AGATHA ?

Watts : Không thể là bà ta, thưa thanh tra.

Marples : Tại sao lại không, Watts ?

Watts : Bà ta phải ngồi trên xe lăn, và không thể xoay sở nhanh. Vả lại họ sống với nhau 35 năm trời rồi. Không thể là bà ta đâu.

Marples : Phần lớn kẻ sát nhân là người trong gia đình, Watts, và nên nhớ là có cửa thông từ phòng bà ta ra thư viện.

Watts : Vâng, thưa thanh tra. Nhưng cửa khóa mà.

Marples : Cửa nào cũng có chìa chứ, Watts.

Watts : Nhưng tại sao bà ta lại muốn giết ông ta ?

Marples : Cô Smart là một phụ nữ trẻ tuổi đầy hấp dẫn. Chúng ta không biết chuyện gì đã xảy ra. Có thể bà ta ghen.

Watts : Nhưng thưa ngài, ông ta đã ngoài lục tuần. Ông ta đủ tuổi làm bố cô ta kia mà.

Marples : Này, Watts, ông ta là một người đẹp mã và rất giàu có.

THIẾU TÁ CHIVERS ?

Mraples : Còn ông thiếu tá thì sao, Watts ? Ông ta là một kẻ lạ lùng.

Watts : Tôi đã nghĩ đến điều đó rồi. Không thể là ông ta, thưa thanh tra.

Marples : Thật sao ? Tại sao lại không ?

Watts : Tại sao ông ta lại cần đến 5 phát súng? Ông ta đã từng là quán quân súng ngắn của quân đội kia mà. Ông ta chỉ cần một phát thôi.

Marples : Rất có thể là ông ta đó Watts; rất có thể là ông ta.

Watts : Thưa thanh tra, tôi không hiểu.

Marples There are a lot of things you don't understand, Watts. Perhaps he's more clever than he looks.

Watts But there's no motive, sir.

Marples There may have been. I mean there was that scandal with the property company.

Watts But he was at the lake, sir.

Marples He might not have been, Watts. He's a pistol champion. He could have shot him from the trees and thrown the gun into the room.

Watts Oh. Do you really think so, sir ?

Marples I don't know, Watts. It's just a theory.

Marples : Có nhiều thứ anh chưa hiểu đâu, Watts. Có thể ông ta thông minh hơn là cái vẻ bề ngoài hiện có.

Watts : Nhưng ông ta đâu có động cơ nào để giết ông Gurney.

Marples : Có thể có chứ. Tôi muốn nói đến vụ tai tiếng với công ty tài sản.

Watts : Nhưng thưa thanh tra, lúc đó ông ta lại đang ở bờ hồ.

Marples : Có thể là không phải. Ông ta là quán quân súng ngắn. Ông ta có thể bắn ngài Gurney từ các lùm cây rồi ném khẩu súng vào phòng.

Watts : Ô, ngài nghĩ vậy sao ngài thanh tra ?

Marples : Tôi không biết, Watts. Đó chỉ là giả thuyết thôi.

Look at this

Can Could	it have been	him ? her ? them ?

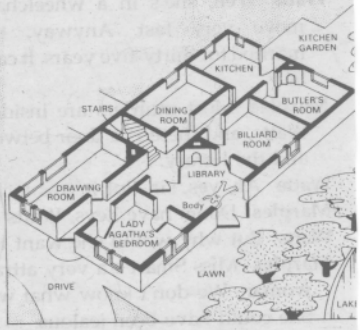
It	must could may (not) might (not) can't couldn't	have been	him. her. them.

Can Could	he she they	have	done it ? killed him ? shot him ?

He She They	must could may (not) might (not) can't couldn't	have	done it. killed him. shot him.

Exercise

Discuss each character. Make a list of sentences about all six suspects. Who do you think did it? How ? Why ?



PRACTICE

Language summary

Could	*it*	*have been*	*him ?* *her ?* *them ?*	*Could*	*he* *she* *they*	*have*	*done it ?* *killed him ?* *shot him ?*

It	*must* *could* *may (not)* *might (not)* *can't* *couldn't*	*have been*	*him.* *her.* *them.*	*He* *She* *They*	*must* *could* *may (not)* *might (not)* *can't* *couldn't*	*have*	*done it.* *killed him.* *shot him.*

Exercise 1

Five years ago, Larry Wallace was very poor. Now he's a millionaire.

He must have been very lucky.

Bài tập 1

Cách đây 5 năm, Larry Wallace rất nghèo. Bây giờ anh ấy là nhà triệu phú.

Hẳn là anh ấy gặp nhiều may mắn.

He might have married a rich woman.
He may have been successful in business.

He could have robbed a bank.
or something else...
Make sentences about each of these situations.

1 The door was locked, but the thief managed to get into the hotel room. . . . . .

2 Mr and Mrs Sullivan are very worried. Their daughter, Judith, usually gets home from school at 4.30. It's 6 o'clock and she hasn't arrived yet. . . . . .

3 Neil phoned his boss at 9 o'clock and said he was too ill to come to work. At 9.30 his boss phoned Neil's house, and there was no reply. . . . . .

4 Gregg made a date with Penny. They arranged to meet outside the cinema at 7.30. It's 8 o'clock and she hasn't turned up. . . . . .

5 Bob Cole escaped from prison. The police checked all the airports and ports, but they weren't able to find him. . . . . .

6 Jake Rowley robbed a bank, hijacked a plane and parachuted out over the Amazon jungle. He's never been seen since. . . . . .

7 The Lanstable painting 'Norfolk Sunset' which was stolen two years ago is still missing. It is so famous that it is impossible to sell. . . . . .

8 A month ago, Tina was 10 kilos overweight. Now she's normal. . . . . .

9 Five years ago, Francis Wright was a millionaire. Now he's penniless. . . . . .

Có lẽ anh ấy cưới vợ giàu.
Có thể anh ấy thành đạt trong doanh nghiệp.
Có thể anh ấy cướp nhà băng hay điều gì khác...
Đặt câu về mỗi tình huống sau đây :

10 A woman has just wandered into a London police station. She has no documents or identification, but is wearing good clothes. She's lost her memory. . . . . .

11 Terry Singleton was shipwrecked, and survived on a desert island alone for two years before he was rescued. . . . . .

12 Daisy Armfield was on television last night. She said she was born in 1870. . . . . .

13 Sam can't stop laughing. . . . . .

14 Elizabeth has just read a letter, and she's crying. . . . . .

15 At 5 o'clock in the morning, on an empty motorway, a car crashed into a bridge at 170 k.p.h. The driver was killed. . . . . .

16 Valerie Simpson has just been sent to prison for thirty-five years. . . . . .

17 The Queen has just given Herbert Thomas a medal for bravery. . . . . .

18 A woman has just run into the street, screaming. . . . . .

19 Someone on the radio said that he had seen a man 3 metres tall. . . . . .

Unit 26 Know Your Rights

Hãy biết quyền lợi của mình

VOCABULARY

- **aggressive** *(adj)* /ə'gresɪv/ (of people or animals) ready to attack; offensive; quarrelsome = hung hăng, công kích
  A ~ nations threaten world peace.
  aggression *(n)* *an act of open ~.*
  aggressor *(n)* /ə'gresə/ = person or country that attacks first, without being provoked.
  armed ~.
- **assure** *(v)* /ə'ʃɔ:/ - tell (sb) positively or confidently = làm cho vững tin *They were ~d that everything possible was being done.*
  - ensure = bảo đảm *Hard work usually ~s success.*
  assurance *(n)* /ə'ʃɔ:rəns/ sự đảm bảo *He gave me an ~ that it would be ready by Friday.*
- **cancel** *(v)* /'kænsl/ call off = bãi bỏ
  The match had to be cancelled because of bad weather.
- **china** *(n)* /'tʃaɪnə/ objects made of porcelain = đồ sứ *household ~.*
- **claim** *(v)* /kleɪm/ state or declare (st) as a fact = tuyên bố *After the battle, both sides ~ ed victory.*
- **compensate** *(v)* /'kɒmpenseɪt/ (sb for st) recompense = sự bồi thường *Nothing can ~ for the loss of one's health.*
  compensation *(n)* /,kɒmpen'seɪʃn/ sự đền bù, bồi thường *Compensation of injured workers has cost the company a lot.*
- **consume** *(v)* /kən'sju:m/ use (st) up = tiêu thụ *The car ~ s a lot of fuel.*
  consumer *(n)* /kən'sju:mə/ person who buys goods or uses services = người tiêu thụ.
  C ~ s are encouraged to complain about faulty goods.
- **credit note** *(n)* /'kredɪt nəut/ phiếu mua hàng
- **deal** *(v)* /di:l/ (pt, pp *dealt* /delt/) – with sb / st = have social, business, etc relation with sb = quan hệ *I hate ~ ing with large impersonal companies.*
  - with st = attend to (a problem, task, etc) manage st = giải quyết *Haven't you dealt with that letter yet ?*
- **defect** *(n)* /'di:fekt/ /dɪ'fekt/ fault or lack that spoils a person or thing = khuyết điểm *~ s in the education system.*
- **entitle** *(v)* /ɪn'taɪtl/ (esp passive) ~ sb to st = give sb a right to have or to do st = có quyền *After a hard day's work she felt ~ d to a rest.*
  entitlement *(n)* *Have you all claimed your full holiday ~ s ?*
- **fault** *(n)* /fɔ:lt/ - imperfection or flaw = sự thiếu sót *There is a ~ in the electrical system.*
  - mistake = lỗi *"Whose ~ is this ?" "Mine, I'm afraid".*
  faulty *(adj)* /'fɔ:ltɪ/ having faults; imperfect *a ~ switch, a ~ argument.*
- **gas fitter** *(n)* /gæs 'fɪtə/ thợ lắp lò gas
- **glue** *(n)* /glu:/ keo
- **guarantee** *(n)* /gærən'ti:/ promise (usu in writing) that certain conditions agreed to in a transaction will be fulfilled = sự bảo đảm *The watch comes with a year's ~.*
  guarantee *(v)* /,gærən'ti:/ st (to sb) promise st with certainty (to sb) = bảo đảm *We cannot ~ the punctual arrival of trains in foggy weather*
- **hair dryer** *(n)* /heə draɪə/ máy sấy tóc
- **inspect** *(v)* /ɪn'spekt/ examine st closely = xem xét *The customs officer ~ ed my passport suspiciously.*
  inspection *(n)* /ɪn'spekʃn/ = sự kiểm tra, xem xét *carry out frequent ~ s.*
  inspector *(n)* /ɪn'spektə/ thanh tra viên
- **install** *(v)* /ɪn'stɔ:l/ st (in st) fix equipment in position for use = đặt (hệ thống máy móc) *~ a heating or lighting system.*
  installation *(n)* /,ɪnstə'leɪʃn/ = sự lắp đặt *Installation requires several days.*
- **irreparable** *(adj)* /ɪ'repərəbl/ that cannot be put right, repaired = không thể sửa được *~ damage, harm*
  irreparably *(adv)* /ɪ'repərəblɪ/ không thể sửa được
- **item** *(n)* /'aɪtəm/ single article = món hàng *number the ~ s in a catalogue.*
- **label** *(n)* /'leɪbl/ piece of paper, cloth, metal, etc on an object and describing its nature, name, owner, destination, etc = nhãn hiệu.

I read the information on the ~ before deciding which jam to buy.

- **laundry** *(n)* /'lɔ:ndrɪ/ - business where clothes, sheets, etc are laundered = tiệm giặt ủi *sent to the ~.*
  - clothes, sheets that need to be laundered = đồ giặt *There's not much ~ this week.*
  launder *(v)* /'lɔ:ndə/ wash and iron *Send these shirts to be laundered.*
- **merchant** *(n)* /'mɜ:tʃənt/ wholesale trader, esp one who trades with foreign countries. *an import - export ~.*
  merchantable *(adj)* /'mɜ:tʃəntəbl/ buôn bán được, thương mại
- **mind** *(v)* /maɪnd/ person's thoughts or attention = ý kiến *Don't change your ~.*
- **misuse** *(v)* /mɪs'ju:z/ (esp passive) use (st) in the wrong way or for the wrong purpose = dùng lầm *~ a word, expression.*
  misuse *(n)* /ˌmɪs'ju:s/ wrong or incorrect use. *the ~ of power, authority.*
- **negligence** *(n)* /'neglɪdʒəns/ carelessness = tính cẩu thả, lơ đễnh *The accident was due to his ~.*
  negligent *(adj)* /'neglɪdʒənt/ = careless = cẩu thả *She was ~ in her work.*
- **negotiate** *(v)* /nɪ'gəʊʃɪeɪt/ (with sb) to reach agreement by discussion = thương lượng *We've decided to ~ with our employers about our wage claim.*
  negotiator *(n)* = person who negotiates.
  negotiation /nɪˌgəʊʃɪ'eɪʃn/ discussion aimed at reaching an agreement. *The price is a matter of / for ~.*
- **particular** *(adj)* /pə:'tɪkjʊlə/ special, exceptional = đặc biệt *He is a ~ friend of mine.*
- **persistent** *(adj)* /pə'sɪstənt/ refusing to give up = kiên trì, bền chí *She eventually married the most ~ of her admirers.*
  persistence *(n)* /pə'sɪstəns/ = sự kiên trì *His ~ was rewarded when they finally agreed to resume discussions.*
  persist *(v)* /pə'sɪst/ ~ with st = continue doing st in spite of difficulties = kiên trì *They ~ ed with the agricultural reforms despite opposition from farmers.*
- **purchase** /'pɜ:tʃəs/ ~ st (with st); ~ st (for sb) (fml) = buy st = mua *Employees are encouraged to ~ shares in the firm*
  purchaser *(n)* (fml) person who buys st. *The ~ of the house will pay the deposit next week.*
- **refund** *(n)* /'ri:fʌnd/ repayment = tiền bồi hoàn *He demanded a ~ on the unused tickets.*
  refund *(v)* /rɪ'fʌnd/ (esp passive) ~ st (to sb) pay back (money received) = hoàn tiền lại *I'll ~ you the full cost of your fare.*
  - **refundable** *(adj)*
- **registration** /redʒɪs'treɪʃn/ số đăng ký (xe hơi)
- **replace** *(v)* /rɪ'pleɪs/ take the place of (sb / st) = thay thế *Can anything ~ a mother's love ?*
  replacement *(n)* /rɪ'pleɪsmənt/ 1. replacing or being replaced = sự thay thế *the ~ of worn parts.*
  2. person or thing that replaces another = người hay vật thay thế. *find a ~ for Sue while she is ill.*
- **right** *(n)* /raɪt/ ~ to st / to do st = authority to do st = quyền hạn *Have no ~ / not have any ~ to do st.*
- **settlement** /'setlmənt/ sự ổn định
- **tear** *(v)* /teə/ (pt *tore* /tɔ:(r)/ pp *torn* /tɔ:n/) pull (st) forcibly apart or away or to pieces = xé *~ a sheet of paper into two.*
- **wash-day** *(n)* /'wɒʃdeɪ/ (dated) day on which clothes are washed = ngày giặt ủi

EXPRESSIONS

It's up to the shop đó là trách nhiệm của cửa hàng
a golden rule qui luật vàng
the law is on your side luật pháp đứng về phía bạn
- to pull away = chạy đi
- to change one's mind = đổi ý
- point out /pɔɪnt aʊt/ vạch rõ
- come apart *(v)* /kʌm ə'pa:t/ tách rời
- to let oneself out = tự đi ra, tự ra về
- to fall off = ngã
- to let go of = sút, tuột

PROPER NAMES

Cheltenham	/'tʃeltənhæm/	Essex	/'eseks/
C.R.S Sketchley	/si: 'a: 'es 'sketʃli/	Harlow	/'ha:ləu/
Cuckoo Lane	/'kuku: lein/	Tunbridge Wells	/'tʌnbridʒ welz/

USAGE

Be up to somebody : depend on somebody to decide (to do) something

Ex :- It's up to you : Tùy anh

- It's up to her to stay or not Tùy cô ta đi hay ở

GRAMMAR NOTES

Should have + past participle
Ought to have + past participle

These modal perfects are used to make a **complaint** or **reproach** (Trách hờn, kêu ca)

Ought to + have + past participle is used to express an unfulfilled duty or a sensible action that was neglected.

Ex : You *ought to have waited* till the lights were green before crossing the road. ("Should" is possible) (The reproach with "ought" is sometimes thought to be a little stronger)

Complaining about faulty goods or bad service is never easy. Most people dislike making a fuss. However, when you are shopping, it is important to know your rights. The following extract is taken from a leaflet produced by the British 'Office of Fair Trading', and it gives advice to consumers.

Khiếu nại về hàng hóa có phẩm chất xấu hay về sự phục vụ kém thì chẳng bao giờ dễ dàng cả. Phần lớn người ta đều không muốn rầy rà lớn chuyện. Tuy nhiên, khi bạn đi mua sắm, điều quan trọng là phải biết quyền lợi của mình. Đoạn trích dưới đây được lấy ra từ một cẩm nang do "Văn phòng theo dõi sự công bằng trong buôn bán" của nước Anh ấn hành, và nó đưa ra những lời khuyên dành cho người tiêu dùng.

YOUR RIGHTS WHEN BUYING GOODS

When you buy something from a shop, you are making a contract. This contract means that it's up to the shop – not the manufacturer – to deal with your complaints if the goods are not satisfactory. What do we mean by satisfactory?

The goods must not be broken or damaged and must work properly. This is known as 'merchantable quality'. A sheet, say, which had a tear in it, or a clock that didn't go when you wound it would not pass this test.

The goods must be as described – whether on the pack or by the salesman. A hairdryer which the box says is blue should not turn out to be pink; a pair of shoes the salesman says is leather should not be plastic.

CÁC QUYỀN LỢI CỦA BẠN KHI MUA HÀNG

Khi bạn mua một món hàng nào đó tại một cửa hiệu, bạn đã làm một bản giao kèo. Giao kèo này có nghĩa là chính cửa hiệu – chứ không phải là nhà sản xuất ra món hàng đó – phải có trách nhiệm giải quyết các khiếu nại của bạn nếu món hàng không làm bạn hài lòng. Thế nào là làm hài lòng ?

Món hàng không bị bể hoặc hư hại và phải sử dụng được. Điều này được gọi là "phẩm chất thương mại" của món hàng. Chẳng hạn một tấm vải bị rách hoặc một chiếc đồng hồ không chạy sau khi bạn đã lên dây đều không đáp ứng được phẩm chất này.

Món hàng phải đúng như lời mô tả – hoặc là theo như mô tả trên bao bì, hoặc là theo như mô tả của người bán. Một chiếc máy sấy tóc mà ngoài hộp ghi là màu xanh thì không thể hóa ra lại là màu hồng; một đôi giày màu người bán nói là da thì không thể hóa ra lại là bằng chất dẻo.

The goods should be fit for their purpose. This means the purpose for which most people buy those particular goods. If you wanted something for a special purpose, you must have said exactly what for. If, for instance, the shop assures you that a certain glue will mend broken china, and it doesn't you have a right to return it.

If the shop sells you faulty goods, it has broken its side of the bargain.

If things go wrong

If goods are faulty when you first inspect or use them, go back to the shop, say that you cancel the purchase and ask for a complete refund. If you prefer, you can accept a repair or a replacement.

If the goods break down through no fault of yours, after you have used them for a time, you may still be entitled to some compensation. In some cases it would be reasonable to expect a complete refund – if, for instance, without misuse your shoes came apart after only one day's wear, or your washing machine irreparably broke down after only three wash days. But if your washing machine worked perfectly for a while and then broke, you could only expect some of the purchase price back. You and the supplier must negotiate a reasonable settlement.

You need never accept a credit note for faulty goods. If you do so, then later find you do not want anything else in the shop or store, you may not get your money back.

If you have to spend money as a direct result of goods being faulty, you can also claim this from the shop. You could, for example, claim the cost of using a laundry while the washing machine wasn't working. But you must keep such expenses down to a minimum.

There are four golden rules :

1 Examine the goods you buy at once. If they are faulty, tell the seller quickly.

Món hàng phải đáp ứng được mục đích sử dụng của nó. Điều này có nghĩa là đáp ứng được mục đích mà đa số người tiêu dùng đã định khi mua nó. Nếu bạn muốn một món gì vào một mục đích đặc biệt, thì bạn phải nói rõ đó là mục đích gì. Chẳng hạn, nếu cửa hàng bảo đảm với bạn rằng một loại keo nào đó có thể dán được đồ sứ bể, mà thực ra nó lại không thể thì bạn có quyền đem trả nó lại.

Nếu cửa hàng bán cho bạn đồ có phẩm chất xấu thì họ đã không thực hiện đúng nghĩa vụ về phía họ theo bản giao kèo.

Nếu có trục trặc

Nếu món hàng hư khi bạn vừa mới mở ra xem hay mới dùng, hãy đem trở lại cửa hàng, nói rằng bạn không mua nữa và yêu cầu trả tiền lại. Nếu bạn muốn, bạn có thể chấp nhận cho sửa chữa hoặc đổi cái khác.

Nếu món hàng hư không phải vì lỗi của bạn, sau khi bạn đã dùng một thời gian, bạn vẫn có quyền đòi một số tiền bồi thường. Trong một số trường hợp, bạn vẫn có thể được hoàn lại đủ tiền – ví dụ, nếu đôi giày của bạn bung rời ra chỉ sau một ngày mặc dù bạn chẳng có leo trèo gì quá đáng lắm, hoặc máy giặt hư đến độ không thể sửa chữa được chỉ sau ba ngày chạy. Nhưng nếu cái máy giặt chạy tốt một thời gian rồi mới hư thì bạn chỉ có thể nhận lại một phần số tiền đã bỏ ra. Bạn và người bán phải thương lượng một giải pháp hợp lý cho cả đôi bên.

Bạn đừng bao giờ chấp nhận một phiếu mua hàng để bồi thường cho món hàng kém phẩm chất. Nếu bạn nhận phiếu đó, rồi về sau lại thấy rằng bạn không muốn chọn mua bất cứ thứ gì khác bày bán trong cửa hiệu đó, bạn có thể sẽ không được bồi hoàn tiền.

Nếu bạn phải tốn tiền do hậu quả trực tiếp của việc mua hàng có phẩm chất xấu, bạn cũng có thể khai báo với cửa hàng. Ví dụ bạn có thể khai phí tổn giặt quần áo ở tiệm khi máy giặt không hoạt động. Nhưng bạn phải khai các chi phí này ở mức tối thiểu.

Có 4 nguyên tắc vàng ngọc :

1. Kiểm tra mặt hàng ngay khi đang mua. Nếu hàng hư hỏng phải báo ngay với người bán.

2 Keep any receipts you are given. If you have to return something, the receipt will help to prove where and when you bought it.
3 Don't be afraid to complain. You are not asking a favour to have faulty goods put right. The law is on your side.
4 Be persistent (but not aggressive). If your complaint is justified, it is somebody's responsibility to put things right.

Remember

• You can't complain about defects that were pointed out to you, or that you could reasonably have been expected to notice.
• Stop using the item as soon as you discover a fault.
• You are not entitled to compensation if you simply change your mind about wanting the goods.

2. Giữ lại mọi hóa đơn. Nếu bạn phải đem trả lại món hàng, hóa đơn sẽ giúp chứng minh bạn đã mua nó ở đâu và khi nào.
3. Đừng ngại khiếu nại. Bạn không đang xin xỏ ân huệ của ai khi yêu cầu giải quyết hàng có phẩm chất xấu. Luật pháp đứng về phía bạn.
4. Cứ kiên trì (nhưng đừng có thái độ gây sự). Nếu khiếu nại của bạn là đúng thì trách nhiệm của một người nào đó là phải giải quyết.

Hãy nhớ

• Bạn không thể khiếu nại về những khuyết điểm mà người ta đã nêu trước, hoặc đáng lẽ ra là bạn đã phải thấy.
• Ngưng sử dụng món hàng ngay khi bạn phát hiện có chỗ hư hỏng.
• Bạn sẽ không được bồi thường nếu bạn đổi ý không muốn mua món hàng đó nữa.

PRACTICE

Look at this letter.

Mistral Foods Ltd.,
Fernwood Trading Estate
Warrington,
Lancs.

55, Willow Way,
Scarborough,
Yorkshire.
8th March 1983.

Dear Sirs,

I purchased a tin of 'Mistral Baked Beans in Tomato Sauce' a few days ago. I enclose the label. When I put the beans in a saucepan, I noticed a piece of glass, which is also enclosed. I was very angry. I could have cut my mouth or broken a tooth. I might even have given it to my small son. He might have swallowed it ! I expect to hear from you.

Exercise 1

Randolph Cooper lives at 22 Greenwood Avenue, Nottingham. He had just bought a second-hand car. It was a Calypso, registration CRA 749S. It has a one year guarantee. Just after he left the garage the brakes failed on a steep hill. He couldn't stop, and just missed a bus queue outside the school. He then hit a police car. Fortunately, he was unhurt.

Bài tập 1

Randolph Cooper ngụ ở 22 Đại lộ Greenwood, Nottingham. Anh ấy vừa mới mua một xe hơi đã dùng rồi. Nó là chiếc Calypso, số đăng bộ xe là CRA 749S. Nó được bảo hành 1 năm. Ngay khi mới rời khỏi ga ra thì thắng bị hư trên ngọn đồi dốc. Anh không dừng xe lại được và xém đụng đoàn xe buýt bên ngoài ngôi trường. Rồi anh ấy tông vào xe cảnh sát. May thay, anh ấy không bị hề hấn gì.

Write a letter to the garage. Say what happened and what might have happened.

Exercise 2

Look at these notes.

Mrs Campbell, 17 Hodder Road, Kendal, Cumbria. Gas fitter/install new gas cooker. She/go to work. Told fitter/let himself out when/finished. Came back/6 o'clock. House/ full of gas. She/heavy smoker. Luckily/ not smoking.

Write a letter to the Gas Consumers' Council. Say what happened, and what might have happened.

Exercise 3

Look at these notes.

Mrs Wade, 83 years old. 62 Park Road. Eastleigh, Hants. Queuing/ last bus. Last in queue. Bus came. Driver/ everybody/ hurry. She/ getting on/ bus/ pulled away. Almost fell off. Fortunately/let go of bar. Not hurt. Had to take/taxi home.

Write to the Hampshire Bus Company. Explain what happened. Say what might have happened.

Bài tập 3

Xem các điều ghi này :

Bà Wade, 83 tuổi. 62 đường Park, Eastleigh, Hants. Xếp hàng/ xe buýt cuối cùng. Đứng cuối hàng. Xe buýt đến/ Tài xế/ mọi người/ vội vàng. Bà/ lên/ xe buýt/ chạy đi. Xém té xuống. May thay/ hụt thanh vịn/ không bị thương. Phải đón/ taxi về nhà.

Viết thư cho Công ty xe buýt Hampshire. Giải thích điều xảy ra. Để cập chuyện có lẽ đã xảy ra trước đó.

Exercise 4

Have you ever found anything in a tin or packet ? Have you ever had an accident ? nearly had an accident ? hurt yourself because of someone else's negligence ?

Write a letter saying what happened and what might have happened.

Viết một lá thư đến ga ra. Nói chuyện xảy ra và chuyện có lẽ đã xảy ra trước nữa.

Bài tập 2

Xem các điều ghi này :

Bà Campbell, 17 đường Hodder, Kendal, Cumbria. Người lắp ống dẫn hơi đốt/ lắp lò ga mới./ Bà/ đi làm. Bảo người thợ lắp/ tự ra về khi/ xong. Trở về/ 6 giờ. Nhà/ đầy hơi đốt. Bà/ người nghiện hút thuốc nặng/ May thay/ không đang hút thuốc.

Viết một lá thư đến Hội đồng của những người tiêu thụ hơi đốt. Kể chuyện đã xảy ra và chuyện có lẽ đã xảy ra trước nữa.

Bài tập 4

Có bao giờ bạn tìm thấy cái gì trong một hộp thiếc hay một thùng hàng không ? Bạn có từng bị tai nạn không ? xém bị tai nạn? bị thương vì sự lơ đễnh của người nào đó? Viết một lá thư kể chuyện xảy ra và chuyện có thể đã xảy ra trước đó.

Unit 27 Making A Complaint — Khiếu nại

VOCABULARY

- **add** *(v)* /æd/ ~ A to B; ~ A and B (together) put (numbers or amounts) together to get a total = cộng *If you ~ 5 and 5 (together), you get 10.*
- **check-stub** *(n)* /tʃek stʌb/ short end piece or stump remaining from a chequebook = cuống, cùi, ngân phiếu
- **digital** *(adj)* /'dɪdʒɪtl/ showing amounts by means of numbers = chỉ bằng số
  digital clock / watch = clock / watch that shows the time by digits rather than hands.
- **disastrous** *(adj)* /dɪ'zɑ:strəs/ being or causing a disaster = ghê gớm, thảm *~ floods.*
  disaster *(n)* /dɪ'zɑ:stə/ event that causes great harm or damage = tai họa
- **divide** *(v)* /dɪ'vaɪd/ ~ st by st = find out how many times one number is contained in another = chia. *30 ~ ed by 6 is 5.*
- **guarantee** *(n)* /ˌgærən'ti:/ promise (usu in writing) that certain conditions agreed to in a transaction will be fulfilled = giấy bảo hành
- **manufacture** *(v)* /ˌmænjʊ'fæktʃə/ make goods on a large scale using machinery = sản xuất *~ shoes, cement, cookers.*
  manufacturer *(n)* /mænjʊ'fæktʃərə/ person or firm that manufactures things = nhà sản xuất *Send these faulty goods back to the ~.*
- **multiply** *(v)* /'mʌltɪplaɪ/ ~ A by B / ~ A and B (together) add a number to itself a particular number of times = nhân *Children learning to ~ and divide. 2 and 2 ~ to make 6; 2 ~ ed by 4 makes 8.*
- **obtain** *(v)* /əb'teɪn/ ~ st (for sb) get st, come to own or possess st = lấy, đạt được *Where can I ~ a copy of her latest book ?*
- **postage** *(n)* /'pəʊstɪdʒ/ amount charged or paid for carrying letters, etc by post = bưu phí *What is the ~ on this parcel ? How much is the ~ for an airmail letter to Canada?*
- **precinct** *(n)* /'pri:sɪŋkt/ area in a town for specific use, esp one where vehicles may not enter = khu *a shopping ~; a pedestrian ~.*
- **proof** *(n)* /pru:f/ evidence = bằng chứng
- **reverse** *(v)* /rɪ'vɜ:s/ (cause a vehicle to) travel backwards = đe, lui *The garage is open, so you can ~ in.*
- **state** *(n)* /steɪt/ condition in which a person or thing is = tình trạng
  the house was in a dirty ~.
- **subtract** *(v)* /səb'trækt/ ~ st (from st) take (a number or quantity) away from (another number) = trừ *~ 6 from 9; 6 ~ ed from 9 is 3.*
  subtraction = toán trừ *Two from five is a simple ~.*

EXPRESSIONS

Please find enclosed xin gửi kèm theo
in working order chạy tốt
on "battery" vị trí "pin"
to throw something at someone = ném cái gì trúng ai
on mains vị trí điện nhà
together with /tə'geðə wɪð/ cùng với
to plug in = cắm điện vào
to blow up = nổ tung

GRAMMAR NOTES

Inadvisability : "Shouldn't have "and" oughtn't to have"

Both these forms suggest criticism of an action:

EX : You *shouldn't have / oughtn't to have paid* the plumber in advance.

(Đáng lẽ anh không nên trả tiền trước cho ông thợ sửa ống nước)

or failure to observe a prohibition :

EX : You *shouldn't have / oughtn't to have stopped* on the motorway.

(Lẽ ra anh không được dừng lại trên đường xa lộ)

Customer Good morning, miss. I'd like to speak to the manager.

Manager I am the manager, sir. How can I help you ?

Customer Oh, really ? It's this radio. It doesn't work.

Manager Mm... did you buy it here ?

Customer Pardon ? Of course I bought it here. Look, you switch it on and nothing happens.

Manager Could I see your receipt ?

Customer Receipt ? I haven't got one.

Manager Oh, you should have obtained a receipt when you bought it.

Customer I probably did. I must have thrown it away.

Manager Ah, well, have you got any other proof of purchase, the guarantee, for example?

Customer No. It must have been in the box. I threw that away too.

Manager Oh, dear. You really ought to have kept it. We need to know the exact date of purchase.

Customer What ? I only bought it yesterday ! That young man over there served me. Oh, I paid by cheque. I've got the cheque stub.

Manager That's all right then. Did you check the radio before you left the shop ?

Customer Check it ? No, it was in the box. I expected it to work. It wasn't a cheap radio, it's a good make.

Manager You should have checked it.

Customer Come on ! Stop telling me what I should have done, and do something ! Either give me my money back or give me another radio.

Manager There's no need to get aggressive, sir. Let me look at it... mm... you see this little switch on the back ?

Customer Yes ?

Manager It's on 'mains', and it should be on 'battery'. You really should have read the instructions.

Customer Oh !

97 Cuckoo Lane,
Tunbridge Wells,
Kent
22nd May, 1982

Customer Service Dept.,
Dicken's Electrical Ltd.,
Harlow,
Essex

Khách hàng : Xin chào cô, tôi muốn gặp cửa hàng trưởng.

Cửa hàng trưởng (C.H.T) : Thưa ông, là tôi đây. Ông cần gì ạ ?

Khách hàng : A, vậy sao ? Cái radio này nè. Nó không hoạt động.

C.H.T : Ông mua nó ở đây phải không ạ ?

Khách hàng : Sao cơ ? Dĩ nhiên tôi mua nó ở đây. Cô nhìn xem, bật công tắc lên, mà chẳng nghe tiếng gì cả.

C.H.T : Cho tôi xem hóa đơn của ông được không ?

Khách hàng : Hóa đơn hả ? Tôi không có hóa đơn.

C.H.T : Ồ, lẽ ra ông phải lấy hóa đơn khi mua nó chứ.

Khách hàng : Có lẽ tôi có lấy. Chắc là tôi liệng nó đi mất rồi.

C.H.T : Thôi được, ông có chứng từ mua bán nào khác không, phiếu bảo hành chẳng hạn?

Khách hàng : Không. Chắc là nó ở trong hộp dựng máy. Tôi cũng quăng nó đi mất rồi.

C.H.T : Ồ, lẽ ra ông nên giữ nó lại. Chúng tôi muốn biết chính xác ngày ông mua là ngày nào.

Khách hàng : Sao ? Tôi mới mua hôm qua thôi mà. Cái cậu trẻ tuổi kia bán cho tôi đấy. À, tôi trả bằng séc, tôi còn giữ cuống phiếu đây nè.

C.H.T : Vậy là tốt rồi. Ông có kiểm tra radio trước khi ông rời cửa hàng không ?

Khách hàng : Kiểm tra hả ? Không; nó còn trong hộp mà. Tôi nghĩ là nó phải chạy tốt chứ. Nó đâu có phải là thứ rẻ tiền, hiệu tốt mà.

C.H.T : Lẽ ra ông phải kiểm tra nó.

Khách hàng : Thôi thôi. Đừng có nói lẽ ra tôi phải làm thế này thế kia nữa, cô phải giải quyết đi thôi. Hoặc là trả tiền lại cho tôi hoặc là đổi lại cho tôi một cái khác.

C.H.T : Thưa ông, làm gì mà phải nóng giận như vậy. Để tôi xem... ông có thấy cái công tắc nhỏ này ở phía sau máy không ?

Khách hàng : Sao ?

C.H.T : Nó đang ở vị trí "MẠNG ĐIỆN", mà lẽ ra nó phải được chuyển về "PIN". Thực tình mà nói lẽ ra ông phải đọc bản hướng dẫn sử dụng máy.

Khách hàng : Ồ !

97 Cuckoo Lane
Tunbridge Wells
Kent
22 tháng 5, 1982

Phòng phục vụ khách hàng
Công ty điện hữu hạn Dicken
Harlow
Essex

Dear Sir or Madam,
Last week I bought a pocket calculator at your branch in Cheltenham. It seemed to work in the shop. When I got home, I found that it was faulty. It adds and subtracts perfectly well, but it does not divide or multiply. I took it back to your branch in Tunbridge Wells, but they refused to exchange it, saying that I would have to return it to the branch where I bought it. This is impossible because I do not live in Cheltenham. Please find enclosed the calculator, together with the receipt, showing price and date of purchase, and the manufacturer's guarantee.
Yours faithfully,
C. R. S. Sketchley

Thưa ông/bà
Tuần rồi tôi mua một máy tính bỏ túi tại chi nhánh của quý công ty ở Cheltenham. Trong tiệm thì dường như máy chạy tốt. Khi tôi về nhà tôi mới phát hiện là nó hư. Nó cộng và trừ hoàn toàn tốt, nhưng không làm phép nhân hoặc chia được. Tôi đem nó lại chi nhánh của ông ở Tunbridge Wells, song họ từ chối đổi lại cho tôi và nói rằng tôi phải trả lại nơi tôi đã mua nó. Điều này không thể được vì tôi đâu có sống ở Cheltenham. Tôi xin gửi kèm theo thơ này cái máy tính, cùng với hóa đơn cho thấy giá cả, ngày mua và phiếu bảo hành của nhà sản xuất.
Trân trọng,
C.R.S. Sketchley

Exercise

DIGITAL ALARM CLOCK
This product should reach you in perfect working order. If it does not, please return it to Electric Clocks Ltd., Hounslow, Middlesex, stating where and when it was bought. We will be glad to exchange it and refund the postage.

Write a letter of complaint. You bought the clock at a branch of W. H. Samson in Oxford Street, London, last week. It said 'blue' on the box, but it was pink. The alarm doesn't seem to work. You paid cash, and you didn't keep the receipt.

PRACTICE

Language summary

He	*should* *shouldn't* *ought (not) to*	*have done it.*

Exercise 1

Mr and Mrs Downes booked a holiday with Sunshine Tours. It was disastrous. When they got back, Mr Downes went to see the travel agent.

The plane didn't take off on time.
It should have taken off on time.
What else should have happened ? Write your answers.

1 They didn't give us a meal on the plane.
2 The representative didn't meet us at the airport.
3 You hadn't sent the reservation to the hotel.
4 There were no rooms for us at the hotel.
5 They didn't find us another hotel.
6 They didn't apologize.

Exercise 2

Andrew Kerr lost his driving licence last month. In court, the police read out all the things he had done.

Bài tập 1

Ông và Bà Downes đăng ký chuyến đi nghỉ với Công ty phụ trách du lịch Sunshine. Chuyến đi thật kinh hoàng. Khi họ trở về, ông Downes đến gặp viên đại diện công ty du lịch.
Máy bay không cất cánh đúng giờ.
Lẽ ra nó phải cất cánh đúng giờ.
Còn việc gì lẽ ra phải diễn ra nữa ? Viết các câu trả lời của bạn.

Bài tập 2

Andrew Kerr bị lấy bằng lái xe tháng rồi. Ở tòa án, cảnh sát đọc ra tất cả những điều anh ta đã vi phạm.

He reversed into a main road.
He shouldn't have reversed into a main road.
What else shouldn't he have done ? Write your answers.

1 He forgot to indicate.
2 He drove too fast.
3 He went through a red light.

Exercise 3

The headmaster of her son's school has just telephoned Mrs Raleigh to complain about her son's behaviour.
He didn't pay attention in class.
He ought to have paid attention in class.
He chewed gum during the music lesson.
He ought not to have chewed gum in the music lesson.
What other complaints did he make ? Write your answers.

1 He wrote rude words on the blackboard.
2 He didn't do any homework last week.
3 He didn't learn his French irregular verbs.
4 He threw a book at another boy.
5 He didn't bring a pen to school.

Exercise 4

Look at this letter of complaint, and write a reply from the company.

193, Winston Lane,
Tadworth.
27th August

The Complaints Dept,
Voltaire House,
Croydon.

T. Green Electrical,
Thorn Street,

Dear Sir,
I bought a hair-dryer at your branch in "The Tadworth Centre" shopping precinct last week. I'm afraid I didn't keep the receipt, and I threw away the box and the guarantee. When I opened the box I found it was the wrong colour. I had asked for pink and it was blue.

I didn't take it back to the shop because I was too busy. I didn't even have time to phone the manager. I decided to keep it. When I plugged it in, it blew up. The switch was on 110 volts, and it should have been on 240 volts. Anyway, the dryer is now completely useless. I am not sending it to you, as postage is too expensive. The manager refused to exchange it and was very rude. Please refund my £13.50.

Yours faithfully,
Sandra Douglas

Anh ta đe xe vào đường chính.
Lẽ ra anh ta không nên đe xe vào đường chính.
Còn điều gì lẽ ra anh ta không nên vi phạm nữa ? Viết các câu trả lời của bạn.

4 He had his arm round his girlfriend.
5 He hit a lamp-post.
6 He had drunk six whiskies.

Bài tập 3

Vị hiệu trưởng trường con trai bà Raleigh học vừa gọi điện thoại cho bà phàn nàn về hạnh kiểm của con bà.
Nó không chú ý trong lớp học.
Lẽ ra nó nên tập trung chú ý trong lớp học.
Nó nhai kẹo cao su trong giờ học nhạc.
Lẽ ra nó không nên nhai kẹo cao su trong giờ học nhạc.
Ông ấy còn phàn nàn điều gì nữa ? Hãy viết các câu trả lời của bạn.

6 He rode his bicycle in the school garden.
7 He didn't wear his uniform to school.
8 He didn't come to see me yesterday.
9 He was late every day last week.
10 He brought a dog into the classroom.

Bài tập 4

Hãy xem thư khiếu nại này và viết thư phúc đáp của công ty.

Kính thưa ông,
Tôi mua một máy sấy tóc ở chi nhánh của ông ở khu buôn bán "Trung Tâm Tadworth" tuần rồi. Rất tiếc là tôi không giữ lại biên lai và đã bỏ đi cái hộp và giấy bảo hành. Khi tôi mở hộp ra tôi thấy là máy không đúng màu.Tôi đã hỏi mua cái màu hồng nhưng đây là cái màu xanh dương.
Tôi không mang trả lại cửa hàng được vì tôi quá bận. Thậm chí tôi cũng không có thì giờ gọi điện cho ông cửa hàng trưởng. Tôi quyết định giữ cái máy này. Khi tôi cắm điện vào thì nó nổ. Điện thế là 110 vôn và lẽ ra nó phải là điện 240 vôn. Dù gì đi nữa, thì cái máy sấy tóc này bây giờ hoàn toàn vô dụng. Tôi không gửi nó đến ông vì bưu phí đắt quá. Ông cửa hàng trưởng đã từ chối không đổi nó và ông ta rất bất lịch sự. Xin ông vui lòng hoàn lại cho tôi số tiền 13,50 pounds.

Trân trọng,
Sandra Douglas.

Unit 28 The Mary Celeste

Con tàu Mary Celeste

VOCABULARY

- **axe** *(n)* /æks/ cái rìu
- **bloodstain** *(n)* /'blʌdsteɪn/ vết máu
  bloodstained *(adj)* stained with blood
  a ~ shirt.
- **bow** *(n)* /baʊ/ (often plural) front or forward end of a boat or ship = mũi tàu *The yatch hit a rock and damaged her bows.*
- **cargo** *(n)* /'kɑ:gəʊ/ (pl ~ es; US ~ s) goods carried in a ship or aircraft = hàng hóa
  a ~ ship.
- **choreograph** *(v)* /'kɒrɪəgrɑ:f/ design and arrange steps and dances for = bố trí điệu múa (ba lê...).
  choreographer *(n)* /ˌkɒrɪ'ɒgrəfə/
- **collide** *(v)* /kə'laɪd/ (~ with sb / st) strike violently against st or each other = đụng *As the bus turned the corner, it ~ d with a van.*
  collision *(n)* /kə'lɪʒn/ *The two ships were in / came into ~.*
- **compass** *(n)* /'kʌmpəs/ cái la bàn
- **desert** *(n)* /'dezət/ barren land, with very little water and vegetation, often sand covered = sa mạc *The Saraha ~.*
- **desert** *(v)* /dɪ'zɜ:t/ leave (esp service in the armed forces, or a ship) without authority or permission; run away = bỏ ngủ
  ~ from the army.
- **entry** *(n)* /'entrɪ/ ~ (in st) item written in a list, diary, an account book, etc. = mục ghi vào *There's no ~ in his diary for that day; entries in a dictionary.*
- **experienced** *(adj)* /ɪk'spɪərɪənst/ having experience = nhiều kinh nghiệm *an ~ nurse; He's ~ in looking after children.*
- **fore-hatch** *(n)* /'fɔ:hætʃ/ nắp hầm chứa hàng phía mũi
- **halfway** *(adj - adv)* /'hɑ:fweɪ/ situated between and at an equal distance from two places = nửa đường *meet ~; reach the ~ point.*
- **harmonium** *(n)* /hɑ:'məʊnɪəm/ cây đàn
- **hold** *(v)* /həʊld/ take and keep in one's arms = cầm, giữ *They were holding hands.*
- **hymn** *(n)* /hɪm/ song of praise, esp one praising God sung by Christians = thánh ca
- **launch** *(v)* /lɔ:ntʃ/ cause (a ship, esp one newly built) to move into the water = hạ thủy *The life boat was ~ ed immediately to rescue the four men.*
  launch *(n)* process of putting into motion a ship, etc
  launching-pad = base or platform from which ships, etc are launched.
- **log-book** *(n)* /lɒg bʊk/ detailed record of a ship's voyage = sổ nhật ký hàng hải
- **mast** *(n)* /mɑ:st/ cột buồm
- **notice** *(n)* /'nəʊtɪs/ written or printed news displayed publicly = thông báo *put up a ~; ~ s of births, deaths and marriages in the newspapers.*
- **plank** *(n)* /plæŋk/ ván, gỗ mỏng
- **rebuild** *(v)* /rɪ:'bɪld/ build or put (st) together again... *We rebuilt the engine using some new parts.*
- **run aground** *(v)* /rʌn ə'graʊnd/ chạy lên bờ, mắc can
- **salvage** *(v)* /'sælvɪdʒ/ save (st) from loss, wreck, etc. = cứu, vớt
  salvage *(n)* rescue of a damaged ship or its cargo = sự cứu, vớt tàu, hàng hóa. *S ~ of the wreck was made difficult by bad weather.*
  salvage money /'sælvɪdʒ ˌmʌnɪ/ tiền vớt tàu, cứu tàu
- **screenplay** *(n)* /'skrɪ:nplеɪ/ script for a film = kịch bản phim
- **ship's rail** *(n)* /ʃɪps reɪl/ lan can mép tàu
- **signal** *(n)* /'sɪgnl/ sign, gesture, sound, etc that conveys a message = dấu hiệu
  hand signals; traffic signals.
- **stern** *(n)* /stɜ:n/ đuôi tàu
- **storm** *(n)* /stɔ:m/ occasion of violent weather conditions, with strong winds and usu rain or thunder = cơn bão
- **strangely** /streɪndʒlɪ/ la lùng
  strange *(adj)* /streɪndʒ/ - not familiar *in a ~ country, neighbourhood.*
  - unusual, surprising *What ~ clothes you're wearing !*
- **superstitious** *(adj)* /ˌsu:pə'stɪʃəs/ believing in superstitions = mê tín *I always put my left shoe on first, I'm ~.*

superstition *(n)* /ˌsu:pə'stɪʃn/ sự mê tín
- **sword** *(n)* /sɔ:d/ cây kiếm
- **water-line** *(n)* /'wɒtə laɪn/ đường nước
- **wooden** *(adj)* /'wʊdn/ bằng gỗ
  wood *(n)* /wʊd/ gỗ

- **wreck** *(v)* /rek/ destroy or ruin (st) = làm hỏng hư *They had been wrecked (ie shipwrecked) off the coast of Africa.*
  wreck *(n)* ship that has been destroyed or badly damaged *Two wrecks block the entrance to the harbour.*

PROPER NAMES

Amazon /'æməzən/
Atlantic /ət'læntɪk/
Azores /ə'zɔ:z/
Briggs /brɪgz/
Cape Breton /'keɪp 'bretn/
Dei Gratia /'daɪ 'greɪʃə/
Genoa /'dʒenəʊ/
Mary celeste /'mærɪ sɪ'lest, sə-/
Moorhouse /'mʊəhaʊs/
Nova scotia /'nəʊvə 'skəʊʃə/
The English Channel /- 'ɪʃænl/

USAGE

Notice this

1.	give suggest furnish make offer	(an) explanation (s)	3. Answer	one's signal the door/bell/phone one's love ...
2.	completely utterly totally partially half almost	deserted		

Notes:

1. We must use **the** with the name of rivers, oceans, seas, mountain rangers.
   - The English Channel : the sea between France & England.
   - Nova Scotia : A province (tỉnh) in South East Canada - capital : Halifax
   - Amazon : a river in South America
   - Notice this : The Pacific Ocean The Atlantic Ocean The Baltic Sea
     The Indian Ocean The Red Sea
2. Note the structures : Past tenses + Past passives in this lesson

The 'Mary Celeste' was built in 1861 in Nova Scotia, Canada, as a cargo-carrying sailing-ship. When it was launched, it was given the name 'The Amazon'. It was not a lucky ship. The first captain died a few days after it was registered, and on its first voyage in 1862 it was badly damaged in a collision. While it was being repaired in port, it caught fire. In 1863 it crossed the Atlantic for the first time, and in the English Channel it collided with another ship which sank. 'The Amazon' was badly damaged itself. Four years later, in 1867, it ran aground on Cape

Con tàu "Mary Celeste" được đóng vào năm 1861 ở Nova Scotia, Canada là tàu buồm để chở hàng. Khi nó được hạ thủy, người ta đặt lên cho nó là tàu "Amazon". Nó là một con tàu kém may mắn. Thuyền trưởng đầu tiên chết chỉ vài ngày sau khi nó được đăng ký, và trong chuyến hải trình đầu tiên của nó vào năm 1862 nó đã bị hư hại nặng sau một cuộc đụng tàu. Khi đang được sửa chữa ở bến cảng, nó phát cháy. Năm 1863 nó vượt Đại tây dương lần đầu tiên và ở eo biển Manche nó va vào một chiếc tàu khác làm chiếc này bị chìm. Chiếc "Amazon" cũng bị hư hại nặng. Bốn năm sau đó, vào năm 1867 nó mắc cạn

Breton Island, off the Canadian coast. The ship was almost completely wrecked and had to be rebuilt. It was then sold and the name was changed to the 'Mary Celeste'. Sailors are very superstitious and dislike sailing on ships which have been unlucky or which have changed their names. Many sailors refused to sail on the 'Mary Celeste'.

On November 5th 1872, the 'Mary Celeste' left New York, carrying a cargo of commercial alcohol to Genoa in Italy. There were eleven people on board, Captain Briggs, his wife and two-year-old daughter, and a crew of eight. Briggs was an experienced captain, and a very religious man. In his cabin there was a harmonium, which was used for playing hymns. A month later the 'Mary Celeste' was seen by another ship, the 'Dei Gratia', about halfway between the Azores and the Portuguese coast. Captain Moorhouse of the 'Dei Gratia', a friend of Captain Briggs, noticed that the ship was sailing strangely. When the 'Mary Celeste' did not answer his signal, he decided to investigate. He sent a small boat to find out what was wrong.

The 'Mary Celeste' was completely deserted.

- The only lifeboat was missing.
- All the sails were up, and in good condition.
- All the cargo was there.
- The ship had obviously been through storms. The glass on the compass was broken.
- The windows of the deck cabins had been covered with wooden planks.
- There was a metre of water in the cargo hold, which was not enough to be dangerous.
- The water pumps were working perfectly.
- There was enough food for six months, and plenty of fresh water.
- All the crew's personal possessions (clothes, boots, pipes and tobacco etc.) were on board.
- There were toys on the captain's bed.
- There was food and drink on the cabin table.
- Only the navigation instruments and ship's papers were missing.
- The last entry in the ship's log-book had been made eleven days earlier, 1000 km west, but the ship had continued in a straight line.
- The fore-hatch was found open.

ở đảo Cape Breton, ngoài khơi bờ biển Canada. Con tàu hầu như bị tàn phá và phải được đóng lại. Sau đó nó được đem bán và người ta đổi tên nó thành "Mary Celeste". Các thủy thủ thì rất dị đoan và không thích làm việc trên những con tàu kém may mắn hoặc phải đổi tên. Nhiều người từ chối đi trên tàu "Mary Celeste".

Vào ngày 5 tháng 11 năm 1872, tàu "Mary Celeste" rời New York, chở cồn tới Genoa thuộc Italia. Có 11 người ở trên tàu, thuyền trưởng Briggs, vợ ông ta cùng đứa con gái 2 tuổi và thủy thủ đoàn 8 người. Briggs là một thuyền trưởng dạn dày kinh nghiệm và là một người rất sùng đạo. Trong phòng ông ta có một cây đàn harmonium dùng để chơi các bài thánh ca. Một tháng sau, một chiếc tàu khác, chiếc "Dei Gratia" phát hiện ra chiếc "Mary Celeste", ở khoảng giữa quần đảo Azores và bờ biển Bồ Đào Nha. Thuyền trưởng Moorhouse của tàu "Dei Gratia", một người bạn của thuyền trưởng Briggs, nhận thấy chiếc "Mary Celeste" đang chạy một cách kỳ lạ. Khi chiếc Mary Celeste" không trả lời các tín hiệu của ông ta thì ông ta quyết định tìm hiểu. Ông ta phái một chiếc thuyền nhỏ đi xem chuyện gì đã xảy ra.

Tàu "Mary Celeste" hoàn toàn vắng lặng.

- Chiếc xuồng cứu sinh duy nhất đã không còn nữa.
- Tất cả buồm đều đang được giương lên, và vẫn còn tốt.
- Hàng hóa vẫn còn nguyên.
- Rõ ràng là con tàu đã qua một cơn bão. Kính trên mặt la bàn bị vỡ.
- Cửa sổ các phòng trên boong đều bị chắn bằng các thanh gỗ.
- Trong hầm đựng hàng có một thước nước, không đến nỗi nguy hiểm.
- Các bơm nước vẫn còn hoạt động tốt.
- Còn đủ lương thực cho sáu tháng nữa, và còn nhiều nước ngọt.
- Tất cả đồ dùng cá nhân của thủy thủ đoàn (áo quần, giày ống, tẩu thuốc và thuốc sợi v.v...) đều còn trên tàu.
- Có một số đồ chơi của trẻ con trên giường của thuyền trưởng
- Còn đồ ăn đồ uống trên bàn trong phòng.
- Chỉ có các thiết bị định hướng và giấy tờ về con tàu là bị mất.
- Dòng ghi cuối cùng trong nhật ký hải trình của con tàu đã được ghi 11 ngày trước đó, cách đó 1000 km về phía tây, nhưng con tàu đã chạy theo một đường thẳng.
- Nắp hầm chứa hàng phía mũi tàu đang mở.

- There were two deep marks on the bows, near the water-line.
- There was a deep cut on the ship's rail, made by an axe.
- There were old brown bloodstains on the deck, and on the captain's sword, which was in the cabin.

Captain Moorhouse put some sailors on the 'Mary Celeste', who sailed it to Portugal. There was a long official investigation, but the story of what had happened on the ship, and what had happened to the crew, still remains a mystery. Captain Moorhouse and his crew were given the salvage money for bringing the ship to port. Many explanations have been suggested, but none of them have ever been proved.

- Có 2 vết cắt sâu ở mũi tàu, gần đường mớn nước.
- Có một vết chém sâu dọc thành tàu, vết do rìu chém.
- Trên boong tàu có những vệt máu khô sẫm, và trên thanh kiếm của thuyền trưởng, ở trong phòng cũng có vết máu.

Thuyền trưởng Moorhouse phải một vài thủy thủ lên tàu "Mary Celeste" và lái nó về Bồ Đào Nha. Người ta đã tiến hành một cuộc điều tra chính thức rất lâu dài về vụ này, nhưng những gì đã xảy ra trên con tàu và cho thủy thủ đoàn vẫn còn là một bí ẩn. Thuyền trưởng Moorhouse và thủy thủ đoàn của ông ta đã được thưởng tiền cứu hộ vì đã đem con tàu về cảng. Nhiều lời giải thích đã được đưa ra, nhưng chưa có cái nào đã được xác minh cả.

Exercise

Find words which mean :

1 All the people working on a ship.
2 The official, daily, written record of a ship's voyage.
3 A religious song.
4 Put a boat into the water.
5 An instrument that shows the position of 'north'.
6 A musical instrument, like a small organ.
7 A long, thin, narrow, flat piece of wood.
8 Payment given to those who save others' property at sea.
9 Goods carried on a ship.
10 A machine for forcing water into or out of something.

PRACTICE

Language summary

Someone did it... it was done.
Someone did them... they were done.

Someone was doing it... it was being done.
Someone was doing them... they were being done.

Someone had done it... it had been done.

-an/-ian	-ish	-ese
Algeria *Algerian*	Denmark *Danish*	Sudan *Sudanese*
Argentina	Finland	Senegal .....
Austria	Ireland	Portugal .....
Belgium	Poland	Japan .....
Brazil	Sweden	Burma .....
Canada	Turkey	China .....
Egypt	Britain	Lebanon .....
Hungary	England	Malta .....
Germany	Scotland	Nepal .....
India	Spain	Vietnam .....
Mexico		
Soviet Union		
United States		

others		
Czechoslovakia *Czech*	The Netherlands	Pakistan *Parkistani*
France	Switzerland	Iraq .....
Greece	Thailand	Kuwait .....
Iceland	Wales	Yemen .....

Exercise 1
Complete this table.

Exercise 2
'Someone gave me a present'.

You can say
A *'I was given a present.'*
B *'A present was given to me.'*
'I was given a present.' is more usual.

Change these sentences in both ways.
1 The boss promised them an increase in salary.
2 The company had offered her a good job.
3 His father had left him a fortune.

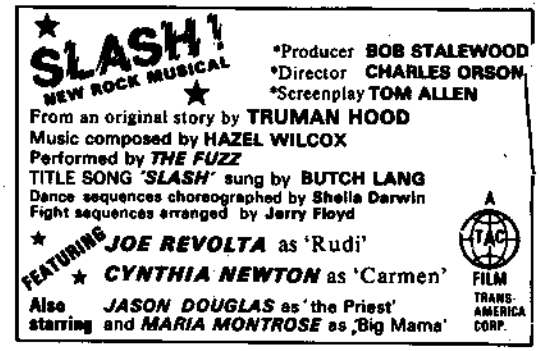
Exercise 3
Dorothy Booker was born in a small village near London. She moved when she was a child. The village has become a 'new town' and when she returned recently, everything had changed. The whole area looked like a building site !
They were building new houses.
New houses were being built.
Continue.
1 They were constructing a new shopping centre.
2 They were planting trees everywhere.
3 They were constructing roads.
4 They were building a school.
5 They were demolishing old houses.

Exercise 4
Rudi was played by Joe Revolta.
Write twelve more sentences.

Bài tập 1
Hoàn thành bảng trên.

Bài tập 2
Một người nào đó đã tặng tôi một món quà.
Bạn có thể nói :
A. Tôi được tặng một món quà.
B. Món quà được tặng cho tôi.
"Tôi được tặng một món quà" thì thông dụng hơn.
Đổi các câu sau đây ra hai cách :
4 They sent me a telegram.
5 Someone had given them a map of the area.
6 Someone showed her the new house.

Bài tập 3
Dorothy Brooker sinh ra ở một ngôi làng nhỏ gần Luân Đôn. Cô đã chuyển chỗ ở khi cô còn bé. Ngôi làng bây giờ trở thành "một thị trấn tinh mới" và khi cô trở về gần đây, mọi thứ đều đã thay đổi. Cả vùng trông giống như một công trường xây dựng !
Họ đang xây những căn nhà mới.
Những căn nhà mới đang được xây.
Hãy tiếp tục :



LISTENING COSOLIDATION Units 25-28

Dialogue A

Listen

Keith Angela !
Angela Yes ?
Keith Have you seen my wallet anywhere ?
Angela No. Why ? You haven't lost it again, have you ?
Keith I hope not. No, I can't have done. It must be here somewhere.
Angela When did you last see it ?
Keith Um, this morning. I've been looking for it for nearly half an hour. It isn't here.
Angela Keith ! You must have left it somewhere.
Keith Yes, I suppose so.
Listen and repeat

Proper names
- Angela /'ændʒələ - dʒɪl-/
- Keith /ki:θ/

A1 Listen

A: You haven't lost it again, have you ?
B: No, I can't have done.
C: No, I can't have done.
A: He hasn't done it again, has he ?
B: No, he can't have done.
C: No, I can't have done.

Now you do the same

You haven't lost it again, have you ?..... No, I can't have done.
He hasn't lost it again, has he ? ..... No, he can't have done.
She hasn't lost it again, has she ?..... No, she can't have done.
They haven't lost it again, have they ?
.... No, they can't have done.
We haven't lost it again, have we ?
..... No, we can't have done.
I haven't lost it again, have I ? ..... No, you can't have done.

A2 Listen

A: I can't find it. It isn't here.
B: You must have left it somewhere.
C: You must have left it somewhere.
A: She won't find them. They aren't here.
B: She must have left them somewhere.
C: She must have left them somewhere.

Now you do the same

I can't find it. It isn't here .....You must have left it somewhere.
She won't find them. They aren't here.....She must have left them somewhere.
You won't find them. They aren't here.....I must have left them somewhere.
He can't find it. It isn't here .....He must have left it somewhere.

Dialogue B

Listen

Angela Think back. Where did you go this morning ?
Keith I went to the bank...
Angela Could you have left it there, perhaps ? You might have done.
Keith Oh, Angela ! Of course not. I got some money and put it in the wallet.
Angela Where did you go after that ?
Keith The post office. I bought some tamps.
Angela You lost it somewhere, Keith. It might have been there.
Keith No, no. I can't have lost it there, because I bought some petrol on the way home.
Angela How did you pay ?
Keith Cash. I remember, because I didn't have any change. I had to give them a twenty-pound note.
Listen and repeat

B1 Listen

A: Did I leave it there ? It's possible, but I don't think so.
B: You might have done.

Now you do the same

Did I leave it there ? It's possible, but I don't think so
..... You might have done.

C: You mught have done.
A: Did I leave it there ? No, that's impossible.
B: You can't have done.
C: You can't have done.

B2 Listen
A: The bank...now, did I leave it there ?
B: Could you have left it at the bank, perhaps ?
C: Could you have left it at the bank, perhaps ?
A: The post office...now, did I lose it there ?
B: Could you have lost it at the post office, perhaps ?
C: Could you have lost it at the post office, perhaps ?

B3 Listen
A: You lost it. What about the post office ? It's possible, but I don't think so.
B: It might have been there.
C: It might have been there.
A: What about the bank ? Well, it is possible.
B: It may have been there.
C: It may have been there.

Did I leave it there ? No that's impossible
..... You can have done.
Did I leave it there ? Well, it's possible ..... You may have done.
Did I leave it there ? Yes, I'm sure that I did ! .....
You must have done.

Now you do the same

The bank.... now, did I leave it there ? .....could you have left it at the bank, perhaps ?
The post office...now, did I lose it there ? .....could you have lost it at the post office, perhaps ?
The petrol station...now, did I drop it there ?.....could you have dropped it at the petrol station, perhaps ?
The office...now, did I forget it there ?.....could you have forgotten it at the office, perhaps ?

Now you do the same

You lost it. What about the post office ? It's possible, but I don't think so .....It might have been there.
What about the bank ? Well, it is possible
.....It may have been there.
The office ? No, I didn't go there today
.....It can't have been there .
The kitchen ? Yes, I'm sure it was there
.....It must have been there .

Dialogue C

Listen

Angela I'd better help you look for it. Have you looked on the sofa ?
Keith No.
Angela It might have slipped under a cushion, you know.
Keith Let's see. No, it's not here. But look at this...one, two, three pens, some money, half a bar of chocolate...and a handkerchief.
Angela I lost that pen a month ago. It must have been here for ages ! Have you looked in all your pockets ?
Keith Angela ! That's the first place I looked.

Listen and repeat

C1 Listen
A: I lost that pen a month ago.
B: It must have been here for a month.
C: It must have been here for a month.
A: I lost some money on Tuesday.
B: It must have been here since Tuesday.
C: It must have been here since Tuesday.

C2 Listen
A: Did it slip under a cushion ?
B: It might have slipped under a cushion.

Now you do the same

I lost that pen a month ago .....It must have been here for a month.
I lost some money on Tuesday .....It must have been here since Tuesday.
I lost that handkerchief a week ago .....It must have been here for a week.
I lost that chocolate at Christmas.....It must have been here since Christmas.

C: It might have slipped under a cushion.
A: Did it fall behind the sofa ?
B: It might have fallen behind the sofa.
C: It might have fallen behind the sofa.

Now you do the same
Did it slip under a cushion ? .....it might have slipped under a cushion.
Did it fall behind the sofa ? .....It might have fallen behind the sofa.
Did it go under the carpet ? .....It might have gone under the carpet.
Did it drop behind the desk ? .....It might have dropped behind the desk.

Dialogue D

Listen

Angela We have looked everywhere. Are you sure you brought it home ?
Keith Yes, I know I did. I got into the car at the petrol station, put it on the seat and drove home.
Angela You have checked the car, haven't you,Keith ?
Keith The car ! Of course. Let's see.
Angela Here it is ! You should have looked here first.
Keith Thank goodness. Actually, I ought to have put it in my pocket. I'm always losing it.
Angela I lose things, too. Still, you've got it now !

Listen and repeat

D1 Listen
A: He didn't look in the car.
B: He should have looked in the car.
C: He should have looked in the car.
A: He didn't think about it.
B: He should have thought about it.
C: He should have thought about it.

Now you do the same
He didn't look in the car .....He should have looked in the car
He didn't think about it .....He should have thought about it.
He didn't find it quickly .....He should have found it quickly.
He didn't check the seat .....He should have checked the seat.

D2 Listen
A: He didn't put it in his pocket.
B: He ought to have put it in his pocket.
C: He ought to have put it in his pocket.
A: He didn't remember.
B: He ought to have remembered.
C: He ought to have remembered.

Now you do the same
He didn't put it in his pocket .....He ought to have put it in his pocket.
He didn't remember .....He ought to have remembered.
He wasn't careful .....He ought to have been careful.
He didn't find it .....He ought to have found it.

Listening

Listen

Dr Blake has just arrived at Paul Godfrey's house. Paul's wife phoned an hour ago.
Paul Dr Blake. Thank you for coming.
Dr Blake That's all right. What's the trouble, Mr Godfrey ?
Paul I was sick all last night, and I've been sick three times today. It must have been something I ate yesterday.
Dr Blake What did you eat yesterday ?
Paul All I had during the day was a cheese sandwich. It can't have been that. It must have been something at the restaurant. You see, I went out to dinner.
Dr Blake What did you have ?
Paul Steak. Could it have been that, do you think ?
Dr Blake It's possible. But it's pretty unlikely. What else did you have ?

Paul Let's see. Potatoes, courgettes, carrots, green salad, ice-cream cake, cheese and biscuits, coffee... oh, and a prawn cocktail for a starter.

Dr Blake Ah. Seafood. That's much more likely. Seafood is very common cause of food poisoning.

Paul Really ? Perhaps I shouldn't have chosen it.

Dr Blake I wouldn't say that. It's usually quite all right. I'll just check you over, then I'll give you some medicine to stop the vomiting.

Paul Thank you, doctor.

Dr Blake You should have phoned me in the night, you know.

Paul I didn't want to trouble you, doctor. Anyway, my wife didn't think it was food poisoning. Er... I'd had a lot to drink, too.

Dr Blake I see. Let's have a look at you then.

New words

- courgette *(n)* /kɔːˈʒɛt/ = small green marrow eaten as a vegetable.
- to vomit /ˈvɒmɪt/ = to throw up = nôn, ói. vomiting *(n)*

---

*Listen again and answer the questions when you hear this sound. BELL**

1

Paul Dr Blake. Thank you for coming.

Dr Blake That's all right. What's the trouble, Mr Godfrey ?

Paul I was sick all last night, and I've been sick three times today. It must have been something I ate yesterday.

Dr Blake What did you eat yesterday ?

Paul All I had during the day was a cheese sandwich. It can't have been that. It must have been something at the restaurant. You see, I went out to dinner.

BELL*

What made him sick, do you think ?

..... It must have been something he ate.

Was it the cheese sandwich, do you think ?

..... It can't have been the cheese sandwich

So, what must it have been ?

..... It must have been something at the restaurant

2

Dr Blake What did you have ?

Paul Steak. Could it have been that, do you think?

Dr Blake It's possible. But it's pretty unlikely. What else did you have ?

Paul Let's see. Potatoes, courgettes, carrots, green salad, ice-cream cake, cheese and biscuits, coffee... oh, and a prawn cocktail for a starter.

Dr Blake Ah. Seafood. That's much more likely. Seafood is a very common cause of food poisoning.

BELL*

Does the doctor think it was the steak ?

..... No, it's posssible, but it's pretty unlikely.

What about the prawn cocktail ?

..... That's much more likely.

3

Paul Really ? Perhaps I shouldn't have chosen it.

Dr Blake I wouldn't say that. It's usually quite all right. I'll just check you over , then I'll give you some medicine to stop the vomiting.

BELL*

Why is he giving him some medicine ?

..... He's giving him some medicine to stop the vomiting.

4

Paul Thank you, doctor.

Dr Blake You should have phoned me in the night, you know.

Paul I didn't want to trouble you, doctor. Anyway, my wife didn't think it was food poisoning. Er... I'd had a lot to drink, too.

Dr Blake I see. Let's have a look at you then.

BELL*

When should he have phoned the doctor ? ..... He should have phoned him in the night.

Why didn't his wife think it was food poisoning? ..... Because he'd had a lot to drink, too.

Open conversation

Listen and reply

A: Have you ever bought anything that didn't work ?

B: . . . . . .

A: Well what was it ?

B: . . . . . .

A: What was wrong with it ?

B: . . . . . .

A: Did you take it back to the shop ?

B: . . . . . .

A: What happened ?

B: . . . . . .

A: That's the end of section seven.

Unit 29 The Mary Celeste (2)

Con tàu Mary Celeste (2)

VOCABULARY

- **abandon** *(v)* /ə'bændən/ go away from (a person, thing, place) not intending to return = bỏ rơi *a baby ~ ed by its parents.*
- **barrel** *(n)* /'bærəl/ thùng chứa
- **disease** *(n)* /dɪ'zi:z/ illness of the body, of the mind or of plants, caused by infection or internal disorder = bệnh tật
  a serious, infectious, incurable ~.
- **emergency drill** *(n)* /ɪ'mɜ:dʒənsɪ drɪl/ luyện tập cấp cứu
- **ergot** *(n)* /'ɜ:gət/ nấm cựa
- **fungus** *(n)* /'fʌŋgəs/ nấm
- **giant** *(n)* /'dʒaɪənt/ (attrib) unusually large person, animal, etc = người, vật to lớn
  a ~ cabbage.
  giant - size = giant - sized *(adj)*
- **infectious** *(adj)* /ɪn'fekʃəs/ (of a disease) caused by bacteria, etc that are passed on from one person to another = truyền nhiễm
  Flu is highly ~.
  infection *(n)* /ɪn'fekʃn/ = sự truyền nhiễm
  be exposed to ~.
- **interrupt** *(v)* /ˌɪntə'rʌpt/ break the continuity of (st) temporarily = ngăn lại *Trade between the two countries was ~ ed by the war.*
  interrupter *(n)* = person or thing that interrupts.
  interruption *(n)*
- **medieval** *(adj)* /ˌmedɪ'i:vl/ of the Middle Ages, about AD 1100 – 1400 = thuộc thời Trung cổ. *~ history, literature.*
- **monster** *(n)* /'mɒnstə/ ác quỉ
- **mutiny** *(n)* /'mju:tɪnɪ/ rebellion against lawful authority, esp by soldiers or sailors = cuộc nổi loạn trên tàu *The crew tried to seize control of the ship, and were shot for ~.*
- **octopus** *(n)* /'ɒktəpəs/ con bạch tuộc
- **overturn** *(v)* /ˌəʊvə'tɜ:n/ turn over or upside - down = lật nhào *The boat ~ ed.*
- **pirate** *(n)* /'paɪərət/ person on a ship who attacks and robs other ships at sea = cướp biển *a ~ crew, ship, flag.*
- **religious mania** *(n)* /rɪ'lɪdʒəs'meɪnɪə/ cuồng tín, sùng đạo điên cuồng
- **rope** *(n)* /rəʊp/ thick cord made by twisting finer cords together = dây thừng *The kids tied a (piece of) rope to the tree and used it as a swing.*
- **rye** *(n)* /raɪ/ lúa mạch
- **sea serpent** *(n)* /si:'sɜ:pənt/ con rắn biển
- **steer** *(v)* /stɪə/ direct or control the course of (a boat, car, etc) = lái (tàu, máy bay)
  ~ a boat into harbour.
- **tornado** *(n)* /tɔ:'neɪdəʊ/ violent and destructive storm over a small area; whirlwind = bão tố *The town was hit by a ~.*
- **vegetarian** *(n)* /ˌvedʒɪ'teərɪən/ person who eats no meat = người ăn chay, ăn rau cải
  a ~ meal, restaurant

EXPRESSIONS

to do 150 kph = chạy 150 km/g
to boil over = sôi trào ra

PROPER NAMES

Santa Maria /'sæntə mə'rɪə/

USAGE

Notice this : to fall in love (with someone)
and to be in love (with someone)
A (wo) man in love

GRAMMAR NOTES

1) Verb pattern S + V + to-infinitive
The to-infinitive in this pattern is one of purpose, aim, or intention (In Vietnamese we often say : để, cốt để, để mà...). A lot of verbs can be used in this pattern.

Ex : 1. We *stopped* to *have* a rest
2. I am *writing* to *hear* your explanation
3. Somebody has *called* to *see* you

2) Speculating about the past (2) (See units 25 and 27) must, could, may, might, might even, couldn't, can't, should, shouldn't + have been doing it = expressing speculations about st happening at a certain time in the past.

What do you think happened?

Sarah I don't know what happened, but it must have happened suddenly.

Mark Why do you think that ?

Sarah Think about it. There were toys on the captain's bed, weren't there ? The child must have been playing, and they must have interrupted her suddenly.

Mark Yes, that's true. And the food was on the table. They must have been eating, or getting ready to eat.

Sarah I'll tell you my theory. The lifeboat was missing, right ? They could have been practising their emergency drill. They must have got into the boat, and launched it.

Mark All right, but what happened to the boat?

Sarah Ah ! They may have been rowing the lifeboat round the ship, and there must have been a gust of wind, then the ship could have moved forward and run down the lifeboat. That explains the marks on the bows !

Mark Come on ! They can't all have been sitting in the lifeboat. What about the captain ? He should have been steering the ship !

Sarah Ah, he might have been watching the drill, and jumped in to save the others !

Some possible explanations of why the crew abandoned the ship.

Amazingly, all of these have been suggested at some time.

1 There was water in the hold. The crew panicked and abandoned the ship because they thought it was going to sink. (Why ? The captain was very experienced, and the ship was in good condition. The water-pumps were working.)

2 The child fell into the sea. The mother jumped in to save her. They launched a lifeboat to rescue her. (All of them ? Why?)

Theo bạn thì điều gì đã xảy ra.

Mark : Tôi không biết rõ điều gì đã xảy ra, nhưng ắt hẳn điều đó phải đột ngột lắm.

Mark : Sao bạn lại nghĩ vậy ?

Sarah : Thử nghĩ xem. Có đồ chơi trên giường thuyền trưởng, phải không nào ? Ắt hẳn là đứa bé đang chơi và người ta đã thình lình ngăn nó lại.

Mark : Ừ, đúng đấy. Và còn thức ăn trên bàn nữa chứ. Ắt hẳn là người ta đang ăn hoặc sắp sửa ăn.

Sarah : Để tôi nói cho bạn nghe giả thuyết của tôi. Xuồng cứu mạng không còn nữa, đúng không nào ? Có thể họ đã thực tập tình huống khẩn cấp. Họ leo xuống xuồng và hạ nó xuống biển.

Mark : Cứ cho là vậy đi. Rồi chiếc xuồng gặp chuyện gì ?

Sarah : A, có thể họ chèo xuồng quanh con tàu, và có thể có một cơn gió mạnh làm cho con tàu giạt về phía trước và làm cho xuồng chìm. Điều này giải thích vết cắt trên mũi tàu.

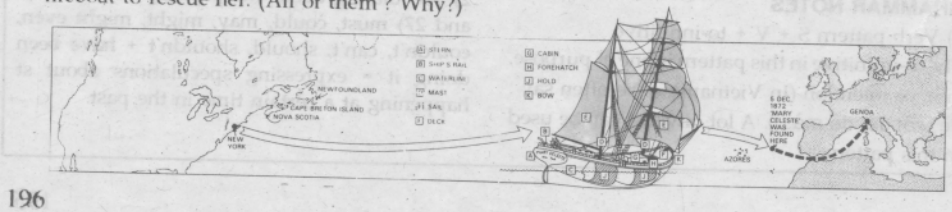
Mark : Không thể được. Họ đâu có thể nào ngồi cả trên xuồng cứu mạng. Còn thuyền trưởng thì sao ? Lẽ ra ông ta phải lái tàu chứ.

Sarah : À, có thể ông ta theo dõi cuộc diễn tập và nhảy xuống biển để cứu những người khác.

Một số lời giải thích có thể có về lý do thủy thủ đoàn bỏ tàu.

Thật đáng kinh ngạc là tất cả các lời giải thích sau đây đều đã được đưa ra tại một thời điểm nào đó.

1. Trong hầm tàu có nước. Thủy thủ đoàn hốt hoảng và bỏ tàu bởi vì họ nghĩ là nó sắp chìm. (Sao lại như vậy được ? Thuyền trưởng là người rất có kinh nghiệm, và con tàu vẫn còn tốt. Các máy bơm vẫn còn hoạt động mà).
2. Đứa bé té xuống biển. Người mẹ nhảy xuống theo để cứu nó. Người ta hạ xuống cứu sinh để cứu họ (Tất cả họ sao ?)



3 One of the barrels of alcohol was damaged. Perhaps there was a small explosion. The hatch cover was off, either because of the explosion or to let the gas escape. They thought all the cargo might explode. (But not much evidence of an explosion.)

4 The last log entry was 1000 km west, near Santa Maria Island. Maybe the ship was in danger of running aground on the island. The crew left the ship in a storm. (How did the ship continue in a straight line for eleven days ?)

5 There was no wind, so they got into the lifeboat to tow the ship. The rope broke. (Why were the woman and child in the lifeboat ? Surely the ship was too heavy ?)

6 They saw an island which was not on the map, and went to investigate. (All of them?)

7 One of the crew had a terrible, infectious disease. The others left to escape from it. The one with the disease killed himself.

What about the lifeboat ?

If the crew left the ship by lifeboat, what happened to them ?

1 It could have sunk in a storm.

2 The ship itself could have run down the lifeboat.

3 It could have drifted away, and all of them could have died of hunger and thirst.

4 They might have reached land. They were robbed and killed there.

5 A whale or sharks might even have overturned the boat !

One, or all of them, went mad.

1 They drank some of the commercial alcohol. There was a fight. Some were killed, the others left. (But commercial alcohol is very poisonous.)

2 The cook was crazy and poisoned everybody. Then he killed himself after throwing the bodies into the sea.

3 The captain had an attack of religious mania, killed everybody, then himself.

3. Một thùng cồn bị hư hại. Có thể có một vụ nổ nhỏ. Nắp hầm bị bật ra, hoặc là do sức nổ hoặc là để thoát khí. Họ nghĩ cả hầm hàng có thể nổ (nhưng không có mấy bằng chứng về một vụ nổ).

4. Điểm ghi nhật ký hải trình lần cuối là ở cách đó 1000km về phía tây, gần đảo Santa Maria. Có thể con tàu đang đứng trước hiểm họa bị mắc cạn ở đảo. Thủy thủ đoàn rời tàu trong một cơn bão (làm sao con tàu có thể tiếp tục chạy thẳng suốt 11 ngày ?).

5. Không có gió, vì vậy họ lên xuồng cứu sinh để kéo tàu đi. Dây kéo bị đứt (tại sao cả người phụ nữ và đứa bé cũng lên xuồng ? Chắc chắn là con tàu quá nặng chứ ?).

6. Họ thấy một hòn đảo chưa có trên bản đồ, và lên đảo để xem xét. (Tất cả họ sao ?)

7. Một người trong thủy thủ đoàn bị một chứng bệnh truyền nhiễm ghê gớm. Những người khác bỏ tàu để khỏi bị lây bệnh. Người mắc bệnh tự sát.

Còn xuồng cứu sinh thì sao ?

Nếu thủy thủ đoàn rời tàu lên xuồng cứu sinh, điều gì đã xảy ra cho họ ?

1. Xuồng có thể bị đắm trong một cơn bão.

2. Con tàu có thể làm đắm xuồng.

3. Có thể xuồng bị trôi giạt đi và tất cả bọn họ đều chết vì đói và khát.

4. Có thể họ lên được đất liền. Họ bị cướp bóc và giết hại.

5. Một con cá voi hoặc những con cá mập có thể làm lật xuồng.

Một, hoặc tất cả mọi người phát điên

1. Họ uống một ít cồn. Đã xảy ra một cuộc ẩu đả. Một số bị giết, những người khác rời tàu (nhưng cồn này rất độc kia mà).

2. Người đầu bếp bị điên và đầu độc mọi người. Rồi ông ta tự sát sau khi ném xác mọi người xuống biển.

3. Thuyền trưởng phát cuồng vì quá sùng đạo, giết mọi người rồi tự sát.

4 There was a fungus called 'ergot' in the bread. This is a fungus which can grow on rye bread. It is very similar to the drug LSD. Whole villages had been poisoned in this way in medieval Europe.

Crime

1 The 'Dei Gratia' attacked the 'Mary Celeste' and killed everybody.
2 Pirates attacked and killed them.
3 There was a mutiny (a revolution against the captain of a ship). Two of the crew were criminals. There was a fight. Some were killed. The others left.
4 Mrs Briggs fell in love with one of the crew. Again there was a fight.
5 The crew of the 'Mary Celeste' attacked and robbed another ship, and left on the other ship with its cargo. (Which other ship ? There are no records.)
6 They found an abandoned ship with a valuable cargo, and stole it.
7 Captain Briggs and captain Moorhouse planned everything together, for the salvage money. The ship was never abandoned. None of the story was true.

Outside forces

1 A spaceship from another planet took everybody away.
2 A giant wave knocked them all from the deck, or a tornado.
3 A sea monster (a giant octopus or sea serpent) attacked the ship.
4 Men living below the sea attacked the ship, when it passed over the old site of Atlantis.

4. Có một thứ nấm gọi là "ergot" trong bánh mì. Đây là một loại nấm có thể mọc trên bánh mì làm từ lúa mạch. Nó rất giống chất LSD[1] Ở châu Âu thời trung cổ có những làng bị đầu độc tập thể theo cách này.

Tội ác

1. Chiếc "Dei Gratia" tấn công tàu "Mary Celeste" và giết mọi người.
2. Hải tặc đã tấn công và giết họ.
3. Có một cuộc phản loạn (cuộc nổi dậy chống thuyền trưởng của một con tàu). Hai thủy thủ là bọn tội phạm. Có giao đấu. Một số bị giết. Những người khác rời tàu.
4. Bà Briggs yêu một thủy thủ. Lại có đánh nhau.
5. Thủy thủ đoàn "Mary Celeste" tấn công và cướp bóc một tàu khác, rồi ra đi trên chiếc tàu đó cùng với hàng hóa của nó (Tàu nào ? Không có hồ sơ nào ghi lại chuyện này).
6. Họ phát hiện một con tàu bị bỏ với hàng hóa có giá trị và cướp tàu này.
7. Thuyền trưởng Briggs và thuyền trưởng Moorhouse cùng nhau sắp đặt mọi chuyện để lấy tiền cứu hộ. Con tàu không bị bỏ và chẳng có chi tiết nào của câu chuyện là đúng cả.

Các ngoại lực

1. Một phi thuyền từ một hành tinh khác đã bắt đi mọi người trên tàu.
2. Một cột sóng khổng lồ đã cuốn họ khỏi boong tàu, hoặc là một trận cuồng phong.
3. Một thủy quái (một con bạch tuộc khổng lồ hoặc một con rắn biển) đã tấn công con tàu.
4. Bọn người sống dưới biển đã tấn công con tàu khi nó đi qua lục địa cổ Atlantis.

(1) LSD – Lysergic acid diethylamide : chất gây ảo giác

PRACTICE

Language summary

They	*must* *could* *may* *might* *might even* *couldn't* *can't*	*have been doing it.*	*He killed himself after throwing the bodies into the sea.*
	should *shouldn't*		

Exercise 1

1 *He must have been drinking.*

Bài tập 1

2 . . . . . .

. . . . . .

3 . . . . . .

. . . . . .

1 Hắn là hắn đã uống rượu

4 . . . . . .

. . . . . .

5 . . . . . .

. . . . . .

6 . . . . . .

. . . . . .

Exercise 2

What do you think these people were doing a short time ago ?

Write sentences with : may/might/could have been (doing)...

Bài tập 2

Bạn nghĩ những người này đang làm gì cách đây ít lâu ?

Viết các câu với : may/might/could have been (doing)

1 A . . . . . .

B . . . . . .

C . . . . . .

2 A . . . . . .

B . . . . . .

C . . . . . .

3 A . . . . . .

B . . . . . .

C . . . . . .

Exercise 3

Someone says 'I heard Maria speaking French.'
You know she doesn't speak French.

She couldn't have been speaking French.

1 The traffic policeman says 'You were doing 150kh.' You know the maximum speed of your car is 120 k/h.
. . . . . .

2 Someone says 'I saw Jack sitting in a café.' You know he is out of town.
. . . . . .

Exercise 4

She was smoking near the petrol pump.
She shouldn't have been smoking near the petrol pump.

1 The night watchman was sleeping.
. . . . . .

2 He was laughing during the funeral.
. . . . . .

Exercise 5

He was driving on the left in Germany when he crashed.

A *He shouldn't have been driving on the left.*
B *He should have been driving on the right.*

1 The student was sleeping during the lecture.
A . . . . . .
B . . . . . .

2 The footballer was arguing with the referee when the other team scored.
A . . . . . .
B . . . . . .

Exercise 6

He took his clothes off, then he jumped into the river.
He jumped into the river after taking his clothes off.

1 First she wrote a suicide note, then she jumped out of the window.
. . . . . .

2 He asked her to marry him, then he kissed her.
. . . . . .

Bài tập 3

Một người nào đó nói "Tôi nghe Maria nói tiếng Pháp".
Bạn biết là cô ấy không nói được tiếng Pháp.
Cô ấy đã không thể nào nói được tiếng Pháp' đâu.

3 Someone says 'I saw Jane eating in the Steak House.' You know she's a vegetarian.
. . . . . .

4 Someone says 'Our baby was reading Shakespeare !'
. . . . . .

Bài tập 4

Cô ấy đang hút thuốc gần vòi bơm xăng.
Lẽ ra cô không nên hút thuốc gần vòi bơm xăng như vậy.

3 He was driving at 100 k/h through the town centre.
. . . . . .

Bài tập 5

Anh ấy đang lái bên lề trái ở Đức thì đụng xe.

A Lẽ ra anh ta không nên lái xe bên trái.
B Lẽ ra anh ta nên lái xe bên phải.

3 She was watching T.V. when the milk boiled over.
A . . . . . .
B . . . . . .

4 He was looking at a pretty girl when he walked into the lamp-post.
A . . . . . .
B . . . . . .

Bài tập 6

Anh ấy cởi quần áo ra rồi nhảy xuống sông.

Anh ấy nhảy xuống sông sau khi cởi quần áo ra.

3 He saw the accident. He telephoned the police.
. . . . . .

4 First she asked permission, then she went home.
. . . . . .

Unit 30 Speculation

Sự suy đoán

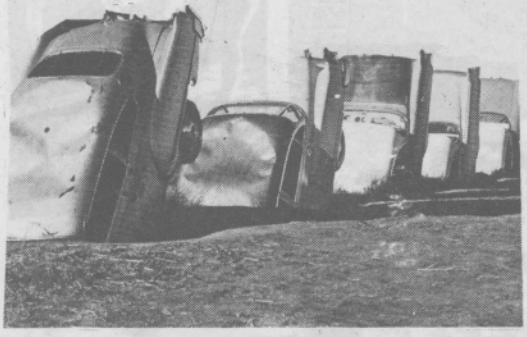
VOCABULARY

- **auction** *(n)* /'ɔ:kʃn/ = auction sale = public event when the method of selling things in which each item is sold to the person who offers the most money for it = cuộc bán đấu giá *attend all the local ~ s.*
  auction *(v)* = sell (st) by auction.
  auctioneer *(n)* /ˌɔ:kʃə'nɪə/ person whose job is conducting auctions
- **billboard** *(n)* /'bɪlbɔ:d/ (US) large outdoor board for advertisements = bảng dán thông báo
- **bowler (hat)** *(n)* /'bəʊlə hæt/ (US *derby*) hard, usu black felt hat with a curved brim and rounded top = loại nón dạ đen
  Many London businessmen wear bowlers.
- **campsite** *(n)* /'kæmpsaɪt/ (also camping – site) place for camping = nơi cắm trại
- **carnival** *(n)* /'ka:nɪvl/ festival, usu with a procession = ngày hội *a street ~.*
- **crane** *(n)* /kreɪn/ machine or vehicle with a long movable arm from which heavy weights can be hung in order to lift or move them = cần trục
- **dummy** *(n)* /'dʌmɪ/ thing that appears to be read but is only an imitation = vật giả *The bottles of whisky on display are all dummies.*
- **lunatic** *(n)* /'lu:nətɪk/ (dated) insane person = người điên
  lunatic *(adj)* (dated) insane = điên *lunatic asylum (dated) = mental hospital.*
- **mirror** *(n)* /'mɪrə/ polished surface, usu of coated glass or of metal that reflects images = cái gương *a driving ~, a hand ~.*
- **parade** *(n)* /pə'reɪd/ procession of people = cuộc diễu hành *a ~ of players before a football match.*
- **periscope** *(n)* /'perɪskəʊp/ kính tiềm vọng
- **pregnant** *(adj)* /'pregnənt/ (of a woman or female animal) having a baby or young animal developing in the womb = có mang, có thai *She was six months ~.*
  pregnancy *(n)* /-nənsɪ/ state or period of being pregnant *discomfort caused by ~.*
- **press conference** *(n)* /pres 'kɒnfərəns/ cuộc họp báo
- **slide** *(v)* /slaɪd/ (pt, pp slid /slɪd/) move smoothly along an even, polished or slippery surface = lướt, trượt *The drawers slid in and out easily.*
- **speculate** *(v)* /'spekjʊleɪt/ guess = suy đoán *~ about / upon the future .*
  I can only ~ that he left willingly.
  speculator *(n)* = person who speculates
  speculation *(n)* (~ over / about / upon / on st) *much ~ over the cause of the air crash.*
- **swan** *(n)* /swɒn/ con thiên nga

EXPRESSIONS

in the top right = ở đầu bên phải
in the bottom left = ở cuối bên trái
in the back row = ở dãy sau
to be in plaster = bó bột

NOTES : Speculating about the present and past.
Revisions of units 20-29.

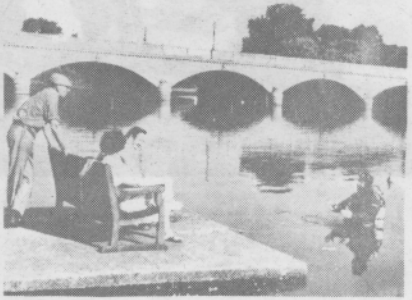


Look at this

He She	must could	be have been	crazy at home.
They It	may might might even can't couldn't	be doing have done have been doing	something.

Make as many sentences as possible about each of the pictures.

Squash
den Hedst
unner s



THESE NOTES MAY HELP : Students should be encouraged to speculate freely about each picture and will come up with other ideas.

Picture 1

Why have the cars been put there ?

Someone must have dug holes and buried them.

They must have used a crane. It might be a work of art / the work of a lunatic.

Someone might be going to jump over them in a car/on a motor-cycle.

Perhaps someone's going to ride between them.

Maybe it's a fence of cars. It could be an advert for a car-breaking company.

The cars must be old / American.

Picture 2

Who / where might they be ?

They may be telephone enginneers / telephone salesmen. It may be a telephone museum. They may collect telephones.

They may be buying and selling by telephone. It may be an import / export company / a currency exchange. A lot of the telephones are off the book. Why ? People must be waiting on the other end.

If they're international telephones, people may have called from New York / Tokyo / Sydney, etc.

They must have received a big phone bill last month !

Picture 3

Are the legs real ? They're very long. They may be dummies / people

They must be tall people. Are they men or women ?

They may be advertising something (Tights ? / shoes ?)

They may be making a film / an advert.

They must have taken a long time to prepare.

How could they have done it ? They must have used real leaves and branches.

How did they stick them on ? They could have made a frame.

What are they going to do ?

Are there two legs or one leg in each "tree" ?

Are they right legs or left legs ? If there's only one, where's the other leg ? They must have taken the photograph very carefully.

Picture 4

What are they holding ? They could be driving something / getting an electric shock / moving something / switching something on / shooting something.

They must have just seen something. It must have been exciting / shocking / amazing / horrific, etc.

They could be sitting in a golf trolley / a dodgem car at a fair / a railway engine / an aeroplane / a ship

Picture 5

Which country might the photo have been taken in ?

What's the building ? It might be a house / church / country school / part of a film set.

How did it get on the truck ? They must have used a crane. They might have dug a tunnel under the building.

It must be a special truck. Why might they be moving it ? Perhaps they're going to build a dam / new road / airport

They might be moving it to a museum. Someone famous might have lived there.

Picture 6

They must be watching something / waiting for somebody to pass along the street. It must be someone important

They might be waiting for a king / queen / president / football team / pop star / astronauts, etc.

The boy's holding a periscope. It says "London Broadcasting"

The picture must have been taken in England/ London

What's the lady holding ? It may be a mirror / some slides.

She must be trying to see something. One man is looking to the right.

Why ? He may not be interested / He may be a security guard / Someone might have called his name / He might be looking for a friend / Someone might have stepped on his foot.

A man's wearing a bowler hat. He must be English / a businessman

Picture 7

They might be businessmen / journalists / students / politicians / people at a sale or auction / detectives.

They're taking notes... Why ? They may be watching something / listening to something / drawing something

If they're journalists, it may be a press conference.

Who might they be interviewing ? The man in front looks surprised / worried. What might he have just heard / seen ?

If it's an auction, what might they be buying / selling ?

Picture 8

It must be an advert

It could be a pyramid / a billboard / the side of a building / a wall

They might be workmen / soldiers.

They might be putting it up / taking it down / painting it / cleaning it.

What language is it ? Do you know ? If not, speculate

What do you think it's advertising ? What do you think it says ?

Is the man at the top stuck / on a ladder / on the side / on the roof of a building ?

Why might they have climbed up there ?

They might have climbed up to paint / repair/ finish / clean it / put it up / take it down.

Picture 9

Where might it be ? It might be a dancing school/ film studio / mental hospital / health farm / private house.

The man in white looks like an instructor. The other two may be students/a married couple/ patients

They may be dancing/doing exercises/ practising for a show/trying to lose weight.

They must be rich/The sun must be shining outside

If it's a health farm / dancing school, they must have paid a lot of money.

Picture 10

Where might they be? A pop concert/a sports event/a parade/a political meeting/a demonstration

They might be watching a group / an air display / a motor race / a royal wedding / a carnival / an important visitor / a golf tournament, etc.

Why have they got umbrellas ? They could be for the sun, or for the rain.

The weather forecast might have been good / bad. The sun must be shining at the moment.

They're standing in rows. Why ?

Someone might have told them to. There might be lines on the ground.

Picture 11

They could be watching a football match / political speech / parade / the news / a visitor to their town / country

Why aren't they watching it indoors ? There might be only one T.V.

It might be a campsite. It must be warm. It must be very interesting.

There are more men than women. Why ?

It may be in a park / a forest / someone's garden

If it's the news, something important must have happened.

A war might have started / The election results may have been announced / Taxes may have changed / Someone important may have been assassinated / married.

Picture 12

The water must be shallow / It can't be very deep

The people on the bench are wearing summer clothes. It must be summer/It must be a warm day.

It might be a river / It might be a lake / It can't be the sea.

The man's a frogman. He might be diving for sport. He might be a policeman / a scientist / studying the river / lake. He might be looking for a dead body / a diamond ring / a weapon / fish.

Someone might have fallen in the water / dropped something in the water / thrown something in the water.

There's a line attached to the frogman. It can't be an air line.

(He's got air tanks). It may be for safety. He might be an actor / making a film.

There are some feathers on the water. Some birds

must have been there. They might have been ducks / swans. People might have been feeding them. What's the diver saying ?

PRACTICE

Language summary

He She They It	must could may might might even can't couldn't	be	crazy. at home.
		be doing	something.
		have been done	
		have been doing	

Exercise 1

Write the correct names in the boxes on the picture. Tracy's the second from the left in the front row. Rod's behind her. You can see Joseph in the top right of the picture. Alice is between Joseph and Rod. Deborah's in the bottom left of the picture. Philip's in front of Joseph. Dean's the fourth from the right in the back row. Sally's the other.

Exercise 2

Look at the man in the bottom left corner.

He must be waiting to see the doctor. He must have broken his leg. He must have seen a doctor before, because his leg's in plaster. He might have been playing football when he broke it, or he might have been skiing. He might not be waiting to see the doctor about his leg. He might have something else wrong with him.

Write sentences about the other people in the waiting room.

1 The second person from the left. ...

2 The man with spots. ...

He might be showing the size of something / He might be clapping / He might be talking about a fish.

Bài tập 1

Hãy điền tên phù hợp vào các khung trên tranh. Tracy là người thứ hai từ bên trái ở dãy ghế phía trước. Rod ngồi phía sau cô. Bạn có thể nhìn thấy Joseph ngay đầu bên phải của bức tranh. Alice ngồi giữa Joseph và Rod. Deborah ngồi ngay góc tay trái của tranh. Philip ngồi trước Joseph. Dean là người thứ tư từ bên phải của hàng ghế sau. Sally là người còn lại.

Bài tập 2

Hãy nhìn người đàn ông ngay góc cuối bên tay trái.

Chắc là ông ta đang chờ gặp bác sĩ. Chắc anh ta bị gãy chân. Chắc anh ta đã gặp bác sĩ trước đây rồi vì chân anh ta đang bó bột. Có lẽ anh ta đang chơi bóng đá thì bị gẫy chân hay có lẽ là anh ta đang chơi trượt tuyết. Có lẽ anh ta không phải chờ bác sĩ khám về cái chân của mình. Có lẽ anh ta còn bị chuyện gì khác nữa.

Viết các câu về những người khác trong phòng chờ đợi.

3 The woman in the corner. ...

4 The little boy standing in front of her. ...

5 The old man in the middle. ...

6 The woman next to him. ...

7 The man next to the door. ...

8 The woman on the right of the door. ...

9 The man next to her...

10 The man sitting opposite the pregnant lady...

Unit 31 Apologies

Những lời tạ lỗi

VOCABULARY

- **ignore** *(v)* /ɪg'nɔ:/ take no notice of (sb / st) = lờ đi, ra vẻ không để ý *You've been ~ring me. I can't ~ his rudeness any longer.*
- **ruin** *(v)* /'ru:ɪn/ (infml) spoil sb / st = làm hỏng, hư *The island has been ~ ed by tourism.*
- **stain** *(n)* /steɪn/ dirty mark or patch of colour caused by staining = vết ố *There's an ink ~ on your shirt. I can't get these coffee ~ s out of the carpet.*

stain *(v)* /steɪn/ become discoloured or marked =bị ố, bị phai màu
Our white carpet ~ s easily.
stainless *(adj)* free from stain; spotless.
a ~ reputation.

- **taxi rank** *(n)* /'tæksɪ ræŋk/ bến xe taxi

EXPRESSIONS

right of way	/raɪt əv weɪ/	quyền ưu tiên
give way	/gɪv weɪ/	nhượng bộ
keep off	/ki:p ɒf/	tránh xa
mean to	/mi:n tə/	muốn nói, ý định
push in	/pʊʃ ɪn/	đẩy vào
put out	/pʊt aʊt/	dập tắt
at least	/ət li:st/	ít nhất

What do you think you're doing ? Anh có thấy là anh đang làm gì đó không ?

There it is	kia rồi
Accidents happen	tai nạn xảy ra
It'd better not	tốt hơn là không
Just look at it	hãy nhìn kia
What's that there, then ?	thế thì cái gì kia ?
Here come the police	cảnh sát đến kia
Keep off the grass	đừng đi lên cỏ
no smoking	cấm hút thuốc
to go off (alarm)	reo, phát ra tiếng

PROPER NAMES

Clive /klaɪv/ Derek Moore /'derek 'mʊə/ Newbury /'nju:bərɪ/

USAGE

Do remember to learn by heart the following expressions as they are useful formuli (when you want to apologize someone for something or doing something or when you accept those apologies).

Apologies

1.	I	just want(ed) to would like to must have/had to ought to	apologize for	something doing st
2.	I think I	must had to/have to... ought to		
3.	It That This	won't happen again		

or I promise that won't happen again

4.	I'm	very really terribly ever so ...	sorry

5. Here are some other commonly used expressions for beginning apologies. Notice the diference between the very formal and the informal ones.

- *I beg your pardon, sir. (I didn't realize you were speaking to me)* **(formal)**
- *Pardon me, please, for... (stepping on your foot)* **(formal)**
- *I hope you'll forgive... (my absence yesterday, I was ill).* **(formal)**
- *Excuse me for... (being late. I forgot about the time)*
- *I apologize for... (knocking over your cup. I didn't see it).*
- *Sorry about that.* **(informal)**

Acceptances (of apologies) Accepting an apology is usually quite simple. We often use one of the following responses.

- Don't worry about it **(formal)**
- It really doesn't matter
- It's not so important / It's nothing
- It's all right / okay / that's quite all right
- Forget it **(informal)**
- No more talk about it **(informal)**
- I don't want to hear any more about it **(infml)**
- No problem **(infml)**
- No big thing **(infml)**
- No sweat **(infml)**

A Hello. Derek Moore speaking.
B Oh, hello, Derek. This is Clive.
A Ah, yes. Did you get home all right ?
B Yes, thanks, but I just wanted to apologize for last night.
A Don't worry about it. It really doesn't matter.
B But the carpet, it must be ruined. It was so silly of me to put the cup on the floor.
A Forget it, Clive. It's all right now.
B But it must have made an awful stain.
A Look, it's nothing. I was annoyed last night, but it doesn't look so bad this morning.
B Anyway, you must let me pay for the cleaning.
A Listen, Clive. Accidents happen. They always do at parties. I don't want to hear any more about it. Right ?
B All right. I really am very sorry.
A See you on Monday. Bye.

A : Xin chào. Derek Moore nghe đây.
B : Chào Derek. Clive đây.
A : À. Tối qua về nhà ổn cả chứ ?
B : Vâng, cảm ơn, tôi chỉ muốn xin lỗi anh về chuyện hôm qua.
A : Đừng lo, có gì đâu.
B : Nhưng còn tấm thảm, ắt hẳn là nó hư mất. Tôi để cái tách trên sàn nhà thật là ngu quá.
A : Quên chuyện đó đi, Clive à. Bây giờ mọi thứ đều ổn rồi.
B : Nhưng hẳn là nó cũng để lại một vết dơ kinh khủng trên thảm.
A : Thôi đi, chẳng sao đâu. Tối qua thì tôi có hơi bực mình, nhưng sáng nay thì ổn rồi.
B : Dù sao anh cũng nên cho tôi gửi lại tiền tẩy ố.
A : Nghe này, Clive. Rủi ro xảy ra là chuyện thường. Chúng luôn xảy ra ở các buổi tiệc tùng. Tôi không muốn nghe gì thêm về chuyện đó nữa. Được chưa?
B : Thôi được. Hết sức xin lỗi nhé.
A : Hẹn gặp lại vào thứ hai. Tạm biệt.

C Excuse me.
D Yes ?
C Would you mind putting out your cigarette?
D I beg your pardon ?
C This is a 'no smoking' compartment!
D Is it ? I didn't see a sign.
C There it is. On the window.
D Oh, yes. I'm terribly sorry.

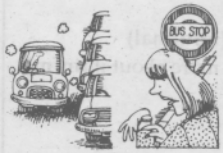
C : Xin lỗi ông.
D : Gì ạ ?
C : Xin làm ơn dập thuốc đi.
D : Sao ạ ?
C : Đây là toa cấm hút thuốc !
D : Vậy sao ? Tôi không thấy bảng.
C : Nó kia kìa. Trên cửa sổ ấy.
D : Ồ, vâng. Tôi thành thật xin lỗi.

E Oh ! Good morning, Mrs Newbury.
F Good afternoon, Sharon. Late again?

E : Ô ! Xin chào, bà Newbury.
F : Xin chào Sharon, trưa rồi đó. Lại trễ nữa sao ?

E Oh, yes. I'm ever so sorry. I couldn't find a parking place.
F Perhaps you should have left home earlier.
E Yes, I know. It won't happen again.
F It'd better not, Sharon. This is the third time this week !

E : Dạ vâng. Tôi hết sức xin lỗi. Tôi không làm sao tìm ra nơi đậu xe.
F : Có lẽ cô nên rời nhà sớm hơn nữa.
E : Vâng, tôi biết. Tôi sẽ không phạm lỗi nữa đâu.
F : Tốt hơn là không nên, Sharon. Đây là lần thứ ba trong tuần này rồi.



G Oi ! You !
H Me ?
G Yes, you. What do you think you're doing?
H Pardon ? I'm just waiting for the bus.
G Well, there's a queue, you know.
H Is there ? Sorry... I didn't mean to push in. I didn't realize there was a queue.

G : Ôi ! Cái ông này !
H : Tôi ư ?
G : Ông chứ ai nữa. Ông đang làm gì vậy chứ?
H : Sao cơ ? Thì tôi đang chờ xe buýt.
G : Mọi người đang sắp hàng mà, ông phải biết chứ.
H : Vậy hả ? Xin lỗi... Tôi không cố ý chen vào. Tôi không biết là mọi người đang sắp hàng.

I Are you OK ?
J Yes, I'm all right, but what about my car ?
I There's not too much damage.
J What ! Just look at it ! I only bought it last week. You shouldn't have been going so fast.
I Well, I'm sorry, but it wasn't my fault.
J Wasn't your fault ? What do you mean ? I had right of way.
I I'm afraid you didn't. You shouldn't have come out like that.
J Why not ? There's no sign.
I What's that there then ?
J Oh, yes. A 'stop' sign. I must have missed it.
I Well, you should be more careful. You could have killed us all !
J Yes... I'm sorry. What more can I say ?
I All right... all right. At least nobody's hurt. Here come the police. You'd better explain it to them.

I : Ông có sao không ?
J : Tôi không sao, nhưng còn xe tôi nữa chứ.
I : Đâu có hư hại gì nhiều đâu.
J : Sao ! Nhìn coi ! Tôi mới mua nó tuần rồi đó. Lẽ ra ông không được chạy nhanh như vậy.

I : À, tôi xin lỗi, nhưng tôi đâu có lỗi.
J : Ông không có lỗi à ? Ông định nói gì chứ? Tôi có quyền ưu tiên mà.
I : Tôi e là không phải vậy. Lẽ ra ông không được lao ra như vậy.
J : Tại sao lại không chứ ? Đâu có bảng cấm.
I : Vậy chứ cái gì đàng kia ?
J : Ô, phải rồi. Bảng "Dừng lại" ! Chắc là tôi không thấy.

I : Được rồi, ông phải cẩn thận hơn. Suýt nữa ông làm tụi tôi chết cả rồi.
J : Vâng... Xin lỗi. Biết nói gì bây giờ.
I : Thôi được rồi. Ít nhất thì không ai hề hấn gì cả. Cảnh sát đến rồi kìa. Tốt hơn là ông nên giải thích với họ.

PRACTICE

Language summary

Sorry.	*Don't worry about it.*	*I didn't mean to (do it).*
I'm (terribly) sorry.	*It really doesn't matter.*	*I didn't realize (I had to do it).*
I really am very sorry.	*Forget it.*	*It was so (silly) of me to (do it).*
I'm ever so sorry.	*(It's) all right.*	*It won't happen again.*
I just want(ed) to apologize.	*It's nothing.*	*It wasn't my fault.*
	I don't want to hear any more about it.	*What more can I say ?*

Exercise

Look at these sentences.
Put the numbers in the appropriate spaces.
Read all of the sentences carefully before you begin.

Bài tập

Đọc các câu này :
Đặt số vào các ô trống phù hợp. Đọc kỹ tất cả các câu trước khi bắt đầu.

1 I'm terribly sorry, officer. I just didn't see the red light.
2 Yes, you're right. It was very careless of me. I'm sorry. I hope you're not hurt.
3 I must have dialled the wrong number. Sorry.
4 Is it ? Oh, yes. I'm terribly sorry. It looks just like mine.
5 Oh, my God ! Is it ? I didn't realize. I thought it was the Gents. Sorry.
6 I am sorry. I am a foreigner. It won't happen again.
7 Really ! I didn't know it was a private club. Sorry.
8 I'm awfully sorry. I thought you were someone else.
9 Oh, I'm ever so sorry. I didn't see you sitting there. It's so dark in here.
10 Of course it is. How silly of me ! I don't usually forget names.
11 I'm awfully sorry. I thought they were all unreserved.
12 No, not this time. The alarm clock didn't go off. Sorry I'm late again. It won't happen again.
13 I really must apologize.I thought I had my wallet with me.
14 I'm sorry I didn't mean to ignore you. I just didn't see you, that's all.
15 Yes, I know. I'm sorry but I lost your number.

Hey ! That's my coat ! 4.....

A Ouch ! That's my foot. ....
B Can I see your driving licence, sir ?
C Who ? I've never heard of him. ....
D You should be more careful. ....
E Smith, Helen Smith. ....
F Why didn't you say 'hello' to me yesterday? ....
Q You didn't miss the bus again, did you ? ....
H There's a queue, you know. This is England. ....
J You can't come in here. You must be a member.
K I'm afraid you're sitting in my seat. ....
L This is a ladies,toilet ! ....
M Who are you ? I've never met you before in my life...
N You can pay next time. You are a regular customer
O You promised to ring me.....

Unit 32 They Didn't Stop To Tell Me !

Chúng có dừng lại để nói cho tôi biết đâu !

VOCABULARY

- **cab door** *(n)* /kæb dɔ:/ the door of the driver's compartment in a train or lorry = cửa buồng lái
- **cash desk** *(n)* /ka:ʃ desk/ desk or counter where payment is made in a shop = quầy thu ngân
- **concentrate** *(v)* /'kɒnsntreɪt/ ~ (st) (on st / doing st) focus (one's attention, effort, etc) exclusively and intensely on st, not thinking about other less important things = tập trung *I can't ~ (on my studies) with all that noise going on.*
  concentration /ˌkɒnsn'treɪʃn/ (power of) concentrating (on st) *Stress and tiredness often result in a lack of ~.*
- **concern** *(v)* /kən'sɜ:n/ ~ oneself with / in / about st = be busy with st; interest oneself in st = quan tâm tới *There's no need to ~ yourself with this matter; we're dealing with it.*
  concerned *(adj)* (~ about / for st / that...) worried, troubled *We're always ~ for her safety.*
- **definitely** *(adv)* /'defɪnətlɪ/ 1. in a definite manner. *She states her views very ~.*
  2. certainly, undoubtedly *That is ~ correct.*
- **diesel** *(n)* /'di:zl/ (also *diesel fuel, diesel oil*) heavy fuel oil used in diesel engines = xăng dầu
- **extra** *(adj)* /'ekstrə/ additional = phụ, thêm *~ pay for ~ work.*
- **hijack** *(v)* /'haɪdʒæk/ seize control of (a vehicle, an aircraft...) in order to force it to go to a new destination or to steal its cargo = cướp (máy bay...)
  hijack *(n)* vụ cướp xe; hijacker = person who hijacks a vehicle.
  hijacking *(n)* sự cướp xe *prevent (a) ~.*
- **hitch – hike** *(v)* /'hɪtʃ haɪk/ travel by obtaining free rides in other people's cars. *~ through France to Spain.*
  hitch – hiker *(n)* /'hɪtʃ haɪkə/ người quá giang, đi nhờ xe
- **increasingly** *(adv)* /ɪn'kri:sɪŋlɪ/ more and more *~ difficult, popular.*
- **marketable** *(adj)* /'ma:kɪtəbl/ that can be sold = có thể tiêu thụ, bán được *a highly ~ new product.*
- **monastery** *(n)* /'mɒnəstrɪ/ building in which monks live as a community = tu viện
- **monk** *(n)* /mʌŋk/ member of a religious community of men who live apart from the rest of society and who have made solemn promises, esp not to marry and not to have any possessions = thầy tu
  monkish *(adj)* = of or like monks.
- **precaution** *(n)* /prɪ'kɔ:ʃn/ ~ (against st) thing done in advance to avoid danger; prevent problems = sự đề phòng *fire ~s; ~s against fire.*
  precautionary *(adj)* /prɪ'kɔ:ʃənərɪ/ = preventive *~ measures.*
- **puddle** *(n)* /pʌdl/ small pool of water, esp of rainwater on the road = vũng nước
- **sunset** *(n)* /'sʌnset/ setting of the sun = hoàng hôn *finish work at ~.*
- **well – informed** *(adj)* /wel ɪn'fɔ:md/ báo rõ

EXPRESSIONS

to keep an eye on something	để mắt, chú ý cái gì
I bet it wasn't	tôi cá là không phải
on the increase	đang tăng
on this occasion	vào dịp này

GRAMMAR NOTES

1) For a review of "to -infinitive" & "V-ing" form, see units 6, 7, 9 and 29. Now study the following table carefully. The infinitives in these sentences are in most cases considered more important than the finite verbs.

	Subject + verb	(not) to-infinitive
1	I fail	to see what you mean
2	We happened	to be there.
3	I chanced	to meet him in the park
4	He appeared	to enjoy the concert
5	They seemed	not to notice it
6	The swimmer failed	to reach the shore

2) Verb + "to" or "-ing" = different meanings.

The To-infinitive and -ing never mean the same when used after these verbs : *remember, forget, regret, try, stop, go on.*

TO – INFINITIVE	-ING FORM
remember / forget	
I must *remember to post* this letter today. It's important	I can't *remember posting* the letter. Perhaps it's still in my coat pocket.
We use *remember / forget* + to – infinitive for necessary actions. *remember to do* = to first remember and then do the action.	We use *remember / forget* + ing-form for memories of the past. *remember doing* = to first do the action and then remember it later.
stop	
An old man walking along the road stopped to talk to us. *stop to do* : to stop so that you can do st.	There's so much noise. Can you all *stop talking* please ? *stop doing* = to end an action, finish doing st.
regret	
I *regret to say* I don't have sympathy with you. *regret to say* : to say we are sorry when expressing st unpleasant or giving bad news	I *regret spending* all that money. I've got none left now. *regret doing* = to feel sorry about st.
go on	
The teacher introduced herself and *went on to explain* about the course. *go on to do* = to do st different, do the next thing.	The teacher told everyone to be quiet, but they just *went on talking*. *go on doing* = to continue doing.

LORRY HIJACKINGS ON THE INCREASE

The Road Transport Industry is becoming increasingly concerned about the number of lorry hijackings.

The hijackers seem to be both well-organized and well-informed. The gangs concentrate on trucks carrying high-value marketable loads, for example cigarettes, alcohol, or electrical goods. Drivers have now been forbidden to pick up hitch-hikers, and have been warned to take extra care when parking in motorway service areas. Yesterday's hijacking at Burnham Wood on the M6 was the fourth in the area this month.

CÁC VỤ CƯỚP XE TẢI ĐANG GIA TĂNG

Ngành giao thông đường bộ đang hết sức lo ngại về số vụ cướp xe tải. Bọn cướp dường như vừa được tổ chức chặt chẽ vừa được cung cấp thông tin chính xác. Bọn chúng tập trung vào các xe tải chở hàng có giá trị thương mại cao như thuốc lá, rượu, đồ điện. Hiện nay các lái xe đã bị cấm đón khách đi quá giang và được khuyến cáo là phải hết sức cảnh giác khi đỗ xe tại các bãi sửa xe dọc xa lộ. Vụ cướp ngày hôm qua ở Burnham Wood trên xa lộ M6 là vụ thứ tư ở vùng này trong tháng này.

Inspector Waterman is interviewing Stan Fletcher, the driver of the hijacked truck.

Inspector Sit down, Mr Fletcher. Cigarette ?

Stan No, thanks. I'm trying to stop smoking.

Inspector Now, Mr Fletcher. How did you manage to lose your truck ?

Stan You know the story already.

Inspector Well, tell us again.

Stan OK. I was driving down the M6 from Scotland carrying whisky... in cases.

Inspector Hmm.

Stan I decided to stop at Burnham Wood.

Inspector Why Burnham Wood ?

Stan I stopped to get some diesel and I needed a coffee. I'd been driving for three hours.

Inspector Go on.

Stan After I'd filled the tank, I parked outside the café.

Inspector Yes.

Stan I got my coffee and sat by the window to keep an eye on the truck.

Inspector Did you see anybody near the lorry?

Stan No, nobody. Then I went to make a phone call.

Inspector A phone call ?

Stan Yes, you can check. I stopped to get some change at the cash desk.

Inspector OK. Then ?

Stan Well, I was talking to my wife on the phone when I saw the lorry going past the window. I couldn't believe my eyes. I dropped the phone and ran outside... but it was too late !

Inspector Had you remembered to lock the cab door ?

Stan Yes, I always remember to lock it. I'm not stupid, you know !

Inspector All right. All right. But can you actually remember locking it on this occasion?

Stan -Yes, definitely.

Inspector How can you be so sure ?

Stan Well, I remember putting the key in the lock. It was all wet and dirty. It was raining, you see, and I'd dropped it in a puddle.

Inspector And the passenger door ? Did you remember to check that ?

Thanh tra Waterman đang phỏng vấn Stan Fletcher, lái xe của chiếc xe bị cướp.

Thanh tra : Ngồi xuống đi, ông Fletcher. Hút thuốc nhé ?

Stan : Không, cảm ơn. Tôi đang cố bỏ thuốc.

Thanh tra : Nào... ông Fletcher. Làm sao mà ông lại bị mất xe ?

Stan : Các ông biết cả rồi mà.

Thanh tra : À, ông kể lại đi.

Stan : Được rồi. Lúc đó tôi đang lái xe trên xa lộ M6 chở whisky... trong những chiếc két... từ Scôtlen.

Thanh tra : Ừm...

Stan : Tôi quyết định dừng xe ở Burnham Wood.

Thanh tra : Tại sao lại là Burnham Wood ?

Stand : Tôi dừng xe để đổ thêm dầu và tôi muốn uống một tách cà phê. Lúc đó tôi đã cầm lái suốt 3 tiếng rồi.

Thanh tra : Nói tiếp đi.

Stan : Sau khi tôi đổ dầu xong tôi đậu xe ngoài quán ăn.

Thanh tra : Vâng.

Stan : Tôi đem tách cà phê đến ngồi gần cửa sổ để trông chừng xe hàng.

Thanh tra : Ông có thấy ai lai vãng gần xe không ?

Stan : Không, không có ai cả. Sau đó tôi đi gọi điện thoại.

Thanh tra : Gọi điện thoại à ?

Stan : Đúng vậy. Ông có thể kiểm tra. Tôi dừng ở quầy thu ngân để đổi một ít tiền lẻ.

Thanh tra : Được rồi. Sao nữa ?

Stan : Tôi đang nói chuyện với vợ tôi qua điện thoại thì thấy chiếc xe tải chạy ngang qua cửa sổ. Tôi không còn tin ở mắt mình nữa. Tôi buông máy xuống và chạy ra ngoài quán... nhưng đã quá trễ rồi.

Thanh tra : Trước đó ông có nhớ khóa cửa buồng lái không ?

Stan : Có chứ, tôi luôn nhớ khóa cửa. Các ông biết đó, tôi đâu có ngu.

Thanh tra : Biết rồi, biết rồi. Nhưng lần này thì ông có thực sự nhớ là ông đã khóa cửa không ?

Stan : Chắc chắn là có.

Thanh tra : Làm sao ông lại có thể chắc chắn như vậy ?

Stan : À, tôi còn nhớ là đã tra chìa khóa vào ổ. Chìa khóa ướt nhẹp và bẩn. Lúc đó trời đang mưa và tôi đã làm rơi nó xuống một vũng nước.

Thanh tra : Thế còn cửa bên ? Lúc đó ông có nhớ kiểm tra cửa bên không ?

Stan I don't actually remember checking it. But I'm sure I must have done. It locks from the inside, and I never use that door.

Inspector But you don't remember checking it?

Stan No, not really. But you can't remember everything, can you ? I might've forgotten to check it.

Inspector So it could've been open.

Stan Yes... yes, it could've been. But I bet it wasn't !

Inspector Well, what's your theory, Mr Fletcher ?

Stan They must've had keys, mustn't they ? They started the engine, didn't they ?

Inspector How did they get the keys ?

Stan Don't ask me. I've got no idea. They didn't stop to tell me !

Look at this

He was driving. He stopped. He got some petrol.

A What did he stop doing ? He stopped driving.

B What did he stop to do ? He stopped to get some petrol.

Look at this

I proposed to my wife on the beach at sunset. I can see it now !

I remember proposing to my wife.

I was told to post this letter. I've still got it.

I didn't remember to post it.

I forgot to post it.

Stan : Bây giờ tôi cũng không nhớ là có coi lại cửa bên không nữa. Nhưng tôi chắc chắn là tôi có. Nó khóa bên trong mà tôi lại không bao giờ dùng đến cửa đó.

Thanh tra : Nhưng ông không nhớ là có coi lại hay không chứ gì ?

Stan : Không, không nhớ. Nhưng làm sao nhớ hết mọi thứ được, phải không ạ ? Cũng có thể tôi quên kiểm tra nó.

Thanh tra : Vậy cũng có thể là nó mở ?

Stan : Vâng, thì có thể. Nhưng tôi dám cá là nó không mở.

Thanh tra : Vậy thì, ông Fletcher, theo ông thì mọi chuyện đã xảy ra như thế nào ?

Stan : Ắt hẳn là bọn chúng có chìa khóa, phải không nào ? Bọn chúng đã khởi động được máy mà, phải không ?

Thanh tra : Thế bọn chúng làm sao có chìa khóa được?

Stan : Sao lại hỏi tôi. Tôi đâu có biết. Bọn chúng đâu có dừng lại để nói cho tôi biết.

Exercise 1

Now make questions and answers from these sentences.

1 He was driving. He stopped. He had a cup of coffee.
2 He was watching the truck. He stopped. He made a phone call.
3 He was talking to his wife. He stopped. He ran outside.

Exercise 2

Make sentences.

1 I should have closed the window, but it's still open.
2 I once met the Queen. I can remember it very clearly.
3 There's a film on television. I saw it at the cinema ten years ago.
4 He ought to have done his homework. The teacher's very angry.

PRACTICE

Language summary

Stop *Remember*	*doing*	*contrasted with*	*Stop* *Remember* *Forget*	*to do*

Exercise 1

Linda's in hospital. She's expecting her third baby. Her husband, Chris, is looking after the other two children. Linda gave him a shopping list. He didn't remember to get everything, but he did get some of the things.

He forgot to get some meat.
He remembered to get some money.
Write eight more sentences.

1 .....
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....
7 .....
8 .....

Exercise 2

He stopped at the bank to get some money.
Write five more sentences.

1 .....
2 .....
3 .....

Exercise 3

Ten years ago Patrick was a rich young man. He used to drink, smoke, gamble, eat in expensive restaurants and go out with beautiful women. Eight years ago everything changed. He joined a monastery and became a monk. His name is now Brother Anselm.

He stopped drinking eight years ago.
Write four more sentences.

1 .....
.....
2 .....
.....

Exercise 4

What can you remember doing in primary school ?

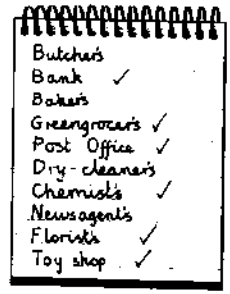
I can remember listening to stories.
I remember learning to read.
Write four more sentences.

1 .....
2 .....

Bài tập 1

Linda đang nằm viện. Chị đang chờ sinh đứa con thứ ba. Chồng chị là Chris, đang chăm sóc hai đứa con đầu. Linda đưa cho anh bảng danh sách đi chợ. Anh không nhớ mua hết mọi thứ, nhưng anh đã mua được một số món.

Anh ấy quên mua một ít thịt.
Anh ấy nhớ mang theo một số tiền.



Bài tập 2

Anh ấy dừng lại ngân hàng để rút một số tiền. Viết thêm 5 câu nữa.

4 .....
5 .....

Bài tập 3

Cách đây 10 năm Patrick là một thanh niên giàu có. Anh ta thường hay uống rượu, hút thuốc, đánh bạc, ăn ở các nhà hàng sang trọng và đi chơi với phụ nữ đẹp. Cách đây 8 năm mọi thứ đều thay đổi. Anh ta vào tu viện trở thành thầy tu. Tên anh ta bây giờ là Brother Anselm.

Anh ta đã hết nhậu nhẹt cách đây tám năm.
Hãy viết bốn câu.

3 .....
.....
4 .....
.....

Bài tập 4

Bạn nhớ đã làm gì ở trường tiểu học ?

Tôi có thể nhớ đã nghe kể chuyện.
Tôi nhớ đã học đọc.
Viết thêm 4 câu nữa.

3 .....
4 .....

Exercise 5

She was typing. The telephone rang, and she answered it.

A She stopped typing.

B She stopped to answer the phone.

1 The boys were playing football. Concorde flew over. Everybody looked up in the air.

A .....

B .....

2 He was driving along the motorway. He felt tired. He had a cup of coffee.

A .....

B .....

3 During the cricket match someone brought a tray of drinks onto the field for the players.

A .....

B .....

Exercise 6

Robert Mark is a very careful man. When he went on holiday recently, he remembered all the precautions.

He remembered to lock all the doors.

Write four more sentences.

WATCH OUT !

There's a thief about

When you are leaving your house to go on holiday, remember to

1 lock all the doors
2 fasten all the windows
3 switch off the lights
4 close the gates
5 lock any ladders or tools in the garage

WESSEX POLICE

Exercise 7

When he got back from his holiday, he was very worried because the gate was open, the bedroom window was open and his ladder was leaning against the wall. The front door was also open, and the lights were on in the hall. He was worried because he could remember closing the gate.

Write four more sentences.

1 .....

2 .....

Bài tập 5

Chị ấy đang đánh máy. Điện thoại reo và chị ấy trả lời điện thoại.

A Chị ấy dừng đánh máy.

B Chị ấy dừng đánh máy để trả lời điện thoại.

4 The teacher gave the students a five minute break.

A .....

B .....

5 In the middle of the concert, the guitarist had to change a string.

A .....

B .....

6 During the speech the politician had to blow his nose.

A .....

B .....

Bài tập 6

Robert Mark là người rất cẩn thận. Gần đây khi anh đi nghỉ, anh nhớ tất cả những điều phòng ngừa.

Anh ấy nhớ khóa tất cả cửa ra vào.

Viết thêm 4 câu nữa.

1 .....

.....

2 .....

.....

3 .....

.....

4 .....

.....

Bài tập 7

Khi anh ấy đi nghỉ về, anh rất lo lắng vì cổng nhà mở, cửa sổ phòng ngủ mở và cái thang của anh đang tựa vào tường. Cửa trước cũng mở, và đèn đuốc sáng choang trong phòng lớn. Anh ấy lo lắng vì anh có thể nhớ là anh đã đóng cổng.

Viết thêm 4 câu nữa.

3 .....

4 .....

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Units 29-32

Dialogue A

Listen

1st Driver [BUMP] What the...[DOOR OPENS]...Good Lord ! What do you think you're doing.
2nd Driver I'm sorry, but you braked suddenly. I just didn't have enough time to stop.
1st Driver You ran right into the back of my car !
2nd Driver Yes, I am sorry. Still, I don't think there's much damage.
1st Driver Much damage ? Look at my bumper ! You weren't looking at the road ahead.
2nd Driver I was looking. You just stopped for no reason.
1st Driver Then you can't have been looking ! Didn't you see that dog ?
2nd Driver A dog ? You mean...you stopped just because of a dog ?

New words
- bumper *(n)* /bʌmpə/ = bar fixed to the front and back of a motor vehicle to lessen the effect of a collision.= cái cản

Listen and repeat

A1 Listen
A: You weren't looking at the road ahead.
B: I *was* looking !
C: I *was* looking !
A: You *weren't* paying attention.
B: I *was* paying attention !
C: I *was* paying attention !

Now you do the same
You weren't looking at the road ahead .....I *was* looking !
You weren't paying attention .....I *was* paying attention !
You weren't concentrating .....I *was* concentrating !
You weren't thinking .....I *was* thinking !

A2 Listen
A: I *was* looking.
B: You can't have been looking.
C: You can't have been looking.
A: I *was* concentrating.
B: You can't have been concentrating.
C: You can't have been concentrating.

Now you do the same
I *was* looking .....You can't have been looking.
I *was* concentrating .....You can't have been concentrating.
I *was* paying attention .....You can't have been paying attention.
I *was* thinking .....You can't have been thinking.

Dialogue B

Listen

2nd Driver ...you stopped just because of a dog ?
1st Driver Of course I stopped. It's a natural reaction. It's all your fault, you know.
2nd Driver I *have* apologized already, but really .....it *wasn't* all my fault.
1st Driver Of course it was. You shouldn't have been driving too close behind me.
2nd Driver It *is* a very busy street. Perhaps you should have been looking in your mirror !
1st Driver Eh ? What do you mean ?
2nd Driver Then you might not have stopped just for a dog. After all, I'm lucky I was in a car. A motor-cyclist might have been killed !

Listen and repeat

B1 Listen
A: You haven't apologized.
B: I *have* apologized.
C: I *have* apologized.
A: It *was* all your fault.
B: It *wasn't* all my fault.
C: It *wasn't* all my fault.

Now you do the same
You haven't apologized .....I *have* apologized.
It was all your fault .....It *wasn't* all my fault.
It isn't a very busy street .....It *is* a very busy street.
You aren't sorry .....I *am* sorry.

B2 Listen

A: You were driving too close.
B: You shouldn't have been driving too close.
C: You shouldn't have been driving too close.
A: They were going fast.
B: They shouldn't have been going fast.
C: They shouldn't have been going fast.

Now you do the same

You were driving too close ..... You shouldn't have been driving too close.
They were going fast ..... They shouldn't have been going fast.
He was looking at the shops ..... He shouldn't have been looking at the shops.
She was lighting a cigarette ..... She shouldn't have been lighting a cigarette.

B3 Listen

A: You weren't looking in your mirror.
B: You should have been looking in your mirror.
C: You should have been looking in your mirror.
A: He wasn't paying attention.
B: He should have been paying attention.
C: He should have been paying attention.

Now you do the same

You weren't looking in your mirror..... You should have been looking in your mirror.
He wasn't paying attention ..... He should have been paying attention.
She wasn't thinking about the traffic ..... She should have been thinking about the traffic.
They weren't concentrating..... They should have been concentrating.

Dialogue C

Listen

1st Driver Nonsense. You know it was your fault.
2nd Driver Look. I'm not going to stand here arguing all day. I didn't mean to crash into you, but our insurance companies will have to argue about it.
1st Driver Insurance companies ? I'm calling the police !
2nd Driver Nobody's been hurt. The police won't be interested. I'll give you the address of my insurance company and...
1st Driver The police *will* be interested. You must have been driving too fast.
2nd Driver Don't be silly. I was only doing twenty...
1st Driver You must have been going faster than that ! You weren't able to stop.
2nd Driver This is getting ridiculous !

Listen and repeat

C1 Listen

A: You were driving too fast, I'm certain.
B: You must have been driving too fast.
C: You must have been driving too fast.
A: He was going too slowly, I'm sure.
B: He must have been going too slowly.
C: He must have been going too slowly.

Now you do the same

You were driving too fast, I'm certain ..... You must have been driving too fast.
He was going too slowly, I'm sure ..... He must have been going too slowly.
They were drinking, I'm absolutely certain ..... They must have been drinking.
She was speeding. I know ..... She must have been speeding.

C2 Listen

A: You were driving too fast. It's possible.
B: You may have been driving too fast.
C: You may have been driving too fast.

A: You were driving too fast ? It's possible... but unlikely.
B: You might have been driving too fast.
C: You might have been driving too fast.

Now you do the same

You were driving too fast. It's possible ..... You may have been driving too fast.
You were driving too fast ? It's possible but unlikely ..... You might have been driving too fast.
You were driving too fast ? That's impossible ! ..... You can't have been driving too fast.
You were driving too fast. I'm almost certain. ..... You must have been driving too fast !

Dialogue D

Listen

1st Driver Ah, so you think it's ridiculous, do you ? I ought to punch you on the nose !
2nd Driver Hold on. You say that there was a dog. Where is it ?
1st Driver Eh ?
2nd Driver I didn't see it, and I can't see it now.
1st Driver It must have run away. We'll call the police.
2nd Driver Yes. Why not ? After all, perhaps you *didn't* stop because of a dog. Perhaps you just stopped to buy cigarettes, or something
1st Driver What ? I *am* going to punch you on the nose !
2nd Driver Perhaps there was no dog at all. Who knows ?
1st Driver Right. Take your glasses off, and put your fists up. Come on !
Policeman All right, all right. What's going on here ? Come on. Stop fighting, both of you ! I think you'd better tell me what happened...

New words

- punch (v) /pʌnʧ/ = strike (sb/st) hard with the fist. = đấm mạnh — *a man on the chin.*

Listen and repeat

D1 Listen

A: He was driving. He stopped.
B: He stopped driving.
C: He stopped driving.

A: They were fighting. They stopped.
B: They stopped fighting.
C: They stopped fighting.

Now you do the same

He was driving. He stopped ..... He stopped driving.
They were fighting. They stopped ..... They stopped fighting.
He was shouting. He stopped ..... He stopped shouting.
They were arguing. They stopped ..... They stopped arguing.

D2 Listen

A: He stopped driving. He bought some cigarettes.
B: He stopped to buy some cigarettes.
C: He stopped to buy some cigarettes.

A: They stopped fighting. They listened to the policeman.
B: They stopped to listen to the policeman.
C: They stopped to listen to the policeman.

Now you do the same

He stopped driving. He bought some cigarettes
..... He stopped to buy some cigarettes.
They stopped fighting. They listened to the policeman
..... They stopped to listen to the policeman.
They stopped walking. They had a coffee
..... They stopped to have a coffee.
She stopped working. She answered the phone
..... She stopped to answer the phone.

Listening

Listen to these short conversations. Somebody says 'I'm sorry' in each of them. Answer the questions when you hear this sound. * **BELL**

1

Woman 'Scuse me. Can I just get through ?
Man Oh, yes. I'm sorry.

* **BELL**
Is he really sorry or is he just being polite ?
.....He's just being polite.

2

Woman Ow ! Ouch... oh, dear. I think you've broken my foot...
Man I am sorry, Jane. I didn't mean to... I'm such a terrible dancer...are you OK ?

* **BELL**
Is he really sorry or is he being polite ?
.....He's really sorry.

3

Woman Excuse me, John... but *I* was reading that newspaper.
Man Oh, I *am* sorry. I didn't realize it was *yours*.

* **BELL**
Is he really sorry, or is he annoyed with her ?
.....He's annoyed with her.

4

Woman I'm terribly sorry to trouble you, but could you tell me the time ?
Man It's nearly half past three.
Woman Thank you.

* **BELL**
Was she sorry, or was she being polite ?
.....She was being polite.

5

Woman You're late again, Mr Jones.
Man Yes, sorry. I forgot to bring my sandwiches, so I went back to get them,then I missed the bus. It won't happen again.

* **BELL**
Is he sorry or is he being polite ?
.....He's being polite.
What did he forget to do ?
.....He forgot to bring his sandwiches.

Responses

Listen and respond in the most natural way.

A: 'Scuse me. Can I just get by ?
B: .....
A: I'm sorry I'm late. I had a phone call. My grandfather's just died.
B: .....
A: What do you mean, you can't lend me a pound ? I thought you were my friend !
B: .....
A: Er...do you mind being a bit more careful ? You've just spilt tea all over my coat.
B: .....
A: Excuse me. *I* was sitting there ! I don't know... some people !
B: .....
A: That's the end of section eight.

RECOGNIZING SIGNS.

- **Exact Fare Only** = Dấu hiệu ở cửa lên xe buýt cho biết hành khách phải trả đúng số tiền, tài xế sẽ không thối tiền
- **Out of order** = Bị hư, không hoạt động.
- **Please hand in your key at the desk** = Xin gửi chìa khóa ở quầy tiếp tân.
- **Standing room only** = Chỉ còn chỗ đứng.
- **Sold out** = Đã bán hết.

Unit 33 John Lennon

John Lennon

VOCABULARY

- **animator** *(n)* /'ænɪmeɪtə/ person who makes animated cartoons = hoạ sĩ phim hoạt hình
  animation /ˌænɪ'meɪʃn/ technique of making animated cartoons
- **appeal** *(n)* /ə'pi:l/ (to sb) (for st) earnest request = sự thỉnh cầu *an ~ for food, help, extra staff.*
  appeal *(v)* to sb (for st); ~ for st = make an earnest request = thỉnh cầu *I am ~ing on behalf of the famine victims.*
- **avant – garde** *(adj)* /ˌævɒŋ 'gɑ:d/ favouring new and progressive ideas, esp in art and literature = tiền phong *~ writers, artists; the ~ movement.*
  avant – garde *(n)* group of people introducing such ideas. *a member of the ~.*
- **barbiturate** *(n)* /bɑ:'bɪtjʊrət/ any of a group of sedative drugs = thuốc làm giảm đau
  He died from an overdose of ~s.
- **brain tumour** *(n)* /breɪn 'tju:mə/ u não
- **breakup** *(n)* /'breɪkʌp/ end (of a relationship or partnership) *The ~ of their marriage surprised no one.*
- **bring** *(v)* /brɪŋ/ (sb up) (esp passive) raise, rear or educate sb = nuôi nấng *She brought up five children.*
- **cartoon** *(n)* /kɑ:'tu:n/ (film) = animated cartoon = film made by photographing a series of gradually changing drawings, giving an illustration of movement = phim hoạt hình
  a Walt Disney ~.
- **cold store** *(n)* /kəʊld stɔ:/ kho lạnh
- **commentary** *(n)* /'kɒməntrɪ/ ~ (on / of st) spoken description of an event as it happens = bài tường thuật
  commentator *(n)* person who commentates = nhà tường thuật, nhà bình luận
- **contemporary** *(adj)* /kən'tempərərɪ/ of the time or period being referred to = đương thời, cùng thời. *Dickens was ~ with Thackeray.*
- **cub reporter** *(n)* /'kʌb rɪ,pɔ:tə/ young and inexperienced newspaper reporter = phóng viên mới vào nghề
- **dwarf** *(n)* /dwɔ:f/ 1. person, animal or plant that is much smaller than the normal size = người, vật nhỏ bé
  2. (in fair stories) creature like a very small man with magic powers = chú lùn
- **evoke** *(v)* /ɪ'vəʊk/ 1. bring to mind (a feeling, a memory) khơi dậy *The music ~ d memories of her youth.*
  2. (fml) produce or cause = gây ra
  Her speech ~ d great anger.
  evocation *(n)* /ˌevəʊ'keɪʃn/
- **expatriate** *(n)* /ˌeks'pætrɪət; US - 'peɪt-/ person living outside his own country = người biệt xứ *American ~ s in Paris.*
  expatriate *(v)* /ˌeks'pætrɪeɪt/ cause (sb) to leave his native country; expel = đày biệt xứ *~ d on suspicion of spying for the enemy.*
- **feature film** *(n)* /'fi:tʃə fɪlm/ full – length film as part of a cinema programme = phim truyện *the main feature following the cartoon.* = bộ phim chính tiếp theo phim hoạt hình.
- **found** *(v)* /faʊnd/ establish = thành lập
  This settlement was ~ ed in 1592
  foundation *(n)* *the ~ of the university*
- **grief** *(n)* /gri:f/ (~ over / at st) violent or deep sorrow = nỗi buồn *die of ~; driven almost insane by ~ over / at his death.*
- **hero** *(n)* /'hɪərəʊ/ person who is admired by many for his noble qualities or bravery = anh hùng *receive a hero's welcome.*
  heroine *(n)* /'herəʊɪn/ female hero
  heroic *(adj)* /hɪ'rəʊɪk/
- **hit** *(n)* /hɪt/ (record) record that is very popular = đĩa nhạc ăn khách *hit songs; records.*
- **human race** *(n)* /'hju:mən reɪs/ loài người
- **idol** *(n)* /'aɪdl/ person that is greatly loved or admired = thần tượng *The Beatles were the pop ~ s of the 60's.*
- **incredible** *(adj)* /ɪn'kredɪbl/ impossible - to believe = không tin được *What an ~ story !*
- **league** *(n)* /li:g/ former measure of distance (about 4.8 km) = dặm (khoảng 4km)
- **MBE** /ˌembi:'i:/ (Member of the Order of the British Empire) thành viên của hoàng gia Anh
- **media coverage** *(n)* /'mi:dɪə 'kʌvərɪdʒ/ toàn bộ phương tiện truyền thông
- **meditate** *(v)* /'medɪteɪt/ (on / upon st) think deeply, esp about spiritual matters = thiền
  I ~ in order to relax.

meditation /ˌmedɪˈteɪʃn/ deep thought, esp about spiritual matters = sự ngồi thiền
M ~ is practised by some Eastern religions.

- **orphan** *(n)* /ˈɔːfn/ person (esp a child) whose parents are dead = trẻ mồ côi *He has been an ~ since he was five.*
  orphanage /ˈɔːfənɪdʒ/ home for children who are orphans = trại mồ côi, cô nhi viện
- **overdose** *(v)* /ˌəʊvəˈdəʊs/ ~ (on st) take an overdose (of st) *He ~ d on (sleeping-pills) and died.*
  overdose *(n)* /ˈəʊvədəʊs/ too great an amount (of a drug) taken at one time. *take a massive ~ of sleeping tablets.*
- **overtime** *(adv)* /ˈəʊvətaɪm/ after the usual working hours = ngoài giờ *working ~.*
  (n) time spent at work after the usual working hours *be on ~* = working overtime.
- **permission** *(n)* /pəˈmɪʃn/ act of allowing sb to do st = sự cho phép
  She refused to give her ~.
  permit *(v)* /pəˈmɪt/ allow = cho phép *We do not ~ smoking in the office.*
- **popularity** *(n)* /ˌpɒpjʊˈlærətɪ/ state of being admired or liked by many people = được quần chúng biết đến, nổi tiếng
  win, gain, enjoy the ~ of the voters.
- **post** *(n)* /pəʊst/ position of paid employment = vị trí, chức vụ *She was offered a ~ in the new government.*
- **posthumous** *(adj)* /ˈpɒstjʊməs/ 1. happening or given after death = *~ fame, earnings*
  2. (of a literary work) published after its author's death = xuất bản sau khi tác giả qua đời *Forster's ~ novel.*
- **pray** *(v)* /preɪ/ make requests known (to God) = cầu nguyện *They prayed (to God) for an end to their sufferings.*
- **relationship** *(n)* /rɪˈleɪʃnʃɪp/ state of being related by birth or marriage = mối quan hệ *a father - son ~.*
- **riddle** *(n)* /rɪdl/ 1. puzzling question = sự khó hiểu *She speaks / talks in ~ s - it's very difficult to know what she means.*
  2. puzzling person, thing, event = người, vật, sự kiện khó hiểu. *She's a complete ~, even to her parents.*
- **RIP** /ɑːr aɪˈpiː/ rest in peace = hãy yên nghỉ bình yên
- **rumour** *(n)* /ˈruːmə/ (instance of) information spread by being talked about but not certainly true = tin đồn *I heard a ~ (that) he was leaving.*
- **satirical** *(adj)* /səˈtɪrɪkl/ containing satire = châm biếm, trào phúng *a ~ play, poems.*
  satire *(n)* /ˈsætaɪə/ = sự châm biếm; phim truyện châm biếm, trào phúng
- **separate** *(v)* /ˈsepəreɪt/ stop living together as a married couple = ly thân *After ten years of marriage they decided to ~.*
- **solo** *(adj) (adv)* /ˈsəʊləʊ/ by oneself, without a companion. *his first ~ flight; sing ~.*
- **spawn** *(v)* /spɔːn/ (esp derog) appear or produce (st) in great numbers = sản sinh ra.
- **special issue** *(n)* /ˈspeʃəl ˈɪʃu, ˈɪsjuː/ số báo đặc biệt
- **symbolize** *(v)* /ˈsɪmbəlaɪz/ 1. represent st / sb by means of a symbol = tượng trưng
  The poet has ~ d his lover with a flower.
  2. be a symbol of (st) = là biểu tượng
  a picture of a red disc with rays coming from it, ~ ing the sun.
- **toll** *(v)* /təʊl/ ~ (for sb / st) (of a bell) sound with regular strokes, esp for a death or funeral = rung chuông
- **tuberculosis** *(n)* /tjuːˌbɜːkjʊˈləʊsɪs/ bệnh lao
- **verdict** *(n)* /ˈvɜːdɪkt/ opinion given after testing, examining or experiencing st = sự nhận định, dư luận
- **yeah** *(adv)* /jeə/ (infml) yes

PROPER NAMES

Best	/best/
Brian Epstein	/ˈbraɪən ˈepstaɪn/
Cynthia Powell	/ˈsɪnθɪə ˈpaʊəl/
Dakota	/dəˈkəʊtə/
Elizabeth	/ɪˈlɪzəbəθ/
George Harrison	/dʒɔːdʒ ˈhærɪsn/
Hawaii	/həˈwaɪiː hə-/
John Lennon	/dʒɒn ˈlenən/
Liverpool	/ˈlɪvəpuːl/
Mark Chapman	/ˈmaːk ˈtʃæpmən/
Paul McCartney	/pɔːl məˈkaːtnɪ/
Pete Best	/ˈpiːt ˈbest/
Ringo Star	/ˈrɪŋgəʊ ˈstaː/
Sutcliffe	/ˈsʌtklɪf/
Yoko Ono	/ˈjəkəʊ ˈɒnəʊ/

John Lennon was murdered just before 11 pm on the 8th December 1980 outside his home in the Dakota Apartment Building in New York City. He had just got out of a car, and was walking to the entrance when a voice called 'Mr Lennon'. Lennon turned, and was shot five times. The killer threw his gun down, and stood there smiling. 'Do you know what you just did?' shouted the doorman. 'I just shot John Lennon,' the killer replied. Lennon was rushed to hospital in a police patrol car, but it was too late. The killer was 25 year-old Mark Chapman from Hawaii. Earlier the same evening he had asked Lennon for his autograph. In fact, he had been hanging around outside the apartment building for several days. Chapman was a fan of the Beatles and Lennon, and had tried to imitate him in many ways. It is said that he even believed that he was John Lennon.

John Lennon đã bị sát hại ngay trước lúc 11g tối ngày 8 tháng 12 năm 1980 bên ngoài nhà của anh ở tòa chung cư Dakota trong thành phố New York. Anh ta vừa mới ra khỏi xe và đang bước về phía cổng nhà thì nghe tiếng gọi "Ông Lennon". Lennon quay lại, và bị bắn 5 phát đạn. Kẻ sát nhân ném khẩu súng xuống và đứng đó mỉm cười. "Này, anh có biết anh vừa làm gì không hả ?", người gác cửa la lên. "Tôi vừa mới bắn John Lennon", kẻ sát nhân trả lời. Lennon được cấp tốc đưa vào bệnh viện trên một xe tuần tiễu của cảnh sát, nhưng đã quá trễ. Kẻ sát nhân là Mark Chapman, 25 tuổi, người Hawaii. Trước đó cùng buổi tối hôm ấy hắn đã xin chữ ký của Lennon. Thực ra hắn đã lảng vảng quanh chung cư nhiều ngày trước đó. Chapman là một người hâm mộ nhóm Beatles và John Lennon, và đã cố gắng bắt chước anh ta theo nhiều cách. Người ta nói rằng thậm chí hắn còn tin rằng hắn là John Lennon nữa.

BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES

1940 Born Liverpool.
1942 Lennon family deserted by father. Mother leaves. John brought up by aunt.
1956 Forms pop group at school.
1957 Student at Liverpool College of Art.
1958 Mother killed in road accident.

CÁC GHI CHÚ VỀ TIỂU SỬ

1940 Sinh ra ở Liverpool
1942 Cha Lennon bỏ rơi gia đình. Mẹ bỏ đi. Dì của Lennon nuôi anh ta.
1956 Thành lập nhóm nhạc pop ở trường.
1957 Sinh viên tại trường Cao đẳng Hội họa Liverpool.
1958 Mẹ bị chết trong một tai nạn xe cộ.

1960 Goes professional as one of 'The Beatles' (Lennon, McCartney, Harrison, Best, Sutcliffe). Plays in Hamburg, Germany.

1961 Plays in Hamburg and Liverpool. Sutcliffe (Lennon's best friend) dies of a brain tumour. Brian Epstein begins to manage the Beatles.

1962 Ringo Starr replaces Pete Best as Beatles drummer. Married Cynthia Powell, an art student. Beatles' first record 'Love me do'. First TV appearance.

1963 Three records Number 1 in British Top 20. Incredible popularity. Son, Julian, born.

1964 First hit record in USA 'I want to hold your hand'. Two US tours. In April, Beatles records at Number 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 in US Top 20. First film 'A Hard Day's Night'. First book.

1965 'Help !' Beatles' second film. Beatlemania at its height. US tour. Huge audiences in football stadiums. Beatles receive MBE (special honorary award) from Queen Elizabeth.

1966 Lennon in film 'How I won the War' - not a musical. Meets Yoko Ono, Japanese avant-garde artist.

1967 'Sergeant Pepper' – Beatles' most famous LP. All the Beatles interested in meditation. Manager Brian Epstein found dead from sleeping-pill overdose.

1968 In India with Beatles for meditation. Beatles' company 'Apple' founded. Lennon art exhibition 'You are here'. Lennon divorced by wife.

1969 Beatles' film 'Let it Be'. Rumours of quarrels about money. Talk of Beatles' break up. Beatles' last performance on roof of Apple Building. Lennon and Yoko Ono marry. He 29, She 36. Lennon still recording with Beatles but some work solo.

1970 McCartney leaves Beatles. Others start solo careers.

1960 Chơi chuyên nghiệp trong nhóm "The Beatles" (Lennon, Mc Cartney, Harrison, Best, Sutcliffe). Biểu diễn ở Hamburg, Đức.

1961 Biểu diễn ở Hamburg và Liverpool. Sutcliffe (bạn thân nhất của Lennon) chết vì bướu não. Brian Epstein bắt đầu làm ông bầu của nhóm Beatles.

1962 Ringo Starr thế Pete Best làm tay trống của Beatles. Cưới Cynthia Powell, một sinh viên hội họa. Đĩa đầu tiên của Beatles "Love me do" xuất hiện lần đầu tiên trên TV.

1963 Ba đĩa nhạc được xếp hạng 1 trong danh mục 20 bài hay nhất nước Anh. Nổi tiếng không thể tưởng tượng nổi. Con trai, Julian chào đời.

1964 Đĩa nhạc ăn khách đầu tiên ở Mỹ "I want to hold your hand" Hai chuyến biểu diễn ở Mỹ. Vào tháng 4, các đĩa nhạc của Beatles xếp hạng 1, 2, 3, 4 và 5 trong 20 bảng hay nhất nước Mỹ. Phim đầu tiên "A Hard Day's Night". Cuốn sách đầu tiên.

1965 "Help !", phim thứ 2 của Beatles. Hội chứng Beatles lên đến đỉnh cao. Biểu diễn ở Mỹ. Lượng khán giả khổng lồ trong các sân bóng đá. Beatles nhận được tước hiệu MBE (giải thưởng danh dự đặc biệt) do Nữ hoàng Elizabeth phong tặng.

1966 Lennon xuất hiện trong phim "How I Won the War" – không phải là phim ca nhạc. Gặp Yoko Ono, một họa sĩ phái tiên phong người Nhật.

1967 "Sergeant Pepper" – đĩa LP (đĩa 33) nổi tiếng nhất của nhóm Beatles. Tất cả thành viên của Beatles đều quan tâm đến thiền. Người ta tìm thấy ông bầu Brian Epstein chết vì dùng thuốc ngủ quá liều.

1968 Ở Ấn Độ cùng với nhóm Beatles để thiền. Công ty "Apple" của nhóm Beatles được thành lập. Triển lãm tranh của Lennon với chủ đề "You are here" (Em ở đây). Lennon bị vợ ly dị.

1969 Phim "Let it Be" của Beatles. Có tin đồn về những sự cãi nhau về tiền bạc. Người ta nói tới sự tan rã của nhóm Beatles. Buổi trình diễn cuối cùng của nhóm Beatles trên sân thượng tòa nhà Apple. Lennon và Yoko Ono cưới nhau. Chàng 29 và nàng 36. Lennon vẫn còn thu đĩa chung với Beatles nhưng cũng thu riêng một số đĩa.

1970 Mc Cartney bỏ nhóm Beatles. Những người khác bắt đầu chơi riêng.

1971 Lennon LP 'Imagine' – most successful LP. Lennon and Yoko Ono in New York one-room apartment.

1972 Charity concerts.

1973 Lennon and Yoko Ono separate. Lennon in Los Angeles. Lennon ordered to leave USA – protests and appeals.

1974 Drink problem – one and a half bottles of spirits a day. Still fighting deportation.

1975 Lennon and Yoko Ono together again in New York. Permission to stay in USA. Son Sean born October 9th (Lennon's birthday).

1976 Retires from public life. Extensive travel. Business affairs managed by Yoko Ono.

1976-80 Full-time father. Very close relationship with son. Owns seven apartments in same block – one as a cold-store for fur coats.

1980 First record for six years. LP 'Double Fantasy'. Single 'Starting Over'. Good reviews from critics. Many said it was 'a new beginning'. Dec 8th Lennon murdered. Massive media coverage. TV and radio programmes interrupted to give news. Record companies on overtime to produce records.

1981 In January and February three records at Number 1 in British Top 20 – '(Just Like) Starting Over', 'Imagine' and 'Woman'.

1971 Đĩa 33 "Imagine" của Lennon – là đĩa 33 nổi tiếng nhất. Lennon và Yoko Ono ở New York, trong một căn hộ một phòng.

1972 Biểu diễn từ thiện.

1973 Lennon và Yoko Ono ly thân. Lennon ở Los Angeles. Bị yêu cầu phải rời Mỹ. Phản đối và thỉnh cầu.

1974 Nghiện rượu – mỗi ngày uống một chai rưỡi. Vẫn phản kháng lệnh trục xuất.

1975 Lennon và Yoko Ono đoàn tụ ở New York. Được phép ở lại Mỹ. Con trai Sean sinh ngày 9 tháng 10 (cũng là sinh nhật Lennon).

1976 Không trình diễn trước công chúng nữa. Đi du lịch rất nhiều. Công việc làm ăn do Yoko Ono đảm trách.

1976-80 Dành trọn thời gian chăm sóc con. Rất gần con. Sở hữu 7 căn hộ trong cùng một khu nhà – một căn hộ được dùng làm kho trữ lạnh các áo choàng lông thú.

1980 Đĩa nhạc đầu tiên sau 6 năm. Đĩa 33 "Double Fantasy". Đĩa 45 "Starting Over". Được giới phê bình đánh giá cao. Nhiều người nói rằng đó là "một sự khởi đầu mới mẻ". Ngày 8 tháng 12 bị sát hại. Các phương tiện truyền thông đại chúng đua nhau đưa tin. Các chương trình TV và radio bị gián đoạn để đưa tin. Các hãng thu đĩa làm việc ngày đêm để sản xuất đĩa nhạc.

1981 Vào tháng giêng và tháng 2, 3 đĩa được xếp hạng 1 trong danh sách 20 bài hay nhất nước Anh : "(Just Like) Starting Over", "Imagine" và "Woman".

PRACTICE

Walt Disney

Walt Disney was born on 5th December, 1901, in Chicago. His father was Irish-Canadian, and his mother was German – American. Disney attended McKinley High School in Chicago, and left at the age of 17 to become an ambulance driver in the First World War. In 1919 he moved to Kansas City and became a commercial artist. He went to Hollywood in 1923 to become an animator, working on cartoon films. He was married in 1925 to Lillian Bounds. He drew the first Mickey Mouse cartoon in 1928. He was the first producer to use Technicolor, on 'Flowers and Trees' in 1933. By 1934 he employed a staff of 700. He created Donald Duck in 1936.

In 1937 he made the first full length cartoon feature film' Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs'.

Over the next thirty years he made a series of successful cartoon Films, including 'Pinocchio' (1939), 'Fantasia' (1940), 'Bambi' (1943), 'Lady and the Tramp' (1956), '101 Dalmations' (1956) and the posthumous 'The Jungle Book' (1967). His series of 'True Life Adventures', which were animal documentaries, were also very popular. His studio also made ordinary feature films for children, such as '20000 Leagues Under the Sea'. In 1955 Disneyland was opened in California, and this was followed in 1971 by Disney World Florida. Disney died on December 15th, 1966 in Burbank, California, at the age of 65. His films are still shown regularly at the cinema, and because of their timeless quality, will continue to be shown for years to come.

Look at these notes on Disney.

WALTER ELIAS DISNEY 5/12/01 – 15/12/66. Born Chicago. Father : Irish-Canadian. Mother : German-American. McKinley High Sc., Chic. to 17. Then ambulance driver in WW1. 1919 Kansas City. Commercial Artist. 1923- Hollywood, animator, cartoon films. 1925- Married Lillian Bounds. 1928- 1st Mickey Mouse 1933- 1st technicolour – 'Flowers & Trees'. 1934- staff of 700. 1936- 'Donald Duck'. 1937- 1st full length cartoon feature film, 'Snow White and the 7 Dwarfs'. Next 30 years- films included 'Pinocchio' (39), 'Fantasia' (40), 'Bambi' (43), 'Lady & the Tramp' (56), '101 Dalmations' (56), + posthumous 'The Jungle Book' (67). Also 'True Life Adventures' (animal documentaries) – v. popular. + ordinary feature films for children – e.g. '20,000 Leagues Under The Sea'. 1955- Disneyland, Ca. 1971- Disney World, Fla. Died Burbank, Ca. Films still shown regularly – timeless quality. Will continue in future.

Xem qua những điều ghi chú này về Disney

Exercise 1

Read these notes, and use them to write a short biography.

Bài tập 1

Đọc các điều ghi này và dùng những điều đó viết thành một bài tiểu sử ngắn.

MARILYN MONROE 1/6/26 – 5/8/62. Real name : Norma Jean Baker. Born L.A., Ca. 1934- mother mentally ill. 1935 MM to L.A. orphanage. 1st married, age 16, 1942. Divorce, age 19. 1944- photographic model (calendars). Film career began 1948 'Dangerous Years'. 1st big success in 'Niagara', (52). Married U.S. baseball star, Joe di Maggio, (52). Films included 'Gentlemen Prefer Blondes' (53), "How to Marry a Millionaire' (53), 'The Seven Year Itch' (55), 'Some Like it Hot' (59). Husband No. 3 Arthur Miller – U.S. playwright. He wrote last film 'The Misfits' (61). Found dead, Hollywood. Overdose of barbiturates. Verdict – suicide. Some questions in recent years about this. Sex symbol – but lonely, unhappy private life. Perhaps most of films not great movies – but MM symbolized Hollywood.

. . . . . .

. . . . . .

Exercise 2

Read these short biographies of Ernest Hemingway and George Orwell.

Bài tập 2

Đọc bài tiểu sử ngắn này về Ernest Hemingway và George Orwell.

Ernest Miller Hemingway was born in 1899. His father was a doctor and he was the second of six children. Their home was at Oak Park, a Chicago suburb.

In 1917 Hemingway joined the Kansas City *Star* as a cub reporter. The following year he volunteered to work as an ambulance driver on the Italian front where he was badly wounded but twice decorated for his services. He returned to America in 1919 and married in 1921. In 1922 he reported on the Greco-Turkish was then two years later resigned from journalism to devote

Eric Arthur Blair (George Orwell) was born in 1903 in India, where his father worked for the Civil Service. The family moved to England in 1907 and in 1917 Orwell entered Eton, where he contributed regularly to the various college magazines. He left in 1921 and joined the Indian Imperial Police in Burma the following year, in which he served until 1928.

His first published article appeared in *Le Monde* in October 1928, while Orwell was living in Paris, and he returned to England in 1929 to take up work as a private tutor and later as a

himself to fiction. He settled in Paris where he renewed his earlier friendship with such fellow – American expatriates as Ezra Pound and Gertrude Stein. Their encouragement and criticism were to play a valuable part in the formation of his style.

Hemingway's first two published works were *Three Stories and Ten Poems* and *In Our Time* but it was the satirical novel, *The Torrents of Spring*, which established his name more widely. His international reputation was firmly secured by his next three books : *Fiesta, Men Without Women* and *A Farewell to Arms*.

He was passionately involved with bullfighting, big-game hunting and deep-sea fishing, and his writing reflected this. He visited Spain during the Civil War and described his experiences in the bestseller, *For Whom the Bell Tolls*. His direct and deceptively simple style of writing spawned generations of imitators but no equals. Recognition of his position in contemporary literature came in 1954 when he was awarded the Nobel Prize, following the publication of *The Old Man and the Sea*. Ernest Hemingway died in 1961.

From the introduction to the Panther edition of *Torrents of Spring*.

Make notes on Hemingway using these headings.

Full name .....
Born (Where ? When ?) .....
Family .....
Early career .....
Travel .....

Exercise 3

Read the notes on Walt Disney and Marilyn Monroe. Make similar notes on George Orwell.

schoolteacher (1932) *Down and Out in Paris and London* was published in 1933. Due to his poor health, Orwell gave up teaching and worked as a part – time assistant in a Hampstead bookshop, and later was able to earn his living reviewing novels for the *New English Weekly*, a post he kept until 1940.

At the end of 1936 Orwell went to Spain in the Civil War and was wounded. During the Second World War he was a member of the Home Guard and worked for the BBC Eastern Service from 1940 to 1943. As literary editor of *Tribune* he contributed a regular page of political and literary commentary. From 1945 Orwell was the *Observer's* war correspondent and later became a regular contributor to the *Manchester Evening News*.

Orwell suffered from tuberculosis, and was in and out of hospital from 1947 until his death in 1950. He was forty-six.

His publications include *The Road to Wigan Pier, Coming Up for Air, Keep the Aspridistra Flying* and *Homage to Catalonia*. Orwell's name became widely known with the publication of *Animal Farm* and *Nineteen Eighty-Four*, both of which have sold more than two million copies. All Orwell's works have been published in Penguins.

From the introduction to the Penguin edition of *Down and Out in Paris and London*.

Ghi chú về Hemingway dùng các đầu đề sau.

Achievements .....
Interests .....
Awards .....
Death .....

Bài tập 3

Đọc các ghi chú về Walt Disney và Marilyn Monroe. Làm các ghi chú tương tự về George Orwell.

.....
.....

Unit 34 Kidnapped

Bị bắt cóc

VOCABULARY

- **harm** *(v)* /hɑ:m/ cause harm to (sb / st) = làm hại. *an event which has ~ ed relations between the two countries.*
  harm *(n)* damage; injury *He meant no ~.*
  harmful *(adj)* causing harm *the ~ effects of smoking. Smoking is ~ to your health.*
- **kidnap** *(v)* /'kɪdnæp/ steal (sb) away by force and illegally, esp in order to obtain money = bắt cóc
  Two businessmen have been ~ ped by terrorists.
  kidnap *(n)* sự bắt cóc
  kidnapping *(n)* = vụ bắt cóc
  kidnapper *(n)* kẻ bắt cóc *The kidnappers have demanded £1 million for his safe release. The kidnapping occured in broad day light.*
- **pay up** *(v)* /peɪ ʌp/ pay in full money that is owed for st *I'll take you to court unless you ~ immediately.*
- **trust** *(v)* /trʌst/ have trust in sb / st *You can't ~ what the papers say.*
  trust *(n)* belief *A good marriage is based on ~.*

EXPRESSIONS

in tears /ɪn tɪəz/ khóc

I can't put my hand on that much money
tôi không thể nào có ngay số tiền nhiều như vậy được

If you harm a hair on her head. I'll...
Nếu anh đụng tới một sợi tóc của nó, tôi sẽ...

PROPER NAMES

Caroline /'kærəlaɪn/
Hugh Rolan /'hju: 'rɒlən/

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Verb patterns

S + V + to-infinitive

"He's just arrived to find his wife in tears" suggests an outcome or result (kết quả) he sees on arriving home : His wife is crying. Similarly hereafter are some of the verbs followed by to infinitives indicating "Result" or "outcome"

	Subject & verb	to-infinitive
1	He came	to see that he was mistaken
2	How do you come	to know that ?
3	Now that I come	to think of it
4	How can I get	to know you ?
5	She lived	to be a hundred
6	They will live	to regret it
7	Will you live	to finish your great work ?
8	The news proved (or turned out)	to be true
9	She is growing	to be more stubborn

Sometimes the infinitive is used in a way that makes it equivalent to a co-ordinate change

	Subject & verb	To-infinitive
1	He awoke	to find the house on fire
2	The drunken man awoke	to find himself in prison
3	The good old days have gone	never to return
4	The jet air-liner has come	to stay

	Subject & verb	To-infinitive
5	I rejoiced	to hear of your success
6	I grieve	to hear of your failure
7	She shuddered	to think of it

2. Conditional Sentences:

Type 1 : **If clause** **main clause**
simple present **will + V**

1. We can use *all present tenses* after *if*, not only the simple present.

EX : - If she *finishes* work early, she *will go* home.
- If she *has finished* work by 4 o'clock, she *will go* home.
- If *we're having* visitors, the flat *will need* a good clean.

2. We can use other modal verbs, not just the will - future.

EX : - If you need a ticket for the disco tonight, I *can* get you one cheap.
- If you're going to a job interview, you *should* wear a tie.
- If he doesn't hurry, the plane *will have left* by the time he gets to the airport.

3. We use type 1 conditionals *to describe what will* or *won't* (probably) *happen*.

Type 2 : **If clause** **main clause.**
simple past **would + V**

1. We form Type 2 conditionals with if - clause in simple past or past continuous :

EX : - If you *had* longer legs, you *would be able* to run faster.
- If I *was leaving* the house empty, I *would ask* someone to keep an eye on it.

2. We can use *would, could* or *might* in the main clause.

EX : - If we had a calculator, we *could work* this out lot a quicker.
- If you rang the bell, someone *might come*.

3. We often use Type 2 conditionals *to describe what is totally impossible*. The past tense in the If-clause often refers to something unreal, something imaginary.

4. We can use *were* in place of *was* after *if* in all persons. *Were* is formal. We also prefer *were* when expressing doubt or imagining something.

EX : If I was / were better qualified, I'd apply for the job
(was = less formal; were = more formal)

5. We use *If I were you* and If I were in your position *to give advice*.

EX : *If I were in Jane's position*, I'd look for a new job.

Hugh Rolan is a wealthy businessman. His wife phoned him an hour ago to tell him that their daughter hadn't returned home from school. He told her not to worry and came home at once. He's just arrived to find his wife in tears.

Hugh Pamela, what's wrong ? Is it Caroline ?

Pamela Yes. This note came through the door. She... she... she's been kidnapped !

Hugh Rolan là một thương gia giàu có. Vợ ông ta điện thoại cách đó một giờ báo rằng con gái của họ đi học chưa về nhà. Ông ta báo vợ đừng lo lắng và lập tức trở về nhà. Ông ta vừa về đến nhà và thấy vợ đang khóc.

Hugh : Pamela, chuyện gì vậy ? Có phải là về Caroline không ?

Pamela : Vâng. Bức thư này được nhét qua khe cửa... Nó... nó đã bị bắt cóc rồi.

Hugh Kidnapped ! Oh, my God, no ! Have you phoned the police ?

Pamela No, no. Don't touch the phone ! Read the note first.

Hugh Half a million pounds ! It'll take me a few days to get that much cash together.

Pamela How long ?

Hugh I don't know. I just can't put my hands on that much money. Not immediately. Maybe we should phone the police.

Pamela No, not the police ! If the kidnappers find out, they'll kill her.

Hugh But I'll have to borrow the money. If I don't tell the police, the bank won't let me have it.

Pamela Oh, Hugh ! Unless we do exactly what they say, we may never see her again.

Hugh Hugh Rolan.

Voice Did you get our note ?

Hugh Yes.

Voice Have you told the police ?

Hugh No... not yet.

Voice You'd better not. When can you get the money ?

Hugh I need a few days.

Voice You've got one day.

Hugh How do we know that Caroline is still alive ?

Voice You don't. You'll have to trust us. Get the money by tomorrow evening. You'll hear from us again.

Hugh If you harm a hair on her head, I'll... I'll...

We have got your **daughter**
She is safe and well
We want **£500,000** If you
give us the **money** she will be **OK**
don't phone the POLICE or we'll
KILL her If you **try** to
contact them **We'll** know
If you don't follow our INSTRUCTIONS
your **daughter** will **DIE** UNLESS
you pay up you'll **never** **see** her again.

Hugh : Bắt cóc ! Trời đất ơi, sao lại như thế được. Em gọi cảnh sát chưa ?

Pamela : Đừng, đừng. Đừng nhấc máy lên ! Đọc là thư này đã.

Hugh : Nửa triệu pounds ! Anh phải cần đến vài ngày mới lấy đủ số tiền mặt lớn như vậy.

Pamela : Mấy ngày anh ?

Hugh : Anh cũng không biết nữa. Không thể có sẵn số tiền lớn như vậy đâu. Không thể có ngay được. Chắc là chúng ta phải gọi báo cho cảnh sát.

Pamela : Không, không ! Nếu bọn bắt cóc biết được, chúng sẽ giết con bé mất.

Hugh : Nhưng anh phải vay tiền chứ. Nếu anh không báo cảnh sát thì ngân hàng sẽ không chịu cho anh vay tiền.

Pamela : Anh Hugh ! Trừ khi chúng ta làm đúng theo những gì bọn chúng yêu cầu, chúng ta sẽ không bao giờ còn thấy con nữa.

Hugh : Hugh Rolan nghe đây.

Giọng nói : Ông nhận thư chưa ?

Hugh : Rồi.

Giọng nói : Ông đã báo cảnh sát chưa ?

Hugh : Không... à chưa.

Giọng nói : Tốt hơn là đừng. Khi nào ông có tiền ?

Hugh : Tôi cần vài ngày.

Giọng nói : Ông chỉ có một ngày thôi.

Hugh : Làm sao chúng tôi biết là Caroline hãy còn sống?

Giọng nói : Ông không cần phải biết. Ông phải tin chúng tôi. Khoảng tối mai ông phải có tiền. Chúng tôi sẽ liên lạc lại.

Hugh : Nếu các ông làm hại một sợi tóc trên đầu nó, tôi sẽ...

Chúng tôi đang giữ con gái của ông bà. Cô ta vẫn bình yên vô sự. Chúng tôi cần 500.000 pounds. Nếu ông bà trao tiền cho chúng tôi, cô bé sẽ không hề hấn gì. Đừng báo cảnh sát, nếu không chúng tôi sẽ giết cô ta. Nếu ông bà cố gắng tiếp xúc với họ, chúng tôi sẽ biết ngay. Nếu ông bà không làm theo yêu cầu của chúng tôi, con gái của ông bà sẽ chết. Trừ khi ông bà trả đủ số tiền trên, ông bà sẽ không bao giờ gặp lại con nữa.

Exercise 1

1 If you were Hugh, would you telephone the police ?
2 If you were the kidnappers, how would you arrange to get the money ?
3 If you were Hugh and Pamela, what would you do ?
4 If you were the police, what would you do?

Exercise 3

Look at Exercise 2.
What would you do in these situations ?
If I were him, I'd give him the money.
If I were him, I'd run away.
If I were him, I'd hit the robber with the briefcase.

PRACTICE

Language summary

If you do this, I'll do that.
If you don't do this, I'll do that.
Unless you do this, I'll do that.

Look at these car hire rates.

HERTZ	LOCAL RATES PROVINCES			
GROUP	CAR	DAILY INC 200 MILES 2 DAYS + PER DAY UNLIMITED	WEEKLY UNLIMITED	EXCESS MILES PER MILE
	MANUAL TRANSMISSION			
A	FORD Fiesta 1.1L MINI METRO 1.0L or similar	£15.00	£84.00	12p
B	FORD Escort 1.3L (5 door) or similar	£16.50	£91.00	14p
C	FORD Cortina 1.6L CAVALIER 1.6L	£18.50	£105.00	15p
	AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION			
F	FORD Cortina 2.0GL or similar SAAB 900 GLE/S	£31.00	£161.00	22p
	ESTATE CARS			
I	FORD Cortina 1.6L (Manual) or similar	£25.00	£126.00	19p

Exercise 2

A *Give me the money !*
B *Why ?*
A *If you don't give me the money, I'll kill you.*
B *What ? You're joking !*
A *No, I'm not. Unless you give me the money, I'll kill you.*

Now look at the pictures, and make similar conversations.

Exercise 1

Mrs Davies wants to rent a car for the day.
A *If she rents a Ford Fiesta, it'll cost £15.00 per day.*
B *If she drives more than 200 miles, she'll have to pay 12p per mile extra.*
Write two sentences about each of these cars : Ford Escort 1.3L/Cavalier/Saab 900GLE/Ford Cortina 1.6L Estate.

Bài tập 1

Bà Davies muốn thuê một chiếc xe trong ngày.
A Nếu bà thuê chiếc Ford Fiesta, bà sẽ tốn 15 pounds mỗi ngày.
B Nếu bà lái hơn 200 miles, Bà sẽ phải trả 12 pence cho mỗi mile thêm.
Viết 2 câu về mỗi chiếc xe này : Ford Escort 1-3L/Cavalier/Saab 900 GLE/Ford Cortina 1.6L Estate.

Exercise 2

If she rents a Mini-Metro for 5 days, it will cost £75.00.
Write sentences.

Bài tập 2

Nếu bà thuê chiếc Mini-Metro trong 5 ngày, bà sẽ tốn 75 pounds.
Viết thành câu.
1 Ford Cortina 1.0GL/the weekend.
2 Cavalier/2 days.

3 Ford Cortina Estate/a week.

Exercise 3

If she wants a 5 - door car, she'll rent an Escort.

Write sentences.

1 They/small cheap car. 2 He/automatic. 3 You/Estate.

Exercise 4

A *How much will it be if we rent a Fiesta for a week ?*

B *A Fiesta ? Let me see... that'll be £84.00.*

Ask and answer about the other cars for different periods of time.

Exercise 5

It's half-time in a very important football match. The score is Kings Park Rovers 3. Eastfield United 0. Brian Huff, the Eastfield manager has just walked into the dressing room. He's furious ! He's made some notes.

Unless we win this match, I'll resign !

Write six more sentences.

Bài tập 5

Đó là giờ giải lao trong trận đấu bóng đá quan trọng. Tỉ số Kings Park Rovers 3. Eastfield United 0. Brian Huff, ông bầu của đội Eastfield vừa đi vào phòng rửa mặt. Ông ta giận dữ ! Ông ta ghi mấy điều này :

Nếu chúng ta không thắng được trận này, tôi sẽ từ chức !

Viết thêm 6 câu nữa.

Exercise 6

If we don't win this match, I'll resign !

Write six more sentences.

Exercise 7

Put 'If' or 'unless' into the spaces in these sentences.

1 . . . . . we hurry, we'll miss the bus.

2 Will you phone me, ... you come to England ?

3 . . . . you see Jane, ask her to contact me.

4 You'll never pass your exam, ... you don't work harder.

5 Eastfield won't win . . . . . they begin playing better.

6 . . . . . you forget our address.

4 Ford Escort/3 days.

Bài tập 3

Nếu bà cần chiếc xe 5 cửa, bà sẽ thuê chiếc Escort.

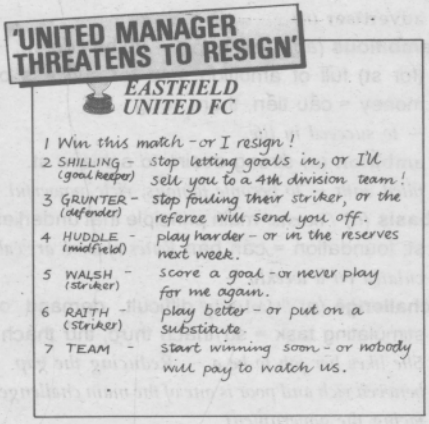
Viết thành câu.

Bài tập 4

A Nếu chúng ta thuê chiếc Fiesta trong 1 tuần sẽ tốn bao nhiêu ?

B Chiếc Fiesta à ? Để tôi xem nào... Như vậy là 84 pounds.

Hỏi và trả lời về các xe khác cho các khoảng thời gian khác nhau.



Bài tập 6

Nếu chúng ta không thắng trận này, tôi sẽ từ chức.

Viết thêm 6 câu nữa.

Bài tập 7

Điền "If" hay "Unless" vào chỗ trống trong các câu này.

you can find it in the phone book.

7 You won't pass your driving test, ... you drive more carefully.

8 He'll be ill . . . . . he doesn't stop worrying so much.

9 We'll go to the beach tomorrow . . . . . it's raining.

10 We'll never get there on time . . . . . the train leaves soon.

Unit 35 Have You Seen This Advert ?

Bạn đã xem quảng cáo này chưa ?

VOCABULARY

- **admission** *(n)* /əd'mɪʃn/ ~ (to / into st) entering or being allowed to enter = sự vào
  Admission to British universities depends on examination results.
- **advert = advertisement** *(n)* /'ædvɜ:t/ /əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt/ public notice offering or asking for goods, services. *If you want to sell your old sofa, why not put an ~ in the local paper?*
  advertise *(v)* /'ædvətaɪz/
  advertiser *(n)*
- **ambitious** *(adj)* /æm'bɪʃəs/ ~ (to be / do st); ~ (for st) full of ambition, esp for success or money = cầu tiến, tham vọng
  ~ to succeed in life.
  ambition *(n)* strong desire to achieve st.
  filled with ~ to become famous, rich, powerful.
- **basis** *(n)* /'beɪsɪs/ main principle that underlies st; foundation = căn bản *Rates of work are calculated on a weekly ~.*
- **challenge** *(n)* /'tʃælɪndʒ/ difficult, demand or stimulating task = sự thách thức; thử thách
  She likes her job to be a ~. Reducing the gap between rich and poor is one of the main challenges facing the government.
  challenging *(adj)* offering problems that test sb's ability *a ~ job; test.*
- **commission** *(n)* /kə'mɪʃn/ payment to sb for selling goods which increases with the quantity of goods sold = tiền hoa hồng *You get (a) 10% ~ on everything you sell.*
- **disadvantage** *(n)* /ˌdɪsəd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ/ thing that tends to prevent sb succeeding, making progress = điều bất lợi
  The other candidate's main ~ is her age.
  disadvantageous *(adj) in a ~ position.*
- **energy** *(n)* /'enɜ:dʒɪ/ ability to work or act with strength and eagerness = năng lực
  energetic *(adj)* full of or done with energy *an ~ child.*
- **enthusiasm** *(n)* /ɪn'θju:zɪæzəm/ great eagerness = nhiệt tình
  feel no ~ for / about an idea.
  enthusiast *(n)* /- 'θju:zɪæst/ = person filled with enthusiasm *a sports ~.*
  enthusiastic *(adj)* (about / over st) = full of enthusiasm *She's very ~ about singing.*
- **hairstyle** *(n)* /'heəstaɪl/ particular way of arranging or cutting the hair = kiểu tóc
- **keen** *(adj)* /ki:n/ eager; enthusiastic
  a ~ swimmer; I'm not ~ to go again.
- **nanny** *(n)* /'nænɪ/ child's nurse = bà vú, người trông em
- **one-way** *(adj)* /wʌn weɪ/ in one direction only = một chiều *~ traffic; a ~ street; a ~ ticket.*
- **tattoo** *(n)* /tə'tu:/ tattooed picture or pattern = hình xăm trên da
  His chest was covered in ~s.
  tattoo *(v)* /tə'tu:/ mark sb's skin with a permanent picture or pattern by pricking it and inserting a dye = xăm da
- **volunteer** *(n)* /ˌvɒlən'tɪə/ person who offers to do st without being paid or compelled = người tình nguyện *Few ~s came forward.*

EXPRESSIONS

It's a waste of time chỉ có mất thời giờ thôi
I wasn't born yesterday tôi đâu có ngu
Commission only basis chỉ hưởng tiền hoa hồng
Salary negotiable lương bổng có thể thương lượng
I didn't say that tôi không có nói điều đó

PROPER NAMES

Andrew	/'ændr(j)u:/	Jane	/dʒeɪn/	Louise	/lu:'i:z/
Colin	/'kɒlɪn/	Helen	/'helən/	Mandy	/'mændɪ/

Rachel	/'reɪtʃəl/
Roger	/'rɒdʒə/
Sandra	/'sændrə/
Stephen Wendy	/'sti:vn 'wendɪ/
Tina	/'tɪnə/

REMEMBER THESE EXPRESSIONS :

- How old is she ?

1. She is 18
2. She is 18 years old
3. She is aged 18
4. She is at the age of 18
5. She is 18 years of age
6. She is an 8 year old student

which is more correct ?

GRAMMAR NOTES"

"If not" and "unless"

1. We can use *if... not* and *unless* in place of each other when we are saying *"except if"*
   Unless in "stronger" than *if not* and we sometimes use it in "threats".

EX : *If* you *don't change* your mind, I won't be able to help you. (= Except if you change...)
Unless you change your mind, I won't be able to help you (= Except if you change...)

2. We cannot use *unless* in place of *if not* when *if not* doesn't mean "except if" :

Ex : I'll be surprised *if* he *doesn't win*. (*if not* doesn't mean "except if")
She'd be better company *if* she *didn't complain* so much. (*If not* doesn't mean "except if"

3. We often use *unless* (never if... not) to introduce an afterthought :

Ex : I couldn't have got to the meeting – *unless*, of course, I had caught an earlier train.

Stephen Wendy, have you seen this advert ?

Wendy Mmm. It looks great, doesn't it ? I phoned them an hour ago. They'll ring me back if they want me.

Stephen Oh, they'll want you. I mean you've got beautiful long hair.

Wendy I hope so ! If I go, I'll get a new hairstyle... and a day out in London.

Mandy Hey, Andrew. Look at this ad.

Andrew It looks fun. Why don't you ring ?

Mandy I'd love to, but it's a waste of time. My hair's far too short.

Andrew Well, I like it the way it is. Anyway, you don't know what they might do. Blue and green hair's fashionable at the moment.

Mandy Oh, Andrew, I wouldn't mind that. If I had longer hair, I'd phone them.

Want a new Hairstyle ?

Volunteer models required for national hairstyling competition.
Wednesday 28th January Carlton Towers Hotel, London
* Free dinner
* Rail fares paid
Only qualification needed is long hair (at least 20 cm)
Tel : 01-129 7880

Stephen : Wendy, em xem mẫu quảng cáo này chưa?

Wendy : Mmm. Trông hay đấy, phải không ? Em gọi điện thoại cho họ cách đây một giờ. Họ sẽ gọi lại nếu họ chấp nhận.

Stephen : Họ sẽ chấp nhận thôi. Mái tóc của em vừa dài vừa đẹp.

Wendy : Em hy vọng là vậy ! Nếu em đi thi em sẽ được một kiểu tóc mới... và một ngày đi chơi ở London.

Mandy : Này, Andrew. Đọc mẫu quảng cáo này nè.

Andrew : Trông ngộ ngộ. Sao em không gọi cho họ ?

Mandy : Em cũng thích lắm chứ, nhưng chỉ tốn mất thì giờ vô ích thôi. Tóc em quá ngắn.

Andrew : Anh lại thích em để tóc như vậy. Nói cho đúng thì có trời mà biết họ sẽ làm gì. Mái tóc màu xanh dương và xanh lá cây lúc này đang hợp thời đó.

Mandy : Ồ, Andrew, em không ngại chuyện đó. Nếu em có mái tóc dài hơn em sẽ gọi điện thoại cho họ.

Bạn có muốn có một kiểu tóc mới không ?

Cần những người mẫu tình nguyện cho cuộc thi trình diễn kiểu tóc toàn quốc
Ngày thứ tư 28 tháng Giêng tại Khách sạn Carlton Towers, London.
Bao ăn chiều
Đài thọ vé xe lửa
Điều kiện duy nhất là có mái tóc dài (ít nhất 20cm)
Điện thoại : 01-129 7880

Louise Colin, take a look at this.

Colin Oh, yes, I've seen it. I'm going to phone tomorrow.

Louise It sounds very exciting, and you've got a decent car.

Colin Hmm. There are some disadvantages.

Louise Every job's got disadvantages, but you're always complaining about your present job.

Colin I know. I'm prepared to try it. But we haven't got a phone. I won't take it if they don't pay the phone bills !

Roger Sandra, did you see this ?

Sandra Yes. You aren't interested, are you ?

Roger What ? Me ? I wasn't born yesterday ! There are far too many things wrong with it.

Sandra What do you mean ?

Roger I wouldn't take a job like that ! You wouldn't have any security. You wouldn't earn anything if you didn't work all day, every day. And I wouldn't take a sales job if they didn't provide a car.

Sandra Yes, look at the address. It's a hotel room. I certainly wouldn't work for a company if they didn't even have an office !

Louise : Colin, đọc cái này đi.

Colin : Anh đọc rồi. Ngày mai anh sẽ gọi điện cho họ.

Louise : Cái này nghe có vẻ hấp dẫn lắm, mà anh lại có xe đẹp nữa.

Colin : Hmm. Vẫn có những điểm bất lợi.

Louise : Việc gì mà lại không có những điểm bất lợi, nhưng anh chẳng đang than phiền về công việc hiện tại đó sao ?

Colin : Anh biết. Anh chuẩn bị thử xem sao. Nhưng chúng ta lại không có điện thoại. Tôi sẽ không nhận việc đâu nếu họ không chịu trả tiền thuê bao điện thoại.

Roger : Sandra, em xem cái này chưa ?

Sandra : Em xem rồi. Anh có thích không ?

Roger : Sao ? Anh ấy à ? Anh đâu có phải là con nít! Có quá nhiều điều không ổn.

Sandra : Ý anh nói sao ?

Roger : Anh sẽ không làm một việc như vậy đâu. Chẳng có gì bảo đảm cho mình cả. Mình sẽ không kiếm được đồng nào nếu mình không làm việc cả ngày, ngày nào cũng vậy. Và anh sẽ không bao giờ đi chào hàng nếu người ta không cấp xe cho mình.

Sandra : Đúng rồi. Anh nhìn địa chỉ xem. Đó chỉ là một phòng trong khách sạn. Em nhất định không làm cho một công ty nếu như người ta thậm chí không có cả một cái văn phòng.

ARE YOU AMBITIOUS ?
- are you aged 22-35 ?
- do you need a challenge ?
- tired of your present job ?

Some of our sales representatives earn more than the Prime Minister !!!
All you need is energy, enthusiasm, and your own car and telephone. No salary. Commission only basis.
Contact : DIRECT SALES LTD., Suite 34, Plaza Hotel, Liverpool 051-174 2330

BẠN CÓ ĐẦY THAM VỌNG ?
- Tuổi bạn từ 22-35 ?
- Cần nếm trải thử thách ?
- Chán ngấy công việc hiện tại ?

Một số đại diện thương mại của hãng chúng tôi kiếm nhiều tiền hơn cả Thủ tướng !!!
Tất cả những gì bạn cần là nghị lực, nhiệt tình, xe hơi và điện thoại riêng. Không có lương, chỉ ăn hoa hồng thôi.
Liên hệ : Công ty hữu hạn DIRECT SALES., Dãy phòng 34, Khách sạn Plaza, Liverpool 051-174-2330

Rachel Helen, what do you think of this advertisement ?

Helen Didn't I tell you ? It was in last week's paper too. I applied. I've got an interview tomorrow.

Rachel Do you think you'll get it ?

Rachel : Helen, bạn nghĩ sao về mẩu quảng cáo này?

Helen : Tôi chẳng đã nói cho bạn nghe rồi là gì ? Báo tuần rồi cũng có đăng mẩu này. Tôi viết thư xin việc rồi. Ngày mai tôi sẽ đi dự phỏng vấn.

Rachel : Bạn có nghĩ là người ta sẽ nhận bạn không?

Helen They seemed very keen on the phone. I think they'll offer me the job.

Rachel So, you're going to California !

Helen I didn't say that. I won't take the job unless they agree to pay my return fare. It'll be hard work with five kids, and I won't go unless they offer me a good salary !

Jane There's a job in America in the paper.

Tina Yes, I know. I wouldn't dream of applying for it.

Jane Why not ? You've been looking for a job in the States.

Tina It's slave labour, isn't it ? Five kids, and one evening off a week.

Jane But the money might be very good.

Tina Huh ! I wouldn't take it unless they paid me a really good salary with longer holidays and more free time. And I certainly wouldn't go anywhere abroad unless they paid my return fare !

Helen : Lúc nói điện thoại người ta có vẻ thích lắm. Tôi nghĩ là họ sẽ nhận tôi.

Rachel : Vậy là bạn sắp đi California !

Helen : Tôi đâu có nói như vậy. Tôi sẽ không nhận việc trừ khi họ đồng ý trả tiền vé lượt về. Trông nom tới 5 đứa bé là công việc hết sức nặng nề và tôi sẽ không làm đâu trừ khi họ trả lương thật cao.

Jane : Báo có đăng quảng cáo về một việc làm ở Mỹ đấy.

Tina : Tớ biết, nhưng mà tớ không hề nghĩ đến chuyện xin việc đó đâu.

Jane : Sao lại không chứ ? Hồi đó đến giờ cậu vẫn để ý tìm việc ở Mỹ mà.

Tina : Đó là việc của đứa tôi đòi phải không nào ? năm đứa nhóc, mà lại chỉ cho nghỉ mỗi tuần một tối.

Jane : Nhưng có thế lương bổng sẽ hậu hĩnh lắm.

Tina : Hứ. Tớ sẽ không nhận đâu, trừ khi người ta chịu trả lương rất hậu, cho nghỉ phép lâu hơn và nhiều buổi nghỉ hơn nữa trong tuần. Và chắc chắn là tớ không có đi nước nào cả trừ khi người ta chịu vé lượt về.

ARE YOU FOND OF CHILDREN ?
Nanny wanted for British family living in L.A., California, with 5 children aged between 1 and 8. Must have driving licence. Own room/bathroom. One way air fare paid. Two weeks holiday a year. Tuesday evenings free. Salary negotiable.
Write to BOX NO. 3/646.

BẠN CÓ THÍCH TRẺ CON KHÔNG ?
Cần một cô giữ trẻ cho một gia đình người Anh sống ở L.A., California, có 5 trẻ, tuổi từ 1 đến 8. Phải có bằng lái xe hơi. Phòng riêng/có buồng tắm. Đài thọ vé một lượt đi. Mỗi năm có 2 tuần nghỉ. Các tối thứ ba được nghỉ. Lương bổng có thể thương lượng để thỏa thuận.
Thư về HỘP THƯ SỐ 3/646

Look at this

I'm interested. I've applied.
If they offer enough money, I'll accept the job.
If they don't pay more, I won't accept the job.
Unless they pay more, I won't accept the job.
Unless they offered more, I wouldn't accept the job.

I'm not interested. I haven't applied.
If they offered more money, I'd apply.
If they didn't offer enough, I wouldn't accept the job.

Exercise

Could you ever kill a person ?
Not unless they tried to kill me.
I wouldn't do it unless they tried to kill me.
What about these things ?

Would you ever steal food ?/rob a bank ?/hit someone ?/eat a cat ?/jump from a high buildding ?/take your clothes off in the street? /jump with a parachute ?/have a heart transplant ?

PRACTICE

Language summary

If you did this, I'd do that
If you did(n't do) this, I would(n't) do that.
Unless you did this, I would(n't) do that.

If you do this, I'll do that.
If you did this, I'd do that.

Look at this. **Hãy xem**

Exercise 1

I'm sorry. If you haven't got a ticket, you can't see the game.

Write four more sentences.

Exercise 2

You can't see the game unless you've got a ticket.

Write four more sentences.

Exercise 3

I want to see the game, but I haven't got a ticket.

If I had a ticket, I could see the game.

1 He'd love to see the film, but he's only 13 and he's not with an adult.
. . . . . .

2 She's nearly run out of petrol She's got a cheque book, but no cash.
. . . . . .

Exercise 4

Put 'if' or 'unless' into the spaces in these sentences.

1 I wouldn't buy it . . . . . it had a guarantee.
2 . . . . . I were you, I'd see a doctor about that cough.
3 Who would you ask . . . . . you didn't know how to do it ?
4 I'd buy it . . . . . I could afford it.

Bài tập 1

Xin lỗi. Nếu anh không có vé, anh không xem được trận đấu đâu.

Hãy viết thêm 4 câu

Bài tập 2

Anh không thể xem trận đấu trừ phi anh có vé.

Hãy viết thêm 4 câu

Bài tập 3

Tôi muốn xem trận đấu này nhưng tôi không có vé.

Giá như tôi có vé, tôi có thể xem được trận đấu

3 They'd like to rent a car, but he's only 20, and so is she.
. . . . . .

4 I'd like to borrow some money, but I don't own a house.
. . . . . .

Bài tập 4

Điền "If" hay "Unless" vào chỗ trống trong các câu này.

5 I wouldn't buy it . . . . . I could afford it.
6 I would refuse to go . . . . . they paid my expenses.
7 She's very lazy. She'd pass . . . . . she tried harder.
8 He wouldn't be able to go . . . . . we could find a baby sitter

9 He wouldn't spend all that money . . . . . he weren't very rich.

10 I don't agree with his economic policy. I wouldn't vote for him . . . . . he changed it.

Exercise 5

Darren Shaw's 18. He's just been to see his girlfriend's father, Colonel Smythe-Fortescue. He wants to marry Fiona, the Colonel's 16 year old daughter. This is what the Colonel said.

'There are just one or two conditions, young man. Get some qualifications, get a job, save some money. Find a place to live, sell that noisy motor-cycle, stop smoking, stop drinking, cut your hair, remove those tattoos from your arms... and remove that earring from your ear. When you've done all these things, we might discuss it again.'

'I don't understand...' Darren said.

'Well,' said the Colonel, 'I wouldn't let you marry her unless you had some qualifications.'

Write nine more sentences with 'unless'.

Bài tập 5

Darren Shaw 18 tuổi. Anh vừa đến thăm cha của cô bạn gái của mình, Đại tá Smythe-Fortescue. Anh muốn cưới Fiona, cô con gái 16 tuổi của Đại tá. Đây là điều Đại tá nói :

"Chỉ có 1 hay 2 điều kiện thôi, anh bạn ạ. Có chút ít bằng cấp, có việc làm, để dành một ít tiền. Tìm được một chỗ ở, bán chiếc xe gắn máy ồn ào đó đi, bỏ hút thuốc, bỏ uống rượu, cắt tóc ngắn, cạo vết xăm ở hai cánh tay đi... và tháo chiếc bông tai đó đi. Khi anh làm hết mấy việc đó, chúng ta có thể bàn lại.

"Tôi không hiểu..." Darren nói.

"À", Đại tá nói, "Tôi sẽ không để anh cưới con tôi trừ phi anh có được chút ít bằng cấp".

PROVERB

- Beauty is only skin deep = Cái nết đánh chết cái đẹp
- Make hay while the sun shines = Hãy chớp lấy thời cơ
- Clothes do not make the man = Manh áo không làm nên thầy tu
- Don't count your chickens before they are hatched = Chưa đỗ ông Nghè đã đe hàng Tổng.
- Absence makes the heart grow fonder = Sự xa vắng làm cho tình cảm thêm da diết.

Unit 36 Energy Crisis

Khủng hoảng năng lượng

VOCABULARY

- **aggressive** *(adj)* /ə'gresɪv/ (of people or animals) ready to attack; offensive = hung hăng *dogs trained to be ~.*
  aggression *(n)* /ə'greʃn/ hostile feelings or behaviour *She was always full of ~ as a child.*
- **alternative** *(n)* /ɔ:l'tɜ:nətɪv/ choice of two or more possibilities = sự lựa chọn *Caught in the act, he had no ~ but to confess.*
- **bang** *(v)* /bæŋ/ strike (st) deliberately and violently, often in order to make a loud noise = nhấn, dập mạnh *He was banging on the door with his fist.*
- **conserve** *(v)* /kən'sɜ:v/ prevent (st) from being changed, lost or destroyed = bảo tồn *~ one's strength, health, resources.*
  conservation *(n)* /ˌkɒnsə'veɪʃn/ prevention of loss, waste, damage = sự bảo tồn *the ~ of forests, water resources, old buildings.*
- **contaminate** *(v)* /kən'tæmɪneɪt/ st / sb (with st) make st / sb impure by adding dangerous or disease – carrying substances = làm bẩn, nhiễm độc *contaminated clothing; a river contaminated by chemicals.*
- **crisis** *(n)* /'kraɪsɪs/ (**pl crises** /'kraɪsi:z/ time of great difficulty or danger = sự khủng hoảng *a financial, political ~.*
- **curse** *(v)* /kɜ:s/ ~ (at sb/ st) utter curses = chửi rủa *to ~ and swear; I ~ d her for spoiling my plans.*
- **estate car** *(n)* /ɪs'teɪt kɑ:/ Loại xe hơi có chỗ để hành lý sau chỗ ghế xếp hậu và có cửa hậu để dễ chất hàng lên
- **estimate** *(n)* /'estɪmət/ judgement or calculation of the approximate size, cost, value = sự tiên đoán *This is an outside ~ of the price.*
  estimate /'estɪmeɪt/ ~ st (at s/t) form an approximate idea of st; calculate roughly the cost, size, value of st = tiên đoán *She ~ ed that the work would take three months.*
- **evacuate** *(v)* /ɪ'vækjueɪt/ ~ sb (from) (to) = remove sb from a place of danger to a safer place, esp in time of war = di tản *The children were ~ d to the country when the city was being bombed.*
  evacuation *(n)* /ɪˌvækju'eɪʃn/ *the ~ of thousands of people after a flood.*
- **evil** *(adj)* /'i:vl/ very unpleasant or harmful = xấu xa *an ~ smell; an ~ temper; ~ weather.*
- **flexible** *(adj)* /'fleksəbl/ 1. easily changed to suit new conditions = uyển chuyển, linh động *Our plans are quite ~.*
  2. (of people) willing and able to change according to different circumstances; adaptable.
  flexibility *(n)* /ˌfleksə'bɪlətɪ/
- **forecast** *(v)* /'fɔ:kɑ:st/ tell in advance; predict with the help of information = dự báo *~ that it will rain tomorrow.*
- **fossil fuel** *(n)* /'fɒsl fju:əl/ nguyên liệu địa khai
- **generation** *(n)* /dʒenə'reɪʃn/ all people born at about the same time = thế hệ *My ~ behaves differently from my father's and grandfather's.*
- **hold... to ranom** *(v)* /həʊld tə 'rænsəm/ buộc... chuộc lại; bắt chẹt
- **hydroelectric scheme** *(n)* /ˌhaɪdrəʊɪ'lektrɪk ski:m/ kế hoạch thủy điện
- **inevitable** *(adj)* /ɪn'evɪtəbl/ that cannot be avoided; that is sure to happen = tất yếu, không thể tránh được *an ~ disaster; It seems ~ that they'll lose.*
- **invest** *(v)* /ɪn'vest/ ~ (st) (in st / with sb) use money to buy shares, property, etc in order to earn interest or bring profit = đầu tư *The best time to ~ is now.*
  investment *(n) make a profit by careful ~.*
- **lately** *(adv)* /'leɪtlɪ/ recently = gần đây
- **nuclear reactor** *(n)* /'nju:klɪə rɪ'æktə/ phản ứng hạt nhân
- **oil rig** *(n)* /ɔɪl rɪg/ dàn khoan dầu
- **optimist** *(n)* /'ɒptɪmɪst/ person who is always hopeful and expects the best in all things. *He's such an ~ that he's sure he'll soon find a job.*

optimistic *(adj)* /ˌɒptɪ'mɪstɪk/ ~ (about st)
She's not ~ about the outcome.
optimism *(n)* *He was still full of ~ for the future despite his many problems.*

- **outcry** *(n)* /'autkraɪ/ ~ (about / against st) strong public protest = sự phản đối mạnh mẽ
There was a public ~ about the building of a new airport.
- **pessimist** *(n)* /'pesɪmɪst/ person who expects the worst to happen = người bi quan
It's easy to sell insurance to a ~.
pessimistic *(adj)* *a ~ view of the world.*
pessimism *(n)* /'pesɪmɪzəm/
- **resource** *(n)* /rɪ'sɔːs, 'zɔːs/ supplies of raw materials, etc which bring a country, a person, etc wealth = tài nguyên, tiềm năng *rich in natural, agricultural ~ s.*
- **risk** *(n)* /rɪsk/ possibility of meeting danger or suffering harm, loss, etc = nguy cơ
Is there any ~ of the bomb exploding ?
- **saloon** *(n)* /sə'luːn/ loại xe hơi mà các chỗ ngồi biệt lập chỗ để hành lý và động cơ xe
- **solar energy** *(n)* /'səʊlə 'enədʒɪ/ energy from the sun = năng lượng mặt trời
- **starve** *(v)* /stɑːv/ suffer severely or die from hunger = chết đói ~ *to death.*
- **starvation** *(n)* suffering or death caused by lack of food. *die of ~; ~ wages.* = i.e too low to buy enough food.
- **stone age** *(n)* /stəʊn eɪdʒ/ thời đồ đá
- **strict** *(adj)* /strɪkt/ severe, not lenient = nghiêm ngặt *a ~ rule against smoking.*
- **tidal power** *(n)* /'taɪdl paʊə/ năng lượng thủy triều
- **totally** *(adv)* /'təʊtəlɪ/ wholy = toàn bộ
- **wind power** *(n)* /wɪnd 'paʊə/ sức gió

EXPRESSIONS

instead of /ɪn'sted ɔv/	thay vì
Sooner or later	chẳng sớm thì muộn
In the short term...	trong một thời gian ngắn

There are a lot of them about ! có rất nhiều những người như vậy quanh ta
To keep something quiet giữ yên
To turn one's back on something quay lưng với cái gì

USAGE
Notice this :

1. to be in a crisis
⟶ to be in a: mental, spiritual, moral, economic, financial, energy, oil, monetary, ideological, psychological + crisis

2. face: the future, the danger, the challenge, the crisis, the difficulty

3. Remain: unclear, unresolved, true, to be seen, active, unchanged, in doubt

⟶ An *adjective* (or participle), *a noun*, *to be* and some *prepositional phrases* can follow "remain"

GRAMMAR NOTES

Prepositional phrases with "with" & "In".

Study these examples carefully and see how you can rewrite them. (Ask your teacher if you fail to)

Ex :

1. An old man who was wearing a white panama hat was watering the flower beds.
2. He is sitting beside a man who has a little moustache.
3. He is listening to the lecturer interestingly
4. They are handling the packages very carefully
5. He was a gentle and mild – mannered old man who had clear, blue, honest eyes, white hair and a pinkish complexion.

Good evening, and welcome again to the 'Michael Parkhurst Talkabout'. In tonight's, programme, we're looking at the problem of energy. The world's energy resources are limited. Nobody knows exactly how much fuel is left, but pessimistic forecasts say that there is only enough coal for 450 years, enough natural gas for 50 years and that oil might run out in 30 years. Obviously we have to do something, and we have to do it soon !

I'd like to welcome our first guest, Professor Marvin Burnham of the New England Institute of Technology. Professor Burnham.'

'Well, we are in an energy crisis and we will have to do something quickly. Fossil fuels (coal, oil and gas) are rapidly running out. The tragedy is that fossil fuels are far too valuable to waste on the production of electricity. Just think of all the things you can make from oil ! If we don't start conserving these things now, it will be too late. And nuclear power is the only real alternative. We are getting some electricity from nuclear power-stations already. If we invest in further research now, we'll be ready to face the future. There's been a lot of protest lately against nuclear power-some people will protest at anything-but nuclear power-stations are not as dangerous as some people say. It's far more dangerous to work down a coal-mine or on a North Sea oil-rig. Safety regulations in power-stations are very strict.

If we spent money on research now, we could develop stations which create their own fuel and burn their own waste. In many parts of the world where there are no fossil fuels, nuclear power is the only alternative. If you accept that we need electricity, then we will need nuclear energy. Just imagine what the world would be like if we didn't have electricity – no heating,

"Xin chào, và xin hoan nghênh quý vị lại đến với chương trình thảo luận "Michael Parkhurst Talkabout". Trong chương trình tối nay, chúng ta sẽ xem xét vấn đề khủng hoảng năng lượng. Các nguồn cung cấp năng lượng của thế giới đều có giới hạn. Không ai biết chắc là chúng ta còn bao nhiêu nhiên liệu nữa, nhưng các lời tiên đoán bi quan cho rằng chỉ còn đủ than cho 450 năm nữa, khí đốt thiên nhiên cho 50 năm nữa, còn dầu lửa thì sẽ cạn kiệt trong 30 năm nữa. Rõ ràng là chúng ta phải làm điều gì đó và phải làm ngay !

Tôi xin mời vị khách đầu tiên của chúng ta, Giáo sư Marvin Burnham của Viện Công nghệ New England. Xin mời Giáo sư Burnham".

"Vâng, chúng ta đang ở trong tình trạng khủng hoảng năng lượng và chúng ta phải nhanh chóng làm một điều gì đó. Các nhiên liệu trong lòng đất (than đá, dầu mỏ và khí đốt) đang cạn đi một cách nhanh chóng. Bi kịch là ở chỗ các nhiên liệu này quý giá quá, đem dùng để mà sản xuất điện năng thì thật là lãng phí. Các bạn hãy nghĩ đến những gì có thể được chế tạo từ dầu mỏ ! Nếu chúng ta không khởi sự bảo tồn các nhiên liệu này ngay từ bây giờ thì sẽ quá trễ. Và năng lượng hạt nhân chính là giải pháp khả thi duy nhất. Chúng ta cũng đã sản xuất điện từ một số nhà máy điện nguyên tử rồi. Nếu bây giờ chúng ta đầu tư vào các công trình nghiên cứu sâu hơn, chúng ta sẽ sẵn sàng đương đầu với tương lai. Gần đây đã có nhiều sự phản đối việc sử dụng năng lượng hạt nhân – một số người phản đối bất cứ điều gì – nhưng các nhà máy điện hạt nhân thì không đến nỗi nguy hiểm như một số người đã nói. Làm việc dưới mỏ than hay trên giàn khoan dầu ngoài biển Bắc thì còn nguy hiểm hơn nhiều. Các quy định an toàn trong các nhà máy điện hạt nhân rất là chặt chẽ.

Nếu bây giờ chúng ta đầu tư thêm tiền vào các công trình nghiên cứu, chúng ta có thể chế tạo các nhà máy điện chạy bằng nguyên liệu do chúng sản xuất ra và tự tiêu hủy chất thải. Ở nhiều nơi trên thế giới, nơi nào không có nhiên liệu trong lòng đất thì năng lượng hạt nhân chính là giải pháp duy nhất. Nếu các bạn đồng ý rằng chúng ta cần điện, thì điều đó có nghĩa là chúng ta cần năng lượng hạt nhân. Các bạn hãy nghĩ xem thế giới này sẽ ra sao

no lighting, no transport, no radio or TV. Just think about the ways you use electricity every day. Surely we don't want to go back to the Stone Age. That's what will happen if we turn our backs on nuclear research.'

'Thank you, Professor. Our next guest is a member of CANE, the Campaign Against Nuclear Energy, Jennifer Hughes.'

'Right. I must disagree totally with Professor Burnham. Let's look at the facts. First, there is no perfect machine. I mean, why do aeroplanes crash ? Machines fail. People make mistakes. What would happen if there were a serious nuclear accident ? And an accident must be inevitable – sooner or later. Huge areas would be evacuated, and they could remain contaminated with radioactivity for years. If it happened in your area, you wouldn't get a penny in compensation. No insurance company covers nuclear risks. There are accidents. If the nuclear industry didn't keep them quiet, there would be a public outcry. Radioactivity causes cancer and may affect future generations.

Next, nuclear waste. There is no technology for absolutely safe disposal. Some of this waste will remain active for thousands of years. Is that what you want to leave to your children ? And their children's children ? A reactor only lasts about 25 years. By the year 2000 we'll have 'retired' 26 reactors in the UK.

Next, terrorism. Terrorists could hold the nation to ransom if they captured a reactor. In the USA the Savannah River plant, and Professor Burnham knows this very well, lost (yes, 'lost') enough plutonium between 1955 and 1978 to make 18 (18 !) atom bombs. Where is it ? Who's got it ? I consider that nuclear energy is expensive, dangerous, and evil, and most of all, absolutely unnecessary. But Dr Woodstock will be saying more about that.'

'Thank you Jennifer. Now I'm very pleased to welcome Dr Catherine Woodstock. She is the author of several books on alternative technology.'

'Hello. I'd like to begin by agreeing with Jennifer. We can develop alternative sources of power, and unless we try we'll never succeed.

nếu chúng ta không có điện – không có sưởi ấm, không có thắp sáng, không có chuyên chở, không có phát thanh hoặc phát hình. Các bạn hãy nghĩ đến việc sử dụng điện năng hàng ngày. Chắc chắn là chúng ta không muốn trở lại thời kỳ đồ đá. Đó chính là những gì sẽ xảy ra nếu ta quay lưng lại với sự nghiên cứu năng lượng hạt nhân !

"Xin cảm ơn Giáo sư. Khách mời tiếp theo của chúng ta là một thành viên của CANE – Chiến dịch chống lại Năng lượng hạt nhân, cô Jennifer Hughes".

"Vâng. Tôi hoàn toàn không đồng ý với giáo sư Burnham. Chúng ta hãy nhìn vào các dữ liệu : Đầu tiên là không bao giờ có máy móc hoàn hảo cả. Ý tôi muốn nói là, tại sao máy bay rơi ? Do máy móc hư. Do người ta phạm sai lầm. Vậy điều gì sẽ xảy ra nếu có một tai nạn hạt nhân thảm khốc ? Mà tai nạn thì sớm muộn gì cũng sẽ xảy ra thôi. Những vùng dân cư rộng lớn sẽ bị sơ tán, và những vùng này sẽ còn bị nhiễm độc phóng xạ hàng năm trời. Nếu một tai nạn như vậy xảy ra trong vùng của các bạn, các bạn sẽ không nhận được một xu bồi thường nào cả. Chẳng công ty bảo hiểm nào nhận bảo hiểm rủi ro hạt nhân. Rồi sẽ có rủi ro. Nếu ngành năng lượng hạt nhân không giữ kín các tin này, công chúng sẽ hoảng loạn. Phóng xạ hạt nhân gây ra bệnh ung thư và có thể gây tác hại đến các thế hệ tương lai.

Kế tiếp là vấn đề chất thải hạt nhân. Chưa có công nghệ nào giải quyết hoàn chỉnh vấn đề an toàn chất thải. Một số chất thải này vẫn còn tính phóng xạ trong hàng ngàn năm trời. Chẳng lẽ đó là những gì các bạn muốn để lại cho con cháu chúng ta ? Và còn con cháu của con cháu chúng ta nữa ? Một lò phản ứng chỉ có tuổi thọ khoảng 25 năm. Vậy là vào năm 2000 chúng ta sẽ phải "cho về hưu" 26 lò phản ứng ở Vương quốc Anh.

Vấn đề kế tiếp là nạn khủng bố. Bọn khủng bố có thể bắt chẹt cả một quốc gia nếu chúng chiếm được một lò phản ứng. Ở nước Mỹ, nhà máy Savannah River, Giáo sư Burnham biết điều này rất rõ – mất (vâng, "mất") một số lượng chất Plutonium từ năm 1955 đến 1978 đủ để chế tạo 18 (vâng, mười tám) quả bom nguyên tử. Chúng ở đâu ? Ai đã giữ số plutonium này ? Tôi cho rằng năng lượng nguyên tử là tốn kém, nguy hiểm, xấu xa, và trên hết là hoàn toàn không cần thiết. Nhưng tiến sĩ Woodstock sẽ nói thêm về điều này !

"Xin cảm ơn, Jennifer. Bây giờ tôi xin trân trọng mời tiến sĩ Catherine Woodstock, tác giả của nhiều cuốn sách về các công nghệ thay thế".

"Chào các bạn. Tôi muốn bắt đầu bằng cách đồng ý với Jennifer. Chúng ta có thể phát triển các nguồn năng lượng thay thế, và nếu chúng ta không cố gắng thử nghiệm

Instead of burning fossil fuels we should be concentrating on more economic uses of electricity, because electricity can be produced from any source of energy. If we didn't waste so much energy, our resources would last longer. You can save more energy by conservation than you can produce for the same money. Unless we do research on solar energy, wind power, wave power, tidal power, hydroelectric schemes etc, our fossil fuels will run out, and we'll all freeze or starve to death. Other countries are spending much more than us on research, and don't forget that energy from the sun, the waves and the wind lasts for ever. We really won't survive unless we start working on cleaner, safer sources of energy.'

'Thank you very much, Dr Woodstock. Our final speaker, before we open the discussion to the studio audience, is Charles Wicks, MP, the Minister for Energy.'

'I've been listening to the other speakers with great interest. By the way, I don't agree with some of the estimates of world energy reserves. More oil and gas is being discovered all the time. If we listened to the pessimists (and there are a lot of them about) none of us would sleep at night. In the short-term, we must continue to rely on the fossil fuels – oil, coal and gas. But we must also look to the future. Our policy must be flexible. Unless we thought new research was necessary, we wouldn't be spending money on it. After all, the Government wouldn't have a Department of Energy unless they thought it was important. The big question is where to spend the money – on conservation of present resources or on research into new forms of power. But I'm fairly optimistic. I wouldn't be in this job unless I were an optimist !'

chúng ta sẽ không bao giờ thành công cả. Thay vì đem nhiên liệu trong lòng đất ra đốt, chúng ta phải tập trung nhiều hơn vào việc sử dụng điện năng cho có hiệu quả kinh tế, bởi vì điện có thể được sản xuất từ bất cứ nguồn năng lượng nào. Nếu chúng ta đừng xài phí năng lượng như vậy thì nguồn cung cấp của chúng ta sẽ còn tồn tại lâu hơn. Với cùng một mức phí tổn, chúng ta có thể tiết kiệm được nhiều năng lượng hơn là sản xuất mới. Trừ khi chúng ta tiến hành nghiên cứu về năng lượng từ mặt trời, gió, sóng, thủy triều, các dự án thủy điện v.v..., các nguồn nhiên liệu từ lòng đất của chúng ta sẽ cạn kiệt và chúng ta sẽ đều chết cóng hoặc chết đói cả. Các quốc gia khác đều chi nhiều tiền hơn là chúng ta trong lĩnh vực nghiên cứu, và đừng quên rằng nguồn năng lượng từ mặt trời, sóng và gió tồn tại vĩnh viễn. Chúng ta sẽ không thể tồn tại trừ khi chúng ta bắt đầu nghiên cứu các nguồn năng lượng sạch hơn và an toàn hơn !

"Xin cảm ơn rất nhiều, tiến sĩ Woodstock. Diễn giả cuối cùng của chúng tôi, trước khi chúng tôi mở rộng cuộc thảo luận cho cử tọa, là ông Charles Wicks, đại biểu quốc hội, Bộ trưởng Bộ năng lượng".

Từ nãy giờ tôi đã lắng nghe các vị diễn giả với sự quan tâm sâu sắc. Tuy nhiên, tôi không đồng ý với một số ước đoán về nguồn dự trữ năng lượng trên thế giới. Dầu mỏ và khí đốt đang tiếp tục được phát hiện thêm. Nếu chúng ta nghe các người bi quan (và có nhiều người như vậy quanh ta) không ai trong chúng ta có thể chợp mắt được vào ban đêm. Trước mắt, chúng ta tiếp tục phải dựa vào các nhiên liệu lấy từ lòng đất – dầu mỏ, than và khí đốt. Nhưng chúng ta cũng phải nhìn vào tương lai. Chính sách của chúng ta phải linh động. Trừ khi chúng ta cho rằng các cuộc nghiên cứu mới là cần thiết, chúng ta sẽ không bỏ tiền vào đó. Dù sao thì chính phủ cũng đã không có một Bộ Năng lượng nếu như họ không nghĩ là nó cần thiết. Vấn đề quan trọng là sử dụng tiền vào việc gì – để bảo tồn các nguồn năng lượng hiện có hay để đầu tư nghiên cứu các dạng năng lượng mới. Nhưng tôi thì khá lạc quan. Tôi sẽ không ở cương vị này nếu tôi không là người lạc quan !

PRACTICE

Questionnaire : **HOW AGGRESSIVE ARE YOU ?**

1 If your car were stuck in a traffic jam, would you :

A ☐ bang your horn, and curse the Minister of Transport ?

B ☐ turn on the car radio, and relax ?

C ☐ feel slightly annoyed, but resign yourself to the situation.

2 If you could have a new car, would you prefer to have :

A ☐ a comfortable, luxury saloon ?

B ☐ an uncomfortable but fast sports car?
C ☐ an economical, easy-to-park small car ?

3 **If you were watching T.V., which of these would you choose :**
A ☐ a western ?
B ☐ a romantic comedy ?
C ☐ a boxing match ?

4 **If you were getting on a bus, and there were only one seat left, would you :**
A ☐ rush to get it ?
B ☐ look to see if there were anyone older who might want it ?
C ☐ make no special effort to get there first ?

5 **If you were at a party and your boyfriend/girlfriend were surrounded by members of the opposite sex who found him/her attractive, would you :**
A ☐ grab his/ her arm and leave the party?
B ☐ feel happy because he/ she was having a good time ?
C ☐ go over, put your arm round him/ her and join the conversation ?

6 **Do you own any of these (or would you like to) ?**
A ☐ an Alsatian dog
B ☐ a fast car or motor-cycle
C ☐ a weapon of any kind
D ☐ a prize for winning a sports event
E ☐ books about war
F ☐ any kind of uniform

7 **A man has killed a child. Should he be :**
A ☐ hanged ?
B ☐ imprisoned for life ?
C ☐ sent for psychiatric treatment ?

8 **Have you been in a public argument (or fight) during the last two years ?**
A ☐ often
B ☐ once or twice
C ☐ never

9 **You have just had an argument with a friend. Would you say :**
A ☐ "I won't speak to him/ her, unless he/ she apologizes to me."
B ☐ "I'd better phone him/ her and apologise."
C ☐ "I think I'll wait and see what happens."

10 **Which of these statements is true for you ?**
A ☐ "I would never hit anybody unless they hit me first."
B ☐ "I would never hit anybody for any reason."
C ☐ "I would never hit anybody unless I were very angry."

What did you score ?

1 A.3 B.0 C.1 2 A.1 B.3 C.0 3 A.1 B.0 C.3 4 A.3 B.0 C.0 5 A.3 B.0 C.2

6 Score 1 for each that you have, or would like to have.

7 A.3 B.1 C.0 8 A.3 B.1 C.0 9 A.3 B.0 C.1 10 A.1 B.0 C.4

Results

19-34 You are a fairly aggressive person. I wouldn't like to step on your toes !
7-18 You are a fairly balanced person.
0-6 You may be too placid. Remember that a little aggression is normal.

Exercise 1
Go through the questionnaire and work out your score.

Exercise 2
Ask another student the questions and work out his/her score.

Exercise 3
If my car were stuck in a traffic jam, I'd be very angry, but I wouldn't bang my horn.
Use your results to write out nine sentences.

Exercise 4
Look at the scores. Do you agree with them? Why/why not ? Discuss.

Bài tập 1
Trả lời bản câu hỏi về tính điểm của bạn.

Bài tập 2
Hỏi một học viên khác các câu hỏi này và tính điểm của bạn ấy.

Bài tập 3
Nếu xe tôi bị kẹt cứng trong nạn kẹt xe, tôi sẽ giận lắm, nhưng tôi sẽ không bóp kèn.
Dùng kết quả của bạn viết ra 9 câu.

Bài tập 4
Xem số điểm. Bạn có đồng ý không ? Sao đồng ý ? Sao không đồng ý ? Thảo luận.

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION

Units 33-36

Dialogue A

Listen

Jenny David, switch on the television, would you ?
David Eh ? I'm reading. I don't really feel like watching TV.
Jenny If you don't switch it on, we'll miss the news. It's two minutes to ten.
David Oh, right... ah, it's the adverts.
TV 'If you use Samson Shampoo, you'll have lovely, healthy hair. Samson Shampoo.'
'The great world of knowledge can be yours. Explore the worlds of science and technology. Find out about the history of the world. Understand the mysteries of migration. Discover different lands and peoples. All this can be yours with "The Encyclopaedia of Everything" from Wessex publications. Just complete the coupon in today's newspaper and we'll send you more information about... "The Encyclopaedia of Everything".
David Jenny. That sounds interesting. Where's today's newspaper ?
TV '... and now we go over to the studios of ITN for "News at Ten"...'

New words :
- encyclopaedia *(n)* /ɪnˌsaɪkləˈpiːdɪə/ = bách khoa tự điển, bách khoa toàn thư.
- coupon *(n)* /ˈkuːpɒn/ printed form, often cut out from a newspaper, etc, used to order goods, etc.

Listen and repeat (up to Samson Shampoo)

A1 Listen

A : Use Samson Shampoo, for lovely hair.
B : If you use Samson Shampoo, you'll have lovely hair.
C : If you use Samson Shampoo, you'll have lovely hair.
A : Buy Shine toothpaste, for healthy teeth.
B : If you buy Shine toothpaste, you'll have healthy teeth.
C : If you buy Shine toothpaste, you'll have healthy teeth.

Now you do the same

Use Samson Shampoo, for lovely hair
..... If you use Samson Shampoo, you'll have lovely hair.
Buy Shine toothpaste, for healthy teeth
..... If you buy Shine toothpaste, you'll have healthy teeth.
Wash with Fizz detergent, for cleaner clothes..... if you wash with Fizz detergent, you'll have cleaner clothes.
Use Deluxe soap, for beautiful skin
..... If you use Deluxe soap, you'll have beautiful skin.

A2 Listen

A : Switch it on, or we'll miss the news.
B : If you don't switch it on, we'll miss the news.
C : If you don't switch it on, we'll miss the news.
A : Hurry, or we won't catch the bus.
B : If you don't hurry, we won't catch the bus.
C : If you don't hurry, we won't catch the bus.

Now you do the same

Switch it on, or we'll miss the news
..... If you don't switch it on, we'll miss the news.
Hurry, or we won't catch the bus
..... If you don't hurry, we won't catch the bus.
Get up, or you'll be late
..... If you don't get up, you'll be late.
Ask him, or he won't come
..... If you don't ask him, he won't come.

Dialogue B

Listen

Jenny David, you aren't really going to write for information, are you ?
David Why not ?
Jenny Do you know how much encyclopaedias cost ?
David No. Do you ?
Jenny Not exactly. But they must be expensive.
David Unless we send for more information, we'll never know.
Jenny David !
David The kids are getting older. They need an encyclopaedia. If we don't buy one soon, it'll be too late.

Jenny Why ? We can't afford it yet.
David They'll be taking exams soon. We need one *now*, not when we can afford it. Anyway, I'm only writing for information.
Listen and repeat

B1 Listen

A : We'd better send for information, or we'll never know.
B : Unless we send for information, we'll never know.
C : Unless we send for information, we'll never know.
A : We should complete the coupon, or we won't get a brochure.
B : Unless we complete the coupon, we won't get a brochure.
C : Unless we complete the coupon, we won't get a brochure.

Now you do the same

We'd better send for information, or we'll never know
..... Unless we send for information, we'll never know.
We should complete the coupon, or we won't get a brochure..... Unless we complete the coupon, we won't get a brochure.
We ought to ask, or we'll never find out
..... Unless we ask, we'll never find out.
We'd better write, or we won't know the price
..... Unless we write, we won't know the price.

B2 Listen

A : If we don't buy one soon, it'll be too late.
B : Unless we buy one soon, it'll be too late.
C : Unless we buy one soon, it'll be too late.
A : If we don't switch on, we won't see the news.
B : Unless we switch on, we won't see the news.
C : Unless we switch on, we won't see the news.

Now you do the same

If we don't buy one soon, it'll be too late
..... Unless we buy one soon, it'll be too late.
If we don't switch on, we won't see the news
..... Unless we switch on, we won't see the news.
If he doesn't hurry, he'll be late
..... Unless he hurries, he'll be late.
If she doesn't ask, she won't find out
..... Unless she asks, she won't find out.

Dialogue C

Listen
It's three weeks later.
David Yes ?
Salesman Good evening. Mr Ashworth ? I'm from Wessex Publications. Can I come in just for a moment?
David You are in...
Salesman Thank you. I want to tell you about our 'Encyclopaedia of Everything'.
David I only wanted a brochure. I didn't expect you to call.
Salesman Oh, it's no trouble, Mr Ashford...
David Ashworth. It's Mr Ashworth.
Salesman ... Mr Ashworth, I'm sorry. It's no trouble at all. Have you got any children ?
David Yes, three.
Salesman How wonderful. You're a lucky man. If you had our encyclopaedia, you could answer all their questions.
David Possibly, but...
Salesman Children need information, Mr Ashdown. And our encyclopaedia is the best. If I didn't believe that, I wouldn't be here tonight.
David Hmmm.
Listen and repeat

C1 Listen

A : You haven't got an encyclopaedia. You can't answer their questions.
B : If you had an encyclopaedia, you could answer their questions.
C : If you had an encyclopaedia, you could answer their questions.

A : There isn't a dictionary here. You can't look up words.
B : If there were a dictionary, you could look up words.
C : If there were a dictionary, you could look up words.

Now you do the same

You haven't got an encyclopaedia. You can't answer their questions.....If you had an encyclopaedia, you could answer their questions.

There isn't a dictionary here. You can't look up words .....If there were a dictionary you could look up words.

You haven't got a phone directory. You can't find the number .....If you had a phone directory, you could find the number.

There isn't an atlas. You can't show them the maps.....If there were an atlas, you could show them the maps.

Now you do the same

I believe it. That's why I'm here.....If I didn't believe it, I wouldn't be here.

They're the best. That's why I sell them .....If they weren't the best, I wouldn't sell them.

I use them myself. That's why I recommend them .....If I didn't use them myself, I wouldn't recommend them.

They're very modern. That's why people buy them .....If they modern weren't very modern, people wouldn't buy th

C2 Listen

A : I believe it. That's why I'm here.
B : If I didn't believe it, I wouldn't be here.
C : If I didn't believe it, I wouldn't be here.
A : They're the best. That's why I sell them.
B : If they weren't the best, I wouldn't sell them.
C : If they weren't the best, I wouldn't sell them.

Dialogue D

Listen David has examined the encyclopaedias.

David ... er, you haven't mentioned the price yet.

Salesman There's a special offer this month. If you order a set now, we'll give you 20% discount.

David 20% ? But what about the price ?

Salesman It's very reasonable indeed, Mr Ashcroft.

David I'm sure, but how much ?

Salesman Only... yes, only... £300. For the full set of fifteen volumes.

David £300 !

Salesman Yes. That's all, and if you wanted to pay cash, we would let you have a set for £250.

David I can't afford that. I like them, but I couldn't possibly buy them unless I paid over two or three years.

Salesman We can arrange hire purchase. If I were you, I'd order them tonight. The special offer ends on Monday. I've got the forms here.

David I'll have to ask my wife...

Listen and repeat

New words :

- volume *(n)* /'vɒlju:m/ book, esp one of a matching set or a series *an encyclopaedia in 20 ~s.*
- hire purchase /ˌhaɪə'pɜ:tʃəs/ method of purchase by which the buyer pays for an article in instalments = mua trả góp. *We're buying a TV on ~.*

D1 Listen

A : I can't buy them unless I pay over two years. It's impossible.
B : No, I couldn't buy them unless I paid over two years.
C : No, I couldn't buy them unless I paid over two years.
A : I won't order them unless my wife agrees. It's impossible.
B : No, I wouldn't order them unless my wife agreed.
C : No, I wouldn't order them unless my wife agreed.

Now you do the same

I can't buy them unless I pay over two years. It's impossible.....No, I couldn't buy them unless I paid over two years.

I won't order them unless my wife agrees. It's impossible .....No, I wouldn't order them unless my wife agreed.

I won't buy them unless you give me the discount. It's impossible .....No, I wouldn't buy them unless you gave me the discount.

I can't agree unless you reduce the price. It's impossible .....No, I couldn't agree unless you reduced the price.

D2 Listen

A : You should order them now.
B : If I were you, I'd order them now.
C : If I were you, I'd order them now.
A : You'd better decide tonight.
B : If I were you, I'd decide tonight.
C : If I were you, I'd decide tonight.

Now you do the same

You should order them now
..... If I were you, I'd order them now.
You'd better decide tonight
..... If I were you, I'd decide tonight.
You ought to hurry
..... If I were you, I'd hurry.
Why don't you pay now ?
..... If I were you, I'd pay now.

Listening

*You are going to hear some advertisements. Listen and answer the questions when you hear this sound * BELL*

1

'Hurry, hurry, hurry to Magna Furnishing Centres for our super low-price summer sale. If you buy now, you'll save pounds ! Save £80 on a new wardrobe, £45 on kitchen units, and save £200 – yes, £200 on a living-room suite ! Remember, Magna's summer sale starts Friday at our centres in most major towns – MFC !'

2

'Rain, rain go away. Come again another day. [THUNDER, RAIN]

Woman Oh, no ! It's started raining again. I've just put the washing on the line. It'll be soaked ! Why does it always happen to me ?

Man Has this happened to you ? Is it a familiar story ! If she had a "Streamline Tumble-Dryer", she wouldn't need to worry about the weather! [THUNDER, RAIN]'

3

'Imagine. A country mansion. A Rolls-Royce outside. Servants busy in the kitchen. A winter's night. You in the dining room at the end of a seven course meal. Your guests surround you. You are the richest person in the world. The butler brings coffee. Everybody loves it. What coffee is it ? Of course, it's Maxcaffine Instant Coffee.'

***BELL**

What'll happen if you buy now ?..... If you buy now, you'll save pounds.
How much would you save on a wardrobe?..... You'd save £45.
How much would you save on a living-room suite? .....You'd save £200.

***BELL**

Has she got a tumble-dryer ?..... No, she hasn't.
Does she need to worry about the weather ?
..... Yes, she does.
Would she need to worry, if she had one ?
..... No, she wouldn't.

Note :

mansion *(n)* /mænʃn/ = large and stately house
= ngôi nhà đồ sộ.

Open conversation

Listen and reply

A : If you were the richest person in the world, would you drink instant coffee ?
B : .....
A : What would you drink ?
B : .....
A : Where would you live ?
B : .....
A : What kind of car would you drive ?
B : .....
A : Where would you spend your holidays ?
B : .....
A : That's the end of section nine.

Unit 37 What Would You Have Done ?

Bạn đã làm gì ?

VOCABULARY

- **barbed wire** *(n)* /bɑ:bd'waɪə/ wire with short sharp points along it, uses for fences, etc. = dây kẽm gai *The — fence around the perimeter discouraged intruders.*
- **bishop** *(n)* /'bɪʃəp/ senior clergyman in charge of the work of the Church in a city or district = vị giám mục *the Bishop of Durham.*
- **burglary** *(n)* /'bɜ:glərɪ/ instance of the crime of entering a building in order to steal = vụ trộm cắp

  burglar *(n)* /'bɜ:glə/ person who enters a building illegally, esp by force in order to steal = tên cướp *The — got into the house through the bedroom window.*
- **detector** *(n)* /dɪ'tektə/ device for detecting changes in pressure or temperature, metals, explosives, etc. : máy dò tìm

  detect *(v)* /dɪ'tekt/ discover or recognize that (st) is present *The dentist could — no decay in her teeth.*
- **dynamite** *(n)* /'daɪnəmaɪt/ powerful explosive used in mining, etc. = chất nổ đinamit

  dynamite *(v)* blow (sb / st) up with dynamite
- **flat tyre** *(n)* /flæt 'taɪə/ tyre that is not containing enough air because of a puncture = bánh xe xẹp
- **hacksaw** *(n)* /'hæksɔ:/ saw with a short narrow blade in a frame, used for cutting metal = cái cưa kim loại
- **householder** *(n)* /'haʊshəʊldə/ head of a household = chủ nhà
- **innocent** *(adj)* /'ɪnəsnt/ knowing nothing of evil or wrong = ngây thơ *as — as a new born babe.*

  innocence *(n) Children lose their — as they grow older.*
- **insulate** *(v)* /'ɪnsjʊleɪt/ — (st) (from / against st) (with st) protect (st) by covering it with a material that prevents st (esp heat,electricity or sound) from passing through = cách ly, cách nhiệt *materials that — well.*

  insulation *(n) Foam rubber provides good —.*
- **loft** *(n)* /lɒft/ room or space directly under the roof of a house, used for storing things = tầng, khoảng trống ngay dưới mái nhà dùng để chứa đồ đạc
- **minefield** *(n)* /'maɪnfi:ld/ area of land or sea where explosive mines have been laid = bãi mìn
- **naughty** *(adj)* /'nɔ:tɪ/ 1. (infml) disobedient; causing trouble = hư đốn *You were — to pull the cat's tail.*

  2. shocking or intended to shock people through mild indecency = nghịch ngợm *a — joke, story.*

  naughtiness *(n)*
- **obstacle** *(n)* /'ɒbstəkl/ thing in the way that either stops progress or makes it difficult = chướng ngại vật *— s on the race – course; — s to world peace.*
- **relax** *(v)* /rɪ'læks/ become less tight, stiff = thư giãn *Let your muscles — slowly.*
- **saucy** *(adj)* /'sɔ:sɪ/ disrespectfully rude = dày dạn, thô bỉ *You — little thing !*
- **scratch** *(n)* /skrætʃ/ mark, cut, injury made by scratching = vết trầy *scratches on old records. Her hands were covered with scratches from the thorns*
- **short cut** *(n)* /ʃɔ:t kʌt/ route that makes a journey, walk, etc shorter = lối đi tắt *I took a — across the field to get to school.*
- **spot** *(v)* /spɒt/ recognize, discover = nhận ra, phát hiện *She spotted her friend in the crowd.*
- **swimming costume** *(n)* /'swɪmɪŋ 'kɒstju:m/ = bathing – costume = one – piece garment worn for swimming = đồ bơi
- **tinkle** *(n)* /'tɪŋkl/ series of short light ringing sounds = tiếng kêu leng keng, loảng xoảng *the — of a bell.*

  tinkle *(v)* make a tinkle

- **tranquillizer** *(n)* /'træŋkwɪlaɪzə/ drug for making an anxious person feel calm; sedative = thuốc an thần. *She's on ~ s.*

- **wire cutter** *(n)* /'waɪə 'kʌtə/ (esp pl) tool for cutting wire = kéo cắt dây thép
a pair of wire - cutters.

USAGE

S + V + (pro) noun + present participle

In this pattern most of the verbs here are verbs of perception such as : see, hear, watch, feel, smell, notice, spot, listen to.

EX : - I saw the thief *running* away.
- We noticed a man *sitting* at the table *eating* a meal

(The thief *was running* away. I saw him in the middle of the action.
The man *was sitting* and *eating*. We saw him in the middle of the actions)

We can also use *find* and *smell* with this pattern.

EX : - We *found* Liz *lying* on the beach.
- I can *smell* something *cooking*.

GRAMMAR

Conditional Sentences – Type 3

If clause main clause
past + perfect would have + past participle

1. We often use Type 3 conditionals to express regret, about things that can now never happen.

We can use simple or progressive forms of the past perfect in the *If* - clause.

EX : - If we *had gone* by car, we *would have saved* time.
- If we *had been trying* harder, we *would have succeeded*.

2. When we use *would have* in the main clause, we are expressing as much certainty as possible.

EX : If he *had known* the facts, he *would have told* us what to do. (certain or nearly certain)

If we don't feel "certain" enough to use *would have* we can use another modal to say what would have been possible :

EX : - If he had known the facts, he *might have told* us what to do. (it's possible)
- If he *had known* the facts, he *could have told* us what to do. (he would have been able.)

EXPRESSIONS

beat up /bi:t ʌp/ đánh như tử
clear off /klɪər ɒf/ chuồn, cút đi
come over /kʌm 'əʊvə/ tiến lại
- creep up /kri:p ʌp/ đi rón rén
That's my (something)... that was ! Đó là... của tôi. Nó là của tôi hồi nãy mà
in sight /ɪn saɪt/ trong tầm nhìn
in deep water gặp rắc rối nghiêm trọng
Honesty is the best policy thật thà là cha quỉ quái., thật thà là thượng sách
I was scared stiff ! tôi sợ chết cứng
I was trembling with fear tôi sợ run lẩy bẩy
I couldn't say a word tôi không nói được một lời nào cả

PROPER NAMES

A. Watney Hull /'eɪ 'wætnɪ 'hʌl/
B. Leyland /'bi: 'li:lənd/
Birkenhead /'bɜ:kənhed/
D. Boswell /'di: 'bɒswel/
D. Revie /'dɪ rɪ'vaɪ/
Edinburgh /'edɪnbərə/
Fleet wood /'fli:t 'wʊd/
H. P. Branston Cardiff /'eɪtʃ pi: 'brænstən 'ka:dɪf/
T. Homiman Ipswich /'ti: 'hɒmɪmən 'ɪpswɪtʃ/
Simon Fisher /'saɪmən 'fɪʃə/

YOUR LETTERS

What would you have done ?

Last week we invited readers to write and tell us about things that had happened to them, or things that they had heard about. We wanted stories where people just didn't know what to do next ! Here are the stories that interested us most !

That's my beer... that was !

I was in a small country pub. I had just sat down with a pint of beer. Suddenly this huge man – he looked like a boxer – came over, picked up my beer, drank it, banged the glass down on the table, stared at me, and then walked away without saying anything. I suppose I should have said something, but I was scared stiff ! I didn't know what to do ! What would you have done ?

Mr A Watney, Hull.

In deep water

I was on a touring holiday in France. It was a very hot day and I stopped at a small deserted beach. I hadn't got my swimming-costume with me, but it was early in the morning and there were no people or houses in sight. So I took off all my clothes and swam out to sea. I'm a very strong swimmer. I lay on my back, closed my eyes, and relaxed in the water. When I looked back at the beach, a coach had arrived and there were thirty or forty people sitting on the sand having a picnic ! What would you have done ?

Mr T Horniman, Ipswich.

Naughty Bishop !

I was told a lovely story about the Bishop of Fleetwood. He'd gone to New York for a church conference. Anyway, when he stepped off the plane there were a lot of journalists and cameramen. The first question one of the journalists asked was 'Do you intend to visit any nightclubs in New York ?' Well, the Bishop was 85 years old. 'Are there any nightclubs in New York ?' he answered innocently. The next

THƯ CỦA CÁC BẠN

Nếu là bạn, bạn đã làm gì ?

Tuần rồi chúng tôi đã mời độc giả viết kể lại cho chúng tôi nghe những việc đã xảy ra cho họ, hoặc họ đã nghe ai kể lại. Chúng tôi muốn nghe những chuyện mà trong đó người ta đã không biết phải làm gì sau đó ! Sau đây là những câu chuyện mà chúng tôi thích nhất.

Đó là bia của tôi mà... là bia của tôi vài phút trước đó.

Tôi đang ở trong một quán rượu nhỏ. Tôi vừa ngồi xuống bàn với một ly bia lớn[1]. Thình lình một gã to con – hắn trông giống như một võ sĩ quyền Anh – bước tới, cầm ly bia của tôi lên, nốc cạn, dằn ly không xuống bàn, nhìn tôi trừng trừng rồi bước đi, không nói lời nào. Tôi nghĩ là lẽ ra tôi nên nói gì đó, nhưng lúc ấy tôi sợ chết điếng người. Tôi chả biết phải làm gì cả. Nếu là bạn thì bạn đã xử sự ra sao ?

Ông A Watney, Hull.

Tình huống ngặt nghèo.[2]

Tôi đang đi nghỉ ở Pháp. Hôm đó là một ngày rất oi bức và tôi dừng chân ở một bãi biển nhỏ, vắng người. Tôi không mang theo quần tắm, nhưng lúc đó là sáng sớm và không có bóng người hoặc bóng nhà cửa nào gần đó cả. Vì vậy tôi cởi hết quần áo và bơi ra biển. Tôi bơi giỏi lắm. Tôi bơi ngửa, nhắm mắt lại và thư giãn trên mặt nước. Khi tôi nhìn trở lại bờ, một chiếc xe du lịch đã tới từ hồi nào và có ba hoặc bốn chục người đang ngồi trên cát vui picnic ! Nếu là bạn, bạn làm gì ?

Ô. T Horniman, Ipswich.

Giám mục nghịch ngợm

Người ta đã kể cho tôi nghe một câu chuyện vui về vị giám mục xứ Fleetwood. Ông ta đi New York dự một cuộc hội nghị của giáo hội. Khi ông bước xuống cầu thang máy bay, nhiều nhà báo và người quay phim bao quanh ông ta. Câu hỏi đầu tiên của một nhà báo là "Cha có dự tính đi thăm hộp đêm nào ở New York không ?' – À, giám mục đã 85 tuổi rồi, ông ta đáp một cách ngây thơ "Có hộp đêm nào ở New York không ?" sáng hôm sau, một trong những tờ báo ở New York đăng tít lớn. "Câu hỏi đầu tiên

(1) 1 pint = 0,568 lít.

(2) Tác giả muốn chơi chữ. *In deep water* : bị kẹt dưới nước, còn là một thành ngữ, có nghĩa là tình huống ngặt nghèo.

morning the headline in one of the New York papers was "Bishop's first question on arrival in New York – Are there any nightclubs ?" How would you have felt ?
Reverend Simon Fisher, Exeter.

Strangers in the night

My story isn't at all funny. It was a very frightening experience. You see, one night I woke up suddenly. I heard the tinkle of broken glass from downstairs, and I heard the window opening. Then I heard two voices ! My wife had woken up, too. She told me to do something. A couple of days before, there had been a report about a burglary in the local paper. The burglars had been interrupted and they had beaten up the householder. They'd nearly killed him. I was trembling with fear. I just didn't know what to do. In the end, I didn't go down and they stole the silver tea-service I'd inherited from my mother. Was I right ? What would you have done ?
Mr D Boswell, Edinburgh.

A saucy thief

I had parked my car in a multi-storey car park and I was taking a short cut through the side door of the restaurant in a large store. Half-way across the restaurant I spotted my father eating pie, chips and peas – he often eats there. I crept up behind him, put my hand over his shoulder, took a chip off the plate, dipped it in the tomato sauce and ate it. Then I realized that the man was not my father ! I was so embarrassed ! I couldn't say a word ! What would you have done ?
Miss H P Branston, Cardiff.

Unless !!!

I'd just parked my car in the street near a football stadium in Liverpool. It was ten minutes before the start of the match and I was in a hurry. Two little boys came up to me and said 'Give us 50p and we'll look after your car while you're at the match.' I told them to clear off, and one of them looked at me with big, round, innocent eyes and said 'Unless you give us the money, something might happen to your car while you're away. You know, a scratch or a flat tyre. Something like that'. I was furious ! What would you have done !
Mr D Revie, Birkenhead.

của giám mục khi đến New York – Có hộp đêm nào ở New York không ?" – Nếu bạn đọc tft đó, bạn sẽ nghĩ sao?

Linh mục Simon Fisher, Exeter.

Những người lạ mặt trong đêm.

Câu chuyện của tôi chẳng có gì đáng cười. Đó là một chuyện đáng sợ. Bạn biết không, một tối nọ tôi nghe tiếng loảng xoảng kính vỡ phía nhà dưới và nghe tiếng cửa sổ mở ra. Sau đó có tiếng của 2 người ! Vợ tôi cũng đã thức dậy. Bà ta bảo tôi làm một điều gì đó. Vài ngày trước, báo địa phương có đưa tin một vụ trộm. Bọn trộm bị phát hiện và chúng đánh chủ nhà gần chết. Tôi sợ run lên. Tôi không biết phải làm gì cả. Cuối cùng tôi đã không xuống nhà dưới và bọn trộm đã lấy đi bộ đồ trà bằng bạc mà mẹ tôi đã để lại cho tôi. Tôi làm như vậy có đúng không? Nếu là bạn, bạn sẽ làm gì ?

Ô. D Boswell, Edinburgh

Một kẻ cắp mặt dày mày dạn

Tôi vừa đậu xe trong một nhà đậu xe nhiều tầng và tôi đang đi tắt qua cửa hông một nhà hàng trong một siêu thị. Mới được nửa đường qua nhà hàng này thì tôi thấy ba tôi đang ngồi ăn bánh nhân, khoai tây chiên và đậu – ông ta vẫn thường ăn ở đó. Tôi rón rén lại phía sau ông ta, một tay đặt lên vai ông, tay kia nhón một miếng khoai tây chiên, nhúng vào nước sốt cà chua và bỏ vào miệng. Lúc đó tôi mới nhận ra người đàn ông đó không phải là ba tôi ! Tôi bối rối quá ! Tôi không nói được lời nào cả ! Nếu là tôi thì bạn đã làm gì ?

Cô HP Branston, Cardiff.

Trừ khi !!!

Tôi vừa mới đậu xe trên đường gần một sân bóng đá ở Liverpool. Chỉ còn 10 phút nữa là trận đấu bắt đầu và tôi đang vội. Hai đứa nhóc bé xíu lại gần và nói "Cho tụi cháu 50 pence đi, tụi cháu sẽ trông chừng xe cho chu trong khi chú xem bóng đá" ! Tôi bảo chúng biến đi, thế rồi một đứa nhìn tôi với cặp mắt ngây thơ xoe tròn và nói, "Trừ khi chú cho tụi cháu món tiền đó, xe chú sẽ lãnh đủ khi chú đi khỏi. Chú biết đó, một vết trầy hay một chiếc bánh xẹp lép. Đại khái là vậy" Tôi tức điên lên. Bạn sẽ làm gì chứ !

Ô. D. Revie, Birkenhead.

Honesty is the best policy

I couldn't believe a story I heard the other day. It seems that a couple had just bought a house in Manchester. They wanted to insulate the roof, so they climbed up into the loft. There, under the water tank, was £20,000 in cash ! They handed over the money to the police. Would you have reported the find ? What would you have done ?

Mrs B Leyland, Birmingham.

Thật thà là tốt nhất.

Tôi không thể tin nổi câu chuyện tôi mới nghe ngày nọ. Nghe đâu một cặp vợ chồng vừa mới mua một căn nhà ở Manchester. Họ muốn cách nhiệt mái nhà nên mới leo lên la phông. Ở đó, dưới bể nước, họ tìm thấy 20,000 pounds bằng tiền mặt ! Họ nộp lại tiền cho cảnh sát. Nếu là bạn, bạn có khai báo món tiền bạn được không? Bạn sẽ làm gì ?

Bà B. Leyland, Birmingham.

Look at this

Would you have said anything ?
What would you have done ?

I	'd would	have	said done	something.
	wouldn't			anything.

Exercise 1

Make sentences like this about each of the seven stories.

Exercise 2

Tell the story of an interesting, surprising or embarrassing experience you have had, or heard about.

PRACTICE

Language summary

Would you have said anything ?
What would you have done ?

I	*'d* *would*	*have*	*said* *done*	*something*
	wouldn't			*anything*

At an army college trainee officers were given a problem to solve. They were shown a map of a prisoner-of-war camp. They had to imagine that they were prisoners in the camp. They had some vital information, so it was very important for them to escape. Secret agents couldn't get them out, but they could arrange to leave some things to help the prisoners to escape. The officers had to say how they would have escaped, and what they would have done at each obstacle. Look at the plan of the prison camp, look at the notes and say what you would have done.

This is what the secret agents provided for the escape.

Ở một trường quân sự, các sinh viên sĩ quan được giao cho một vấn đề để giải quyết. Họ được cho xem một bản đồ của một trại tù binh chiến tranh. Họ phải tưởng tượng là họ là tù binh trong trại. Họ nắm một số thông tin trọng yếu vì vậy các thông tin này rất quan trọng cho cuộc trốn thoát. Mật thám không thể cho họ thoát, nhưng họ có thể tìm cách để lại một số điều giúp các tù nhân trốn thoát. Các sĩ quan phải nói họ có lẽ đã trốn thoát ra sao, và họ có lẽ đã làm gì ở mỗi chướng ngại vật. Nhìn sơ đồ trại tù, nhìn các ghi chú và nói điều bạn có lẽ đã làm.

Đây là điều các mật thám cung cấp cho cuộc trốn thoát.

1 cell, window bars – hacksaw/dynamite.
2 cell – ground – rope/a large balloon.
3 barbed wire fence – a ladder/wire cutters.
4 dogs – tranquillizers/a knife.
5 electric fence – wire cutters/a spade.
6 guards – a spare uniform/a gun.
7 minefield – an accurate map/a metal detector.
8 outer fence – a pile of bricks/a long wooden pole.
9 near railway station – a phrase book/a sign saying 'deaf & dumb'
10 next station – a car/a bicycle.
11 port – a rowing boat/seaman's papers from a neutral country

Exercise 1
cell, window bars – a hacksaw/dynamite
I could have used the jacksaw or the dynamite.
Write ten more sentences.

Exercise 2
I would have sawn through the bars.
Write ten more sentences.

Exercise 3
Why wouldn't you have used the dynamite?

Because it would have made too much noise.
Write ten more questions and answers.

Exercise 4
Write a paragraph and describe how you would have escaped, and why you would have chosen this method.

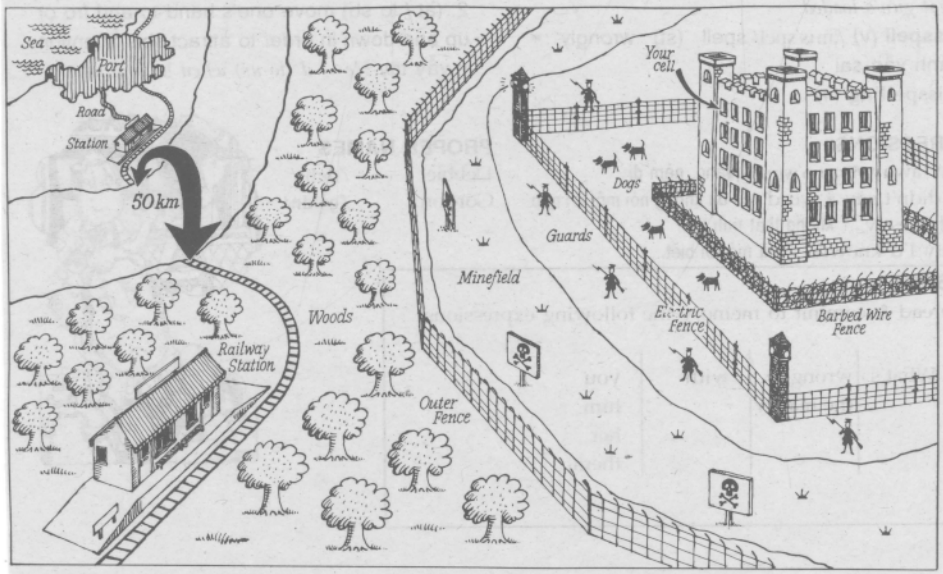
Bài tập 1
phòng giam, song cửa – cái cưa kim loại/chất nổ đinamit
Có thể tôi đã dùng cái cưa kim loại hay chất nổ đinamit.
Viết thêm 10 câu.

Bài tập 2
Có thể tôi đã cưa gãy các song sắt
Viết thêm 10 câu nữa.

Bài tập 3
Tại sao bạn đã không dùng chất nổ đinamit?
Vì nó sẽ gây tiếng động lớn.

Viết thêm 10 câu hỏi và trả lời.

Bài tập 4
Viết 1 đoạn văn mô tả cách bạn đã trốn thoát và nói tại sao bạn chọn cách này.



Unit 38 A Bad Day At The Office

Một ngày rắc rối tại cơ quan

VOCABULARY

- **bleach** *(n)* /bli:tʃ/ substance that bleaches = thuốc tẩy
  bleach *(v)* /bli:tʃ/ cause st to become white = tẩy trắng *bleach cotton, linen; hair bleached by the sun.*
- **bruise** *(n)* /bru:z/ injury caused by a blow to the body or to a fruit, discolouring the skin but not breaking it = vết thâm, bầm *He was covered in ~ s after falling off his bicycle.*
  bruise *(v)* cause a bruise or bruises on st / sb. *He fell and ~ d himself / his leg.*
- **casualty department** *(n)* /'kæʒjʊəltɪ dɪ'pɑ:tmənt/ = casualty ward = part of a hospital where people who have been hurt in accidents are taken for urgent treatment = khoa cấp cứu người bị tai nạn
- **drawer** *(n)* /drɔ:/ box – like container, with one or more handles but no lid, that slides in and out of a piece of furniture = ngăn kéo ở tủ *the middle ~ of my desk; clear out one's ~ s.*
- **loaded gun** *(n)* /'ləʊdɪd gʌn/ gun that ammunition is put in = súng có nạp đạn *Be careful ! That gun's loaded.*
- **misspell** *(v)* /ˌmɪs'spel/ spell (st) wrongly = đánh vần sai
  misspelling *(n)*
- **offend** *(v)* /ə'fend/ (esp passive) cause sb to feel upset or angry; hurt the feeling of = làm phật ý *She was ~ ed at / by his sexist remarks.*
  offensive *(adj)* /ə'fensɪv/ upsetting or annoying = gây phật lòng
  ~ remarks, language, behaviour.
- **rib** *(n)* /rɪb/ xương sườn
- **scalded** *(adj)* /skɔ:ldɪd/ burnt = bị bỏng
  scald *(v)* /skɔ:ld/ burn (oneself or part of one's body) with boiling liquid or steam = làm bỏng, bỏng *~ one's hand with hot fat. She was ~ ed to death when the boiler exploded.*
  scald *(n)* injury to the skin from boiling liquid or steam. *an ointment for burns and scalds* = thuốc mỡ chữa bỏng
- **telex** *(n)* /'teleks/ telex
- **urgent** *(adj)* /'ɜ:dʒənt/ needing immediate attention, action = khẩn cấp *an ~ message, cry for help. It is most ~ that we operate.*
- **wave** *(v)* /weɪv/ 1. move regularly and loosely to and fro or up and down = lung linh *branches waving in the wind*
  2. (at / to sb) move one's hand to and fro or up and down in order to attract sb's attention = vẫy tay *He ~ d (to us) when he saw us.*

EXPRESSIONS

throw away /θrəʊ ə'weɪ/ quăng, ném đi
You didn't say a word cô đã không nói một lời nào
No, honestly... không thật tình là...
If only I'd known... Giá mà tôi biết...

PROPER NAMES

Debbie /'debɪ/
Gordon /'gɔ:dn/

USAGE

Reread & commit to memory the following expressions

1. What's	wrong the matter	with	you him her them

2. Is there anything	wrong the matter	with	you ? her ? him ? them ?	4. Nothing's	wrong. special. the matter.
3. Does Did	everything something	go wrong ?		5. Nothing matters. 6. It doesn't matter really.	

Bob What was wrong with you this morning?
Debbie Wrong with me ? Sorry, Bob, I don't know what you mean.
Bob You walked straight past me. You didn't say a word !
Debbie Really ? Where ?
Bob It was just outside the newsagent's in the High Street.
Debbie I'm terribly sorry, Bob. I just didn't see you.
Bob Come on, Debbie. You must have done ! I was waving !
Debbie No, honestly. I didn't see you. If I had seen you, I would have said 'Hello'.

Exercise 1

She didn't see him. She didn't say 'Hello'.
If she had seen him, she would have said 'Hello'.
Do the same.

Mrs Lewis Debbie, have you sent that telex to Geneva ?
Debbie No, I haven't.
Mrs Lewis Why haven't you done it yet ? It's urgent.
Debbie Because you didn't ask me to do it.
Mrs Lewis Didn't I ?
Debbie No, you didn't. If you'd asked me, I'd've sent it !

Exercise 2

Have you sent the telex ?
If you'd asked me, I would have sent it.
Do the same.

Gordon Did you see a letter from Brazil on this desk ?
Debbie Yes, it's here.
Gordon Oh, good. Where's the envelope ?
Debbie I threw it away. Why ?
Gordon It had some nice stamps on it. I wanted them for my son. He collects stamps.
Debbie Oh, Gordon ! If only I'd known !

Bob : Sáng nay cô có chuyện gì vậy ?
Debbie : Chuyện gì à ? Xin lỗi, Bob, ý anh muốn nói gì vậy ?
Bob : Cô đi thẳng qua trước mặt tôi mà không thèm chào một tiếng.
Debbie : Vậy sao ? Ở đâu chứ ?
Bob : Ngay trước sạp báo đường High chứ đâu.

Debbie : Ồ, hết sức xin lỗi, Bob. Tôi không trông thấy anh.
Bob : Thôi đi, Debbie. Chắc chắn là cô đã thấy tôi mà! Tôi có vẫy tay mà.
Debbie : Không, thật đấy. Tôi không thấy anh, chứ nếu có tôi đã chào anh rồi.

1 She didn't notice him. She didn't stop.
2 She didn't recognize him. She didn't speak to him.
3 She didn't see him waving. She didn't wave back.

Bà Lewis : Này Debbie, em gửi bức telex đó đi Genava chưa ?
Debbie : Dạ chưa.
Bà Lewis : Sao em chưa gửi đi ? Nó là điện khẩn mà.
Debbie : Dạ bởi vì bà đâu có nhắc em gửi nó đi.
Bà Lewis : Vậy sao ?
Debbie : Vâng, đúng thế. Nếu bà nhắc em thì em đã gửi nó đi rồi.

1 Have you posted the letters ?
2 Have you photo-copied the report ?
3 Have you typed the contract ?

Gordon : Cô có thấy một bức thư từ Brazil gửi đến ở trên bàn không ?
Debbie : Nó đây nè.
Gordon : Tốt. Thế còn bao thư đâu.
Debbie : Tôi liệng nó đi mất rồi. Sao vậy ?
Gordon : Có mấy con tem đẹp trên đó. Tôi muốn cho con trai tôi. Thằng bé sưu tầm tem mà.
Debbie : Ồ, Gordon, phải chi tôi biết !

Gordon It doesn't matter.
Debbie No, I'd have kept it if I'd known.

Exercise 3

I didn't keep it.
I'd have kept it if I'd known.
Do the same.

Debbie What's the matter, Jeff ? You don't look very well.
Jeff No. I've had a terrible cold. I've been in bed all weekend, but it's better today.
Debbie Mm... I had a bad cold last week.
Jeff I know, and you gave it to everyone in the office. I wouldn't have come to work if I'd had a cold like that.

Exercise 4

She had a bad cold, but she came to work.
I wouldn't have come to work if I'd had a cold.
Do the same.

Mrs Lewis Debbie.
Debbie Yes.
Mrs Lewis Did you type this letter ?
Debbie Yes. Why ? Is there something wrong with it ?
Mrs Lewis Have a look. This should be £400.00. You've typed £40,000.
Debbie Oh, yes. I'm ever so sorry.
Mrs Lewis And you've also misspelt the customer's name. It should be 'Snelling' not 'Smelling'.
Debbie Hee-hee !
Mrs Lewis It's not funny, Debbie. If I hadn't noticed it, we could have lost the order.

Exercise 5

She noticed the error. They didn't lose the order.
If she hadn't noticed the error, they could have lost the order.
Do the same.

Ruth Hi, Debbie. Did you have a good day, today ?
Debbie No, I didn't. I'm glad today's over ! Everything went wrong !

Gordon : Không sao.
Debbie : Nếu tôi biết thì tôi đã giữ bao thư lại rồi.

1 I didn't do it.
2 I didn't give it to you.
3 I didn't put it in the drawer.

Debbie : Chuyện gì vậy Jeff ? Anh trông không được khỏe.
Jeff : Ừ, tôi bị cảm nặng. Suốt thứ bảy chủ nhật rồi tôi phải nằm lì trên giường, nhưng hôm nay thì có đỡ hơn.
Debbie : Ừ... tuần rồi tôi cũng bị cảm nặng.
Jeff : Tôi biết rồi, và cô làm lây cả sở luôn đó. Tôi mà bị cảm nặng như vậy thì tôi không đi làm đâu.

1 She had a headache. She stayed at work.
2 He had a sore throat. He worked all day.
3 She had toothache. She didn't go to the dentist.

Bà Lewis : Debbie.
Debbie : Vâng, thưa bà.
Bà Lewis : Em đánh máy thư này phải không?
Debbie : Vâng. Sao ạ ? Có lỗi phải không ạ?

Bà Lewis : Nhìn nè. Chỗ này lẽ ra là 400 pounds. Em đánh máy thành 40.000 pounds.
Debbie : Dạ. Em hết sức xin lỗi.
Bà Lewis : Rồi em lại đánh sai tên khách hàng nữa. Người ta là "Snelling" chứ đâu có phải là "Smelling".

Debbie : Hi... hi.
Bà Lewis : Không phải chuyện cười đâu nghe, Debbie. Nếu tôi không xem kỹ thì chúng ta đã có thể mất đơn đặt hàng này rồi.

1 She noticed the spelling mistake. They didn't upset the customer.
2 She saw it in time. They didn't send the letter.
3 She checked the letter. They didn't post it.

Ruth : Này Debbie, hôm nay mọi sự tốt đẹp cả chứ ?

Debbie : Không. Tôi mừng là đã hết ngày nay. Cái gì cũng xui cả.

Ruth Really ?

Debbie Yes, I made a lot of typing errors, then I forgot to send a telex and I offended Bob because I ignored him in the street.

Ruth Why was that ?

Debbie It was that party last night. If I hadn't gone to bed late, it wouldn't have been such an awful day. I'm having an early night tonight !

Ruth : Vậy sao ?

Debbie : Ừ, tôi đánh máy sai nhiều lỗi, rồi tôi lại quên không gửi đi một cái telex và tôi làm Bob phật lòng vì tôi không chào anh ấy ở ngoài đường.

Ruth : Tại sao vậy ?

Debbie : Chỉ tại buổi tiệc tối qua. Nếu tôi không đi ngủ trễ thì hôm nay mọi thứ không đến nỗi tồi tệ như vậy. Tối nay tôi phải đi ngủ sớm.

Exercise 6

I went to a party./I went to bed late./I forgot to set the alarm./I got up late./I missed the bus./I was late for work./I've had a bad day./I forgot to send a telex./I made a typing error.

If I hadn't gone to the party, none of these things would have happened.

If I hadn't gone to a party, I wouldn't have gone to bed late.

Make eight sentences.

PRACTICE

Language summary

If	*I* *he* *she* *we* *you* *they*	*'d* *had* *hadn't* *had not*	*done that,* *seen that,* *been there,*	*I* *he* *she* *we* *you* *they*	*'d* *would* *wouldn't* *would not*	*'ve* *have*	*done* *seen* *known* *that.* *this.* *this.*

Look at this.

St. Bernard's Hospital
CASTERBRIDGE

Casualty department — Daily report — 16 September

PATIENT	AGE	INJURY	CAUSE
PAUL COOK	2	minor burns to hands	fire without a guard
SARAH DEAN	4	scalded face & neck	pulled pan of boiling milk from cooker-no pan guards
MARK WILSON	3½	drank bleach	not on high shelf
ERNEST SMITH	72	electric shock	bare wires near plug
ERIC CLARKE	48	broken collar-bone	fell off ladder – nobody holding the bottom
EMMA AUSTEN	10 mths	bruises	fell downstairs – no gate on stairs
DAPHNE WOODS	31	deep cuts to arms & legs	walked through glass door – not safety glass
CLAIRE GREEN	18 mths	ate 20 vitamin pills	pills not in a cupboard with a lock
JASON ADAMS	5	cut finger	mother left scissors on the floor

PATIENT	AGE	INJURY	CAUSE
FLORENCE HOPE	81	severe burns	nightdress caught fire – mirror over fireplace
DIANA FORD	40	lost half her hair	hair caught in factory machine – not wearing hat
ANN BLAKE	18	broken leg	car reversed into her – driver didn't look in mirror
DAVID CASEY	26	broken ribs	car crashed – drank too much

Exercise 1

If the fire had had a guard, Paul wouldn't have burnt his hands.

Write twelve more sentences.

Exercise 2

Look at these newspaper headlines.

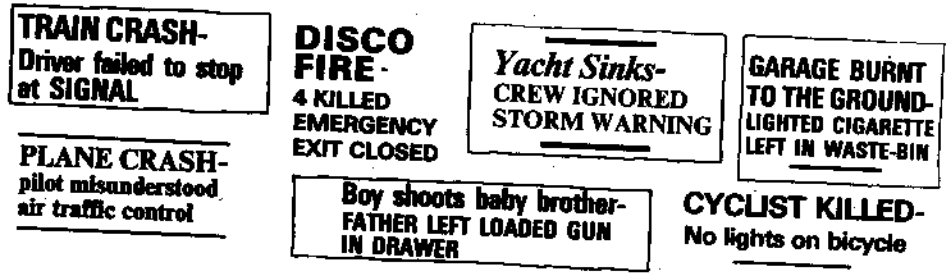
Bài tập 1

Giá như đám cháy đó có người trực, Paul đã không bị bỏng tay mình.

Viết thêm 12 câu nữa.

Bài tập 2

Xem các tựa đề tờ báo này.



The train wouldn't have crashed
if the driver hadn't failed to stop at the signal.
if the driver had stopped at the signal.

Look at the headlines and write six more sentences.

Tàu lửa đã không bị lật
giá như người lái điều khiển được cho tàu dừng ở điểm báo hiệu.
giá như người lái dừng lại ở điểm báo hiệu.

Xem các tựa báo và viết thêm 6 câu nữa.

PROVERBS

- A good deed is never lost = làm ơn không bao giờ thiệt
- A good name is better than riches = Tốt danh hơn lành áo
- A jack of all trades is master of none = Bá nghệ tri vị chi bá lập
- A man is known by his friends = Xem bạn biết người

Unit 39 A Saturday Afternoon

Một buổi chiều thứ bảy

VOCABULARY

- **atmosphere** *(n)* /ætməsfɪə/ feeling in the mind that is created by a group of people or a place; mood = bầu không khí *An ~ of tension filled the room. The ~ changed as soon as she walked in.*
- **certify** *(v)* /sɜ:tɪfaɪ/ (~ sb / st as st) formally declared (st) esp in writing or on a printed document = xác nhận *a document certifying sb's birth. He certified (that) it was his wife's handwriting.*
- **chandelier** *(n)* /ʃændə'lɪə/ ornamental hanging light with branches for several bulbs or candles = đèn treo nhiều ngọn, chúc đài treo
- **cockney twang** *(n)* /kɒknɪ twæŋ/ tone of cockneys, native of London, esp of the East End of the city = giọng nói của người ở khu đông Luân Đôn
- **complexion** *(n)* /kəm'plekʃn/ natural colour and appearance of the skin of the face = nước da *a good, dark, fair, sallow ~.*
- **corridor** *(n)* /'kɒrɪdɔ:/ long narrow passage, from which doors open into rooms or compartments = hành lang
- **deformity** *(n)* /dɪ'fɔ:mɪtɪ/ being deformed = dị dạng *He was born with a slight ~ of the foot which made him limp.*
  deform *(v)* /dɪ'fɔ:m/ spoil the shape or appearance of *~ a structure, limb.*
  deformation *(n) a ~ of the spine* (cột sống)
  deformed *(adj)* badly or unnaturally shaped. *She has a ~ foot and can't walk very easily.*
- **depressed** *(adj)* /dɪ'prest/ sad and without enthusiasm = buồn bã, nản lòng *~ about the election results.*
  depress *(v)* /dɪ'pres/ make sb sad and without enthusiasm *Wet weather always ~es me.*
- **disdain** *(n)* /dɪs'deɪn/ contempt = sự khinh miệt *a look, tone, expression of ~.*
  disdain *(v)* despise = khinh miệt *~ an invitation, an offer of help.*
- **drive** *(n)* /draɪv/ private road leading to a house = lối đi vào nhà
- **file** *(n)* /faɪl/ file and its contents = hồ sơ *have, open, keep a ~ on each member of staff.*
- **fling** *(v)* /flɪŋ/ (pt, pp *flung*) push st / sb somewhere quickly or roughly and forcefully = đẩy tung (cửa) *He flung open the door.*
- **flower bed** *(n)* /'flaʊə bed/ piece of ground in a garden or park, esp prepared for growing flowers = luống hoa
- **grunt** *(v)* /grʌnt/ make a low rough sound expressing irritation = làu bàu, lẩm bẩm
  I asked him what he thought, but he just ~ed.
  grunt *(n)* low rough sound made by a person or animal *give a ~ of pain, approval.*
- **imposing** *(adj)* /ɪm'pəʊzɪŋ/ impressive in appearance or manner; grand = đồ sộ
  an ~ building.
- **impressed** *(adj)* /ɪm'prest/ có ấn tượng
  impress *(v)* /ɪm'pres/ = make sb feel admiration and respect *We were most ~ed by / with your efficiency.*
- **incident** *(n)* /'ɪnsɪdənt/ event or happening, often of minor importance = sự việc *He could remember every trivial ~ in great detail.*
- **insane** *(adj)* /ɪn'seɪn/ mad, senseless = điên
  an ~ person
  the insane *(n)* insane people *an institution for the ~.*
- **lounge** *(v)* /laʊndʒ/ sit or stand in a lazy way, esp leaning against st = nằm ườn ra
  ~ about / around (the house)
  lounge *(n)* sitting-room with comfortable chairs, in a private house = phòng khách
- **mansion** *(n)* /'mænʃn/ large and stately house = ngôi nhà cổ
- **mental institution** *(n)* /'mentl,ɪnstɪ'tju:ʃn/ place for mental patients = Viện tâm thần
- **mild – mannered** *(adj)* /maɪld 'mænəd/ có phong thái dịu dàng

- **neighbourhood** *(n)* /'neɪbəhʊd/ (people living in a) district = xóm giềng *She is liked by the whole ~. We live in a-rather rich ~.*
- **ornamental** *(adj)* /ˌɔːnə'mentl/ of or for ornament = để trang trí *O~ copper pans hung on the wall.*

  ornament *(n)* /'ɔːnəmənt/ thing designed to add beauty to st but usu without practical use = vật trang trí
- **panama hat** *(n)* /'pænəmɑː hæt/ hat made of fine woven straw – like material = kiểu nón rơm nam có vành
- **parkland** *(n)* /'pɑːklænd/ open grassland with clumps of trees = bãi cỏ có nhiều lùm cây *The house stands in 500 acres of rolling ~.*
- **pause** *(v)* /pɔːz/ make a pause = dừng lại *He ~ d for a moment and then continued his speech.*

  pause *(n)* temporary stop in action or speech = sự tạm dừng *After a short ~, they continued walking.*
- **persuade** *(v)* /pə'sweɪd/ cause sb to do st by arguing or reasoning with him = thuyết phục *How can we ~ him into joining us ?*

  persuasion *(n)* /pə'sweɪʒn/ *After a lot of ~, he agreed to come.*

  persuasive /pə'sweɪsɪv/ = convincing *a ~ manner; ~ arguments, reasons, excuses.*
- **scowl** *(v)* /skaʊl/ ~ (at sb / st) look (at sb / st) with a scowl = quắc mắc, cau có, giận dữ *The receptionist ~ ed at me.*

  scowl *(n)* angry – look on the face = vẻ cau có
- **spar** *(v)* /spɑː/ ~ (with sb) box (sb) using light blows, usu for practice only = ở vào tư thế sẵn sàng đánh đấu
- **uneasy** *(adj)* /ʌn'iːzɪ/ troubled or anxious = lo lắng *I'm ~ in my mind about the future.*

  unease, uneasiness *(n)* = apprehension = sự lo sợ *I waited with growing unease for her return.*
- **whistle** *(v)* /wɪsl/ produce a tune = huýt sáo *He ~ d a happy tune as he walked along.*

EXPRESSIONS

burn down /bɜːn daʊn/ đốt cháy rụi
write up /raɪt ʌp/ viết ra toàn bộ
locked up /lɒkt ʌp/ khóa nhốt lại
long-stay /lɒŋ steɪ/ ở lâu
a number of /ə'nʌmbə əv/ một số
A lovely day, isn't it ? hôm nay đẹp trời đấy chứ ?
She found it hard to believe cô ấy thấy khó thể tin
If I had my way... giá tôi có quyền
to have one's way được làm theo ý
to be to do with có liên quan, dính liu tới
to be engaged = to be busy bận

PROPER NAMES

Carmichael /kaː maɪkl/
Gillian /gɪlɪən ; dʒɪ-/
Maurice /'mɔːrɪs/
St. Alfred /'seɪnt 'ælfrɪd/

USAGE Notice this

1. Superlative + of + its kind type

Ex : The best of its kind
The most + long adj. + of its kind type

2. **be proud of somebody /something** (tự hào về ai, điều gì)
   → to take pride in something/somebody
   → be proud of oneself (tự hào)
3. **Set fire to something**
   - Set something on fire
     Set something afire
     Set something aflame
   - Start a fire
     build a fire
     Put out a fire
     Extinguish a fire
4. **Stay away from class (= play truant)** (trốn học)
5. **Look forward to + V-ing : "to" here is a preposition**
6. **Spend + amount of time + V-ing**

Ex : 1. Boris Pasternak spent 25 years meditating on his novel - Doctor Zhivago.
2. We spent two hours repairing our car.

GRAMMAR NOTES

Sentences

S + V + it	+ Adjective/ Noun adverbial phrase	+ to-infinitive

Ex : 1. I find *it hard to believe* in what she said last week.
2. We consider *it our interest to send* more aids to the underdeveloping countries.
3. They think *it important to emphasize* the need for greater co-operation with them (hợp tác)

Gillian felt slightly uneasy as the porter unlocked the gates and waved her through. St Alfred's Hospital was not an ordinary mental institution. It was the most exclusive institution of its type in the country. You had to be not only mentally ill, but also extremely wealthy to be accepted as a patient. She parked her car outside the main entrance of the imposing eighteenth century building. She paused on the steps to look at the superb ornamental gardens and surrounding parkland. An old man in a white panama hat was watering the flowerbed beside the steps. He smiled at her.

Gillian cảm thấy hơi thiếu tự tin một chút khi người gác cổng mở cổng và vẫy cô ta vào. Bệnh viện St Alfred không phải là một bệnh viện tâm thần bình thường mà là một bệnh viện kén bệnh nhân nhất trong số những cái cùng loại trong xứ này. Người bệnh không chỉ là người điên không thôi, mà phải hết sức giàu có mới được nhập viện. Cô ta đậu xe ngoài cổng chính của một cao ốc đồ sộ đời thế kỷ 18. Cô dừng lại trên những bậc thang để ngắm nhìn các vườn cây cảnh tuyệt vời và bãi cỏ xanh chung quanh. Một ông già đội nón lá rộng vành đang tưới những luống hoa bên những bậc thang. Ông ta mỉm cười với cô.

Old man Good afternoon, miss. A lovely day, isn't it ?

Gillian Yes, it certainly is.

Old man Are you a new patient ?

Gillian Oh, I'm not a patient. I'm just here to do some research.

Old man Will you be staying long ?

Gillian I really don't know. I wonder if you could direct me to Dr Carmichael's office ?

Old man Certainly, miss. Just go through the main door, turn left, walk down to the end of the corridor, and it's the last door on the right.

Gillian Thank you very much indeed.

Ông già : Xin chào cô. Hôm nay trời đẹp quá, phải không ?

Gillian : Vâng, đúng vậy.

Ông già : Cô là bệnh nhân mới nhập viện à?

Gillian : Cháu không phải là bệnh nhân. Cháu đến đây để làm công tác nghiên cứu.

Ông già : Cô có ở lại đây lâu không ?

Gillian : Cháu cũng không biết nữa. Bác chỉ giúp cho cháu văn phòng của Bác sĩ Carmichael được không ạ?

Ông già : Được chứ. Qua cửa chính, queo trái, đi đến cuối hành lang, vào phòng cuối cùng bên phải.

Gillian : Cám ơn bác nhiều lắm.

Dr Carmichael was waiting for her. He had been looking forward to meeting his new research assistant. He himself had always been interested in the special problems of long-stay patients. Dr Carmichael was very proud of his hospital and she was impressed by the relaxed and informal atmosphere. She spent the mornings interviewing patients, and the afternoons writing up the results of her research in the gardens. Some of the patients were withdrawn

Bác sĩ Carmichael đang chờ cô ta. Ông đang trông tiếp xúc với người trợ lý nghiên cứu mới của mình. Bản thân ông rất quan tâm đến việc nghiên cứu những vấn đề đặc biệt của các bệnh nhân lưu trú lâu dài trong bệnh viện. Bác sĩ Carmichael rất tự hào về bệnh viện của mình và Gillian có ấn tượng sâu sắc về không khí thân mật và thoải mái ở đây. Cô dành buổi sáng tiếp xúc với bệnh nhân và buổi chiều ngồi viết kết quả nghiên cứu trong các khu vườn. Một số bệnh nhân rất trầm lặng và buồn bã, một số khác trông hầu như bình thường. Chỉ có một hai

and depressed, some seemed almost normal. Only one or two had to be kept locked up. She found it hard to believe that all of them had been thought too dangerous to live in normal society. She often saw the old man in the panama hat. He spent most of his time working in the gardens, but he always stopped to speak to her. She found out that his name was Maurice Featherstone. He was a gentle and mild-mannered old fellow, with clear, blue, honest eyes, white hair and a pinkish complexion. He always looked pleased with life. She became particularly curious about him, but Dr Carmichael had never asked her to interview him, and she wondered why. One night, at dinner, she asked about Mr Featherstone.

Dr Carmichael Ah, yes, Maurice. Nice old chap. He's been here longer than anybody.

Gillian What's wrong with him ?

Dr Carmichael Nothing. His family put him here thirty-five years ago. They never come to visit him, but the bills are always paid on time.

Gillian But what had he done ?

Dr Carmichael I'll show you his file. It seems that he burnt down his school when he was seventeen. His family tried to keep the incident quiet. Over the next few years there were a number of mysterious fires in his neighbourhood, but the family did nothing until he tried to set fire to the family mansion. He was in here the next day. Maurice never protested.

Gillian And that was thirty-five years ago !

Dr Carmichael I'm afraid so. If I'd had my way, I'd have let him out years ago.

Gillian But he can't still be dangerous !

Dr Carmichael No. He's had plenty of opportunities. We even let him smoke. If he'd wanted to start a fire, he could have done it at any time.

Gillian was shocked by the story. She became determined to do something about it. She wrote letters to Maurice's family, but never received a reply. He had never been officially certified as insane, and legally, he could leave at any time. Dr Carmichael was easily persuaded to let her talk to Maurice.

người mới phải bị nhốt riêng. Cô thấy khó mà tin rằng tất cả họ đều bị xem là nguy hiểm, không thể sống trong xã hội của những người bình thường. Cô thường thấy ông già đội nón rộng vành. Ông hầu như lúc nào cũng làm việc trong vườn, nhưng mỗi lần thấy cô, ông đều ngừng lại để nói chuyện. Cô biết tên ông ta là Maurice Featherstone. Ông là một người lịch thiệp, đằm tính, có đôi mắt thật thà, xanh trong, tóc bạc và nước da hồng hào. Ông luôn luôn hài lòng với cuộc sống. Gillian trở nên tò mò đặc biệt về ông ta. Nhưng bác sĩ Carmichael chưa bao giờ bảo cô tiếp xúc với ông ta và cô tự hỏi tại sao lại như vậy. Một hôm nọ, sau bữa ăn tối, cô hỏi bác sĩ về ông Featherstone.

Bác sĩ Carmichael : À, phải Maurice, một ông già dễ thương. Ông ta ở đây lâu nhất đấy.

Gillian : Thưa, ông ta làm sao ạ ?

Bs Carmichael : Chẳng làm sao cả. Gia đình ông ta đưa ông ta vào đây cách đây 35 năm. Họ chẳng bao giờ đến thăm ông ta, nhưng luôn trả tiền dưỡng bệnh cho ông ta đúng kỳ hạn.

Gillian : Nhưng ông ta đã làm gì vậy, thưa bác sĩ ?

Bs Carmichael : Để tôi lấy cho cô xem hồ sơ của ông ta. Dường như ông ta đã đốt rụi ngôi trường ông ta theo học năm lên 17 tuổi. Gia đình ông ta cố giấu nhẹm chuyện này đi. Vài năm sau đó có một số vụ hỏa hoạn đầy bí ẩn xảy ra trong vùng, nhưng gia đình ông ấy vẫn không có phản ứng gì cả cho đến một ngày ông ta tìm cách đốt tòa nhà lộng lẫy của chính gia đình. Ngày hôm sau ông ta được đưa đến đây. Maurice không bao giờ phản kháng cả.

Gillian : Và chuyện đó xảy ra cách đây 35 năm rồi !

Bs Carmichael : Đúng vậy. Nếu tôi có quyền tôi đã cho ông ta xuất viện từ nhiều năm trước rồi.

Gillian : Ông ta không lý nào lại còn có thể nguy hiểm.

Bs Carmichael : Đúng vậy. Ông ta có nhiều cơ hội lắm. Chúng tôi còn cho phép ông ta hút thuốc nữa. Nếu ông ta muốn gây hỏa hoạn thì ông ta đã có thể làm bất cứ lúc nào.

Gillian rất xúc động vì câu chuyện này. Cô trở nên quyết tâm phải làm một điều gì đó. Cô viết vài lá thư cho gia đình Maurice, nhưng không hề nhận được hồi âm. Chưa bao giờ trong giấy tờ chính thức người ta xác định là ông ta bị điên và về mặt luật pháp mà nói, ông ta có thể xuất viện bất cứ lúc nào. Bác sĩ Carmichael dễ dàng bị thuyết phục cho phép Gillian tiếp xúc với Maurice.

Gillian Maurice, have you ever thought about leaving this place ?

Maurice No, miss. I'm very happy here. This is my home. And anyway, I've got nowhere to go.

Gillian But wouldn't you like to go into the village sometimes... to walk around, to buy your own tobacco ?

Maurice I've never thought about it, miss. I suppose it would be nice. But I wouldn't want to stay away for long. I've spent twenty years working on this garden. I know every flower and tree. What would happen to them if I weren't here ?

Gillian realized that it would be unkind to make him leave the hospital. However, she found out that the next Saturday was his birthday. She arranged with the staff to give him a party. They wanted it to be a surprise and Dr Carmichael agreed to let him go out for the afternoon. There was a flower show in the village. Maurice left at two o'clock. He seemed quite excited. They expected him to return about four o'clock. The cook had made a birthday cake and the staff had decorated the lounge.

Gillian was standing in the window when she saw him. He was early. He was walking up the drive towards the house, whistling cheerfully. Behind him, above the trees, several thick black columns of smoke were beginning to rise slowly into the clear blue sky.

PRACTICE

The disagreeable manservant, whom I had hoped never to see again, opened the door. There were five expensive cars lounging in the drive, two of them with chauffeurs, and I thought that he looked at my little Fiat 500 with disdain. Then he looked at my suit and I could see that his eyebrows went up. 'What name ?' he asked, though I felt sure that he remembered it well enough. He spoke in English with a bit of a cockney twang, so he had remembered my nationality.

'Jones,' I said.

'Doctor Fischer's engaged.'

'He's expecting me,' I said.

'Doctor Fischer's dining with friends.'

Gillian : Maurice, bác có bao giờ nghĩ đến việc rời bỏ nơi này không ?

Maurice : Không đâu cô à. Ở đây tôi rất hạnh phúc. Đây là nhà của tôi. Hơn nữa, tôi cũng không biết phải đi đâu.

Gillian : Nhưng chẳng lẽ đôi khi bác lại không muốn vào làng chơi sao... đi chơi cho khuây khỏa, đi mua thuốc lá lấy chẳng hạn.

Maurice : Tôi chưa bao giờ nghĩ tới điều đó, cô à. Tôi nghĩ chắc nó cũng vui. Nhưng tôi không muốn ra ngoài lâu. Tôi đã làm việc trong vườn này 20 năm nay rồi. Tôi biết rành từng cành hoa từng gốc cây. Chúng nó sẽ ra sao nếu tôi không có đây ?

Gillian nhận thấy rằng bắt ông ta phải rời bỏ bệnh viện thì thật là tàn nhẫn. Tuy nhiên, cô biết được rằng thứ bảy tới là sinh nhật của ông ta. Cô sắp xếp với nhân viên trong viện để tổ chức một buổi tiệc cho ông ta. Họ muốn đem lại sự bất ngờ và bác sĩ Carmichael đã cho phép ông ta ra ngoài viện chiều hôm đó. Có một chợ hoa trong làng. Maurice rời viện lúc 2 giờ chiều. Ông ta dường như rất phấn khởi. Họ bảo với ông ta trở về viện lúc 4 giờ chiều. Người đầu bếp đã làm xong một chiếc bánh sinh nhật và mọi người đã trang trí xong phòng khách.

Gillian đang đứng bên cửa sổ khi cô thấy ông ta. Ông ta về sớm. Ông ta đang bước trên lối đi về phía ngôi nhà, huýt sáo một cách yêu đời. Phía sau ông ta, trên những ngọn cây, nhiều cột khói đen dày đặc đang bắt đầu từ từ bốc lên trên bầu trời xanh trong.

Gã giúp việc đáng ghét người mà tôi mong không bao giờ nhìn thấy mặt nữa, ra mở cửa. Có 5 chiếc xe sang trọng nằm chắn ở lối vào, 2 chiếc trong số này có tài xế và tôi nghĩ là gã khinh khỉnh nhìn chiếc Fiat 500 nho bé của tôi. Rồi gã nhìn bộ comlê của tôi và tôi có thể thấy là cặp chân mày của gã nhướng lên. "Tên gì ?" gã hỏi, mặc dù tôi biết chắc là gã nhớ kỹ tên tôi. Gã nói tiếng Anh pha một chút giọng của dân khu đông Luân Đôn (khinh). Như vậy hắn đã nhớ quê quán của tôi.

- "Jones", tôi đáp.
- Bác sĩ Fischer bận rồi."
- Ông ấy đang mong tôi đấy, tôi nói.
- Bác sĩ Fischer đang ăn tối với bạn bè.

'I happen to be dining with him myself.'

'Have you an invitation ?'
'Of course I have an invitation.'
'Let me see the card.'
'You can't. I left it at home.'

He scowled at me, but he wasn't confident – I could tell that. I said, 'I don't think Doctor Fischer would be very pleased if there's an empty place at his table. You'd better go and ask him.'
'What did you say your name was ?'
'Jones.'
'Follow me.'
I followed his white coat through the hall and up the stairs. On the landing he turned to me. He said, 'If you've been lying to me... If you weren't invited...' He made a motion with his fists like a boxer sparring.

'What's your name ?' I asked.
'What's that to do with you ?'
'I just want to tell the Doctor how you welcome his friends.'
'Friends,' he said. 'He has no friends. I tell you, if you weren't invited...'

'I am invited.'
We turned the opposite way from the study where I had last seen Doctor Fischer and he flung open a door. 'Mr Jones,' the man grunted and I walked in, and there stood all the Toads looking at me. The men wore dinner jackets and Mrs Montgomery a long dress.
'Come in, Jones,' Doctor Fischer said. 'You can serve dinner as soon as it's ready, Albert.'
The table was laid with crystal glasses which caught the lights of a chandelier overhead: even the soup plates looked expensive. I wondered a little at seeing them there ; it was hardly the season for cold soup.

- Chính tôi cũng tình cờ được ăn tối với ông ấy đây.
- Ông có giấy mời không ?
- Tất nhiên là tôi có thiệp mời.
- Cho tôi xem thiệp nào.
- Không thể được. Tôi bỏ nó ở nhà rồi.

Gã quắc mắt nhìn tôi nhưng hắn không tin – tôi thấy được điều đó. Tôi lên tiếng. "Tôi nghĩ là bác sĩ Fischer sẽ không hài lòng nếu còn chỗ trống trên bàn ông. Tốt hơn anh nên đi hỏi ông ấy đi."
- Anh nói tên anh là gì ?
- Jones.
- Theo tôi.
Tôi đi theo cái áo khoác trắng của gã qua căn phòng lớn và lên lầu. Ở chân thềm cầu thang gã quay sang tôi. Gã nói : - Nếu mà từ này giờ anh nói dối với tôi... Nếu như anh không được mời..." Hắn giơ nắm tay lên giống như võ sĩ quyền Anh đang sẵn sàng thi đấu.
- Anh tên gì ?, tôi hỏi.
- Tên thì có can hệ gì tới anh ?
- Tôi chỉ muốn kể cho bác sĩ nghe cách anh đón tiếp bạn bè của ông.
- Bạn bè à, anh ta nói. Ông ấy không có bạn bè nào cả. Tôi nói cho anh biết, nếu anh không được mời...
- Tôi được mời.
Chúng tôi queo qua lối đối diện với phòng làm việc nơi mà sau rốt tôi thấy được Bác sĩ Fischer và gã mở toang cánh cửa.
- Ông Jones. Gã đàn ông lẩm bẩm và tôi bước vào, cả gia đình nhà ông bác sĩ đứng nhìn tôi. Tất cả đàn ông đều mặc đồ dạ tiệc và Bà Montgomery mặc áo đầm dài.
- Vào đi, Jones. Bác sĩ Fischer nói.
- Anh phục vụ bữa ăn tối này khi mọi thứ xong xuôi nhé, Albert.
Bàn được dọn ly pha lê bắt ánh sáng của ngọn đèn chùm trên đầu . ngay cả đĩa đựng súp cũng có vẻ đắt tiền. Tôi hơi thắc mắc khi thấy mấy cái điều này ở đây vì bây giờ không phải là mùa ăn súp lạnh.

'This is Jones, my son-in-law,' Doctor Fischer said. 'You must excuse his glove. It covers a deformity.'

From Dr Fischer of Geneva, or the Bomb Party, by Graham Greene. Penguin, 1981.

- Đây là Jones, con rể của tôi. Bác sĩ Fischer nói - Xin tất cả bỏ qua cho chiếc găng tay của anh ấy. Nó che đi một khuyết tật ấy mà.

Exercise 1

Find words which mean :

1 having dinner
2 a room used for reading or writing
3 part of the body unnaturally or badly shaped
4 unpleasant and unfriendly
5 spoke in a low, rough way

Bài tập 1

Tìm từ có nghĩa là :

6 opened quickly and forcibly
7 private road to a house
8 a branched, ornamental holder for lights hanging from the ceiling
9 space or passage at the top of a set of stairs from which one enters rooms
10 looked in a bad-tempered way

Exercise 2

1 'Doctor Fischer's engaged.' means
- ☐ **A** he is going to get married.
- ☐ **B** he is busy, so he can't see you.
- ☐ **C** he's in the toilet.

2 'He wasn't confident - I could tell that', means
- ☐ **A** I told him that he wasn't sure of himself.
- ☐ **B** I knew that he didn't know my secret.
- ☐ **C** I saw that he wasn't sure of himself.

3 'He spoke in English with a bit of a cockney twang', means
- ☐ **A** he usually spoke English to someone from London.
- ☐ **B** he spoke with a slight working-class London accent.
- ☐ **C** he spoke English ungrammatically.

4 'He made a motion with his fists like a boxer sparring', means
- ☐ **A** he closed his hands and waved them in a threatening way.
- ☐ **B** he tried to hit me, but just missed.
- ☐ **C** he hit me.

5 'There stood all the Toads looking at me', Jones says this because
- ☐ **A** Mr and Mrs Toad and their children were there.
- ☐ **B** There were several frog-like amphibious creatures, which would be served for dinner.
- ☐ **C** He had given the nickname 'toads' to this group of people because he disliked them.

6 'He looked at my little Fiat 500 with disdain', means
- ☐ **A** he was jealous because I owned a car.
- ☐ **B** he was surprised to see such a small car.
- ☐ **C** he thought my car was worthless and out-of-place.

Bài tập 2

Exercise 3

How might the manservant have finished these sentences ?

If you've been lying to me, I'll .....

If you weren't invited, I'd .....

Bài tập 3

Anh giúp việc hoàn thành các câu này ra sao ?

Unit 40 Holiday USA

Nghỉ mát ở Mỹ

VOCABULARY

- **breadthtaking** *(adj)* /breθ'teɪkɪŋ/ very exciting; spectacular = ngoạn mục, đẹp
  a ~ view, waterfall, mountain ~ range
- **cable car** *(n)* /'keɪbl kɑ:/ car supported and drawn by a moving cable, usu carrying passengers up and down a mountain = xe điện kéo bằng dây cáp
- **crab** *(n)* /kræb/ con cua
- **chain** *(n)* /tʃeɪn/ dây xít, sên
- **character** *(n)* /'kærəktə/ all those features that make a thing, place, an event, etc what it is and different from others = nét, đặc điểm
  The whole ~ of the village has changed since I was last here
- **discount** *(n)* /'dɪskaʊnt/ amount of money taken off the cost of st = sự bớt giảm
  We give (a) 10% ~ for cash.
- **escort** *(n)* /'eskɔ:t/ person or group of people accompanying sb / st to give protection = người hộ tống *The government provided an armed ~ for the visiting head of state.*
- **glamour** *(n)* /'glæmə/ attractive or exciting quality which sb / st has, and which seems out of reach to others = vẻ đẹp quyến rũ
  Now that she's an air hostess, foreign travel has lost its ~ for her.
  glamourous *(adj)* /-mərəs/ full of glamour
  ~ film stars.
- **glitter** *(n)* /'glɪtə/ attractiveness = vẻ lấp lánh, hào nhoáng *the ~ of a show-business career.*
- **infinite** *(adj)* /'ɪnfɪnət/ without limits, endless; that cannot be measured, calculated or imagined = vô hạn, vô kể *a painting restored with ~ care.*
- **lifetime** *(n)* /'laɪftaɪm/ duration of sb's life = cả cuộc đời *In your ~, you must have seen many changes.*
- **lobster** *(n)* /'lɒbstə/ tôm hùm
- **logical** *(adj)* /'lɒdʒɪkl/ in accordance with what seems reasonable or natural = hợp lý
  It seemed the only ~ thing to do.

EXPRESSIONS :

Can you see yourself doing this ?
in their late/ early twenties .
We took it in turns to drive

- **movie-industry** *(n)* /'mu:vɪ 'ɪndəstrɪ/ kỹ nghệ điện ảnh
- **optional** *(adj)* /'ɒpʃənl/ that may be chosen or not; not compulsory = tùy ý chọn *~ subjects at school.*
- **pre-pay** *(v)* /prɪ'peɪ/ pay in advance = trả trước
- **razzmatazz** *(n)* /ˌræzmə'tæz/ (infml) glamour and excitement; extravagant publicity = nơi phung phí, hào nhoáng *all the ~ of showbiz.*
- **resort town** *(n)* /rɪ'zɔ:t taʊn/ town for holiday makers = thành phố nghỉ mát
- **spectacular** *(adj)* /spek'tækjulə/ making a very fine display or show = ngoạn mục
  a ~ display of fireworks.
- **starting point** *(n)* /'stɑ:tɪŋ pɔɪnt/ place or point from which st begins = điểm khởi đầu
  We'll take this as the ~ for our discussion.
- **steeple** *(n)* /'sti:pl/ tall tower with a spire on top, rising above the roof of a church = tháp chuông
- **supply** *(v)* /sə'plaɪ/ ~ st (to sb); ~ sb (with st) give sb st what is needed or useful; provide
  ~ consumers with gas, electricity.
  supply *(n) a contract for the ~ of office stationery*
- **unbelievable** *(adj)* /ʌnbɪ'li:vəbl/ that cannot be believed; astonishing = không tin được
  ~ expense, skill, luck.
- **unforgetable** *(adj)* /ʌnfə'getəbl/ (esp approv) that cannot be easily forgotten; memorable.
  an ~ scene, experience.
- **variety** *(n)* /və'raɪətɪ/ quality of not being the same = đa dạng, phong phú *a life full of change and ~. We all need ~ in our diet.*
- **voucher** *(n)* /'vaʊtʃə/ receipt; document showing that money has been paid for goods, services, etc received = biên lai đã trả tiền để đổi hàng hoặc dịch vụ gì đó.
- **well-equipped** *(adj)* /wel ɪ'kwɪpt/ trang bị tốt
- **wild flower** *(n)* /waɪld 'flaʊə/ flowers growing in natural conditions = hoa dại

Bạn có thể hình dung mình đang làm điều này không ?
những năm cuối/đầu lứa tuổi 20
thay phiên nhau lái

On the whole — nói chung, toàn bộ, nhìn chung
Generally speaking... — nói chung
the town is set in the Nevada desert. — thành phố nằm ở sa mạc Nevada
It's a must for anyone with children — đó là điều bắt buộc với bất cứ ai cùng đi với trẻ con

PROPER NAMES

Beverly Hills	/'bevəli 'hilz/	Las Vegas	/'la:s 'vi:gəs/
Carmel	/'ka:məl/	Los Angeles	/lɒs 'ændʒili:z/
California	/ˌkæli'fɔ:njə/	Mark	/ma:k/
Disneyland	/'diznilænd/	Matthew	/'mæθju:/
Emma Austin	/'emə 'ɔ:stn/	Montery	/'mɒntɔri/
Grand Canyon	/'grænd 'kænjən/	Polly Winthrop	/'pɔ:li 'winθrɒp/
Golden Gate Bridge	/'gəʊldn 'geit 'bridʒ/	San Francisco	/'sæn frən'siskəu/
Golden West	/'gəʊldn 'west/	Vera Drake	/'verədreik/

USAGE

1. In their | late / early / mid | twenties: 27 → 29 / 20 → 23 / 24 → 26

Notice this

2. Go on | a business trip / a pleasure trip / a journey / a tour / an excursion / a sight seeing tour / an expedition | (to)

3. The States = The United States of America
4. Take turns doing something
   to do something = thay phiên làm cái gì
5. It is a good idea to spend our holidays in the countryside.

GRAMMAR NOTES

If only

1. *If only... would* (ước gì) means the same as *I wish* to express a wish for sb to do st, or for st to happen, but it can be stronger, more emphatic.
EX: We don't know a thing. *If only* they'd tell us what's happening.
2. *If only* with a past-tense verb expresses a wish for the present situation to be different.
EX: *If only* I was a bit taller, then I could reach the shelf.
3. If we want to be more formal, we use *were* in all persons.
EX: If only Jane *were* here....
4. We cannot use *would* in this sentence but we can use *could*:
EX: I feel so helpless. If only I *could* speak the language
5. *If only* with the *past perfect* to express a wish about the past: (Phải chi mà)
EX: *If only* we *hadn't had* a puncture, we would have arrived in time.

Transatlantic Airways

The Golden West 14 days San Francisco 6 nights Las Vegas 2 nights Los Angeles 6 nights

Can you see yourself riding a cable-car in San Francisco, eating fresh crab and lobster at Fisherman's Wharf, winning a fortune in the casinos of Las Vegas or walking with the stars

Hàng không xuyên Đại Tây dương

14 ngày ở miền Tây hoang kim – 6 đêm ở San Francisco – 2 đêm ở Las Vegas – 6 đêm ở Los Angeles.

Bạn có thể hình dung mình đang đi trên xe điện treo ở San Francisco, ăn cua và tôm hùm tươi rói ở Bến tàu Fisherman, thắng bạc được cả một gia tài ở Las Vegas

along Hollywood Boulevard ? Transatlantic Airways invite you to spend two unforgettable weeks in the cities of California and Nevada and enjoy the glitter and the glamour of the Golden West.

Every city has it own character – San Francisco with the Golden Gate Bridge, Chinatown, cable-cars climbing up the steep hills, restaurants serving food from every country in the world. You'll be offered tours to see the scenery of Monterey and Carmel, and the breathtaking views from the Pacific Coast Highway.

Then you join in the razzamatazz of Las Vegas, the gambling capital of the world, set in the Nevada Desert. Las Vegas never sleeps and the entertainment is the finest in the world. And from Las Vegas there's an optional flight over the spectacular Grand Canyon.

Finally you arrive in Los Angeles, home of the movie industry. Sunset Strip, Beverly Hills and Hollywood all wait to welcome you. You'll be able to choose any number of excursions – the wonderful world of Disneyland, Universal Film Studios or even a shopping trip to Mexico.

This exciting three-centre tour offers you a golden opportunity to experience the special atmosphere of the Golden West.

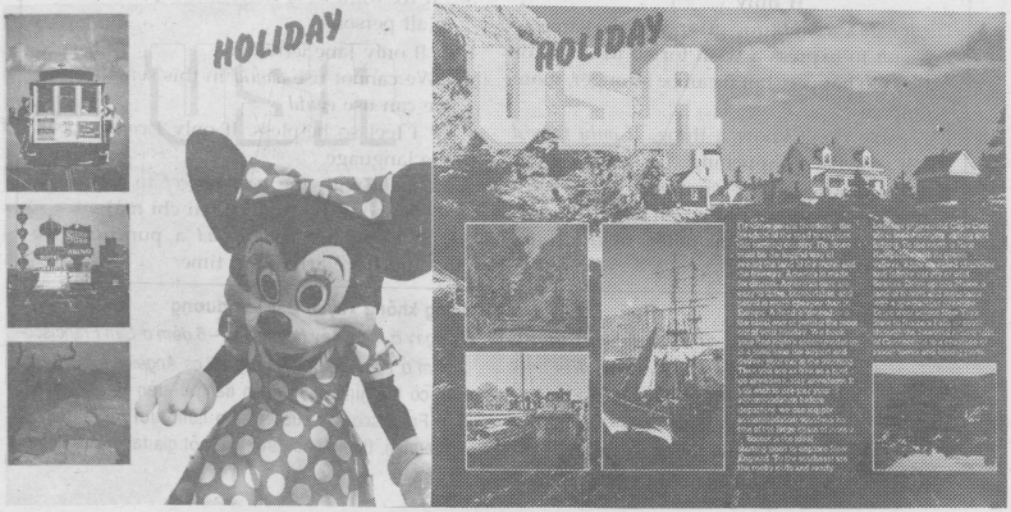
hoặc đi dạo bên các ngôi sao điện ảnh dọc theo Đại lộ Holywood được không ? Hãng hàng không xuyên Đại tây dương mời bạn trải qua 2 tuần không thể nào quên viếng thăm các thành phố của bang Carlifornia và bang Nevada, và tham quan sự hào nhoáng rực rỡ của miền Tây hoang kim.

Mỗi thành phố có sự hấp dẫn riêng – San Francisco với cầu treo Kim Môn, Chinatown, xe điện treo chạy lên những đồi dốc, những tiệm ăn phục vụ các món ăn từ mọi miền trên thế giới. Bạn sẽ được phục vụ các chuyến tham quan phong cảnh Monterey và Carmel và những cảnh ngoạn mục từ xa lộ dọc bờ biển Thái Bình Dương.

Rồi sau đó bạn sẽ hội nhập vào sự nhộn nhịp hào nhoáng của Las Vegas, kinh đô cờ bạc thế giới, nằm giữa sa mạc Nevada. Las Vegas không bao giờ ngủ và sinh hoạt giải trí ở đây là tốt nhất trên thế giới. Từ Las Vegas, nếu bạn thích, bạn sẽ được phục vụ một chuyến bay bay qua đại vực đầy ngoạn mục.

Cuối cùng bạn về đến Los Angeles, kinh đô của công nghiệp điện ảnh. Sunset Strip, Beverly Hills và Holywood thảy đều chờ đợi để tiếp đón bạn. Bạn sẽ được chọn các cuộc đi du ngoạn – đi xem thế giới kỳ diệu của khu Disneyland, phim trường Universal hoặc thậm chí cả một chuyến đi mua sắm ở Mexico nữa.

Chuyến đi hấp dẫn ghé qua 3 trung tâm này đem đến cho bạn một dịp may bằng vàng để nếm trải hương vị đặc biệt của miền Tây hoang kim.



Mark and Emma Austin are a young couple in their late twenties. Emma was interviewed about the holiday.

'On the whole we enjoyed it very much, but it was pretty tiring. We went on most of the excursions, because we didn't want to miss anything. We really felt we needed more time. If we went again, we'd stay longer. We would have spent more time in San Francisco and less time in Los Angeles if we'd known more about the cities. Los Angeles was a bit disappointing. We went on a tour of Beverly Hills to see the 'houses of the stars'. Unless you'd studied film history, you would never have heard of most of them ! Generally speaking, the hotels, food and service were excellent. We found Americans particularly friendly. We probably took too much luggage. Clothes in the States were so cheap ! It would have been a good idea to take empty suitcases ! If we'd done that, the savings on clothes would almost have paid for the air fare !'

Jack and Vera Drake are a retired couple. Jack was asked about the holiday.

"We'd been looking forward to this trip for years, and it was the holiday of a lifetime. I think we liked Las Vegas most, but two nights were probably enough ! If we'd stayed there much longer, we'd have lost all our money ! We saw Tom Jones at the Desert Inn. I've never seen anything like that place ! Disneyland is a 'must' for anyone with children. If only we'd had our grandchildren with us ! They would have loved it ! We went on some of the excursions, and we could have gone on more, but you can't see everything, can you ? I didn't think much of American beer, but Californian wine was a nice surprise. We wouldn't have chosen this tour unless it had been escorted. We're both in our seventies and we couldn't have managed on our own. Everybody was so helpful to us !'

Transatlantic Airways

East Coast fly-drive from Boston

Fly-drive means freedom – the freedom of the road to explore this exciting country. Fly-drive

Mark và Emma Austin là một đôi vợ chồng trẻ gần ba mươi tuổi. Emma đang được hỏi về chuyến đi nghỉ vừa rồi.

"Nói chung chúng tôi thích chuyến đi này lắm, nhưng nó hơi mệt. Chúng tôi tham gia hầu hết các cuộc du ngoạn vì không muốn bỏ sót thứ gì cả. Chúng tôi thật sự cảm thấy là cần phải có nhiều thời gian hơn nữa. Nếu chúng tôi đi lần nữa thì chúng tôi sẽ ở lại lâu hơn. Chúng tôi sẽ ở lại lâu hơn ở San Francisco và ít ngày hơn ở Los Angeles giá như chúng tôi đã biết rõ hơn về các nơi này. Los Angeles làm chúng tôi hơi thất vọng. Chúng tôi tham dự một cuộc tham quan Beverly Hills để xem các căn nhà của những ngôi sao. Nếu như bạn không có nghiên cứu trước lịch sử phim ảnh, bạn sẽ không bao giờ nghe nói đến hầu hết những nơi này. Nói chung, khách sạn, thức ăn và phục vụ đều tuyệt vời. Chúng tôi nhận thấy người Mỹ đặc biệt dễ mến. Có lẽ chúng tôi đã đem theo quá nhiều hành lý. Áo quần ở Mỹ thật là rẻ. Nếu đem theo các vali trống không hẳn là tốt hơn nhiều. Nếu chúng tôi làm vậy thì tiền tiết kiệm được về khoản quần áo cũng gần như đủ trả tiền vé máy bay !

Jack và Vega Drake là một cặp vợ chồng đã về hưu. Jack được hỏi về chuyến đi.

"Chúng tôi đã chờ mong chuyến đi này hàng nhiều năm nay, và đây là chuyến đi nghỉ của cả một đời người. Tôi cho là chúng tôi thích Las Vegas nhất, nhưng hai đêm kể ra cũng đủ rồi ! Nếu chúng tôi ở lại đó lâu hơn chắc là chúng tôi mất sạch tiền quá. Chúng tôi đã gặp ca sĩ Tom Jones ở quán Desert. Tôi chưa từng thấy nơi nào như vậy! Còn Disneyland là một nơi không thể bỏ qua cho bất cứ ai đi với trẻ con. Giá mà lúi tôi đi với bầy cháu ! Chúng sẽ thích lắm. Chúng tôi tham gia một số chuyến du ngoạn, và có thể đã tham gia nhiều hơn, nhưng làm sao xem được mọi thứ, phải không nào ? Tôi không thích bia Mỹ lắm, nhưng rượu vang California thật đáng làm cho chúng ta ngạc nhiên. Nếu không có người hướng dẫn thì hẳn là chúng tôi đã không chọn cuộc đi này rồi. Cả tôi và bà nhà đều ngoài 70 tuổi và chúng tôi không thể đi một mình được. Mọi người đều hết lòng giúp đỡ chúng tôi !

Hãng hàng không xuyên Đại tây dương

Du lịch bằng máy bay – xe hơi tới bờ biển phía Đông từ Boston.

Du lịch bằng máy bay – xe hơi có nghĩa là tự do – tự do lái xe bất cứ nơi đâu để khám phá xứ sở hấp dẫn này.

must be the logical way of seeing the land of the motel and the freeway. America is made for drivers. American cars are easy to drive, comfortable and petrol is much cheaper than in Europe. A flexible timetable is the ideal way of getting the most out of your holiday. We book your first night's accommodation in a hotel near the airport and deliver your car in the morning. Then you are as free as a bird - go anywhere, stay anywhere. If you wish to pre-pay your accommodation before departure, we can supply accommodation vouchers for one of the large chain of motels.

Du lịch bằng máy bay-xe hơi có lẽ là cách hợp lý nhất để tham quan xứ sở của mô-ten và đường cao tốc. Nước Mỹ là nơi lý tưởng cho người lái xe hơi. Xe Mỹ dễ lái, tiện nghi và xăng thì rẻ hơn nhiều so với ở châu Âu. Một thời biểu linh động là cách lý tưởng nhất để tận hưởng kỳ nghỉ của bạn. Chúng tôi đặt trước phòng nghỉ cho đêm đầu tiên của bạn ở một khách sạn gần phi trường và đem xe hơi đến cho bạn sang hôm sau. Rồi thì bạn sẽ tự do như chim trời – đi đâu tùy ý, ở đâu tùy ý. Nếu bạn muốn trả tiền chỗ ở trước chuyến đi, chúng tôi có thể cấp biên nhận đã trả tiền chỗ ở trước rồi cho một trong những hệ thống mô-ten rộng lớn.

Boston is the ideal starting-point to explore New England. To the southeast are the rocky cliffs and sandy beaches of beautiful Cape Cod, ideal for swimming, sailing and fishing. To the north is New Hampshire with its green valleys, white steepled churches and infinite variety of wild flowers. Drive up into Maine, a land of forests and mountains with a spectacular coastline. Drive west across New York State to Niagara Falls or south through the beautiful rolling hills of Connecticut to a coastline of resort towns and fishing ports.

Boston là nơi phát xuất lý tưởng để khám phá miền New England[1]. Về phía đông nam là các bờ đá và các bãi biển đầy cát thuộc mũi Cod xinh đẹp, lý tưởng để bơi lội, đi thuyền và câu cá. Về phía Bắc là New Hampshire với những thung lũng xanh tươi, những nhà thờ có gác chuông trắng và thảm hoa dại bất tận. Lái xe lên Maine, bạn sẽ thấy một miền đất đầy rừng núi với bờ biển tuyệt đẹp. Hãy lái xe về phía tây qua Bang New York đến thác Niagara hay về phía nam qua những ngọn đồi nhấp nhô xinh đẹp xứ Connecticut đến bờ biển của các thị trấn nghỉ mát và các cảng đánh cá.

Matthew and Polly Winthrop took their two children on the fly-drive holiday. Polly's talking about it.

'We'd never have gone fly-drive unless we'd had the kids with us. Matthew is a bus-driver and it wasn't much of a holiday for him ! But I think it's the only way to travel with young children. The distances were much greater than we had imagined. If we had another holiday in the States, we wouldn't try to drive so far. I think we'd cover the longer distances by plane, and then hire a different car in each place. The motels were very well equipped and the children were always made welcome. The motels didn't have much character, but when you're touring you just need somewhere to sleep. Every room had TV; for us that was

Matthew và Polly Winthrop cùng đi với 2 con trong một chuyến du lịch máy bay – xe hơi. Polly đang kể về chuyến đi này.

"Chúng tôi hẳn đã không đi du lịch bằng máy bay – xe hơi nếu như chúng tôi không có bọn trẻ đi theo. Matthew là tài xế xe buýt thành ra dịp này anh ấy cũng chẳng có mấy cảm giác là mình đang đi nghỉ. Nhưng tôi cho rằng đây là cách duy nhất để mà đi du lịch có con nhỏ đi theo. Đường xa hơn chúng tôi tưởng rất nhiều. Nếu chúng tôi lại đi nghỉ mát ở Mỹ nữa chúng tôi sẽ không lái xe hơi xa như vậy đâu. Tôi nghĩ là chúng tôi sẽ bay qua các chặng đường dài bằng máy bay rồi thuê ở mỗi nơi một chiếc xe. Các mô-ten được trang bị rất tốt và người ta tiếp mấy đứa bé tốt lắm. Các mô-ten không có nét đặc trưng gì nhiều, nhưng đúng ra khi đi du lịch thì bạn cũng chỉ cần có nơi nào đó để ngã lưng thôi. Mỗi phòng đều có TV, đối với chúng tôi vậy là tuyệt vời lắm. Nếu không có TV

(1) Miền New England ở Mỹ bao gồm các bang MAINE, NEW HAMPSHIRE, VERMONT, MASSACHUSSETTS, CONNECTICUT và ROHODE ISLAND.

marvellous. We wouldn't have been able to leave the children if there hadn't been a TV in the room. We would never have left them alone for too long of course, but it was nice for us to go down to the bar for a drink. New England was absolutely fantastic and we'd recommend it to anyone !'

Ian and Chris are in their early twenties. Chris spoke about their holiday.

'It was really great. We took it in turns to drive, so the distances didn't seem too long. American cars are tremendous. They're so big. One night we couldn't find a motel, and we slept in the car. We bought loads of records and clothes. If we'd bought them in England, they'd have cost twice as much. We went in the autumn, they'd call it 'fall' in the States, and the colours on the trees in New England were unbelievable ! We wouldn't have chosen this holiday unless we'd liked driving. You spend a lot of time in the car. We intend to go again next year, but we'll go to Miami or San Francisco, if we can afford it !'

thì chúng tôi chẳng tài nào khỏi bị mấy đứa trẻ bám theo riết. Dĩ nhiên là chúng tôi cũng không rời xa con cái quá lâu, nhưng chúng tôi cảm thấy sung sướng được cùng nhau xuống quán rượu để uống đôi chút. Vùng New England hoàn toàn tuyệt vời, và chúng tôi muốn giới thiệu nó với mọi người".

Ian Và Chris mới ngoài 20. Chris đang nói về kỳ đi nghỉ của họ.

"Thật là tuyệt. Chúng tôi thay nhau lái xe, vì vậy đường không có vẻ xa lắm. Xe hơi Mỹ lớn khủng khiếp. Có một đêm chúng tôi không kiếm ra mô-ten, thế là chúng tôi ngủ luôn trong xe. Chúng tôi mua hàng đống đĩa hát và quần áo. Nếu mà mua ở Anh thì những thứ này phải giá gấp đôi. Chúng tôi đi vào mùa thu, bên Mỹ gọi là "fall", và màu sắc trên cây cối miền New England đẹp không tả nổi ! Chúng tôi đã không chọn kỳ nghỉ này nếu chúng tôi không thích lái xe. Các bạn có rất nhiều thời gian ngồi sau tay lái. Chúng tôi dự định đi lần nữa vào năm tới, nhưng kỳ này sẽ đi Miami hay San Francisco, nếu mà chúng tôi có đủ tiền !

PRACTICE

Language summary

Unless you'd studied film history, you would never have heard of them.
We'd never have gone fly-drive unless we'd had the kids with us.
If only (we'd had our grandchildren with us !)

Exercise 1

Look at the example, and complete the table.

Bài tập 1

Xem thí dụ rồi hoàn thành bảng sau đây :

I'll do it if I have the time.	*I would do it if I had the time.*	*I would have done it if I had had the time.*
If I see her, I'll tell her. Nếu tôi gặp chị ấy, tôi sẽ nói chị ấy nghe.	.....	.....
If she doesn't try, she won't succeed. Nếu chị ấy không cố gắng, chị ấy sẽ không thành công.	.....	.....

Will you do it if I ask you ? Anh sẽ làm việc đó nếu tôi nhờ anh không ?	.....	.....
.....	I'd buy it if you gave me a discount. Tôi sẽ mua món này nếu anh giảm giá cho tôi.	.....
.....	.....	If I had been ill, I would have stayed at home. Giá như tôi ốm tôi đã ở nhà.
.....	If I knew the answer, I would tell him. Giá mà tôi biết câu trả lời, tôi sẽ nói hắn nghe.	.....
What will you do if the bus doesn't come ? Bạn sẽ làm gì nếu xe buýt không đến?	.....	.....
.....	.....	I would have been sorry if she had left. Tôi sẽ buồn lắm giá như cô ấy ra đi.
.....	I wouldn't stay in this job if I could find another one. Tôi không làm việc này giá như tôi tìm được công việc nào khác.	.....
.....	They would get wet if it rained. Nếu trời đổ mưa họ sẽ bị ướt.	.....
.....	.....	Would he have passed if he had studied hard ? Giá như nó học chăm chỉ thì nó thi đậu không ?
It won't bite you unless you move. Nó sẽ không cắn anh nếu anh đừng cử động.	.....	.....
.....	.....	We wouldn't have gone out unless it had stopped snowing. Giá như tuyết vẫn rơi thì chúng tôi đã không đi chơi.

....	He wouldn't marry her unless she were rich. Hắn sẽ không cưới cô ta nếu như cô ta không giàu.	....
Will you pay him if he does it ? Anh sẽ trả tiền cho hắn nếu hắn làm việc đó không ?	....	....

Exercise 2

Complete these sentences.

Bài tập 2

Hoàn thành các câu sau đây :

1 He wouldn't have jumped if .....
2 You'll never learn English unless .....
3 If you don't stop smoking .....
4 If you go to the casino .....
5 If I were Prime Minister .....
6 If I could go anywhere in the world .....
7 I would never forgive you if .....
8 If I'd seen the price ticket .....
9 I wouldn't have lent him the money if .....
10 If you don't practise .....
11 I'll kill you if .....
12 Unless it's a nice day .....
13 She wouldn't have bought it unless .....
14 If he'd known the police car was behind him .....
15 She wouldn't have married him unless .....
16 You would earn more money if .....
17 I wouldn't go unless .....
18 I wouldn't have believed him if .....
19 If I had three months holiday .....
20 I wouldn't have done this exercise unless .....

PROVERBS

- A great ship asks deep waters = Lớn thuyền lớn sóng.
- A miss is as good as a mile = Sai một ly đi một dặm.
- A sound mind in a sound body = Một tinh thần minh mẫn trong một thân thể khỏe mạnh.
- A tale never loses in the telling = Tam sao thất bổn.
- A useful trade is a mind of gold = Nhất nghệ tinh nhất thân vinh.

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Units 37-40

Dialogue A

Listen

Richard Good evening. Welcome to 'Tonight at Six'. In the studio with us tonight we have Rosa Daniels. I'm sure Rosa needs no introduction. Most of us have seen her wildlife programmes on television, and many of us have read her best-selling book 'Daniels among the Lions'. Her new book, 'Africa, my Africa' was published last week. Rosa, it's nice to have you here.

Rosa It's nice to be here, Richard.

Richard Your new book is full of exciting true stories. Could you, tell us one now ?

Rosa Yes, Richard. This one happened three years ago. I was in Mandanga during the famous drought. It hadn't rained for months, and animals were dying everywhere.

Richard Yes, I remember.

Rosa I'd been driving across the Mandanga Game Reserve... alone. I'd stopped for the night and was sleeping next to my jeep. I woke up suddenly and three female lions were standing there... staring at me. They all looked starving. Probably they hadn't eaten for days.

Richard What on earth did you do ?

Rosa What would you have done ?

Richard Me ? I would have died of fright, I think !

Listen and repeat (from 'it's nice to have you here'.)

New words

- drought *(n)* /draut/ continuous dry weather esp when there is not enough water for people's need = nạn hạn hán
- fright *(n)* /fraɪt/ = feeling of sudden unpleasant fear = nỗi sợ hãi

A1 Listen

A : Had it rained recently ?
B : No, it hadn't rained for months.
C : No, it hadn't rained for months.
A : Had she been driving with someone ?
B : No, she'd been driving alone.
C : No, she'd been driving alone.

A2 Listen

A : What did you do ?
B : What would you have done?
C : What would you have done?
A : Where did you go ?
B : Where would you have gone?
C : Where would you have gone?

Now you do the same

Had it rained recently ?.....No, it hadn't rained for months.
Had she been driving with someone ?
.....No, she'd been driving alone.
Had she stopped for lunch ?
.....No, she'd stopped for the night.
Had the lions eaten recently ?
.....No, they hadn't eaten for days.

Now you do the same

What did you do ?.....What would you have done ?
Where did you go ?.....Where would you have gone ?
What did you say ?.....What would you have said ?
Who did you call ?.....Who would you have called ?

Dialogue B

Listen

Richard Anyway Rosa, what did you do ?

Rosa I didn't move. If I had moved, they would have attacked me. I'm sure of that.

Richard And the lions ? What did they do ?

Rosa They began moving forward, very slowly. Lions aren't usually dangerous to people. If they hadn't been hungry, I wouldn't have been afraid.

Richard Wouldn't you ?

Rosa Well... not so much.

Listen and repeat

B1 Listen

A : I didn't move. They didn't attack me.
B : If I had moved, they would have attacked me.
C : If I had moved, they would have attacked me.

A : I didn't panic. They didn't jump at me.
B : If I had panicked, they would have jumped at me.
C : If I had panicked, they would have jumped at me.

B2 Listen
A : They were hungry. I was afraid.
B : If they hadn't been hungry, I wouldn't have been afraid.
C : If they hadn't been hungry, I wouldn't have been afraid.

A : There were three lions. I was terrified.
B : If there hadn't been three lions, I wouldn't have been terrified.
C : If there hadn't been three lions, I wouldn't have been terrified.

Now you do the same
I didn't move. They didn't attack me
.....If I had moved, they would have attacked me.
I didn't panic. They didn't jump at me
.....If I had panicked, they would have jumped at me.
They didn't attack me. I didn't scream
.....If they had attacked me, I would have screamed.
They didn't move quickly. I didn't run
.....If they had moved quickly, I would have run.
Now you do the same
They were hungry. I was afraid
.....If they hadn't been hungry, I wouldn't have been afraid.
There were three lions. I was terrified.....If there hadn't been three lions, I wouldn't have been terrified.
They were wild. I was scared.....If they hadn't been wild, I wouldn't have been scared.
I was alone. I was frightened.....If I hadn't been alone, I wouldn't have been frightened.

Dialogue C

Listen
Richard Did you have a gun, Rosa ?
Rosa It was in the jeep. If I'd thought about it, I'd've slept with it. But you don't always think, you know.
Richard Could you have reached it ?
Rosa Not really. They were very close, you see. Also, even if I'd had the gun, I probably wouldn't've used it. I've always been very fond of lions.
Richard Couldn't you have fired into the air ? It would have frightened them away, perhaps.
Rosa I suppose so, but I didn't.
Listen and repeat

C1 Listen
A : I didn't think about it, I didn't sleep with it.
B : If I'd thought about it, I'd've slept with it.
C : If I'd thought about it, I'd've slept with it.

A : I didn't have time. I didn't get the gun.
B : If I'd had time, I'd've got the gun.
C : If I'd had time, I'd've got the gun.

Now you do the same
I didn't think about it. I didn't sleep with it
..... If I'd thought about it, I'd've slept with it.
I didn't have time. I didn't get the gun
..... If I'd had time, I'd've got the gun.
I didn't remember. I didn't try to get it
..... If I'd remembered, I'd've tried to get it.
I wasn't near. I didn't try to reach it
..... If I'd been near, I'd've tried to reach it.

C2 Listen

A : I didn't have it, and I didn't use it.

B : Even if I'd had it, I wouldn't've used it.

C : Even if I'd had it, I wouldn't've used it.

A : I didn't have any bullets and I didn't kill them.

B : Even if I'd had bullets, I wouldn't've killed them.

C : Even if I'd had bullets, I wouldn't've killed them.

Now you do the same

I didn't have it and I didn't use it

..... Even if I'd had it, I wouldn't've used it.

I didn't have any bullets and I didn't kill them

..... Even if I'd had bullets, I wouldn't've killed them.

They didn't try to kill me. I didn't try to kill them

.....Even if they'd tried to kill me, I wouldn't've tried to kill the

They didn't hurt me. I didn't hurt them

.....Even if they'd hurt me, I wouldn't've hurt them.

Dialogue D

Listen

Rosa Suddenly one moved forward. It stood right over me. I saw its teeth centimetres from my nose... then it put out its tongue, and it licked me !

Richard Licked you ? Tasting you, perhaps ?

Rosa Then it began purring. I put out my hand... I touched it. Then I saw the scar on its face. It was Sheba.

Richard Sheba ?

Rosa I had rescued her from a hunter when she was just a cub... 5 years back. I looked after her for two years, and then released her. She was very hungry that day, but she didn't harm me.

Richard That's amazing... absolutely amazing !

Rosa I wouldn't have believed it myself unless I'd been there... really. The point is, if only I'd known it was Sheba ! I wouldn't have so many grey hairs now.

New words

- lick *(v)* /lɪk/ pass the tongue over something = liếm
- purr *(v)* /pɜː(r)/ = make a low continuous vibrating sound = gừ gừ
- cub *(n)* /kʌb/ young lion
- release *(v)* /rɪ'liːs/ set free; liberate st / sb = thả ra

Listen and repeat

D1

Listen

A : I believe it. I was there.

B : I wouldn't have believed it unless I'd been there.

C : I wouldn't have believed it unless I'd been there.

A : I know it. I saw it.

B : I wouldn't have known it unless I'd seen it.

C : I wouldn't have known it unless I'd seen it.

Now you do the same

I believe it. I was there.....I wouldn't have believed it unless I'd been there.

I know it. I saw it.....I wouldn't have known it unless I'd seen it.

I understand it. He explained it.....I wouldn't have understood it unless he'd explained it.

I learn it. I worked hard .....I wouldn't have learn it unless I'd worked hard.

D2 Listen

A : Actually, it was a friendly lion.

B : If only I'd known !

C : If only I'd known !

A : Really, there was no danger.

B : If only I'd known !

C : If only I'd known !

Now you do the same

Actually, it was a friendly lion.....If only I'd known !

Really, there was no danger.....If only I'd known !

Honestly, I was quite safe.....If only I'd known !

Actually, it was harmless .....If only I'd known !

Listening

Listen

Yesterday there was a serious accident on the M1 Motorway in England. Fifty-seven cars and lorries crashed, one after the other. Eight people were killed and nearly forty taken to hospital. Listen to one of the drivers.

'The fog... yes, it was very foggy indeed. That's one of the main reasons for the accident. Everybody was driving too fast, that's the other one. The old story... a car had broken down and stopped on the motorway. A van hit it, a car hit the van, a truck hit the car and it just went on and on and on. I was pretty lucky. I stopped in time, but the car behind me didn't. It pushed my car into the one in front. I'm OK... fine, just a bit shaken up. I could've been badly hurt. I was lucky... but I was wearing my seat belt. I always do. I got out of the car... just in time, because a huge truck crashed into it. Phew... there was nothing left of the car... absolutely nothing.'

Would it have happened if it hadn't been foggy ?..... No, if it hadn't been foggy, it wouldn't have happened.
Would it have happened if people hadn't been driving fast ?..... No, if people hadn't been driving fast, it wouldn't have happened.
Would it have happened if a car hadn't broken down ?..... No, if a car hadn't broken down, it wouldn't have happened.
What would have happened to him if he hadn't been wearing a seat belt ?.....
If he hadn't been wearing a seat belt, he would have been badly hurt.
What would have happened to him if he hadn't jumped out of his car ?.....If he hadn't jumped out of his car, he would have been killed.

Listen to the driver again, then answer the questions.

That's the end of section ten.

COMMON ABBREVIATIONS. (Những từ viết tắt thông dụng trong tiếng Anh)

AD	Anno Domini	= Trước Công nguyên
AIDS	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome	= Bệnh hội chứng suy giảm miễn dịch mắc phải (SIDA)
A.M	Ante Meridiem	= Sáng
ASEAN	Association of Southeast Nation	= Hiệp hội các nước Đông Nam Á
BA	Bachelor of Arts	= Cử nhân khoa học xã hội
BBC	British Broadcasting Corporation	= Đài phát thanh Anh quốc

Learning Points from Unit 21 to Unit 40

Unit 21 :

1. Speculating about the present (2)
   They *must / may / might / can't be doing* it
   - She's probably / possibly doing it.
2. Have + nouns
   - to have a row / a good time / a party / a look

Unit 22 :

1. Obligations – Duties – Preferences
   - He *should / shouldn't be doing it.*
   - They *ought to / ought not to / are supposed to / are not supposed to be doing* it.
   - They *would rather/ would rather not/ had better not be doing* it.

Unit 23 :

1. Reading comprehension from a formal text.
2. Listening for specific information.
3. - by + V-ing
   They navigate *by using* the sun.

Unit 24 :

1. Past tenses
2. Reported speech
3. Question tags

Unit 25 :

- Speculating about the past (1)
- It *must / could / may (not) / might (not) / can't / couldn't have been* him / her / them.
- He / She / They *must / could / may (not) / might (not) / can't / couldn't have done it.*

Unit 26 :

1. Complaining (1)
2. Revision of Modal Perfect structures.

Unit 27 :

1. Complaining (2)
2. Modal Perfect structures
   He *should/ shouldn't / ought to / ought not to have done* it.

Unit 28 : Revision Points

1. Nationalities
2. Past tenses + past passives
   They *were given* money for doing it.

Unit 29 :

1. Speculating about the past (2)
   They *must / could / may / might / might even / couldn't / can't / should / shouldn't have been doing* it
2. Infinitive of purpose
   He jumped in *to save* the others.
   They launched a boat *to rescue* them.
3. He killed himself after *throwing* the bodies into the sea.

Unit 30 : Speculating about the past and present
Revision of Units 20-29, contrasting :

He	must	be	crazy
She	could	have been	at home
They	may	be doing	something
It	might	have done	
	might even	have been doing	
	can't		
	couldn't		

Unit 31 : Apologies and Accepting apologies.

Unit 32 : Verb + –ing form compared with verb + infinitive
stop / remember *doing*
stop / remember / forget *to do*

Unit 33 : Reading comprehension from notes

Unit 34 : - Conditional sentences – type 1 with *unless.*
If you do this, I'll do that.
If you don't do this, I'll do that.
Unless you do this, I'll do that.
- Revision of conditional sentences – type 2 with *If I were...*

Unit 35 :

1. Revision = conditional sentences – type 1 to contrast with conditional sentences – type 2
2. Introduction of *unless* with type 2 conditionals
   If you did this, I'd do that.
   If you didn't do this, I wouldn't do that.
   Unless you did this, I wouldn't do that.

Unit 36 :

1. Revision : conditional sentences – type 1 and type 2 with *if not* and *unless.*
2. begin *by doing*
3. instead *of doing*

Unit 37 :

- *Would* you *have said* anything ?
- What *would* you *have done* ?
  I'd *have said / done* something.
  I *wouldn't have done* anything.

Unit 38 : Conditional sentences – type 3.
If I / he / they *had done* this,
I / he / they *would have done* that.

Unit 39 : Revision and consolidation.

Unit 40 : Extension of conditional sentences (type 3) with *unless* and *if only.*

- Unless you'*d studied* film history, you *would* never *have heard* of them.
- We'*d never have gone* fly-drive unless we'*d had* the kids with us.
- *If only* we'd had our grandchildren with us !

TEST 2 UNITS 21-40

SECTION 1

Put a ring around the best word or phrase to complete the sentence.

1. Jack ! What are you doing in the pub ? You *(should / had better / supposed / 're supposed)* to be working this morning !
2. Excuse me.. that's my newspaper ! I am terribly sorry. I thought someone had left in there. I didn't *(mind / mean / realize / matter)* it was yours.
3. He phoned *(for / to / and / because)* tell her about the party.
4. *(If / If not / Unless / Even if)* they don't increase my salary, I'll look for another job.
5. Ow ! Ouch ! you idiot ! I think you've broken my foot. I *(ever so / really / terribly / awfully)* am very sorry. I'm not a terribly good dancer, am I ?
6. Were you out this morning ? I phoned and there was no reply. That's funny. I was at home. I must *(have put / put / have been putting / had been putting)* out the washing in the garden.
7. If I *(would have / have / would / had)* had time, I would have done it for you.
8. He was sent to prison for *(have robbed / robbed / to rob / robbing)* a bank.
9. It's a secret. You'd better *(have / make / do / keep)* it quiet !
10. Steve, don't I see you at the concert last night? It *(may not / mightn't / mustn't / couldn't)* have been me. I was at home.
11. If I *(won / would win / will win / win)* a lot of money, I'd never work again.
12. The phone's ringing, but nobody's answering. Really ?
    Oh, they're *(must / possible / probably / certain)* at lunch.
13. The captain of the winning team was *(received / given / gave / present)* the cup by the Queen.
14. They won the championship after *(scoring / score / scored / had scored)* three goals in ten minutes.
15. The accident was his fault. He *(shouldn't / oughtn't / mustn't / isn't supposed)* have been driving so fast.
16. You'd better not do it, *(hadn't you ? / wouldn't you ? / would you ? / had you ?)*
17. Her English won't improve unless she *(will practise / practises / will be practising / would practise)*.
18. If someone had been holding the bottom of the ladder, he wouldn't *(have been falling / fall / have fallen / be falling)* off.
19. He stopped *(from writing / to write / write / writing)* to answer the phone.
20. A man came into my shop yesterday. He looked very much like Prince Charles. It *(can't / might / must / possibly)* even have been him !

Mark : Out of : 10

SECTION 2

Read the conversation carefully and complete the spaces.

Jeff has just arrived at Heathrow Airport. He's collected his luggage and he's going through Customs now.

Customs Officer Excuse me, sir. Would you . . . . . coming over here ?
Jeff Who ? Me ?
Customs Officer That's right. Could you put your case on the table, please ?
Jeff Certainly.
Customs Officer Now, do you mind . . . . . I look in your case ?
Jeff . . . . . at all.
Customs Officer Then . . . . . I have the keys ?
Jeff The keys ?
Customs Officer The keys . . . . . open the case. Thank you. If you have anything to declare, I . . . . . you to declare it now.
Jeff I've only got the usual allowances.
Customs Officer Mmm, hmm. There's . . . . . to worry about in here. I'm . . . . . to delay you, but can I just look at your hand luggage ?
Jeff You aren't going to . . . . . me open that too, are you ? I've got a train to catch !
Customs Officer I'm afraid so. Let . . . . . just have a quick look. That's all right. You can go through now.

Mark : Out of : 10

SECTION 3

Read the passage below and put the verbs in brackets in the correct form :
do / to do / doing.

e.g. *I like* **doing** (do) *crossword puzzles.*

I was still at college at the time. During the summer holiday I got a job in a department store. I worked in the 'Goods Inward and Dispatch' department. I had ..... (load) and unload lorries which delivered and collected goods. Sometimes we were very busy, and we couldn't even manage ..... (stop) for a cup of tea. On other days there was hardly any work ..... (do). Then we'd get bored with ..... (sit) around. We weren't allowed ..... (leave) the department, and of course they wouldn't let us .... (read) books or listen to the radio. The foreman always said that we ought ..... (look) busy in case the bosses came to check us ! They never did. There were two or three lads of my age who were ..... (work) there at the same time. We used ..... (sit) and chat most of the time. There was a lift which was used for ..... (carry) heavy boxes up to the sales floors, and we often spent our time ..... (go) up and down in it, just for fun. When I think back nowadays, I really quite enjoyed ..... (be) there. There wasn't much pressure. Now I've got an office job and occasionally, when I get tired of ..... (smile) and being polite, and wearing a suit and tie, I remember that job. Sometimes I think I'd rather ..... (work) there. Perhaps it was a job without much future, but when you left work you could ..... (forget) all about it.

Mark : Out of : 15

SECTION 4

Read this passage.

ALL SYSTEMS GO ! SUCCESSFUL SPACE LAUNCH AT CAPE KENNEDY.

The latest American spacecraft, Apolo XXVII was launched from Cape Kennedy at 06.00 hours Eastern Standard Time this morning. The crew of three, Colonel Daniel J. Dare, Major Lemmy Alder and Captain James Kirkwall, spoke to mission control in Houston and described their view of the Earth. 'This is one small jump for three men', said Colonel Dare, 'but one huge jump for mankind". By Friday the spaceship will be in lunar orbit at the end of its epic, 250,000 mile journey. The astronauts' jobs in orbit include making observations of the lunar surface and preparing the lunar module for its descent to the surface on Saturday afternoon. It is expected to reach the surface by 17.00 Eastern Standard Time on Saturday. The astronauts are expected to land somewhere in the Pacific on the 16th of June at the end of their half million mile journey.

Use the phrases below and write three sentences with **will have (done)**; *and two with* **will be (doing)** :

1. By Friday .....
2. On Friday .....
3. On Friday .....
4. By 17.00 on Saturday afternoon .....
5. By the 13th of June .....

Mark : Out of : 5

TOTAL MARKS :
Section 1 .....
Section 2 .....
Section 3 .....
Section 4 .....

TOTAL = ... x 2 = ... %.

Unit 41 Food For Thought

Những ý tưởng để suy gẫm

VOCABULARY

- **ant** *(n)* /ænt/ con kiến
- **banquet** *(n)* /'bæŋkwɪt/ elaborate formal meal, usu for a special event, at which speeches are often made = tiệc chiêu đãi
  a wedding ~.
  banquet *(v)* 1. give a ~ for (sb)
  2. take part in a ~.
- **beauty** *(n)* /'bju:tɪ/ combination of qualities that give pleasure to the senses (esp to the eye or ear) or to the mind = cái đẹp
- **brain** *(n)* /breɪn/ organ of the body that controls thought, memory and feeling, consisting of a mass of soft grey matter inside the head = bộ óc
  The ~ is the centre of the nervous system.
- **brew** *(v)* /bru:/ 1. ~ st (up) = prepare a hot drink (esp tea) by mixing leaves, etc with boiling water = pha trà *We ~ ed (up) a nice pot of tea.* 2. (esp to tea) become brewed = trà ra thơm *There's (a pot of) tea brewing in the kitchen.*
- **camel** *(n)* /'kæml/ con lạc đà
- **crisp** *(adj)* /krɪsp/ (esp of food) hard, dry and easily broken = dòn *a ~ biscuit; ~ pastry, toast, etc.*
- **current** *(adj)* /'kʌrənt/ of the present time; happening now = hiện hành
  ~ issues, problems, prices.
  currently *(adv)* at the present time
  our director, who is ~ in London.
- **drain** *(v)* /dreɪn/ ~ (st) (from st); ~ (st) (away / off) cause liquid to flow away = tháo, trút nước ra *The mechanic ~ ed all the oil from the engine.*
- **drought - stricken** *(adj)* /draut 'strɪkn/ facing a period of continuous dry weather, esp when there is not enough water for people's needs = bị hạn hán *~ areas.*
- **eccentric** *(adj)* /ɪk'sentrɪk/ (of people, behaviour) unusual; peculiar; not conventional or normal = lập dị *his ~ habits; an ~ old lady.*
  eccentric *(n)* = eccentric person. *The club seemed to be full of ~ s.*
  eccentricity /ˌeksen'trɪsətɪ/ = strangeness of behaviour *~ of style, clothing, manners, ideas.*
- **enormously** *(adv)* /ɪ'nɔ:məslɪ/ to a very great extent = lớn lao *~ rich; My tastes have changed ~ over the years.*
  enormous *(adj)* /ɪ'nɔ:məs/ = very large, immense *an ~ amount of money; an ~ house.*
- **garlic** *(n)* /'gɑ:lɪk/ tỏi
- **horsemeat** *(n)* /'hɔ:smi:t/ thịt ngựa
- **ingredient** *(n)* /ɪn'gri:dɪənt/ any of the foods that are combined to make a particular dish = thành phần, phần hợp thành *the ~ s of a cake. Mix all the ~ s in a bowl.*
- **jellied** *(adj)* /'dʒelɪd/ được nấu đông lại
- **kangaroo** *(n)* /kæŋgə'ru:/ con kanguru, con đại thử, chuột túi
- **mash** *(v)* /mæʃ/ ~ st (up)=beat or crush st into a mash *~ ed potatoes, turnips, etc. Mash the fruit up (with a fork) so that the baby can eat it.*
- **minced** *(adj)* /mɪnst/ xay, băm nhuyễn
- **nourishing** *(adj)* /'nʌrɪʃɪŋ/ bổ dưỡng
  nourish *(v)* /'nʌrɪʃ/ keep (a person, an animal or a plant) alive and well with food. *Well ~ nourished / undernourished children.*
  nourishment *(n)* food *obtain ~ from the soil.*
- **nutritions** *(adj)* /nju:'trɪʃəs/ = nourishing = bổ dưỡng *a ~ meal, snack, etc*
  nutrition *(n)* = nourishment, food
  adequate ~ of the body
  nutritionist *(n)* /-ʃənɪst/ expert in nutrition
- **ovenproof dish** *(n)* /'ʌvnpru:f dɪʃ/ heatproof dish that can be used for cooking food in an oven = đĩa cách nhiệt
- **overweight** *(adj)* /ˌəʊvə'weɪt/ (of people) too heavy; fat *an ~ child. I'm ~ by 2 kg according to my doctor.*
- **petal** *(n)* /'petl/ cánh hoa
- **plentiful** *(adj)* /'plentɪfl/ in large quantities or numbers; abundant = nhiều, dồi dào
  Eggs are ~ at the moment.
- **proverb** *(n)* /'prɒvɜ:b/ short well-known saying that states a general truth or gives advice = tục ngữ
- **pudding** *(n)* /'pʊdɪŋ/ bánh pudding
- **range** *(n)* /reɪndʒ/ group of similar things; selection or variety = loại, sự đa dạng

The new model comes in an exciting ~ of colours.

- **recipe** *(n)* /'resəpi/ ~ (for st) = set of instructions for preparing a food dish, including the ingredients required = công thức
  ~ books, cards.
- **scarce** *(adj)* /skeəs/ not often found; rare = hiếm *This book is now ~.*
  scarcity *(n)* /'skeəsəti/ *The ~ of food forced prices up.*
- **seaweed** *(n)* /'si:wi:d/ rong biển
- **shark fin** *(n)* /ʃa:k fin/ vi cá mập
- **slimming** *(n)* /'slimiŋ/ việc làm cho gầy đi
  slim *(v)* /slim/ eat less, take exercise, etc in order to lose weight and become slim.
  trying to get fit and ~ (down)
  slimmer *(n)* person who is slimming
  a slimmers' magazine = ie one that gives advice on how to slim.
  slimness *(n)*
- **snail** *(n)* /sneil/ ốc sên
- **songbird** *(n)* /'sɔŋbə:d/ birds noted for its musical cry = chim hót
  Blackbirds and thrushes are ~s.
  (sáo) (chim kết)
- **stock** *(n)* /stɔk/ type of garden plant with single or double brightly coloured and sweet-smelling flowers = hương liệu
- **taboo** *(n)* /tə'bu:/ ban or prohibition on st that is regarded for religious or other reasons as not to be done, touched, used, etc. = sự cấm kỵ
  taboo *(adj)* prohibited by a taboo *Sex is no longer the ~ subject it used to be.*
  taboo words = words likely to be considered offensive, shocking by certain people.
- **tripe** *(n)* /traip/ bao tử bò
- **underweight** *(adj)* /ʌndə'weit/ below the usual, legal or stated weight = thiếu cân
  You are only slightly ~ for your height.
- **vigorously** *(adv)* /'vigərəsli/ mạnh mẽ
  Shake sb's hands ~.
  vigorous *(adj)* 1. strong, active or energetic
  avoid ~ exercise, exertion.
  2. using forceful language
  ~ debate, criticism.
- **whirl** *(v)* /wə:l/ cause st to move quickly round and round = lắc, xoay *The wind ~ ed (up) the fallen leaves.*
- **yoghurt** *(n)* /'jɔgət/ yaourt, sữa chua

USAGE :

1. Food for thought : khiến cho suy ngẫm
Ex : The fact that more and more children commit crimes nowadays is really our food for thought.
* food for fishes (to become) : làm mồi cho cá, chết đuối
* food for worms : chết, làm bạn với giun dế
* food for powder : làm bia đỡ bạn, bia thịt
2. to differ from one place to another : không nơi nào giống nơi nào
Ex : The possibilities of geting jobs differ from one region to another in our country.
To differ (v)/ difference (n)/ different (adj)/ differently (adv)
3. To be prepared to do something = To be willing to do something
Ex : The world would be much better if people were prepared to help one another.

GRAMMAR NOTES :

"Eating carrots is good for the eyes".
"Eating carrots" is one kind of noun phrase that is used as the subject of this sentence.
* Some formations of noun phrase (Gerundial phrase, in this case)
1. **Gerund + object** : *Eating* carrot is good for the eyes (transitive verb)
2. **Gerund + adverb and/or prepositional phrase** (intransitive verb)
Getting up early in the morning is a good habit
3. **Gerund + Complement** (to be, linking, verbs...) :
Some people say that *becoming* teachers means poverty.
* Find those sentences in the text in which gerundial phrases are used as sentence subject. Give some more examples.

* Can a clause be used as a sentence subject ? Give some examples with your teacher's help.
* Because a gerund phrase does the work of a noun, it can be the subject of a verb, object of a preposition, complement of a verb.

Ex :1. **As an object** : He has appreciated my doing that difficult task
2. **As an object of a preposition** : He is very sorry for his coming late
3. **As a subject complement** : The only thing she could do now is waiting for him to return.

"One man's meat is another man's poison."
English proverb.

There is a wide range of nutritious foods in the world. However, eating habits differ from country to country. In some societies certain foods are taboo. An eccentric millionaire once invited guests from several countries to a banquet and offered them this menu. All the foods are popular in some parts of the world, but are not eaten in others.

"Món ăn ngon của người này là thuốc độc của người kia".
Tục ngữ Anh.

Có rất nhiều loại thực phẩm giàu dinh dưỡng trên thế giới. Tuy nhiên tập quán về ăn uống khác nhau từ nước này đến nước kia. Ở một số xã hội các thức ăn nào đó là những thứ cấm kỵ. Một lần nọ có một nhà triệu phú lập dị đã mời khách từ một số nước đến dự tiệc và trao cho họ thực đơn dưới đây. Tất cả những món ăn này phổ biến ở một vài nơi trên thế giới, nhưng ở một số nơi khác người ta lại không ăn chúng.

STARTERS	
Snails	100-year-old eggs
Frogs' legs	Tripe (cow's stomach)
Pigs' feet	Black pudding (made from blood)
Shellfish	
Caviare	

SOUPS
Bird's nest soup
Shark fin soup
Sea-weed soup

FISH
Octopus
Jellied eels

MAIN COURSES	
Brains	Whale
Whole stuffed camel	Roast dog
Grilled songbirds	Pork
Roast snake	Beef
Bat stew	Lamb
Horsemeat	Veal
Kangaroo	

DESSERT
Chocolate-covered ants
Salad of flower petals

KHAI VỊ	
Ốc sên	Hột vịt bắc thảo
Bùi ếch	Bao tử bò
Chân heo	Tiết canh (làm bằng máu)
Sò	
Trứng cá Caviar	

SÚP
Súp tổ chim
Súp vây cá mập
Súp rong biển

CÁ
Bạch tuộc
Lươn nấu đông

MÓN ĂN-CHÍNH	
Óc	Cá voi
Lạc đà nhồi	Chó rô ti
Chim nướng vỉ	Thịt heo
Rắn rô-ti	Thịt bò
Dơi hầm	Thịt cừu
Thịt ngựa	Thịt bê
Kan gu ru	

TRÁNG MIỆNG
Kiến bọc Sô cô la
Cánh hoa trộn.

If you had been there, which items could you have eaten ? Which items would you have eaten? Which items couldn't you have eaten ? Why not? Do you know which countries they are popular in ? Would you eat them, if you were starving? What unusual things are eaten in your country? Has your country got a national dish? How do you make it ?

"Part of the secret of success in life is to eat what you like, and let the food fight it out inside you."
Mark Twain.

Here are some common ideas about food :
Eating carrots is good for the eyes.
Fish is good for the brain.
Eating cheese at night makes you dream.
Garlic stops you getting colds.
Drinking coffee stops you sleeping.
Yoghurt makes you healthy.
An apple a day keeps the doctor away.
A hot milky drink helps you go to sleep.
A cup of tea revives you.
Guinness is good for you.
Crusty bread makes your hair curl.
Brown eggs taste better than white ones.
Have you heard similar expressions ?
Do you agree or disagree with them ?

"More die in the United States of too much food than too little."
J. K. Galbraith.

At different times in different countries there have been different ideas of beauty. The rich would always want to look fat in a society where food was scarce and to look thin in a society where food was plentiful. The current interest in slimming is because of fashion as well as health. However, overeating causes a variety of illnesses.

Do you know what they are ? Are you overweight/average/underweight ? Does it worry you ? Have you ever been on a diet ? What did you eat ? What foods should you eat if you want to lose weight ? What should you eat if you want to put on weight ?

"One should eat to live, not live to eat."

Molière.

Giả sử bạn đã có mặt ở buổi tiệc hôm đó thì có thể bạn đã ăn món nào ? Sẽ có thể ăn món nào ? Món ăn nào có thể bạn đã không ăn ? Tại sao không ? Bạn có biết những món ăn này phổ biến ở những nước nào không ? Giả sử như bạn đói gần chết thì bạn có ăn chúng không? Ở nước bạn những món ăn nào được xem là khác thường? Có một món ăn nào đặc trưng cho nước bạn hay không? Bạn nấu nướng món ấy ra sao ?

"Một phần bí mật của sự thành công trong cuộc sống là ăn những gì bạn thích và để thức ăn đó tự điều tiết trong cơ thể mình".
Văn hào Mark Twain

Dưới đây là một số ý kiến thông thường về thực phẩm :
Ăn cà rốt thì bổ mắt
Cá bổ óc
Ăn phô mát ban đêm làm bạn ngủ nằm mơ
Tỏi giúp bạn tránh cảm
Uống cà phê làm bạn mất ngủ
Yaourt làm bạn khỏe mạnh
Mỗi ngày ăn một quả táo thì bạn khỏi đi bác sĩ
Sữa nóng giúp bạn dễ ngủ
Một tách trà làm bạn sảng khoái
Bia GUINNESS (một loại bia nâu nặng) thì tốt cho bạn
Bánh mì dòn làm tóc bạn quăn
Trứng nâu ăn ngon hơn trứng trắng.
Bạn có nghe những thành ngữ tương tự như thế không ?
Bạn đồng ý hay không đồng ý ?

Ở nước Mỹ nhiều người chết vì ăn quá nhiều hơn là ăn quá ít".
J. K. Galbraith.

Vào những thời điểm khác nhau, ở nhiều nước khác nhau người ta có những ý kiến khác nhau về cái đẹp. Người giàu luôn luôn muốn trông đầy đà ở một xã hội khan hiếm thực phẩm và trông mảnh mai ở một xã hội mà thực phẩm luôn dồi dào – Xu hướng hiện thời là muốn gầy đi vì mốt cũng như vì sức khỏe. Tuy nhiên, ăn quá mức gây ra nhiều loại bệnh.

Bạn có biết những loại bệnh này là những bệnh gì không? Bạn nặng quá cân/ trung bình/ thiếu cân ? Điều đó có làm cho bạn lo không ? Bạn có bao giờ ăn kiêng chưa ? Bạn ăn những món gì ? Bạn sẽ ăn những món gì nếu bạn muốn sút cân ? Ăn những món gì nếu bạn muốn lên cân?

"Người ta ăn để mà sống, chứ không phải sống để mà ăn".
Molière.

"When we consume a large steak we are eating something that may have used up enough grain to keep a family in the drought-stricken areas of Africa for a week."

Kenneth Mellanby, Can Britain Feed Itself?

"Year by year, while the world's population has increased, the food supply has increased more. (But)... supplies of nourishing food could be enormously increased if, in the richer countries of the world, people were prepared to eat some of the food they feed to their pigs and cattle... and to their pet dogs and cats."

Dr Magnus Pyke, Hunger and Humanity

"Khi chúng ta tiêu thụ một miếng bít-tết lớn thì cũng có thể nói chúng ta đang ăn một cái gì đó đã ngốn hết một lượng ngũ cốc đủ để nuôi sống một gia đình trong những vùng hạn hán ở châu Phi trong một tuần.

Kenneth Mellanby, Can Britain Feed Itself ?
(Nước Anh có tự nuôi sống mình được hay không?)

"Năm này qua năm khác trong khi dân số thế giới gia tăng, nguồn cung cấp thực phẩm lại tăng hơn nữa (nhưng)... các nguồn cung cấp thực phẩm bổ dưỡng có thể tăng vọt lên nữa nếu, trong những nước giàu có của thế giới, người ta sẵn sàng ăn một ít thực phẩm mà họ dành để nuôi heo và trâu bò... cũng như dành để nuôi thú cưng – chó và mèo".

Tiến sĩ Magnus Pyke, Hunger and Humanity
(Nạn đói và Nhân loại)

PRACTICE

Exercise 1

Read these instructions for making a traditional English cup of tea, and number them 1-6 in the correct order.

Bài tập 1

Đọc các hướng dẫn cách pha một tách trà Anh truyền thống rồi sắp xếp theo thứ tự từ 1 đến 6.

Exercise 2

Read the recipe for Shepherd's Pie. Write out a recipe from your region or country in the same way.

Bài tập 2

Đọc công thức làm bánh nhân Shepherd. Viết một công thức của vùng bạn hay xứ bạn theo cách tương tự.

SHEPHERD'S PIE

For 4 (people)

Ingredients

- 500g potatoes
- salt and pepper
- 1 tablespoon milk
- 15g butter
- 1 onion, chopped
- cooking oil or fat
- 1 teaspoon mixed herbs
- 500g minced beef or lamb
- 200ml beef stock

Cook the potatoes in boiling salted water for 20 minutes. Drain. Mash with the milk, butter and salt and pepper. Heat the oil or fat in a saucepan and fry the onion gently until softened (5 minutes). Stir in the minced meat and allow it to brown. Add herbs, stock and salt and pepper. Put mixture in an ovenproof dish .Spread the potato on top. Bake in an oven pre-heated to 180°C for 30 minutes. Remove. Place under a hot grill until the top is crisp and brown.

Exercise 3

Make a list of twenty items (not food or drink) which you might find in a kitchen.

1 .....
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....
7 .....
8 .....
9 .....
10 .....

Bài tập 3

Liệt kê 20 món (không phải là thức ăn hay thức uống) mà bạn có thể thấy ở nhà bếp.

11 .....
12 .....
13 .....
14 .....
15 .....
16 .....
17 .....
18 .....
19 .....
20 .....

Exercise 4

You have been offered a four course meal. You can have anything you want. Write out the menu you would choose.

1st course .....
2nd course .....

Bài tập 4

Bạn được mời dùng bữa ăn gồm 4 món. Bạn có thể dùng bất cứ món gì bạn thích. Viết ra bản thực đơn bạn sẽ chọn.

3rd course .....
4th course .....

Exercise 5

Ask a friend these questions, and write down his/her answers.

1 What time do you usually have
   A breakfast ? .....
   B lunch ? .....
   C your evening meal ? .....
2 Which is your biggest meal of the day?
   .....

Bài tập 5

Hỏi một người bạn những câu hỏi này và viết ra các câu trả lời của anh/ chị ấy.

3 Do you ever have snacks between meals ? .....
4 Is there anything that you really cannot eat or drink ? .....
   .....
5 What's your favourite food ?
   .....

Exercise 6

Make a list of *everything* that you ate and drank yesterday. Compare your list with a friend's list.

Bài tập 6

Kê ra *tất cả những thứ* bạn ăn và uống ngày hôm qua. So sánh bản kê khai của bạn với bản khai của một người bạn.

COMMON ABBREVIATIONS.

BS	Bachelor of Science	- Cử nhân khoa học tự nhiên
CIA	Central Intelligence Agency	- Cục tình báo trung ương Mỹ
CIS	Commonwealth of Independent Stages	- Cộng đồng các quốc gia độc lập (SNG)

Unit 42 I Wish... Tôi ước...

VOCABULARY

- **chauffer – driven** *(adj)* /'ʃəʊfə drɪvn/ driven by a driver = có tài xế lái
- **cocoa** *(n)* /'kəʊ kəʊ/ ca cao
- **double yellow line** *(n)* /dʌbl 'jeləʊ laɪn/ vạch vàng, chỗ cấm đậu xe
- **pour** *(v)* /pɔ:/ flow, esp downwards, in a continuous stream = rót ra *I knocked over the bucket and the water ~ ed (out) all over the floor.*

EXPRESSIONS :

get soaked /get səʊkt/ ướt sũng
I know what you mean Tôi hiểu ý anh muốn nói gì
You know what they say Anh biết điều người ta thường nói
pouring with rain mưa như trút nước
end up as a cleaner làm nghề quét dọn
the grass is always greener on the other side of the hill đứng núi này trông núi nọ
It can't be bad không thể nào tệ đâu

PROPER NAMES:

Alan	/'ælən/	Mannering	/'mænərɪŋ/
Diane	/daɪ'æn/	Paula	/'pɔ:lə/
James	/dʒeɪmz/	Shirley	/'ʃɜ:lɪ/
Joan	/dʒəʊn/	Tony	/'təʊnɪ/
Lorraine	/lɒ'reɪn/		

USAGE

1/ To end up : finish.

EX : 1. Despite his efforts, he has *ended* up in poverty.
2. If he had not left school so early, he would not *have ended up* as a porter.

2/ Wish + to infinitive : I wish *to see* her soon
Wish + object + to infinitive : I wish *her to return* home soon
("Wish" here means "would like")

To wish sb/st on sb else : transfer him/it to someone (bad meaning) It's terrible they wish *their children on us* for the weekend.
Khủng khiếp thật, họ muốn tống mấy đứa con cho ta trông cuối tuần này.

GRAMMAR NOTES

"To wish" is used to indicate something that definitely did not happen or will not happen, something that is similar to a contrary to fact or unreal condition.

Future wish : Subject + wish + (that) + subject + would/ could + verb

Ex :1. I wish I *could come* to the party tonight (I can't come)
2. She wishes that he *would stop* telling nonsense (he probably won't stop).

Present wish : S + wish + (that) + S + simple past tense.

Ex : He wishes he *had* enough time to finish this homework (He doesn't have enough time)
They wish that she *were* old enough to go with them (she is not old enough)

Past wish : S + wish + (that) + subject + past perfect
(or could have + past participle)

Ex :1. I wish that I *had washed* the clothes yesterday (I didn't wash the clothes)

2. She wishes that her husband *could have been* there (he could not be there)

Pick up any sentences in the text that have the same formations as those mentioned above, and give some more examples of your own.

Notes :

1. "That" maybe omitted in "wish clauses"
2. Subject can be the same or different
3. Nowadays in present English, esp, in formal English : "was" can be used in stead of "were" for the 3 rd person.

Mr Mannering J. C. Mannering.

Secretary Your call from New York's on line one, sir. Paris has just come through on line two and I've got a call from Tokyo on line four.

Mr Mannering Ask them to ring back tomorrow, Judy. Tell them... tell them I'm not here. It's far too late. I wish I wasn't here. I've had enough today.

Secretary But sir, they're urgent, all of them.

Mr Mannering Do you know something, Judy? I wish I was at home now, in front of the television with a cup of cocoa !

Paula Look at that ! It's pouring with rain again, and I've got to walk to the station.

Diane Typical British weather !

Paula It's all right for old Mannering. His Rolls-Royce is downstairs waiting to take him home.

Diane Mmm. I wish I had a chauffeur-driven Rolls.

Paula I wish I had a car, any car. I'm going to get soaked tonight !

Tony Hello, James. Still here ?

James Yes. I'm waiting to see Mr Mannering.

Tony You don't usually work in the evenings.

James I wish I wasn't working this evening. There's a good concert on.

Tony Oh well. Perhaps he'll call you soon.

James I hope he does !

Ông Mannering : J. C. Mannering

Thư ký : Thưa ông có điện từ New York ở máy một. Vừa mới liên lạc được với Paris ở máy hai và tôi có nhận được điện từ Tokyo ở máy bốn.

Ô. M : Cô yêu cầu họ hãy gọi lại vào ngày mai, Judy. Hãy bảo họ... bảo họ là tôi không có ở đây. Trễ quá rồi. Ước gì tôi không có mặt ở đây. Ngày hôm nay như thế là đủ rồi.

T. K : Nhưng thưa ông, tất cả đều là điện khẩn.

Ô. M : Cô có biết điều này không, Judy ? Ước gì giờ này tôi có mặt ở nhà, ngồi trước máy truyền hình với một tách ca cao !

Paula : Nhìn kìa ! Trời lại mưa xối xả và tôi phải đi bộ đến trạm xe buýt.

Diana : Đúng là thời tiết nước Anh !

P : Điều đó có ảnh hưởng gì đến lão Mannering đâu. Xe Rolls-Royce của lão đang chờ sẵn ở bên dưới để đón lão về nhà.

D : Chà ! Ước gì tôi có một chiếc Rolls – Royce có tài xế lái.

P : Ước gì tôi có xe hơi, loại nào cũng được. Tối nay thế nào tôi cũng bị ướt !

Tony : Chào James, vẫn còn ở đây à ?

James : Ừ, tôi đang đợi ông Mannering.

T : Thường bạn không làm việc vào buổi tối mà.

J : Ước gì tối nay tôi không làm việc. Có hòa nhạc rất hay.

T : Ồ, được thôi ! Có lẽ ông ta sẽ gọi bạn ngay bây giờ thôi.

J : Hy vọng là như thế.

Alan Haven't you finished yet ?

Lorraine No. I wish I had. I can't go until I've completed this report.

Alan Can't you do it tomorrow ?

Lorraine I wish I could, but Mannering wants it tonight.

Alan : Đã xong chưa ?

Lorraine : Chưa. Ước gì đã xong. Chừng nào xong bản báo cáo này thì tôi mới về được.

A : Ngày mai làm không được sao ?

L : Ước gì như vậy, nhưng Mannering muốn nó tối nay.

Shirley Evening, Joan.

Joan Evening, Shirley. I don't feel like working tonight.

Shirley Neither do I. I hate this kind of work.

Joan Why do you do it then ?

Shirley I wish I didn't have to ! But we need the money. My husband's out of work again.

Joan I know what you mean. I wish I'd learnt to type, or something like that.

Shirley We can all wish ! I left school at fourteen. I wish I hadn't, but there was no choice in those days. Youngsters have so many opportunities nowadays. I wish we'd had the chances. I'd never have ended up as a cleaner.

Joan Come on Shirley, let's have a cup of tea.

Shirley : Chào Joan

Joan : Chào Shirley. Tối nay tôi không cảm thấy hứng làm việc.

S : Tôi cũng không. Tôi ghét loại công việc như thế này.

J : Vậy tại sao chị lại làm ?

S : Ước gì tôi khỏi phải làm ! Nhưng chúng tôi cần tiền. Chồng tôi lại thất nghiệp.

J : Tôi hiểu ý chị. Ước gì tôi đã học đánh máy, hay cái gì đó như thế.

S : Tất cả chúng ta đều ao ước ! Tôi bỏ học năm 14 tuổi. Ước gì tôi đã không làm như thế, nhưng vào những ngày đó không có sự lựa chọn. Thanh niên ngày nay có quá nhiều cơ hội. Ước gì chúng ta đã có dịp may. Được thế thì kết cuộc tôi đã chẳng bao giờ làm nghề quét dọn.

J : Thôi đi Shirley, tụi mình uống trà nhé.

PC Look at that, Sergeant. There are still lights on in the insurance company again.

Sergeant Yes, it looks nice and warm, doesn't it ? I sometimes wish I worked there.

PC Do you really ?

Sergeant Mmm. Sometimes. A nice office, a desk, secretaries everywhere. It can't be bad.

PC And the boss's Rolls outside !

Sergeant Still, you know what they say : 'the grass is always greener on the other side of the hill.'

PC I suppose you're right, Sarge. Hey, that Rolls is on a double yellow line.

Sergeant Oh, yes. Give him a parking ticket. He can afford it !

Viên cảnh sát : Hạ sĩ nhìn kìa ! Đèn vẫn lại sáng trong công ty bảo hiểm.

Hạ sĩ Cảnh sát : Đúng rồi, trông dễ thương và ấm áp thật, phải không ? Đôi khi tôi ao ước được làm việc ở đó.

Viên CS : Thật không, Hạ sĩ ?

Hạ sĩ CS : Đôi khi. Một văn phòng xinh xắn, một bàn làm việc, các cô thư ký ở khắp nơi. Không tệ đâu.

Viên CS : Và xe hơi Rolls-Royce của ông chủ chờ sẵn bên ngoài.

Hạ sĩ CS : Nhưng ông cũng biết người ta hay nói: "Đứng núi này trông núi nọ"

Viên CS : Tôi nghĩ Hạ sĩ nói đúng. Này, cái xe Rolls-Royce đó đậu trên một vạch vàng đôi.

Hạ sĩ CS : Đúng rồi. Cho hắn một vé phạt đi. Hắn đủ tiền đóng mà.

Ghi chú : + PC : Police Constable (nhân viên cảnh sát)

+ Sergeant : (Brit) a police officer with a rank below that of an inspector (Hạ sĩ cảnh sát) *Từ điển Oxford Learner's Dictionary, A.S Hornby 1992, trang 826*

xercise 1

I wish I was on holiday.

I wish I was in Hawaii. Where do you wish you were now ?

Do you wish you were in bed ?/at home ?/ on the beach ?

2 I'm a student. *I wish I was an actor.*

What do you wish you were ?

Exercise 2

I haven't got a car. *I wish I had a car.*

Make five sentences.

Exercise 3

It's raining.

I wish it wasn't raining.

He's working.

He wishes he wasn't working.

Continue.

1 The phones are ringing.
2 It's snowing.
3 She's sitting in an office.
4 He's waiting.

Exercise 4

He hasn't finished yet.

He wishes he had finished.

I didn't learn to type.

I wish I had learnt to type !

Continue.

1 They haven't done their homework.
2 She left school at fourteen.
3 I haven't seen that film.
4 He lost his wallet.

PRACTICE

Language summary

I wish I	*was there.* *wasn't here.*			*I could (do it).*	
	was working there. *wasn't working here.*		*I wish I*	*'d (done it).* *had* *hadn't*	
	had *didn't have*	*a car.*		*worked there.* *didn't work here.*	
	didn't have (to do it).				

Daily Post

Nigel Wimpster's

PERSONALITY PAGE

A birthday present for the man who has everything!

What do you give to a man who has everything ? Millionaire rock-star Rick Faber celebrated his 38th birthday last week. Rick, who sings with The Tumbling Dice' rock group, has been one of the world's most popular rock artists for nearly 20 years. During that time, he's been to more than 80 different countries and has made 19 million-selling LP records.

Rick lives in Switzerland, but also maintains houses in London and New York. He can still sing and dance throughout the group's 3 hour stage show, and keeps fit by jogging. He can run 5 miles before breakfast everyday! Next month he's getting married to top American model Jaqui Wall. She must have thought for a long time about his birthday present. After all, he owns 6 cars, and usually drives a Ferrari. Her present was certainly different. She gave him a pair of pet leopards!

TRANG NHÂN CÁCH

Món quà sinh nhật cho người có tất cả mọi thứ !

Bạn tặng gì cho một người có đủ mọi thứ ? Ngôi sao nhạc Rock giàu có Rick Faber tổ chức sinh nhật thứ 38 tuần rồi. Rick, người hát với nhóm nhạc Rock "The Tumbling Dice", là một trong những ca sĩ nhạc Rock nổi tiếng nhất thế giới gần 20 năm nay. Trong suốt thời gian này, anh đã có mặt trên 80 quốc gia khác nhau và đã thu được 19 đĩa nhạc 33 bán được hàng triệu bản.

Rick sống ở Thụy Sĩ nhưng cũng có nhà ở Luân Đôn và New York. Anh vẫn còn có thể hát và nhảy suốt buổi biểu diễn 3 tiếng đồng hồ trên sân khấu với nhóm và vẫn khỏe mạnh nhờ chạy bộ. Anh có thể chạy 5 miles Anh trước bữa ăn sáng hàng ngày! Tháng tới anh sẽ kết hôn với cô người mẫu bạc nhất của Mỹ Jaqui Wall. Hẳn là cô phải suy nghĩ rất lâu về quà tặng sinh nhật cho anh. Rốt cuộc anh có 6 chiếc xe hơi, và anh thường lái chiếc Ferrari. Món quà của cô chắc chắn khác. Cô tặng anh một cặp báo làm thú yêu thương trong nhà.

Exercise 1

Gary is 19. He's just read about Rich Faber in the newspaper.

This is Rick Faber. *I wish I was Rick Faber.*

Write more sentences.

1 He's a millionaire.

2 He's been to 80 countries.

3 He lives in Switzerland.

Exercise 2

Read the article about Rick Faber again. Write five sentences for Gary, beginning 'I wish...'

1 rock star

2 19 million selling LP's

3 sing and dance for three hours

4 six cars **5** a Ferrari

Exercise 3

Gary asked three people this question : *'Do you wish you were a millionaire ?'*

One said, *'Yes, I do'*. Another said, *'No, I don't'*. The third said, *'I am a millionaire !'*

Look at Exercises 1 and 2. Write six questions, and give *true* answers.

Exercise 4

Rick Faber was interviewed by BBC Radio for the 'Rock Review' programme recently. These are some of the things he said :

1 'I'd like to be 19 again !'

2 'I have to travel all the time. I don't like it.'

3 'I get bored singing the same songs all the time.'

4 'I'm getting married to Jaqui. She's very beautiful, but she bores me.'

5 'I'm sorry that I can't live in England, but taxes are too high for me.'

6 'I'm fed up with living abroad.'

7 'I'm tired of being a rock star.'

8 'I'm fed up with having lots of money.'

9 'I hate running – but I have to keep fit for the stage shows.'

10 'I don't like having six cars. I'd like to travel on an ordinary London bus, but I'm too famous.'

11 'When I was 19, I could have got a job in a bank, married the girl next door, and bought a nice little house. I'm sorry I didn't. I think I would have been happier.'

Look at the things Rick said.

He wishes he was 19 again.

He wishes he didn't have to travel.

Now write eleven sentences with 'wish' like the examples.

Exercise 5

Look at the Language summary. Write down eight things that *you* wish.

Bài tập 1

Gary 19 tuổi. Anh vừa đọc bài nói về Rick Faber trong báo.

Đây là Rick Faber. *Ước gì tôi là Rick Faber.*

Viết thêm các câu nữa.

4 He's got houses in London and New York.

5 He can run five miles.

6 He's getting married to Jaqui Wall.

Bài tập 2

Đọc bài báo nói về Rick Faber lần nữa. Viết 5 câu cho Gary, bắt đầu với 'I wish..."

Bài tập 3

Gary hỏi 3 người câu hỏi này :

"Anh có ước được là triệu phú không ?"

Một người nói "Có" Một người khác nói "*không*". Người thứ ba nói, *"Tôi là nhà triệu phú !"*

Xem bài tập 1 và 2. Viết 6 câu và cho các câu trả lời thật.

Bài tập 4

Rick Faber được đài phát thanh BBC phỏng vấn trong chương trình "Điệm Nhạc Rock" gần đây. Đây là một số điều anh phát biểu:

Look at the things Rick said.

He wishes he was 19 again.

He wishes he didn't have to travel.

Now write eleven sentences with 'wish' like the examples.

Bài tập 5

Xem phần tóm tắt ngôn ngữ. Viết 8 điều *bạn* mong ước.

Unit 43 The Happiest Days Of Your Life ?
Những ngày hạnh phúc nhất của bạn chăng ?

VOCABULARY

- **academic** *(adj)* /ækə'demɪk/ scholarly; not technical or practical = có tính học thuật *a matter of ~ concern. The question is purely ~* = i.e not relevant to practical affairs but still interesting.
- **basics** *(n)* /'beɪsɪks/ essential matters = các vấn đề cơ bản *Let stop chatting and get down to ~.*
- **blazer** *(n)* /'bleɪzə/ jacket, without matching trousers, often showing the colours or badge of a club, school, team, etc. = áo khoác
- **boarder** *(n)* /'bɔ:də/ pupil who lives at a boarding – school during the term = sinh viên nội trú *This school has 300 ~ s and 150 day pupils.*
- **boarding-school** *(n)* /'bɔ:dɪŋ sku:l/ school where some or all of the pupils live during the term = trường nội trú *Our son's at ~ - we only see him during the holidays.*
- **civil servant** *(n)* /ˌsɪvl 'sɜ:vənt/ person employed by the Civil Service = viên chức
- **co-educational** *(adj)* /kəʊ, edʒu'keɪʃənl/ hỗn hợp nam nữ
  co-education *(n)* /ˌkəʊedʒu'keɪʃn/ education of girls and boys together = giáo dục cả nam lẫn nữ
- **Comprehensive school** *(n)* /ˌkɒmprɪ'hensɪv sku:l/ trường trung học tổng hợp (Anh)
- **comradeship** *(n)* /'kɒmreɪdʃɪp/ tình bạn, tình đồng chí
  comrade *(n)* /'kɒmreɪd/ fellow member of a trade union or of a socialist or communist political party = đồng chí
- **corporal punishment** *(n)* /ˌkɔ:pərəl'pʌnɪʃmənt/ physical punishment, eg by whipping, beating = hình phạt (có thể đánh...)
- **friendship** *(n)* /'frendʃɪp/ feeling or relationship between friends = tình bạn *There were strong ties of ~ between the members of the society.*
- **gifted** *(adj)* /'gɪftɪd/ very intelligent or talented = có tài, có thiên tư *~ children*
- **Grammar school** *(n)* /'græmə sku:l/ Trường trung học cổ điển (Anh)
- **hockey-field** *(n)* /'hɒkɪ fi:ld/ sân hóc-kây
- **impersonal** *(adj)* /ɪm'pɜ:sənl/ (usu derog) not influenced by, showing human feelings = lạnh lùng *Giving people time to get to know one another will make the meeting less ~.*
- **mix** *(v)* /mɪks/ ~ (with sb / st) (of people) come or be together socially = giao thiệp, hòa hợp *He finds it hard to mix at parties. In my job, I ~ with all sorts of people.*
- **overpay** *(v)* /ˌəʊvə'peɪ/ ~ sb (for st) pay sb too much or too highly = trả tiền hậu hĩ. *They don't exactly ~ their work force.*
  ≠ **underpay** *(v)*
- **privileged** *(adj)* /'prɪvəlɪdʒd/ (sometimes derog) having privilege(s) có nhiều đặc quyền *a policy of making higher education available to all and not just a ~ few.*
  priviledge *(n)* /'prɪvəlɪdʒ/ special right or advantage available only to a particular person, class or rank or to the holder of a certain position = đặc quyền đặc lợi. *Parking in this street is the ~ of the residents.*
- **schoolday** *(n)* /'sku:ldeɪ/ time when sb is at school.
- **Secondary modern** *(n)* /'sekəndrɪ'mɒdn/ trường trung học hiện đại (Anh)
- **selective** *(adj)* /sɪ'lektɪv/ using or based on selection = tuyển chọn *the ~ training of recruits.*
  selectivity *(n)* /ˌsɪlek'tɪvətɪ/ quality of being selective.
- **self – employed** *(adj)* /ˌself ɪm'plɔɪd/ working independently for customers or clients and not for an employer = tự làm chủ
  self - employment *(n)* /-ɪm'plɔɪmənt/ *a person in ~.*
- **single – sex** *(adj)* /'sɪŋgl seks/ (trường) nam hoặc nữ
- **specific** *(adj)* /spə' sɪfɪk/ relating to one particular thing, etc; not general = đặc thù *The money is to be used for one ~ purpose : the building of the new theatre.*

- **snobbish** *(adj)* /'snɒbɪʃ/ (derog) of or like a snob = lố bịch *a ~ contempt for the poor; a ~ attitude to pop music.*
  snob *(n)* /snɒb/ person who pays too much respect to social position and wealth, or who despises people of a lower social position = kẻ rởm đời *~ s who despised their working - class son - in - law.*
  snobbery *(n)* /'snɒbərɪ/ (derog) behaviour, language, etc characteristic of a snob. *They considered their behaviour a shameful piece of ~.*
- **standard** *(n)* /'stændəd/ tiêu chuẩn
- **The Foreign Office** *(n)* /ðə 'fɒrən 'ɒfɪs/ Bộ Ngoại Giao
- **transfer** *(v)* /træns'fɜ:/ ~ st / sb (from...) (to...) move st / sb from one place to another = chuyển *She's being ~ red to our Paris branch.*

EXPRESSIONS

on the technical side /'teknɪkl saɪd/ **nặng về mặt kỹ thuật**

PROPER NAMES

Darren Andrews /ˌdærən 'ændru:z/
Freddie Tapper /ˌfredɪ 'tæpə/
Joyce Brown /ˌdʒɔɪs 'braʊn/
Sally Jenning /ˌsælɪ 'dʒenɪŋ/
William Bunter /ˌwɪljəm 'bʌntə/

USAGE :

1. As + adverb + possible (feasible) : *càng ... càng tốt*

EX : As quickly as possible, as fast as possible, as soon as possible...

2. To do somebody harm or, to do harm to somebody : *làm hại ai, gây hại cho ai*

EX : A little beer can *do no harm* to me.

- To keep out of harm's way : *tránh những gì có thể gây hại*

EX : There's nothing you have to worry about, we have prepared everything necessary to keep you *out of harm's way.*

- To harm (v) / harm (n) / harmful (adj) / harmless (adj)

GRAMMAR NOTES :

a/- Some structures useful for expressing regret, opinions about the past :

1. Should have + past participle (đáng lẽ phải, lẽ ra nên)

EX : He has failed in the exams : He *should have worked* much harder

Anh ta đã thi hỏng, anh ta đáng lẽ phải học hành chăm chỉ hơn nhiều mới được.

2. If + subject + had + past participle, Subject + would (could, might) have + past participle

EX : If he *had been encouraged* enough, he *would have done* very well academically.

3. To wish (that) + subject + had + past participle

EX : I wish I had not left school so early. (tôi ước gì đã không bỏ học sớm như vậy)

4. To regret + gerund

EX : I regret being unable to further my study at colleges. Tôi tiếc là đã không được học hành gì thêm tại đại học

5. If only + subject... (phải chi, giá mà)

- To be regretful of... (ân hận, nuối tiếc về)
- No pen can express my regret about... : không có gì có thể diễn tả được sự nuối tiếc của tôi về...

b/- "To regret" may be followed by either gerund or infinitive, but there is a difference of meaning between the gerund and infinitive constructions :

EX : 1. I *regret being unable* to attend the meeting last night (something that happened in the past) : Tôi rất tiếc đã không dự được cuộc họp tối hôm qua.

2. I *regret to be unable to attend the meeting tonight* (something that is going to happen) : Tôi rất tiếc không thể dự cuộc họp tối nay được.

* "To remember" and "to forget" also have the same constructions. Give some examples using both the gerund and infinitive constructions for each of the three verbs above.

Some people say that your schooldays are the happiest days of your life. Here are six people talking about their schooldays.

Sally Jennings works in an advertising agency.

'I went to the local grammar school. It was an all-girls' school, and we all had to wear uniform. That uniform ! I really hated it ! We had to wear white socks, white blouses, matching blue skirts and blazers, and one of those... you know... funny little hats. Ooh ! And we had to wear ties, really ! We didn't mix much with children from other schools. It was a bit snobbish, I suppose. The syllabus was very academic. We never did things like cookery or needlework. I was glad at the time but I wish they'd taught us a few... a few basics. I can't even make a decent omelette. I didn't like games, either – a lot of girls running round a hockey field on a freezing cold January afternoon. I hated it ! Oh and another thing I regret... I wish the school had been co-educational. I was terribly shy of boys for a couple of years after I left school... simply because I hadn't met many.'

Freddie Tapper is a successful self-employed builder. He went to a secondary modern school.

'School ? I left when I was 15, and I was glad to get out. I knew exactly what I wanted to do. I wanted to start earning a living as soon as possible... in the real world. Most of the teachers were boring, and they didn't seem to understand us. They lived in a different world. They couldn't understand that we didn't want the things they wanted – you know, Shakespeare and all that rubbish ! I'd have left earlier if I could. I think teachers are overpaid, and their holidays are too long. I don't know what they're always complaining about. I'm sorry I had to go to school at all !'

Samantha Wharton is the personnel manager of a department store.

'I was at a big comprehensive – nearly 2000 students. Because it was so big there was a wide choice of subjects and I liked that. I suppose it was a bit impersonal sometimes. I often wished it had been smaller, but the teaching was very good and there were lots of extra activities. I

Một số người nói rằng những ngày đi học là những ngày hạnh phúc nhất trong đời. Dưới đây là 6 người nói về những ngày đó.

Sally Jennings làm việc ở một công ty quảng cáo.

"Tôi học ở trường trung học (grammar school) địa phương. Đó là một trường nữ, và tất cả chúng tôi phải mặc đồng phục. Tôi thực sự ghét bộ đồng phục vào ngày đó ! Chúng tôi phải đi vớ trắng, mặc áo trắng cùng với váy xanh, áo khoác xanh. Bạn biết không, tôi phải đội một chiếc mũ nhỏ trông buồn cười. Ôi ! Và chúng tôi phải thắt cà vạt nữa, thật đó ! Chúng tôi không giao thiệp nhiều với bọn học sinh trường khác. Tôi thấy chuyện đó có vẻ rởm đời. Giáo trình có tính học thuật cao. Chúng tôi không bao giờ làm những việc như nấu nướng hay may vá. Vào lúc đó tôi thấy sung sướng. Nhưng giờ tôi ao ước phải chi người ta đã dạy cho tôi một vài... một vài vấn đề cơ bản. Thậm chí tôi không biết làm món trứng ốp-la cho ra hồn. Lúc đó tôi cũng không thích các trò chơi – một lũ con gái cứ chạy quanh một cái sân khúc côn cầu vào một buổi chiều tháng giêng lạnh cóng. Tôi ghét cảnh đó ! Ô ! và tôi tiếc một điều nữa... phải chi trường đã có luôn nam lẫn nữ sinh. Trong hai năm sau khi ra trường tôi rất thẹn thùng khi gặp bọn con trai... chỉ vì trước đó tôi không tiếp xúc với bọn chúng nhiều.

Freddie Tapper một nhà xây dựng tư nhân rất thành công. Ông ấy đã học ở trường trung học kiểu mới (secondary modern).

"Trường hả ? Tôi bỏ học khi tôi 15 tuổi và tôi sung sướng về chuyện đó. Tôi biết rõ là tôi muốn làm gì. Tôi muốn bắt đầu kiếm sống càng sớm càng tốt... ở trường đời. Đa số giáo viên thật đáng chán, và họ dường như không hiểu chúng tôi. Họ sống với một thế giới khác. Họ không thể hiểu là chúng tôi không muốn những thứ họ muốn – Bạn biết đó, Shakespeare và tất cả những thứ tầm phào như thế ! Nếu có thể thì tôi đã bỏ học sớm hơn. Tôi nghĩ giáo viên được trả lương quá hậu, và ngày nghỉ của họ quá dài. Tôi không biết là họ luôn luôn than phiền về cái gì. Tôi tiếc mình đã phải đi học !".

Samantha Wharton là trưởng phòng tổ chức của một cửa hàng bách hóa.

"Tôi học ở một trường tổng hợp lớn gần 2000 học sinh. Vì trường quá lớn nên có rất nhiều môn học để chọn lựa và tôi thích điều đó. Tôi cho rằng đôi khi trường có vẻ lạnh lùng. Tôi thường ao ước trường nhỏ hơn, nhưng cách giảng dạy thật tuyệt và có nhiều hoạt động ngoại khóa. Tôi chơi cho ban nhạc của trường – chơi không hay lắm

played in the school orchestra – not very well – and helped to produce the school newspaper. I think comprehensives could be improved. A lot of my friends left at 16, and they now regret leaving so early. Some of them would have done very well academically, if they had been encouraged enough. Still, maybe things are different now.'

William Bunter is a civil servant. He's a senior official in the Foreign Office.

'I went to Eton, actually. I suppose I had a very privileged education. Academic standards were very high and I was able to go on to Oxford. The thing I remember most is the comradeship. The friendships I made there have lasted through my life. Sports were very important for me – I believe that team games teach people to work together, and we played every afternoon. There's been a lot of bad publicity about corporal punishment in schools. I was often beaten but it didn't do me any harm. Maybe young people would be better behaved these days if there were more discipline in schools. My only regret about boarding-school is that I didn't get to know my parents very well. I didn't see much of them after the age of eight. I've thought a lot about the problems, but I'd like to send both of my sons to Eton. I've already reserved their places.'

Joyce Brown is a housewife.

'I was brought up in the country and I went to the little village school. We were all together – boys and girls of all ages. It was like one big, happy family. It was difficult for the teacher of course – different ages and abilities – but the older children helped the younger ones. I think it was a good preparation for life. I wish they'd never closed it. My children have to travel four miles by bus to the school in town. My schooldays were very happy. I never passed any exams, but I don't regret going to my little village school.'

Darren Andrews was at a comprehensive school. He's unemployed.

'I left last year when I was 18. I passed all my exams, but I still haven't been able to find a job. I wish I'd applied for university, but even with a degree, there's no guarantee of work nowadays. I wish I'd chosen different subjects.

– và tham gia báo trường. Tôi nghĩ trường tổng hợp có thể cải tiến được. Nhiều bạn tôi bỏ học vào năm 16 tuổi và bây giờ họ hối tiếc đã rời trường quá sớm như thế. Một số trong bọn họ lẽ ra đã học rất giỏi nếu đã được động viên đúng mức. Tuy nhiên có lẽ bây giờ mọi chuyện đã khác rồi.

William Bunter là một viên chức. Ông là một viên chức cao cấp ở Bộ Ngoại giao.

"Tôi học ở Eton, thực sự như thế. Tôi nghĩ rằng, tôi hấp thụ được một nền giáo dục có rất nhiều đặc quyền, các tiêu chuẩn về học thuật rất cao và tôi đủ khả năng tiếp tục lên Oxford. Cái điều mà tôi nhớ nhất là tình bằng hữu, quan hệ bạn bè của tôi ở đấy đã tồn tại suốt cả cuộc đời. Đối với tôi thể thao rất quan trọng – Tôi tin rằng các môn chơi đồng đội dạy cho người ta biết cách cùng nhau làm việc và chiều nào chúng tôi cũng chơi. Có nhiều tai tiếng về hình phạt đánh đập học sinh ở trong trường. Tôi thường bị đánh, nhưng điều đó chẳng gây cho tôi một tổn hại nào cả. Có lẽ ngày nay thanh niên sẽ cư xử tốt hơn nếu ở trường có nhiều kỷ luật hơn. Điều hối tiếc duy nhất của tôi về trường nội trú là tôi không được gần gũi cha mẹ tôi nhiều. Sau năm 8 tuổi tôi không gặp họ nhiều. Tôi đã suy nghĩ rất nhiều về vấn đề này nhưng tôi thích cho cả 2 cậu con trai của tôi học ở Eton. Tôi đã đặt trước chỗ cho chúng rồi.

Joyce Brown là một bà nội trợ.

"Tôi lớn lên ở miền quê và học ở trường làng nhỏ. Chúng tôi học cùng với nhau – trai gái đủ mọi lứa tuổi. Giống như một đại gia đình hạnh phúc. Thầy giáo gặp khó khăn, dương nhiên – tuổi tác và trình độ khác nhau – nhưng các em lớn giúp các em nhỏ. Tôi nghĩ đây là một sự chuẩn bị tốt để bước vào đời. Ước gì người ta đã đừng bao giờ đóng cửa ngôi trường đó. Các con tôi ngày nay phải đi học bằng xe buýt ở trường tỉnh xa đến 4 mile. Những ngày tôi còn đi học thật là hạnh phúc. Tôi chưa bao giờ thi đậu cả, nhưng bây giờ tôi không hối tiếc đã học ở trường làng nhỏ bé của tôi".

Darren Andrews đã học ở một trường tổng hợp. Hiện giờ anh đang thất nghiệp.

"Tôi ra trường năm ngoái, khi tôi 18 tuổi. Tôi đậu tất cả các môn thi nhưng tôi vẫn không thể tìm được việc làm. Ước gì tôi đã xin vào đại học, nhưng thậm chí với một tấm bằng, thì vẫn không có bảo đảm là có việc làm ngay. Ước gì tôi đã chọn môn học khác. Tôi đi chuyên về văn

I specialized in English Literature, History, and Latin. I enjoyed doing them, but you see... most of the jobs these days are on the technical side. I think schools ought to give more advice on careers and there should be more specific job preparation. If I'd known more about job possibilities, I'd've done other subjects.'

Some types of secondary school found in England.

Grammar school : State or independent secondary schools. They are selective and take more academically able children, up to the age of 16 or 18. There are state grammar schools in only a few areas now.

Secondary modern : State schools in areas which also have grammar schools. The pupils usually leave at 16, or transfer to a grammar school or college.

Comprehensive : Nowadays the normal secondary school in most areas. They take pupils of all abilities, and have replaced both grammar and secondary modern schools.

Public schools : Independent, private schools, taking pupils from 13-18 years. Most of the pupils are boarders. (They live in the school.) Eton is the most famous.

Exercise

What about your schooldays ?
What do/did you like ?
What don't/didn't you like ?
What about uniforms ? games ? punishment ? subjects ? teachers ? extra activities ? travel ?
Is/Was it co-educational or single-sex ?
What changes would you make/would you have made ?

học Anh, lịch sử và tiếng La tinh. Tôi thích học những môn này nhưng như bạn thấy phần đông các việc làm ngày nay đều nặng về phần kỹ thuật. Tôi nghĩ học đường phải đưa ra nhiều lời khuyên hơn về nghề nghiệp và phải có sự chuẩn bị cho việc làm cụ thể hơn. Nếu tôi đã biết nhiều hơn về các khả năng việc làm, tôi đã học những môn học khác rồi.

Ghi chú : Một số loại trường trung học ở Anh Quốc :

Grammar school : là những trường trung học do nhà nước quản lý hoặc độc lập. Loại trường này có tính chất tuyển chọn, và chỉ nhận học sinh có khả năng học thuật cao, cho tới lứa tuổi 16 hoặc 18. Những trường trung học do nhà nước quản lý hiện nay chỉ còn ở một số vùng.

Secondary modern : là những trường do nhà nước quản lý ở những vùng cũng có trường trung học Grammar School. Học sinh thường ra trường ở tuổi 16 hoặc chuyển tiếp sang một trường Grammar school hoặc Cao đẳng.

Comprehensive : ngày nay đó là trường trung học bình thường ở đa số các vùng. Loại trường này nhận học sinh đủ mọi trình độ và đã thay thế cả trường Grammar school lẫn trường Secondary modern.

Public school : là những trường tư, độc lập, nhận học sinh từ 13 đến 18 tuổi. đa số học sinh ở nội trú. Eton là trường nổi tiếng nhất thuộc loại này.

PRACTICE

Language summary

I wish they	*had* *hadn't*	*done it.*	*I'm sorry it happened.*	
			I regret	*it.* *doing it.*
If I'd done this, that would have happened.			*My only regret is...*	

SCHOOL SUBJECTS

Typing		Greek	
Shorthand		A 2nd foreign language	
Cookery		Computer studies	
Woodwork		Sociology	
Metalwork		Biology	
Household electrics		Chemistry	
Needlework		Political studies	
Latin			

Exercise 1

Look at the list of school subjects. Think about the previous school year or when you were at school. Put ticks in the boxes next to the subjects you studied.

Bài tập 1

Nhìn qua danh sách các môn học ở trường. Nghĩ về năm học trước hay lúc bạn ở trường. Đánh dấu vào khung cạnh các môn bạn đã học.

Exercise 2

Look at these examples.

I wish I hadn't studied Latin.
or *I'm glad I studied Latin.*
or *I wish I'd studied Latin.*
or *I'm glad I didn't study Latin.*

Write true sentences about the subjects in the list.

Bài tập 2

Xem các thí dụ này :

Tôi ước tôi đã không học môn tiếng La tinh hoặc Tôi rất vui mừng đã được học tiếng La tinh.
hoặc Tôi ước tôi đã được học tiếng La tinh.
hoặc Tôi rất mừng tôi đã không học tiếng La tinh.

Viết các câu có thật về các môn học trong danh sách

Exercise 3

Look at these four sentences.

A *I wish I hadn't studied Latin because it was boring, and I'll never have to use it.*

B *I'm glad I studied Latin because it has helped me to study other languages.*

C *I wish I'd studied Latin. It would have been useful for university entrance.*

D *I'm glad I didn't study Latin. I think it would have been a waste of time.*

Look at the sentences you wrote in Exercise 2. Choose six, write them out again, adding reasons.

Bài tập 3

Xem 4 câu này :

A : Tôi ước là tôi đã không học tiếng La tinh vì môn này rất chán và tôi sẽ không bao giờ phải dùng tới nó.

B : Tôi mừng là tôi đã học tiếng La tinh vì nó giúp tôi học được các thứ tiếng khác

C : Tôi ước tôi đã được học tiếng La tinh. Chắc là nó sẽ hữu ích cho việc thi vào Đại học.

D : Tôi mừng là tôi đã không học tiếng La tinh. Tôi nghĩ là có lẽ nó đã rất mất thì giờ.

Xem các câu bạn viết trong bài tập 2. Chọn 6 câu, viết chúng ra lần nữa, cho thêm lý do.

Exercise 4

I bought a calculator. It didn't work.
I wish I hadn't bought it.
Continue.

1 My friends went to London. I didn't go.

. . . . . .

2 I failed the examination.

. . . . . .

3 I was very rude to her yesterday.

. . . . . .

Exercise 5

I bought a calculator. It didn't work.
I regret buying it.
Look at Exercise 4. Write six sentences, with 'I regret (doing)... 'or' I regret not (doing)...'

Exercise 6

Think about the last year. Write three sentences with 'I regret doing...', three with 'I don't regret doing...', and three with 'I'm sorry I did...'

Exercise 7

I'm very tired today.
I wish I wasn't.
I went to bed late last night.
I wish I hadn't.
Respond to the following sentences in the same way.

1 I didn't set the alarm.

. . . . . .

2 It didn't go off.

. . . . . .

3 I arrived late.

. . . . . .

Bài tập 4

Tôi mua một máy tính. Nó không hoạt động.
Tôi ước tôi đã không mua nó.
Hãy tiếp tục

4 I never played games at school.

. . . . . .

5 I had to wear a uniform to school.

. . . . . .

6 I chose the wrong job.

. . . . . .

Bài tập 5

Tôi mua một máy tính. Nó không hoạt động.
Tôi ân hận đã mua nó.
Xem bài tập 4. Viết 6 câu với "I regret (doing)..." hoặc "I regret not (doing)...

Bài tập 6

Nghĩ về năm đã qua. Viết 3 câu với "I regret doing..." 3 câu với "I don't regret doing..." và 3 câu với "I'm sorry I did..."

Bài tập 7

Hôm nay tôi mệt quá.
Ước gì tôi không bị mệt
Tối qua tôi đi ngủ muộn.
Ước gì tôi đã không đi ngủ muộn.
Đáp lại các câu sau đây theo cách tương tự :

4 Now, I can't concentrate on my work.

. . . . . .

5 I feel terrible !

. . . . . .

6 I don't understand anything.

. . . . . .

7 I'm bored.

. . . . . .

COMMON ABBREVIATIONS.

CMEA	Council of Mutual Economic Assistance Hội đồng tương trợ kinh tế
EEC	European Economic Community - Khối thị trường kinh tế Châu Âu

Unit 44 Miss Britain

Hoa hậu nước Anh

VOCABULARY

- **acrobat** *(n)* /'ækrəbæt/ person, esp at a circus, who performs difficult or unusual physical acts (eg somersaults, walking on the hands or walking on a rope) = người biểu diễn leo dây, nhào lộn
  acrobatic *(adj)* ~ *feats, skills.*
  acrobatics *(n)* 1. acrobatic acts *perform, do* ~.
  2. art of performing these ~ *takes a long time to learn*
- **apprenticeship** *(n)* /ə'prentɪʃɪp/ time of being an apprentice = thời gian học nghề *Serve an / one's ~ with a carpenter.*
- **astronomy** *(n)* /ə'strɒnəmɪ/ scientific study of the sun, moon, stars, planets, etc. = thiên văn học
  astronomer *(n)* /ə'strɒnəmə/ person who studies or an expert in astronomy
- **beauty consultant** *(n)* /'bju:tɪ kən'sʌltənt/ người cố vấn về sắc đẹp
- **beauty contest** *(n)* /'bju:tɪ ˌkɒntest/ cuộc thi hoa hậu
- **charm** *(n)* /tʃa:m/ attractiveness = vẻ duyên dáng *a woman of great ~.*
- **clown** *(n)* /klaʊn/ comic entertainer (esp in a circus) who paints his face and dresses in a ridiculous way and performs funny or foolish tricks = người hề
- **degrading** *(adj)* /dɪ'greɪdɪŋ/ trở nên hèn hạ, giảm giá trị
  degrade *(v)* /dɪ'greɪd/ cause (sb) to be less moral and less deserving of respect. *I felt degraded by having to ask for money.*
- **dressmaking** *(n)* /'dresmeɪkɪŋ/ making women's clothes = nghề may y phục nữ
  dressmaker *(n)* /'dresmeɪkə/ person (esp a woman) who makes women's clothes.
- **fame** *(n)* /feɪm/ being known or talked about by many people = sự nổi tiếng, tiếng tăm *achieve ~ and fortune.*
- **fashion model** *(n)* /ˌtæʃn 'mɒdl/ = người mẫu thời trang
- **insult** *(v)* /ɪn'sʌlt/ speak or act in a way that hurts the feelings or dignity of (sb) = sỉ nhục *I felt most insulted when they made me sit at a little table at the back.*
  insult *(n)* /'ɪnsʌlt/ ~ (to sb / st) remark or action that insults. *Don't take it as an ~ if I go to sleep during your speech; I'm very tired.*
- **irritated** *(adj)* /'ɪrɪteɪtɪd/ angry, annoyed = nổi giận
  irritate *(v)* make sb angry, annoyed or impatient = làm cáu giận *It ~ s me to have to shout to be heard.*
  irritation *(n)*
- **judo** *(n)* /'dʒu:dəʊ/ môn võ judo
- **make – up** *(n)* /meɪk ʌp/ cosmetics such as powder, lipstick, ect used by a woman to make herself more attractive, or by an actor = đồ dùng trang sức *She never wears ~.*
- **mess** *(v)* /mes/ about / around 1. behave in a foolish or boisterous way = loanh quanh, lẩn quẩn *Stop ~ ing about and come and help!*
  2. work in pleasant, casual, disorganized way = làm việc làng nhàng *I love just ~ about in the garden.*
- **personality** *(n)* /ˌpɜ:sə'nælətɪ/ characteristics and qualities of a person seen as a whole = nhân cách. *influences which affect the development of a child's ~.*
- **primary school** *(n)* /'praɪmərɪ sku:l/ first school for children of 5-11 years = trường tiểu học, trường cấp 1
- **self –respect** *(n)* /ˌself rɪ'spekt/ feeling that one is behaving and thinking in ways that will not make one ashamed of oneself = lòng tự trọng *Lose all ~*
  self – respecting *(adj)* having self – respect *No ~ doctor would refuse to treat a sick person.*
- **swop** *(v)* /swɒp/ (also swap /swɒp/) ~ (st with sb); ~ (st for st) = give st in exchange for st else = trao đổi, đổi chác. - *Your book looks more interesting than mine; do you want to ~ with me ? - I'll ~ (you) my Michael Jackson tape for your Bruce Springsteen album.*
- **tamer** *(n)* /'teɪmə/ person who tames and trains wild animals = người huấn luyện *a lion-tamer.*
  tame *(v)* /teɪm/ make (st) tame or manageable ~ *wild birds*
  tamable *(adj)*

- **thrill** *(n)* /θrɪl/ wave of excited feeling; nervous tremor = sự rộn ràng (vì vui sướng, sợ hãi...) *a ~ of joy, fear, horror.*
  With a ~, I realized that I had won.
- **trapeze artist** *(n)* /trə'pi:z 'a:tist/ người biểu diễn xà treo

EXPRESSIONS

I don't take them seriously	tôi chẳng xem chúng là quan trọng
It's like a cattle market	thật giống như chợ bán trâu bò
Beauty's only skin deep	sắc đẹp chỉ là vẻ bề ngoài.

GRAMMAR NOTES :

a/ - *"I like looking* at pretty girls "means" I enjoy looking at pretty girls"
- *"I like to look* at them "means" I think it right to look at them"
- "like" followed by a gerund means "enjoy"
- "like" followed by an infinitive means "think wise or right"

Give some examples with your teacher's help.

b/ - "I find beauty contest totally *degrading*"
- "I feel *irritated* when I'm watching a beauty contest"

"Formation" :	Verb + ing
	Verb + ed
"degrading" :	present participle (active)
"Irritated" :	past participle (passive)

Both present and past participles can be used as adjectives, but present participles are often used for things and past participles for persons.

EX : 1. This topic is very *interesting*
I am very *interested* in this topic
2. This task seems *boring*
This task makes me *bored*
Give five more sentences.

c/ **Wishes**
What would you wish for ?
If you could make a wish, what would it be ?
I'd wish for peace/health/fame/happiness/a long life.

Announcer This is the third and final stage of the 'Miss Britain' competition. We have seen all the contestants in bathing-costumes and in evening dresses, and the judges have selected our six finalists. The last stage is the interview, and in this stage our contestants will be judged on charm, intelligence and personality.

Listen to the interviews, and complete the chart on page 301.

Exercise

Ask and answer about each of the contestants :
Where's she from ? How old is she ?
What does she do ? What are her hobbies ?
What's her ambition ? If she could have one wish, what would she wish for ?
If you were a judge, which would you choose, and why ? Listen to the results, and complete this chart :

Xướng ngôn viên : Đây là giai đoạn thứ ba và cuối cùng của cuộc thi "Hoa Hậu Anh Quốc". Chúng ta đã xem tất cả các thí sinh trong trang phục áo tắm và trang phục dạ hội, và các vị giám khảo đã chọn 6 thí sinh vào chung kết. Giai đoạn cuối cùng là thi ứng xử, và ở giai đoạn này các thí sinh của chúng ta sẽ được đánh giá về vẻ quyến rũ, trí thông minh và nhân cách.

Hãy nghe những đoạn phỏng vấn sau và điền vào biểu mẫu ở trang 301.

Place	Name	Prize-money	Holiday
3rd			
2nd			
1st			

Beauty contests : points of view

'I never watch beauty contests. They're like a cattle market ! I think they insult the intelligence of women. No woman with any self-respect would ever enter a competition like this. I find them totally degrading !'

'I certainly don't take them seriously. They're harmless fun, really. I mean, you see prettier girls every day in shops and offices. But people earn a living from their intelligence, or from their abilities. Why shouldn't they make money from their appearance ?'

'I occasionally watch them, but I don't think I'd like them if I were a woman. After all, a lot of girls would look just as good with the make-up, clothes and lights. Anyway, beauty's only skin deep. I often feel irritated when I'm watching a beauty contest. The values are false.'

'I always watch them. I like looking at pretty girls. I'd rather watch a beauty contest than a programme about politics. There isn't enough glamour in the world. If you don't like it, you can always switch off the television !'

Thi Hoa Hậu : Các quan điểm.

"Tôi không bao giờ xem các cuộc thi Hoa Hậu. Chúng giống như một cái chợ trâu bò ! Tôi nghĩ các cuộc thi như thế lăng mạ óc thông minh phụ nữ. Không có phụ nữ nào với chút tự trọng lại đi tham gia một cuộc thi như vậy. Tôi thấy đó là những cuộc thi hoàn toàn hạ thấp phẩm giá của con người !"

"Chắc chắn là tôi không đặt những cuộc thi như thế thành vấn đề. Chúng là trò vui vô hại, thực sự như thế. Ý của tôi là, hằng ngày trong các cửa hiệu và các văn phòng bạn đều thấy các cô gái xinh hơn. Nhưng người ta kiếm sống bằng trí thông minh, hay bằng khả năng của họ. Tại sao họ lại không nên kiếm tiền bằng vóc dáng của mình?"

"Thỉnh thoảng tôi có xem các cuộc thi Hoa Hậu, nhưng nếu tôi là phụ nữ tôi không nghĩ là mình sẽ thích những cuộc thi như thế. Xét cho cùng, nhiều cô gái trông cũng xinh như vậy nếu có trang điểm, quần áo và đèn chiếu. Dầu gì sắc đẹp chỉ là vẻ bề ngoài.Tôi thường cảm thấy bực dọc khi xem một cuộc thi Hoa Hậu. Các giá trị đều giả dối".

Tôi luôn luôn xem các cuộc thi Hoa Hậu. Tôi thích nhìn các cô gái xinh đẹp. Tôi thích xem một cuộc thi Hoa Hậu hơn là một chương trình chính trị không có đủ vẻ hấp dẫn trên thế giới này. Nếu bạn không thích xem,thì bạn tắt truyền hình đi lúc nào lại chẳng được.

Contestant	Number	Age	Occupation	Hobbies	Ambition	Wish
MISS LANCASHIRE Grace Field	14	17	shop assistant	dressmaking cooking	to work with children	world peace
MISS DORSET Victoria Hardy						
MISS NORFOLK Lynn King						
MISS GWENT Myfanwy Lloyd						
MISS STRATHCLYDE Dawn Munro						
MISS WARWICKSHIRE Kerry Talbot						

THÍ SINH	Số	Tuổi	Nghề Nghiệp	Sở thích	Tham vọng	Mong ước
MISS LANCASHIRE Grace Field	14	17	nhân viên bán hàng	may, nấu ăn	làm việc với trẻ em	hòa bình cho thế giới
MISS DORSET Victoria Hardy						
MISS NORFOLK Lynn King						

THÍ SINH	Số	Tuổi	Nghề Nghiệp	Sở thích	Tham vọng	Mong ước
MISS GWENT Myfanwy Lloyd						
MISS STRATHCLYDE Dawn Munro						
MISS WARWICKSHIRE Kerry Talbol						

PRACTICE

Language summary

Exercise 1

Read the three letters, and complete the chart.

Name	Childhood ambition	Childhood hobbies	Present occupation	Present hobbies	Ambition now
Annabel Chambers					
Howard Skinner					
Tim Cleveland					

READERS' LETTERS

Last month we asked our readers to tell us about their ambitions and dreams. Lots of you wrote in ! Here are three of your letters.

Annabel Chambers

They say that every small child wants to be an engine driver. I suppose that might have been true in the days of steam trains, but it's pretty difficult to get excited about an electric train. Personally, I always wanted to be a pilot. I used to spend hours at the local airport with my brother, writing down the plane registrations. I knew everything there was to know about planes ! When I was twelve I began to realize that the thick glasses I had to wear would make that ambition impossible. It's always a shock when you first realize that wishes don't always come true ! It's funny.

THƯ BẠN ĐỌC

Tháng rồi chúng tôi đề nghị độc giả của chúng tôi kể về tham vọng và ước mơ của họ. Rất nhiều độc giả đã hưởng ứng. Đây là 3 trong số các thư của các bạn

Howard Skinner

Tim Cleveland

Người ta nói là đứa trẻ nào cũng muốn làm tài xế đầu tàu. Tôi cho là điều này đúng vào cái thời tàu chạy bằng hơi nước, nhưng khó mà hào hứng với tàu điện. Riêng tôi, tôi luôn luôn muốn trở thành phi công. Trước đây tôi thường qua hàng bao nhiêu giờ ở sân bay địa phương với anh tôi, ghi lại các biển số máy bay. Tôi biết mọi thứ về máy bay. Khi lên 12 tuổi, tôi bắt đầu nhận ra là cặp kính dày tôi phải đeo kia không thể nào làm tôi thực hiện tham vọng đó được. Chắc chắn bạn sẽ bị sốc khi thoạt nhận ra là mơ ước không phải lúc nào cũng đạt được ! Thật tức cười.

I really can't stand flying now. I often have to travel in my job... I'm a fashion buyer... and I suppose I've got fed up with flying. I'm still a collector, but now it's china ornaments, not plane registrations. I think I've become something of an expert on 19th century English china. I'd really like to write a book about it. I think that would be my biggest ambition !

Annabel Chambers

Thật tình bây giờ tôi không chịu nổi việc đi máy bay. Tôi thường phải đi lại để làm việc... Tôi là người đi thu mua hàng thời trang... và tôi cho là tôi đã chán ngấy việc đáp máy bay. Tôi vẫn là một nhà sưu tầm, nhưng bây giờ tôi sưu tầm đồ trang trí bằng sứ chứ không phải là biển số máy bay nữa. Tôi nghĩ tôi đã trở thành chuyên viên về đồ sứ Anh thế kỷ thứ 19. Thực sự tôi muốn viết một quyển sách về vấn đề này. Tôi cho đó là tham vọng lớn nhất của tôi !

Annabel Chambers.

When I was a kid I just had one dream. I used to imagine myself running out onto the field at Wembley Stadium, a football under my arm... the captain of the England team ! I'd spend hours kicking a ball against the wall. I used to collect autographs too. I'd hang around before a match and try and get the players to sign a programme when they got out of their cars. Programmes ! That's another thing. My bedroom was full of dusty football programmes. I used to swop them with other kids at school. I work in a shoe shop now. All the little kids come in with their mums and dads, trying on football boots. They get so excited. I can remember doing the same thing. I've lost interest in football nowadays. I prefer messing around in my workshop. I've built a nice little workshop in the garage. I make children's toys. You know, wooden ones. I really wish I could do it for a living... full-time. Still, perhaps one day I'll be able to.

Howard Skinner

Khi còn là thằng nhóc con, tôi chỉ có một ước mơ. Tôi thường tưởng tượng mình được chạy vào sân bãi ở sân vận động Wembley, tay cắp một quả bóng... đội trưởng của đội Anh ! Tôi thường bỏ hàng bao nhiêu giờ đá banh đội vào tường. Tôi cũng thường sưu tầm chữ ký nữa. Tôi thường lảng vảng trước cuộc thi đấu, cố gắng xin các cầu thủ ký tên vào tờ chương trình khi họ vừa bước xuống xe. Những tờ chương trình ! Đó là một điều khác. Phòng ngủ của tôi đầy các tờ chương trình bụi bặm về bóng đá. Tôi thường trao đổi những tờ chương trình này với tụi nhóc ở trường. Bây giờ tôi làm việc trong cửa hàng giày dép. Tất cả bọn trẻ đi vào cửa hàng với bố mẹ, chúng thử những đôi giày đá bóng. Chúng rất phấn khởi. Tôi nhớ tôi cũng từng làm như thế. Ngày nay thì tôi không còn thích bóng đá nữa. Tôi thích loanh quanh trong phân xưởng của tôi. Tôi đã xây một phân xưởng nhỏ xinh xắn trong nhà xe. Tôi làm đồ chơi trẻ con. Bạn biết không, những món đồ chơi bằng gỗ. Tôi thực sự mong ước kiếm sống bằng nghề này nghề làm trong giờ. Có lẽ một ngày nào đó tôi sẽ làm được.

Howard Skinner

When I was about seven, a travelling circus came to our town and I still remember what a strong impression it made on me. I loved all the characters I saw and I had dreamt

Lúc tôi lên bảy, một gánh xiếc rong đến tỉnh tôi và tôi vẫn còn nhớ ấn tượng mạnh mẽ mà gánh xiếc này đem đến cho tôi lúc ấy. Tôi yêu mến tất cả các nhân vật tôi

of running away to join them. I seriously considered all the possibilities; lion tamer, elephant boy, acrobat, trapeze artist, but in the end I decided to be a clown. I can remember spending long hours at my mother's dressing-table, putting on make-up to create a clown's face and then pulling faces in front of the mirror. Unfortunately I never ran away to join the circus. I left school at 15, did an apprenticeship and now work as a mechanic in a large garage-I suppose that's a bit of a circus sometimes ! I'd like my own place one day; nothing big, just to be my own boss. At weekends I like to get away from everything. I spend hours and hours just sitting by a river or a lake, just watching my float. I don't really mind if I don't catch anything, though I get a big thrill if I do ! As soon as I could walk, my father used to take me with him, made me a rod, and I suppose that's how I've spent my spare time ever since.

Tim Cleveland

trông thấy và đã từng mơ được ra đi để gia nhập gánh. Tôi nghiêm túc cân nhắc mọi khả năng : một người huấn luyện sư tử, cậu bé coi voi, diễn viên nhào lộn, diễn viên xà treo, nhưng cuối cùng tôi quyết định làm anh hề. Tôi vẫn còn nhớ tôi từng ngồi hàng bao nhiêu giờ ở bản trang điểm của mẹ tôi, tô son vẽ phấn để vẽ mặt anh hề và rồi bỏi đi trước gương. Không may, tôi chẳng bao giờ bỏ nhà đi để gia nhập gánh xiếc. Tôi nghỉ học lúc 15 tuổi, đi học việc và hiện giờ làm thợ máy trong một ga ra lớn – thỉnh thoảng tôi nghĩ đây cũng có chút gì đó của gánh xiếc ! Tôi thích một ngày nào đó tôi có một chỗ riêng; không lớn, chỉ cần tôi được làm chủ mình. Cuối tuần tôi thích trút bỏ tất cả. Tôi chỉ muốn ngồi hàng giờ bên cạnh giòng sông hay bờ hồ; chỉ muốn nhìn ngắm cái phao của tôi. Thực sự tôi không màng tới việc tôi có câu được gì hay không, mặc dầu tôi cũng thấy rộn ràng nếu tôi câu được cái gì đó. Ngay hồi tôi mới biết đi, cha tôi thường dẫn tôi theo, làm cho tôi 1 cần câu, và tôi nghĩ đó là cách tôi tiêu khiển thì giờ nhàn rỗi kể từ đó.

Tim Cleveland

Exercise 2

Write a paragraph about your childhood hobbies and ambitions, and your hobbies and ambitions now.

Bài tập 2

Viết một đoạn văn về các sở thích và tham vọng thời niên thiếu của bạn và sở thích và tham vọng của bạn bây giờ.

PROVERBS

- Actions speak louder than words = Hay làm hơn hay nói.
- After a storm comes a calm = After rain comes fair weather = Hết cơn bỉ cực đến hồi thái lai.
- All things are difficult before they are easy = Vạn sự khởi đầu nan.
- An act of kindness is never wasted = Làm ơn không bao giờ thiệt.

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Units 41-44

Dialogue A

Listen

Richard Alex !
Alex Hi, Jamie. I haven't seen you for ages. Since we left school. What are you doing ?
Jamie Not much. Are you working ?
Alex Hum. I wish I was working. I can't find a job.
Jamie No. It isn't easy, is it ? Feel like a coffee ?
Alex Yeah. OK.
Listen and repeat

A1 Listen	*Now you do the same*
A : ages	ages.....for ages
B : for ages	we left school.....since we left school
C : for ages	a long time .....for a long time
A : we left school	Tuesday .....since Tuesday
B : since we left school	1982.....since 1982
C : since we left school	six mŏnths.....for six months.
A2 Listen	*Now you do the same*
A : Are you working ?	Are you working ?.....I wish I was working.
B : I wish I was working.	Can you find a job ?.....I wish I could find a job.
C : I wish I was working.	Did you pass the exams ?.....I wish I had passed the exams.
A : Can you find a job ?	Have you found a job ?.....I wish I had found a job.
B : I wish I could find a job.	
C : I wish I could find a job.	

Dialogue B

Listen

Jamie You know, I wish I hadn't left school now.
Alex Yes, I regret leaving too. But I was glad to get out at the time.
Jamie Me too.
Alex And I didn't work very hard at school. I fooled about a lot, I wish I hadn't.
Jamie Yes, I know what you mean.
Listen and repeat

New words

- to fool /fu:l/ about / arround = behave stupidly or foolishly = làm chuyện vớ vẩn. *Stop fooling about with that knife or someone will get hurt.*

B1 Listen	*Now you do the same*
A : I wish I hadn't left school.	I wish I hadn't left school.....He regrets leaving school.
B : He regrets leaving school.	I wish I hadn't fooled about.....He regrets fooling about.
C : He regrets leaving school.	I wish I hadn't missed classes.....He regrets missing classes.
A : I wish I hadn't fooled about.	I wish I hadn't failed the exams.....He regrets failing the exams.
B : He regrets fooling about.	
C : He regrets fooling about.	
B2 Listen	*Now you do the same*
A : I regret leaving school.	I regret leaving school.....He wishes he hadn't left school.
B : He wishes he hadn't left school.	I regret fooling about.....He wishes he hadn't fooled about.
C : He wishes he hadn't left school.	I regret missing classes.....He wishes he hadn't missed classes.
A : I regret fooling about.	I regret failing the exams.....He wishes he hadn't failed the exams.
B : He wishes he hadn't fooled about.	
C : He wishes he hadn't fooled about.	

Dialogue C

Listen

Jamie It's really depressing, isn't it ? Going to all there interviews.
Alex Have you been to many ?
Jamie Yeah. But there are hundreds of applicants for each job. And my qualifications aren't that good.
Alex You know, I think they taught us the wrong things at school. I wish they'd taught us to type, for example. Or to speak a foreign language.
Jamie Yes. Right. If I could type I'd have more opportunities.
Listen and repeat

New words :
- depressing *(adj)* /dɪ'presɪŋ/ making one feel depressed = gây chán, nản lòng. *a ~ film, sight.*
- to depress = make sb sad and without enthusiasm.

C1 Listen
A : I wish they'd taught us to type.
B : He regrets not learning to type.
C : He regrets not learning to type.
A : I wish they'd taught us a foreign language.
B : He regrets not learning a foreign language.
C : He regrets not learning a foreign language.

Now you do the same
I wish they'd taught us to type .....He regrets not learning to type
I wish they'd taught us a foreign language
..... He regrets not learning a foreign language.
I wish they'd taught us practical subjects
..... He regrets not learning practical subjects.
I wish they'd taught us about interviews
..... He regrets not learning about interviews.

C2 Listen
A : He can't type.
B : If he could type, he'd have more opportunities.
C : If he could type, he'd have more opportunities.
A : He doesn't speak a foreign language.
B : If he spoke a foreign language, he'd have more opportunities.
C : If he spoke a foreign language, he'd have more opportunities.

Now you do the same
He can't type.....If he could type, he'd have more opportunities.
He doesn't speak a foreign language..... If he spoke a foreign language, he'd have more opportunities.
He hasn't got good qualifications..... If he had good qualifications, he'd have more opportunities.
He hasn't got a practical skill..... If he had a practical skill, he'd have more opportunities.

Dialogue D

Listen

Jamie Do you know what I hate most ?
Alex No what ?
Jamie Asking my parents for money. I really wish I was independent.
Alex Yes. And me. I'd like a motorbike, but I can't afford it.
Jamie Anyway, summer's coming. There should be more jobs around then.
Alex Yes. Right. Look, I must go now. See you around.
Jamie Yeah. See you. And good luck !
Listen and repeat

D1 Listen
A : Do you know what I hate most?
B : No, what ?
C : No, what ?
A : Do you know where I'd like to go ?
B : No, where ?
C : No, where ?

Now you do the same
Do you know what I hate most ?..... No, what ?
Do you know where I'd like to go ?..... No, where ?
Do you know who I met ?..... No, who ?
Do you know why I did it ?..... No, why ?

D2 Listen

A : He isn't independent.
B : He wishes he was independent.
C : He wishes he was independent.
A : He has to ask for money.
B : He wishes he didn't have to ask for money.
C : He wishes he didn't have to ask for money.

Now you do the same

He isn't independent.....He wishes he was independent.
He has to ask for money.....He wishes he didn't have to ask for money.
He isn't earning money.....He wishes he was earning money.
He hasn't got a motorbike.....He wishes he had got a motorbike.
He can't affford it.....He wishes he could afford it.
He's out of work.....He wishes he wasn't out of work.

Listening

Listen

Judith Let me begin Sir Joseph, by congratulating you on your birthday.
Sir Joseph Thank you.
Judith How does it feel to be eighty and one of the richest men in the world ?
Sir Joseph Fine. But I wish I was twenty again... and one of the richest men in the world. It's much nicer to be young and rich than old and rich, you know.
Judith I'm sure it is... You weren't born in this country, were you ?
Sir Joseph No, no. I didn't come here until I was six. We were immigrants from Russia.
Judith And where did you spend your childhood ?
Sir Joseph In the East End of London... like most immigrants in those days. We were really poor... I mean really poor. There were seven children and my father was often ill and out of work. He was a musician.
Judith And your mother ?
Sir Joseph Mother died when I was young. I can't remember much about her. I wish I could remember more.
Judith Did you get much education ?
Sir Joseph No, no. If I'd got more, life would've been easier. I had to earn a living, you see. I could only just read and write when I left school.
Judith How old were you when you finished school ?
Sir Joseph Only twelve.
Judith How could you earn a living at that age ? What did you do ?
Sir Joseph Oh. All kinds of things. I remember going to the fruit market... they've moved it now. And I used to collect the wooden boxes and break them up. Everybody had a coal fire in those days and they needed firewood. It was a good business... I didn't need any money to start with and I made a good profit. It's funny really... I own whole forests now.

*Listen again and answer the questions when you hear this sound * BELL*

1

Judith Let me begin Sir Joseph, by congratulating you on your birthday.
Sir Joseph Thank you.
Judith How does it feel to be eighty and one of the richest men in the world ?
Sir Joseph Fine. But I wish I was twenty again... and one of the richest men in the world. It's much nicer to be young and rich than old and rich, you know.
Judith I'm sure it is... You weren't born in this country were you ?

***BELL**

How did she begin the interview ?
..... She began by congratulating him.
How rich is Sir Joseph ?....., He's one of the richest men in the world.
What does he wish ?
..... He wishes he was twenty again.

2

Sir Joseph No, no. I didn't come here until I was six. We were immigrants from Russia.

Judith And where did you spend your childhood ?

Sir Joseph In the East End of London... like most immigrants in those days. We were really poor... I mean really poor. There were seven children and my father was often ill and out of work. He was a musician.

Judith And your mother ?

Sir Joseph Mother died when I was young. I can't remember much about her. I wish I could remember more.

3

Judith Did you get much education ?

Sir Joseph No, no. If I'd got more, life would've been easier. I had to earn a living, you see I could only just read and write when I left school.

Judith How old were you when you finished school?

Sir Joseph Only twelve.

4

Judith How could you earn a living at that age ? What did you do ?

Sir Joseph Oh. All kinds of things. I remember going to the fruit market... they've moved it now. And I used to collect the wooden boxes and break them up. Everybody had a coal fire in those days and they needed firewood. It was a good business... I didn't need any money to start with and I made a good profit. It's funny really... I own whole forests now.

BELL

Where was he born ?....He was born in Russia.
What did his father do ?.....He was a musician.
What does he wish ?
.....He wishes he could remember more about his mother.

BELL

What would've happened if he'd got more education ?.Life would've been easier.
Why did he leave school ?.....He had to earn to living.

BELL

Where does he remember going ?.....He remembers going to the fruit market.
How much money did he need to start with?
.....He didn't need any money to start with.

Open conversation

Listen and reply

A : What do you wish you were doing now ?
B : .....
A : What do you wish you had that you haven't got ?
B : .....
A : What do you wish you could do that you can't ?
B : .....
A : Where do you wish you were at the moment ?
B : .....
A : What do you wish the government would do ?
B : .....
A : Is there anything you regret doing ?
B : .....
A : Is there anything you regret not doing ?
B : .....
A : Is there anything you wish you didn't have to do ?
B : .....
A : That's the end of section eleven.

Unit 45 Operation Impossible

Điệp vụ vô cùng khó khăn

VOCABULARY

- **assassin** *(n)* /ə'sæsɪn/ killer, esp one who kills an important or famous person for money or for political reasons = kẻ giết nhân vật quan trọng vì tiền hay vì lý do chính trị
  assassinate *(v)* /ə'sæsɪneɪt/ kill for money or for political reasons.
  assassination *(n)* /əˌsæsɪ'neɪʃn/ murder of this kind
- **auction** *(n)* /'ɔ:kʃn/ 1. method of selling things in which each item is sold to the persons who offers the most money for it = sự bán đấu giá *The house is up for ~.*
  2. pulic event when this takes place = cuộc bán đấu giá. *attend all the local ~.*
  auction *(v)* sell (st) by auction.
  auctioneer *(n)* /ˌɔ:kʃə'nɪə/ person whose job is conducting auctions
- **bodyguard** *(n)* /'bɒdɪgɑ:d/ man or group of men, whose job is to protect important person = cận vệ *The President's ~ is/are armed.*
- **boutique** *(n)* /bu:'ti:k/ small shop selling clothes and other articles of the latest fashion = cửa hàng quần áo thời trang
- **cobbler** *(n)* /'kɒblə/ (becoming dated) person who repairs shoes = thợ sửa giày
- **complex** *(n)* /'kɒmpleks/ group of connected or similar things = khu công nghệ liên hợp *a big industrial ~* = ie a site with factories.
- **confectionery** *(n)* /kən'fekʃənərɪ/ sweets, chocolates, cakes, etc = bánh, kẹo, sô cô la...
- **crime syndicate** *(n)* /kraɪm 'sɪndɪkət/ tổ chức gây tội ác
- **crocodile** *(n)* /'krɒkədaɪl/ cá sấu
- **defect** *(n)* /'di:fekt, dɪ'fekt/ fault or lack that spoils a person or thing = khuyết điểm *mechanical ~ s in a car.*
- **defect** *(v)* /dɪ'fekt/ ~ (from st) (to st) leave a party, cause, country, etc and go to another = đào thoát *One of our spies has ~ ed to the enemy.*
  defection *(n)* /dɪ'fekʃn/ leaving one's country permanently, usu one disagrees with its political system.
- **defector** *(n)* /dɪ'fektə/ người đào tẩu *a high - ranking ~ seeking political asylum.*
- **defend** *(v)* /dɪ'fend/ ~ sb / st (from / against sb / st) protect sb / st from harm; guard sb / st = bảo vệ *When the dog attacked me, I ~ ed myself with a stick.*
  defensive *(adj)* used for defending *~ measures*
- **dye** *(v)* /daɪ/ (pt, pp *dyed*, pre. p. *dyeing*) colour (st) esp by dipping in a liquid = nhuộm *dye one's hair, ~ a white dress blue.*
  dye *(n)* substance used for dyeing. *I bought some blue ~ yesterday.*
- **expert** *(n)* /'ekspɜ:t/ ~ (at / in / on st / doing st) person with special knowledge, skill or training in a particular field = chuyên gia, chuyên viên *get the advice of the ~ s.*
  expert *(adj)* done with great knowledge or skill = lão luyện *He's ~ at cooking good cheap meals.*
- **gorilla** *(n)* /gə'rɪlə/ con khỉ
- **guy** *(n)* /gaɪ/ (infml) man = người, gã, tên *He's a great ~; the guys at the office.*
- **invent** *(v)* /ɪn'vent/ make or design (st that did not exist before); create by thought = phát minh *Laszlo ~ ed the ball-point pen.*
  inventor *(n)* person who invents things
  invention *(n)* *the ~ of radio by Marconi.*
- **lazer** *(n)* /'leɪzə/ la-ze
- **launch pad** *(n)* /lɔ:ntʃ pæd/ also *launching - pad* = base or platform from which spacecraft, etc are launched = giàn phóng
- **lease** *(v)* /li:s/ ~ st (to / from sb) grant or obtain the use of st = cho thuê, thuê *The firm ~ s an office with views over the river.*
  lease *(n)* hợp đồng cho thuê *When does the ~ expire ?*
- **legitimate** *(adj)* /lɪ'dʒɪtɪmət/ in accordance with the laws or rules; lawful = hợp lệ, chính đáng, hợp pháp *the ~ heir*
  legitimacy *(n)* /lɪ'dʒɪtɪməsɪ/ (fml) *question the ~ of his actions.*
- **mini – submarine** *(n)* /'mɪnɪ, sʌbmə'ri:n/ tàu ngầm nhỏ

matically = rocket = tên lửa *nuclear ~ s*

- **mission** *(n)* /'mɪʃn/ particular task or duty wider taken by an individual or a group = điệp vụ, công tác *a top - secret ~*
- **orbit** *(n)* /'ɔ:bɪt/ path of a man – made object, eg a satellite or spacecraft round a planet, a star etc = quỹ đạo *The spacecraft is in ~ round the moon.*
- **pipeline** *(n)* /'paɪplaɪn/ ống dẫn dầu
- **plastic surgery** *(n)* /ˌplæstɪk 'sɜ:dʒərɪ/ repairing or replacing injured or damaged tissue on the surface of the body, eg after a person has been badly burned = phẫu thuật thẩm mỹ
- **radar scanner** *(n)* /'reɪda: skænə/ bộ quét ra đa
- **rotten** *(adj)* /'rɒtn/ (infml) very bad; very unpleasant = xấu, cũ kỹ, vô giá trị *~ weather; ~ equipment.*
- **satellite** *(n)* /'sætəlaɪt/ man – made object moving in orbit around a planet, moon = vệ tinh
- **superstructure** *(n)* /'su:pstrʌktʃə / /'sju:-/ cấu trúc bên trên
- **synthetics** *(n)* /sɪn'θetɪks/ chất tổng hợp
- **track** *(v)* /træk/ follow the track of sb / st = theo dõi *~ a satellite, missile, etc using radar.*
- **undersea** *(adj)* /'ʌndəsi:/ below the surface of the sea = dưới biển *~ exploration*
- **vanish** *(v)* /'vænɪʃ/ disappear completely and suddenly = biến mất *The thief ~ ed into the crowd.*

PROPER NAMES

Bangkok	/bæŋ'kɒk/	Schwartz	/ʃwa:ts/
John Smith	/'dʒɒn smɪθ/	Scotland	/'skɒtlənd/
Otto krugerand	/ˌɒtəu'kru:gərənd/	Vienna	/vɪ'enə/

GRAMMAR NOTES :

a/- "... he organizes the biggest drug-smuggling operation in the world"

"Drug-smuggling" is a compound adjective that combines a noun with a present participle.

Formation : Noun + present participle

(the noun is the object of the transitive verb in "verb + ing" form)

EX : *Soul-stirring* story, *heart-breaking* cries, *fur-bearing* animal

b/ **Relative clauses** with *WHO, WHICH,* and *THAT*

Introduction to Relative clauses

Suppose you want to write a paragraph like this : *The house we moved into* is absolutely beautiful – *The people who live* here before us took very great care of it. The garden, *which is quite small,* is lovely. I'm glad we moved. I don't think we'll ever regret *the decision we made.*

If we want to speak or write like this, we have to master **Relative clauses.** We introduce relative clauses with these relative pronouns = *who, who(m), which, that* and *whose.*

WHO, WHICH, THAT as subject of a relative clause :

1- We use WHO or THAT to refer to *people.* We use them in place of noun subjects or pronoun subjects (I, you, he, etc.) and we *cannot omit* them.

They do not change when they refer to masculine, feminine, singular or plural :

He is the *man / She* is the *woman who / that* lives here.
(Not "He is the man who he...")

They are the *men / the women who / that* live here.
(Not "They are the men who they...")

2- We use WHICH or THAT (in place of noun subjects and *it*) to refer to animals and things :

- That's the *cat which / that* lives next door.
  Those are *the cats which / that* live next door.
- Here's a *photo which / that* shows my car.
  Here are some *photos which / that* show my car.

With people, WHO is more usual. With things, THAT is more usual, especially in conversations. WHICH can be a little formal.

The Relative Clauses *identify which person or thing we are talking about.*

Sometimes we can use an adjective or a phrase to identify someone or something, for example:

the *tall* girl, the *new* student, the woman *with blond hair*, the shop *on the corner*

But when we need a longer explanation we can use a Relative Clause, for example :

Natalie is the woman *who lived in the upstairs flat.*

M Now, 006. I want you to look at these pictures carefully. This could be the most important mission of your life. At last we've got the chance to break the biggest crime syndicate in the world – SMASH. Look at the man on the right. He's the one we've been after for years.

006 Who is he ?

M We think he's the one that controls SMASH. He's certainly the one that ordered the murder of 003, the one that planned the hijacking of the jumbo jet full of world leaders, and he organizes the biggest drugsmuggling operation in the world.

006 Do we know his name ?

M We know some of them. Otto Krugerand, that's the name he uses in legitimate business. Dr Nada, that's the name he was using in Vienna last year. John Smith, that's the signature he left in a hotel register in Bangkok.

006 Who's the gorilla standing behind him ?

M Ah, Slojob. He's the bodyguard who travels everywhere with Krugerand, and the only person he trusts. He's an expert assassin. He's the one who fed 004 to the crocodiles.

006 How charming ! What about the woman ?

M Don't you recognize her ?

006 No, I've never seen her before.

M You would have recognized her, if she hadn't had plastic surgery, and dyed her hair. Think back to Beirut.

006 Not Heidi Schwartz ! She's the one who arranged the pipeline explosion, and then vanished into thin air !

M She's also Krugerand's wife, and the only pilot he allows to fly his private plane.

006 Who's the little guy wearing thick glasses?

M That's Professor Beratski, the mad scientist who defected from Moldania. He's an expert on laser technology, and the first man who's been able to perfect a space laser weapon. Krugerand is planning to build a private space-rocket which could put a satellite into orbit. Do you understand the importance

M : Này 006. Tôi muốn anh nhìn kỹ các bức hình này. Đây có thể là điệp vụ quan trọng nhất trong đời anh. Sau cùng chúng ta đã có cơ hội đập tan tập đoàn tội ác lớn nhất thế giới – SMASH. Hãy nhìn người đàn ông bên tay phải. Hắn là người chúng ta đã theo đôi từ nhiều năm nay.

006 : Hắn là ai ?

M : Chúng tôi nghĩ hắn là kẻ cầm đầu tổ chức SMASH. Chắc chắn hắn là người đã ra lệnh giết 003, là người đã tổ chức vụ cướp chiếc máy bay phản lực khổng lồ chở đầy các nhà lãnh đạo thế giới, và hắn đã tổ chức chiến dịch buôn lậu bạch phiến lớn nhất thế giới.

006 : Chúng ta biết tên hắn không ?

M : Chúng ta biết một số tên. Otto Krugerand, đó là tên hắn dùng khi làm ăn hợp pháp. Bác sĩ Nada, đó là tên hắn sử dụng ở Vienna năm ngoái. John Smith, đó là chữ ký hắn để lại ở một khách sạn Bangkok.

006 : Thằng khỉ đột đứng sau lưng hắn là ai ?

M : À, Slojob. Đó là tay cận vệ cùng với Krugerand đi khắp nơi, và là người duy nhất hắn tin tưởng. Hắn là một tay ám sát chuyên nghiệp. Hắn là người đã ném 004 cho cá sấu ăn.

006 : Dễ thương quá ! Còn người phụ nữ này thì sao?

M : Anh không nhận ra cô ta sao ?

006 : Không, tôi chưa bao giờ gặp cô ta.

M : Anh hẳn đã nhận diện được cô ấy nếu cô nàng đã không giải phẫu thẩm mỹ và nhuộm tóc. Hãy nhớ lại ở Beirut xem.

006 : Không phải Heidi Schwartz đấy chứ. À là người đã tổ chức vụ nổ ống dẫn dầu, rồi biến mất không để lại dấu vết gì !

M : Á cũng là vợ của Krugerand và là phi công duy nhất hắn cho phép lái chiếc máy bay riêng của hắn.

006 : Cái thằng cha nhỏ thó đeo kính dày cộp này là ai ?

M : Đó là giáo sư Beratski, bác học điên đã đào thoát khỏi Moldania. Hắn là chuyên viên kỹ thuật laser, và là tay đầu tiên có khả năng hoàn thiện một loại vũ khí laser không gian. Krugerand đang dự tính chế tạo một hỏa tiễn không gian riêng có thể đưa một vệ tinh vào quỹ đạo. Anh hiểu tầm quan trọng của việc này chưa 006 ? Nếu chúng đưa vũ khí laser

of this, 006 ? If they got a laser weapon into space, they could hold the world to ransom. That's something which must not happen, 006 !

M Take a look at this picture, 006.

006 It's an oil-rig.

M It looks like it, doesn't it ? It belongs to Krugerand's oil company. It's a rig that's supposed to be drilling for oil in the Indian Ocean. Below it, there's a vast undersea complex.

006 The superstructure looks odd.

M In fact it conceals the launch-pad they're going to use for the rocket.

006 That must be a radar scanner, there.

M Yes. It's the scanner they'll use to track the rocket, but they can also see anything that tries to get near the rig. It's going to be very difficult to get you in, 006.

006 There's a helicopter pad.

M We think that would be too dangerous. Look at the helicopter closely. It carries air-to-air missiles which could destroy any aircraft approaching the rig.

006 How are we going to do it then ?

M Go home and pack. We're flying you to Scotland tonight for two weeks of intensive mini-submarine training.

006 That sounds fun !

M And 006, try not to be late for the plane this time.

Exercise 1

SMASH AGENTS

KRUGERAND

controller of oil company/ millionaire/leader of SMASH

SLOJOB

killer of 004/expert assassin/black belt karate

BERATSKI

defector from Moldania/laser expert/inventor, space weapon

HEIDI

plastic surgery/pilot/married Krugerand/met 006, Beirut

vào không gian chúng có thể khủng bố toàn thế giới. Đó là điều không được xảy ra 006 ạ !

M : Hãy nhìn hình này, 006.

006 : Đây là một dàn khoan dầu.

M : Trông giống như vậy, có phải không ? Nó thuộc về công ty dầu hỏa Krugerand. Nó là dàn khoan được cho là đang khoan dầu ở Ấn Độ Dương. Bên dưới nó là cả một phức hợp khổng lồ.

006 : Cấu trúc bên trên trông lạ thật.

M : Thực tế nó che dấu bệ phóng mà bọn chúng định dùng để phóng hỏa tiễn.

006 : Chắc ở đó phải có một dàn radar.

M : Đúng. Đó là hệ thống radar mà bọn chúng sẽ dùng để theo dõi đường bay của hỏa tiễn, nhưng bọn chúng cũng có thể thấy bất kỳ vật gì định đến gần dàn khoan. Sẽ rất khó để đưa anh vào bên trong, 006.

006 : Có một sân đáp trực thăng.

M : Chúng tôi cho rằng việc đó quá sức nguy hiểm. Hãy nhìn kỹ chiếc trực thăng này. Nó mang các hỏa tiễn không-đối-không có thể hủy diệt bất cứ phi cơ nào đến gần dàn khoan.

006 : Vậy chúng ta sẽ làm gì đây ?

M : Hãy về nhà và thu xếp hành trang. Chúng tôi sẽ cho phi cơ đưa anh tới Scotland đêm nay để qua một khóa huấn luyện cấp tốc về tàu ngầm bỏ túi trong 2 tuần.

006 : Nghe hay đấy !

M : Và 006, lần này cố gắng đừng để trễ chuyến bay.

Krugerand's the one	*who / that*	*controls an oil company.*
He's the one	*who / that*	*'s a millionaire.*

Make more sentences like this.

Exercise 2

DETAILS : OIL-RIG

SUPERSTRUCTURE
for hiding rocket
SCANNER
for tracking rocket
LAUNCH PAD
for launching rocket
PIPES
for rocket fuel
HELICOPTER
for transporting supplies/people, defending rig
LIFT
for reaching undersea complex
PRIVATE ARMY
for defending rig

What's that ? It's the radar scanner	*which* / *that*	they'll use for tracking the rocket.	

Make more sentences.

Exercise 3

She's the woman. He met her in Beirut.
She's the woman he met in Beirut.
Continue.

1 003 was the agent. Slojob killed him.
2 Krugerand's the leader. We've been trying to catch him.
3 Smith was the name. He used it in Bangkok.
4 Heidi's the woman. Krugerand married her.
5 Beratski's the scientist. SMASH recruited him.
6 They're the people. 006 must stop them.

PRACTICE

Language summary

He / She	*is the one*	*who / that*	*does / did*	*it.*
It / That		*which / that*		
Those / They're	*are the ones*	*who / which / that*	*do / did*	

He's / She's / It's	*the one. I saw*	*him. / her. / it.*
They're	*the ones. I saw*	*them.*

He's / She's / It's	*the one I saw.*
They're	*the ones I saw.*

Lord Street is a small side-street in Watermouth. Look at the six shops.
One of them sells confectionery and tobacco.

One of them repairs shoes.
One of them does dry cleaning.

One of them sells antiques.
One of them does photo-copying

One of them sells children's clothes.

Exercise 1

'Bygones' must be the one that sells antiques. Write five more sentences.

Exercise 2

Antique shop/ Copy-shop/ Tobacconist's/ Cobbler's/ Dry Cleaner's/ Children's Boutique

A shop which sells children's clothes is a Children's Boutique.

Write five more sentences.

Exercise 3

Look at these statements by the people who run (own or manage) the shops.

Donald Swain 'I visit all the auctions, and I advertise in the local paper. It's a hobby as well as a job.'

William Smart 'We bought the shop when I retired. I like working with my wife, and it's nice to meet so many people. I don't smoke myself, which is strange, I suppose.'

Antonia Porter 'I've got three children, and it was so difficult to find nice clothes for them. That's why I decided to start my own business.'

Sylvia Openshaw 'Actually, I'm not the owner. It's a national chain, and I'm just the manageress. We do it all on the premises. If you bring in something at ten, it'll be ready by twelve.'

Penelope Rankin 'I used to teach secretarial skills. So many offices have rotten equipment. The machines here are terribly expensive, but I lease them from the manufacturer.'

Percival Digby 'Forty years in the trade, that's me. Of course the quality's gone down a lot... all these synthetics. If you ask me, leather's still the best.'

Phố Lord là một phố nhỏ ven đường. Nhìn 6 cửa hàng :
Một trong các cửa hàng này bán bánh kẹo và thuốc lá.
Một trong các cửa hàng này sửa giày.
Một trong các cửa hàng này làm dịch vụ hấp tẩy.
Một trong các cửa hàng này bán đồ cổ.
Một trong các cửa hàng này làm dịch vụ phôtôcopi.
Một trong các cửa hàng này bán quần áo trẻ em.

Bài tập 1

'Bygones' chắc là cửa hàng bán đồ cổ.
Viết thêm 5 câu nữa.

Bài tập 2

Cửa hàng đồ cổ/cửa hiệu phôtôcopi/Tiệm thuốc lá/Tiệm sửa giày/Tiệm hấp tẩy/Cửa hàng quần áo trẻ em.
Cửa hàng bán quần áo trẻ em là Children's Boutique.
Viết thêm 5 câu nữa.

Bài tập 3

- Hãy xem các lời sau đây do những người quản lý nhà hàng phát biểu.

D.S "Tôi viếng tất cả các cuộc bán đấu giá và tôi quảng cáo trên báo địa phương. Đó là sở thích và cũng là nghề nghiệp."

William Smart "Chúng tôi mua cửa hàng này lúc tôi về hưu. Tôi thích cùng làm việc với vợ tôi và được gặp gỡ nhiều người là điều thú vị. Bản thân tôi lại không hút thuốc, tôi nghĩ cũng lạ.

Antonia Porter "Tôi có ba đứa con, và tìm quần áo đẹp cho chúng thì thật là khó. Đó là lý do tại sao tôi quyết định ra làm ăn riêng."

Sylvia Openshaw : "Thật ra tôi không phải là chủ. Đây là một mắc xích của nhà nước và tôi chỉ là người quản lý. Chúng tôi làm việc ngay tại chỗ. Nếu bạn mang đến món gì đó lúc 10 giờ thì khoảng 12 giờ là xong".

P.R : "Trước đây tôi thường dạy nghiệp vụ văn phòng. Quá nhiều các cơ quan có thiết bị cũ kỹ. Máy móc ở đây đắt kinh khủng, nhưng tôi thuê máy từ nhà sản xuất."

P.D : "Tôi đây đã 40 năm trong nghề kinh doanh. Tất nhiên chất lượng đã sa sút rất nhiều... tất cả những loại chất tổng hợp này. Nếu bạn hỏi, tôi cho là da thuộc vẫn là tốt nhất."

William Smart must be the one that runs "W&E Smart."
Write five more sentence.

Exercise 4

William Smart is the man who runs the shop which sells confectionery and tobacco.
Write five more sentences.

Exercise 5

Look at the statements in Exercise 3.
William Smart is the man who bought a shop when he retired.
He's the one who works with his wife.
Write ten more sentences.

Exercise 6

That's the club. I went to it last night.
That's the club I went to last night.
Continue.

1 That's the hotel. I've often stayed in it. . . . . .
2 This is the book. I'm reading it at the moment. . . . . .
3 She's the woman. I gave the documents to her. . . . . .
4 Those are the girls. My sister teaches them. . . . . .

Exercise 7

That's the shop. It sells antiques.
That's the shop which sells antiques.
That's the shop. I was in it this morning.
That's the shop I was in this morning.
Continue.

1 She's the one. I used to be at school with her. . . . . .
2 She's the one. She used to be at school with me. . . . . .
3 He's the man. He plays for Eastfield United. . . . . .
4 He's the man. I've often seen him on TV. . . . . .

William Smart có lẽ là người quản lý của hàng "W&E Smart".
Viết thêm 5 câu nữa.

Bài tập 4

William Smart là người quản lý của hàng bánh kẹo và thuốc lá.
Viết 5 câu nữa.

Bài tập 5

Xem các lời phát biểu ở bài tập 3. William Smart là người đã mua cửa hàng lúc về nghỉ hưu. Ông ấy là người cùng làm việc với vợ mình.
Viết thêm 10 câu nữa.

Bài tập 6

Đó là câu lạc bộ tôi đến tối hôm qua.

5 These are the letters. You asked me to post them. . . . . .
6 He must be the boy. We saw him running away. . . . . .
7 This is the magazine. I told you about it. . . . . .
8 These must be the ones. You wanted me to find them. . . . . .

Bài tập 7

Đó là cửa hàng bán đồ cổ.

Đó là cửa hàng tôi đến sáng nay.

5 They've the people. They live in my street. . . . . .
6 They're the people. I live near them. . . . . .
7 Those are the ones. I've been looking for them. . . . . .
8 Those must be the ones. They were on my desk. . . . . .

Unit 46 Operation Accomplished

Điệp vụ đã hoàn tất

VOCABULARY

- **aircraft carrier** *(n)* /'eɔkrɑ:f,kærɪɔ/ ship that carries aircraft and is used as a base for landing and taking off = tàu sân bay.
- **anti submarine net** *(n)* /'æntɪ,sʌbmə'ri:n net/ = lưới chống tàu ngầm
- **aquarium** *(n)* /ə'kweərɪəm/ (pl –s or – *ria*) (building containing an) artificial pond or glass tank where live fish and other water creatures and plants are kept = hồ cá
- **blast – off** *(n)* /blɑ:st ɒf/ (time of) launching of a spacecraft = giờ phóng phi thuyền
  Blast – off is in 30 seconds
- **blow** *(n)* /bləʊ/ hard stroke (given with the fist, a weapon, etc) = cú đấm *He received a severe – on / to the head.*
- **cabaret** *(n)* /'kæbɔreɪ/ entertainment (esp singing or dancing) provided in a restaurant or night – club while the customers are eating or drinking = trò múa hát mua vui trong các hộp đêm *Have you done any – ?*
- **commander** *(n)* /kə'mɑ:ndə/ 1. person who commands = người chỉ huy *the – of the expedition.*
  2. (Brit) officer in the British Navy immediately below the rank of captain
- **courier** *(n)* /'kurɪə/ messenger carrying news or important papers = người đưa thư, người đưa tin
- **device** *(n)* /dɪ'vaɪs/ thing made or adapted for a special purpose = dụng cụ
  a – for measuring pressure; a labour – saving –
- **flame thrower** *(n)* /'fleɪm θrəʊə/ weapon that projects a stream of burning fuel = súng phun lửa
- **freight** *(n)* /freɪt/ goods transported by ships, aeroplanes, or trains = hàng hóa chuyên chở *send goods by air –.*
  freight *(v)* transport (merchandise) as freight
  freighter *(n)* ship or aircraft that carries mainly freight.
- **frogman** *(n)* /'frɒgmən/ (pl – *men* /-mən/) swimmer with a rubber suit, flippers and an oxygen supply that enables him to work underwater for periods of time = người nhái.
- **grab** *(v)* /græb/ – st (from sb / st) grasp st suddenly or roughly; snatch st selfishly or rudely = vồ, chụp, tóm *He – bed my collar and pulled me towards him.*
- **grip** *(v)* /grɪp/ take and keep a firm hold of sb / st = nắm chặt *The frightened child – ped its mother's hand.*
- **hover** *(v)* /'hɒvə/ (of birds, airplanes, etc) remain in the air in one place = bay lượn
  There was a helicopter hovering overhead.
- **instantly** *(adv)* /'ɪnstəntlɪ/ at once, immediately *an – recognizable face.*
- **leap** *(v)* /li:p/ (pt, pp leapt /lept/ or /li:pt/) jump vigorously = nhảy mạnh *A frog leapt out; (fig) My heart leapt for joy at the news.*
  leap *(n)* vigorous jump *He crossed the garden in three –s.*
- **lift shaft** *(n)* /'lɪftʃɑ:ft/ long narrow (usu vertical) space, for a lift to move up and down = lòng ống thang máy
- **massive** *(adj)* /'mæsɪv/ large, heavy and solid = to lớn *a – rock, monument.*
  massiveness *(n)*
- **punch** *(v)* /pʌntʃ/ strike (sb / st) hard with the fist = đấm, thụi *– a man on the chin.*
- **rendevous** *(n)* /'rɒndɪvu:/ (pl unchanged /-z/) – (with sb) meeting at an agreed time = cuộc hẹn hò *arrange, make a – with Bill at the pub at 2 o'clock.*
- **sea bed** *(n)* /'si:bed/ floor of the sea = đáy biển
- **spiral** *(adj)* /'spaɪərəl/ advancing or ascending in a continuous curve that winds round a central point = theo hình trôn ốc *a – staircase. A snail's shell is – in form.*
- **surface** *(n)* /'sɜ:fɪs/ uppermost area or layer of st = bề mặt *the rough – of the wall.*
- **throb** *(v)* /θrɒb/ – (with st) (of the heart, pulse,) beat, esp faster or stronger than usual = đập mạnh *Her heart was – bing with excitement.*
- **transmitter** *(n)* /trænz'mɪtə/ máy phát sóng

EXPRESSIONS

Ladies first ! Xin mời phụ nữ trước !
After you Xin nhường cho anh trước
take somebody by surprise làm cho ai ngạc nhiên
you haven't got a light, have you ? anh không có lửa à ?
oh, blast ! Ô, trời ơi !
to be situated ở vị trí, ngụ

PROPER NAMES

Aberdeen	/ˌæbəˈdiːn/
Flemming	/ˈflemɪŋ/
London	/ˈlʌndən/
Kenya	/ˈkiːnjə , ˈkenjə/
Pip kingsley	/ˌpɪpˈkɪŋzlɪ/
Washington	/ˈwɒʃɪŋtən/

USAGE :

1. Rendezvous /ˈrɒndɪvuː/ : date (To have a rendezvous with s/o)
2. Suicide pill /sjuːɪsaɪd , suːɪ-/ : A kind of pill the agent takes to kill himself in order to keep things unrevealed. It is usually hidden in his mouth.
   To commit suicide = to kill oneself.
3. To have (no) difficulty (in) + verb + ing... (không) gặp khó khăn trong việc...

Ex : I have no difficutly (in) finding her house

4. "To be made of" and "to be made from" : làm bằng

Ex :

1. The wall was *made of* glass (Materials remain unchanged after an object has been made)
2. This cake is *made from* flour and sugar (Materials are changed after an object has been made).
   Sau khi đồ vật đã được làm thành, nếu nguyên liệu không thay đổi ta dùng "made of", nếu thay đổi, dùng "made from"

5. To take someone by surprise : to surprise someone
6. To look forward to + gerund : mong ngóng việc gì
   I *look forward to* returning home soon.

Grammar

I. WHOSE + Noun in relative clauses.

1. We use WHOSE in place of possessive adjectives (my, your, his, etc) to refer to *people*.

WHOSE does not change when it refers to masculine, feminine, singular or plural :

He's the *man* / *She's* the *woman whose car* was stolen (Not "whose his car was stolen")

They're the *people whose cars* were stolen. (Not "whose their cars were stolen")

2. We sometimes use WHOSE in place of *its* to refer to *things* and *animals*.
   That's the *house whose windows* were broken. (= the windows of which)
3. We can also use WHOSE with prepositions:
   He's the man from *whose house* the pictures were stolen. (formal)
   He's the man *whose house* the pictures were stolen *from*.

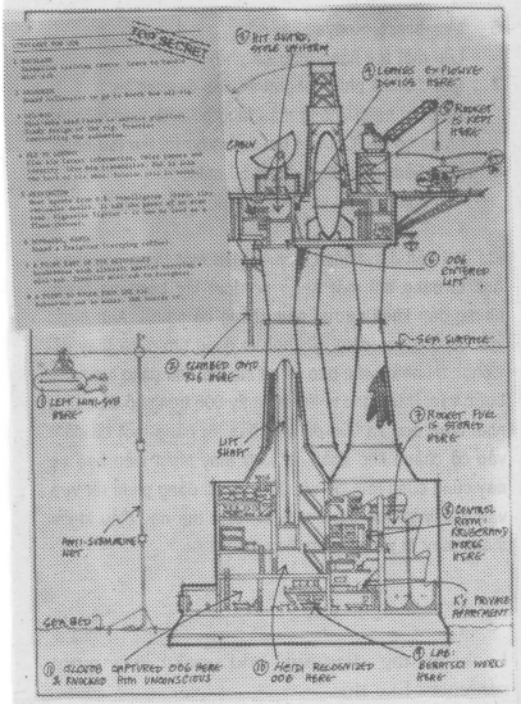
II. WHERE in Relative clauses.

WHERE is a Relative Adverb.

Ex : This is the village *where* I used to live.
He went to Scotland *where* he did this.
This is *where* it happened.

Exercise 1

Look at the itinerary for 006 on page 319.
He went to Scotland, where he learnt to handle a mini-sub.
He went to London, where he was given a transmitter.
He was given a transmitter, which was put into the heel of his shoe.
Make complete sentences, using 'where' and 'which' about 006's itinerary.



Notes :

1. LEFT MINI-SUB HERE
2. CLIMBED ON TO RIG HERE
3. HIT GUARD, STOLE UNIFORM
4. LEAVES EXPLOSIVE DEVICE HERE
5. ROCKET IS KEPT HERE
6. 006 ENTERED LIFT
7. ROCKET FUEL IS STORED HERE
8. CONTROL ROOM : KRUGERAND WORKS HERE
9. LAB : BERATSKI WORKS HERE
10. HEIDI RECOGNIZED 006 HERE
11. SLOJOB CAPTURED 006 HERE & KNOCED HIM VNCONSCIOUS

Ghi chú: Sơ đồ dàn khoan

1. Rời tàu ngầm bỏ túi ở đây
2. Leo lên dàn khoan ở đây
3. Đánh nhân viên bảo vệ và đoạt đồng phục
4. Đặt dụng cụ phát nổ ở đây
5. Tên lửa nằm ở đây
6. 006 vào thang máy
7. Nhiên liệu tên lửa chứa ở đây
8. Phòng điều khiển : Krugerand làm việc ở đây
9. Phòng thí nghiệm : Beratski làm việc ở đây
10. Heidi nhận ra 006 ở đây
11. Slojob bắt 006 ở đây và đánh anh bất tỉnh.

ITINERARY FOR 006 TOP SECRET

1 SCOTLAND

Submarine training centre. Learn to handle mini-sub.

2 ABERDEEN

Board helicopter to go to North Sea oil-rig.

3 OIL-RIG

Mini-subs used there to service pipelines. Study design of the rig. Practise controlling the submarine.

4 FLY TO LONDON

Give him latest information, false papers and identity. Give him transmitter. Put it into the heel of his shoe. Suicide pill in tooth.

5 WASHINGTON

Meet agents from U.S. Intelligence. Obtain tiny explosive device. It has the power of an atom bomb. Cigarette lighter – it can be used as a flame-thrower.

Lộ trình cho 006 (Tối mật)

1 Scotland :

Trung tâm huấn luyện tàu ngầm. Học cách điều khiển tàu ngầm bỏ túi.

2 Aberdeen :

Lên phi cơ trực thăng đến dàn khoan dầu ở Biển Bắc

3 Dàn khoan dầu :

Các tàu ngầm bỏ túi được sử dụng ở đây để bảo dưỡng các ống dẫn dầu. Nghiên cứu thiết kế của dàn khoan. Tập điều khiển tàu ngầm.

4 Bay đi London :

Cung cấp cho anh những thông tin mới nhất, giấy tờ giả, chứng minh thư giả. Cung cấp cho anh điện đài. Cất điện đài vào đế giày. Thuốc tự sát giấu trong răng.

5 Washington

Gặp mặt các điệp viên của Tình Báo Mỹ. Nhận dụng cụ phát nổ bé tí. Dụng cụ này có sức công phá của một trái bom nguyên tử. Bật lửa – nó có thể dùng làm súng phun lửa.

6 MOMBASSA, KENYA
Board a freighter (carrying coffee).
7 A POINT EAST OF THE SEYCHELLES
Rendezvous with aircraft carrier carrying a mini-sub. Transfer mini-sub to freighter.
8 A POINT 50 MILES FROM THE RIG
Submarine put in water. 006 boards it.

When 006 reached the rig he climbed up one of the towers. He was looking for someone whose uniform he could steal, but the rig seemed deserted. He went into an empty cabin. As he was looking for a change of clothes, the guard, whose cabin he was searching, came in. He was surprised to see 006 in his black frogman's suit and 006 had no difficulty in silencing him with one blow to the neck. Fortunately the guard was about the same size as 006, and the uniform fitted perfectly. There was a pass in the pocket. The pass operated the lift which went down to the undersea complex.

Exercise 2

Look at the diagram on page 319.
This is where 006 left the mini sub.

006 woke up with his hands tied behind his back. His head was throbbing. He was not alone. In the room were Krugerand, Slojob, Heidi, and the guard whose clothes he was wearing. And a beautiful girl, whose hands were also tied, was lying beside him. 006 recognized her instantly. She was Pip Kingsley, an American agent he'd met in Washington. 006 looked at his watch. The explosive device he'd put on the rig was timed to explode in 45 minutes.
Krugerand noticed that 006 was awake.
'Welcome, Commander Fleming. We've been expecting you,' he said smiling. 'Unfortunately we haven't got time to show you around. Blast-off is in forty minutes. Slojob will take you to feed the sharks... they must be very hungry by now.'
'I'm delighted to meet you, Krugerand. I've been looking forward to it. Thank you for your invitation. I've always been interested in big fish. See you later.'

6 Mombassa, Kenya :
Lên một tàu hàng (chở cà phê)
7 Một điểm ở phía đông quần đảo Seychelles :
Hẹn với hàng không mẫu hạm có chở theo một tàu ngầm bỏ túi. Chuyển tàu ngầm bỏ túi lên tàu hàng.
8 Một điểm cách dàn khoan 50 miles :
Tàu ngầm được hạ thủy. 006 lên tàu ngầm.

Khi 006 đến dàn khoan, anh leo lên một trong các tháp. Anh ta đang tìm một ai đó để đoạt lấy bộ đồng phục, nhưng dàn khoa dường như không có người. Anh bước vào một ca bin trống. Khi anh ta đang tìm cách thay đổi y phục thì nhân viên bảo vệ ca bin mà anh đang lục soát, bước vào. Hắn ngạc nhiên khi thấy 006 trong bộ đồ người nhái màu đen và 006 đã làm hắn im bằng một cú đấm vào cổ chẳng khó khăn gì. May thay nhân viên bảo vệ này cũng cùng tầm cỡ với 006, và bộ đồng phục rất vừa vặn. Có một tấm thẻ trong túi. Tấm thẻ này điều khiển thang máy đi xuống phức hợp dưới biển.

Look at the diagram, and make ten more sentences like this.

006 tỉnh dậy với hai tay bị trói sau lưng. Đầu anh nhức như búa bổ. Không phải chỉ có mặt một mình anh. Trong phòng còncó Krugerand, Slojob, Heidi và tên bảo vệ mà bộ đồng phục của hắn anh đang mặc trên mình. Và một cô gái xinh đẹp, hai tay cũng bị trói đang nằm cạnh anh. 006 nhận ra cô ta ngay. Đó là Pip Kingsley, một điệp viên Mỹ mà anh đã gặp ở Washington. 006 nhìn đồng hồ. Quả bom mà anh ta đã đặt trên dàn khoan được tính giờ cho 45 phút nữa.

Krugerand nhận thấy 006 đã tỉnh.
"Xin chào Chỉ huy trưởng Fleming. Chúng tôi đang mong ông đây", hắn cười. "Rất tiếc là chúng tôi không đủ thời gian để đưa ông đi xem quanh đây. Hỏa tiễn sẽ rời bệ phóng trong 40 phút nữa. Slojob sẽ quăng ông cho cá mập... giờ này chắc chúng đói lắm rồi".

"Rất sung sướng được gặp ông, Krugerand. Tôi đã trông mong dịp này từ lâu. Cảm ơn ông đã mời. Tôi luôn luôn thích cá lớn. Hẹn gặp lại".

'I don't think so, Commander. This will be your last mission. Slojob ! Take Commander Fleming and Miss Kingsley to the aquarium.'
Slojob escorted them to Krugerand's private apartment. One wall was made of thick glass and behind it 006 could see the dark shapes of the sharks, cruising around. Slojob pushed them up a spiral stair-case to a platform above the shark tank.
'Ladies first,' 006 said politely.
'No, no. After you,' replied Miss Kingsley with a smile on her face.
'You wouldn't refuse us a last cigarette, would you, Slojob ?' 006 asked.
'I don't smoke,' Slojob grinned. 'And you should give up smoking, it's bad for your health.'
'Now, come on, Slojob. There are some cigarettes and a lighter in my pocket.' 006 indicated his jacket pocket.

'OK. But don't try anything.'
Slojob reached into 006's pocket and took out the cigarettes and lighter. He was careful to keep his gun trained on 006 all the time. He took a cigarette out of the packet and pushed it into 006's mouth. He pressed the lighter with his thumb. The sudden force of the flame took him by surprise. At that moment 006 kicked him in the stomach. He fell backwards and disappeared into the tank. Within seconds all that remained of him was a red pool of blood on the surface. The lighter had dropped to the floor and was still burning and 006 was able to burn through the ropes which held his hands. He quickly released Miss Kingsley. He glanced at his watch.

'We haven't got much time,' he said. 'Can you fly a helicopter ?'
'I can fly anything if I have to,' she replied calmly.
'Good. Go and get the engines started and be ready to go. If I'm not there in exactly ten minutes, go without me.'

"Chỉ huy trưởng ơi, không đâu. Đây sẽ là điệp vụ cuối cùng của ông, Slojob ! Hãy mang chỉ huy trưởng Fleming và cô Kingsley đến hồ cá".
Slojob đưa họ tới khu dành riêng cho Krugerand. Một bức tường được làm bằng kiếng dày và đứng sau nó 006 có thể thấy những hình dạng tối đen của những con cá mập, đang lội lòng vòng. Slojob đẩy họ lên một cầu thang hình xoắn ốc đến một cái thềm bên trên hồ cá.

"Ưu tiên cho phụ nữ", 006 nói một cách lịch sự.
"Không, không. Anh trước", cô Kingsley đáp với một nụ cười trên môi.
"Anh không từ chối chúng tôi một điếu thuốc cuối cùng chứ ?" 006 hỏi.
"Tôi không hút thuốc", Slojob cười nhăn nhở. Và anh cũng nên bỏ hút đi thôi, có hại cho sức khỏe đấy".
"Thôi mà, Slojob. Có vài điếu và một cái bật lửa trong túi tôi". 006 ra dấu chỉ vào túi áo mình.

"OK. Nhưng đừng giở trò gì đấy".
Slojob thò tay vào túi 006, lấy thuốc và bật lửa ra. Hắn cẩn thận lúc nào cũng chĩa súng vào người 006. Hắn lấy một điếu thuốc ra khỏi bao và đẩy vào miệng 006. Hắn dùng ngón cái ấn bật lửa. Ngọn lửa phụt lên thật đột ngột làm hắn ngạc nhiên. Ngay lúc đó 006 đá vào bụng hắn. Hắn ngã ra phía sau và mất dạng trong hồ cá. Trong vòng mấy giây hắn chỉ còn là một vùng máu đỏ loang trên mặt hồ. Cái bật lửa đã rơi xuống sàn, vẫn còn đang cháy và 006 có thể đốt đứt những sợi dây thừng đang trói hai tay. Anh nhanh chóng giải thoát cho cô Kingsley. Anh liếc nhìn đồng hồ.

"Chúng ta không còn nhiều thì giờ nữa", anh nói.
"Cô biết lái trực thăng không".
"Nếu tình thế bắt buộc thì cái gì tôi cũng lái được". Cô nói.
"Tốt. Hãy đi khởi động máy và sẵn sàng rời khỏi đây. Đúng 10 phút nữa nếu tôi không tới kịp chỗ máy bay đậu thì cô cứ bay thẳng, không cần có tôi".

006 ran back to the control room and walked calmly in. 'Good evening, gentlemen,' he said. Krugerand turned, and he was moving his hand towards his pocket when a jet of flame from 006's lighter threw him back across the room. 006 pointed the lighter at Beratski and Heidi while he pulled every switch on the control panel until it exploded and burst into flames. 006 ran quickly to the lift but it was on fire. He had five minutes left and he started to climb the ladder in the lift shaft. He was halfway up when he felt a hand grabbing at his ankles. It was Krugerand ! 006 gripped the ladder tightly, turned and kicked Krugerand hard in the face. He fell back, screaming, into the flames below. The helicopter was already in the air, hovering about a metre above the pad. 006 leapt onto a wheel, shouting 'Take it up ! Take it up !' The helicopter soared into the sky. A few seconds later there was a massive explosion as the rig went up. 006 managed to climb into the helicopter cabin. He sat back, reached into his pocket and took out his cigarettes. He put one in his mouth, 'Oh blast !' he said. 'I seem to have forgotten my lighter. You haven't got a light, have you ?'

006 chạy ngược trở lại phòng điều khiển và bình thản bước vào. "Chào quí ngài", anh nói. Krugerand xoay người lại và hắn vừa định đưa tay vào túi thì một tia lửa từ cái bật lửa của 006 đã thổi hắn dội lại tới cuối phòng. 006 chĩa bật lửa về phía Beratski và Heidi đồng thời kéo tất cả các cần gạt trên pa-nô điều khiển cho tới khi nó phát nổ và bốc cháy. 006 phóng nhanh đến thang máy nhưng nó cũng đã bốc lửa. Anh còn 5 phút nữa và bắt đầu leo lên thang trong đường thông thang máy. Anh vừa mới leo được nữa đường thì cảm thấy có một bàn tay đang bấu chặt lấy mắt cá chân của mình. Chính là Krugerand ! 006 giữ thang thật chặt, quay lại và đá mạnh vào mặt Krugerand. Hắn bật ngửa ra phía sau, rú lên, và rơi vào đám lửa bên dưới. Chiếc trực thăng đã bay ở trên không, bay lượng khoảng 1 mét trên sân đáp. 006 nhảy lên chụp lấy một bánh xe, la lớn "Bốc lên! Bốc lên !" Chiếc trực thăng lao nhanh trên bầu trời. Vài giây sau một tiếng nổ dữ dội vang lên khi dàn khoan nổ tung. 006 tìm cách leo vào ca-bin của trực thăng. Anh dựa ngửa ra sau thọc tay vào túi lấy thuốc. Anh đưa một điếu lên miệng, "Ôi trời !". Anh nói "Dường như tôi đã để quên bật lửa rồi. Cô có lửa không ?"

PRACTICE

Language summary

He went to Scotland WHERE he did this.
This is WHERE it happened.

He was looking for someone WHOSE uniform he could steal.
A girl, WHOSE hands were tied, was lying beside him.

SEVEN DAYS IN ENGLAND BY COACH

Anglo tours

PRICE INCLUDES BREAKFAST AND EVENING MEAL

ITINERARY

Day one	*Day two*
LONDON	CAMBRIDGE
visit Tower of London & Buckingham Palace	go round colleges
evening, Jupiter Club – cabaret	*evening* in a country pub
overnight : Upminster Hotel	-country dancing
	overnight : University Arms Hotel

Day three	*Day five*	*Day six*
STRATFORD-ON-AVON	**NEW FOREST & BOURNEMOUTH**	**BATH**
sightseeing	see Winchester Cathedral	see Roman Baths
evening, theatre visit- 'Romeo and Juliet'	*afternoon*, Beaulieu National Motor Museum	*evening*, country pub-folksinging
overnight : Falstaff Hotel	*overnight* : Continental Hotel, Bournemouth	*overnight* : Hotel Trajan
Day four		***Day seven***
OXFORD		**LONDON**
visit University		shopping, West End
evening, Tudor Restaurant – special dinner		*evening*, National Theatre-'Hamlet'
overnight : Hotel Academia		*overnight* : Airport Hotel

Exercise 1

The tour starts on Tuesday. A travel agent is telling a customer about it.

Day 1

A *On Tuesday we're going to London where we'll visit the Tower and Buckingham Palace.*

B *In the evening we're going to the Jupiter Club where we'll see a cabaret.*

Now write the programme for Days 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7.

Exercise 2

The courier and the driver are discussing their last tour, and some of the things that happened.

Paul Muller/passport was stolen/in Cambridge.

Driver *Do you remember Paul Muller ?*

Courier *Yes, I do. He's the man whose passport was stolen in Cambridge.*

Write sentences with 'whose'.

1 Martha Van Buren/husband danced on the table at the Jupiter Club.

2 Mr and Mrs Rossi/little boy was sick on the coach in Oxford.

3 Madame Le Brun/suitcase broke at the airport.

Bài tập 1

Chuyến đi bắt đầu vào ngày thứ ba. Nhân viên công ty du lịch đang giới thiệu với một khách hàng về chuyến đi này.

Ngày 1

A Ngày thứ ba chúng ta sẽ đi Luân Đôn, nơi đây chúng ta sẽ đi viếng Tháp và Lâu đài Buckingham.

B Vào buổi tối chúng ta sẽ đến Câu lạc bộ Jupiter nơi đây chúng ta sẽ xem ca múa nhạc

Bây giờ hãy viết chương trình cho các ngày 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 và 7

Bài tập 2

Người đưa tin và tài xế đang bàn bạc chuyến đi cuối cùng và một số việc đã xảy ra.

Paul Muller/hộ chiếu bị mất cắp/ở Cambridge.

Tài xế : Anh có nhớ Paul Muller ?

Người đưa tin : Nhớ chứ. Anh ta là người bị mất hộ chiếu ở Cambridge.

Viết các câu với "whose".

4 Señor Gonzalez/wallet was stolen in London.

5 Mr Davies/wife got drunk in Bournemouth.

6 Mr and Mrs Macdonald/daughter got engaged to a waiter in Bath.

Exercise 3

That's the club. Mr Van Buren danced on the table there.

That's the club where Mr Van Buren danced on the table.

He's the man. His wife didn't speak to him once during the tour.

He's the man whose wife didn't speak to him once during the tour.

Join these sentences in the same way.

1 This is a picture of the Hotel Academia. We stayed there in Oxford.
2 Madame Le Brun was the woman. Her suitcase was full of bottles of whisky.
3 Bath was the place ! Mr Macdonald punched a waiter there.
4 This is a picture of Beaulieu. The National Motor Museum is situated there.
5 Do you remember Mr and Mrs Rossi ? Their son was sick three times.

Bài tập 3

Đó là câu lạc bộ. Ông Van Buren khiêu vũ trên bàn ở đó.

Kia là câu lạc bộ nơi Ông Van Buren khiêu vũ trên bàn.

Ông ta là người. Vợ ông ta không nói chuyện với ông ta một lời trong suốt chuyến đi.

Ông ta là người mà vợ không nói tới một lời trong suốt chuyến đi.

Nối lại các câu sau đây theo cách tương tự.

6 Mr Davies was the man. His wife drank 1 ½ litres of wine.
7 Winchester Cathedral was the place. Paul Muller broke his camera there.
8 She's the lady. Her husband was always late for the bus.
9 Mrs Macdonald's the one. Her husband fell asleep during 'Hamlet'.
10 Do you remember that pub near Cambridge ? Señor Gonzalez sang some songs in Spanish there.

Unit 47 Student Mastermind Học sinh thông thái

VOCABULARY

- **aristocracy** *(n)* /ˌærɪ'stɒkrəsɪ/ highest social class; the nobility = tầng lớp qui tộc *members of the ~.*
  aristocrat *(n)* /'ærɪstəkræt/ member of the aristocracy; nobleman or noblewoman
  aristocratic *(adj)* /ˌærɪstə'krætɪk/ belonging to or typical of the aristocracy *an ~ name, family, bearing.*
- **assassinate** *(v)* /ə'sæsɪneɪt/ kill (esp an important or famous person) for money or for political reasons.
  assassination *(n)* /əˌsæsɪ'neɪʃn/ murder of this kind.
- **bonfire** *(n)* /'bɒnfaɪə/ large fire made outdoors (for burning rubbish or) as a celebration = lửa mừng
  bonfire night (in Britain) the night of 5 November when the failure of the Gunpowder plot is celebrated with bonfires and fireworks.
- **capture** *(v)* /'kæptʃə/ take (sb / st) as a prisoner = bắt, tóm *~ an escaped convict*
  capture *(n)* 1. capturing or being captured. *the ~ of a thief*
  2. person or thing captured.
- **celebrate** *(v)* /'selɪbreɪt/ mark (a happy or important day, event, etc) with festivities and rejoicing. *~ Christmas, sb's birthday, a wedding anniversary.*
  celebration *(n)* /ˌselɪ'breɪʃn/ birthday *~.*
- **cellar** *(n)* /'selə/ wine cellar = hầm rượu
- **christian** *(n)* /'krɪstʃən/ person who believes in the Christian religion = người theo đạo cơ đốc
- **firework** *(n)* /'faɪəwɜ:k/ device containing chemicals that burn or explode spectacularly, used at celebrations = pháo *set off a few ~ s*
  fireworks *(n)* display of fireworks
- **optician** *(n)* /ɒp'tɪʃn/ person qualified to examine the eyes and prescribe glasses, etc as well as issue them = chuyên viên nhãn khoa *The ~ said I needed new glasses.*
- **orphan** *(n)* /'ɔ:fn/ child whose parents are dead = trẻ mồ côi
- **patron saint** *(n)* /ˌpeɪtrən 'seɪnt/ saint regarded as protecting a particular person, place, etc = thánh bảo hộ *St Christopher is the ~ of travellers.*
- **quiz master** *(n)* /'kwɪzˌmɑ:stə/ question-master = người điều khiển chương trình thi đố
- **Roman Empire** *(n)* /ˌrəʊmən 'empaɪə/ Đế quốc La Mã
- **session** *(n)* /'seʃn/ meeting or series of meetings of a parliament, lawcourt, etc for discussing or deciding st : hội nghị, phiên họp *the autumn ~ (ie sitting) of parliament.*
- **throughout** *(prep)* /θru:'aʊt/ in or into every part of (st) *News spread ~ the country.*
- **tragic** *(adj)* /'trædʒɪk/ causing great sadness, esp because extremely unfortunate or having terrible consequences = bi thảm *a ~ accident, mistake, loss*
- **vet** *(n)* /vet/ (infml) veterinary surgeon = thầy thuốc thú y
- **winner** *(n)* /'wɪnə/ person who wins = người chiến thắng *The ~ was presented with a trophy.*
  win *(v)* be victorious in (a contest, race, etc); do best.

EXPRESSIONS

to set off (fireworks) đốt (pháo hoa)

to blow up nổ tung, làm nổ, phá (bằng chất nổ...)

PROPER NAMES

Cleopatra	/klɪə'pa:trə/
Columbus	/kə'lʌmbəs/
Jesus Christ	/'dʒi:zəs kraɪst/
John Kenedy	/dʒɒn 'kenədɪ/
Josephine Bonaparte	/'dʒəʊzɪfi:n 'bəʊnəpa:t/
Hollywood	/'hɒlɪwʊd/
Magraret Thatcher	/ˌmægrɪt 'θætʃə/
Muhammed Ali	/mu'hæməd 'alɪ/
Neil Armstrong	/ˌni:l 'a:mstrɒŋ/
Sargasso Sea	/sa:'gæsəʊ si:/
Victoria Bamber	/vɪk'tɔ:rɪə 'bæmbə/
Waterloo	/wɔ:tə'lu:/
Yoko Ono	/'jəʊkəʊ 'ɒnə/

USAGE :

1. Prime Minister = Premier /'premiə/
2. As many/much + countable noun/uncountable noun + as possible :
   càng nhiều cái gì càng tốt

Ex :1. The child looks thin; he should drink as much milk as possible
2. We need to meet as many friends of yours as possible

GRAMMAR NOTES :

a/- "You have two minutes in which to answer as many questions as possible". The sentence may be rewritten as follows :
"You have two minutes in which you have to answer as many questions as possible".
The relative clause "in which you... as possible" can be replaced by an infinitive or an infinitive phrase that has the same meaning. (In this case, an infinitive phrase : "in which to answer... as possible".
Infinitives or infinitive phrases can be used in such a case when there is an idea of purpose or permission.

Ex :1. He has a lot of books to read (books that he can/must read)
2. She had something to do (something that she could do)
3. We could take this as the basis on which to continue our plan (The infinitive phrase must refer to the subject of the main clause)

b/ - "Where" "When" and "Why" : relative adverbs

1. "Where" can replace "in/at which" (used for place)

Ex : The hotel where (in/at which) they were staying... (see more examples in Unit 46)

2. "When" can replace "in/on which" (used for time)

Ex :1. The day when (on which) they arrived...
2. The year when (in which) he was born.....

3. "Why" can replace "for which" : The reason why he refused is....
There is every reason why (for which) you should come on time.

Quiz master Our next contestant on 'Student Mastermind' is Victoria Bamber, who is a student at Sandpool comprehensive. I'll just remind you of the rules, Miss Bamber. You have two minutes in which to answer as many questions as possible. If you do not know the answer, you should say, 'Pass'. I shall then go on to the next question. If you answer incorrectly, I shall then give the correct answer. You will get one point for each correct answer. If two contestants have the same number of points at the end, the one who has the fewest number of passes will be the winner. Are you ready ?

Victoria Yes.

QM Can you name the President of the United States whose early career was in Hollywood?

Victoria Er... Reagan. Ronald Reagan.

QM Correct. What is an instrument which shows the direction of north?

Chủ khảo : Thí sinh kế tiếp của cuộc thi "Học sinh xuất sắc" là Victoria Bamber, học sinh trường trung học Sandpool. Cô Bamber tôi xin nhắc cô về nội qui cuộc thi. Cô có 2 phút để trả lời càng nhiều câu hỏi càng tốt. Nếu cô không biết câu trả lời cô phải nói "Cho qua". Tôi sẽ hỏi sang câu kế. Nếu cô trả lời không đúng, tôi sẽ cho câu trả lời đúng. Mỗi câu trả lời đúng cô sẽ được 1 điểm. Nếu cuối cùng 2 thí sinh có cùng số điểm, thí sinh nào có số câu "Cho qua" ít nhất sẽ là người thắng cuộc. Cô sẵn sàng chưa ?

Victoria (V) : Vâng.

Chủ khảo (CK) : Cô có thể cho biết tên vị tổng thống Hoa Kỳ đã bắt đầu sự nghiệp của mình ở Hollywood?

V : Ơ... Reagan. Ronald Reagan.

CK : Đúng. Dụng cụ chỉ phương bắc là gì?

Victoria A compass ?

QM Correct. Can you tell me the name of the sea where eels go to breed and die ?

Victoria Er... um... pass.

QM Name the person who became the first woman prime minister of Britain ?

Victoria Mary... er, sorry... Margaret Thatcher.

QM I'll accept that. What is the date when the United States celebrates its independence ?

Victoria The fourth of July.

QM Correct. What do we call a person who always expects the best to happen ?

Victoria Er... an optimist.

QM Correct. Can you tell me the language which was spoken in the Roman Empire ?

Victoria Italian ?

QM No, wrong. The correct answer is Latin. What is the office people visit when they want advice about their marriage ?

Victoria Pass.

QM Who was the Egyptian queen whose beauty was famous throughout the world ?

Victoria Cleopatra.

QM That's correct. What's the newspaper column where jobs are advertised ?

Victoria Er... the job adverts ?

QM Can you be more exact ?

Victoria No. I can't think of it.

QM I'm afraid I can't give you that. We were looking for 'Situations Vacant'. Now can you tell me... (DING) I've started, so I'll finish. Can you tell me the name of the French Emperor whose final battle was at Waterloo?

Victoria Napoleon Bonaparte.

QM Correct. And at the end of that round Victoria Bamber has scored seven points. You passed on two. The sea where eels go to breed and die is the Sargasso Sea, and the office people visit when they want advice about their marriage is the 'Marriage Guidance Council'. Thank you. Can we have our next contestant, please ?

V : La bàn ?

CK : Đúng. Cô có thể cho chúng tôi biết tên vùng biển mà cá chình tới sinh sản và chết ?

V : Ơ... ư... cho qua.

CK : Cho biết tên người trở thành nữ thủ tướng đầu tiên của Anh Quốc ?

V : Mary... ơ, xin lỗi... Margaret Thatcher.

CK : Tôi chấp nhận câu trả lời đó. Cho biết ngày Hiệp Chủng Quốc Hoa Kỳ kỷ niệm nền độc lập của mình.

V : Ngày 4-7.

CK : Đúng. Một người luôn luôn mong đợi những gì tốt đẹp nhất xảy ra, chúng ta gọi là gì ?

V : Ơ... một người lạc quan.

CK : Đúng. Cô có thể cho tôi biết ngôn ngữ được sử dụng ở đế quốc La Mã ?

V : Tiếng Ý ?

CK : Không, sai rồi. Câu trả lời đúng là tiếng La tinh. Văn phòng mà người ta tới khi cần ý kiến về hôn nhân?

V : Cho qua.

CK : Ai là nữ hoàng Ai Cập có sắc đẹp lừng danh thế giới ?

V : Cleopatra.

CK : Đúng. Mục trong báo nơi mà người ta rao việc gọi là gì ?

V : Ơ... mục rao việc làm ?

CK : Cô có thể chính xác hơn không ?

V : Không. Em không nghĩ ra được.

CK : Tôi e rằng tôi không thể chấp nhận câu trả lời đó. Đó là mục "Cần người". Cô có thể cho tôi biết... (DING = chuông báo hết giờ) Tôi đã hỏi nên tôi sẽ hỏi nốt. Cô có thể cho biết tên của vị hoàng đế Pháp có các trận đánh sau cùng ở Waterloo ?

V : Napoleon Bonaparte.

CK : Đúng. Và kết thúc vòng này Victoria Bamber được 7 điểm. Cô không trả lời được 2 câu. Vùng biển mà cá chình tới sinh sản và chết là Biển Sargasso, và văn phòng người ta tới khi cần ý kiến về hôn nhân là "Hội Đồng Tư Vấn Hôn Nhân". Cám ơn. Xin mời thí sinh kế tiếp.

Exercise 1

Now practise the game with a partner.

Questions

1 What's a person who breaks into a house and steals things ?
2 Who was the boxer whose most famous words were 'I am the greatest' ?
3 What do we call a shop where bread is sold?
4 What is the day when Christians celebrate the birth of Jesus ?
5 What's the place where you stand and wait for a train ?
6 What's a tool which is used for digging ?

7 Can you tell me the unusual public transport which is used in San Francisco ?
8 Can you name the American president who was assassinated in 1963 ?
9 What do the British call the time of year when leaves fall from the trees ?
10 Name the two young lovers whose tragic story was made into a play by Shakespeare.

Exercise 2

Work with a partner. One of you uses List A, the other uses List B. Each of you writes down ten questions, using the words *who/which/where/when/whose* given in brackets in the list. Your question must give the answer provided in the list. For example :

Neil Armstrong (who)

Q *Can you tell me the name of the first man who walked on the moon ?*

A *Neil Armstrong.*

widower (whose)

Q *What do you call a man whose wife has died ?*

A *A widower.*

Now, with books closed, ask your partner the questions you have prepared. Your partner will then ask you to answer the questions he or she has prepared.

Answers : (10) Romeo and Juliet/ (9) autumn/ (8) John F.Kennedy/ (7) cable-car/ (6) spade/ (5) platform/ (4) Christmas Day/ (3) baker's/ (2) Muhammed Ali/ (1) burglar

List A

Neil Armstrong (who)
receipt (which)
newsagent's (where)
golden wedding (when)
careers advisory service (when)
widow (whose)
Josephine Bonaparte (whose)
sailor (who)
submarine (which)
casino (where)

List B

widower (whose)
Columbus (who)
sleeping-pill (which)
driving licence (which)
left-luggage office (where)
butcher's (where)
job centre (when)
silver wedding (when)
Yoko Ono (whose)
pilot (who)

PRACTICE

Language summary

This is the place WHERE it happened. *It's the thing WHICH did it.*
That's the day WHEN it happened. *She's the one WHOSE friend did it.*
He's the man WHO did it.

Exercise 1

Read this passage and complete the spaces with : where/ when / who/ which/whose.

Bài tập 1

Đọc bài khóa sau đây rồi điền vào chỗ trống với : where/when/who/which/whose.

"Remember, remember the fifth of November, gunpowder, treason and plot..."

The 5th of November is a day ..... children all over Britain light bonfires and set off fireworks. They are remembering Guy Fawkes .....attempt to blow up the Houses of Parliament was unsuccessful in 1605. On November 4th, Fawkes was found hiding in the cellars ..... lie beneath Parliament. There was also a large quantity of gunpowder .....he intended to set off ..... the King opened the new session of Parliament the next day. He was arrested, sentenced to death and hanged. There were several others in the plot, but Fawkes was the one .....

was caught and blamed. If he had succeeded, he would have killed the King, all of the Bishops, a large percentage of the aristocracy and most of the Members of Parliament. The cellars .....Fawkes was captured are still searched before each opening of Parliament, and on the evening of November 4th every year. November 5th is known as 'Guy Fawkes' Night', and a model of Fawkes is burned on the bonfires. Unfortunately, November 5th is also an evening .....hospitals are very busy treating children .....have been injured by fireworks. The fire brigade is also busy, putting out the fires .....have been started accidentally. Some people believe that it is a festival ..... we should forget. There are now strict controls on shops .....children buy fireworks, and television warnings about the dangers of fireworks.

Exercise 2

optician/tests people's eyes

A person who tests people's eyes is an optician.

bank/cash cheques

A place where you can cash cheques is a bank.

November **5th**/Guy Fawkes

November 5th is the day when we remember Guy Fawkes.

vacuum cleaner/cleans carpets

A machine which cleans carpets is a vacuum cleaner.

orphan/parents dead

A child whose parents are dead is an orphan.

Now write sentences from these prompts.

Bài tập 2

chuyên viên nhãn khoa/kiểm tra mắt cho mọi người.

Người kiểm tra mắt cho mọi người là chuyên viên nhãn khoa.

ngân hàng/lãnh tiền ngân phiếu

Nơi bạn có thể đem ngân phiếu lãnh tiền mặt là ngân hàng.

5 tháng 11/Guy Fawkes

Ngày 5 tháng 11 là ngày chúng ta tưởng nhớ Guy Fawkes.

máy hút bụi/làm sạch thảm

Cái máy làm sạch các tấm thảm là máy hút bụi.

trẻ mồ côi/cha mẹ chết

Đứa trẻ cha mẹ chết là trẻ mồ côi.

1 lawn mower/cuts grass .....

2 November 11th/end of World War I .....

3 vet/treats sick animals .....

4 building society/borrow money to buy a house .....

5 widower/wife dead .....

6 record player/plays records .....

7 journalist/writes for newspapers .....

8 July 14th/the French Revolution .....

9 filling station/buy petrol .....

10 video recorder/records television programmes .....

11 gymnasium/do exercises .....

12 widow/husband dead .....

13 waiter/brings your food in a restaurant .....

14 April 23rd/St George, the patron saint of England .....

Unit 48 The Daily Gazette

VOCABULARY

Nhật báo Gazette

- **ageing process** *(n)* /'eɪdʒɪŋ 'prəʊses/ process of growing old = quá trình lão hóa
- **alarming** *(adj)* /ə'lɑ:mɪŋ/ causing fear; disturbing = đáng báo động *an ~ increase in the number of burglaries.*
  alarm *(v)* /ə'lɑ:m/ frighten, disturb
- **assist** *(v)* /ə'sɪst/ ~ (sb) in / with st; ~ (sb) in doing st (fml) = help *Two men are ~ ing the police in their enquiries. You'll be required to ~ Mrs Smith in preparing a report.*
  assistance *(n)* (fml) help *Please call if you require ~.*
- **bullion** *(n)* /'bʊlɪən/ gold or silver in bulk or bars, before it is made into coins = nén, thoi (vàng, bạc)
  The thieves stole £1000000 in gold ~.
- **carriageway** *(n)* /'kærɪdʒweɪ/ part of a road on which vehicles travel = tuyến xe *the north bound ~ of a motorway.*
- **chaos** *(n)* /'keɪɒs/ complete disorder or confusion = sự lộn xộn, mất trật tự *The burglars left the house in (a state of) chaos.*
  chaotic *(adj)* /keɪ'ɒtɪk/ in a state of chaos, completely disorganized *With no one to keep order the situation in the classroom was ~.*
- **chimney** *(n)* /'tʃɪmnɪ/ structure through which smoke or steam is carried away from a fire, furnace, etc and through the roof or wall of a building = ống khói *a blocked ~; factory ~ s.*
- **clinical trial** *(n)* /'klɪnɪkl 'traɪəl/ thí nghiệm lâm sàng
- **defiance** *(n)* /dɪ'faɪəns/ open disobedience or resistance; refusal to give way to authority = sự chống cự, sự ngoan cố *The protestants showed their ~ of the official ban on demonstrations.*
  defiant *(adj)* showing defiance *a ~ manner, look, speech.*
- **entirely** *(adv)* /ɪn'taɪəlɪ/ completely = hoàn toàn *~ unnecessary. I'm not ~ happy with that idea.*
- **extensive** *(adj)* /ɪk'stensɪv/ 1. large in area; extending far = sâu rộng *~ farming* = thâm canh 2. large in amount; wide ranging = nhiều *Her knowledge of the subject is ~.*
- **gale** *(n)* /geɪl/ very strong wind = cơn gió mạnh *The ship lost its masts in the ~.*
- **hair loss** *(n)* /heə lɒs/ chứng rụng tóc
- **hasty** *(adj)* /'heɪstɪ/ said, made or done quickly; hurried = vội vã *a ~ departure, meal, farewell. Hasty words that are soon regretted.*
  hastily *(adv)* /'heɪstɪlɪ/
- **havoc** *(n)* /'hævək/ widespread damage; great destruction = sự tàn phá *The flood created ~.*
- **joint** *(n)* /dʒɔɪnt/ structure in the body of an animal by which bones are fitted together = khớp xương *ankle, knee, elbow, etc joints.*
- **lay – by** *(n)* /'leɪ baɪ/ (pl *lay-bys*) (Brit) (US *rest stop*) area at the side of a road where vehicles may stop without obstructing the flow of traffic = góc (thụt vào để) đỗ xe ở đường phố
- **local authority** *(n)* /'ləʊkl ɔ:'θɒrətɪ/ chính quyền địa phương
- **make way for** *(v)* /meɪk weɪ/ tạo điều kiện cho, nhường lối cho
- **miraculous** *(adj)* /mɪ'rækjʊləs/ 1. like a miracle; contrary to the laws of nature *make a ~ recovery.*
  2. (infml) remarkable, unexpected
  miracle *(n)* /'mɪrəkl/ unexpected or remarkable event
- **moorings** *(n)* /'mɔ:rɪŋz/ place where a ship, a boat, etc is moored = nơi buộc neo *private ~; mooring ropes.*
- **overpower** *(v)* /ˌəʊvə'paʊə/ defeat (sb) by greater strength or numbers = áp đảo *The burglars were easily ~ ed by the police.*
  overpowering *(adj)* /ˌəʊvə'paʊərɪŋ/ too strong; very powerful. *find the smell ~.*
- **painkiller** *(n)* /'peɪnkɪlə/ drug that reduces pain *She's on (ie taking) ~s.*
- **plight** *(n)* /plaɪt/ serious and difficult situation or condition = cảnh ngộ *the ~ of the homeless. I was in a dreadful ~ ~ I had lost my money and missed the last train home.*
- **premature** *(adj)* /'premətjʊə/ happening before the proper or expected time = sớm, trước hạn *A fire in the gallery caused the ~ closing of the exhibition.*

- **prescribe** *(v)* /prɪ'skraɪb/ advise or order the use of (esp a medicine, remedy, etc) = chỉ định *She ~ d some pills to help me to sleep.*
  prescription *(n)* doctor's written instruction for the composition and use of a medicine.
- **recapture** *(v)* /ˌriː'kæptʃə/ capture again (a person or animal that has escaped) = bắt lại *~ escaped prisoners.*
- **reluctant** *(adj)* /rɪ'lʌktənt/ unwilling and therefore slow to co-operate, agree = miễn cưỡng
  She was very ~ to admit the truth.
  reluctance *(n)* /rɪ'lʌktəns/ *She made a great show of ~, but finally accepted our offer.*
- **rubble** *(n)* /'rʌbl/ bits of broken stone, rock or bricks = đá vụn
  a road built on a foundation of ~.
- **seafront** *(n)* /'siːfrʌnt/ part of a town facing the sea = vùng nhìn ra biển *a hotel on the ~.*
- **self – portrait** *(n)* /ˌself 'pɔːtreɪt, - trɪt/ portrait of oneself = bức tự họa, chân dung tự vẽ *a ~ by Van Gogh.*
- **senile dimentia** *(n)* /ˌsiːnaɪl dɪ'menʃə/ illness of old people resutting in loss of memory, loss of control of bodily functions, etc. = chứng lẩm cẩm vì tuổi già
- **side effect** *(n)* /'saɪd ɪˌfekt/ (often pl) secondary, usu unpleasant or unwanted, effect of a drug = phản ứng phụ
- **speeding** *(n)* /'spiːdɪŋ/ traffic offence of travelling at an illegal or a dangerous speed = sự lái xe quá tốc độ *fined £60 for ~.*
- **stiffening** *(n)* /'stɪfnɪŋ/ sự sơ cứng
  stiffen *(v)* /'stɪfn/ (cause st to) become stiff or stiffer = trở nên cứng
  My back has stiffened (up) overnight.
- **take refuge** *(v)* /teɪk 'refjuːdʒ/ tạm trú, ẩn náu, trốn tránh
- **test well** *(n)* /test wel/ giếng thử nghiệm
- **the general public** *(n)* /ðə'dʒenərəl 'pʌblɪk/ công chúng
- **vanload** *(n)* /'vænləʊd/ xe tải đầy hàng
- **widespread** *(adj)* /'waɪdspred/ found or distributed over a large area = rộng rãi *~ damage, confusion.*
- **wonderdrug** *(n)* /'wʌndədrʌg/ drug that has extremely good, almost miraculous, effects = thần dược

EXPRESSIONS

the worst in living memory tồi tệ nhất trong trí nhớ của mọi người
... and that's that có vậy thôi
turn something loose thả lỏng
in broad daylight giữa ban ngày ban mặt

PROPER NAMES

Brian Huff	/ˌbraɪən 'hʌf/
Calypso	/'kælɪpsəʊ/
Clitheroe	/klɪðə'rəʊ/
Fleetwood	/'fliːtwʊd/
Gazette	/gə'zet/
Liverpool	/'lɪvəpuːl/
Switzerland	/'swɪtsələnd/

USAGE

1/ + To search for : to look for
2/ + To bring havoc to : to cause big damage to
EX : The 1968 flood *brought* terrible *havoc to* many parts of South Vietnam
3/ + To take refuge in/at some place : to get shelter in/at (lánh nạn, tạm ẩn)
4/ + So - called (adj) : cái gọi là
EX : The *so - called happiness,* freedom that they have given him are only the fancy cake (cái gọi là hạnh phúc, tự do mà họ đã ban cho hắn ta chẳng qua chỉ là bánh vẽ)
5/- + To be busy doing s/t : bận làm gì
EX : I'm so *busy doing* my homework that I don't think I will have time to go out with you tonight

GRAMMAR NOTES

a/- "A 3-year-old block" = A block that is 3 years old
Note : - Numeral + noun in singular form
- hyphen should be put between them
EX : A twenty-year-old girl

A hundred-year-old bridge
A fifteen-mile distance (a distance that is fifteen miles long)
A twenty four-passenger car (a car that can contain 24 passengers)
A 500-seat room... (a room that has 500 seats)

b/ Defining and non – defining clauses

1. When we write relative clauses with *who, which* or *whose,* we have to decide whether to use commas "round the clauses" or not.
2. In sentences like :

I've never met **anyone who** *can type as fast as you can.*
The magazine **which arrived** *this morning is five days late.*

The relative clauses tell us which person or thing we mean. They give us essential information which we cannot omit. We call them **defining clauses** because they "define" the person or thing they refer to. We never use commas in such sentences. We never use commas with *that* in relative clauses.

I've just had a phone call from the people **(that)** *we met during our holidays.*
The wallet **(that)** *you lost has been found.*

3. In sentences like :

- Our new secretary, **who can type faster than anyone I have ever met,** has completely reorganized our office.
- Time Magazine, **which is available in every country in the world,** is published every week.

The relative clauses add "extra information". If we take them out of the sentences, we won't seriously change the meaning. We call these **non-defining clauses** (they do not "define") and we use commas before and after them.

4. Sometimes we have to decide when the information is "essential" or "extra" and we may or may not use commas. We must decide this for ourselves :

He asked lots of questions (,) **which were none of his business** *(,) and annoyed everybody.*

The Daily Gazette

Thursday May 27 Thứ năm 27.5 — No 8158 — Price 30p

NEWSGUIDE

Gibbs recaptured
ROBERT GIBBS, who escaped from prison last Friday, has been recaptured. **Page 4**

Flats demolished
A 3-YEAR old block of flats, which cost £10 million, is going to be demolished. **Page 6**

Brian Huff sacked
BRIAN HUFF, the Eastfield Manager, who the crowd booed from the field last Saturday, has been sacked ! **Page 13**

£900,000 for portrait
THE LANSTABLE selfportrait, which he painted from his death-bed, has been sold for £900,000. **Page 8**

NỘI DUNG

Gibbs đã bị bắt lại.
ROBERT GIBBS, trốn khỏi nhà tù thứ sáu trước, đã bị bắt lại. Trang 4.

Nhà bị giải tỏa
Một khu cư xá đã xây dựng được 3 năm, trị giá 10 triệu pounds, sắp bị giải tỏa – Trang 6.

Brian Huff bị sa thải.
Brian Huff, ông Bầu đội bóng Eastfield, người bị đám đông khán giả la ó phản đối trên sân cỏ thứ bảy tuần trước, đã bị sa thải ! – Trang 13

Tranh chân dung giá 900.000 pounds.
Bức chân dung tự họa "The Landstable" mà họa sĩ vẽ vào giờ phút cuối của đời mình, đã được bán với giá 900.000 pounds. Trang 8.

Tim Miles

TIM MILES, the racing driver, whose legs were badly injured in last year's Grand Prix crash, will never race again. **Page 12**

Calypso No. 1

THE BRITISH Motors Calypso, whose success surprised everybody, is now Britain's best selling car ! **Page 5**

Tonight's TV Page 7

Weather Page 2

Football results Page 14

Mystery explosion in Indian Ocean

AN OIL-RIG in the Indian Ocean mysteriously exploded yesterday. The oil-rig, which had been drilling test wells, belonged to the Krugerand Corporation. A series of bright flashes, which were observed by ships 100 km away, preceded shock waves of unusual force. Several ships, which rushed to the rescue, have been searching for survivors but so far none have been found. It is not known how many people were working on the rig and the Krugerand Corporation, which is based in Switzerland, would not comment on the explosion.

Tim Miles

Tim Miles, vận động viên xe đua, với đôi chân bị thương trầm trọng trong tai nạn ở cuộc đua Grand Prix năm ngoái, sẽ không bao giờ đua xe nữa. Trang 12.

Xe Calypso số 1.

Chiếc Calypso của Hãng British Motors, với thành công làm cho mọi người phải kinh ngạc, hiện giờ là chiếc xe hơi bán chạy nhất nước Anh ! Trang 5

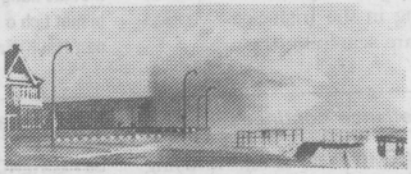
Chương trình Truyền Hình tối nay. Trang 7

Dự báo Thời Tiết. Trang 2

Tin Bóng Đá. Trang 14

Vụ nổ bí ẩn ở Ấn Độ Dương

Hôm qua, một dàn khoan dầu đã phát nổ một cách lạ lùng. Dàn khoan này của Công ty Krugerand, trước đó đang khoan thử một số giếng dầu. Một loạt những chớp sáng được các tàu ở cách đó 100km nhìn thấy, tiếp theo đó là những sóng va chạm cực mạnh. Một số tàu lao tới để cấp cứu, và đang tìm kiếm những người sống sót nhưng cho tới nay vẫn chưa tìm thấy một ai. Người ta không biết có bao nhiêu người làm việc trên dàn khoan vào lúc đó, và Công ty Krugerand, có trụ sở ở Thụy Sĩ, đã không lên tiếng về vụ nổ.



100 MPH GALES CAUSE CHAOS

Strong winds, which at times reached speeds of 100 mph, brought havoc to many parts of Britain yesterday.

THE GALES, which were the worst in living memory, combined with high tides to cause devastation in some coastal regions. The government has sent troops to assist the emergency services in the North West, which has been hit particularly hard. Sea-walls, which have been broken in many places by unusually high tides, are being repaired urgently. Local authorities hope to contain the situation before the high tides, which are expected this evening. Calls have been issued for volunteers to help local council workmen, who have been working

Bão 100 dặm Anh/giờ gây nhiều thiệt hại

Những cơn gió hung hãn, có lúc lên tới tốc độ 100 dặm Anh/giờ, đã tàn phá nhiều vùng ở nước Anh hôm qua.

NHỮNG TRẬN BÃO NÀY, dữ dội nhất từ trước đến nay, đã cùng với những cơn sóng lớn tàn phá một số vùng miền duyên hải. Chính phủ đã gửi quân đội đến giúp các bộ phận cứu trợ khẩn cấp ở vùng Tây Bắc, nơi bị bão tàn phá đặc biệt nghiêm trọng. Các đê ngăn nước, bị vỡ ở nhiều nơi do những cơn sóng cực mạnh, đang được sửa chữa khẩn cấp. Chính quyền địa phương hy vọng ngăn chặn được tình trạng này trước khi có những sóng lớn có khả năng đến vào chiều này. Người ta đã kêu gọi những người tình nguyện trợ giúp các nhân viên hội đồng địa phương đang làm việc suốt đêm. Nhiều vùng ở Fleetwood, nơi đê bị phá vỡ hoàn toàn, nước ngập đến

through the night. Many parts of Fleetwood, where the sea-wall collapsed entirely, are under two metres of water. Residents whose homes were flooded took refuge in the upstairs rooms. Men from the Fylde Naval Station, who have rescued hundreds of families, were visited by the Prime Minister during the evening.

. In Stoke-on-Trent, a woman, who was walking to work, was killed by a falling chimney.

. On the M6 Motorway, between Lancaster and Preston, a high-sided vehicle, which was carrying dangerous chemicals, was blown over. The north-bound carriageway was blocked for several hours.

. In Blackpool, hotels and shops which face the seafront are busy repairing windows which were blown in.

Homes in Clitheroe, where electrical cables were blown down, were without electricity for eight hours.

In Whitehaven, where fishing boats were torn from their moorings, the damage has been estimated at £200,000.

A Spanish freighter, which was on its way to Liverpool, is missing in the Irish Sea. Air Sea Rescue helicopters are searching the area.

2 mét. Những người dân có nhà bị ngập nước phải trú ẩn ở những căn phòng trên gác. Trong suốt buổi chiều tối, Thủ tướng đã đến thăm nhân viên Trạm Hải Quân Fylde, những người đã cứu thoát hàng trăm gia đình.

Ở Stoke-on-Trent, một phụ nữ đang đi bộ đến sở làm thì bị một ống khói rơi xuống làm thiệt mạng.

Trên tuyến đường MG giữa Lancaster và Preston, một chiếc xe tải cao đang chở các hóa chất nguy hiểm bị gió thổi lật nhào. Tuyến đường dẫn về hướng bắc bị tắc nghẽn trong nhiều giờ.

Ở Blackpool, các khách sạn và cửa hiệu nhìn ra mặt biển đang tấp nập sửa lại các cửa kiếng do bị gió thổi vỡ.

Các hộ dân ở vùng Clitheroe, nơi dây cáp điện bị gió thổi đứt, phải chịu tình trạng mất điện trong 8 giờ.

Ở Whitehaven, thuyền đánh cá bị gió thổi tốc khỏi nơi buộc neo. Thiệt hại ước tính khoảng 200.000 pounds.

Một tàu hàng Tây Ban Nha đang trên đường đến Liverpool bị mất tích ở biển Ireland. Trực thăng thuộc bộ phận Cứu nạn Hải-Không đang lùng sục vùng này.

Widow's defiance continues

MRS FLORENCE HAMILTON is still refusing to move from her old home. Tadworth local council, who have been trying to rehouse her for several months, have been unable to gain entry. The house, which the council wish to demolish to make way for redevelopment, now stands alone, surrounded by a mountain of rubble. Two council officials, who were trying to enter the house in the early hours of yesterday morning, were forced to retreat hastily when Mrs Hamilton turned her two pet alsatians loose. The dogs, Caesar and Nero, seem to be as determined as their owner, whose final words to the council were, 'I'm not b... moving, and that's that !' The council are reluctant to call in the police to remove Mrs Hamilton, whose plight has brought in many letters of support and encouragement from the general public.

Bà góa phụ vẫn ngoan cố

Bà FLORENCE HAMILTON vẫn từ chối không chịu ra khỏi nhà cũ. Các nhân viên hội đồng địa phương Tadworth từ nhiều tháng nay đã cố gắng tái định cư cho bà vẫn không thể vào nhà bà được. Hội đồng đã có ý định giải tỏa căn nhà này để lấy chỗ tái phát triển gia cư. Giờ đây, nó đứng trơ trọi một mình giữa một đống gạch vụn khổng lồ. Hai nhân viên của Hội đồng định vào căn nhà này sáng sớm hôm qua đã phải rội vã rút lui khi bà Hamilton thả hai con chó béc-giê cưng của mình ra. Hai con vật này, Caesar và Nero, dường như cũng cương quyết như chủ của chúng. Những lời sau cùng của bà, "Tôi không đi... đi đâu hết. Chỉ có thế thôi !". Hội đồng vẫn do dự chưa dám mời cảnh sát đến để đuổi bà đi, vì trong cảnh ngộ đó bà đã nhận được nhiều lá thư ủng hộ cũng như khuyến khích từ phía công chúng.

Kidnap girl found

CAROLINE ROLAN, who police have been looking for since last Monday, has been found safe and well. Fourteen year old Caroline was found in a deserted house in Hackney after extensive police enquiries. A man and woman have been arrested and charged with the kidnapping.

'Wonderdrug' banned by DoH

THE so-called wonderdrug 'Kural' which some doctors have been prescribing as a pain-killer has been banned by the Department of Health. After extensive clinical trials over a number of years the drug has been found to produce alarming side-effects. 'Kural', which the manufacturers say produces almost miraculous results, is certainly very effective as a painkiller. Unfortunately the drug seems to speed up the ageing process, which leads to premature hair loss, stiffening of the joints, loss of memory and, eventually, premature senile dementia.

Đã tìm thấy em gái bị bắt cóc

Caroline Rolan, người mà cảnh sát đã liên tục tìm kiếm từ thứ hai trước, đã được tìm thấy bình an vô sự. Em Caroline, 14 tuổi, đã được tìm thấy trong một căn nhà bỏ hoang ở Hackney sau những cuộc điều tra rộng khắp của cảnh sát. Một người đàn ông và một phụ nữ đã bị bắt và bị truy tố về tội bắt cóc em gái.

"Thần dược" bị Bộ Y Tế cấm sử dụng

"KURAL", loại thuốc được mệnh danh là "thần dược" mà một số bác sĩ đã chỉ định làm thuốc giảm đau, đã bị Bộ Y tế cấm sử dụng. Sau nhiều thí nghiệm lâm sàng rộng rãi trong một số năm, người ta đã thấy loại thuốc này gây ra những phản ứng phụ đáng lo ngại. Kural, theo như nhà sản xuất sẽ đem lại những kết quả gần như kỳ diệu, rõ ràng có tác dụng rất tốt khi dùng làm thuốc giảm đau. Tuy nhiên, dường như thuốc thúc đẩy nhanh chóng tiến trình lão hóa, dẫn tới rụng tóc quá sớm, cứng khớp, mất trí nhớ, và sau cùng là chứng cuồng trí do lão suy sớm.

PRACTICE

Look at this

Robert Gibbs has been recaptured ! (He escaped from prison last Friday.)
Robert Gibbs, who escaped from prison last Friday, has been recaptured.
A 3-year-old block of flats is going to be demolished ! (It cost £10 million.)
A 3-year-old block of flats, which cost £10 million, is going to be demolished.
Brian Huff, the Eastfield Manager, has been sacked ! (The crowd booed him from the field last Saturday.)
Brian Huff, the Eastfield Manager, who the crowd booed from the field last Saturday, has been sacked.
The Lanstable self-portrait has been sold for £900,000! (He painted it from his death bed.)
The Lanstable self-portrait, which he painted from his death bed, has been sold for £900,000.
Jim Miles, the racing driver, will never race again ! (His legs were badly injured in last year's Grand Prix crash.)
Jim Miles, the racing driver, whose legs were badly injured in last year's Grand Prix crash, will never race again.
The British Motors Calypso is now Britain's best-selling car ! (Its success surprised everybody.)
The British Motors Calypso, whose success surprised everybody, is now Britain's best-selling car.

Exercise 1

Study the 'Look at this' section above and then read the following passage.
Some commas have been removed from the passage. Replace them.

Bài tập 1

Nghiên cứu phần "Look at this" phía trên rồi đọc đoạn văn sau đây. Một số dấu phẩy không có trong bài. Hãy đặt các dấu phẩy vào.

Heathrow hijack

A vanload of silver bullion which is estimated to be worth £5,000,000 was hijacked in broad daylight yesterday. The bullion van which was approaching Heathrow Airport was waved into a lay-by by two men on the A3044. The men who were armed were both dressed in police uniforms. The driver and the security guard who also had guns were asked to step down and present their driving documents. They were then attacked and overpowered by a number of men. The men had been hiding in another van in the lay-by. Both vans then drove away, taking the security guards who the thieves had tied up with them. The security van was later found abandoned. The two guards whose hands were still tied were inside the van. The police uniforms which the thieves had rented from a theatrical supplier were on the front seats. The bullion which was being transported from the City to the airport was in kilo bars. The two guards whose injuries were not serious are being questioned by detectives.

Vụ cướp ở Heathrow

Chiếc xe tải chở đầy khối bạc ước tính trị giá 5 triệu pounds bị cướp giữa ban ngày ngày hôm qua. Chiếc xe tải này đang tiến về phi trường Heathrow thì bị 2 tên đàn ông trên đường A3044 vẫy vào 1 góc đỗ xe ở ngoài đường. Hai tên này có vũ trang và cả hai đều mặc quần phục cảnh sát. Tài xế và bảo vệ cũng có súng bị yêu cầu bước xuống xe và trình giấy tờ. Rồi họ bị một nhóm đàn ông tấn công và áp đảo. Những tên này từ nãy giờ trốn trong một chiếc xe tải khác ở góc đỗ xe. Rồi cả hai xe tải chạy đi, mang theo những người bảo vệ đã bị bọn cướp trói chặt. Sau đó chiếc xe an ninh bị bỏ lại. Hai người bảo vệ ở trong xe, hai tay vẫn còn bị trói. Quần phục cảnh sát mà bọn cướp đã thuê ở chỗ cung cấp đồ sân khấu để ở ghế trước. Khối bạc được chuyển từ thành phố ra phi trường là những thỏi bạc kí. Hai người bảo vệ bị thương không nặng lắm đang bị các thám tử chất vấn.

Exercise 2

Study the 'Look at this' section. Connect these sentences in the same way.

1 Trevor Franklin has broken his leg. (He plays for Eastfield United.)
. . . . . .

2 The new 'Tumbling Dice' LP has already sold one million copies. (It was recorded in Jamaica.) . . . . . .
. . . . . .

3 Carl Haigh has won the Nobel Prize for Science. (Michael Parkhurst interviewed him on TV last week.)
. . . . . .

4 The racehorse 'White Rum' was sold for £3 million yesterday. (Gordon Lester rode it in the Hampshire Gold Cup.) . . . . . .

5 Jason Douglas will be the star of the new Hollywood Film 'Juke Box '58'. (His last film won an Academy Award.)
. . . . . .

Bài tập 2

Nghiên cứu phần "Look at this". Nối các câu này lại theo cách tương tự.

6 The M31 motorway will be opened by the Queen on Friday. (It has taken four years to build.) . . . . . .
. . . . . .

7 Laura Evans is retiring from international tennis. (Doreen Waters beat her in the women's final at Wimbledon.) . . . . . .
. . . . . .

8 An antique table has been auctioned for £20,000. (Chippenham made it in 1743). . . . . .
. . . . . .

9 Max Millwall gave his last performance on Saturday. (He first became a comedian forty years ago.) . . . . . .
. . . . . .

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Units 45-48

Dialogue A

Listen

Janice Well, tell me all about it !
Claire The holiday ? Oh, it was lovely. Would you like to see some photographs ?
Janice Oh yes. I'd love to.
Claire We've got hundreds. We were away for three weeks you know. Look. This is Tom and Anne. They're friends we travelled with.
Janice Hmm. Hmm. Oh, who's that ? He's nice.
Claire That's Ché. He was the guide who looked after us.
Listen and repeat

A1 Listen

A : They're friends. We travelled with them.
B : They're friends we travelled with.
C : They're friends we travelled with.
A : She's an American. We met her at the airport.
B : She's an American we met at the airport.
C : She's an American we met at the airport.

Now you do the same

They're friends. We travelled with them
..... They're friends we travelled with.
She's an American. We met her at the airport
..... She's an American we met at the airport.
He's a Londoner. I sat next to him on the plane
..... He's a Londoner I sat next to on the plane.
They're some children. We bought some souvenirs from them..... They're some children we bought some souvenirs from.

A2 Listen

A : That's the guide. He looked after us.
B : He's the guide who looked after us.
C : He's the guide who looked after us.
A : That's the woman. She broke a leg.
B : She's the woman who broke a leg.
C : She's the woman who broke a leg.

Now you do the same

That's the guide. He looked after us
..... He's the guide who looked after us.
That's the woman. She broke a leg
..... She's the woman who broke a leg.
They're the people. They're going to visit us
..... They're the people who are going to visit us.
He's the Australian. He talked too much
..... He's the Australian who talked too much.

Dialogue B

Listen

Janice Ooh, that's a nice beach.
Claire Yes. That's the beach where we collected shells.
Janice Who are those people with Edward ?
Claire Oh. They're the people whose children played with ours.
Janice It looks lovely.
Claire Yes. It was.
Listen and repeat

B1 Listen

A : That's the beach. We collected shells there.
B : That's the beach where we collected shells.
C : That's the beach where we collected shells.
A : That's the restaurant. We tried the local food there.
B : That's the restaurant where we tried the local food.
C : That's the restaurant where we tried the local food.

Now you do the same

That's the beach. We collected shells there
..... That's the beach where we collected shells.
That's the restaurant. We tried the local food there
..... That's the restaurant where we tried the local food.
That's the pool. We swam there every day
..... That's the pool where we swam every day.
That's the village. We went to the market there
..... That's the village where we went to the market.

B2 Listen

A : They're the people. Their children played with ours.
B : They're the people whose children played with ours.
C : They're the people whose children played with ours.
A : He's the man. His money was stolen.
B : He's the man whose money was stolen.
C : He's the man whose money was stolen.

Now you do the same

They're the people. Their children played with ours
..... They're the people whose children played with ours.
He's the man. His money was stolen
..... He's the man whose money was stolen.
She's the woman. Her husband drank too much
..... She's the woman whose husband drank too much.
They're the couple. Their suitcases disappeared
..... They're the couple whose suitcases disappeared.

Dialogue C

Listen

Janice Oh. What a lovely little boat !
Claire Yes. That's the ferry boat which crossed the river.
Janice What was on the other side ?
Claire There was a village... a lovely little village. They had a market every morning.
Janice I love markets. What sort of things did they sell?
Claire Oh. Everything. Fruit, vegetables, fish... local handicrafts. Look over there, on the wall. That's a tray I bought there.

Listen and repeat

New words

- ferry boat *(n)* /'feri bəut/ boat that carries people and goods across a stretch of water = chiếc phà
- handicraft *(n)* /'hændikrɑ:ft/ work that needs both skill with the hands and artistic skill = hàng thủ công

C1 Listen

A : That's the ferryboat. It crossed the river.
B : That's the ferryboat which crossed the river.
C : That's the ferryboat which crossed the river.
A : That's the shop. It sold souvenirs.
B : That's the shop which sold souvenirs.
C : That's the shop which sold souvenirs.

Now you do the same

That's the ferryboat. It crossed the river
..... That's the ferryboat which crossed the river.
That's the shop. It sold souvenirs
..... That's the shop which sold souvenirs.
That's the bus. It went into town
..... That's the bus which went into town.
That's the restaurant. It served local food
..... That's the restaurant which served local food.

C2 Listen

A : That's the tray. I bought it there.
B : That's the tray I bought there.
C : That's the tray I bought there.
A : These are the photographs. I took them on holiday.
B : These are the photographs I took on holiday.
C : These are the photographs I took on holiday.

Now you do the same

That's the tray. I bought it there
..... That's the tray I bought there.
These are the photographs. I took them on holiday
..... These are the photographs I took on holiday.
This is the camera. I used it a lot
..... This is the camera I used a lot.
Those are the shells. I collected them on the beach
..... Those are the shells I collected on the beach.

Dialogue D

Listen

Janice Is June the best time to go, do you think ?
Claire Yes. I think so. That's when the beaches aren't so crowded.
Janice What about September ? That's when we get our next holiday.
Claire Yes, September should be nice. The weather will still be fine and of course it's carnival time. Everybody talked about it.
Janice What happens at carnival time ?
Claire Oh it's the big holiday. Everybody goes mad. They have big processions, and singing and dancing all night. A lot of people get drunk. But it should be fun.

New words

- carnival *(n)* /'kɑ:nɪvl/ public festivities and merry – making occuring at regular time of year, usu with a procession.

Listen and repeat

D1 Listen

A : Go in June. The beaches aren't so crowded then.
B : Go in June when the beaches aren't so crowded.
C : Go in June when the beaches aren't so crowded.
A : What about September ? We get our next holiday then.
B : What about September when we get our next holiday ?
C : What about September when we get our next holiday ?

Now you do the same

Go in June. The beaches aren't so crowded then
.....Go in June when the beaches aren't so crowded.
What about September ? We get our next holiday then
.....What about September when we get our next holiday ?
You'd like carnival time. Everyboday goes mad then
.....You'd like carnival time when everybody goes mad.
Go at carnival time. It should be fun then
.....Go at carnival time when it should be fun.

Listening (1)

Listen to the news and answer the questions when you hear this sound (BELL)

1

Inflation continues to fall.
According to the retail price index, which was published today, the annual inflation rate fell to 9.3 per cent last month compared with 9.5 per cent the month before. This means that over the last six months the annual rate has dropped by 2 per cent.

BELL

When was the index published ?.....It was published today.
What was the annual inflation rate last month ?
..... It was 9.3 per cent.
Was the rate higher or lower six months ago ?
..... It was higher.

Vocabulary

- inflation *(n)* /ɪn'fleɪʃn/ = nạn lạm phát
- retail price *(n)* /'ri:teɪl praɪs/ = giá bán lẻ
- index *(n)* /'ɪndeks/ = bảng giá

2

There will be no Autumn election.

The Prime Minister, who gave a speech in the City today, has made in clear that there will not be an election this Autumn. Newspaper reports this morning had suggested that the Prime Minister would call an election in October. The Prime Minister said that the Government had another two years to run and that it was unlikely that an election would be called this year or even next year.

3

Heavy snow has brought chaos to the North of England.

Heavy snow, which fell during the night, has brought chaos to roads and cities in the North. Strong winds caused heavy drifting and some roads are completely blocked. Many drivers were forced to abandon their vehicles. The police advise people to stay at home today unless their journeys are absolutely necessary.

4

The quads' father will have to quit his job.

Thomas Kelly, the Liverpool postman, whose wife gave birth to quadruplets on Sunday, says he'll have to give up work to help his wife to look after the babies and their other five children who are all under 8. The quads, two boys and two girls, are all doing well but are not expected to leave hospital for several days yet.

BELL

Where did the Prime Minister give a speech ?

.....In the City.

Who had suggested that there might be an election?

.....Newspaper reports.

Is there likely to be an election next year ?

.....No, there isn't.

BELL

When did the snow fall ?

.....It fell during the night.

What should most people do today ?

.....They should stay at home.

Vocabulary

- to drift /drɪft/ cause st to drift
  drifting = mass of st, snow or sand, piled up by the wind
  = đống dày đặc

BELL

What does Thomas Kelly do ?

..... He's a postman.

How many children have they got all together ?

..... They've got nine children.

Vocabulary

- quadruplets *(n)* /kwɒdru:plet/ (infml *quad*) (usu pl) one of four children born at one birth.

Listening (2)

Listen. I'm going to ask you ten questions. If you don't know the answer, say 'Pass'. You will hear the correct answers at the end.

1 What do we call a person who expects the worst to happen ?
2 Can you tell me the language which is spoken in Brazil ?
3 Can you name the place where the Pope lives ?
4 What is the time of year when plants begin to grow after the winter ?
5 Can you name the English dramatist whose most famous play was 'Hamlet' ?
6 What do we call a person who is having treatment in hospital ?
7 What do we call a machine which takes people up and down in a building ?
8 What is the shop where rings and watches are sold ?
9 What do we call a boat you get into when a ship is in danger of sinking ?
10 Who was the English detective whose close friend was Dr Watson ?

Here are the answers :

1 A pessimist 2 Portuguese 3 The Vatican 4 Spring 5 Shakespeare 6 A patient 7 A lift 8 A jeweller's 9 A lifeboat 10 Sherlock Holmes.

That's the end of section twelve.

Unit 49 Formal Correspondence

Lối viết thư trang trọng

VOCABULARY

- **crack** *(v)* /kræk/ (cause to) develop a crack or cracks = rạn, nứt, vỡ *You can ~ this toughened glass, but you can't break it*
- **despatch = dispatch** *(n)* /dɪ'spætʃ/ dispatching; despatch manager = trưởng phòng điều vận
  despatch *(v)* = dispatch /dɪ'spætʃ/ send sb / st off to a destination.
- **extend** *(v)* /ɪk'stend/ make st longer or larger = kéo dài *Can you ~ your visit a few days longer ?*
- **hand in** *(v)* /'hænd ɪn/ submit = giao, nộp
- **Head office** *(n)* /'hed 'ɒfɪs/ trụ sở chính
- **inconvenience** *(n)* /ˌɪŋkən'vi:nɪəns/ trouble, difficulty, discomfort = việc phiền toái *He apologized for the ~ he had caused.*
  inconvenient *(adj)* /ˌɪŋkən'vi:nɪənt/ causing trouble, difficulty or discomfort = bất tiện, phiền hà *Living such a long way from the shops can be very ~*
- **launder** *(v)* /'lɔ:ndə/ (fml) wash and iron = giặt ủi *Send these shirts to be ~ ed.*
  laundry *(n)* /'lɔ:ndrɪ/ 1. business where clothes, sheets, are laundered. *Sent to the ~* 2. clothes, sheets that have been or need to be laundered. *There's not much ~ this week.*
- **leather patch** *(n)* /'leðə pætʃ/ miếng da thuộc
- **leisure** *(n)* /'leʒə/ time free from work or other duties; spare time = lúc rãnh rỗi *We've been working all week without a moment's ~.*
  leisured *(adj)* /'leʒəd/ [attrib] having plenty of leisure *the ~ classes.*
  leisuredly *(adj) (adv)* without hurry *walk at a ~ pace; work ~.*
- **list** *(v)* /lɪst/ make a list of things = liệt kê *~ one's engagements for the week.*
- **mallard** *(n)* /'mælɔd/ vịt trời
- **polo – neck pullover** *(n)* /'pəʊləʊ nek 'pʊləʊvə/ T- shirt with high round turned – over collar = áo thun cổ lọ
- **print** *(v)* /prɪnt/ make letters, pictures, etc on (paper) by pressing an inked surface against it = in *The first 60 pages of the book have been ~ ed.*
- **quality control** *(n)* /'kwɒlətɪ kən'trəʊl/ sự kiểm tra chất lượng
- **quilt** *(n)* /kwɪlt/ thick covering for a bed, made of cloth padded with soft material = mền bông
- **rough** *(adj)* /rʌf/ not level or smooth = nhám, gồ ghề *a ~ stone wall*
  roughly *(adv)* 1. in a rough manner *treat sb ~. a ~- made table.*
  2. approximately. *about 40 miles, ~ speaking*
  roughness *(n)* quality or state of being rough. *the ~ of his chin.*
- **rub** *(v)* /rʌb/ (cause st to) press against (a surface) with a to – and – fro sliding movement = chà, cọ *rubbing his hands together. He rubbed his chin thoughtfully.*
- **salesperson** *(n)* /'seɪlzpɜ:sn/ person whose job it is to sell goods eg in a shop or in people's homes = người bán hàng
- **sleeve** *(n)* /sli:v/ part of a garment that covers all or part of the arm = cánh tay áo *roll up the ~ s of one's shirt.*
- **stress** *(n)* /stres/ tension = sự căng thẳng, sự quá tải

EXPRESSIONS

I hope that you will take this matter up on my behalf
Tôi mong rằng ông sẽ giải quyết vấn đề này cho tôi.
in the hope of gaining satisfaction
hi vọng được giải quyết thỏa đáng
For the personal attention of... về vấn đề...
accept no responsibility for không chịu trách nhiệm về
may we remind you that... chúng tôi xin nhắc ông là...
Please find enclosed... Xin gởi kèm theo đây...
only too ready to help sẵn lòng phục vụ
Come to a conclusion đi đến kết luận
the hotel concerned khách sạn được đề cập tới
on delivery lúc phân phối, lúc giao hàng
to be subjected to do tại

PROPER NAMES

Anna Scales	/ænə 'skeɪlz/	Basil	/'bæzl/
Alfred King	/ˌælfrɪd 'kɪŋ/	Harriet littlewood	/ˌhærɪət 'lɪtlwʊd/
Barry foot	/ˌbærɪ 'fʊt/		

USAGE

1/ *In* the morning/afternoon (vào buổi sáng/chiều) but *on* a summer morning / afternoon (vào 1 buổi sáng mùa hè)
"On" is used in more specific cases when morning/afternoon have some modifiers.
EX : *On* the morning of the 5th, *on* one spring afternoon...

2/ To buy s/t
+ at a (high/low) price (a sum of money is not specified)
+ for (a sum of money is specified)
EX : I bought this book
+ at a high price (tôi mua cuốn sách này với giá tiền cao)
+ for £2. (Tôi mua cuốn sách này hết 2 pounds)

3/ To have
+ the pleasure of (doing) something (vui lòng làm việc gì)
+ the honour of (doing) something (hân hạnh làm việc gì)

4/ To come to a conclusion that... (đi đến kết luận)

To come to an agreement (đi đến thỏa thuận)
To come to an end (đi đến chỗ kết thúc)
To come to a stop (dừng lại)
To come to nothing/no good (không đi đến đâu)
To come to the point (đi đúng trọng tâm vấn đề)
To come to oneself (hồi tỉnh)

GRAMMAR NOTES — Prepositions in Relatives Clauses

1- Preposition at the end

In informal spoken English we normally put the preposition at the end of the relative clause. Compare the word order :

Statement	Relative Clause
- We *go to* the restaurant	the restaurant which we *go to*.
- I was *looking for* the letter.	the letter that I was *looking for*.

We often leave out the relative pronoun
- He was the man { who I spoke *to* / that I spoke *to* / I spoke *to*.

- These are the people we went on holiday *with*.
- Is this the colour you've finally decided *on*?

2. Preposition at the beginning

In formal English the preposition can come at the beginning of the relative clause, before *which* or *whom* :
- Thank you for your letter *in which* you complained about our laundry service.
- Was that the restaurant *to which* you normally go ?
- Mr Bell is the person *from whom* I obtained the information.

We cannot put a preposition before *that* or *who*.
- Electronics is a subject *that* I know little *about*.

139 Elm Tree Avenue
London SW13
15th August, 1982

Dear Sir,

I am writing to enquire about some items of laundry which were lost in your hotel laundry service. I was staying at the Haughty House Hotel from August 3rd until August 6th. On the

139 Đại lộ Elm Tree (Cây Du)
London SW13
15-8-1982

Thưa Ông,

Tôi viết thư này để hỏi về một số đồ giặt của tôi bị mất ở dịch vụ giặt trong khách sạn của ông. Tôi ở khách sạn Haughty House từ 3-8 đến 6-8. Vào sáng ngày 5 tôi giao túi đồ giặt và khi nhận lại ngày hôm sau, tôi thấy thiếu

morning of the 5th, I handed in my laundry bag and when it was returned the next day, I discovered that two socks were missing. One was brown, the other bright yellow. I also discovered that a shirt, which had also been laundried, had lost all its buttons. The housekeeper to whom I complained, told me that the items would be posted on to me. I have heard nothing. I would also like to mention the question of compensation for the shirt, which was ruined. I bought it for £15 only a week previously.

Yours faithfully,
Barry Foot

Haughty House Hotel
Cliff Drive. Torquay. Devon

B. Foot Esq,
139 Elm Tree Ave.
London SW13 21st August 1982

Dear Mr. Foot,
Thank you for your letter in which you complained about our laundry service. May we remind you that the form on which you listed the items for laundering, states quite clearly that the hotel can accept no responsibility for lost items of clothing. The bag in which you placed your clothes, has the same warning clearly printed on it. We apologise for the inconvenience and hope that we shall have the pleasure of your custom on future occasions.
Yours sincerely,
Simon Lozenby
Manager

hai chiếc vớ. Một chiếc màu nâu, còn chiếc kia màu vàng tươi. Tôi còn thấy chiếc áo sơ mi mà tôi giao giặt đã mất hết nút. Tôi có khiếu nại với viên quản lý thì được bảo rằng những thứ này sẽ được gửi đến cho tôi bằng đường bưu điện. Tôi chẳng nhận được tin gì cả. Tôi cũng muốn đề cập đến vấn đề bồi thường cho chiếc sơ mi đã bị hư. Tôi mua nó với giá 15 pounds chỉ mới cách đây một tuần.

Chào ông
Barry Foot

Khách sạn Haughty House
Cliff Drive, Torquay, Devon

Kính gởi :
Ô. B. Foot
139 Đại lộ Elm Tree
London SW13 Ngày 21-8-1982

Thưa Ông Foot,
Cảm ơn ông đã viết thư khiếu nại về dịch vụ giặt của chúng tôi. Chúng tôi xin phép được nhắc ông là trên mẫu đơn mà ông kê khai các món đồ giặt có ghi rõ ràng là khách sạn không chịu trách nhiệm về quần áo bị thất lạc. Trên túi đồ mà ông cho quần áo vào gửi giặt cũng có in lời khuyến cáo tương tự. Chúng tôi xin cáo lỗi về việc phiền toái như vậy và hy vọng rằng chúng tôi vẫn có hân hạnh được đón tiếp ông vào những dịp khác.

Kính chào ông.
Simon Lozenby
Giám đốc

---

139 Elm Tree Avenue
London SW13
22nd August, 1982

For the personal attention of Sir Basil Haughty

Dear Sir Basil,
I enclose a copy of a letter, which I sent to your hotel in Torquay. The manager, to whom I addressed it, replied in a most unsatisfactory way. I enclose his reply. I am most shocked that a hotel in which I have stayed on several occasions should reply in such an unhelpful fashion. I hope that you will take this matter up on my behalf.
Yours sincerely,
Barry Foot

139 Đại lộ Elm Tree
London SW13
22-8-1982

Mong Ông Basil Haughty đặc biệt quan tâm.
Kính gửi Ông Basil,
Tôi xin gởi kèm bản sao của lá thư tôi đã gởi cho khách sạn của ông ở Torquay. Vị giám đốc ở đó đã trả lời chẳng thỏa đáng chút nào. Tôi xin gởi kèm theo lá thư của ông ấy. Tôi vô cùng sửng sốt khi thấy một khách sạn tôi từng trọ nhiều lần lại trả lời một cách thiếu trách nhiệm như vậy. Tôi hy vọng rằng vì tôi, ông sẽ quan tâm vấn đề này.

Kính chào
Barry Foot

Haughty House Hotels Group
Head Office : Tortres St., London WI.

1st September 1982

Dear Mr. Foot,

Thank you for your letter of August 22nd to Sir Basil Haughty, for whom I am replying. Sir Basil is unable to answer personal correspondence about hotels in the group. All correspondence should be addressed to the manager of the hotel concerned, to whom I have passed your letter.

Yours sincerely,

Anna Scales

Private Secretary to Sir Basil Haughty

42 Winslow Avenue.
Guildford.
Suney.
3rd March, 1982

Dear Sir,

Exactly one week ago, I purchased a polo-neck pullover from your Guildford store the one in the High Street. I had worn the pullover only twice when I was amazed to discover a hole in the left sleeve. What is more, the pullover was not cheap. I believe in paying for quality. When I took the pullover back to the salesperson from whom I had brought it, she refused to exchange it and refused me to the manager. She too refused to exchange it. I am writing to you in the hope of gaining satisfaction. I have brought several pullovers from your store recently all of which have developed holes in the sleeves. I enclose the pullover and the receipt which shows the price and the date on which it was purchased.

Yours faithfully,

Alfred King (Major retired)

Sparks & Fraser Ltd.
HEAD OFFICE Butcher Street London W2

Major A. King
42 Winslow Avenue
Guildford

12th April 1982

Dear Major King,

Please find enclosed the pullover about which you complained in your letter of March 3rd. We regret that we cannot exchange it. Our Guildford Manager, to whom you first complained, was perfectly correct in refusing to do so. She was carrying out company policy, which states that goods which have been worn cannot be

Liên doanh Khách sạn Haughty House
Trụ sở :... London W1

Ngày 1-9-1982

Thưa ông Foot,

Xin cám ơn về lá thư ông gửi cho Ông Basil Haughty đề ngày 22-8. Tôi xin thay mặt ông ấy trả lời ông. Ông Basil không thể trả lời thư tín cá nhân liên quan đến các khách sạn trong liên doanh. Mọi thư từ phải được gửi về vị giám đốc của khách sạn có liên quan, và tôi đã chuyển thư của ông cho vị ấy rồi.

Kính chào

Anna Scales

Thư ký riêng của ông Basil Haughty

42 Đại lộ Winslow
Guildford
Suney
Ngày 3-3-1982

Thưa Ông,

Cách đây đúng một tuần tôi mua một áo thun cổ lọ từ cửa hiệu Guildford của ông ở đường High Street. Tôi mặc chiếc áo này chỉ mới 2 lần thì thật sửng sốt khi thấy ở tay áo trái có một cái lỗ. Mà áo đâu có rẻ. Tôi luôn cho rằng tiền nào của đó. Khi tôi mang áo trở lại cho nhân viên bán hàng, cô ta không chịu đổi và chuyển tôi gặp cửa hàng trưởng. Bà này cũng không đồng ý cho đổi. Tôi viết thư này cho ông với hy vọng sẽ được mãn nguyện. Gần đây tôi đã mua một số áo thun từ cửa hiệu của ông. Tất cả đều có lỗ trên tay áo. Tôi gởi kèm theo áo thun và biên nhận có ghi giá tiền và ngày tháng tôi đã mua.

Kính chào Ông
AlfredKing
(Thiếu tá về hưu)

Sparks và Fraser (Công ty trách nhiệm hữu hạn)
Trụ sở Butcher Street London W2

Thiếu tá A.King
42 Đại lộ Winslow
Guildford

Ngày 12-4-1982

Thưa Thiếu tá King,

Xin gởi kèm theo thư này chiếc áo thun mà ông đã khiếu nại trong thư đề ngày 3-3. Chúng tôi tiếc là không thể đổi được. Cửa hàng trưởng của chúng tôi ở Guildford, người mà ông đã khiếu nại lần đầu, hoàn toàn đúng khi không cho đổi áo. Bà ấy làm đúng qui định công ty : hàng đã mặc rồi không thể đổi lại. Bộ phận kiểm tra chất lượng của chúng tôi đã nghiên cứu thư khiếu nại của ông và đi

exchanged. Our quality control department investigated your complaint and came to the conclusion that the sleeve in which the hole appeared, must have been subjected to unusual stress. Perhaps in your work or your leisure you constantly rub your elbows on a rough surface. Perhaps leather patches sewn onto the elbows would extend its life. The leather patches, to which I refer, are on sale at our Guildford branch, the one from which you bought the pullover. I am sure the staff there will be only too ready to help.

Yours sincerely,

Harriet Littlewood (Mrs.)

đến kết luận cái lỗ trên tay áo ắt là do kéo căng quá mức. Có lẽ khi làm việc hay giải trí ông thường chà cùi tay vào một mặt phẳng nhám. Có lẽ các miếng vá bằng da khâu vào chỗ cùi tay sẽ làm tăng tuổi thọ của áo. Những miếng vá này hiện đang bày bán ở chi nhánh của chúng tôi tại Guildford, tại cửa hiệu của ông đã mua áo thun. Tôi xin chắc là nhân viên ở đó sẽ hết sức sẵn lòng giúp đỡ ông.

Kính chào

(Bà) Harriet Littlewood

PRACTICE

Language summary

. . . to/for/from/on/in/about/of		
. . . all . . . one . . . some . . . two . . . none	of	which . . . whom . . .

Formal, written style

He was the man to whom I spoke.

Spoken and informal written style

He was the man	*I spoke to.* *who I spoke to.* *that I spoke to.*

Formal style

Mr Lazenby, to whom I addressed it, replied in a most unsatisfactory way.

Informal style

Mr Lazenby, who I addressed it to, replied in a most unsatisfactory way.

Exercise 1

Mrs Daniels has just received this letter from the Sleeptight Bedding Company. Copy it out as a formal letter, with capital letters and correct punctuation.

sleeptight bedding company 115 down street duckbury wiltshire 13th october mrs k daniels 82 glendower road cardiff CF3 8BJ dear mrs daniels we acknowledge receipt of your order for a 'mallard' continental quilt and cover if the goods are not received within 28 days please contact us quoting our reference KD73/5/10 yours rosemary loakes (miss) despatch manager

Bài tập 1

Bà Daniels vừa nhận được thư này từ công ty đóng giường ngủ. Chép lại thành một lá thư nghiêm túc với các chữ hoa và dấu chấm phẩy đúng.

Exercise 2

I took it back to the shop I had bought it from. *I took it back to the shop from which I had bought it.* Write these sentences in a more formal style.

Bài tập 2

Tôi mang món hàng trả lại cửa hàng nơi tôi đã mua. *Tôi mang món hàng trả lại cửa hàng chỗ tôi đã mua.* Viết các câu này theo cách hành văn trang trọng hơn.

1 Miss Henley is the secretary I spoke to on the telephone.
2 Continental Computers is the company he invested all his money in.
3 Preston is the Lancashire town I saw a documentary about.
4 Wibanya is a country I know nothing about.
5 The XL5000 is the micro-computer I paid £1000 for.

Exercise 3

We tried several garages. None of them had the parts in stock.

We tried several garages, none of which had the parts in stock.

Join these sentences in the same way.

1 I spoke to two counter assistants. One of them was extremely rude.
2 We bought two batteries. Neither of them worked.
3 We have employed many temporary secretaries from your agency. Most of them were reliable and efficient.
4 We have several holiday flats vacant in June. All of them are equipped to the highest standards.
5 There are 20,000 fans at Eastfield United. Only a few of them misbehave at matches.

Exercise 4

Mrs Jackson no longer lives here. (You addressed the letter to her.)

Mrs Jackson, to whom you addressed the letter, no longer lives here.

Join these sentences in the same way.

1 The bank counter was covered with black ink. (I placed my new handbag on it.)
2 Jason Douglas will be opening the exhibition. (You must have heard of him.)
3 Mr Grant asked me to contact you. (I was speaking with him yesterday.)
4 Walters and Co. would like more information about your products. (We are acting for them as agents.)
6 Appletree Farm is the land we are going to build the new factory on.
7 You wrote to Mr Wall, who I am replying for.
8 Herbert Thomas is the man who I got your address from.
9 Our Head Office is the place enquiries should be sent to.
10 I am sure you wish to protect your company's good name, which you must be proud of.

Bài tập 3

Chúng tôi đi thử nhiều ga-ra. Không có ga-ra nào có đồ phụ tùng dự trữ.

Chúng tôi đi thử nhiều ga-ra. Không có ga-ra nào có đồ phụ tùng dự trữ.

Nối các câu này theo cách tương tự.

6 There are eight candidates. Three of them are very well-qualified.
7 We bought 2000 light bulbs from your company. Many of them have since proved to be faulty.
8 We spoke to two of your representatives. Both of them refused to comment.
9 There are 600 students. The majority of them are Spanish speakers.
10 We received 30,000 roof tiles. About 10% of them were cracked on delivery.

Bài tập 4

Bà Jackson không còn sống ở đây nữa. (Bạn để địa chỉ thư cho bà ấy).

Bà Jackson, người bạn biên địa chỉ trong thư, không còn ở đây nữa.

Nối các câu này theo cách tương tự.

5 The 'Calypso' is still not available in this area. (We have been hearing a lot about it recently.)
6 The 'Daily Post' advised me to go to the police. (I saw your advertisement in it.)
7 Mrs Dundalk will supply references. (I was employed by her until last week.)

Unit 50 Who, Which, That, Whose, Whom

GRAMMAR NOTES

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

	DEFINING and NON-DEFINING PRONOUNS (sometimes called identifying and non-identifying, or restrictive and non-restrictive)		DEFINING ONLY
	PERSONS	THINGS	PERSONS and THINGS
Subject	who	which	that
Object	who(m)	which	that
Possessive	whose	of which/whose	

Attention : - *Whom* is formal usage, and does not normally occur in conversation. We have used it only with prepositions in formal written style.
- In defining clauses the object pronoun is often omitted.
The categories used in this lesson are :

Exercise :

1 : Defining, subject.
2 : Defining, object
3 : Non-defining, subject
4 : Non-defining, object
5 : Defining, possessive
6 : Non-defining, possessive
7 : Relative pronoun as the object of a preposition in formal style
8 : Mixed type.

Exercise 1

He's the man. He saw Mary.

He's the man	*who* *that*	*saw Mary.*

That's the car. I crashed.

That's the car	*which* *that*	*crashed.*

1 She's the swimmer. She's just won the gold medal.
2 They're the keys. They open the drawers.
3 That's the travel agency. It sells cheap tickets.
4 Those are the astronauts. They were in orbit for six months.

Exercise 2

He's the man. Mary saw him.

He's the man Mary saw. or

He's the man	*who* *that*	*Mary saw.*

That's the car. He bought it yesterday.

That's the car he bought yesterday. or

That's the car	*which* *that*	*he*

bought yesterday.

1 These are the books. I use them in class.
2 They're the spies. The police have been watching them.
3 He's the criminal. The police are looking for him.
4 That's the name. I couldn't remember it yesterday.

Exercise 3

Mr Cox is the manager. He saw Ann.
Mr Cox, who saw Ann, is the manager.
The blue car crashed. It was a Ford.
The blue car, which was a Ford, crashed.

1 Those men saved my life. They pulled me from the burning car.
2 That woman travels everywhere by private plane. She's a millionairess.
3 That hotel's near the beach. It's the most expensive.
4 Those birds migrate to Antarctica. They breed near the North Pole.

Exercise 4

Ann has got the job. Mr Cox saw her.
Ann, who Mr Cox saw, has got the job.
The car crashed. He had only bought it the day before.
The car, which he had only bought the day before, crashed.

1 My parents send their best wishes. You met them last month.
2 The parcel contained a bomb. They had opened it carefully.
3 The match will be shown on TV tonight. They filmed it this afternoon.
4 His sisters are identical twins. I saw them last year.

Exercise 5

The book is about Dennis Thatcher. His wife became Prime Minister.
The book is about Dennis Thatcher whose wife became Prime Minister.

1 The film is about two people. Their plane crashed in the jungle.
2 The play is about a king. His ambition was to rule the world.
3 The ballet is about a princess. Her step-mother hated her.
4 The song is about two young lovers. Their romance ended happily.

Exercise 6

My neighbour gave me some theatre tickets. Her brother is an actor.
My neighbour, whose brother is an actor, gave me some theatre tickets.
A man from our village was on TV last night. I teach his children.
A man from our village, whose children I teach, was on TV last night.

1 Charlie Chaplin died in 1977. His films amused millions.
2 Rod Lee, the actor, has just won an Oscar. I know his sister.
3 Our teacher speaks English perfectly. Her parents are Greek.
4 The Taylor family now live in America. We bought their house.

Exercise 7

She's the woman. I wrote to her.
She's the woman to whom I wrote.
(Very formal.)
She is the woman who I wrote to.
That's the hotel. I stayed in it.
That is the hotel in which I stayed.
(Very formal.)
That's the hotel which I stayed in.
Transform these sentences, first in a formal style, then in an informal style.

1 They are the people. I was talking about them.
2 That is the dog. I was afraid of it.
3 Mr Cox is the manager. I am telephoning for him.
4 That is the tunnel. He went through it.
5 She is the lady. He argued with her.
6 She is the policewoman. The driver spoke to her.
7 That is the mistake. I am complaining about it.
8 He is the man. The novel was written by him.
9 There is the shop. I bought my radio from it.

Look at this.

The Pickwick School of English, London

Class : 7 (intermediate) Date : 1st July

Name	From	Mother tongue	Age	Arrival date	Leaving date
Hans Schmidt	Zurich, Switzerland	German	18	30/6	29/7
Maria Perez	Monterrey, Mexico	Spanish	17	31/5	30/8
Paola Rossi	Turin, Italy	Italian	16	15/6	15/8
Rodrigo Cabral	São Paulo, Brazil	Portuguese	20	30/6	31/9

Exercise 8

1 Hans is the one who comes from Zurich.
2 He's the one who speaks German.
3 He's the one who's leaving on July 29th.
4 Hans, who's from Zurich, speaks German.
5 Hans, who speaks German, is Swiss.
6 Hans, who's Swiss, is 18.
7 Hans, who's 18, arrived on June 30th.
8 Hans, who arrived on June 30th, is leaving on July 29th.
9 Hans, whose mother tongue is German, comes from Zurich.
10 Zurich, which is in Switzerland, is Hans' home town.

Make sentences about all the students.

PRACTICE

Thomas HOLIDAYS

HOTEL GUIDE

All prices shown include continental breakfast

Star rating	Hotel		Location	Price
* *	APOLLO	60 rooms (*30 sea view*)	Benitses, Corfu	£200
* * *	EL CID	300 rooms (*200 with balcony*)	Palma, Majorca	£220
* * * *	LEONARDO	120 rooms (*All sea view*)	Rimini, Italy	£250
* * * * *	VOLTAIRE	212 rooms (*90 sea view, All colour TV*)	Nice, France	£300

Exercise 1

Look at the sentences about the 'Apollo'. Write similar ones about the 'El Cid'.

The Apollo

1 *It's the one that's in Corfu.*
2 *It's the one that's in Benitses.*
3 *It's the only one that's got two stars.*
4 *It's the one that costs £200.*
5 *The Apollo, which is in Corfu, is a two-star hotel.*
6 *The Apollo, which is a two-star hotel, is in Benitses.*

Bài tập 1

Xem các câu về khách sạn "Apollo". Viết các câu tương tự về khách sạn "El Cid".

7 *The Apollo, which is in Benitses, costs £200.*
8 *The Apollo, which costs £200, has got two stars.*
9 *The Apollo has 60 rooms, 30 of which have a sea view.*
10 *At the Apollo there will be a courier who speaks fluent Greek.*

Exercise 2

Read this paragraph about the 'Leonardo', and write a similar one about the 'Voltaire'.

Bài tập 2

Đọc đoạn văn này về khách sạn "Leonardo", và viết một đoạn tương tự về khách sạn "Voltaire".

The Leonardo

The Leonardo, which overlooks the beach at Rimini, is a four-star hotel. It is the only four-star hotel which we offer in this area. It has 120 rooms, all of which have a sea view. The price of the holiday is £250, which includes continental breakfast. At the hotel there will be a courier who speaks fluent Italian.

The Eurovision Song Contest is an annual competition. European countries enter a singer or group with a new song for the contest, and panels in each country vote for the best song. Here are the results of a recent contest.

Cuộc thi ca nhạc truyền hình toàn Châu Âu là cuộc thi hàng năm. Các nước Châu Âu cử một ca sĩ hay một nhóm nhạc với một bài hát mới tham gia cuộc thi, và tất cả những người tham dự của mỗi nước bỏ phiếu cho bài hát hay nhất. Đây là kết quả của cuộc thi gần đây.

Position	COUNTRY	ARTIST	SONG TITLE	COMPOSER	VOTES
1.	Italy	Maria and Paula	'Ciao Milano'	Franco Benedetti	187
2.	United Kingdom	The Shining Teeth	'Wam, bam, Boom'	Jeff Keats	182
3.	Spain	Jesus Perez	'Viva Costa Brava'	Osvaldo Villa	179
4.	Ireland	Bridget O'Toole	'The Green Hills of Home'	Bridget O'Toole	177

Exercise 3

Look at these sentences and write similar ones about each of the other artists.

Maria and Paula

1 *Maria and Paula are the ones that came first.*
2 *They're the ones that sang 'Ciao, Milano'.*

Bài tập 3

Xem các câu này và viết những câu tương tự về từng nghệ sĩ khác.

3 *Maria and Paula, who come from Italy, got 187 votes.*
4 *Maria and Paula, who got 187 votes, came first.*
5 *Maria and Paula, whose song was written by Franco Benedetti, came first.*

Unit 51 Describing Things

Mô tả đồ vật

VOCABULARY

- **check** *(n)* /tʃek/ 1. Pattern of crossed lines (often in different colours) forming squares = sọc ca rô *Which do you want for your new dress, a stripe or a ~ ?*
  2. Cloth with this pattern = vải ca rô
  a ~ skirt; jacket, table cloth.
  checked *(adj)* /tʃekt/ having a check pattern *~ material.*
- **cloak** *(n)* /kləʊk/ sleeveless outer garment hanging loosely from the shoulders, usu worn out of doors = áo choàng không tay
- **compound** *(n)* /'kɒmpaʊnd/ area enclosed by building, esp in a military camp or a prison camp = khu vực
- **decorative** *(adj)* /'dekərətɪv/ that makes (st) look more beautiful = thuộc trang trí *The coloured lights are very ~.*
  decoration *(n)* /,dekə'reɪʃn/ *When will they finish the ~ of the bathroom ?*
  decorate *(v)* /'dekəreɪt/ ~ st (with st) make st more beautiful by adding ornaments to it = trang trí *~ Christmas trees with coloured lights.*
- **dent** *(n)* /dent/ (also *dint*) hollow place in a hard even surface made by a blow or pressure = vết lõm *a ~ in the boot of the car.*
  dent *(v)* make a dent or dents in st. *The back of the car was badly dented in a collision.*
- **deterrent** *(n)* /dɪ'terənt/ thing that deters or is meant to deter = vật ngăn trở; ngăn chặn *His punishment will be a ~ to others.*
  deter *(v)* /dɪ'tɜ:/ ~ sb (from doing st) make sb decide not to do st = ngăn chặn *Failure did not ~ him (from making another attempt)*
- **flowered** *(adj)* /flaʊəd/ decorated with patterns of flowers = có hoa *~ wallpaper, cloth, curtains.*
  flowery *(adj)* /'flaʊərɪ/ covered with or having a lot of flowers = đầy hoa. *~ fields.*
- **fringed** *(adj)* /frɪndʒd/ by / with st = have st as a border = có viền, có đính tua *The estate was fringed with stately elms.*
- **galore** *(adv)* /gə'lɔ:/ (usu approv) (following *ns*) in plenty = rất nhiều, dồi dào *to have books, food, friends, money ~.*
- **hood** *(n)* /hud/ mũ, nón gắn liền với áo
  hooded *(adj)* /'hudɪd/ có mũ, nón gắn liền với áo
- **hoover** *(n)* /'hu:və/ vacuum cleaner = máy hút bụi
  hoover *(v)* clean a carpet, etc with a vacuum cleaner. *~ the drug, hall, floor, whole house.*
- **initial** *(n)* /ɪ'nɪʃl/ initial letter (of a name) = chữ viết tắt; chữ cái đầu từ *Sign your name and ~s* = your surname and the initial letters of other names.
  initial *(adj)* of or at the beginning; first *the ~ letter of a word.*
- **instamatic** *(adj)* /,ɪnstə'mætɪk/ tự động, tức thì
- **intruder** *(n)* /ɪn'tru:də/ person or thing that intrudes, esp sb who enters another's property illegally = kẻ đột nhập
  intrude *(v)* /ɪn'tru:d/ ~ (oneself) on / upon sb / st; ~ (oneself / st) into st (esp *fml*) put (oneself / st) into a place or situation where one / it is unwelcome or unsuitable = đột nhập, xen vào *I don't wish to ~, but could I talk to you for a moment ?*
- **mature** *(adj)* /mə'tjʊə/ fully grown or developed mentally or physically *a ~ person, oak, starling; a house with a ~ garden* = one where the plants, trees, etc are fully grown and well established.
- **nearside** *(adj)* /'nɪəsaɪd/ (of a part of a vehicle, a road or an animal) on the left hand side = phía tay trái *the ~ front wheel, door, lane of traffic.*
- **oval** *(adj)* /'əʊvl/ like an egg in shape or outline = bầu dục *an ~ brooch.*
  The mirror is ~.
- **overhaul** *(v)* /,əʊvə'hɔ:l/ examine (st) carefully and thoroughly and make any necessary repairs = kiểm tra, đại tu *have the engine of a car ~ed.*
- **panel** *(n)* /'pænl/ ván ô (cửa, tường)
- **plain** *(adj)* /pleɪn/ not decorated or luxurious; ordinary and simple = trơn *a ~ but very elegant dress.*
- **pointed** *(adj)* /'pɔɪntɪd/ having a sharp tip, end = nhọn *a (sharp-) pointed instrument, tool*

- **pram** *(n)* /præm/ (Brit) (US **baby buggy, baby carriage, buggy**) four – wheeled carriage, pushed by hand, for a baby = xe đẩy trẻ con; xe đẩy tay
- **redbrick** *(n)* /'redbrɪk/ gạch đỏ
- **regency** *(n)* /'ri:dʒənsɪ/ the period 1810-20 in Britain. The architecture and design of the period is in a simple elegant style based on ancient classical models = kiểu mẫu thời thế kỷ 19 ở Anh. *Regency architecture, furniture.*
- **registration number** *(n)* /ˌredʒɪ'streɪʃn 'nʌmbə/ số đăng bộ xe
- **ribbon** *(n)* /'rɪbən/ long narrowed inked strip of material used in a typewriter = dây ruy băng ở máy đánh chữ
  change the typewriter –.
- **spotted** *(adj)* /spɒtɪd/ marked or covered with spots = có chấm *a – dog; a – dress.*
- **stripe** *(n)* /straɪp/ long narrow band on a surface that is usu different from it in colour, material or texture = sọc *a white table – cloth with red – s. the tiger's – s.*
  striped *(adj)* /straɪpt/ mark with or having stripes = có sọc *– material; a – shirt, suit, tie.*
- **triangular** *(adj)* /traɪ'æŋgjʊlə/ shaped like a triangle = tam giác
  triangle *(n)* /'traɪæŋgl/ hình tam giác
- **turquoise** *(adj)* /'tɜ:kwɔɪz/ greenish blue = màu ngọc lam *a – dress.*
- **wing** *(n)* /wɪŋ/ (Brit) (US **fender**) projecting part of the bodywork of a motor vehicle above the wheel = vè xe *The nearside – was damaged in the collision.*

PRONONCIATION

Bournemouth /'bɔ:nməθ/
Rebecca Trueman /rɪ'bekə 'tru:mən/
Richard Lockwood /ˌrɪtʃəd 'lɒkwʊd/

USAGE

1/- Registration /ˌredʒɪ'streɪʃn/ recording, record of facts
EX : 1. Registration of students for an exam/an academic course
2. Registration (number) of a car.
2/- It's worth a look : thật đáng nhìn = It's worth looking (worth + gerund)
It's worth every penny : thật đáng đồng xu cắc bạc
It's really worthwhile : thật đáng bỏ công
To be worth one's salt : rất xứng đáng với đồng lương được hưởng

GRAMMAR NOTES :

a/- **Compound adjectives :** - "Average – sized", "four-bedroomed"
Formation : Adjective + noun + ed (the noun is modified by the adjective)
Ex : 1- He is so good – hearted while his younger brother is so evil - hearted
2- She is not only one-eyed, thick-skinned but also absent-minded
b/ **Adjective order :** The diagram on page 354 shows the usual order of adjectives.

LOST PROPERTY

A British Rail Lost Property, Waterloo.

B Oh, good morning. I left my briefcase on the train this morning. I wondered if it had been handed in.
A Which train, sir ?
B Sorry, the 7.47 from Bournemouth.
A Can you describe the briefcase, sir ?
B Er... yes. It's sort of a... well, an average-sized, rectangular, black leather briefcase with brass locks.
A We've got rather a lot like that, sir. Did it have your name on it ?

TÀI SẢN BỊ MẤT

A : Bộ phận lưu giữ đồ bị mất thuộc Hỏa xa Anh Quốc ở Waterloo đây.
B : Ô, xin chào. Tôi để quên va li trên xe lửa sáng nay. Tôi không biết quí ông có cất giữ giúp tôi không ?

A : Xe lửa nào, thưa ông ?
B : Xin lỗi, chuyến xe lửa 7g47 từ Bournemouth.
A : Thưa ông, ông có thể mô tả chiếc va-li đó không ?
B : Ơ... được. Đó là loại... à, một cái va-li cỡ trung bình, hình chữ nhật, da đen có khóa đồng.

A : Chúng tôi giữ khá nhiều loại va-li như thế, thưa ông. Trên va-li đó có tên ông không ?

B No, not my name. But it's got the initials 'J.R'. near the handle.

A Hang on, then,sir. I'll just go and have a look.

B : Không, không có tên tôi. Nhưng nó có hai chữ tắt "J.R" gần tay xách.

A : Xin ông giữ máy. Tôi đi kiểm tra xem.

Exercise 1

Imagine you have lost something. Describe it to your partner without telling him what it is. Your partner has to guess.

STOLEN CAR

A Metropolitan Police.

B My car's been stolen ! It's gone !

A Calm down, sir. Could I have your name and address ?

B Yes, Richard Lockwood, 3 Park Terrace, W.C. 13.

A May I have a description of the vehicle, sir?

B It's a 1982 Escort, a silver-blue, four-door 1300GL model. Oh, and it's got a dark blue stripe along the sides, and a dent in the nearside front wing.

A But what's the registration, sir ?

B PSV 439Y.

A I've got good news for you, sir. It hasn't been stolen. It's been towed away. It was parked on a double yellow line. You can collect it from the Police Compound, and you'd better bring your chequebook with you !

XE HƠI BỊ ĐÁNH CẮP

A : Cảnh sát Thành phố đây.

B : Xe hơi tôi vừa bị đánh cắp. Nó biến mất rồi !

A : Xin bình tĩnh, thưa ông. Xin cho tôi biết tên và địa chỉ của ông ?

B : Vâng, Richard Lookwood, 3 Park Terrace, W.C. 13.

A : Ông mô tả chiếc xe của ông được không ?

B : Đó là xe ESCORT đời 1982, mô đen 1300 GL màu xanh.bạc, bốn cửa. Ồ, nó có một lần sơn màu xanh sẫm dọc hai bên sườn và một vết lõm ở chắn bùn phía trước bên trái. (*).

A : Nhưng còn bảng số xe, thưa ông ?

B : PSV 439 Y.

A : Thưa ông, tôi có tin mừng cho ông. Xe ông không bị đánh cắp. Nó bị cảnh sát kéo đi. Nó đậu trên một vạch vàng đôi. Ông có thể đến Sở Cảnh sát nhận nó, và tốt hơn ông nên mang theo tập chi phiếu !

Exercise 2

Describe somebody's car. Describe a car you would like to own.

THE ESTATE AGENT

A Rebecca Trueman speaking.

B Ah, Mrs Trueman. This is Fox and Connor, the estate agents. I think we've found a house that you may be interested in.

A Could you tell me something about it ?

B It's in Redhill, near the station, as you requested. It's a rather attractive four-bedroomed 1930s redbrick property. It's in very good decorative order, with a fitted kitchen.

A And the garden ?

B There's a large, mature garden. Would you like to view it ?

A Yes, I think it's worth a look. Could you put the details in the post ?

NHÂN VIÊN ĐỊA ỐC

A : Rebecca Trueman đang nghe đây.

B : A, bà Trueman – Đây là Fox và Connor, nhân viên địa ốc. Chúng tôi đã tìm được một căn nhà mà bà có thể thích.

A : Các anh cho biết đôi điều về căn nhà được không?

B : Nhà ở Redhill, gần nhà ga như bà yêu cầu. Đây là căn nhà khá hấp dẫn, nhà gạch đỏ xây vào thập niên 1930, có 4 phòng ngủ. Cách bài trí rất đẹp, có nhà bếp tiện nghi.

A : Thế còn vườn ?

B : Có một khu vườn lớn, cây cối xum xuê. Bà muốn đến xem không ?

A : Vâng, tôi nghĩ là đáng xem đấy. Anh có thể ghi chi tiết rồi bỏ hộp thư được không ?

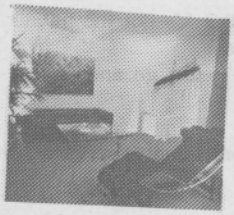
Exercise 3

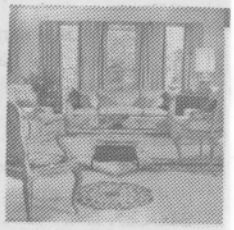
Describe somebody's house. Describe a house you would like to live in.

(*) Nguyên văn : nearside (phía gần lề đường nhất). Ở Anh, xe cộ lưu thông bên trái, như vậy phía gần lề đường nhất là phía bên trái – ghi chú của N.D.

Exercise 4

Describe these rooms. Describe your ideal room. Describe the furniture you would put in it, and where you would put it. Describe a café or a restaurant that you have visited. Describe a room or office in the school.





Exercise 5

Try and describe an object to a partner using the diagram below. Your partner guesses what it is.

Note : This diagram shows the usual order of adjectives. You won't often find them all in one sentence.

How much/ many ?	What's it like?	How big ?	What shape?	How old?	What colour?		What's the pattern ?	Where's it from ?	What's it made of ?	What is it?
a/an	beautiful	little	square	old	pale	red	check	French	silk	scarf
one	nice	small	round	new	light	yellow	striped	English	cotton	blouse
three	ugly	medium-sized	oval	modern	bright	green	plain	Japanese	wooden	desk
some	clean	average-sized	rectangular	antique	dark	blue		German	leather	car
a few	dirty	large	pointed	19th century		brown	flowered	Italian	gold	house
several	cheap	big	triangular	1930's		black	spotted	Roman	metal	box
a lot of	expensive	long	flat	1982		white		Parisian	paper	

PRACTICE

Under £20 Page
Every Monday in your 'EVENING ECHO'
-only £1 for 16 words.

CLOAK black, hooded, full-length, lined. Italian made, ideal for fancy dress parties. £19.99 – 707409.

BEAUTIFUL ladies' ankle boots, fringed, red, size 6. Purchased Paris boxed, unworn, bargain £12 – 476358.

RADIOMOBILE push-button car radio with speaker, v.g.c. £15 – 523564

WHITE cast-iron bath, turquoise panels, taps with shower. £15 o.n.o.-22641.

GIRLS dark red winter coat, detachable hood. 1.32 in, £8. Also blue belted-style coat £8. –423346.

VICIOUS Alsatian guard dog barking ferociously on tape cassette.
Great deterrent to intruders. £1,85 –733555 Evenings.

DRESSING table.
Modern, ideal child's room, light oak, two deep drawers, long dressing mirror, new cond. £14-476139.

TABLE 42 in x 2lin blue formica top complete with two chairs.
Hardly used £15
-684139 after 6 p.m.

PRAM navy blue detachable body and shopping tray. As new £19.50 Tel. 423340.

HOOVER junior vacuum cleaner incl. accessories. Little used £18 –707147.

T.V.B/W portable 12 in. Good picture. V. reasonable at £19 –27414.

RECORD player – stereo. Scarcely used. Unwanted gift. £15-513470.

CAMERA - Kodak instamatic, built-in flash, unused £12- 642879

CHILDREN'S encylopedia, 8 vols, hardly ever opened. £13.50 – 523242.

GIRLS' brown fur coat, with cream coloured trim. Age 8-9 yrs. Length 34 in. v.g.c worn once £8-284329

PAIR curtains. Regency stripe, brown /cream/gold. Length, 54in x 70in. Width. £19.99-769107

TYPEWRITER -portable, new ribbon, recently overhauled. Excel. cond. Bargain £16-729753.

BRAND-new men's black size 10 Wellington boots. Unused. £4- Tel. 79665 after 6 p.m.

MEN'S charcoal grey, all wool overcoat. Size 42 chest. £19.95 –25090

SEWING MACHINE, Singer. Modern, electric, automatic, many attachments, working order, £19.50 –623487

Exercise 1

Find abbreviations which mean :

1 black and white
2 years
3 very good condition
4 excellent
5 volumes
6 telephone
7 inches
8 or near offer
9 including
10 very
11 new condition
12 length

Bài tập 1

Tìm các từ viết tắt có nghĩa là :

Exercise 2

There are nine expressions which mean 'new' or 'nearly new'. What are they ?

Exercise 3

1 List the items of clothing which are advertised.

2 List the manufacturer's names in the advertisements.

Exercise 4

Imagine that you wish to sell one of your possessions for less than £20. Complete this coupon.

Bài tập 4

Hãy tưởng tượng là bạn muốn bán 1 trong các món đồ sở hữu của bạn với giá dưới 20 pounds. Hoàn tất phiếu này.

Exercise 5

Now write four similar advertisements for four more of your possessions.

Bài tập 5

Bây giờ viết 4 mẫu quảng cáo tương tự cho 4 món đồ nữa của bạn.

Exercise 6

Describing things in an advertisement is rather different from descriptions in a more formal text. Look at the table in Unit 51 on page 354.

He's got a..... car. (French, old, rusty, dirty)
He's got a dirty old rusty French car.

Rewrite these sentences, putting the adjectives in the most appropriate order.

1 It's a . . . . . painting. (landscape, valuable, 18th century)

2 She lives in a . . . . . flat. (three-bedroomed, spacious, studio)

3 I've just bought a . . . . . briefcase. (leather, brown, smart)

4 I'd like . . . . . eggs. (dozen, two, fresh, brown, large)

5 He's got an . . . . . recorder (Japanese, video, expensive, portable)

6 Look at those . . . . . figures. (antique, porcelain, French)

7 I'm looking for a . . . . . pullover. (V-neck, green, machine-washable, lambswool)

Bài tập 2

Có 9 thành ngữ có nghĩa là "mới" hay "gần như mới". Các thành ngữ đó là gì ?

Bài tập 3

1 Liệt kê các món quần áo được quảng cáo.

2. Liệt kê tên các nhà sản xuất trong bản quảng cáo này.

BARGAINS GALORE !

All under £20 For only £1.00

Did you know that you can now advertise as many items as you wish, which total less than £20 any Monday in the Echo ?

(Bank Holiday week it will appear on Tuesday)

Just complete the coupon with not more than 16 words.

YOUR BARGAINS COUPON

Name			I enclose £1
Address			P.O . ☐
. . . . . Tel.No.(if any)			Cheque ☐

Bài tập 6

Mô tả các món đồ trong bản quảng cáo thì hơi khác với việc mô tả trong một bài viết trang trọng hơn. Nhìn bảng trong bài 51 trang 354.

Anh ấy có... xe hơi. (Pháp, cũ, rỉ sét, dơ)
Anh ấy có 1 chiếc xe hiệu của Pháp dơ, cũ rỉ sét.

Viết lại các câu sau, đặt các tính từ vào vị trí thích hợp nhất.

8 I was bitten by a . . . . . dog. (black, huge, Alsatian, savage)

9 She drives a . . . . . car. (blue, Fiat, light, little, lovely)

Unit 52 Describing People

Mô tả người

VOCABULARY

- **bald** *(adj)* /bɔ:ld/ having little or no hair on the scalp = hói
- **beauty spot** *(n)* /'bju:tɪ spɒt/ mole or artificial spot on a woman's face, once thought to add to her beauty = nốt ruồi duyên
- **broad** *(adj)* /brɔ:d/ large in size from one side to the other; wide = rộng ~ *shoulders; a ~ street, canal.*
- **build** *(n)* /bɪld/ shape and size (of the human body) = vóc dáng *a man of athletic, powerful, slender, average ~.*
- **chin** *(n)* /tʃɪn/ cằm
- **complexion** *(n)* /kəm'plekʃn/ natural colour and appearance of the skin of the face = nước da *a good, dark, fair, sallow ~.*
- **dimple** *(n)* /'dɪmpl/ small natural hollow in the chin or cheek (either permanent or which appears eg when a person smiles) = lúm đồng tiền
- **distinguishing features** *(n)* /dɪ'stɪŋgwɪʃɪŋ 'fi:tʃəz/ đặc điểm
- **eyebrows** *(n)* /'aɪbraʊz/ lông mày
- **eyelashes** *(n)* /'aɪlæʃɪz/ lông mi
- **figure** *(n)* /'fɪgə/ human form, esp its appearance, what it suggests and how it is seen by others = dáng vẻ, thân hình *have a good ~* = be slim, shapely *I'm dieting to keep my ~.*
- **forehead** *(n)* /'fɒrɪd, 'fɔ:hed/ part of the face above the eyebrows and below the hair = trán
- **late teens** /leɪt ti:nz/ about 17 – 20 years of age = gần 20 tuổi
- **moody** *(adj)* /'mu:dɪ/ gloomy or sullen = âu sầu

  moodily *(adv)* **moodiness** *(n)*
- **olive – skinned** *(adj)* /'ɒlɪv skɪnd/ màu da bánh mật
- **receding** *(adj)* /rɪ'si:dɪŋ/ sloping backwards = trợt ra sau *a ~ chin; Tom has a ~ hairline* = his hair has stopped growing at the forehead and temples.
- **reliable** *(adj)* /rɪ'laɪəbl/ consistently good in quality or performance, and so deserving trust; dependable = đáng tin cậy *a ~ assistance, witness, report*

  reliability *(n)* state or quality of being reliable.

  reliably *(adv)* /-əblɪ/ *I am ~ informed that he's about to resign.*
- **scar** *(n)* /ska:/ mark left on the skin by a wound, sore = vết sẹo *Will the cut leave a ~ ?*
- **scruffy** *(adj)* /'skrʌfɪ/ (infml) dirty and untidy = luộm thuộm *You can't go to a job interview looking so ~ !*

  scruff *(n)* (infml) dirty and untidy person *He's a dreadful ~.*

  scruffiness *(n)*
- **sideburns** *(n)* /'saɪdbɜ:nz/ patches of hair growing on the side of a man's face in front of the ears = tóc mai
- **sociable** *(adj)* /'səʊʃəbl/ fond of the company of other people; friendly = thích giao du, cởi mở *He has never really been the ~ type. I'm not in a ~ mood.*

  sociability *(n)*
- **sophisticated** *(adj)* /sə'fɪstɪkeɪtɪd/ having or showing much worldly experience and knowledge of fashionable life = kiểu cách *a ~ woman; wearing ~ clothes; ~ tastes.*
- **sunburned** *(adj)* /'sʌbɜ:nd/ sunburnt = suffering from sunburn ~ *shoulders; sun – tanned.*
- **turned – up nose** *(n)* /tɜ:ndʌp nəʊz/ mũi hỉnh
- **wavy hair** *(n)* /'weɪvɪheə/ tóc gợn sóng
- **wrinkled** *(adj)* /'rɪŋkld/ having wrinkles = có nếp nhăn *his old ~ face; ~ socks.*

  wrinkle *(n)* (usu pl) small fold or line in the skin, esp one of those on the face that are caused by age. *She's beginning to get ~s around her eyes.*

PROPER NAMES

Colin	/'kɒlɪn/
Donna	/'dɒnə/
Janet	/'dʒænɪt/
Robert	/'rɒbət/

GRAMMAR NOTES :

a. Some compound adjectives :

- "Heart-shaped", "olive-skinned"

Formation : "Noun + Noun + ed"

Examples : Lion-hearted man, pig-headed person.
hook-nosed boy, heart-shaped lips

- "Overweight"

Formation : "Preposition + noun"
(the noun is object to the preposition)

EX : Oversize, Underweight, overseas, underland...

- "Well-built", "Well-dressed"

Formation : "Adverb + past participle"

EX : Well-known, hard-won, far-fetched, ill-bred...

Find in the text some compound adjectives with the formation adjective + noun + ed (See unit 51 - grammar notes) Give some examples using the above formations of compound adjectives.

b.Some commonly - used adjective suffixes and prefixes :

- "Un (as in *untidy, unshaven*) : indicating a negative

EX : Unreal, unhappy...

- Other prefixes, of the same and : in-, im-, il-, non-, ir- ...

EX : inhuman, illegal, impossible, noncontinuous, irresponsible.

Formation : un-/il-/ir/non-/in-/or- + adj = adj

Suffixes indicating a high or moderate degree of some quality :

-ful : beautiful, cheerful
-ous : generous, numerous, victorious
-ly : friendly, kindly.

Suffixes giving a passive sense

-d, -ed, -t : reserved, sophisticated, brought
-able, -ible : unsociable, reliable, edible, visible

Suffixes giving an active sense :

-ive : aggressive, talkative, corrective
-ing : amusing, boring, cooling...

Give five more examples to each kind of suffixes, prefixes mentioned above.

Listen to these people talking about their friends. Look at the example. Complete the other columns.

Hãy nghe những người này nói về bạn bè của họ. Hãy nhìn ví dụ. Điền vào các cột còn lại.

Name	Donna	Colin	Janet	Robert
Age	late teens			
Build	good figure			
Height	fairly tall			
Hair colour	black			
Hairstyle	long, wavy			
Face	heart-shaped, turned-up nose, full lips			
Eyes	blue, long eyelashes			
Complexion	olive-skinned			
Distinguishing features	dimples			
Dress				
Personality	lively, talkative			

Tên	Donna	Colin	Janet	Robert
Tuổi	18, 19			
Vóc người	đẹp			

Tên	Donna	Colin	Janet	Robert
Chiều cao	khá cao			
Màu tóc	đen			
Kiểu tóc	dài, gợn sóng			
Khuôn mặt	trái xoan, mũi hếch, môi đầy đặn			
Mắt	xanh, lông mi dài			
Nước da	màu ô liu			
Đặc điểm nhận dạng	núm đồng tiền			
Trang phục				
Cá tính	linh hoạt, hay nói,			

Look at this

Age	Build	Height
young	fat	1.70 m
middle-aged	thin	medium height
elderly	slim	average height
old	plump	below average
in his/her 30's	medium-build	tall
in his/her late teens	well-built (M)	short
in his/her mid-20's	broad-shouldered (M)	tallish
in his/her early-40's	overweight	shortish

Eyes	Complexion	Dress
blue	pale	smart
grey	sunburned/tanned	scruffy
brown	olive-skinned	well-dressed
long eyelashes	fair-skinned	casual
thick eyelashes	Oriental	conservative
bushy eyelashes	brown	elegant
thin eyebrows	black	fashionable

Tuổi	Vóc dáng	Chiều cao	Mắt	Nước da	Ăn mặc
Trẻ	mập	1,70m	Xanh	Xanh xao	Chải chuốt
trung niên	gầy	cao trung bình	xám	rám nắng	luộm thuộm
lớn tuổi	mảnh mai	cao trên trung bình	nâu	màu ô liu	tươm tất
già	tròn trịa	cao dưới trung bình	lông mi dài	sáng	tùy tiện
ở độ tuổi 30	vừa phải	cao	lông mi dày	Đông phương	kín đáo
khoảng 18, 19,	cân đối (nam)	thấp	lông mi rậm rạp	ngăm,	thanh lịch
khoảng 24-25,	vai rộng (nam),	hơi cao	lông mày thưa.	đen.	hợp thời
khoảng 40-43.	nặng quá cân.	hơi thấp.			trang.

Hair clour	Hairstyle	Face	Distinguishing features	Personality
black brown red fair blonde grey white dyed a brunette (F) a blonde (F) a redhead (F) mousey dark	long short straight wavy curly neat untidy with plaits (F) a fringe swept back in a bun (F) pony-tail (F) bald (M) balding (M) thinning (M) receding (M)	thin long round oval square heart-shaped (F) high cheekbones high forehead thin lips full lips long nose straight nose turned-up nose broken nose a cleft chin a pointed chin double chin	beard (M) moustache (M) side-burns (M) unshaven (M) clean-shaven (M) a scar a beauty-spot (F) a mole with freckles with dimples with spots with wrinkles with lines with glasses (well) made-up (F)	quiet reserved thoughtful calm moody unsociable sociable sophisticated lively cheerful amusing polite reliable talkative aggressive friendly shy

Màu tóc	Kiểu tóc	Khuôn mặt	Đặc điểm nhận dạng	Cá tính
Đen nâu đỏ vàng vàng hoe xám trắng nhuộm một cô gái tóc ngăm nâu(*) một cô gái tóc vàng hoe một cô gái tóc đỏ xám xịt sắm.	Dài ngắn thẳng dợn sóng quăn gọn gàng luộm thuộm tết đuôi sam (nữ) bom-bê chải ngược ra sau. bắt đầu hói (nam) lưa thưa (nam) trọt ra sau trán (nam)	Gầy dài tròn hình ô van vuông trái soan (nữ) gò má cao trán cao môi mỏng môi dầy mũi dài mũi thẳng mũi hếch mũi gãy cằm chẻ cằm nhọn cằm có ngấn cằm đôi.	Râu (nam) râu mép (nam) tóc mai (nam) râu tóc bờm xờm (nam) mày râu nhẵn nhụi (nam) sẹo nốt ruồi son (nữ) nốt ruồi có tàn nhang có lúm đồng tiền có vết nám có vết nhăn có vết hằn có đeo kính trang điểm (kỹ) (nữ).	ít nói thâm trầm hay suy tư bình tĩnh dễ giận hờn không thích giao du kết bạn thích giao du kết bạn phức tạp linh hoạt sôi nổi tếu lịch thiệp đáng tin cậy hay nói nhiều hung hăng thân thiện nhút nhát.

Describe these people. Describe yourself, another student, a famous person.

(*) cô gái ngăm nâu (brunette) thuộc nòi da trắng nhưng tóc đen (hoặc nâu), mắt đen, da ngăm đen.

PRACTICE

A Charles Orson	E Igor Romanoff	H Dick Harris	K Lou Fox
B Terry Saville	F Federico Cortina	I Sheena Gray	L Roland J. Frankfurter
C Beth Davies	G Chloe Jackson	J Sylvie Horne	M Doreen Barker
D Bobo Malik			

Exercise 1

A Who's the short fat man with a bald head and glasses ?

B That's Charles Orson.

Continue.

1 A.....
B.....
2 A.....
B.....
3 A.....
B.....
4 A.....
B.....
5 A.....
B.....
6 A.....
B.....

Exercise 2

Write a short description of a student in your class. Read it out. See if the other students can guess who it is.

Exercise 3

Look at the example and complete the table.

Bài tập 1

A Người đàn ông mập, lùn có đầu hói và đeo kính là ai vậy ?

B Đó là Charles Orson.

Hãy tiếp tục.

7 A.....
B.....
8 A.....
B.....
9 A.....
B.....
10 A.....
B.....
11 A.....
B.....
12 A.....
B.....

Bài tập 2

Viết 1 bài mô tả ngắn về một học sinh trong lớp bạn. Đọc to bài tả này. Xem thử các học sinh khác có thể đoán ra đó là ai không.

Bài tập 3

Xem thí dụ và hoàn thành bản này.

The man who has got a bald head.	*The man with a bald head.*	*The bald-headed man.*
The girl who has got blue eyes.	....	....
....	The man with grey hair.	....
....	....	The bearded man.
The woman who has got thin lips.	....	....

Exercise 4
Write brief descriptions of these people.

Bài tập 4
Viết bài mô tả ngắn về các nhân vật này.

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Units 49-52

Dialogue A

Listen Caroline Rolan was kidnapped. She was found by the police, and is being interviewed.
Detective Now Caroline I must ask you a lot of questions.
Caroline That's OK. I understand.
Detective You were in the street. Can you remember the name of it ?
Caroline No, but I can take you there. I remember where it is.
Detective OK. We can do that later. Now a car stopped beside you. Can you describe it ?
Caroline Yes. It was a black Ford... It was big and new.
Detective I see. It was a big, new, black Ford. Is that correct ?
Caroline Yes. That's correct.
Listen and repeat

A1 Listen
A : You were in the street. Can you remember the name of it ?
B : Can you remember the name of the street you were in ?
C : Can you remember the name of the street you were in ?
A : The car stopped. Can you describe it ?
B : Can you describe the car which stopped ?
C : Can you describe the car which stopped ?

Now you do the same
You were in the street. Can you remember the name of it?
..... Can you remember the name of the street you were in ?
The car stopped. Can you describe it ?
..... Can you describe the car which stopped ?
You saw the man. Can you describe him ?
..... Can you describe the man you saw ?
The woman spoke to you. Can you remember her ?
..... Can you remember the woman who spoke to you ?

A2 Listen
A : It was a black Ford. It was big and new.
B : I see. It was a big, new, black Ford.
C : I see. It was a big, new, black Ford.
A : It was a green Fiat. It was dirty and old.
B : I see. It was a dirty, old, green Fiat.
C : I see. It was a dirty, old, green Fiat.

Now you do the same
It was a black Ford. It was big and new..... I see.
It was a big, new, black Ford.
It was a green Fiat. It was dirty and old..... I see.
It was a dirty, old, green Fiat.
It was a white Mercedes. It was enormous..... I see.
It was an enormous, white Mercedes.
It was a blue Volkswage. It was average-sized and modern
..... I see.
It was a average-sized, modern, blue Volkswagen.

A3 Listen
A : Is that correct ?
B : Yes. That's correct.
C : Yes. That's correct.
A : Is that a good description ?
B : Yes. That's a good description.
C : Yes. That's a good description.

Now you do the same
Is that correct ? ..... Yes. That's correct.
Is that a good description ? ..... Yes. That's a good description.
Is that what it was like ? ..... Yes. That's what it was like.
Is that what it looked like ? ..... Yes. That's what it looked like.

Dialogue B

Listen
Detective Right. Now how many people were there in the car ?
Caroline Four of them. Two in the back. Two in the front.
Detective OK. Tell me about the woman. She spoke to you, didn't she ?

Caroline Mm. She called me over to the car.
Detective What can you remember about her ?
Caroline Well. She was young and slim... pretty. She had long, blonde hair.
Detective So she was young, slim and pretty with long, blonde hair. How blonde ? Very blonde ?
Caroline Very blonde... it was dyed I think.
Detective As blonde as yours.
Caroline Yes... but mine's natural.
Listen and repeat

B1 Listen

A : Tell me about the woman. She spoke to you, didn't she?
B : Tell me about the woman who spoke to you.
C : Tell me about the woman who spoke to you.
A : Tell me about the man in the front. He was driving wasn't he ?
B : Tell me about the man who was driving.
C : Tell me about the man who was driving.

Now you do the same

Tell me about the woman. She spoke to you didn't she ?
.....Tell me about the woman who spoke to you.
Tell me about the man in the front. He was driving wasn't he?
.....Tell me about the man who was driving.
Tell me about the man in the back. He grabbed you, didn't he?
.....Tell me about the man who grabbed you.
Tell me about the man in the back. He didn't get out, did he?
.....Tell me about the man who didn't get out.

B2 Listen

A : She was young and slim... pretty. She had long, blonde hair.
B : So she was young, slim, and pretty with long blonde hair.
C : So she was young, slim, and pretty with long blonde hair.
A : He was middle-aged and fat... ugly. He wore sunglasses.
B : So he was middle-aged, fat and ugly with sunglasses.
C : So he was middle-aged, fat and ugly with sunglasses.

Now you do the same

She was young and slim... pretty. She had long, blonde hair
.....So she was young, slim and pretty with long, blonde hair.
He was middle-aged and fat... ugly. He wore sunglasses
.....So he was middle-aged, fat and ugly with sunglasses.
He was tall and sunburned... handsome. He had a moustache
.....So he was tall, sunburned and handsome with a moustache.
He was short and well-built... bald. His nose was broken
.....So he was short, well-built and bald with a broken nose.

B3 Listen

A : She was blonde.
B : How blonde ? Very blonde ?
C : How blonde ? Very blonde ?
A : She was young.
B : How young ? Very young ?
C : How young ? Very young ?

Now you do the same

She was blonde .....How blonde ? Very blonde ?
She was young.....How young ? Very young ?
She was slim.....How slim ? Very slim ?
She was tall.....How tall ? Very tall ?

Dialogue C

Listen

Detective Now where did they take you ? Do you know ?
Caroline Not really. They covered my eyes. But I saw the house they took me to.
Detective You saw the house ? Can you describe it ?
Caroline Not very well... but I'll try.
Detective It's very important.
Caroline It was a large house. Expensive. Modern. The windows were very big.
Detective A large, expensive, modern house with very big windows. Go on...
Caroline They put me in a room. I can describe that. I remember every detail.
Detective Carry on.

Caroline It was enormous. It had a very high ceiling and thick carpets. There was a Picasso on the wall.
Detective What was the picture of ?
Caroline I don't know. I couldn't understand it.
Detective Go on. You're doing very well.
Listen and repeat

C1 Listen

A : They took me to a house. I saw it.
B : I saw the house they took me to.
C : I saw the house they took me to.
A : They locked me in a room. I can remember it.
B : I can remember the room they locked me in.
C : I can remember the room they locked me in.

C2 Listen

A : It was a large house. Expensive. Modern. The windows were big.
B : It was a large, expensive, modern house with big windows.
C : It was a large, expensive, modern house with big windows.
A : It was a very old house. Dirty. Empty. There was no furniture.
B : It was a very old, dirty, empty house with no furniture.
C : It was a very old, dirty, empty house with no furniture.

C3 Listen

A : The room was enormous. It had a high ceiling. There was a Picasso on the wall.
B : The room was enormous with a high ceiling and a Picasso on the wall.
C : The room was enormous with a high ceiling and a Picasso on the wall.
A : The room was tiny. It had a stone floor. There were no windows.
B : The room was tiny with a stone floor and no windows.
C : The room was tiny with a stone floor and no windows.

Now you do the same

They took me to a house. I saw it
.....I saw the house they took me to.
They locked me in a room. I can remember it
.....I can remember the room they locked me in.
They tied me to a chair. I can describe it
.....I can describe the chair they tied me to.
They threw me on a sofa. I can describe it
.....I can describe the sofa they threw me on.

Now you do the same

It was a large house. Expensive. Modern. The windows were very big.....It was a large, expensive, modern house with big windows.
It was a very old house. Dirty. Empty. There was no furniture .....It was a very old, dirty, empty house with no furniture.
It was a one-bedroom flat. Small. Cheap. It had a very small bathroom.....It was a small, cheap, one-bedroom flat with a small bathroom.
It was a detached house. Average-sized 1920's. It had a nice garden.....It was an average-sized, 1920's detached house with a nice garden.

Now you do the same

The room was enormous : It had a high ceiling. There was a Picasso on the wall.....The room was enormous with a high ceiling and a Picasso on the wall.
The room was tiny. It had a stone floor. There were no windows .....The room was tiny with a stone floor and no windows.
The room was long. It had pink wallpaper. There was old furniture .....The room was long with pink wallpaper and old furniture.
The room was square. It had two doors. There were two windows .....The room was square with two doors and two windows.

Listening

Listen carefully to the police radio and answer the questions when you hear this sound BELL

1

'Come in Panda six. Come in Panda six. Over.'
'Panda six here. Hearing you loud and clear. Over.'
'Be on the lookout for Ford Cortina, registration number DGG 544Y. It's a brand-new, dark blue, two-litre version reported stolen from Studland multi-storey car park some time this evening.'
'OK. Over and out.'

BELL

What make is the car ? ..... It's a Ford Cortina.
What's the registration number ?..... DGG 544Y.
How old is it ?..... It's brand new.
What colour is it ?..... It's dark blue.
When was it stolen ?..... Some time this evening.

2

'Come in Panda six. Can you hear me ?'
'Panda six here. Go ahead.'
'Missing person. Name of Liza Roberts. Just reported missing by father, and is very worried. She hasn't come home from school. She's fourteen. About 1 m 58. Dark hair, cut short. Grey eyes. Sunburned. Wearing St Mary's school uniform. Dark-green skirt, pullover and blazer. Carrying a light-brown leather briefcase. Usually takes the bus home from school.'
'OK. I'll keep my eyes open. Over.'

BELL

What's her name ?..... Liza Roberts.
How old is she ?..... She's fourteen.
How tall is she ?..... About 1 m 58.
What colour is her hair ?..... Dark brown.
What colour are her eyes ?..... Grey.
What's her complexion ?..... Sunburned.
Describe her uniform..... A dark-green skirt, pullover and blazer.
Describe her briefcase..... A light-brown leather briefcase.

Open conversation

Listen and reply

A : How old are you ?
B : .....
A : How tall are you ?
B : .....
A : What colour are your eyes ?
B : .....
A : What's your complexion ?
B : .....
A : Describe your hair.
B : .....
A : Describe the shoes you're wearing.
B : .....
A : Describe the clothes you're wearing.
B : .....
A : That's the end of section thirteen.

Unit 53 Budget Day

Ngày ngân sách

VOCABULARY

- **balance** *(v)* /'bælons/ (finance) compare the total debits and credits in (an account) and record the sum needed to make them equal = điều tiết, cân đối lại *~ the budget = arrange for income and expenditure to be equal.*
- **budget** *(n)* /'bʌdʒɪt/ annual government statement of a country's expenditure and how it will be financed = ngân sách *The Chancellor of the Exchequer is expected to announce tax cut in this year's ~.*
- **Chancellor of the Exchequer** *(n)* /ˌtʃɑ:nsələ əv ðɪ ɪks'tʃekə/ (Brit) cabinet minister responsible for finance = Bộ trưởng tài chính
- **commission** *(v)* /kə'mɪʃn/ give a commission to sb = đặt làm, đặt mua (một bức tranh...) *~ an artist to paint a picture.*
  commission *(n)* ~ (to do st) action, task or piece of work given to sb to do.
- **fine** *(n)* /fain/ sum of money that must be paid as a punishment for breaking a law or rule = tiền phạt *Offenders may be liable to a heavy ~.*
  fine *(v)* ~ sb (for st / doing st) punish sb by a fine. *fined for dangerous driving. The court fined him £500.*
  finable *(adj)* = that is likely to be punished by a fine *a ~ offence.*
- **gallon** *(n)* /'gælən/ 1 galông = 4.55 litres
- **House of Commons** *(n)* /haus əv 'komənz/ Hạ nghị viện
- **import control** *(n)* /'ɪmpɔ:t kən'trəul/ control of imported goods, services = kiểm soát hàng nhập khẩu
- **impose** *(v)* /ɪm'pəuz/ ~ st (on sb / st) place (a penalty, tax, etc) officially on sb / st = đánh vào, áp đặt. *~ a fine, sentence, term of prisonment. ~ a further tax on wines and spirits.*
- **incentive** *(n)* /ɪn'sentɪv/ ~ (to do st) thing that encourages sb to do st; stimulus = động cơ thúc đẩy làm điều gì *the offer of cash ~ s; an ~ to work harder.*
- **indirect taxation** *(n)* /ˌɪndɪ'rekt, - daɪ'r - tæk'seɪʃn/ thuế gián thu
- **outline** *(v)* /'autlaɪn/ give a short general description of st = phác họa *We ~ d our main objections to the proposal.*
- **parking – ticket** *(n)* /'pɑ:kɪŋ tɪkɪt/ giấy phạt đậu xe không đúng qui định
- **propose** *(v)* /prə'pəuz/ offer or put forward (st) for consideration; suggest = đề nghị *The committee ~ d that new legislation should be drafted.*
  proposal *(n)* /prə'pəuzl/ plan or scheme = dự thảo, kế hoạch *Various proposals were put forward for increasing sales.*
- **protect** *(v)* /prə'tekt/ keep sb / st safe from harm, injury; defend sb / st = bảo vệ *The vaccine was used to ~ the whole population against infection*
  protection *(n)* ~ (for sb) (against st) *appeal for ~ from the police.*
- **raise** *(v)* /reɪz/ 1. ~ st (to st) increase the amount or volume or heighten the level of st = nâng lên *~ salaries, prices, profits.*
  2. bring or collect (st) together; manage to obtain = thu gom *~ funds for charity; ~ a loan.*
- **stimulate** *(v)* /'stɪmjuleɪt/ arouse sb / st = kích thích, cổ vũ *Praise always stimulates him to further efforts / to make greater efforts.*
  stimulating *(adj)* arousing *The ~ effect of coffee*
  stimulation *(n)* /ˌstɪmju'leɪʃn/ *a working atmosphere lacking in ~.*
- **subsidize** *(v)* /'sʌbsɪdaɪz/ give a subsidy to (st / sb) = trợ cấp, bù lỗ. *~ d industries*
  subsidy *(n)* /'sʌbsɪdɪ/ money paid, esp by a government, to help an industry, to support the arts, to keep prices down, etc.
  food subsidies, eg to reduce the price of basic foods.
- **superintendent** *(n)* /ˌsju:pərɪn'tendənt/ (in Britain) police officer next in rank above chief inspector. Sĩ quan cảnh sát trên chức thanh tra trưởng.

EXPRESSIONS

a queue halfway down the road xếp hàng dài đến giữa đường

to beat the budget chơi trước ngân sách, tạm ứng

on special offer bán giá đặc biệt

to break down bị hư

to let off tha, không phạt

PROPER NAMES

- Chancellor /'tʃa:nsələ/
- Julie /'dʒu:li/
- Graham /'greɪəm/
- Stuart /'stju:ət/

USAGE

1. The House of Commons : Hạ nghị viện (ở Anh) /'kɒmənz/
   The House of Lords : Thượng nghị viện (ở Anh) /lɔ:dz/
   The House of Representatives : Hạ nghị viện (Ở Mỹ) /ˌreprɪ'zentətɪvz/
   The Senate : Thượng nghị viện (ở Mỹ) /'senɪt/
2. Some common noun + preposition combinations :

Change in	(thay đổi về)	(Changes in policy)
Increase in	(gia tăng về)	(Increase in market price)
Tax on, Duty on	(thuế đánh trên)	(Tax on goods)
Reason for	(lý do giải thích cho)	Reason for his bad temper
Answer to	(Câu trả lời cho)	Answer to her questions
Exception to	(ngoại lệ của)	Exception to this rule
Possibility of	(khả năng về)	Possibility of getting a job

- To increase/reduce s/t (tax, price, expenses...) by ?%. Tăng/giảm thuế, giá, chi phí bao nhiêu phần trăm.

EX : Because of the great budget loss, the government has been forced to increase taxes on chemical and electrical goods by 5%.

GRAMMAR NOTES TO, IN ORDER TO to express Purpose.

A. TO (purpose) (để)

We can use the to- infinitive to say why someone does something, what the purpose of an action is :

Ex : Most people work *to earn* money. We went to the library *to get* some books.

B. IN ORDER TO and SO AS TO *In order to* and *so as to* are more *formal* than *to* :

Ex : The government took these measures *in order to* reduce crime.
(Nhà nước tiến hành các biện pháp này nhằm để giảm tội phạm)
- *In order to* raise £60 million, the government proposes to increase the duty on tobacco.
(Để có thể thu được 60 triệu pounds, chính phủ đề nghị tăng thuế thuốc lá).

To express "negative purpose", we use *in order not to*, or *so as not to*, we cannot use *not to* on its own :

Ex : I shut the door quietly *so as not to / in order not to* wake the baby.

The British government normally announces changes in taxation once a year. This usually happens in March when the Chancellor of the Exchequer reads his budget proposals in the House of Commons. He outlines the changes in taxation which will balance government income and expenditure for the next year. Sometimes the changes in indirect taxation take effect immediately. Many people try to 'beat the budget' by guessing which articles will increase in price, and buying them before the Chancellor makes his announcement.

Mỗi năm một lần chính phủ Anh thường công bố những thay đổi về thuế khóa. Điều này thường xảy ra vào tháng ba khi Bộ trưởng Tài chính tường trình các dự thảo ngân sách trước Hạ viện. Ông vạch ra những thay đổi về thuế khóa nhằm điều tiết thu chi của nhà nước trong năm tới. Đôi khi những thay đổi về thuế gián thu có hiệu lực ngay tập tức. Nhiều người cố gắng "ra tay trước ngân sách" bằng cách đoán những món hàng sẽ tăng giá và mua trước khi Bộ trưởng Tài chính loan báo.

The day before the budget

Julie Hello, darling. You're late.

Graham Yes. I went to the garage to get some petrol.

Julie But that only takes five minutes, doesn't it ?

Graham Not today. There was a queue halfway down the road.

Julie Really ? Why ? There isn't another oil crisis, is there ?

Graham No, no. They were all filling their tanks to beat the budget. Everybody expects a big increase in tax on petrol. I bought ten gallons !

BUDGET MORNING

Graham It says in the paper that they might increase taxes on electrical goods.

Julie Perhaps we should buy that new fridge/freezer we were looking at. What do you think ?

Graham Yes, we need one anyway.

Julie Can you get to the shop at lunchtime ?

Graham I'm afraid not. Look, we know how much it is. Why don't you write a cheque, and send Stuart to buy it ?

Julie All right. If you're sure we can afford it.

Graham It was an Electrolux 1241, wasn't it ? Send him to get it at the show-room in Highfield Road. They had it on special offer.

Exercise 1

garage *He went to the garage to get some petrol.*

Make sentences with :

1 bank	2 chemist's
3 library	4 newsagent's
5 butcher's	6 baker's
7 greengrocer's	8 florist's
9 tobacconist's	10 off-licence

4.30, BUDGET AFTERNOON

Julie Stuart, switch on the television, will you? I want to hear the news about the budget.

Stuart Right, Mum.

Newsreader And here are the major points about today's budget again. In order to raise £60 million, the government proposes to increase the duty on tobacco. This will mean an increase of 15p on a packet of cigarettes, which should please anti-smoking campaigners. The Chancellor has also

Một hôm trước ngày loan báo ngân sách

Julie : Chào cưng. Trễ rồi.

Graham : Ừ, Anh đến ga-ra mua một ít xăng.

Julie : Nhưng chuyện đó chỉ mất 5 phút thôi, phải không?

Graham : Hôm nay thì không. Có một hàng người dài xếp sẵn đi mới nửa đường đã thấy rồi.

J : Thật ư ? Tại sao ? Lại khủng hoảng dầu hỏa à ?

G : Không, không phải. Người ta đang đổ đầy bình xăng để ra tay trước ngân sách. Ai cũng nghĩ rằng thuế đánh vào xăng sẽ tăng mạnh. Anh mua 10 ga-lông (1 gallon = 4,5 lít).

Buổi sáng ngày loan báo ngân sách

Graham : Báo nói rằng họ có thể tăng thuế đánh vào đồ điện.

Julie : Có lẽ chúng ta nên mua cái tủ lạnh / tủ đông lạnh mới mà chúng ta đã xem. Anh có ý kiến gì không?

G : Ừ, dù gì thì chúng ta cũng cần một cái.

J : Vào giờ ăn trưa anh có thể ghé tiệm được không ?

G : E rằng không. Này, chúng ta đã biết giá. Em ký séc rồi đưa cho Stuart đi mua.

J : Được thôi. Nếu anh chắc là chúng ta có đủ tiền.

G : Đó là loại tủ lạnh Electrolux 1241, phải không ? Bảo nó mua ở phòng trưng bày đường Highfield. Họ bán giá đặc biệt.

Exercise 2

He/her/post office/stamps.

He sent her to the post office to get some stamps.

Continue.

1 They/him/newsagent's/a map.
2 She/them/off-licence/wine.
3 My boss/me/stationer's/paper.
4 We/John/supermarket/fruit.

4g30 phút. Chiều ngày loan báo ngân sách

Julie : Stuart, con bật truyền hình đi. Mẹ muốn nghe tin về ngân sách.

Stuart : Dạ, thưa mẹ.

Xướng ngôn viên : Và đây là các điểm chính về ngân sách được loan báo hôm nay. Để có 60 triệu pounds Anh, chính phủ dự tính tăng thuế đánh vào thuốc lá. Điều này có nghĩa là mỗi bao thuốc lá sẽ tăng 15 peni, điều đó sẽ làm hài lòng những người tham gia chiến dịch chống hút thuốc. Bộ trưởng Tài chính cũng

increased the duty on beer, wines, and spirits in order to raise an extra £400 million in revenue. The government has also increased petrol tax by 15% so as to encourage energy saving. Value Added Tax has been reduced by 2% so as to stimulate the economy. This will mean that household goods – televisions, washing-machines, fridges, etc., will go down in price.

đã tăng thuế đánh vào bia, các loại rượu mùi và rượu mạnh nhằm thu thêm 400 triệu pounds. Chính phủ cũng đã tăng thuế xăng 15% nhằm khuyến khích tiết kiệm năng lượng. Thuế trị giá gia tăng được giảm 2% nhằm kích thích nền kinh tế. Điều này có nghĩa là các mặt hàng gia dụng – Ti vi, máy giặt, tủ lạnh v.v... sẽ giảm giá.

Exercise 3

In order to raise £60 million, they increased tobacco duty.
So as to raise £60 million, they increased tobacco duty.
They increased tobacco duty in order to raise £60 million.
They increased tobacco duty so as to raise £60 million.
Make sentences in each of these four ways about each proposal in the table below.

Proposal	Purpose
Increase tobacco duty.	Raise £60 million.
Put up the duty on wines, beers and spirits.	Raise £400 million.
Increase petrol tax by 15%.	Encourage energy saving.
Reduce VAT by 2%.	Stimulate the economy.
Reduce income-tax.	Increase incentives.
Subsidize heavy fuel.	Help industry.
Impose import controls.	Protect home industries.
Sell parts of the steel industry.	Raise £1,000 million.
Give financial help for home insulation.	Encourage energy saving.
Increase old age pensions.	Protect old people from inflation.

Dự thảo	Mục đích
Tăng thuế thuốc lá	Thu 60 triệu pounds
Tăng thuế các loại rượu mùi, bia và các loại rượu mạnh.	Thu 400 triệu pounds
Tăng thuế xăng 15%	Khuyến khích tiết kiệm năng lượng
Giảm thuế trị giá gia tăng 2%	Kích thích nền kinh tế
Giảm thuế thu nhập	Thúc đẩy động cơ làm việc
Bù lỗ nhiên liệu nặng	Giúp công nghiệp
Kiểm soát nhập khẩu	Bảo vệ các ngành công nghiệp nội địa
Bán các cơ sở của ngành công nghiệp thép	Thu 1.000 triệu pounds
Tài trợ cho việc cách điện trong nhà	Khuyến khích tiết kiệm năng lượng
Tăng trợ cấp dưỡng lão	Bảo vệ người già thoát khỏi nạn lạm phát.

PRACTICE

Language summary

He (did this) to (do that).
He sent (someone) to (do that).

He (did this)	*so as to* *in order to*	*(do that).*

So as to *In order to*	*(do that), he (did this).*

A hard luck story

It was a bit of bad luck when the motorist broke down – he was stuck on double yellow lines. So he went into a store to borrow a pen and paper to leave a note for the traffic warden. The pen, however, was like his car. It didn't work. When he decided to go back to the store to buy a pen, he found another little difficulty. He had only a £20 note and the salesgirl couldn't change it. So he set off to find a bank to change the note to buy the pen to write on the paper to put on his car to tell the traffic warden that his car had broken down. As he left the bank he spotted a phone box. He decided to call a garage to send a truck to tow the car away, but the number was engaged. When he got back to his car he found a parking ticket on the windscreen. The story has, however, a happy ending. The driver wrote to the head of the local police force to explain what had happened. The police superintendent who read the letter decided to let him off the £10 parking fine. He said that even if the man's story was not true, it was so clever that he deserved to be let off !

Exercise 1

Why did he go into a store ?

A *He went into a store so as to borrow a pen.*

B *He went into a store in order to borrow a pen.*

Write two answers to each of these questions.

Câu chuyện xui

Thật là khá xui xẻo khi người lái xe bị xe chết máy – anh ta bị mắc kẹt trên vạch vàng cấm đậu xe. Thế nên anh ta đi vào 1 cửa hàng để mượn cây viết và tờ giấy để ghi lại ít hàng cho cảnh sát giao thông. Tuy nhiên cây viết cũng giống như chiếc xe của anh. Nó không viết được. Lúc anh quyết định trở lại cửa hàng để mua viết, anh ta gặp một khó khăn nho khác. Anh chỉ có tờ giấy bạc 20 pounds và cô bán hàng không thể thối lại tiền. Nên anh vội đi tìm ngân hàng đổi tờ giấy bạc để mua cây viết, viết lên giấy dán vào xe báo cho cảnh sát giao thông biết là xe anh bị hư. Khi anh rời ngân hàng, anh thấy 1 buồng điện thoại. Anh quyết định gọi nhờ 1 ga ra cho xe tải tới kéo xe anh đi nhưng số này bị bận. Khi anh trở lại xe anh thấy giấy phạt trên kính chắn gió. Tuy nhiên câu chuyện kết thúc vui vẻ. Người lái xe viết thư đến trưởng công an địa phương giải thích điều xảy ra. Vị sĩ quan cảnh sát đọc thư đã quyết định tha cho anh tiền phạt 10 pounds. Ông nói rằng thậm chí câu chuyện của người này không thật thì nó cũng khôn khéo để anh ta xứng đáng được tha.

Bài tập 1

Tại sao anh ấy vào cửa hàng ?

A Anh ấy vào cửa hàng để mượn viết.

B Anh ấy vào cửa hàng để mượn viết.

Viết 2 câu trả lời cho mỗi câu hỏi sau :

1 Why did he want to borrow a pen and paper ?
2 Why did he decide to go back to the store?
3 Why did he set off to find a bank ?
4 Why did he want to leave a note on the car?
5 Why did he want the garage to send a truck ?
6 Why did he write to the head of the local police force ?

Exercise 2

She employed a secretary { *to answer the phone.* / *to help with her work.* / *to type her letters.* / *or... something else* }

Complete these.

1 He rang for a plumber . . . . . .
2 She phoned an electrician . . . . . .
3 I called a mechanic . . . . . .
4 They commissioned an artist . . . . . .
5 We went to a photographer . . . . . .

Exercise 3

Now complete these.

1 She boiled some water . . . . . .
2 He smashed the window . . . . . .
3 I bought a paper . . . . . .

Bài tập 2

Bà ấy thuê thư ký { để trả lời điện thoại / để giúp bà trong công việc / để đánh máy thư từ cho bà / hoặc... điều gì khác }

6 She sent him to the optician . . . . . .
7 They called the waiter over . . . . . .
8 She went to a specialist . . . . . .
9 Lord Worth employed a bodyguard . . . . . .
10 He bought a savage dog . . . . . .

Bài tập 3

Bây giờ hãy hoàn tất các câu này.

4 She used a credit card . . . . . .
5 She picked up the receiver . . . . . .
6 He took an aspirin . . . . . .

RECOGNIZING SIGNS

- Please lower volumn from 11p.m = Xin hạ nhỏ âm lượng sau 11 giờ đêm
- Mind your head = Cúi đầu xuống (coi chừng đụng đầu)
- Please stand clear of the doors = Xin đứng đứng chờ trước cửa

Unit 54 Do It Yourself

Hãy tự làm lấy

VOCABULARY

- **affect** *(v)* /ə'fekt/ have an influence on sb / st = có ảnh hưởng *The tax increases have ~ ed us all. The change in climate may ~ your health.*
- **alter** *(v)* /'ɔ:ltə/ (cause sb / st to) become different; change in character, position, size, shape, etc = sửa đổi *I didn't recognize him because he had ~ ed so much. She had to ~ her clothes after losing weight.*
  alteration *(n)* /,ɔ:tə'reiʃn/ 1. changing *How much ~ will be necessary ?*
  2. act or result of changing *We are making a few ~ s to the house.*
- **amphibious** *(n)* /æm'fibiəs/ living or operating both on land and in water = ở được trên đất và dưới nước *~ vehicles.*
- **back light** *(n)* /bæk lait/ đèn sau
- **bleeper** *(n)* /'bli:pə/ device that emits bleeps = máy phát tín hiệu "bíp bíp"
  bleep *(v)* /bli:p/ emit bleeps.
  bleep *(n)* short high – pitched sound made by an electronic device to attract attention. *The computer gave a regular ~.*
- **boot** *(n)* /bu:t/ (Brit) (US *trunk*) compartment for luggage, usu at the back of a motor car = ngăn để hành lý (trên xe) *Put the luggage in the ~.*
- **bullet – proof (adj)** /'bulit pru:f/ chắn đạn
- **burglar – alarm** *(n)* /'bə:glə ə,lɑ:m/ automatic device that rings an alarm bell when a burglar enters a building = còi báo động có trộm, máy báo động có trộm.
- **carpentry** *(n)* /'kɑ:pəntri/ art or work of a carpenter = nghề mộc *learn ~; a fine piece of ~.*
  carpenter *(n)* /'kɑ:pəntə/ person whose job is making or repairing wooden objects and structures = thợ mộc
- **convert** *(n)* /kən'və:t/ ~ (st) (from st) (into / to st) change (st) from one form or use to another = chuyển đổi ra *The room was ~ ed from a kitchen to a lavatory.*
- **corridor** *(n)* /'kɒridɔ:/ long narrow passage, from which doors open into rooms or compartments = hành lang
- **disabled** *(adj)* /dis'eibld/ unable to use a limb or limbs = tàn tật *a ~ child in a wheelchair.*
  the disabled *(n)* = people who are disabled. *walking aids for the ~.*
  disablement *(n)*
  disability *(n)* incapacity *Physical ~ causes mental anguish.*
- **ejector seat** *(n)* /i'dʒektə si:t/ seat in an aircraft that allows the pilot to eject = ghế ngồi dễ dàng ra được trong trường hợp khẩn cấp
- **electrics** *(n)* /i'lektriks/ nghề điện
- **extension** *(n)* /ik'stenʃn/ added part; addition; enlargement = phần mở rộng thêm, gian nhà *build an ~ to a hospital.*
- **handicapped** *(adj)* /'hændikæpt/ suffering from a serious physical or mental disability = bị khuyết tật
  the handicapped *(n)* = handicapped people. *a school for the severely ~.*
- **handyman** *(n)* /'hædimæn/ (pl – *men* / men/) person who is clever at doing household repairs, etc or who is employed to do odd jobs = người khéo tay
- **head – lamp** *(n)* /'hed læmp/ lamp at the front of a motor vehicle or railway engine = đèn trước
- **install** *(v)* /in'stɔ:l/ ~ st (in st) fix equipment, furniture, etc in position for use, esp by making the necessary connections with the supply of electricity, water, etc = thiết kế, lắp vào *~ a heating or lighting system.*
  installation *(n)* /,instə'leiʃn/
- **level** *(v)* /'levl/ make (st) level, equal or uniform = san bằng *The ground should be ~ led before you plant a lawn.*
- **periscope** *(n)* /'periskəup/ apparatus with mirrors and lenses arranged in a tube so that the user has a view of the surrounding area above, eg from a submarine when it is under water = kính tiềm vọng
  periscopic *(adj)* /,peri'skɒpik/ of or like a periscope
- **power points** *(n)* /'paʊə pɔints/ socket on a wall, etc where electrical appliances can be plugged in to an electric circuit = chỗ cắm điện
- **precaution** *(n)* /pri'kɔ:ʃn/ ~ (against st) thing done in advance to avoid danger; prevent problems, etc = sự đề phòng, lo trước *take an umbrella just as a ~. fire ~ s / ~ against fire.*

precautionary *(adj)* /prɪ'kɔ:ʃənərɪ/ preventive ~ *measures.*

- **ramp** *(n)* /ræmp/ slope joining two levels of ground, a floor, a road = dốc nối hai mức cao thấp của nền nhà v.v...
  push a wheelchair up / down a ~.
- **smoke alarm** *(n)* /smæk ə'lɑ:m/ dụng cụ báo động có khói
- **spot light** *(n)* /'spɒtlaɪt/ (lamp used for sending a) strong beam of light directed onto a particular place or person, eg on the stage of a theatre = đèn pha
- **swing gate / door** *(n)* /swɪŋ'geɪt, dɔ:/ gate or door that opens in either direction and closes itself when released = cửa tự động

EXPRESSIONS

do - it - yourself Tự làm lấy

a bad state of repair tình trạng sửa chữa nhiều, tồi

PROPER NAMES

Paul /pɔ:l/ Roy Miller /rɔɪ 'mɪlə/

Sheffield /'ʃefi:ld/

USAGE

1. To make alterations : to make changes, to change
   To make a move = to move (đi chuyển, dời chỗ)
   To make money (kiếm tiền)
   To make progress in (tiến bộ về)
   To make room for (nhường chỗ, dọn chỗ cho)
   To make water (tiểu tiện)
   To make a money out of s/o : làm ai trở thành hay cảm thấy lố bịch, xuẩn ngốc.
2. To afford to do something : to find enough money or time to do s/t
   To afford something : to find enough money or time to do s/t
3. To be/ become an expert on /in : là một chuyên gia về

GRAMMAR NOTES :

- Adverb clause of purpose : "SO THAT/IN ORDER THAT"

Formation : [So that + can/could or will/would + bare infinitive]

May/might or shall/should can follow "so that" without any change in meaning, though they are more formal

"In order that" is limited to "may/might" or "Shall/should"

EX : - I did this *so that* he could /might do that

- I did this in order that he might do that

"In order to/so as to" is used when the two subjects of the two clauses are the same

EX : I go to Saigon *in order* to earn my living (so that I can earn my living)

Do It Yourself magazine organizes a competition every summer to find the 'Handyman of the Year'. The winner this year is Mr Roy Miller, a Sheffield postman. A journalist and a photographer have come to his house. The journalist is interviewing Mr Miller for an article in the magazine.

Cứ vào mỗi dịp hè, tạp chí *Tự làm lấy* tổ chức một kỳ thi để tìm "Người Khéo Tay Nhất Trong Năm". Người đoạt giải năm nay là ông Roy Miller, nhân viên bưu tá ở Sheffield. Một nhà báo và phóng viên nhiếp ảnh đã đến nhà ông. Nhà báo đang phỏng vấn ông Miller để viết bài cho tạp chí.

Journalist Well, I'm very impressed by all the work you've done on your house, Mr Miller. How long have you been working on it ?

Nhà báo (NB) : Ô. Miller, tôi có ấn tượng mạnh về tất cả các công việc mà ông đã làm để sửa nhà. Ông phải mất bao lâu ?

Mr Miller I first became interested in do-it-yourself several years ago. You see, my son Paul is disabled. He's in a wheel-chair and I just had to make alterations to the house. I couldn't afford to pay workmen to do it. I had to learn to do it myself.

Ô. Miller : Tôi quan tâm đến tự làm lấy lần đầu tiên cách đây mấy năm. Anh thấy đó, Paul con trai của tôi bị tàn tật. Cháu phải ngồi xe lăn, và do vậy tôi phải sửa lại căn nhà. Tôi không có đủ tiền để thuê thợ. Tôi phải học cách tự làm lấy.

Journalist Had you had any experience of this kind of work? Did you have any practical skills?

Mr M No. I got a few books from the library but they didn't help very much. Then I decided to go to evening classes so that I could learn basic carpentry and electrics.

Journalist What sort of changes did you make to the house ?

Mr M First of all, practical things to help Paul. You never really realize the problems handicapped people have until it affects your own family. Most government buildings, for example, have steps up to the door. They don't plan buildings so that disabled people can get in and out. We used to live in a flat, and of course, it was totally unsuitable. Just imagine the problems a disabled person would have in your house. We needed a large house with wide corridors so that Paul could get from one room to another. We didn't have much money and we had to buy this one. It's over ninety years old and it was in a very bad state of repair.

Journalist Where did you begin ?

Mr M The electrics. I completely rewired the house so that Paul could reach all the switches. I had to lower the light switches and raise the power-points. I went on to do the whole house so that Paul could reach things and go where he wanted.

Journalist What else did you do ?

Mr M By the time I'd altered everything for Paul, do-it-yourself had become a hobby. I really enjoyed doing things with my hands. Look, I even installed smoke-alarms.

Journalist What was the purpose of that ?

Mr M I was very worried about fire. You see, Paul can't move very quickly. I fitted them so that we would have plenty of warning if there were a fire. I put in a complete burglar-alarm system. It took weeks. The front door opens automatically, and I'm going to put a device on Paul's wheelchair so that he'll be able to open and close it when he wants.

Journalist What are you working on now ?

Mr M I've just finished the kitchen. I've designed it so that he can reach everything. Now I'm building an extension so that Paul will have a large room on the ground floor where he can work.

NB : Ông đã có kinh nghiệm trong loại công việc này chưa ? Ông có kỹ năng thực tiễn nào không ?

Ô.M : Không. Tôi mượn một ít sách ở Thư viện, nhưng chúng cũng không giúp gì nhiều. Thế rồi tôi quyết định đi học lớp đêm để nắm được những cái cơ bản của nghề mộc và điện.

NB : Ông đã sửa nhà như thế nào ?

Ô.M : Trước hết là những chuyện thực tế để giúp Paul. Người ta không bao giờ ý thức được những vấn đề mà người tàn tật phải gánh chịu cho đến khi điều đó xảy ra ngay trong chính gia đình của họ. Ví dụ, phần lớn các công thự đều có bậc tam cấp dẫn đến cửa. Người ta không thiết kế các tòa nhà để người tàn tật có thể ra vào. Trước đây, chúng tôi sống trong một căn hộ nhỏ và đương nhiên nó hoàn toàn không thích hợp. Cứ thử tưởng tượng những khó khăn của một người tàn tật trong nhà bạn. Chúng tôi cần một căn nhà lớn có hành lang rộng để Paul có thể di chuyển từ phòng này đến phòng kia. Chúng tôi không có nhiều tiền và phải mua căn này. Nhà đã xây trên 90 năm rồi và xuống cấp trầm trọng.

NB : Ông bắt đầu từ đâu ?

Ô.M : Phần điện. Tôi thiết kế lại toàn bộ hệ thống điện để Paul có thể với tay tới tất cả các công tắc. Tôi phải hạ thấp các công tắc đèn và nâng cao các ổ cắm. Tôi tiếp tục sửa lại toàn bộ căn nhà để Paul có thể với được các đồ vật và di chuyển tới những nơi mà cháu muốn.

NB : Ông còn làm gì nữa ?

Ô.M : Lúc mà tôi đã sửa đổi lại mọi thứ cho Paul thì tự làm lấy đã trở thành một sở thích. Tôi thực sự ham thích làm việc bằng đôi bàn tay của mình. Nhìn xem, tôi còn lắp cả hệ thống báo hiệu có khói.

NB : Để làm gì ?

Ô.M : Tôi rất lo ngại về hỏa hoạn. Anh thấy đó, Paul không di chuyển nhanh được. Tôi lắp đặt hệ thống này để khi có một chỗ cháy, chúng tôi sẽ nghe nhiều tiếng báo động. Tôi còn lắp một hệ thống phòng trộm hoàn chỉnh. Mất nhiều tuần. Cửa trước tự động mở, và tôi định sẽ gắn vào xe lăn của Paul một thiết bị cho phép cháu có thể đóng mở cửa trước theo ý muốn.

NB : Hiện giờ ông đang sửa phần nào ?

Ô.M : Tôi vừa mới sửa xong nhà bếp. Tôi đã thiết kế để Paul có thể với đến mọi thứ. Bây giờ tôi đang xây thêm một phần nữa để Paul có một phòng lớn ở tầng trệt và có thể làm việc ở đó.

Journalist There's a £10,000 prize. How are you going to spend it ?

Mr M I'm hoping to start my own business so that I can convert ordinary houses for disabled people. I think I've become an expert on the subject.

NB : Giải thưởng là 10.000 pounds. Ông dự tính sẽ dùng số tiền này như thế nào ?

Ô.M : Tôi hy vọng sẽ bắt đầu công việc làm ăn riêng của mình để có thể sửa đổi những căn nhà bình thường cho người tàn tật. Tôi nghĩ bây giờ tôi đã trở thành chuyên viên trong lãnh vực này.

Exercise 1

Look at this

I did this so that	he	could couldn't	do that.
	this	would wouldn't	happen.

I'm doing this I do this	so that	he	can can't	do that.
		this	will won't	happen.

or

So that	he	could couldn't	do that.	I did this.
	this	would wouldn't	happen.	

So that	he	can can't	do that.	I'm doing this.
	this	will won't	happen.	I do this.

These are some of the things that Mr Miller did. Look at the chart, ask questions with *Why?/ What's the purpose of..* ? and answer them.

Improvement	Purpose
swing gate, swing doors	Paul wouldn't have to use the handles.
level the path	The wheel-chair would move easily.
widen the doors	The wheel-chair could get through.
phones in very room	Paul could always get to one.
special bathroom	Paul could use it.
lower the light switches	Paul could reach them.
remove the steps, put in ramps	The wheel-chair could get in and out.

Exercise 2

Here are some of the things Mr Miller is going to do. Ask questions and answer them.

Plan	Purpose
a device on his wheelchair	He'll be able to open and close the front door.
install a lift	He'll be able to get upstairs on his own.
build an extension	He'll have a room on the ground floor.
convert mini-bus with a ramp	He'll be able to get in and out.
design a 'bleeper'	He can call me at any time.
build a workshop in the garden	I'll have somewhere to work.

PRACTICE

Language summary

I (did this)	*so that*	*he*	*could* *couldn't*	*(do that)*
		this	*would* *wouldn't*	*(happen)*
I (do this) *(I'm doing this)*		*he*	*can* *can't*	*(do that)*
		this	*will* *won't*	*(happen)*

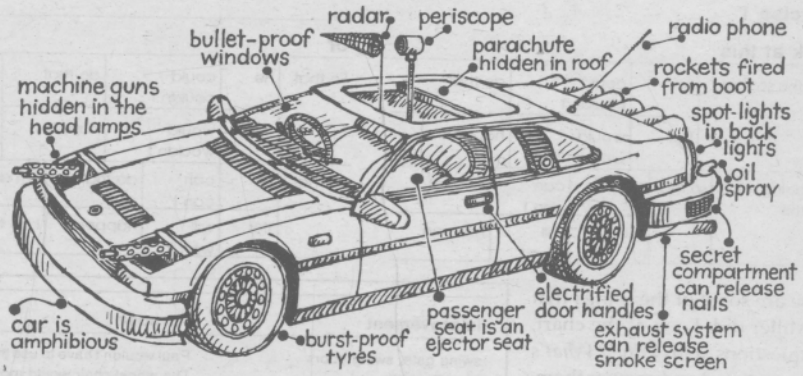
or

So that	*he*	*could* *couldn't*	*(do that)*	*I (did this).*
	this	*would* *wouldn't*	*(happen)*	
	he	*can* *can't*	*(do that)*	*I (do this).*
	this	*will* *won't*	*(happen)*	*I'm (doing that).*

What (is) the purpose of (that) ?

When 006 returned from the Indian Ocean, a new car was waiting for him. It looked like an ordinary production model but it had a number of extras.

Khi 006 trở về từ biển Ấn Độ Dương, một chiếc xe hơi mới đang chờ anh. Chiếc xe trông giống như kiểu sản xuất bình thường nhưng có thêm một số bộ phận.



Exercise 1

There's a periscope so that the car can operate as a submarine.

Why do you think the other 'extras' have been fitted to the car ? Write eleven sentences with 'so that'.

Exercise 2

006 was given a false tooth with poison in, so that he could kill himself if he was captured.

What other things do you think he might have been given, and why ? Write three more sentences.

Exercise 3

Why did he break the window ?
So that he could get into the house.
or *So that he could get out of the house.*
or *So that he could attract attention.*
Continue.

1 Why did he grow a beard ? . . . . .
. . . . . .

2 Why did she buy a calculator ? .
. . . . . .

3 Why are they learning English ? .
. . . . . .

4 Why did he save his money ? . . .
. . . . . .

Bài tập 1

Có một kính tiềm vọng để chiếc xe có thể hoạt động như chiếc tàu ngầm.

Bạn nghĩ tại sao các "bộ phận thêm" khác được gắn vào xe ? Viết 11 câu với "so that".

Bài tập 2

006 được cho một cái răng giả có kèm thuốc độc trong đó, để nếu anh bị bắt anh có thể tự sát.

Bạn nghĩ anh ấy còn được cho cái gì nữa và tại sao ? Viết thêm 3 câu nữa.

Bài tập 3

Tại sao hắn đập bể cửa sổ ?
Để hắn có thể vào nhà,
hoặc *Để hắn có thể ra khỏi nhà.*
hoặc *Để hắn có thể thu hút sự chú ý.*
Hãy tiếp tục.

5 Why did she fill in the form ? . . .
. . . . . .

6 Why did he stop at the garage ? . .
. . . . . .

7 Why did she buy some champagne ?
. . . . . .

8 Why did he buy traveller's cheques ?
. . . . . .

Unit 55 Take Care !

Hãy cẩn thận

VOCABULARY

- **adequate** *(adj)* /'ædɪkwət/ ~ (to / for st) satisfactory in quality or quantity; sufficient = đủ *take ~ precautions. Their earnings are ~ to their needs.*
  adequacy *(n)*
- **bacteria** *(n)* /bæk'tɪərɪə/ vi khuẩn
- **bleach** *(v)* /bli:tʃ/ (cause st to) become white or pale (by chemical action or sunlight) = tẩy rửa *bleach cotton, linen; hair ~ ed by the sun.*
- **blind** *(n)* /blaɪnd/ (usu attrib) concealed, hidden = không có lối ra, cụt (ngõ...)
  a ~ driveway/ entrance; a ~ bend, corner.
- **catchment area** *(n)* /'kætʃmənt eərɪə/ (also *catchment basin*) area from which rainfall flows into a river, reservoir, etc= khu dẫn nước
- **cholera** *(n)* /'kɒlərə/ infectious and often fatal disease causing severe diarrhoea and vomitting; common in hot countries = bệnh dịch tả. *an outbreak of ~.*
- **common – sense** *(n)* /ˌkɒmən 'sens/ practical good sense gained from experience of life, not by special study = lẽ thường, lương tri *I like her common sense approach to everyday problems.* Tôi thích cách cô ấy tiếp cận các vấn đề hàng ngày theo lẽ phải thông thường.
- **common failing** *(n)* /'kɒmən feɪlɪŋ/ nhược điểm, sự thiếu sót
- **confidential** *(adj)* /ˌkɒnfɪ'denʃl/ to be kept secret; not to be made known to others. ~ *files, information, letters.*
- **dehydration** *(n)* /ˌdi:haɪ'dreɪʃn/ loss of water or moisture = sự mất nước *dying of ~*
- **discomfort** *(n)* /= /dɪs'kʌmfət/ 1. lack of comfort; slight pain = sự không thoải mái *He still suffers considerable ~ from his injury.*
  2. thing that causes this. *the ~ s of travel*
  3. mental unease; embarrassment.
- **exposure** *(n)* /ɪk'spəʊʒə/ action of exposing or state of being exposed = sự phơi bày ra *Exposure of the body to strong sunlight can be harmful.*
- **fluid** *(n)* /'flu:ɪd/ any liquid substance = kiệt sức vì nóng nực *Drink plenty of ~ s.*
- **heat – exhaustion** *(n)* /hi:t ɪg'zɔ:stʃən/ kiệt sức vì nóng nực
- **heath** *(n)* /hi:θ/ area of flat uncultivated land = bãi hoang
- **hygiene** *(n)* /'haɪdʒi:n/ study and practice of cleanliness as a way of maintaining good health and preventing disease = phép vệ sinh. *Wash regularly to ensure personal ~.*
  hygienic *(adj)* /haɪ'dʒi:nɪk/ *~ conditions*
- **implement** *(n)* /'ɪmplɪmənt/ tool or instrument = dụng cụ *farm ~ s; Man's earliest ~ s were carved from stone and bone.*
- **infection** *(n)* /ɪn'fekʃn/ ~ (with st) becoming ill through contact with bacteria = sự truyền nhiễm *be exposed to ~; the ~ of the body with bacteria.*
  infectious *(adj) Flu is highly ~.*
- **inflammable** *(adj)* /ɪn'flæməbl/ that can be set on fire = dễ cháy *Petroleum – Highly ~* = *eg on a notice.*
- **inoculation** *(n)* /ɪˌnɒkju'leɪʃn/ inoculating or being inoculated = chủng ngừa *have ~ s against cholera and yellow fever.*
- **interval** *(n)* /'ɪntəvl/ time between two events = khoảng cách giữa hai sự việc; định kỳ
  at intervals (idm) with time between.
  He comes back to see us at regular intervals.
- **irrigation scheme** *(n)* /ˌɪrɪ'geɪʃn ski:m/ dự án thủy lợi
  irrigate *(v)* /'ɪrɪgeɪt/ supply (land or crops) with water (by means of streams, pipes, channels, reservoirs, etc)
- **lightweight** *(adj)* /'laɪtweɪt/ of little influence = nhẹ, mỏng *~ clothes.*
- **long – sleeved** *(adj)* /lɒŋ sli:vd/ dài tay (quần áo)
- **loose – fitting** *(adj)* /lu:s fɪtɪŋ/ loosely = thoải mái, rộng rãi *loose – fitting clothes*
- **malaria** *(n)* /mə'leərɪə/ fever produced when germs are introduced into the blood by a bite from certain mosquitoes = bệnh sốt rét
  a bad attack of ~.
  malarial *(adj)* - of malaria - = *~ symtoms.* - having malaria = *a ~ patient.*
- **mosquito net** *(n)* /mɒs-, mɒs'ki:təʊ net/ mùng
- **multigrade** *(adj)* /ˌmʌltɪ'greɪd/ đa năng, đa cấp
- **non – stick** *(adj)* /ˌnɒn stɪk/ không dính
- **offence** *(n)* /ə'fens/ ~ (to sb / st) act or cause of upsetting or annoying sb; insult = sự phật

lòng *I'm sorry, I intended no ~ when I said that.*

offend *(v)* /ə'fend/ (esp passive) cause (sb) to feel upset or angry; hurt the feeling of = làm phật ý *She was ~ ed by / at his sexist remarks. She may be ~ ed if you don't reply to her invitation.*

- **pest** *(n)* /pest/ insect or animal that destroys plants, food, etc = vật làm hại *Stores of grains are frequently attacked by pests.*
- **plantation** *(n)* /plæn'teɪʃn/ area of land planted with trees = đồn điền
- **purify** *(v)* /'pjʊərɪfaɪ/ ~ st (of st) make st pure by removing dirty, harmful or foreign substances = làm sạch, làm tinh khiết
  Water is purified by passing though rock.
  purification *(n)* /ˌpjʊərɪfɪ'keɪʃn/ *~ of water*
- **savage** *(adj)* /'sævɪdʒ/ (offensive) savage person or animal = người dã man, thú hung tợn
- **spatula** *(n)* /'spætʃʊlə/ tool with a wide flat blunt blade, used for mixing and spreading, esp in cooking and painting = cái xạn
  a plastic ~; a metal ~.
- **stile** *(n)* /staɪl/ set of steps enabling walkers to get over or through a fence, wall, etc in the country = bậc trèo (để trèo qua rào, tường)
- **stylus** *(n)* /'staɪləs/ sharp needle tipped with diamond or sapphire, used to reproduce sound by resting in the groove of a record as it turns on a record-player = kim máy hát đĩa.
- **suffocate** *(v)* /'sʌfəkeɪt/ 1. (cause sb to) die as a result of not being able to breathe = chết ngạt *Passengers ~ d in the burning aircraft.*
  2. having difficulty in breathing = khó thở *I'm ~ ing in here; can't we open a few windows?*
  suffocating *(adj)* = causing difficulty in breathing. *the ~ heat of a tropical night.*
  suffocation *(n)* /ˌsʌfə'keɪʃn/
- **sunstroke** *(n)* /'sʌnstrəʊk/ illness caused by being exposed to the heat and light of the sun too much = sự say nắng
- **swallow** *(v)* /'swɒləʊ/ cause or allow (esp food or drink) to go down the throat = nuốt *Taking pills is easy; just put them in your mouth and ~.*
- **thorough** *(adj)* /'θʌrə/ done completely and with great attention to detail; not superficial = toàn bộ, sâu sát kỹ càng *give the room a ~ cleaning. provide a ~ training in all aspects of the work.*
- **tread** *(n)* /tred/ outer grooved surface of a tyre that is in contact with the road = mặt ngoài lốp xe *Driving with worn ~ (s) can be dangerous.*
- **tropical** *(adj)* /'trɒpɪkl/ thuộc miền nhiệt đới
- **trough** *(n)* /trɒf/ máng ăn (cho vật nuôi)
- **typhoid** *(n)* /'taɪfɔɪd/ (also, **typhoid 'fever**) serious infectious feverish disease that attacks the intestines, caused by bacteria taken into the body in food or drink = bệnh thương hàn *a ~ epidemic.*
- **undue** *(adj)* /ˌʌn'dju:/ (fml) excessive = thái quá, nhiều *with ~ haste; show ~ concern over sb / st.*
- **uneven** *(adj)* /ˌʌn'i:vn/ 1. not level or smooth = không phẳng. *an ~ pavement, floor.*
  2. not uniform or equal = không đều. *have an ~ heartbeat, pulse*
- **unsightly** *(adj)* /ʌn'saɪtlɪ/ not pleasant to look at, ugly = khó coi, không đẹp mắt ~ *facial hair (= eg on women); London's ~ suburban sprawl.*
  unsightliness *(n)*
- **woodland** *(n)* /'wʊdlənd/ land covered with trees; woods = rừng ~ *scenery.*
- **yellow fever** *(n)* /'jeləʊ 'fi:və/ infectious tropical disease causing the skin to turn yellow = bệnh sốt vàng da.

EXPRESSIONS

to set an example nêu gương

to keep one's dog on a lead xích chó

PROPER NAMES

Macdonald /mək'dɒnld/

USAGE :

1- Employee : the one who is employed
Employer : the one who employs persons
Employment : employing or being employed

2- To prevent s/o (from) doing s/t
s/t (from) happening
EX : We should use a net to *prevent* mosquitos (from) *biting* while we are asleep at night
3-To avoid s/t
doing s/t
EX : - We have to be careful to *avoid damage.*
- You should put on the raincoat when going out in the rain *to avoid catching* a cold.

GRAMMAR NOTES :
+ Some affixes :
-ee (suffix) giving a passive meaning
EX : An employee (the one who is employed)
A trustee (the one who is trusted)
A trainee (the one who is trained)
An addressee (the one who is addressed)
Anti- (prefix) : against
EX : Anti-malaria, Anti-war. Anti-body. Anti-government
+ Negative purpose phrase/clause : (See Units 53-54)
- In case of purpose phrase : In order not to/ so as not to
EX : He has to hurry to school *in order not to be* late once more.
In order not to cause offence, washing should never be hung out in public view.
- In case of purpose clause :
So that + subject + will/would or can/ could + not + bare infinitive.
Negative purpose clauses can be replaced by :
- To prevent + noun/pronoun + (from) gerund, and
- To avoid + gerund
EX : He dyed his hair *so that we would not recognize him/ to prevent us recognizing him/ to avoid being recognized*
Give some examples using "to prevent" and "to avoid" to replace negative purpose clauses.

Look at this

Do this	so as in order	not to do that.	
Do this	to so as to in order to	avoid	that. doing that.
Do this	to prevent	that. something (from) happening. somebody (from) doing that.	

Exercise 1
Look at the expressions in Mandangani. Practise with a partner using :
How do you say (this) in Mandangani ?
Can you translate (this) into Mandangani ?
What does (that) mean in English ?

Exercise 2
Why should we keep plastic bags away from babies ?
To avoid the danger of suffocation.
or
To prevent babies from suffocating themselves.
Look at the table above. Ask questions about the warnings, and answer them.

Bunter and Farmer
BISCUITS

In order to keep these biscuits in good condition store in a cool, dry place.

MACDONALD
CONSTRUCTION (UK) LTD.

River Danga Irrigation Scheme

Advice to employees travelling to Mandanga for the first time.

MEDICAL PRECAUTIONS

1 To avoid the possibility of infection, inoculations against typhoid, cholera, and yellow fever should be given before departure.

2 Mandanga is a malarial area. To prevent malaria, a course of anti-malaria tablets should be started two weeks before departure. In the evenings long-sleeved clothes should be worn to prevent mosquito bites.

3 When in camp always use a net in order to prevent mosquitos biting while you are asleep.

4 A thorough medical examination and a full dental checkup is advised before leaving the UK.

5 A spare pair of glasses is recommended.

6 Mandanga is a tropical country and certain precautions should be taken when working:

a To prevent heat exhaustion, take care to drink adequate quantities of fluid.

b Salt tablets may be taken to avoid dehydration.

c To prevent sunstroke, great care must be taken when working in direct sunlight.

d Sensible, loose-fitting lightweight clothes are recommended. Cotton is the best material.

HYGIENE

1 To avoid infection, water should be boiled or purified with tablets.

2 Fruit and vegetables should be washed thoroughly.

Bích qui Bunter và Farmer

Để giữ bánh bích qui này trong tình trạng tốt, hãy bảo quản ở một nơi khô, mát.

CÔNG TY XÂY DỰNG MACDONALD (ANH) – TRÁCH NHIỆM HỮU HẠN

Dự án tưới tiêu sông Danga

Lời khuyên cho những nhân viên mới sang Mandanga lần đầu.

PHÒNG NGỪA Y TẾ

1. Để tránh khả năng bị truyền nhiễm, phải chích ngừa thương hàn, dịch tả và sốt vàng da trước khi đi.

2. Mandanga là một vùng có sốt rét. Để ngừa bệnh, phải uống thuốc viên ngừa sốt rét hai tuần trước khi đi. Buổi chiều tối phải mặc đồ dài để tránh bị muỗi cắn.

3. Khi ở trại, luôn luôn ngủ mùng để tránh bị muỗi cắn.

4. Nên kiểm tra sức khỏe và răng toàn diện trước khi rời khỏi Anh.

5. Nên mang theo phòng hờ một cặp kính đeo mắt.

6. Mandagan là xứ nhiệt đới, nên khi làm việc phải thận trọng :

a. Để ngừa bị kiệt sức vì nóng, hãy uống đủ lượng chất lỏng mà cơ thể cần.

b. Có thể dùng các viên muối để tránh bị mất nước.

c. Để tránh bị say nắng, phải hết sức chú ý khi làm việc trực tiếp dưới ánh nắng mặt trời.

d. Nên mặc đồ nhẹ, rộng. Vải cô-tông là tốt nhất.

VỆ SINH

1. Để tránh bệnh truyền nhiễm, nước phải đun sôi hoặc lọc bằng thuốc viên.

2. Trái cây và rau quả phải được rửa thật sạch.

LOCAL CUSTOMS

1 Women should wear hats and long dresses when entering religious buildings. They should particularly avoid wearing trousers, shorts, or mini-skirts.

2 Shoes should be removed when entering private homes, to avoid giving offence to the householder.

3 So as not to cause offence, washing should never be hung out in public view. This particularly applies to underclothes.

4 Women should avoid wearing bikinis on public beaches.

5 In order not to seem rude, we would strongly advise learning a few expressions in Mandangani before arrival.

Here are a few essential expressions :

Whot ho	Hello.
Tu datu	Goodbye
Yup	Yes
Nok	No
Ta aw flee	Thank you
Ifi	Please
Ay up	Excuse me
Oop Zee	Sorry

PHONG TỤC ĐỊA PHƯƠNG

1. Phụ nữ phải đội mũ và mặc áo dài khi bước vào các nơi thờ phượng. Đặc biệt phải tránh mặc quần tây, quần "short", hoặc váy ngắn.

2. Phải cởi giày trước khi bước vào tư gia để tránh làm phật ý chủ nhà.

3. Để tránh xúc phạm, không bao giờ phơi quần áo nơi công cộng, nhất là quần áo lót.

4. Phụ nữ nên tránh mặc bikini ở các bãi biển công cộng.

5. Để không tỏ ra thô lỗ, nhất định là bạn nên học một số thành ngữ riêng tiếng Mandanga trước khi đến đó.

Dưới đây là một số thành ngữ quan trọng :

Chào bạn	
Tạm biệt	
Vâng, ừ	
Không	
Cảm ơn	
Làm ơn	
Xin lỗi	
Rất tiếc	

PRACTICE

Language summary

Do this	*so as* *in order*	*not*	*to do that.*
	to *so as to* *in order to*	*avoid*	*that.* *doing that.*
	to prevent	*that.* *something from happening.* *somebody from doing that.*	

WHEN IN THE COUNTRY FOLLOW THE COUNTRY CODE

The Code is a series of ten reminders based on common sense – and common failings. So when in the country remember :

Guard against all risk of fire

Plantations, woodlands and heaths are highly inflammable : every year acres burn because of casually dropped matches, cigarette ends or pipe ash.

KHI Ở NÔNG THÔN, HÃY THEO QUI LUẬT Ở NÔNG THÔN

Luật này là một loạt 10 điều nhắc nhở dựa vào lẽ thường – và những nhược điểm chúng. Vì thế khi ở nông thôn hãy nhớ :

Để phòng tất cả mọi nguy cơ cháy.

Đồn điền, rừng và bãi hoang rất dễ cháy; hàng năm, bao nhiêu mẫu đất cháy rụi vì những diêm quẹt, tàn thuốc lá hay tro ống điếu vất cẩu thả.

Fasten all gates

Even if you found them open. Animals can't be told to stay where they're put. A gate left open invites them to wander, a danger to themselves, to crops and to traffic.

Keep dogs under proper control

Farmers have good reason to regard visiting dogs as pests; in the country a civilized town dog can become a savage. Keep your dog on a lead wherever there is livestock about, also on country roads.

Keep to the paths across farm land

Crops can be ruined by people's feet. Remember that grass is a valuable crop too, sometimes the only one on the farm. Flattened corn or hay is very difficult to harvest.

Avoid damaging fences, hedges and walls

They are expensive items in the farm's economy; repairs are costly and use scarce labour. Keep to the recognized routes, using gates and stiles.

Leave no litter

All litter is unsightly, and some is dangerous as well. Take litter home for disposal; in the country it costs a lot to collect it.

Safeguard water supplies

Your chosen walk may well cross a catchment area for the water supply of millions. Avoid polluting it in any way. Never interfere with cattle troughs.

Protect wildlife, wild plants and trees

Wildlife is best observed, not collected. To pick or uproot flowers, carve trees and rocks, or disturb wild animals and birds, destroys other people's pleasure as well.

Go carefully on country roads

Country roads have special dangers : blind corners, high banks and hedges, slow-moving tractors and farm machinery or animals. Motorists should reduce their speed and take extra care; walkers should keep to the right, facing oncoming traffic.

Đóng chặt tất cả các cổng

Thậm chí bạn thấy cổng mở. Không ai có thể bảo thú rừng ở yên chỗ của nó. Một cái cổng để mở sẽ cho chúng được lang thang, một mối nguy hiểm cho chính chúng, cho mùa màng và cho lưu thông.

Kiểm soát chặt chẽ chó.

Nông dân có cái lý của họ khi coi chó đến nhà là dã thú; ở nông thôn một con chó thành thị đã được thuần hóa cũng có thể trở thành hung tợn. Cột chó lại bất cứ nơi nào có gia cầm quanh đó, và cũng trên các con đường nông thôn.

Đi trên các con đường cắt ngang đồng ruộng.

Mùa màng có thể bị chân người làm cho thất bát. Hãy nhớ là cỏ cũng là loại mùa màng qui, đôi khi là đám cỏ duy nhất ở trang trại. Bắp cải hay cỏ khô rất khó thu hoạch.

Tránh làm hỏng hàng rào, bờ dậu và bờ tường.

Đây là những thứ rất đắt tiền trong nền kinh tế ở nông thôn; việc sửa chữa rất tốn kém và sử dụng lao động hiếm. Đi theo những tuyến đường chính, dùng cổng và các bậc trèo.

Không xả rác

Rác rưởi thì không đẹp mắt và một số còn nguy hiểm nữa. Đem rác về nhà bỏ; ở nông thôn, thu nhặt rác thì rất tốn kém.

Bảo vệ nguồn nước

Cuộc dạo chơi của bạn cũng có thể đi ngang qua khu dẫn nước thuộc nguồn cấp nước cho hàng triệu người. Bằng mọi cách tránh làm ô nhiễm nó. Đừng bao giờ để các máng ăn của súc vật vấy vào.

Bảo vệ dã thú và cây rừng

Tốt hơn cả là quan sát dã thú, đừng tập hợp chúng. Hái hoặc bứng hoa, khắc vào cây hay đá, hoặc quấy phá cầm thú, chim muông cũng là phá mất niềm vui của người khác.

Hãy cẩn thận khi đi trên các con đường ở nông thôn.

Đường sá ở nông thôn có những nguy hiểm đặc biệt; những ngõ cụt, bờ sông, bờ dậu cao, xe máy cày di chuyển chậm chạp và máy móc ở trang trại hay thú vật. Người lái xe nên giảm tốc độ và thật hết sức cẩn thận; người đi bộ nên giữ lề phải, đối diện với dòng xe cộ đang tới.

Unit 56 A New Way Of Life — Lối sống mới

VOCABULARY

- **assembly line** *(n)* /ə'sembli lain/ sequence of machines and workers along which a product moves as it is assembled in stages = dây chuyền lắp ráp
- **bolt** *(n)* /boult/ metal pin with a head at one end and a thread (as on a screw) used with a nut for fastening things together = bù loong
- **communicate** *(v)* /kə'mju:nikeit/ ~ (with sb) exchange information, news, ideas = convey one's ideas, feelings clearly to others = giao tiếp, truyền đạt ý nghĩ *A politician must be able to ~.*
  communications *(n)* Sự truyền thông *Telephone ~ between the two cities have been restored.*
  communicative *(adj)* /kə'mju:nikətiv/ ready and willing to talk and give information *I don't find Peter very ~.*
- **croft** *(n)* /krɔft/ small farm, esp in Scotland = nông trại nhỏ
  crofter *(n)* person who rents or owns a small farm, esp in Scotland.
- **goat** *(n)* /gout/ con dê
- **hilarious** *(adj)* /hi'leəriəs/ extremely amusing; very funny; noisily merry = vui nhộn *a ~ account of their camping holiday; a ~ party*
  hilariously *(adv)* *be ~ funny*
  hilarity *(n)* /hi'lærəti/ loud laughter; great amusement. *The announcement was greeted with much ~ and mirth.*
- **nut** *(n)* /nʌt/ small (usu six-sided) piece of metal with a hole through the centre, used for screwing a bolt to secure it = con ốc, đinh ốc.
- **pannier** *(n)* /'pæniə/ one of a pair of bags on either side of the back wheel of a bicycle or motorcycle = cái giỏ phía sau xe đạp hay gắn máy
- **shriek** *(v)* /ʃri:k/ 1. ~ with st; ~ (out) = utter a shrill scream = bật ra tiếng. *shrieking with laughter; excitement* = phá lên cười, hét lên xúc động.
  2. ~ st (out) utter st with a shrill scream = thốt lên bằng tiếng hét inh tai. *~ (out) a warning* = hét lên lời cảnh cáo.
  shriek *(n)* shrill scream = tiếng hét inh tai.
  shrieks of laughter = chuỗi cười đinh tai nhức óc.
- **spectacular** *(adj)* /spek'tækjulə/ making a very fine display or show = đẹp mắt, ngoạn mục *a ~ display of fireworks.*
  spectacular *(n)* impressive show or performance; spectacle *a Christmas TV ~; an aerobatic ~ at the air show.*
  spectacularly *(adv)* *a ~ daring performance.*

EXPRESSIONS

the rat-race cuộc tranh đua với đời
... and a good thing, too ! và cũng tốt cả thôi !
a matter of opinion vấn đề ý kiến cá nhân
a way of life lối sống
If you don't mind me asking Nếu anh không phiền, tôi xin hỏi điều này nhé
give up *(v)* /giv ʌp/ bỏ cuộc, từ bỏ
hardly ever *(adv)* /ha:dli'evə/ gần như chẳng bao giờ
to shriek with laughter cười ngặt nghẽo

PROPER NAMES

Daniel Burns /,dænjəl 'bə:nz/
Michelle /mi:'ʃel/
Nicola Burgess /,nikələ'bə:dʒis/

USAGE :

1. To give up + noun/gerund :

EX : Because of his bad health these days, he *gave up* smoking.

To give away : trao cho, tố giác
To give birth to s/o : sinh ra
To give in : nhượng bộ (vi), ghi vào (vt)
To give way/place to : nhường chỗ cho
To give rise to : gây ra
To give a lesson to s/o : cho ai một bài học
Make sentences with the above expressions

2. Hardly (adv) : almost not (negative in meaning)

EX : They are so busy that they *hardly* see each other even at night.

3. To feel like : to be in the mood for : **thấy muốn, thấy thích**

EX : The job is sometimes so boring that I *feel like* giving it up to return home.

GRAMMAR NOTES :

a/- "You'll find it difficult to settle down" (*bạn sẽ thấy khó mà sống ổn định được*)

Formation : Subject + to find + it + adjective + to infinitive

EX : He found it hard to start a new life. Anh ta thấy khó bắt đầu một cuộc đời mới

I always find it easy to convince him Tôi luôn luôn thấy dễ dàng thuyết phục anh ta

b/- Adverb clause of result (cause and effect) (... *đến nỗi mà*...)

Formation :

1/. Subject + verb + so + adj. or adv. + that + subject + verb

EX : 1- The people were *so friendly that* he felt welcome.

2- I work *so hard that* I don't have much time to further my study

2/ a/ S + V. + so + many or few + plural count - noun + that - S + V

b/ S + V + so + much or little + non-count noun + that + S + V

EX : 1. I had *so few job offers that* it wasn't difficult to select one

2. The grass received *so little water that* it turned brown in the heat

3/ S + V + such + a(n) + adj + singular count noun + that + S + V.

S + V. + so + adjective + a(n) + singular count noun + that...

EX : 1. You have had *such an* exciting time that you'll find it difficult to settle down.

2. You have had *so exciting* a time that you'll find it difficult to settle down.

4/ S + V + such + adjective + plural count noun / non-count noun + that

EX : 1. They *are such beautiful pictures that* everyone will want one.

2. This is *such difficult homework that* I will never finish it.

Announcer On 'TV Magazine' tonight we're looking at people who have given up regular jobs and high salaries to start a new way of life. First of all, we have two interviews with people who decided to leave the 'rat race'. Nicola Burgess spoke to them.

Nicola This is the Isle of Skye. Behind me you can see the croft belonging to Daniel and Michelle Burns, who gave up their jobs to come to this remote area of Scotland. Daniel was the sales manager of Hi-Vita, the breakfast cereal company, and Michelle was a successful advertising executive. Michelle, can you tell us what made you give up everything to come here ?

Michelle Everything ? That's a matter of opinion. A big house and two cars isn't everything! Dan and I both used to work long hours. We had to leave so early in the morning and we came home so late at night, that we hardly ever saw each other. We should have come here years ago, but we were earning such big salaries that we were afraid to leave our jobs. In the end we had so little time

Xướng ngôn viên : Trong chương trình "Tạp Chí Trên Truyền Hình" tối nay chúng ta sẽ quan sát những người đã từ bỏ việc làm chính thức và lương cao để bắt đầu một cuộc sống mới. Đầu tiên, chúng tôi thực hiện 2 cuộc phỏng vấn với những người đã quyết định từ bỏ cuộc kiếm sống xô bồ, quyết liệt. Nicola Burgess phỏng vấn họ.

Nicola : Đây là Đảo Skye. Phía sau tôi các bạn có thể thấy khu trại nhỏ thuộc về Daniel và Michelle Burns những người đã từ bỏ công việc của mình để đến vùng xa xôi này của xứ Scotland. Daniel là giám đốc thương vụ của Hi-Vita, công ty sản xuất cốm ngũ cốc (cereal) dùng để điểm tâm, còn Michelle là người điều hành về quảng cáo rất thành công. Michelle, chị có thể cho chúng tôi biết điều gì đã khiến các anh chị từ bỏ mọi thứ để đến đây ?

Michelle : Mọi thứ ? Đó chỉ là vấn đề quan niệm thôi. Một cái nhà lớn và hai chiếc xe hơi không phải là mọi thứ ! Cả Dan và tôi đã thường làm việc nhiều giờ. Buổi sáng chúng tôi phải đi thật sớm, và mãi tới khuya mới về nhà, đến nỗi chúng tôi hiếm khi thấy mặt nhau. Lẽ ra chúng tôi đã đến đây từ nhiều năm trước, nhưng chúng tôi kiếm nhiều tiền đến nỗi chúng tôi ngại rời bỏ công việc của mình. Cuối cùng chúng tôi dành cho

together that our marriage was breaking up. So two years ago, we took a week's holiday in the Scottish Highlands. We saw this place and we both fell in love with it. It was for sale, and we liked it so much that we decided to give up our jobs, and here we are !

Nicola How do you earn a living ? If you don't mind me asking.

Michelle We don't need very much. We keep sheep and goats, grow our own vegetables. We've got a few chickens. It's a very simple life, and we're not in it for profit. We're still so busy that we work from five in the morning until eight at night, but we're together. We're happier than we've ever been and we're leading a natural life.

Nicola There must be some things you miss, surely.

Michelle I don't know. We knew such a lot of people in London, but they weren't real friends. We see our neighbours occasionally and there's such a lot to do on the farm that we don't have time to feel lonely. At least we see each other now.

Nicola The motor-bike I'm sitting on is a very special one. Special because it's been all the way round the world. It belongs to Luke Saunders, who has just returned to England after a three-year motor-cycle journey. Luke, what led you to leave your job and make this trip ?

Luke I worked in a car factory on the assembly line. All I had to do was put four nuts on the bolts that hold the wheels on. It's done by robots now, and a good thing too ! The job was so routine that I didn't have to think at all. I bought this Triumph 750 cc bike second-hand, fitted two panniers on the back and just set off for Australia.

Nicola What did you do for money ?

Luke I had a bit of money to start with, but of course it didn't last long and I had to find work where I could. I've done so many different things – picked fruit, washed up, worked as a mechanic.

nhau quá ít thời giờ đến nỗi cuộc sống gia đình có nguy cơ rạn vỡ. Vì thế cách đây 2 năm, chúng tôi đi nghỉ một tuần ở vùng thượng du Scotland. Chúng tôi thấy nơi này và cả 2 đều yêu thích nó. Đây là đất bán, chúng tôi thích nó đến nỗi chúng tôi quyết định bỏ việc, và thế là chúng tôi có mặt ở đây !

Nicola : Nếu không cho là tôi tò mò, anh chị kiếm sống như thế nào ?

Michelle : Chúng tôi không cần nhiều lắm đâu. Chúng tôi nuôi cừu và dê, tự trồng rau. Chúng tôi có nuôi một ít gà. Đây là một lối sống giản dị và chúng tôi không có đòng cơ kiếm lời đâu. Chúng tôi vẫn còn bận đến nỗi phải làm việc từ 5 giờ sáng đến 8 giờ tối, nhưng chung tôi có nhau. Chúng tôi hạnh phúc hơn bao giờ hết, và chúng tôi đang sống một cuộc sống tự nhiên.

Nicola : Chắc chị phải nhớ một vài thứ chứ.

Michelle : Tôi không biết. Chúng tôi quen biết nhiều người ở Luân Đôn nhưng những người này không hẳn là bạn. Thỉnh thoảng chúng tôi có gặp những người bạn láng giềng và ở khu trại này có nhiều việc phải làm đến nỗi chúng tôi không có thì giờ để cảm thấy cô đơn. Bây giờ ít nhất thì chúng tôi cũng thấy mặt nhau.

Nicolla : Chiếc gắn máy mà tôi đang ngồi đây là một chiếc xe rất đặc biệt. Đặc biệt vì nó đã dong ruổi khắp thế giới. Nó là xe của Luke Saunders, người vừa mới trở về Anh sau cuộc hành trình bằng xe gắn máy dài 3 năm. Luke, điều gì đã khiến anh bỏ việc và thực hiện chuyến đi này ?

Luke : Tôi làm việc cho dây chuyền sản xuất của một nhà máy xe hơi. Tất cả những việc mà tôi phải làm là vặn 4 đai ốc vào các bù-loong giữ các bánh xe. Bây giờ việc đó do người máy làm, và làm tốt hơn nữa là khác. Công việc đơn điệu đến nỗi tôi không cần phải suy nghĩ gì cả. Tôi mua lại chiếc Triump 750 phân khối này, gắn 2 túi đồ phía sau xe, và thế là bắt đầu cuộc hành trình đến Úc.

Nicola : Anh làm gì để kiếm tiền ?

Luke : Thoạt đầu tôi có sẵn một ít tiền, nhưng dĩ nhiên là không thể xài lâu được và tôi phải kiếm việc làm ở nơi nào tôi có thể. Tôi đã làm rất nhiều việc khác nhau – hái quả, rửa chén bát, làm thợ cơ khí.

Nicola How did people react to you ? In India, for example.

Luke Everywhere I went, the people were so friendly that problems seemed to solve themselves. There was such a lot of interest in the bike that it was easy to start a conversation. You know, often you can communicate without really knowing the language.

Nicola Did you ever feel like giving up, turning round and coming home ?

Luke Only once, in Bangladesh. I became so ill with food poisoning that I had to go to hospital. But it didn't last long.

Nicola You've had such an exciting time that you'll find it difficult to settle down, won't you ?

Luke I'm not going to. Next week I'm off again, but this time I'm going in the opposite direction ! See you in about three years' time!

Nicola : Người ta đối xử với anh như thế nào ? Ở Ấn Độ chẳng hạn.

Luke : Tôi đến đâu thì người ta cũng tỏ ra thân thiện đến nỗi những khó khăn dường như tự chúng giải quyết lấy. Người ta chú ý nhiều đến chiếc xe gắn máy này đến nỗi thật dễ bắt chuyện. Bạn biết không, thông thường người ta có thể giao tiếp với nhau mà không cần biết ngôn ngữ.

Nicola : Anh có bao giờ cảm thấy muốn bỏ cuộc, quay trở lại và về nhà không ?

Luke : Một lần thôi, ở Bangladesh. Tôi bị ngộ độc thức ăn nặng đến nỗi phải vào bệnh viện nhưng chuyện đó cũng chẳng kéo dài lâu.

Nicola : Anh đã trải qua một thời gian lý thú đến nỗi anh sẽ thấy khó mà ở yên một chỗ phải không ?

Luke : Tôi không có ý định ở yên một chỗ. Tuần tới tôi lại lên đường, nhưng lần này tôi sẽ đi ngược hướng. Hẹn gặp lại khoảng 3 năm nữa.

Exercise 1

The people were very friendly. He felt welcome.
The people were so friendly that he felt welcome.
Continue.

1 He was very old. He couldn't walk.
2 She was very busy. She didn't stop for lunch.
3 He was very late. He missed the train.
4 She was very ill. She couldn't go out.
5 He had spent too much money. He couldn't buy a ticket.
6 There were too many people on the boat. It sank.

Exercise 2

The house was so beautiful that they bought it.
It was such a beautiful house that they bought it.
Continue.

1 The book was so interesting that she couldn't stop reading it.
2 The problems are so difficult that nobody can solve them.
3 The man was so friendly that everybody liked him.
4 The dog was so savage that the postman refused to deliver the letters.
5 The box was so heavy that she couldn't lift it.
6 The trip was so exciting that he's going again.

Exercise 3

He was such a good boxer that nobody ever beat him.
The boxer was so good that nobody ever beat him.
Continue.

1 It was such a dangerous job that nobody would do it.
2 She was such a good dancer that she won the prize.
3 They were such boring films that nobody watched them.
4 It was such a crazy story that nobody believed it.

PRACTICE

Language summary

The house was SO beautiful THAT they bought it.

He had so	*much work* / *many problems*	*THAT he couldn't sleep at night.*

It was SUCH a beautiful house THAT they bought it.

He had SUCH a lot of	*work* / *problems*	*THAT he couldn't sleep at night.*

They worked SO hard THAT they hardly ever saw each other.

Exercise 1

1 A *The music was so wonderful that I went straight out and bought the record.*

B *It was such wonderful music that I went straight out and bought the record.*

Look at the example and transform the sentences from the reviews in the same way.

2 A .....

B .....

3 A .....

B .....

4 A .....

B .....

5 A .....

B .....

Write similar sentences about 'Sudden Departure' and 'The Wrong Connection'.

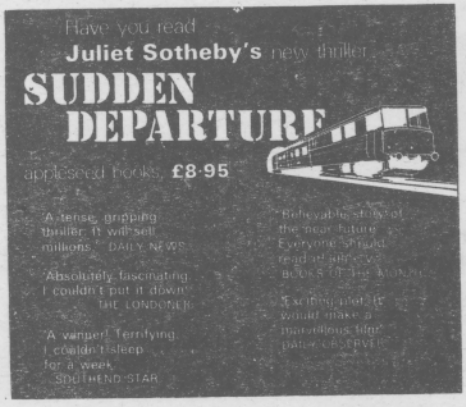
Viết các câu tương tự về "Sudden Departure" và "The Wrong Connection"

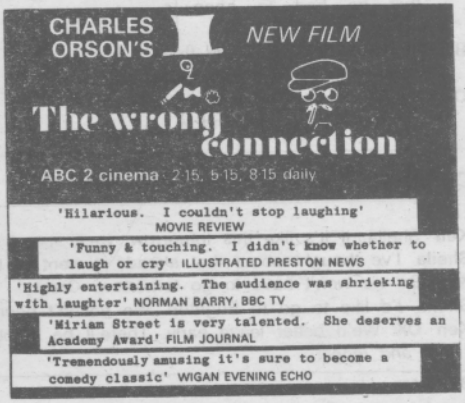
Bài tập 1

1 A Bản nhạc tuyệt vời đến nỗi tôi đi mua ngay cái đĩa hát đó.

B Đó là bản nhạc tuyệt vời đến nỗi tôi đi mua ngay cái đĩa hát đó.

Xem phần thí dụ và chuyển các câu trong phần điểm phim nhạc theo cách tương tự.





Exercise 2

Write a short review of a book, film or play.

Bài tập 2

Viết một bài điểm báo ngắn về một cuốn sách, bộ phim hay một vở kịch.

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Units 53-56

Dialogue A

Listen

Sheila Hello, Ken. You're late. I was beginning to get worried.
Ken Yes, I know. Sorry. It was such beautiful weather that I decided to walk home.
Sheila And it took longer than you thought ?
Ken That's right. Oh, and I bought some strawberries.
Sheila Strawberries, ooh lovely ! They must have been expensive.
Ken Yes, they were. But they were so nice that I couldn't resist buying them.
Listen and repeat

A1 Listen

A : The weather was so beautiful that I decided to walk home.
B : It was such beautiful weather that he decided to walk home.
C : It was such beautiful weather that he decided to walk home.
A : The day was so nice that I didn't feel like working.
B : It was such a nice day that he didn't feel like working.
C : It was such a nice day that he didn't feel like working.

Now you do the same

The weather was so beautiful that I decided to walk home
.....It was such beautiful weather that he decided to walk home.
The day was so nice that I didn't feel like working
.....It was such a nice day that he didn't feel like working.
The walk was so long that I was late
.....It was such a long walk that he was late.
The weather was so warm that I spent the day in the garden
.....It was such warm weather that he spent the day in the garden.

A2 Listen

A : They were such nice strawberries that I couldn't resist buying them.
B : The strawberries were so nice that he couldn't resist buying them.
C : The strawberries were so nice that he couldn't resist buying them.
A : It was such a stuffy office that he had to open a window.
B : The office was so stuffy that he had to open a window.
C : The office was so stuffy that he had to open a window.

Now you do the same

They were such nice strawberries that I couldn't resist buying them..... The strawberries were so nice that he couldn't resist buying them.
It was such a stuffy office that he had to open a window
.....The office was so stuffy that he had to open a window.
It was such a hot day that he took his shirt off
.....The day was so hot that he took his shirt off.
They were such beautiful flowers that he bought some for his wife ..... The flowers were so beautiful that he bought some for his wife.

Dialogue B

Listen

Ken Sheila. If it's like this tomorrow, we'll spend the day on the beach.
Sheila I've thought about that already. I went to the supermarket this afternoon.
Ken So we won't have to go tomorrow. Great !
Sheila I'd like to go to Brighton. We haven't been for ages.
Ken OK. We'd better leave early. There'll be a lot of traffic.
Listen and repeat

B1 Listen

A : I went to the supermarket.
B : So we won't have to go tomorrow. Great !

C : So we won't have to go tomorrow. Great !

A : I've done the shopping.
B : So we won't have to do it tomorrow. Great !
C : So we won't have to do it tomorrow. Great !

B2 Listen
A : We'd better leave early. There'll be a lot of traffic.
B : They're going to leave early so as to avoid the traffic.
C : They're going to leave early so as to avoid the traffic.
A : We'll drive through the country. We don't want to go on the motorway.
B : They're going to drive through the country so as to avoid the motorway.
C : They're going to drive through the country so as to avoid the motorway.

Now you do the same
I went to the supermarket
.....So we won't have to go tomorrow. Great !
I've done the shopping
.....So we won't have to do it tomorrow. Great !
I've checked the car
.....So we won't have to check it tomorrow. Great !
I've prepared a picnic
.....So we won't have to prepare it tomorrow. Great !
Now you do the same
We'd better leave early. There'll be a lot of traffic
.....They're going to leave early so as to avoid the traffic.
We'll drive through the country. We don't want to go on the motorway.....They're going to drive through the country so as to avoid the motorway.
We'll take our own food. The restaurants are expensive
.....They're going to take their own food so as to avoid the restaurants.
We'll find a quiet place. There'll be a lot of people.....They're going to find a quiet place so as to avoid the people.

Dialogue C

Listen
Sheila What time will we have to leave, do you think ?
Ken 7 o'clock. At the latest.
Sheila 7 o'clock !
Ken Remember last year. There was so much traffic that it took four hours.
Sheila yes, I remember. It was awful. Couldn't we go by train ?
Ken Good idea. We won't get so tired that way.
Listen and repeat

C1 Listen.
A : We won't get so tired.
B : They're going by train to avoid getting tired.
C : They're going by train to avoid getting tired.
A : We won't have to look for a parking place.
B : They're going by train to avoid looking for a parking place.
C : They're going by train to avoid looking for a parking place.

C2 Listen
A : There was a lot of traffic. It took four hours.
B : There was so much traffic that it took four hours.
C There was so much traffic that it took four hours.

Now you do the same
We won't get so tired.....They're going by train to avoid getting tired.
We won't have to look for a parking place.....They're going by train to avoid looking for a parking place.
We won't get stuck in traffic.....They're going by train to avoid getting stuck in traffic.
We won't have to get up so early.....They're going by train to avoid getting up early.

Now you do the same
There was a lot of traffic. It took four hours
.....There was so much traffic that it took four hours.
There were a lot of cars. There were traffic jams
.....There were so many cars that there were traffic jams.
There was a lot of smoke. It was difficult to breathe
.....There was such a lot of smoke that it was difficult to breathe.

A : There were a lot of cars. There were traffic jams.
B : There were so many cars that there were traffic jams.
C : There were so many cars that there were traffic jams.

There were a lot of people. You couldn't find a quiet place..... There were so many people that you couldn't find a quiet place.

Dialogue D

Listen

Sheila Aren't these strawberries delicious ?
Ken Mmm. But you gave me such a lot that I can hardly eat them all.
Sheila You'll manage.
Ken This cream's superb. Much better than usual.
Sheila It is superb, isn't it ? It's from the corner shop, not the supermarket. I think it's fresher.

New words :
- superb *(adj)* /ˌsjuːˈpɜːb/ excellent, splendid.

Listen and repeat

D1 Listen

A : Aren't these strawberries delicious ?
B : Mmm. But you gave me such a lot that I can hardly eat them all.
C : Mmm. But you gave me such a lot that I can hardly eat them all.
A : Isn't this brandy excellent ?
B : Mmm. But you gave me such a lot that I can hardly drink it all.
C : Mmm. But you gave me such a lot that I can hardly drink it all.

Now you do the same

Aren't these strawberries delicious ?.....Mmm. But you gave me such a lot I can hardly eat them all.
Isn't this brandy excellent ?.....Mmm. But you gave me such a lot that I can hardly drink it all.
Aren't these chocolates nice ?.....Mmm. But you gave me such a lot that I can hardly eat them all.
Isn't this wine good ?.....Mmm. But you gave me such a lot that I can hardly drink it all

D2 Listen

A: This cream's superb.
B: It is superb, isn't it ?
C: It is superb, isn't it ?
A: These strawberries are delicious.
B : They are delicious, aren't they?
C: They are delicious, aren't they?

Now you do the same

This cream's superb.....it is superb, isn't it ?
These strawberries are delicious.....They are delicious, aren't they ?
This wine's good.....it is good, isn't it ?
These chocolates are nice.....They are nice, aren't they ?

Listening

Listen

'I suppose it all started when I got my present job in public relations. I'd always liked a drink, you know just a couple of beers with my mates in the pub or a bottle of wine on a special occasion. But in public relations drinking was almost part of the job... business lunches, parties, hotel bars... and I wasn't paying. It was all on expenses. It was just so difficult to avoid drinking.

You know there's a lot of stress and pressure in my job and I suppose the alcohol helps. At least I thought it helped. Before I moved into this job, we never kept drinks at home but when we started entertaining, we had to keep a cabinet full of the stuff. I got into the habit of having a drink when I got home, another one before dinner, wine with dinner and

Vocabulary
- public relations /ˌpʌblɪk rɪˈleɪʃnz/ công tác quần chúng
- stress *(n)* /stres/ sự căng thẳng
- to get into the habit of doing st = quen, lậm sâu vào việc gì
- stuff *(n)* /stʌf/ unnamed things, belongings thứ hỗn độn.
- to dry sb out = (phr.v) (infml) treat sb or be treated for accoholism = cai rượu.
- to keep up = to continue to practise or observe st = duy trì, tuân thủ

a couple of brandies after. I didn't really notice that it was affecting me. My wife tried to warn me and encouraged me to cut down but she couldn't prevent me from drinking during the day.
I started getting bad tempered with people and the more problems came up the more drink I wanted. I even found I needed a drink in the morning just to start the day. Things started going wrong at home and at work but I didn't really believe I needed help until the accident. I nearly killed someone and it was my fault and I knew it. I went to my doctor and he sent me to a clinic for a month to dry out. It was the worst month of my life ! I haven't had a drink since then but I don't know if I'll be able to keep it up.'

Now listen again and answer the questions when you hear this sound BELL

1

'I suppose it all started when I got my present job in public relations. I'd always liked a drink, you know just a couple of beers with my mates in the pub or a bottle of wine on a special occasion. But in public relations drinking was almost part of the job... business lunches, parties, hotel bars... and I wasn't paying. It was all on expenses. It was just so difficult to avoid drinking.'

BELL

What's his job ?..... He's in public relations.
Why wasn't he paying ?.....Because it was all on expenses.
What was it difficult to do ?.....It was difficult to avoid drinking.

2

'You know there's a lot of strees and pressure in my job and I suppose the alcohol helps. At least I thought it helped. Before I moved into this job, we never kept drinks at home but when we started entertaining, we had to keep a cabinet full of the stuff. I got into the habit of having a drink when I got home, another one before dinner, wine with dinner and a couple of brandies after. I didn't really notice that it was affecting me. My wife tried to warn me and encouraged me to cut down but she couldn't prevent me from drinking during the day.'

BELL

When did they begin to keep drinks at home?
.....When they started entertaining.
What did his wife try to do ?.....She tried to warn him.
What couldn't she prevent him from doing ?
.....She couldn't prevent him from drinking during the day.

3

'I started getting bad tempered with people and the more problems came up the more drink I wanted. I even found I needed a drink in the morning just to start the day. Things started going wrong at home and at work but I didn't really believe I needed help until the accident. I nearly killed someone and it was my fault and I knew it. I went to my doctor and he sent me to a clinic for a month to dry out. It was the worst month of my life ! I haven't had a drink since then but I don't know if I'll be able to keep it up.'

BELL

Why did he need a drink in the morning ?
.....He needed a drink in the morning just to start the day.
Whose fault was the accident ?.....
It was his fault.
Why did he go to a clinic ?.....
He went to a clinic to dry out.
How long did he spend there ?.....
He spent one month there.

Open conversation

Listen and reply

A : Why are you learning English ?
B : .....
A : Why do you use a dictionary ?
B : .....
A : Why do we keep milk in a fridge ?
B : .....
A : Why do you brush your teeth ?
B : .....
A : Why do you wear clothes ?
B : .....
A : Why do you read the newspaper ?
B : .....
A : Why shouldn't you drink too much ?
B : .....
A : Why are you answering these questions ?
B : .....
A : That's the end of section fourteen.

Unit 57 Last Of The Airships ?

Chiếc khinh khí cầu cuối cùng chăng ?

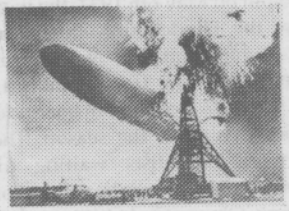
VOCABULARY

- **accidental** *(adj)* /ˌæksɪˈdentl/ by chance = ngẫu nhiên, bất ngờ
  an ~ meeting with a friend.
- **airship** *(n)* /ˈeəʃɪp/ aircraft filled with gas and driven by engines = khí cầu
- **amenity** *(n)* /əˈmiːnətɪ, əˈmenətɪ/ (often pl) feature or facility of a place that makes life there easy or pleasant = tiện nghi
  People who retire to the country often miss the amenities of a town, eg libraries, cinemas, etc.
- **baby grand piano** *(n)* /ˌbeɪbɪ grænd pjænəʊ/ small grand piano = đàn dương cầm loại nhỏ
- **bombing raid** *(n)* /ˈbɒmɪŋ reɪd/ trận oanh tạc bom
- **bulky** *(adj)* /ˈbʌlkɪ/ taking up much space; awkward to move or carry = cồng kềnh
  a ~ parcel, load, crate, etc.
  bulk *(n)* /bʌlk/ size, quantity or volume, esp when great = sự cồng kềnh
  It's not their weight that makes these sacks hard to carry, it's their ~.
- **cancel** *(v)* /ˈkænsl/ call off = hủy bỏ
  The flight was ~ led because of bad weather.
- **chart** *(n)* /tʃɑːt/ map, diagram, graph or table giving clear information, esp about st that changes over a period of time = đồ thị
  a weather ~; a temperature ~.
- **commentator** *(n)* /ˈkɒmənteɪtə/ 1. person who commentates = người tường thuật
  2. person who comments = nhà bình luận
  an informed ~ on political events.
  commentate *(v)* /ˈkɒmənteɪt/ *~ (on st) describe, esp on radio or TV, an event as it happens* = tường thuật *~ on an athletics meeting.*
- **diameter** *(n)* /daɪˈæmɪtə/ (length of a) straight line connecting the centre of a circle or sphere, or of the base of a cylinder, to two points on its sides = đường kính
  the ~ of a tree - trunk.
  diametrical *(adj)* /ˌdaɪəˈmetrɪkl/
- **disintegrate** *(v)* /dɪsˈɪntɪgreɪt/ (cause st to) break into small parts or pieces = làm tan rã, tan từng mảnh *The plane flew into a mountain and ~ ed on impact.*
  disintegration *(n)* /dɪsˌɪntɪˈgreɪʃn/
  the gradual ~ of traditional values.
- **double - glazed** *(adj)* /ˌdʌbl ˈgleɪzd/ fitted two layers of glass to (the window of a room, etc) to reduce heat loss, noise, etc = được lắp kính đôi *The house is ~ back and front.*
- **fatality** *(n)* /fəˈtælətɪ/ death caused by accident or in war = sự tử vong. *There have been ten swimming fatalities this summer* = Ten people have lost their lives while swimming.
  fatal *(adj)* /ˈfeɪtl/ 1. causing or ending in death. *a ~ accident; ~ injuries.*
  2. causing disaster *His illness was ~ to our plans* = caused them to fail.
  fatally *(adv)* in a fatal manner *Many people were ~ wounded during the bomb attacks.*
- **fleet** *(n)* /flɪːt/ group of aircraft, buses, taxis, etc owned and operated by one organization or travelling together. đội, đoàn (tàu, máy bay...) *The company's new ~ of vans.*
- **float** *(v)* /fləʊt/ move without resistance in air water or gas; drift slowly = bồng bềnh, bay
  A balloon ~ ed across the sky.
- **forward propulsion** *(n)* /ˈfɔːwəd prəˈpʌlʃn/ sự đẩy về phía trước
- **helium** *(n)* /ˈhiːlɪəm/ khí helium
- **hull** *(n)* /hʌl/ body of a ship = thân tàu thủy
  a fully - loaded tanker with its ~ low in the water.
- **ignite** *(v)* /ɪgˈnaɪt/ (cause st to) catch fire = bắt lửa *Petrol ~ s very easily. He struck a match and ~ d the fuse.*
  ignition *(n)*
- **impersonate** *(v)* /ɪmˈpɜːsəneɪt/ pretend to be (another person) in order to entertain others = thủ vai, đóng vai *He can ~ many well - known politicians.*
- **liner** *(n)* /ˈlaɪnə/ large passenger or cargo ship travelling on a regular route = tàu khách, máy bay chở khách *a transatlantic cruise ~.*
- **minimize** *(v)* /ˈmɪnɪmaɪz/ reduce (st) to the smallest amount or degree = giảm đến mức tối thiểu *To ~ the risk of burglary, instal a good alarm system.*

- **mooring rope** *(n)* /'muə-'mɔ:rɪŋ rəʊp/ dây thừng cột khi cẩu
- **piston engine** *(n)* /'pɪstn,endʒɪn/ (of an aircraft) having engines with pistons, not jet engines = động cơ pittông
- **pressurize** *(v)* /'preʃəraɪz/ (esp passive) keep (the compartment of a submarine, the cabin of an aircraft, etc) at a constant atmospheric pressure = điều áp *a ~ d cabin - The compartments are fully ~ d*
- **sabotage** *(n)* /'sæbəta:ʒ/ damage done secretly to prevent enemy, a competitor, etc succeeding; esp destroying his weapons or equipment and spoiling his plans = sự phá hoại *Was the fire an accident or (an act of) ~ ?* **sabotage** *(v)* secretly damage, destroy or spoil (st) *~ a missile, a ship, an engine; ~ sb's plans. They tried to ~ my party by getting drunk.*

saboteur *(n)* /,sæbə'tɜ:/ person who commits sabotage.

- **scrap** *(v)* /skæp/ throw away (st useless or worn-out) = bỏ, vứt đi *~ a car, ship, bicycle.*
- **sister ship** *(n)* /sɪstə ʃɪp/ chiếc khí cầu cùng loại
- **static electricity** *(n)* /'stætɪk ɪlek'trɪsətɪ/ tĩnh điện
- **suite** *(n)* /swi:t/ complete set of objects used together = những thứ họp lại thành đủ bộ *a ~ of programs for a computer; pink bathroom ~.*
- **uneventful** *(adj)* /,ʌnɪ'ventfl/ nothing happening; without incidence = không có gì xảy ra, yên ổn
- **venetian blind** *(n)* /vɪ'ni:ʃn blaɪnd/ mành sáo



PROPER NAMES

Atlantic	/ət'læntɪk/	Ohio	/əu'haɪəu/
Frankfurt	/'fræŋkfət/	Shenandoah	/ʃenən'dəuə/
Lakehurst	/'leɪkhə:st/	Yorkshire	/'jɔ:ʃə/
New Jersey	/nju:'dʒɔ:zɪ/		

USAGE :

- On board / aboard : trên boong tàu (máy bay, xe điện...)

EX : This ship is big enough to carry at least 100 passengers *on board.*

- To design s/t to do some work

EX : The Hindenburg was *designed* to carry 30 passengers accomodated in 25 luxury cabins with all the amenities of a first class hotel.

- Diameter (đường kính) [daɪ'æmɪtə],
radius (bán kính) ['reɪdɪəs]
perimeter (chu vi) [pə'rɪmɪtə],
area (diện tích) ['eərɪə]

- Both... and... (vừa... vừa... cả... lẫn)

EX : + He is *both* talented *and* handsome.
(adj) (adj)

+ He can play *both* the guitar *and* the violin.
(noun) (noun)

- The (most) surprising thing is that + clause
The (most) important thing is that + clause
The (most) painful thing is that + clause
The (most) interesting thing is that...

EX : *The most painful thing* in my life *is that*
I love her more than anything in this world,
but never receive even a piece of her sympathy, least of all.

GRAMMAR NOTES :

a/- "There were a number of journalists waiting to greet it"

Formation : [There + to be + noun construction + present participle]

EX : - I can't go now, there are so many things at home waiting to be done

- We are just like oceans apart there've been lots of things separating us from each other.

b/- A number of + plural noun + plural verb]

- The number of + plural noun + singular verb]

EX : - A number of students are going to the class meeting (a number of = many)

- The number of days in a week is seven.

c/ Verbs of perception :

1. We can use a Noun or pronoun object + the bare infinitive or –ing after these verbs : *feel, hear, listen to, look at, notice, observe, perceive, see, smell, watch.*
2. The bare infinitive generally refers to the complete action : I *watched* a pavement artist *draw* a portrait in crayons. (i. e from start to finish).
3. The –ing form generally refers an action in progress : I *watched* a pavement artist *drawing* a portrait in crayons. (i.e I saw part of the action).

At 7.20 pm on May 6th 1937, the world's largest airship, the Hindenburg, floated majestically over Lakehurst airport, New Jersey, after an uneventful crossing from Frankfurt, Germany. There were 97 people on board for the first Atlantic crossing of the season. There were a number of journalists waiting to greet it. Suddenly radio listeners heard the commentator screaming 'Oh, my God ! It's broken into flames. It's flashing... flashing. It's flashing terribly.' 32 seconds later the airship had disintegrated and 35 people were dead. The Age of the Airship was over.

Lúc 7 giờ 20 tối ngày 6-5-1937 chiếc khí cầu lớn nhất thế giới Hindenburg, đang bay oai vệ qua phi trường Lakehurst, New Jersey, sau một chuyến bay bình yên từ Frankfurt, Đức quốc. Có 97 người trên khí cầu vượt Đại Tây Dương lần đầu tiên trong mùa. Có một số nhà báo đang chờ khi cầu đáp xuống. Đột nhiên các thính giả truyền thanh nghe một bình luận viên la hoảng, "Ôi trời ơi ! Khí cầu phụt cháy rồi. Nó lóe sáng... nó lóe sáng. Nó lóe sáng khủng khiếp quá". 32 giây sau khí cầu tan thành nhiều mảnh vụn và 35 hành khách bị thiệt mạng. Thời đại cửa khí cầu đã chấm dứt.

The Hindenburg was the last in a series of airships which had been developed over 40 years in both Europe and the United States. They were designed to carry passengers and cargo over long distances. The Hindenburg could carry 50 passengers accommodated in 25 luxury cabins with all the amenities of a first class hotel. All the cabins had hot and cold water and electric heating. There was a dining-room, a bar and a lounge with a dance floor and a baby grand piano. The Hindenburg had been built to compete with the great luxury transatlantic liners. It was 245 metres long with a diameter of 41 metres. It could cruise at a speed of 125 km/h, and was able to cross the Atlantic in less than half the time of a liner. By 1937 it had carried 1000 passengers safely and had even transported circus animals and cars. Its sister ship, the Graf Zeppelin, had flown one and a half million kilometres and it had carried 13,100 passengers without incident.

Chiếc Hindenburg là chiếc cuối cùng của một loạt khí cầu đã được phát triển trên 40 năm ở cả Châu Âu và Mỹ. Chúng được thiết kế để chở hành khách và hàng hóa đi xa. Chiếc Hindenburg có thể chở 50 hành khách trong 25 cabin sang trọng với tất cả tiện nghi của một khách sạn hạng nhất. Tất cả các cabin đều có nước nóng, nước lạnh, và hệ thống sưởi bằng điện. Có một phòng ăn, một quầy rượu và một phòng khách lớn có sàn nhảy và một dàn đương cầm loại nhỏ. Chiếc Hindenburg đã được chế tạo để cạnh tranh với những chiếc tàu chở khách lớn, sang trọng vượt Đại Tây Dương. Khí cầu này dài 245 m, có đường kính 41 m. Nó có thể bay với tốc độ 125 km/giờ, và có khả năng vượt Đại Tây Dương không đầy phân nửa thời gian của một tàu chở khách. Tới năm 1937 nó đã chở 1000 hành khách an toàn và còn chở cả thú của gánh xiếc và xe hơi. Khí cầu cùng đợt với nó, chiếc Graf Zeppelin đã bay 1,5 triệu ki-lô-mét, đã chở 13.100 hành khách mà không gặp sự cố gì cả.

The Hindenburg was filled with hydrogen, which is a highly flammable gas, and every safety precaution had been taken to prevent accidents. It had a smoking room which was pressurized in order to prevent gas from ever entering it. The cigarette lighters were chained to the tables and both passengers and crew were searched for matches before entering the ship. Special materials, which were used in the construction of the airship, had been chosen to minimize the possibility of accidental sparks, which might cause an explosion.

Nobody knows the exact cause of the Hindenburg disaster. Sabotage has been suggested, but experts at the time believed that it was caused by leaking gas which was ignited by static electricity. It had been waiting to land for three hours because of heavy thunderstorms. The explosion happened just as the first mooring rope, which was wet, touched the ground. Observers saw the first flames appear near the tail, and they began to spread quickly along the hull. There were a number of flashes as the hydrogen-filled compartments exploded. The airship sank to the ground. The most surprising thing is that 62 people managed to escape. The fatalities were highest among the crew, many of whom were working deep inside the airship. After the Hindenburg disaster, all airships were grounded and, until recently, they have never been seriously considered as a commercial proposition.

Airships – achievements and disasters.

1852 1 st airship (43.8 m long) flew over Paris.

1910-14 Five Zeppelin airships operated commercial flights within Germany, carrying 35,000 people without injury.

1914-18 Military Zeppelins took part in 53 bombing raids on London, during First World War.

1919 British 'R34'. First transatlantic crossing. Both directions (10,187 km in 183 hours).

1921 British 'R38' broke up over Yorkshire, killing 15 passengers, 29 crew.

1925 US 'Shenandoah' (first helium airship) destroyed in a storm over Ohio. Heavy loss of life.

Chiếc Hindenburg chứa đầy khí hydrogen, một loại khí rất dễ cháy và người ta đã áp dụng mọi biện pháp an toàn để tránh tai nạn. Khí cầu có một phòng hút thuốc dùng áp suất ngăn không cho khí bên ngoài lọt vào. Các bật lửa đều được xích vào những chiếc bàn và cả hành khách lẫn phi hành đoàn đều bị lục soát kỹ trước khi lên khí cầu để tránh trường hợp mang theo diêm quẹt. Các vật liệu đặc biệt được dùng để chế tạo khí cầu đã được chọn để giảm tới mức tối thiểu những tia lửa tĩnh cơ, có thể gây ra vụ nổ. Không ai biết đích xác nguyên nhân của thảm họa Hindenburg. Người ta đã nghĩ tới lý do phá hoại, nhưng các nhà chuyên môn thời đó tin rằng vụ nổ là do rò khí rồi phát hỏa bởi tĩnh điện. Khí cầu đã chờ đáp xuống trong 3 tiếng đồng hồ vì những cơn dông dữ dội. Vụ nổ xảy ra ngay khi sợi thừng đầu tiên neo khí cầu lúc đó bị ướt, chạm đất. Các nhà quan sát thấy những ngọn lửa đầu tiên xuất hiện gần đuôi khí cầu và chúng bắt đầu lan ra nhanh chóng dọc theo thân tàu. Có nhiều chớp sáng khi các khoang chứa đầy khí hydrogen phát nổ. Khí cầu rơi xuống đất. Điều ngạc nhiên nhất là có 62 người đã thoát ra được. Số tử vong cao nhất là trong nhóm phi hành đoàn, nhiều người trong số đó vào lúc ấy đang làm việc sâu bên trong khí cầu. Sau thảm họa Hindenburg tất cả các khí cầu đều nằm ụ (*) và cho tới thời gian gần đây, người ta vẫn không bao giờ thực sự xem chúng như một đề xuất mang tính thương mại.

(*) Ngừng hoạt động.

Khí cầu – thành tựu và thảm họa

1852 Khí cầu đầu tiên (dài 43,8 m) bay qua Paris

1910-1914 : 5 khí cầu Zeppelin thực hiện chuyến bay thương mại trong nội địa nước Đức, chở 35.000 người mà không gây thương tổn gì cả.

1914-1918 : Những khí cầu Zepplin quân sự tham gia 53 vụ ném bom London trong Thế Chiến Thứ I.

1919 : Khí cầu "R34" do Anh chế tạo. Chuyến bay vượt Đại Tây Dương lần đầu tiên. Khứ hồi (10.187km trong 183 giờ).

1921 : Khí cầu Anh "R 38" nổ trên bầu trời Yorkshire, làm thiệt mạng 15 hành khách, 29 nhân viên phi hành đoàn.

1925 : Khí cầu Mỹ Shenandoah (khí cầu dùng khí Helium đầu tiên) bị phá hủy trong một trận bão trên bầu trời Ohio. Thiệt hại nặng về nhân mạng.

1926 Italian airship, the 'Norge', flew over North Pole.
1929 German Graf Zeppelin flew round the world. Began commercial transatlantic flights.

1930 British 'R101' (236 m long) crashed over Beauvais, France. Killed 48 out of 54 on board. British airship programme cancelled.

1931 US 'Akron' in service in USA – could carry 207 passengers.
1933 'Akron' wrecked in a storm.
1935 Sister ship, US 'Macon' wrecked.

1936 Hindenburg built. Carried 117 passengers in one flight.
1937 It crashed.
1938 'Graf Zeppelin II' completed. It never entered service.
1940 Both Graf Zeppelins scrapped.
1958 US Navy built a radar airship, the 'ZPG3-W'. (123 m long, 21 crew.)
1960 June. 'ZPG3-W' crashed in the sea.
1961 US Navy airship programme ended.

1975 US Goodyear company operating small airship fleet. The 'Europa' (58 m long) carries a pilot and six passengers.

1926 : Khí cầu Ý "Norge" bay qua Bắc cực.

1929 : Khí cầu Đức Graf Zeppelin bay quanh thế giới. Bắt đầu các chuyến bay thương mại vượt Đại Tây Dương.
1930 : Khí cầu Anh "R 101" (dài 236m) gặp tai nạn ở vùng Beauvais, Pháp, 48 người trong số 54 hành khách trên tàu bị thiệt mạng. Chương trình khí cầu của Anh bị hủy bỏ.
1931 : Khí cầu "Akron" của Mỹ được đưa vào sử dụng ở Mỹ – có thể chở 207 hành khách.
1933 : "Akron" bị tai nạn trong một trận bão.
1935 : Khí cầu cùng đợt, chiếc "Macon" của Mỹ bị tai nạn.
1936 : Khí cầu Hindenburg được chế tạo, chở 117 hành khách mỗi chuyến bay.
1937 : Chiếc Hindenburg gặp nạn.
1938 : Khí cầu "Graf Zeppelin II" được chế tạo xong. Khí cầu này không bao giờ sử dụng.
1940 : Cả 2 chiếc Graf Zeppelin đều bị loại bỏ.
1958 : Hải quân Mỹ chế tạo một khí cầu Ra-đa, chiếc "ZPG 3-W" (dài 123m, 21 nhân viên phi hành).
1960 : Tháng 6 "ZPG 3-W" gặp nạn ở biển.
1961 : Chương trình khí cầu của Hải quân Mỹ chấm dứt.
1975 : Công ty Mỹ Goodyear cho hoạt động đội khí cầu nhỏ. Chiếc "Europa" (dài 58m) chở 1 phi công và 6 hành khách.

PRACTICE

Language summary

There was a lounge	*with a dance floor.* *which had a dance floor.*	*They heard him. He was screaming.* *They heard him screaming.*

many of whom/some of whom/half of whom/thirteen of whom

FOX AND TONNOR
ESTATE AGENTS, High St, Tadworth

HOUSE PARTICULARS 35, BRACKEN AVENUE
Built 1972 of red brick with tiled roof. Enjoying benefits of gas-fired central heating throughout. Partially double-glazed.
SMALL HALL leading into :
LOUNGE 21' X 15'. Two radiators, 3 power points, TV point, fitted carpets. Curtains may be included (negotiable).
DINING ROOM 10' X 12'. Radiator, power point. Serving hatch to kitchen.

Exercise 1

A *There's a toilet which has a blue suite.*

B *There's a toilet with a blue suite.*

Write four more sentences of each type.

Bài tập 1

A Có một nhà vệ sinh có đủ bộ kèm theo màu xanh dương.

B Có một nhà vệ sinh với đủ bộ kèm theo màu xanh dương.

Viết thêm 4 câu nữa cho mỗi loại.

1 A . . . . . .
B . . . . . .
2 A . . . . . .
B . . . . . .
3 A . . . . . .
B . . . . . .
4 A . . . . . .
B . . . . . .

DINING ROOM	10' X 12'. Radiator, power point. Serving hatch to kitchen.
KITCHEN	8' X 15'. Fitted units, incl. fan oven, gas hob. Radiator, double sink, venetian blind, 4 power points. Back door to garden.
BEDROOM 1	10' X 13'. Fitted wardrobe/dressing table unit, radiator, 2 power points. Wall lights.
BEDROOM 2	12' X 12'. Radiator, power point, fitted carpet.
BEDROOM 3	10' X 8'. Radiator, power point, fitted shelves.
BATHROOM	Tiled in pink. Pink bathroom suite. Heated towel rail. Airing cupboard.
TOILET	Blue suite.
GARAGE	Electric light. Workbench. Power point.
GARDEN	Mainly laid out as lawn with flower beds and shrubs. Small vegetable garden.
RATES	£836 p.a.

Exercise 2

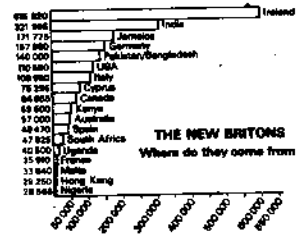
There are about fifty-five million people in the United Kingdom, of whom approximately three million are 'immigrants', that is they were born outside the United Kingdom. The immigrants, the majority of whom have arrived since 1950, have come from all over the world. Look at the chart below.

Bài tập 2

Có khoảng 55 triệu người ở Vương quốc Anh, trong số này khoảng 3 triệu người là "di dân", nghĩa là họ sinh ra ở ngoài nước Anh. Những di dân này, đại đa số đến từ năm 1950, là từ khắp thế giới đến. Hãy nhìn vào biểu đồ dưới đây :

There are 3 million immigrants, just over 40,000 of whom came from Uganda.

Write ten sentences like this, using : more than 600,000/about 10%/just under 1%/ approximately 170,000/ well over 150,000/ almost 60,000/ nearly 65,000/ about 50,000/ approximately 75,000/ around 110,000.



Có 3 triệu người di dân đến, chỉ trên 40.000 người trong số này quê ở Uganda.

Viết 10 câu như thế này, dùng : trên 600.000/khoảng 10%/ chỉ dưới 1%/ khoảng 170.000/trên 150.000 khá nhiều/gần 60.000/gần 65.000/khoảng 50.000/khoảng 75.000/khoảng 110.000.

Exercise 3

Max Yarmouth has a television show in Britain. He impersonates famous people. He is often asked how he manages to do it.

He videotapes them when they are performing on television.

He videotapes them performing on television.

Continue.

1 He listens to them as they are speaking. . . . . .
. . . . . .

2 He photographs them when they are smiling and frowning. . . . . .
. . . . . .

Bài tập 3

Max Yarmouth có một chương trình biểu diễn trên truyền hình ở Anh. Anh đóng vai những nhân vật nổi tiếng. Anh được hỏi cách anh đóng được những vai này.

Anh quay vidêô họ khi họ xuất hiện trên truyền hình.

Anh quay vidêô họ khi họ xuất hiện trên truyền hình.

Hãy tiếp tục.

3 He imitates politicians when they are giving speeches. . . . . .

4 He watches singers every time they appear on TV. . . . . .

5 He copies them when they move their hands. . . . . .

remunerative *(adj)* /rɪ'mju:nərətɪv/ profitable *a highly ~ job, post, position.*

- **rosemary** *(n)* /'rəʊzmərɪ/ fragrant leaves of a type of evergreen shrub, used for flavouring food = gia vị bằng lá hương thảo.
- **spotlessly clean** *(adj)* /'spɒtlɪslɪ kli:n/ very clean = sạch sẽ
- **stuffy** *(adj)* /'stʌfɪ/ (of a room) not having much fresh air = ngột ngạt *a smoky, stuffy pub.*
- **tasteless** *(adj)* /'teɪslɪs/ having no flavour = vô vị, nhạt nhẽo
  tastelessness *(n)*
  tasty *(adj)* having a strong and pleasant flavour; appetizing. *a ~ dish*
- **underdone** *(adj)* /ˌʌndə'dʌn/ insufficiently cooked = chưa chín, tái *The beef was ~ and quite uneatable.*

EXPRESSIONS

We were made very welcome chúng tôi được tiếp đãi lịch sự
speciality of the day các món đặc biệt hôm nay
for our taste theo khẩu vị của chúng tôi
a delight to see thích nhìn
a second helping đĩa, lượng, phần ăn thứ nhì
go wrong with trở nên tệ, dở
Have a nice day ! chúc một ngày tốt đẹp

PROPER NAMES

Clement Harding /klemənt 'ha:dɪŋ/
Leicester /'lestə/
Kentucky /ken'tʌkɪ/
Nashiville /'næʃvɪl/
Rebecca Mitchell /rɪˌbekə 'mɪtʃl/
Wardleton /'wɔ:dltən/

USAGE :

1/ -
- To be interested in s/t
  to do s/t

EX : - *I'm* very much *interested in* the business that you have mentioned in your letter

2/ Anything / something / nothing... } + adj
   Anyone / someone / nobody...

EX : - There is *nothing* absolute in this world
- *Something* wrong happened yesterday when I returned home to find that she had gone.

3/ - To be / get used to + noun / gerund
   To be/get accustomed to+noun / gerund

EX : - Living under the same roof pretty long, I have gradually *been used to* her weather-like temper.

4/ To be fond of
   To be afraid of
   To be guilty of
   To be different from
   To be satisfied with

EX : - Man seems never *satisfied with* what he is owning.

5/ To remind someone of s/t
   That little girl *reminds* me *of* my own daughter who died 2 years ago.

6/ In a (good) hurry : hurriedly
   He was in such a good hurry that he stumbled many times.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1/ - **Clause of reason**

"He took his umbrella because it was raining"

The underlined clause is clause of reason
A clause of reason is introduced by "as/because/since"

Formation :

Subject + verb + object/complement + because /as/since + S + V + ...

EX : - We had to stop there because / as / since it was too dark to go on.
- *Because / as / since we had been advised to book early,* we managed to get a nice table with a view of the quay

(See Exercise for practice)

2/ Clause of contrast

"Although it wasn't raining, he took his umbrella"

The underlined is the clause of contrast

A clause of contrast is introduced by *although, though, even though, even if, no matter* (cho dù), *however* (cho dù... đi nữa)

Formation :

S + V... + although/ though/ even though... + S + V...

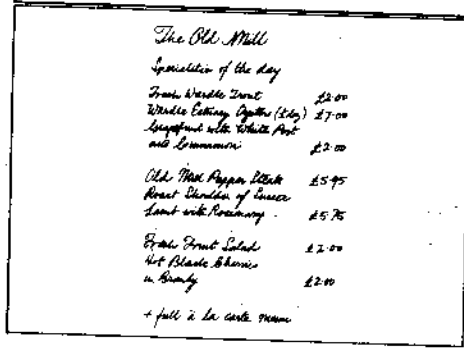
EX : *Although / though/ even though it wasn't raining,* he took his umbrella

- *No matter what he did to me,* I still like him.
- However rich he is, he always seems anxious to make more money.

"As" can introduce a clause of contrast, but only in the adjective + as + be construction.

EX : *Beautiful as she is,* she's still hated by her friends (Although she is beautiful, she is still hated by her friends)

Notes : Clauses of reason and contrast can stand either at the beginning or at the end of the sentences.



The Old Mill

Specialities of the day

Fresh Wardle Trout £2.00
Wardle Eating Oysters (1/2 doz) £7.00
Asparagus with White Port and Parmesan £2.00
Old Mill Pepper Steak £5.95
Roast Shoulder of Sussex Lamb with Rosemary £5.75
Exotic Fruit Salad £2.00
Hot Blazin Bananas in Brandy £2.00

+ full à la carte menu

QUÁN OLD MILL

Các món đặc biệt hôm nay :

Cá lóc tươi Wardle	2 pounds
Sò cửa sông Wardle (1/2 tá)	7 –
Bưởi với rượu vang trắng ngọt và chanh	2 –
Bít tết ướp tiêu của quán Old Mill	5.95 –
Thịt vai cừu Sussese nướng với rượu Rosemary	5.75 –
Salad trái cây tươi	2 –
Bánh dâu đen với rượu Brandy	2 –

Cùng với tất cả các món trên thực đơn tự chọn.

Eating Out

by Clement Harding

The Old Mill, The Quay, Wardleton, Sussex

Open : Tuesday – Sunday 7-11.30 p.m.

This week we decided to look at a small family-run restaurant in the village of Wardleton. 'The Old Mill' is newly opened and overlooks the River Wardle, and we had heard several favourable comments about it. Because we had been advised to book early, we managed to get a nice table with a view of the quay. We were made very welcome and the service was excellent because it is a small family business. The proprietor, Jeff Dean, runs the kitchen himself and his wife, Nelly, showed us to our table.

Although the choice of items on the menu was very extensive, it was rather traditional. A long menu always worries me, because a large menu often means a large freezer ! We started with Wardle Trout and although it was fresh, it was

Ăn tiệm

Clement Harding

Quán "The Old Mill", khu vực Bến cảng Wardleton, Sussex

Mở cửa : Thứ ba – Chủ nhật 7 – 11.30 tối

Tuần này chúng tôi quyết định tìm hiểu một tiệm ăn nhỏ do một gia đình trông coi ở làng Wardleton. Quán "The Old Mill" mới khai trương và nhìn ra sông Wardle. Chúng tôi đã nghe nhiều người khen về quán ăn này. Nhớ được mách là nên đặt chỗ sớm, chúng tôi đã tìm được một bàn xinh xắn có thể nhìn thấy cảnh bến cảng. Chúng tôi được tiếp đón ân cần và khâu phục vụ thật là tuyệt vì đây là công việc làm ăn của một gia đình. Chủ nhân Jeff Dean, làm đầu bếp, còn vợ là Nelly dẫn chúng tôi đến bàn.

Mặc dù trên thực đơn ghi rất nhiều món, thức ăn mang hơi đậm nét truyền thống. Một thực đơn dài bao giờ cũng làm tôi lo, vì thức ăn càng nhiều món thì cũng thường có nghĩa là kho tạnh cũng phải lớn ! Món khai vị của chúng tôi là cá lóc Wardle. Cá tuy tươi nhưng ăn mất ngon vì rau nhiều quá. Còn món chính, tôi chọn bít tết ướp tiêu,

spoilt by the number of heros. For my main course I chose the pepper steak, which was the speciality of the day. I thought it was almost perfect because the chef had chosen excellent meat and it was cooked just long enough.

My wife ordered the roast lamb, and although the quality of the meat was good, she thought it was a little underdone. Though the vegetables were fresh, they came in very small portions and were rather over-cooked for our taste. However, the bread was fresh because it had been baked on the premises. I have often complained in this column about the difficulty of finding any restaurant which serves a fresh fruit salad. Luckily, this one did. Even though it must have been very time-consuming to prepare, it was a delight to see, and I had a second helping.

As usual I chose house wine, as this is often the best way to judge a restaurant's wine list. It was a French-bottled table wine which was quite satisfactory and reasonably priced. The bill, including coffee and brandy, came to £37, which was acceptable for the class of restaurant, although that did not include service.

là món đặc biệt trong ngày. Tôi cho rằng món này gần như tuyệt hảo vì đầu bếp đã chọn thịt tươi ngon và rán vừa chín.

Vợ tôi gọi món cừu rô-ti. Miếng thịt tuy ngon, nhưng theo cô ấy thì vẫn còn hơi sống một chút. Dù rau đậu có tươi, nhưng chúng lại được bày thành từng phần rất nhỏ và nấu quá nhừ, xét theo khẩu vị của chúng tôi. Tuy nhiên, bánh mì lại nóng dòn vì được nướng ngay tại chỗ. Trong mục này, tôi đã thường than phiền về việc khó tìm một quán ăn phục vụ món xà lách trộn bằng hoa quả tươi. May thay, quán ăn này có món đó. Mặc dù chế biến một món như vậy chắc phải mất rất nhiều thời giờ, nhưng thật là tuyệt khi được chứng kiến, và tôi đã kêu thêm suất thứ hai.

Như thường lệ, tôi chọn loại rượu đặc sản, vì đây thực là cách tốt nhất để đánh giá danh mục rượu của một nhà hàng. Đó là loại rượu đóng chai ở Pháp, uống rất ngon và giá vừa phải. Hóa đơn, tính luôn cả phê và rượu, là 37 pounds, đó là giá chấp nhận được đối với loại nhà hàng như thế, mặc dù tiền phục vụ tính riêng.

Nashville Superburger Bar

1. Straight burger (2oz)	60p
2. Big burger (4oz)	90p
3. King-size burger (6oz)	£1.20
4. Super burger (8oz)	£1.60
5. Giant super burger (10oz)	£2.00
6. Titanic burger (12oz)	£2.40

All served in fresh, toasted buns with a choice of relishes.

Side orders of French fries :

7. Small	40p
8. Big	60p

Beverages :

9. Milk	30p
10. Selection of milkshakes	80p
11. Coffee	40p
12. Coca-cola	40p

Have a nice day !

QUÁN HAMBURGER SIÊU HẠNG (SUPER BURGER) NASHVILLE

1. Hamburger thường (2ounce)	60 pence
2. Hamburger lớn (4 ounce)	90 pence
3. Hamburger cỡ đại (6 –)	1pound20pence
4. Hamburger cỡ siêu (8 –)	1pound60pence
5. Hamburger siêu khổng lồ (10 –)	2 pounds
6. Hamburger vĩ đại khổng lồ (12 –)	2.40 pounds

Tất cả được kẹp với bánh mì tròn nướng mới làm với nhiều loại gia vị để bạn chọn.

Khoai tây chiên kêu thêm :

7. Nhỏ	40 pence
8. Lớn	60 pence

Đồ uống

9. Sữa	30 pence
10. Các loại sữa sốc	80 pence
11. Cà phê	40 pence
12. Coca Cola	40 pence

Chúc bạn một ngày vui vẻ !

Fast Food

by Rebecca Mitchell

Nashville Superburger Bar, Leicester Square, London. Open : 7 days a week, 24 hours a day

A new American fast-food chain has just opened its first restaurant in Britain. 'The Nashville Superburger Bar' is just off Leicester Square. Because of the success of McDonald's and Kentucky Fried Chicken, I was interested to see if Nashville had anything new to offer. The restaurant was so brightly-lit that I wished I'd brought my sunglasses. Once I'd got used to the light, I rather liked the green and orange plastic décor, which was very futuristic. The place was spotlessly clean – almost antiseptic ! Although there was a long queue, service was incredibly fast. The menu was limited to a variety of hamburgers and prices were very reasonable. I had the 'Giant Superburger' which was served with a generous helping of french fries. Although the burger itself was rather tasteless, there was a large selection of relishes on every table and the french fries were the best I've ever tasted. This kind of establishment obviously caters for young people in a hurry. I was amazed to see that many of the customers preferred to eat standing up even though there were seats available. Most of the customers were under 25 and alone. Everybody seemed to be drinking milk-shakes and although I'm not very fond of them I felt I should have one. Not much can go wrong with a milk-shake and it tasted as good or as bad as any other. Although it's a quick and efficient way of taking nourishment, you wouldn't choose 'The Nashville' for a quiet and romantic evening with a friend. Although I wasn't in a hurry I was in, fed, and out in ten minutes. It reminded me very much of a motorway filling station.

Thức ăn nhanh

Rebecca Mitchell

Quán Nashville superburger Quảng trường Leicester London. Mở cửa : 7 ngày một tuần, 24 giờ một ngày.

Một công ty bán thức ăn chế biến sẵn của Mỹ vừa mở nhà hàng đầu tiên của mình ở Anh. Quán Nashville Superburger nằm không xa quảng trường Leicester. Vì thành công của cửa hàng Mc Donald's và cửa hàng gà rán Kentucky, tôi muốn biết quán Nashville có phục vụ món gì mới hay không. Quán ăn này ánh đèn chói chang đến nỗi tôi tiếc là đã không mang theo kính râm. Khi mắt tôi đã quen với ánh sáng, tôi thấy thích lối trang trí tạo hình màu xanh lục và màu cam mang đầy tính vị lai. Nơi này sạch bóng – giống như đã được khử trùng ! Dù khách xếp thành hàng dài, quán phục vụ nhanh đến mức không thể tin được. Thực đơn chỉ giới hạn ở các loại bánh Hamburger (bánh mì kẹp thịt bò băm) và giá cả phải chăng. Tôi gọi món "Giant Superburger" (bánh mì thịt băm cỡ lớn) ăn với rất nhiều khoai tây chiên xắt lát. Mặc dù món bánh hơi nhạt nhẽo, ở bàn nào cũng có nhiều loại gia vị và món khoai tây chiên là món ngon nhất tôi đã từng ăn. Loại quán như thế này rõ ràng đáp ứng đúng nhu cầu của những thanh niên không có nhiều thì giờ. Tôi ngạc nhiên khi thấy nhiều khách hàng vẫn thích ăn đứng cho dù chỗ ngồi có sẵn. Phần lớn khách hàng tuổi dưới 25 và đi ăn một mình. Dường như ai ai cũng đang uống món sữa sốc và mặc dù tôi không thích món này lắm, tôi thấy là mình phải uống một ly. Món sữa sốc cũng chẳng có gì đáng phàn nàn và uống nó cũng ngon hoặc dở như bất kỳ món nào khác. Tuy đó là một cách hấp thu chất bổ nhanh và hiệu quả, chắc bạn sẽ không chọn quán Nashville để tâm sự với một người bạn vào một buổi tối yên tĩnh và thơ mộng. Mặc dù tôi không vội, tôi cũng vào ăn và ra khỏi quán trong vòng 10 phút. Quán này làm tôi liên tưởng rất nhiều đến hình ảnh một trạm đổ xăng trên xa lộ tốc hành.

Look at this

It was raining. He took his umbrella.

He took his umbrella because it was raining.

It wasn't raining.	He took his umbrella.
Although Though Even though	it wasn't raining he took his umbrella.

Exercise

Now combine these sentences with 'because' or 'although'.

1 He didn't take the job. The salary was good.
2 Mark wasn't thirsty. He drank some milk.
3 They're afraid of flying. They flew to New York.
4 Sarah needed a new dress. She bought one.

PRACTICE

Language summary

It was raining. He took his umbrella. — *He took his umbrella BECAUSE it was raining.*

It wasn't raining. He took his umbrella. — *ALTHOUGH / THOUGH / EVEN THOUGH* *it wasn't raining he took his umbrella.*

I chose the house wine, AS this is often the best way to judge a restaurant's wine list.

Exercise 1

Complete the spaces with : *because/ although.*

1 She applied for the job as personnel manager . . . she liked meeting people.
2 He got good grades in his examinations . . . . . he never seemed to do much work.
3 . . . . . he is very well-off, he drives a cheap second-hand car.
4 The workers were offered a good pay rise . . . . . production had increased by 20%.
5 I'm going to buy the new 'Tumbling Dice' LP . . . . . they're my favourite group.
6 His car refused to start . . . . . it had just been serviced.

Exercise 2

He was depressed. (He managed to smile) *He managed to smile although he was depressed.*

(He drank too much whisky) *He drank too much whisky because he was depressed.*

Write two sentences for each of the following.

1 She is handicapped.
(She needed a special car.)
(She took part in the marathon.)
2 They're very religious.
(They never go to church.)
(They go to church every Sunday.)
3 He fell 100 metres
(He was killed.)
(He didn't hurt himself.)
4 The room was stuffy.
(She opened the window.)
(She didn't open the window.)
5 The programme was entertaining.
(He switched it off.)
(He watched it to the end)
6 The ring was valuable.
(She threw it into the river.)
(She kept it in a safe deposit box.)
7 The service had been excellent.
(They left a big tip.)
(They didn't leave a tip.)
8 She was furious.
(She didn't say a word.)
(She shouted.)

Bài tập 1

Điền vào chỗ trống với *because/although*

Bài tập 2

Anh ấy nản lòng (Anh cố cười) Anh ấy gượng cười dầu anh rất nản lòng.

(Anh uống quá nhiều rượu wiski) Anh ấy uống quá nhiều rượu wiski vì anh ấy nản lòng.

Exercise 3

Even though he wrote three letters, he didn't get a reply.

He wrote three letters but he didn't get a reply.

Rewrite these sentences in the same way.

1 They lost although they played very well.
2 Though they thought the exam had been easy, they all failed.
3 Even though she smoked, drank and never took exercise, she lived to be 100.

Exercise 4

Mrs Trim received several applications for the job. She made notes on each of the applicants. Look at the notes that she made on Colin Fisher.

GOTHAM YOUNG ASSOCIATES

Manufacturers of quality toys since 1958

We are looking for a young dynamic marketing executive to join our highly successful sales team in Europe. The ideal candidate will be in his or her late twenties, highly qualified with a proven track record in marketing, and will be fluent in at least one European language. Initially the successful candidate will be based in London but will later travel extensively in Western Europe. Excellent remuneration, company car and fringe benefits.

Further details and application form from :

Mrs D. Trim, Gotham Young Associates, North Park Industrial Estate, London NW44 3KJ.

Colin Fisher (Ref OT/07)

PROS	CONS
right age	- not much marketing experience
well-qualified	- only French, not very fluent
ambitious	- has never stayed long in one job
prepared to travel	- married with two kids
knows France	- little experience of rest of Europe
well-dressed	- bitten finger nails
non-smoker	- drank too much at lunch

Bài tập 3

Mặc dù anh ấy đã viết 3 lá thư, anh vẫn không nhận được hồi âm.

Anh ấy viết 3 lá thư nhưng anh không nhận được hồi âm.

Viết lại các câu sau đây theo cách tương tự.

4 The police couldn't prove anything although they knew she was guilty.
5 He didn't get the job even though everyone thought he was the best man for it.

Bài tập 4

Bà Trim nhận được nhiều đơn xin việc làm. Bà ghi chú về từng người xin việc. Nhìn bảng ghi chú của bà về Colin Fisher.

HỘI THANH NIÊN GOTHAM

Những nhà sản xuất đồ chơi chất lượng từ năm 1958. Chúng tôi đang tìm một ủy viên tiếp thị năng động để tham gia đoàn thương mại rất thành công của chúng tôi ở Châu Âu. Người lý tưởng sẽ ở cuối độ tuổi 20, có năng lực tốt trong ngành tiếp thị có hồ sơ chứng minh, thông thạo ít nhất một thứ tiếng Châu âu. Ban đầu người trúng tuyển sẽ làm việc ở Luân Đôn nhưng về sau sẽ đi rộng rãi sang các nước Tây Âu. Lương hậu, có xe công ty và các trợ cấp phụ.

Cần biết thêm chi tiết và đơn xin gửi về :

Bà D. Trim, Hội Thanh niên Gotham, North Park Industrial Estate; London NW44 3KJ.

Although he's the right age, he hadn't had much marketing experience.

Write six sentences with 'although'.

Mặc dù tuổi anh ta phù hợp, anh ta không có nhiều kinh nghiệm tiếp thị.

Viết 6 câu với "Although".

Unit 59 Finding Your Way Around

Tìm đường đi

VOCABULARY

- **alms – house** *(n)* /ɑ:mz haʊs/ (Brit) house founded by gifts of charity, where poor (usu old) people may live without paying rent = nhà tế bần
- **alphabetical order** *(n)* /ˌælfəˈbetɪkl ˈɔ:də/ thứ tự chữ cái
- **automatic barrier** *(n)* /ˌɔ:təˈmætɪk ˈbærɪə/ hàng rào chắn tự động
- **(East) bound** *(adj)* /baʊnd/ (forming compound adjs) heading for a specified place or in a specified direction = về hướng (đông) *Northbound traffic may be delayed because of an accident on the motorway.*
- **cab** *(n)* /kæb/ taxi = xe taxi *Shall we walk or take a ~ / go by ~ ?*
  cab – rank = taxi – rank = bến xe taxi.
- **colour – coded** *(adj)* /ˈkʌlə kəʊdɪd/ marked with different colours to help people to distinguish between them = có các màu
- **crane** *(n)* /kreɪn/ cần trục
- **designate** *(v)* /ˈdezɪgneɪt/ ~ sb / st (as) st (fml) give a particular name, title or position to sb = đặt tên, mệnh danh *She was ~d (as) sportswoman of the year.*
  designation *(n)* /ˌdezɪgˈneɪʃn/ name, title or description. *His official ~ is Financial Controller.*
- **detailed** *(adj)* /ˈdi:teɪld/ having many details or paying great attention to details; thorough = đầy chi tiết *a ~ description, account, analysis.*
- **facade** *(n)* /fəˈsɑ:d/ (fml) front (of a building)
- **landmark** *(n)* /ˈlændma:k/ object, etc easily seen and recognized from a distance = mốc *The Empire State Building is a famous ~ on the New York skyline = Tòa nhà Empire State là cái mốc nổi bật trên đường chân trời New York.*
- **picturesque** *(adj)* /ˌpɪktʃəˈresk/ forming a pretty scene; charming or quaint *a ~ fishing village in the bay; a ~ setting.*
- **projecting clock** *(n)* /prəˈdʒektɪŋ klɒk/ đồng hồ nhô ra
- **rush – hour** *(n)* /ˈrʌʃaʊə/ time each day when traffic is busiest because people are going to or coming from work = giờ cao điểm *morning / evening ~ s. I got caught in the ~ traffic.*
- **specimen** *(n)* /ˈspesɪmɪn/ thing or part of a thing taken as an example of its group or class (esp for scientific research or for a collection) = vật mẫu *There were some fine ~ s of rocks and ores in the museum.*
- **street directory** *(n)* /stri:t dɪˈrektərɪ, daɪ-/ sách, cẩm nang chỉ đường
- **tube** *(n)* /tju:b/ = the underground /ˈʌndəgraʊnd/ (Brit infml) the underground railway system in London = xe điện ngầm *travel to work by ~ / on the ~.*
- **wharf** *(n)* /wɔ:f/ structure made of wood or stone at the water's edge, where ships may moor to load or unload cargo = cầu tàu.

EXPRESSIONS

find your way around đi tìm đường đâu đây
round the one-way system vòng theo hệ thống 1 chiều
it looks easy enough có vẻ dễ đấy
that goes straight there đường nầy đi thẳng tới đó.
by heart thuộc lòng

PROPER NAMES

Bakerloo	/ˈbeɪkəˈlu:/	Paddington	/ˈpædɪŋtən/
Blackfriars	/ˈblækˈfraɪəz/	Piccadilly	/ˌpɪkəˈdɪlɪ/
Elizabeth	/ɪˈlɪzəbəθ/	Russel	/ˈrʌsl/
Laura	/ˈlɔ:rə/	Simon	/ˈsaɪmən/
Ludgate Hill	/ˈlʌdgɪt ˈhɪl/	Sloane	/sləʊn/
Mall	/mæl/, /mɔ:l/	Trafalgar	/trəˈfælgə/
Marble Arch	/ˈma:bl a:tʃ/		
Monty Hunter	/ˌmɒntɪˈhʌntə/		

USAGE :

1/ - Licence : formal permission in writing, recognized by law (giấy phép)
+ Business licence (giấy phép kinh doanh), investment licence (giấy phép đầu tư), licence plate (biển số xe honda, mô tô)
+ To licence (vt) : to grant licence to s/o
Licenser (or) : the one who grant licence
Licensee : the one who is granted licence

EX : You cannot do any business without a business licence.

2/ - To *spend* time/money (on) doing something

EX : I *spent* a white night *reading* her love letter.
- He has to *spend* a lot of money on *buying* this house.

3/ - To take a train/ bus/ car... to somewhere

4/ - To get to : to go to
get at : to reach get on/off a car/ train/ plane...
get nowhere : come to no good

EX : In spite of all efforts he made in this affair, he still could *get nowhere*.

GRAMMAR NOTES :

1/ - Not only... but also

EX : They have to learn *not only* the streets to the hotel *but also* the quickest way to get there
(object) *(object)*

- Candidates are examined *not only* on the quickest routes *but also*
(prepositional phrase)
on the quickest routes at different times of the day
(prepositional phrase)
- He is *not only* talented *but also* handsome
(adjective) *(adjective)*

Formation :

Noun		Noun
Adjective	+ but also	Adjective
Adverb		Adverb
Prepositional phrase		Prepositional phrase

1/ - S + V + not only +

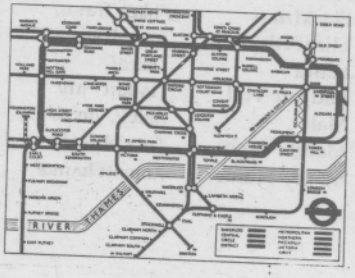
2/ - Asking for, giving and following instructions

a/ - Asking for instructions (some useful expressions)

- Excuse me. When ... ?
- Pardon me, Mr ... but where ... ? /Would you mind telling me where ... ?
- I hate to bother you, but what ... ? - Ma'am, could you help me ? How many ... ?
- Would you be so kind as to tell me ... ? - Could you tell me the way to ...

b/ - Giving and following instructions

- Just take (car, train...) to ... then change to ... - Walk two blocks west, turn right ...
- Drive north for 2 miles, then stop at ... - The best way is to take (car/train/bus ...)
- It's right there - You'll see it at once ...



THE KNOWLEDGE

Becoming a London taxi driver isn't easy. In order to obtain a licence to drive a taxi in London, candidates have to pass a detailed examination. They have to learn not only the streets, landmarks and hotels, but also the quickest way to get there. This is called 'The Knowledge' by London cab drivers and it can take years of study and practice to get 'The Knowledge'. Candidates are examined not only on the quickest routes but also on the quickest routes at different times of the day. People who want to pass the examination spend much of their free time driving or even cycling around London, studying maps and learning the huge street directory by heart.

Monty Hunter is taking the examination now. Listen to the examiner's question and try to follow Monty's directions on the map of London.

Examiner OK, Monty. Ready ? You're outside Buckingham Palace and you've just picked up a passenger who wants to go to St Paul's Cathedral. It isn't the rush-hour. Use the most direct route.

Monty I'd go straight along the Mall, round the one-way system at Trafalgar Square, and turn into Northumberland Avenue. I'd turn left along the Embankment and carry on as far as Blackfriars Bridge, turn left into New Bridge Street, then right at Ludgate Circus and up Ludgate Hill to St Paul's.

Exercise 1

Now practise with a partner. Point out your departure point on the map, state your destination and ask your partner to direct you.

THE UNDERGROUND

Travelling on the London underground (the 'tube') presents few difficulties for visitors because of the clear colour-coded maps. It is always useful to have plenty of spare change with you because there are often long queues at the larger stations. If you have enough change

NGÔN NGHỀ

Trở thành một tài xế tắc xi ở London không phải dễ. Để được cấp giấy phép lái tắc-xi ở London, thí sinh qua một kỳ thi rất chi tiết. Họ phải học không chỉ tên đường, các mốc ranh giới, khách sạn, mà còn phải biết làm thế nào để đến những nơi đó trong thời gian ngắn nhất. Các bác tài London gọi những điều như thế là "ngôn nghề" và để có được "ngôn nghề" có thể phải mất nhiều năm học hỏi và thực hành. Người ta kiểm tra các thí sinh không chỉ về lộ trình nhanh nhất mà còn về lộ trình nhanh nhất vào những thời điểm khác nhau trong ngày. Những ai muốn đậu kỳ thi này đều dành phần lớn giờ rảnh của mình lái xe hoặc thậm chí đạp xe lòng vòng quanh London, nghiên cứu bản đồ và học thuộc lòng cuốn sách chỉ dẫn đường sá đồ sộ.

Monty Hunter đang dự thi. Chú ý nghe câu hỏi của giám khảo và cố gắng theo dõi những lời hướng dẫn của Monty trên bản đồ.

Giám khảo : Được rồi, Monty. Sẵn sàng chưa ? Anh đang ở bên ngoài Điện Buckingham và anh vừa đón một hành khách muốn đi đến Nhà thờ St Paul. Lúc này không phải là giờ cao điểm. Hãy sử dụng lộ trình trực tiếp nhất.

Monty : Tôi sẽ đi thẳng theo khu Thương xá, vòng quanh hệ thống đường một chiều ở Quảng trường Trafalgar, rồi rẽ vào Đại lộ Northumberland. Tôi sẽ rẽ trái theo đường Bờ đê và chạy thẳng cho đến cầu Blackfriars, rẽ trái vào đường New Bridge, rồi rẽ phải tại Ludgate Circus và rồi ngược lên Ludgate Hill đến St. Paul.

XE ĐIỆN NGẦM

Du khách đi xe điện ngầm ở London gặp ít khó khăn vì đã có những bản đồ chỉ dẫn bằng màu sắc rõ ràng. Có nhiều tiền lẻ để sẵn luôn luôn có lợi vì thường hay có những hàng người xếp dài ở các trạm lớn. Nếu bạn có đủ tiền lẻ, bạn có thể mua vé từ máy bán vé tự động.

you can buy your ticket from a machine. You will find signs which list the stations in alphabetical order, with the correct fares, near the machines. There are automatic barriers which are operated by the tickets. You should keep the ticket, because it is checked at the destination.

Bạn sẽ thấy những biển hiệu liệt kê của các trạm xe điện ngầm theo thứ tự ABC với số tiền vé, gần máy bán vé . Có những ba-ri-e tự động vận hành bằng các vé này. Bạn phải giữ vé vì người ta sẽ kiểm tra ở nơi bạn tới.

Listen to these people talking about the underground map, and follow their routes on the map.

Hãy nghe những người này nói về bản đồ xe điện ngầm và hãy theo dõi lộ trình của họ trên bản đồ.

Peter and Susan have just arrived at Victoria.

Peter Right. We've got to get to Baker Street. Can you see it ?

Susan Yes, it's up here. It looks easy enough. We just take the Victoria line to Green Park, then change to the Jubilee line. That goes straight there. It's only the second stop from Green Park.

Laura is at the enquiry office at King's Cross.

Laura Oh, excuse me. How do I get to King's Road, Chelsea. I mean, which is the nearest tube station ?

Clerk You want Sloane Square. Take a look at this map. The best way is to take the Victoria line, that's this light blue one, as far as Victoria Station. Then you'll have to change. When you get to Victoria, follow the signs for the Circle and District lines, they're on the same platform. Then take the first westbound train. It doesn't matter which one it is. Sloane Square's the next stop.

Laura Thank you very much indeed.

Simon and Elizabeth are at Waterloo.

Simon Where's a map ?

Elizabeth There's one over here. They said the hotel was near Russell Square. Can you see it ?

Simon Yes, it's up here. In the top right of the map. Look, I reckon we should take the Bakerloo as far as Piccadilly Circus, then change to the Piccadilly line, that's the dark blue one. It's only four stops to Russell Square.

Elizabeth Are you sure that's the quickest way? We could take the Northern line (it's the black one) to Leicester Square, and join the Piccadilly line there.

Peter và Susan vừa mới đến Victoria.

P : Được rồi. Chúng ta phải đến đường Baker. Chị có thấy không ?

S : Có, nó ở chỗ này. Cũng dễ thôi. Chúng ta cứ theo tuyến Victoria đến Green Park, rồi đổi sang tuyến Jubilee. Nó chạy thẳng đến đó. Đấy là trạm ngừng thứ hai tính từ Green Park.

Laura đang ở phòng chỉ dẫn tại King's Cross.

Laura : Ồ, xin lỗi. Làm sao đến King's Road ở Chelsea? Tôi muốn hỏi là trạm xe điện ngầm nào gần nhất.

Nhân viên : Vậy là cô phải đến quảng trường Sloane. Hãy nhìn bản đồ này. Nhanh nhất là đi theo tuyến Victoria, có đánh dấu màu xanh nhạt như thế này, cho đến trạm Victoria. Rồi cô phải đổi tàu. Khi cô đến Victoria, hãy theo ký hiệu chỉ tuyến Circle (bùng binh) và tuyến District (Quận), hai tuyến này ở cùng một sân ga. Cô hãy đáp chuyến tàu đầu tiên đi về hướng Tây. Tàu nào cũng được. Trạm dừng kế tiếp là quảng trường Sloane.

Laura : Cám ơn ông rất nhiều.

Simon và Elizabeth đang ở Waterloo.

S : Bản đồ đâu ?

E : Ở đây có một bản. Người ta nói khách sạn ở gần Quảng trường Russell. Anh có thấy không ?

S : Có, nó ở đây. Ở góc phải phía trên của bản đồ. Nhìn xem, anh nghĩ là chúng ta nên theo tuyến Bakerloo đến Piccadilly Circus, rồi đổi sang tuyến Piccadilly, đó là tuyến có đánh dấu màu xanh sẫm. Từ đó đến quảng trường Russell chỉ có 4 trạm ngừng.

E : Anh có chắc đây là cách nhanh nhất không ? Chúng ta có thể đi theo tuyến Bắc (tuyến đánh dấu màu đen) đến quảng trường Leicester, rồi theo tuyến Piccadilly đến đó

Simon There's not much in it, really. We might as well take the Northern. Have you got any change for the ticket machine ?

S : Thực ra thì cũng chẳng nhanh hơn bao nhiêu. Chúng ta đi theo tuyến Bắc cũng được. Em có tiền lẻ để mua vé ở máy tự động không ?

Exercise 2

Practise with a partner. Give directions from :

1 Sloane Square to Marble Arch
2 Baker Street to Russell Square
3 Waterloo to Paddington
4 Victoria to Great Portland Street
5 Pimlico to Russell Square
6 Great Portland Street to St Paul's

Exercise 3

Here are some famous London landmarks with their nearest tube stations. Make conversations about getting to them from : a. Sloane Square, b. St Paul's, c. Marble Arch.

1 Buckingham Palace (St James's Park)
2 British Museum (Russell Square)
3 National Gallery (Trafalgar Square)
4 Houses of Parliament (Westminster)
5 Tower of London (Tower Hill)
6 Madame Tussaud's (Baker Street)

Exercise 4

Practise with a partner. State a departure point and destination. Your partner has to give you directions.

PRACTICE

Guildford

CENTRAL PLAN

C(4) **Tourist Information Centre** – Civic Hall London Road *tel 67314* (see also public buildings and places of interest)

Public buildings & places of interest

G(1) **Archbishop Abbot's (Trinity) Hospital** A picturesque brick-built building founded by George Abbot – a native of Guildford and Archbishop of Canterbury from 1611 to 1633 – in 1619 as an almshouse for 12 men and 8 women

J(2) **Castle Keep and Gardens** A rectangular Norman keep of three storeys, situated in attractive gardens. Fine view from the summit.

F(3) **Citizens' Advice Bureau**

C(4) **Civic Hall and Tourist Information Centre** A modern building opened in 1962 and home of the Guildford Philharmonic Orchestra.

G(5) **Guildford House** A fine town house of 1660, noted for its beautifully-carved staircase and finely-decorated plaster ceilings. Frequently changing art exhibitions are held here.

F(6) **Guildhall** The picturesque 17th-C façade of this building which overlooks High St, is noted for its projecting clock.

G(7) **Holy Trinity Church** A late 18th-C red-bricked church standing at the top of the High Street, which contains the tomb of Archbishop Abbot.

G(8) **Library**

G(9) **Municipal Buildings**

J(10) **Museum, Castle Arch** Contains collections on local history, geology and archaeology, including those of the Surrey Archaeological Society.

G(11) **Royal Grammar School** A 16th-C building famous for its collection of chained books in the Library.

G(12) **St Joseph's Church (RC)**

J(13) **St Mary's Church** Guildford's oldest and most interesting church which preserves specimens of Saxon, Norman, Early English and Transitional architecture.

J(14) **St Nicolas' Church** Rebuilt in the late 19th C but preserving the Perpendicular Loseley Chapel, with interesting monuments of the Mores of Loseley family.

E(15) **St Saviour's Church** A late 19th C structure with a prominent tower

E(16) **Sports Centre**

F(17) **Treadwheel Crane** Restored 18th-C treadwheel crane of the old town wharf.

G(18) **Tunsgate** With its tall Tuscan columns, columns are all that remain of the old corn exchange and law courts.

J(19) **Yvonne Arnaud Theatre** Opened in 1965.

F/G/J **High Street and Quarry Street** These two streets, the former paved with granite setts, have been designated a Conservation Area. The elegant Georgian fronts of many of the buildings often hide far older backs.

Theatres and Cinemas

G **Odeon Cinema**, Epsom Road *tel 504990*

F **Studio 1 & 2 Cinema**, Woodbridge Road *tel 64334*

J(19) **Yvonne Arnaud Theatre**, Millbrook *tel 64571* (see also public buildings and places of interest)

Department Stores

Debenhams Ltd, Millbrook
A & N Ltd, High Street
Marks and Spanner Ltd, High Street
Early closing day Wednesday

Markets

F **Fruit and Vegetable Market**, North Street (Friday and Saturday)

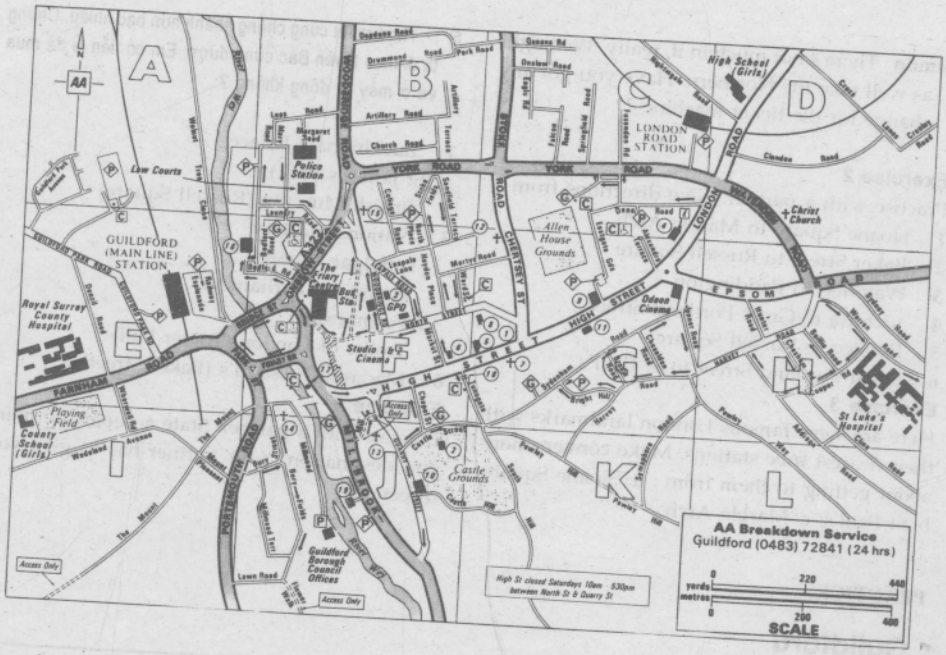
Hospitals

E **Royal Surrey County Hospital**, Farnham Road *tel 71122*

H **St Luke's Hospital**, Warren Road *tel 504945*

Sport and Recreation

E(16) **Sports D Centre**, Bedford Road – swimming pools etc (see also public buildings and places of interest).



Exercise 1

Here are some of the symbols used on the map. Put the correct words next to the symbols.

Car Park	One-way street
Post Office	Multi-storey Car Park
Convenience	Tourist information Centre
Church	Convenience with facilities for the disabled

1 C . . . . . .

2 P . . . . . .

3 + ...

4 → . . . . . .

5 *i* . . . . . .

6 C . . . . . .

7 GPO . . . . . .

Exercise 2

Trace the following directions on the map. Walk out of London Road Station to York Road and turn right. Go straight along York Road for about 800 metres. Cross the major road junction with Stoke Road and continue on to the

Bài tập 1

Đây là một số ký hiệu dùng trên bản đồ. Đặt từ đúng vào cạnh ký hiệu.

Bài tập 2

Tra các hướng sau đây trên bản đồ. Đi khỏi trạm London Road đến York Road rồi quẹo phải. Đi thẳng dọc theo York Road lối 800 mét. Băng qua giao lộ lớn với Stoke Road và tiếp tục đi đến bùng binh nơi đó

roundabout where you turn left.
Bear right at the fork and carry on to the next junction.
Bear left at the junction and then right over the bridge.
As soon as you've crossed the bridge turn sharp left and take the first street on the left. The road goes round to the right along the river bank. Follow the road to the end, walk across the car park.

bạn quẹo trái.
Cặp theo nhánh phải ở lối rẽ và tiếp tục đi tới giao lộ kế tiếp.
Cặp theo tay trái ở giao lộ và rồi quẹo phải qua cái cầu.
Ngay khi bạn vừa băng qua cầu, quẹo ngay bên trái và đi con đường đầu tiên bên trái. Con đường đi vòng sang tay phải dọc theo bờ sông. Đi đến cuối đường, băng qua bãi đậu xe.

Where are you ? .....
What can you see in the middle of the river ? .....
What can you see on the big hill across the river ? .....

Exercise 3
Write directions from the Police Station to the Castle Museum.

Bài tập 3
Viết hướng đi từ Trạm cảnh sát đến Bảo tàng viện Castle.

Exercise 4
In Guildford, where would you go to :
1 hear a symphony concert ? .....
2 see an exhibition of paintings ? .....
3 swim indoors ? .....
4 play football ? .....
5 appear as a witness at a trial ? .....

Bài tập 4
Ở Guildford, bạn sẽ đi đâu để :
6 see a play ? .....
7 report a stolen car ? .....
8 get a good view of Guildford ? .....
9 catch an express train ? .....
10 see a very old crane ? .....

Exercise 5
Why wouldn't you :
1 visit Debenham's store on Wednesday afternoon ? .....
2 go to North Street market on Monday ? .....
3 drive east along North Street ? .....

Bài tập 5
Tại sao bạn không :
4 shake hands with Archbishop Abbot ? .....
5 park your car in the High Street on Saturday afternoon ? .....
6 appear as a witness at Tunsgate law courts ? .....

Exercise 6
Now write directions from your home to the school.

Bài tập 6
Bây giờ hãy viết hướng từ nhà bạn đến trường.

Unit 60 The Eight O'clock News Bản tin 8 giờ

VOCABULARY

- **appalling** *(adj)* /ə'pɔ:liŋ/ (infml) shocking; extremely bad = xấu, đáng sợ *I find much modern architecture ~; ~ weather.*
- **bitch** *(n)* /bɪtʃ/ female dog = con chó cái
- **blast** *(n)* /blɑ:st/ explosion = sự nổ tung *Several passers - by were killed by (the) ~.*
- **cancellation** *(n)* /ˌkænsə'leɪʃn/ cancelling or being cancelled = sự hủy bỏ *her ~ of her trip to Paris.*
- **capsize** *(v)* /kæp'saɪz/ (cause a boat to) overturn or be overturned = lật úp *The boat ~ d in heavy seas.*
- **carnival** *(n)* /'kɑ:nɪvl/ public festivities and merry - making occuring at a regular time of year = ngày hội, hội hè
- **chase** *(n)* /tʃeɪs/ act of chasing; pursuit = cuộc săn đuổi, rượt bắt *The criminal was caught after a car ~*
  chase *(v)* run after in order to capture or overtake sb / st.
- **closure** *(n)* /'kləʊʒə/ closing or being closed = sự đóng cửa (xí nghiệp, công ty) *The threat of ~ affected the workers' morale.*
- **coastguard** *(n)* /'kəʊstgɑ:d/ (one of a) group of people employed to watch the coast and report passing ships, prevent smuggling, etc. = lực lượng tuần duyên
- **component** *(n)* /kəm'pəʊnənt/ any of the parts of which st is made = thiết bị, phụ tùng *The ~ s of an engine;*
  a factory supplying ~ s for the car industry.
- **custody** *(n)* /'kʌstədɪ/ imprisonment while awaiting trial = sự tạm giam, sự bắt giữ *take sb into ~* = arrest him *be held in ~*
- **decline** *(n)* /dɪ'klaɪn/ gradual and continuous loss of strength, power, numbers = sự sụt giảm *a ~ in population, prices, popularity.*
- **demonstrator** *(n)* /'demənstreɪtə/ person who demonstrates = người biểu tình
  The noisy ~ s were dispersed by the police.
  demonstrate *(v)* (against / in favour of sb / st) take part in a public rally, etc usu as a protest or to show support = biểu tình
  Thousands ~ d against the price increases.
- **distort** *(v)* /dɪ'stɔ:t/ give a false account of (st); misrepresent = bóp méo
  ~ sb's words, motives, point of view.
- **gas main** *(n)* /'gæs meɪn/ large pipe carrying gas from supplier to consumer = ống dẫn khí chính
- **good - humoured** *(adj)* /ˌgud'hju:məd/ cheerful; amiable = vui vẻ
  good humour *(n)* cheerful mood or state of mind *a meeting marked by ~ and friendliness.*
- **hat trick** *(n)* /'hæt trɪk/ 1. (in criket) taking of three wickets by the same bowler with three successive balls = hạ được ba cọc bằng ba quả bóng *take a ~* = hạ ba cọc liền
  2. three similar successes achieved by one person in another sport or activity = ba thành công tương tự do 1 người thực hiện trong một trận thể thao hoặc một hoạt động *score a ~ of goals.* = một mình ghi ba bàn
- **highlight** *(n)* /'haɪlaɪt/ best, most interesting or most exciting part of st = phần đẹp mắt, gây cấn nhất. *The ~s of the match will be shown on TV tonight.*
- **junction** *(n)* /'dʒʌŋkʃn/ place where roads or railway lines meet = ngã ba, ngã tư đường *a pub near the ~ of London Road and Chaucer Avenue.*
- **lengthy** *(adj)* /'leŋθɪ/ 1. very long = rất dài *~ negotiations must take place before any agreement can be reached.*
  2. (derog) tiresomely long; long and boring = dài dòng *~ explanations, speeches.*
- **limp** *(v)* /lɪmp/ walk unevenly, as when one foot or leg is hurt or stiff = đi cà nhắc *The injured footballer ~ ed slowly off the field.*
- **overcrowded** *(adj)* /ˌəʊvə'kraʊdɪd/ with too many people in (a place); crowded too much = quá đông *~ buses, trains.*
- **petition** *(n)* /pə'tɪʃn/ formal written request, esp one signed by many people appealing to sb in authority = đơn thỉnh nguyện *a ~ against closing the swimming - pool signed by hundreds of local residents.*
- **predict** *(v)* /prɪ'dɪkt/ say in advance that st will happen; forecast = đoán trước *The earthquake had been ~ ed several months before.*
  predictable *(adj)* *~ behaviour, results, weather.*
  prediction *(n)*

- **road works** *(n)* /ˈrəʊdwɜːks/ work involving the construction or repair of roads = công trường, công việc sửa chữa đường sá
- **roundabout** *(n)* /ˈraʊndəbaʊt/ multiple road junction in the form of a circle round which all traffic has to pass in the same direction = bùng binh

EXPRESSIONS

to bear right / left quẹo phải / trái

to take the first street on the left đi đường đầu tiên bên trái

PROPER NAMES

Bransly	/ˈbrænslɪ/
Brighton Belle	/ˈbraɪtn bel/
Chesilworth	/ˈtʃesɪlwɜːθ/
Devon	/ˈdevn/
Dunromin Rangers	/dʌnˈrɒmɪn ˈreɪndʒəz/
Ferniside	/ˈfɜːnsaɪd/
Glasgow	/ˈglɑːsgəʊ/
Hampshire	/ˈhæmpʃɪə - ʃə/

- **vibrate** *(v)* /vaɪˈbreɪt/ shake = rung, lắc *The whole house ~ s whenever a heavy lorry passes.* **vibration** *(n)* vibrating movement = sự rung chuyển *Even at full speed the ship's engines cause very little ~.*

Mickle	/ˈmɪkl/
Poole	/puːl/
Trevor Franklin	/ˌtrevə ˈfræŋklɪn/

USAGE

1/ To hand in : giao nộp
hand s/t round : chuyền tay cho nhau cái gì
hand down to... : truyền lại cái gì cho ai
hand s/t over to s/o : chuyển cái gì cho ai

EX : Courage, honesty, laboriousness - these are the most precious treasure that our ancestors could hand down to us.

2/ Due to (owing to) + noun/gerund : do bởi, nhờ có

EX : He can never get any success in life due to his laziness.
His success is due to his wife.

3/ To be armed with : được trang bị (vũ khí, tư tưởng...)
To disarm s/o : tước, lột vũ khí của ai
Disarming : giải trừ quân bị
To be armed to the teeth : vũ trang đến tận răng

GRAMMAR NOTES

Adverb clauses of Reason.

A. conjunctions in adverbial Clauses of Reason

1. These clauses broadly answer the question WHY ? and can be introduced by the following conjunctions : *because, as, seeing* (that) and *since.*
As / Because / Since *there was very little support,* the strike was not successful.
2. We often begin sentences with *as* and *since.*
As / Since it's a public holiday, you won't find many shops open.

3. We often use *because* in the second half of a sentence : Jim's trying to find a place of his own **because** he wants to feel independent.
4. We can always use *because* in place of *as,since* and *for*. We cannot always use *as, since* and *for* in place of *because*
5. Compare these two sentences :

It was snowing, **so** she wore a coat
She wore a coat **because** it was snowing.

These two sentences have the same meaning but the first is a *compound sentence* and the second is *a complex one.*

B. Preposition : BECAUSE OF

We use *because of* before a noun phrase or the ing-form of a verb.

She wore a coat **because of** *the snow.*
Jim's trying to find a place of his own **because of** *wanting* to feel independent.

Adverb clauses of Contrast / Concession

A. Conjunctions in Adv. Clause of Contrast :

1. We can introduce contrast with conjunctions like : *although, considering* (that), *though, even though, while, whereas,* etc.
   Although / though / Even though *I felt sorry for him, I was secretly pleased that he was having difficulties.*
2. **Though** is informal – It means the same as **although**. We can use **though** at the end of a sentence.
   I liked the sweater – I didn't buy it, **though** (= But I didn't buy it)
3. **Even though** is stronger, more emphatic than **although** :
   Jeff looked quite fresh, **even though** he'd just run a marathon.
   Even though I hate Gary, I shall try to be nice to him.
4. Compare these sentences :
   It was difficult, **but** he managed to do it.
   It was difficult **However / Nevertheless,** he managed to do it.
   Although it was difficult, he managed to do it.

These sentences have more or less the same meaning but the first two are **compound sentences** and the third is a *complex* one.

B. Prepositions : IN SPITE OF = DESPITE

We use *In spite of* and *despite* before a noun phrase or the ing – form of a verb.

- She didn't wear a coat **in spite of / despite** the snow.
- I carried on working **in spite of / despite** not feeling well.

Good evening, and here is the Eight O'Clock News.

Five thousand people marched through the streets of Chesilworth today protesting against plans for a new international airport near the town. Although there was such a large number of demonstrators, there was no trouble. The demonstrators marched to the town hall, where a public enquiry into the plans was taking place, and handed in a petition to the chairman of the

Chào quí vị và đây là bản tin lúc 8 giờ. Năm ngàn người đã biểu tình qua các đường phố của Chesilworth ngày hôm nay để phản đối các dự án xây một phi trường quốc tế mới gần thành phố. Mặc dù số người biểu tình rất đông nhưng không có bạo động. Những người này tiến đến Tòa Thị Chính, nơi cuộc trưng cầu dân ý về dự án đang diễn ra, và trao cho ông Chủ tịch cuộc trưng cầu một kiến nghị. Cần có một phi trường mới bởi vì các phi trường khác ở khu vực London đã quá tải. Một số địa điểm để xây phi trường mới đã được đưa ra và Chesilworth được xét đến

enquiry. A new airport is needed because the other airports in the London area are overcrowded. Several sites for the new airport have been suggested, and Chesilworth was considered because it is near both a major motorway and a railway line. Although it was a protest march, there was almost a carnival atmosphere, and both demonstrators and police remained goodhumoured.

vì nó vừa gần một xa lộ tốc hành lớn vừa gần một tuyến đường xe lửa. Mặc dù đây là một cuộc diễu hành phản đối, không khí như là của ngày hội vậy và cả những người biểu tình lẫn cảnh sát đều vui vẻ.

Families were evacuated from four streets in the centre of Glasgow today, because of a gas explosion. The explosion occurred at ten a.m. in a deserted house in Mickle Street. Gas Board officials believe that the explosion was due to leaking gas. The house had been empty for several months, and they suspect that a gas main had cracked because of vibration from road-works in the street. Windows 100 metres away were broken by the blast. The police have forbidden anyone to enter the area until the Gas Board has completed tests.

Ngày hôm nay nhiều gia đình đã được sơ tán khỏi 4 đường phố ở vùng trung tâm Glasgow vì một vụ nổ khí. Vụ nổ xảy ra vào lúc 10 giờ sáng ở một căn nhà bỏ hoang ở phố Mickle. Các viên chức của Ủy Ban Khí Đốt tin rằng vụ nổ là do rò khí. Nhà này đã vắng bóng người từ mấy tháng và người ta nghi ngờ rằng có một ống dẫn khí đã bị nứt do chấn động từ những công trình làm đường trên đường phố. Sức nổ đã làm vỡ các cửa kiếng cách đó 100 mét. Cảnh sát đã cấm không cho bất kỳ ai vào khu vực này cho đến khi Ủy Ban Khí Đốt đã hoàn thành các cuộc thử nghiệm.

Air-sea rescue helicopters from RAF Sopworth were called out after a yacht capsized in a storm off the Devon coast. Despite high seas the helicopters lowered rescue teams to try and save the crew. Two men and a girl were pulled to safety. Unfortunately, the other two crewmembers died in spite of the rescue team's efforts. One was lost at sea. The other was rescued and taken to hospital, but was dead on arrival. The coastguard had warned small boats to stay in the harbour, but the yacht, the 'Neptune III' from Poole, had set out for France despite the warnings.

Trực thăng cứu nạn hải không thuộc căn cứ Sopworth của Không lực Hoàng gia đã được điều đi công tác sau khi có một du thuyền bị lật úp trong một trận bão ở ngoài khơi vùng biển Devon. Mặc dù biển động trực thăng vẫn thả các toán cấp cứu để cố gắng cứu những người trên du thuyền. Hai người đàn ông và một cô gái được kéo lên an toàn. Tuy nhiên hai người khác điều khiển du thuyền đã chết mặc dù có những cố gắng của toán cấp cứu. Một người mất tích ở biển khơi. Người kia được cứu lên rồi đưa đến bệnh viện nhưng đã chết khi đến nơi. Trước đó lực lượng tuần duyên đã khuyến cáo các thuyền nhỏ phải ở lại cảng nhưng chiếc du thuyền này mang tên "Neptune III" đã từ Poole đi Pháp bất chấp những lời khuyến cáo nói trên.

Fernside Engineering announced today that they are closing their plant in Tadworth. Three hundred jobs will be lost because of the closure, which is due to a sharp decline in orders for their products. There have been rumours for several weeks that the plant might be closed, and in spite of lengthy discussions between unions and management, closure became inevitable because of the cancellation of several

Công ty Fernside Engineering hôm nay vừa tuyên bố là họ sẽ đóng cửa xưởng máy ở Tadworth. Điều này sẽ làm mất đi 300 việc làm. Xưởng máy đóng cửa do sự sụt giảm mạnh số đơn đặt hàng mua sản phẩm của nó. Trong mấy tuần đã có lời đồn là xưởng máy có thể bị đóng cửa và mặc dù đã có những cuộc thương lượng dai dẳng giữa nghiệp đoàn và ban giám đốc, xưởng máy vẫn không tránh khỏi bị đóng cửa do việc nhiều đơn đặt hàng chủ yếu bị hủy bỏ. Ngoài số 300 người mất việc ở Tadworth,

major orders. As well as the three hundred redundancies at Tadworth, union leaders predict further redundancies in the area, in firms which supply Fernside Engineering with components.

Reports are coming in of a 100 mph car chase through the roads of Hampshire. Police disturbed a gang of men who were breaking into a chemist's in Lyndford. However, the men escaped in a stolen Jaguar saloon, and the police chased them through the New Forest at high speed. The Jaguar was forced off the road near Bransley. The men were armed with shot-guns, but nevertheless police-officers chased them across a field. Several shots were fired. Fortunately, however, no one was injured, and the men were taken into custody.

Brighton Belle XIV, a four-year-old Dalmatian bitch, became the 'Supreme Champion Dog' at Cruft's Dog Show in London. There were almost 10,000 dogs on show, worth around £8,000,000. There were 120 judges looking at 144 different breeds of dog. Brighton Belle XIV is expected to earn up to £100,000 in breeding and advertising fees.

And lastly, sport. Eastfield United are through to the next round of the European Cup after an exciting match in Scotland. Dunromin Rangers scored twice in the first half, and although Eastfield were two down at half-time, they went on to win with a hat trick by Trevor Franklin in the second half. Towards the end of the second half, Franklin was limping because of a knee injury, but nevertheless managed to score the winning goal one minute from time. The game was stopped twice because of fighting in the crowd, but in spite of the trouble, and in spite of the appalling weather, both teams played well. Viewers will be able to see highlights of the match after the news.

Look at this

It was snowing so she wore a coat.
or

She wore a coat	because it was snowing. because of the snow.	

or

Because it was snowing, Because of the snow,		she wore a coat.

các nhà lãnh đạo công đoàn tiên đoán sẽ có thêm nhiều người mất việc nữa trong vùng, trong các xí nghiệp cung cấp các thiết bị cho Công ty Fernside Engineering.

Chúng tôi vừa nhận được tin về cuộc săn đuổi bằng xe hơi tốc độ 100 miles/g qua những đường phố ở Hampshire. Cảnh sát đã chặn bắt một nhóm người đang đột nhập vào một tiệm thuốc tây ở Lyndford. Tuy nhiên những tên này đã thoát được bằng xe hơi Jaguar do chúng cướp được và cảnh sát đuổi theo chúng qua vùng New Forest với tốc độ cao. Chiếc Jaguar bị ép vào lề gần Bransley. Bọn cướp được vũ trang bằng súng trường đi săn, nhưng các nhân viên cảnh sát đã rượt chúng chạy qua một cánh đồng. Có nhiều phát súng nổ. May mắn là không có ai bị thương, và những tên cướp này đã bị bắt giữ.

Brighton Belle XIV, một con chó cái 4 tuổi thuộc nòi Dalmatian đã trở thành con chó "Vô địch Tuyệt đối" ở Cuộc Thi Chó ở Cruft, London. Có gần 10.000 con chó tham gia, trị giá khoảng 8 triệu pounds. Có 120 giám khảo cho điểm 144 nòi chó khác nhau. Brighton Belle XIV có hy vọng sẽ mang lại cho chủ 100.000 pounds tiền gây giống và quảng cáo.

Và cuối cùng là tin Thể thao. Đội Eastfield United đã vào được vòng kế tiếp của Cúp châu Âu sau một trận đấu lý kỳ ở Scotland. Trong hiệp nhất Dunromin Rangers đã ghi bàn 2 lần và mặc dù Eastfield thua 2 điểm khi hiệp một chấm dứt, họ vẫn thắng do công của Trevor Franklin một mình ghi 3 bàn ở hiệp hai. Gần cuối hiệp hai, Franklin đi khập khiễng do chấn thương đầu gối nhưng đã tìm cách ghi bàn thắng một phút trước khi hiệp hai chấm dứt. Trận đấu bị gián đoạn 2 lần vì có ẩu đả trong đám đông khán giả, nhưng dù có sự lộn xộn này và dù thời tiết rất xấu, cả hai đội đều chơi rất hay. Khán giả sẽ được xem những pha gay cấn nhất của trận đấu sau bản tin này.

It was snowing, but she didn't wear a coat.
or

She didn't wear a coat	although it was snowing.	
	in spite of / despite	the snow

or

Although it was snowing,	she didn't wear a coat.	
In spite of / Despite	the snow,	

It was difficult, but he managed to do it.
or

It was difficult.	However, / Nevertheless	he managed to do it.

or

It was difficult.	He managed to do it	however. / nevertheless.

Exercise
Now write the news for today.

PRACTICE

Language summary

It was snowing so she wore a coat.

She wore a coat	*because* / *because of*	*it was snowing.* / *the snow.*
Because / *Because of*	*it was snowing,* / *the snow,*	*she wore a coat.*

It was snowings, but she didn't wear a coat.

She didn't wear a coat	*although*	*it was snowing.*
	in spite of / *despite*	*the snow.*
Although	*it was snowing,*	*she didn't wear a coat.*
In spite of / *Despite*	*the snow,*	

It was difficult, but he managed to do it.

It was difficult.	*However,* / *Nevertheless,*	*he managed to do it.*
It was difficult. He managed to do it,		*however.* / *nevertheless.*

Exercise
Read the following news items and fill in the spaces with : because/because of/although/in spite of/nevertheless.

Bài tập
Đọc các mẩu tin sau đây và điền vào chỗ trống với because/because of/although/in spite of/nevertheless.

IBC News

John Curtis, the kidnapped businessman, was released today ..... no ransom had been paid. He was found in a bus shelter in the early hours of this morning with his hands and feet tied. .....his terrible experience he was well and cheerful . ..... he was tired and hungry. The police had refused to allow the family to pay the ransom. .....they had tried on several occasions. It is thought the kidnappers released Mr Curtis after an appeal on television by his wife.

IBC News

The M1 motorway was closed for four hours today.... a multiple crash involving hundreds of vehicles. At one point visibility was down to six metres in some places .....thick fog, and the road surface was treacherous ... .there were patches of black ice. Motorists continued to drive too fast ..... police warnings. ..... this 'motorway madness' and the terrible weather conditions, the police decided to close the motorway. The police advise motorists not to take to the roads unless their journeys are really necessary.

IBC News

International computers announced this afternoon that they have just won a £200m order ....fierce international competition. .....the order, placed by the government of Wibanya, the jobs of 80 employees at the Southampton factory, which had been under threat ..... failing orders, will now be saved. . the economic recession continues to worsen, the company is optimistic that more orders will be placed for their new NZ series of computers. .....the company states that their Birmingham factory will still have to close with the loss of 120 jobs.

IBC News

An estimated 20,000 people turned out to greet the Prince of Wales in Cardiff today.....appalling weather conditions. .. ..Welsh nationalists had threatened to disrupt the visit, their shouts of protest were drowned by the cheering crowds. .....the visit, schoolchildren had been given a holiday and the Prince's route was lined with flag-waving children. The police had mounted their tightest security operation ever. ..... the Prince managed to break free from his bodyguards and mingled with the crowd, chatting and shaking hands.

IBC News

A 14-month-old baby had a miraculous escape this afternoon. ..... a 20m fall from a 5th storey balcony. 14-month-old Steven Paine survived unhurt. Steven had somehow managed to crawl over a balcony rail. ..... he landed on concrete, he didn't even cry and was picked up by a neighbour and rushed to hospital. After an examination, Steven was able to return home with nothing worse than slight bruising.

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Units 57-60

Dialogue A

Listen Pope John-Paul II visited London in 1982.
Patrick Hello, love.
Kate Hi. Well, did you manage to see the Pope ?
Patrick Yes, it was great. He drove right past the office. He was in a special car with big windows.
Kate Could you see him clearly ?
Patrick Oh, yes. We could see him waving.
Kate I bet there were a lot of people, weren't there ?
Patrick Thousands ! All shouting and waving flags.
Listen and repeat

Vocabulary
- I bet (that)... (infml) I am certain
I bet he arrives late – he always does.

A1 Listen
A : He was in a special car which had big windows.
B : He was in a special car with big windows.
C : He was in a special car with big windows.
A : It was a very unusual car which had a high platform.
B : It was a very unusual car with a high platform.
C : It was a very unusual car with a high platform.

Now you do the same
He was in a special car which had big windows
..... He was in a special car with big windows.
It was a very unusual car which had a high platform
..... It was a very unusual car with a high platform.
He was in a strange vehicle which had bullet-proof glass
..... He was in a strange vehicle with bullet-proof glass.
It was a large car which had a security guard on each side
..... It was a large car with a security guard on each side.

A2 Listen
A : We could see him. He was waving.
B : We could see him waving.
C : We could see him waving.
A : I noticed the security guards. They were watching the crowd.
B : I noticed the security guards watching the crowd.
C : I noticed the security guards watching the crowd.

Now you do the same
We could see him. He was waving
..... We could see him waving.
I noticed the security guards. They were watching the crowd
..... I noticed the security guards watching the crowd.
There were some children. They were shouting 'We love you'
..... There were some children shouting 'We love you'.
I saw the Pope. He was smiling..... I saw the Pope smiling.

A3 Listen
A : There were a lot of people. Some of them were waving flags.
B : There were a lot of people some of whom were waving flags.
C : There were a lot of people some of whom were waving flags.
A : It was a big crowd. All of them were happy.
B : It was a big crowd all of whom were happy.
C : It was a big crowd all of whom were happy.

Now you do the same
There were a lot of people. Some of them were waving flags
..... There were a lot of people some of whom were waving flags.
It was a big crowd. All of them were happy
..... It was a big crowd all of whom were happy.
There were a lot of children. Most of them were shouting
..... There were a lot of children most of whom were shouting.
There were security guards. One of them was holding a gun
..... There were security guards one of whom was holding a gun.

Dialogue B

Listen

Patrick We were very lucky, you know. The car stopped just below our office.
Kate Why did it stop there ?
Patrick The Pope told the driver to stop... he wanted to get out. He'd seen someone in the crowd and he wanted to speak to her. She was in a wheelchair.
Kate Wasn't that a bit dangerous ?
Patrick I'm sure it was. But he didn't seem to care. He just mixed with the crowd, talking to people, shaking hands.

Vocabulary

- pope *(n)* /pəup/ head of the Roman Catholic Church who is also the Bishop of Rome = Đức giáo hoàng *Pope John Paul*

Listen and repeat

B1 Listen

A : The Pope wanted to get out so he told the driver to stop.
B : The Pope told the driver to stop because he wanted to get out.
C : The Pope told the driver to stop because he wanted to get out.
A : He'd seen someone in the crowd and he wanted to get out.
B : He wanted to get out because he'd seen someone in the crowd.
C : He wanted to get out because he'd seen someone in the crowd.

Now you do the same

The Pope wanted to get out so he told the driver to stop
.....The Pope told the driver to stop because he wanted to get out.
He'd seen someone in the crowd and he wanted to get out
.....He wanted to get out because he'd seen someone in the crowd.
He'd seen a woman in a wheelchair and he wanted to get out
.....He wanted to get out because he'd seen a woman in a wheelchair.
The Pope kissed her and she was very happy.....She was very happy because the Pope kissed her.

B2 Listen

A : Wasn't that a bit dangerous?
B : I'm sure it was.
C : I'm sure it was.
A : Didn't he take a risk ?
B : I'm sure he did.
C : I'm sure he did.

Now you do the same

Wasn't that a bit dangerous ?.....I'm sure it was.
Didn't he take a risk ?.....I'm sure he did.
Weren't the guards worried ?.....I'm sure they were.
Isn't that a bit foolish ?.....I'm sure it is.

B3 Listen

A : It was dangerous. He got out of the car, nevertheless.
B : Although it was dangerous, he got out of the car.
C : Although it was dangerous, he got out of the car.
A : The security guards were worried. He took the risk, nevertheless.
B : Although the security guards were worried, he took the risk.
C : Although the security guards were worried, he took the risk.

Now you do the same

It was dangerous. He got out of the car, nevertheless
.....Although it was dangerous, he got out of the car.
The security guards were worried. He took the risk,
nevertheless .....Although the security guards were worried, he took the risk.
He'd been shot once. He mixed with the crowd, nevertheless
.....Although he'd been shot once, he mixed with the crowd.
The warned him to stay in the car. He got out, nevertheless
.....Although they warned him to stay in the car, he got out.

Dialogue C

Listen

Patrick He was really great.
Kate The people must have been pleased.
Patrick Oh, yes. They all rushed forward. The policemen were holding hands to keep them back but they had a hard job.
Kate What did he say to people ?
Patrick Oh, I don't know. I was too far away. But I saw him smiling and kissing babies. He kissed not only the babies but the parents too !
Listen and repeat

C1 Listen

A : The policemen were holding hands. They wanted to keep the crowd back.
B : The policemen were holding hands to keep the crowd back.
C : The policemen were holding hands to keep the crowd back.
A : He left the car. He wanted to mix with people.
B : He left the car to mix with the people.
C : He left the car to mix with the people.

Now you do the same

The policemen were holding hands. They wanted to keep the crowd back.....The policemen were holding hands to keep the crowd back.
He left the car. He wanted to mix with the people.....
He left the car to mix with the people.
People rushed forward. They wanted to shake his hand.....
People rushed forward to shake his hand.
A little girl ran out. She wanted to give him some flowers.....
A little girl ran out to give him some flowers.

C2 Listen

A : He kissed the babies *and* the parents.
B : He kissed not only the babies but the parents too.
C : He kissed not only the babies but the parents too.
A : He spoke English *and* Polish.
B : He spoke not only English but Polish too.
C : He spoke not only English but Polish too.

Now you do the same

He kissed the babies *and* the parents..... He kissed not only the babies but the parents too.
He spoke English *and* Polish..... He spoke not only English but Polish too.
He stopped the car *and* he got out..... He not only stopped the car but he got out too.
People saw the Pope *and* touched him ..... People not only saw the Pope but touched him too.

Listening

Listen carefully to the traffic news and answer the questions when you hear this sound BELL

1

Long delays can be expected today on the M6 motorway near Preston between junctions 29 and 30. The northbound carriageway is closed because of resurfacing work. Drivers travelling north should leave the motorway at junction 29, follow the A6 to Preston and rejoin the motorway at junction 31.

BELL

What can drivers expect on the M6 today ? .....
They can expect long delays.
Why is one carriageway closed ?.....
Because of resurfacing work.
Which drivers should leave the motorway ?.....
Drivers travelling north.
Where should they rejoin the motorway ?.....
At junction 31.

2

British Rail have announced that many trains will not be running today due to a one-day strike by some train drivers. The southern region will be the worst affected and some trains have been cancelled already. Passengers should check with British Rail before setting out on their journeys.

BELL

How long will the strike last ?..... It'll last one day.
What has happened already ?..... Some trains have been cancelled.
When should passengers check with British Rail ?.....
Before setting out on their journeys.

3

Many roads in central London will be closed today between noon and 5 pm. Thousands of people are expected at the peace rally in Trafalgar Square where they will listen to speeches and then march to Hyde Park. Drivers should try to avoid the area if they possibly can.

BELL

When will the roads be closed ?.....
They'll be closed between noon and 5 pm.
What is the rally for ?..... It's for peace.
What should drivers do ?..... They should try to avoid the area if they possibly can.

4

People travelling to the continent by ferry today can expect long delays at the ports. The delays are due to rough seas in the English channel and some cancellations can be expected. Weathermen say that the bad weather, high winds and heavy rain, will continue for the next two or three days.

BELL

Which travellers can expect delays ?
..... People travelling to the continent by ferry.
What are the delays due to ?
..... The delays are due to rough seas.

Open conversation

Listen and reply

A : Can you direct me to the nearest post office please ?
B : .....
A : Where can I get a drink of water please ?
B : .....
A : Where's the nearest telephone please ?
B : .....
A : How would I get a taxi from here ?
B : .....
A : Where's the nearest toilet please ?
B : .....
A : Do you know if there's a hotel near here ?
B : .....
A : That's the end of section fifteen.

LEARNING POINTS from Units 41-60

Unit 41 : Guided discussion

Unit 42 : Wishes

I wish	I	was there
		wasn't here
		was working there
		wasn't working here
		had a car
		didn't have to do it
I wish	I	could do it
		'd done it
		had done it
		hadn't done it
		worked there
		didn't work here.

Unit 43 :

1. Expressing regret.
   I wish they had / hadn't done it.
   If I'd (done this), (that) would have happened.
   I'm sorry (it happened)
   I regret (it) / (doing it)
   My only regret is...
2. Expressing opinions about past experiences

Unit 44 :

1. Listening
2. Wishes
   What would you wish for ?
   If you could make a wish, what would it be ?
   I'd wish for peace / health / fame / happiness / good luck / a long life.

Unit 45 :

1. Defining relative clauses.

He She It That	is the one	who that which that	does did	it.
Those They	are the ones	who that which	do did	it.

He's She's It's	the one.		him. her. it.
They're	the ones	I saw	them.
He's She's It's	the one I saw.		
They're	the ones I saw.		

Unit 46 : Relative clauses with *where* and *whose*.
He went to Scotland, *where* he did this.
This is *where* it happened.
He was looking for someone *whose* uniform he could steal.
A girl, *whose* hands were tied, was lying beside him.

Unit 47 :

1. Revision of defining relative clauses introduced by *who / which / where / whose / when*.
2. You have two minutes *in which* to answer the questions.

Unit 48 : Non – defining relative clauses.

- Robert Gibbs, who escaped from prison, has been recaptured.
- A three year old block of flats, which cost £10 million, is going to be demolished.
- Jim Miles, the racing driver, whose legs were badly injured in last year's Grand Prix crash, will never race again.

Unit 49 :

1. Formal correspondence.
2. Use of relatives in formal, written style.

to / for / from on / in / about of / all of	which whom

3. Defining relatives

He was the man I spoke to
He was the man who I spoke to
He was the man that I spoke to
} (spoken and informal written style)

He was the man to whom I spoke. (formal written)

4. Non – defining relatives.
   Mr Lazenby, to whom I addressed it, replied in a most unsatisfactory way (formal)
   Mr Lazenby, who I addressed it to, replied in a most unsatisfactory way. (informal)

Unit 50 :
Review of relative clauses, introduced by *who, which, that, whose, whom*.

Unit 51 :

1. Describing things.
2. Ordering of adjectives.

Unit 52 :

1. Describing people.
2. Listening

Unit 53 :

1. Purpose : expressed by the infinitive
   He did this to do that.
   He sent sb to do that.
   Expressed by "*so as to / in order to*" (more formal)
   He did this *so as to / in order to* do that.
   So as to / In order to do that, he did this.

Unit 54 :
Expressing purpose with *so that*.
I did this *so that* he could do that.
So that he can do that, I am doing this.

Unit 55 :

1. Expressing negative purpose.
   Do this so as / in order not to do that.

Do this to / so as to / in order to avoid that / doing that.
Do this to prevent that / st from happening / sb from doing that.

2. Asking what st means in a foreign language
How do you say this in... ?
Can you translate this into... ?
What does that mean in... ?

Unit 56 :

Result clauses with *so... that, such... that*
The house was *so* beautiful *that* they bought it.
It was *such* a beautiful house *that* they bought it.
He had *so much* work / *so many* problems that he couldn't sleep at night.
He had *such a lot of work* / *so many problems* that he couldn't sleep at night.

Unit 57 :

1. Use of *with* in place of Relative clause.
There was a lounge { *which had a dance floor.* / *with a dance floor.*
(See Unit 36).
2. They heard him. He was screaming.
They heard him screaming. (see Unit 37)
3. many / some / half / thirteen of whom...
4. Purpose expressed by the infinitive.

Unit 58 :

1. Clauses of reason, introduced by *because.*
It was raining. He took his umbrella.
He took his umbrella *because* it was raining.
2. Clauses of contrast, introduced by *although / even though / though.*
Although / though / Even though it wasn't raining, he took his umbrella.
3. Clauses of reason, introduced by *as.*
I chose the house wine, *as* this is often the best way to judge a restaurant's wine list.

Unit 59 :

1. Asking for, giving and following directions.
2. Not only... but also.

Unit 60 :

1. Expressing reason and contrast.
2. due to
The explosion was *due to* leaking gas.
The closure is *due to* a sharp decline in orders.

TEST 3 UNITS 41 – 60

SECTION 1

Put a ring around the best word or phrase to complete the sentence.

1. Would you like cream in your coffee ? No thanks I'm (*in / for / under / on*) a diet.
2. Car prices have just gone down. He now regrets (*to buy / buying / buy / bought*) a new car.
3. The sun is very bright. I wish I (*would bring / brought / will bring / had brought*) my sunglasses.
4. If he (*had / would have / would / had have*) worked harder, he would have passed the exams.
5. If you could make a wish, what (*will / would / do / did*) you wish for ?
6. She opened the box (*seeing / see / to see / saw*) what was inside.
7. He's buying a bicycle (*in order to / so as so / that / so that*) he won't have to walk to work.
8. They bought a big dog to prevent people from (*coming / come / to come / will come*) into the garden.
9. He crossed the street to avoid (*walking / to walk / walk /- *) under a ladder.
10. It was (*very / so / too / such*) a beautiful garden that they took a photograph.
11. The football match was (*such / too / so / very*) exciting that nobody wanted it to end.
12. They were both out of town so often that they hardly (*ever / seldom / never / rarely*) saw each other.
13. She had to walk (*because of / because / for / however*) her car wouldn't start.
14. He spoke not only French but (*also / not / too / neither*) Russian.
15. Everybody stayed near the fire (*because / when / for / because of*) the cold.
16. (*Nevertheless / Although / In spite of / Despite*) he didn't have any money in the bank, he signed the cheque.
17. The homework was very difficult. (*In spite / Because / Although / Nevertheless*) she managed to do it.
18. Why are you talking to yourself ? If you don't mind me (*question / ask / asking / to ask*).
19. The floods were (*due to / because / despite / of*) heavy rainfall in the mountains.
20 I took traveller's cheques (*so / then / although / as*) this is the safest way of carrying money.

Mark : Out of : 20.

SECTION 2

Change the following sentences into the passive.

Example
We find oil beneath the North Sea.
Oil is found beneath the North Sea.

1. People sometimes refer to oil as 'black gold'.
.....
2. We have to invest billions of pounds before

one barrel of oil comes to the surface.
.....
3. They first discovered oil beneath the North Sea in the 1960s. .....
4. They are still sinking new oil wells.
.....
5. They had found small quantities of oil on land. .....
6. We have already exported vast quantities of oil. .....
7. Experts believe that we will have used most of our oil by the year 2000. .....
8. We will need to find alternative sources of energy. .....
9. We may see energy from the sun and the seas. .....
10. We need to do a lot of research.
.....

Mark : Out of : 10.

SECTION 3

Example

What do you do for a living ? *I'm a student.*

He asked her what she did for a living and she said she was a student.

Now change the following pairs of sentences into reported speech.

1. What are you studying ? *I'm studying English*
.....
2. How long have you been studying English ? *I started about five years ago.* .....
.....
3. Do you speak it well ? *I understand more than I can speak.* .....
4. Have you thought about going to England ? *I was there last year.* .....
5. Why did you decide to study English ? *I think it will be useful.* .....

Mark : Out : 10

SECTION 4

Example

He thanked her for her kindness.

The actual words used might have been :

'Thank you for being so kind'.

or *'Thank you. It's very kind of you'.*

or *'You're so kind. Thank you very much.'*

or something else.

What do you think were the actual words in the sentences below ?

1. He denied going through a red light
.....
2. She apologized for not telephoning
.....
3. He agreed to do it. .....
4. He complimented her on her cooking
.....
5. She suggested going for a walk.
.....

Mark : Out of : 5.

SECTION 5

Read these sentences carefully and complete the spaces.

1. Mr Thompson's phone's busy. Could you .....a minute ?
2. Goodbye and thanks ..... everything.
3. I owe all my success .....you.
4. I wouldn't try to do it. I'm not very good .....my hands.
5. Let's go for a drink. The train won't be here for an hour .....least.
6. Can you walk more slowly ? I'm out .....breath.
7. I know it's difficult but there's no harm .....trying.
8. I haven't got a car. Can you pick me .....at eight o'clock.
9. Even though they were tired, they kept .....going.
10. Goodbye. Have a safe journey. And remember. Keep .....touch.

Mark : Out of : 5

TOTAL MARKS :

Section 1 .....

Section 2 .....

Section 3 .....

Section 4 .....

Section 5 .....

TOTAL .....x 2 = ...%

Unit 61 All The Good News

Tất cả những tin tốt lành

VOCABULARY

- **auction** *(v)* /ɔ:kʃn/ sell st by auction = bán đấu giá

  auction *(n)* 1. method of selling things in which each item is sold to the person who offers the most money for it = phương pháp bán đấu giá 2. instance of this = phiên bán đấu giá

  It should fetch (ie be sold for) £100.000 at ~.

  auctioneer *(n)* /ɔ:kʃə'niə/ person whose job is conducting auctions = người, công ty bán đấu giá
- **award** *(v)* /ə'wɔ:d/ ~ st (to sb) make an official decision to give st to sb as a prize, as payment or as a punishment = thưởng, ban tặng.

  She was ~ ed a medal for bravery.

  award *(n)* = phần thưởng, sự khen thưởng.

  She showed us the athletics ~ s she had won.
- **balcony rail** *(n)* /'bælkəni reil/ tay vịn lan can
- **breeder** *(n)* /'bri:də/ person who breeds animals = người nuôi thú.

  a dog, horse, cattle ~.
- **bus shelter** *(n)* /'bʌs ʃeltə/ structure at a bus ~ stop providing shelter for people waiting for a bus = chỗ đợi xe buýt
- **caretaker** *(n)* /'keəteikə/ (Brit) (US **janitor**) person who is employed to look after a house, a building = người phụ trách trông nom nhà cửa *the school ~.*
- **cereal** *(n)* /'siəriəl/ ngũ cốc
- **chunk** *(n)* /tʃʌŋk/ (infml) fairly large amount (of st) = khối lượng *I've completed a fair ~ of my article.*
- **conduct** *(v)* /kən'dʌkt/ direct st, manage, control = tiến hành ~ *business, a meeting, negotiations.*
- **congenital** *(adj)* /kən'dʒenitl/ (of diseases, etc) present from or before birth = bẩm sinh ~ *defects, blindness.*
- **death rate** *(n)* /deθ reit/ tỉ lệ tử vong
- **decade** *(n)* /'dekeid/ period of ten years. *the first ~ of the 20 th century = 1900 - 1909.*
- **disrupt** *(v)* /dis'rʌpt/ cause disorder in (st) = đập vỡ, phá vỡ *Demonstrators succeeded in ~ ing the meeting.*

  disruption *(n)* *~ s of our production schedule.*
- **emerge** *(v)* /i'mɜ:dʒ/ come into view or prominence = đập vỡ, phá vỡ

  He ~ d as leader at the age of thirty
- **enable** *(v)* /i'neibl/ make st possible = khiến cho *The conference will ~ greater international co-operation.*
- **exhibit** *(v)* /ig'zibit/ triển lãm
- **exhorbitant** *(adj)* /ig'zɔ:bitənt/ (of a price, charge, etc) much too high, great; unreasonable = quá cao, cắt cổ

  ~ rent ; the price of goods here is ~.
- **gashed** *(adj)* /gæʃt/ bị đứt dài và sâu.
- **gurgle** *(v)* /'gɜ:gl/ make bubbling sound like water flowing from a narrow ~ necked bottle (esp that made by baby when happy) riu rít, oa oa. *The baby was gurgling happily.*
- **harvest** *(n)* /'hɑ:vist/ cutting and gathering of grain and other food crops = vụ thu hoạch.

  Farmers are very busy during (the) ~.
- **heart defect** *(n)* /hɑ:t 'di-, di'fekt/ khuyết tật tim
- **mount** *(v)* /maunt/ ~ sb (on / around st) place sb on guard = làm nhiệm vụ canh gác

  ~ sentries on a wall, round a place.
- **ordain** *(v)* /ɔ:'dein/ make (sb) a priest or minister = làm lễ tấn phong *He was ~ ed priest last year.*
- **piranha** *(n)* /pi'rɑ:njə/ cá nước ngọt ở Châu Mỹ nhiệt đới
- **plough** *(v)* /plau/ cày
- **ransom** *(n)* /'rænsəm/ money paid for releasing captive = tiền chuộc *The kidnappers demanded a ~ of £10000 for his release.*
- **recession** *(n)* /ri'seʃn/ temporary decline in economic activity or prosperity = sự suy thoái *an industrial, a trade ~.*
- **registry office** *(n)* /'redʒistri,ɒfis/ (also **register office**) place where civil marriages are performed before a registrar, and where records of births, marriages and deaths are made = phòng đăng ký (khai sinh, hôn nhân,...)
- **restrain** *(v)* /ris'trein/ ~ sb, st (from st / doing st) hold back sb / st from movement or action = ngăn giữ, dằn lại

~ one's anger, laughter, tears.

- **schedule** *(n)* /'ʃedju:l/ timetable = thời khóa biểu *The fog disrupted airline ~ s.*
- **seedling** *(n)* /'si:dliŋ/ young plant newly grown from a seed = cây con
- **sow** *(v)* /səu/ (pt **sowed**, pp **sown** /saun/ or **sowed**) put or scatter (seed) in or on the ground = gieo hạt *~ grass; ~ a plot of land with grass.*
- **trade fair** *(n)* /treid feə/ hội chợ thương mại
- **trail** *(v)* /treil/ (cause st to) be dragged behind = kéo lê *I ~ ed my hand in the water as the boat drifted along*
- **treacherous** *(adj)* /'tretʃərəs/ behaving with or showing treachery = đối trá, hư đốn, phụ bạc
  treachery *(n)* /'tretʃəri/ sự phụ bạc
  underhand ~ = sự phản bội ngấm ngầm
- **treatment** *(n)* /'tri:tmənt/ thing done to relieve or cure an illness or a defect = sự điều trị *a new ~ for cancer.*
- **tropical** *(adj)* /'trɒpikl/ like or found in the tropics = thuộc miền nhiệt đới *~ fruit, a ~ climate.*
- **undreamed of** *(adj)* /ʌn'dri:md əv/ không mơ tưởng tới

EXPRESSIONS

double the number gấp đôi, con số nhiều gấp đôi
without incident không có gì bất thường
telling the right time chỉ giờ chính xác
with the minimum effort ít tốn sức
No news is good news không có tin có nghĩa là tin lành

PROPER NAMES

Canterbury	/'kæntəbəri/
Liz Beal	/liz 'bi:l/
Parliament	/'pa:ləmənt/
Peking	/pi:'kiŋ/
Rugby league	/'rʌgbi 'li:g/
Thames	/temz/
Wightman	/'waitmən/

USAGE

1/ For a change (để thay đổi một chút)
EX : We have worked hard for many years, why don't we go for a tour around the world this year, *for a change ?*
- To ring the changes on a subject : Lặp đi lặp lại một đề tài dưới nhiều cách khác nhau.

EX : There's nothing new with this lecturer : he can't do anything at all but *rings the good changes* on a problem.

2/ "The busiest international terminal" Sân bay quốc tế nhộn nhịp nhất.
"The second busiest international". Sân bay quốc tế nhộn nhịp đứng vào hạng hai.
"The third (fourth...) busiest international terminal": Sân bay quốc tế nhộn nhịp vào hạng thứ 3,(4...
[The + second/third... + superlative + noun]
EX : *The second* tallest boy in class : cậu trai cao hạng nhì lớp
- *The third most* beautiful girl in town : cô gái đẹp hạng ba tỉnh

3/ To enable s/o to do something : giúp tạo điều kiện cho ai làm gì
EX : I do not promise, but I will try to do anything possible to *enable* you to get the business licence in the shortest time.

4/ To bring in (thu hoạch, mang lại... đưa vào)
bring about (gây ra, làm xảy ra)
bring up (nuôi dưỡng, giáo dục)
bring something into action/effect/ into operation/play (thực hiện, thi hành cái gì) (đưa cái gì vào hoạt động)
EX : Girls like him very much : he's the one who first *brought in* that new hair fashion.
The problem now is how soon this machinery could be *brought into* operation.

Our news present to Charles

Prince Charles, speaking at a Press Awards lunch, once asked why newspapers only printed the bad news. 'Why don't they, for a change, tell us how many jumbo jets landed safely at Heathrow Airport ?' Later the same year a leading British newspaper published a column of 'good news' as a birthday present for Prince Charles. Here are some of the news items.

* Last week 330 jumbo jets landed or took off without incident at Heathrow, the world's leading international airport, with 20 million international passengers, which is double the number at New York's Kennedy Airport, the world's second busiest international terminal.

* Approximately 12,200 happy, gurgling babies were delivered to British mothers last week.

* 92 per cent of the first class mail was also delivered on time.

* The government received its first chunk of petroleum revenue tax last week - £176 million from BP's successful 'Forties' oil-field. The first oil from the Ninian group of oil-fields was moving through the pipeline towards its terminal in the Shetland Islands, part of the riches undreamed of a decade ago of 1,100,000 barrels a day from North Sea oil.

* The battle to clean up the River Thames is being won. Species of fish, which even ten years ago could not have survived in the polluted water, are being caught in increasing numbers.

* About 6,500 couples emerged happily from churches and registry offices.

* Last week was 'National Tree Planting Week'. Thousands of seedlings were planted.

* British Rail carried two million passengers each working day with 88 per cent of express trains arriving within ten minutes of schedule.

* Canterbury Cathedral was conducting services in its 798th year.

(*) BP : British Petroleum

Tin vui làm quà cho Charles

Phát biểu tại một buổi tiệc trao giải thưởng báo chí, hoàng tử Charles có lần đặt câu hỏi tại sao báo chí chỉ loan những tin xấu. "Để thay đổi tại sao báo chí không cho chúng ta biết có bao nhiêu phản lực chở khách đã hạ cánh an toàn ở phi trường HEATHROW chẳng hạn ?". Sau này cũng trong năm đó một tờ báo hàng đầu của Anh cho đăng một mục "Tin vui" làm quà sinh nhật cho hoàng tử Charles. Dưới đây là một vài tin.

* Tuần trước 330 phản lực khổng lồ đã hạ cánh hoặc cất cánh mà không có sự cố gì ở Heathrow, phi trường quốc tế hàng đầu của thế giới, với 20 triệu hành khách quốc tế, gấp đôi số hành khách ở phi trường Kennedy ở New York, phi trường quốc tế rộn rịp vào hàng thứ hai của thế giới.

* Khoảng 12.200 bé sơ sinh khóc oe oe chào đời, hạnh phúc trong vòng tay của các bà mẹ Anh tuần trước.

* 92% thư gửi gấp cũng được chuyển giao đúng thời hạn.

* Tuần trước chính phủ đã thu được khoản thuế xăng dầu tiên – 176 triệu pounds từ vỉa dầu "Forties" có sản lượng cao của công ty xăng dầu Anh (*). Lượng dầu đầu tiên từ các mỏ thuộc nhóm Ninian đang chảy qua ống dẫn dầu về bồn chứa ở quần đảo Shetland, 1 triệu 1 trăm ngàn thùng dầu mỗi ngày từ Biển Bắc, một phần tài sản mà cách đây một thập niên người ta không hề mơ tới.

* Cuộc chiến nhằm làm sạch sông Thames đang tiến dần đến thắng lợi. Các giống cá cách đây 10 năm cũng không thể nào tồn tại được trong vùng nước ô nhiễm như thế, thì nay đã được đánh bắt với số lượng ngày càng lớn.

* Khoảng 6.500 đôi uyên ương đã vui vẻ bước ra khỏi giáo đường và phòng hộ tịch.

* Tuần trước là "Tuần Trồng Cây Quốc Gia". Người ta đã trồng hàng ngàn cây giống.

* Mỗi ngày ngành Hỏa Xa Anh Quốc đã chở 2 triệu hành khách với 88% xe lửa tốc hành đến đúng giờ chỉ xê xích khoảng 10 phút.

* Nhà thờ Canterbury cử hành lễ vào năm thứ 798 của nó.

* At the Houses of Parliament, where Big Ben was telling the right time, the House of Commons resumed its 306th Parliament since 1213.

* Tại Quốc hội, nơi có đồng hồ Big Ben báo giờ chính xác, Hạ viện tiếp tục phiên họp thứ 306 kể từ năm 1213.

* Britain's ladies won the Wightman Cup tennis tournament.

* Phụ nữ Anh đã thắng ở giải quần vợt Cúp Wightman.

* Two women clerks won equal pay for 14,000 young women at Lloyds Bank.

* Hai nữ nhân viên đã đòi được mức lương bằng nam giới cho 14.000 cô gái ở ngân hàng Lloyds.

* Despite the example of the Church of England, which is still refusing to ordain women priests, Liz Beal, aged 13, won permission to play Rugby League Football.

* Mặc dù Giáo hội Anh Quốc vẫn đang từ chối không cho phụ nữ thụ phong chức Linh mục, cô Liz Beal, 13 tuổi đã dành được quyền chơi trong Liên Đoàn Bóng Rugby (Bầu dục).

* Five children at the Great Ormond Street Hospital for Sick Children were successfully operated on for congenital heart defects – some of the 2,000 babies now benefiting from the treatment each year.

* 5 em bé ở bệnh viện đường Great Ormond, dành cho trẻ em bị bệnh, vừa được mổ thành công dị tật tim bẩm sinh – Một số trong 2.000 cháu cũng được hưởng quyền lợi chữa trị theo phương pháp này mỗi năm.

* Britain's gold and currency reserves amounted to £15,977 million, and this year we have repaid foreign loans to the value of £3,500 million.

* Trữ lượng vàng và tiền tệ của Anh Quốc đã lên tới 15.977 triệu pounds, và năm nay chúng ta đã trả nợ nước ngoài 3.500 triệu pounds.

* Sotheby's, the auctioneers, auctioned a cello for a record £144,000.

* Công ty bán đấu giá vừa mới bán được một chiếc đàn viô-lông-xen với giá kỷ lục : 144.000 pounds.

* By the end of this year, 30,000 home students will have been awarded degrees by the Open University, which operates through post, television, radio, and short summer courses to enable people to get a university degree at home.

* Khoảng cuối năm nay 30.000 sinh viên học tại gia sẽ được Đại học mở rộng cấp bằng. Trường hoạt động thông qua thư tín, truyền hình, truyền thanh và các khóa hè ngắn hạn để giúp người ta có thể lấy bằng đại học mà khỏi phải đến trường.

* Bovis, the construction company, won a £15 million contract to build three schools in Saudi Arabia. 47 British companies were exhibiting at a trade fair in Peking, and over 200 at a trade fair in Mexico City.

* Công ty xây dựng Bovis đã thắng hợp đồng trị giá 15 triệu pounds nhằm xây dựng 3 trường học ở Ả Rập Saudi, 47 Công ty Anh Quốc đang triển lãm ở một hội chợ thương mại tại Bắc Kinh và trên 200 công ty triển lãm ở một hội chợ thương mại tại Mexico City.

* Even farmers were smiling last week. At the beginning of the good weather they were able to bring in a record cereal harvest with the minimum effort. Since then, there has been no rain and autumn ploughing and sowing is going wonderfully well.

* Tuần trước ngay cả nhà nông cũng phải mỉm cười. Nhờ thời tiết tốt vào đầu vụ mùa, họ đã có thể thu hoạch được một vụ ngũ cốc kỷ lục với cố gắng tối thiểu. Từ lúc đó trở đi trời không mưa và việc cày cấy, gieo trồng mùa thu được tiến hành hết sức thuận lợi.

PS : The death rate from suicide is going down.

T.B : Số người chết do tự tử đang giảm dần.

Exercise 1

Find words in the text which mean :

1 A period of ten years.
2 A place where people can marry without a religious ceremony.
3 A young newly grown tree.
4 A programme of pre-arranged times.
5 A contest of skill between a number of players.
6 Groups of animals or plants (which are able to breed together).
7 A formal legal agreement.
8 Firms which sell goods at a public sale to the person who offers most money.
9 The collection of fruit, grain or vegetables made by a farmer.
10 A standard measurement for oil.

Exercise 2

Find expressions which mean :

1 twice as many as
2 with no unusual occurrences
3 showing the time correctly
4 with as little work as possible

Exercise 3

There are five examples of the use of 'to win'. What are they ?

Discussion points

"When a dog bites a man, that is not news, but when a man bites a dog that is news."

"No news is good news."

What do you think these sayings mean ? Discuss.
Prince Charles said that newspapers always print the bad news. Is that true ?
Why do you think newspapers might concentrate on 'bad' news ?
Would you buy a newspaper which only reported 'good' news ? Why ? Why not ?
Did you hear the news yesterday ?
What was it ? Was it all bad ?
Give some examples of 'good' news.

Khi chó cắn người, đó không phải là tin, nhưng khi người cắn chó, đó mới là tin".

"Không có tin có nghĩa là tin lành."

Theo bạn những câu nói này có ý nghĩa gì ? Thảo luận.
Hoàng tử Charles nói rằng báo chí luôn luôn loan những tin xấu. Điều đó đúng không ?
Theo bạn tại sao báo chí lại chỉ tập trung vào những tin "xấu" ?
Bạn có mua một tờ báo chỉ đưa toàn tin "tốt lành" ? Tại sao ?
Bạn có nghe bản tin ngày hôm qua không ? Tin gì ? Có toàn là những tin xấu không ?
Cho một số ví dụ về tin "tốt lành"

PRACTICE

Exercise 1

Find words in the text which mean :

1 help
2 restrain by using greater strength
3 injure, using fingernails

Bài tập 1

Tìm từ trong bài khóa có nghĩa là :

4 took away a weapon
5 someone who looks after a building
6 much too highly priced

The Times Monday 1st December 1981

Woman of 93 hit cabbie with her walking stick

Miami, Nov 30. – A 93-year-old woman was jailed here for a night on a charge of armed robbery after she refused to pay what she considered an exorbitant taxi fare, then hit the driver with her walking stick and fought police who came to his aid.

Johanna Briscoe refused to pay the $10 (about £5) fare on Friday. When the taxi-driver protested, she hit him with her walking stick.

When the caretakers of the flats where she lives came to his aid, she attacked them too. Two policeman who came to investigate were kicked, scratched and hit with the stick.

After finally overpowering the woman, they charged her with armed robbery and resisting arrest, 'disarmed' her and took her off to prison.

Back at home, she was reported to have recovered with the aid of a large whisky and orange juice. – AFP.

Báo Times Thứ Hai, 1 tháng 12 1981.

Bà Lão 93 tuổi đánh anh tài xế taxi bằng cây gậy.

Miami, ngày 30 tháng 11. Một bà lão 93 tuổi bị giam ở đây một đêm về tội tấn công bằng vũ lực sau khi bà không chịu trả tiền xe taxi mà bà cho là quá cắt cổ, rồi bà đánh anh tài xế bằng cây gậy của bà và đánh cả cảnh sát đến cứu anh.

Johanna Briscoe không chịu trả 10 đô la (khoảng 5 pounds) tiền xe vào hôm thứ sáu. Khi anh tài xế taxi phản đối, bà dùng gậy của bà đánh anh ta.

Khi những người phụ trách nhà cửa nơi bà ở đến cứu anh ta, bà cũng tấn công họ. Hai viên cảnh sát đến điều tra sự việc cũng bị đá, cào cấu và bị đánh bằng gậy.

Cuối cùng, sau khi áp đảo được bà lão họ buộc tội bà ăn cướp có vũ khí và chống cự, "tước vũ khí" của bà và đưa bà vào tù.

Sau khi về nhà, người ta thuật lại là bà đã hồi phục sức khỏe bằng sự trợ lực của chai rượu wiski lớn và nước cam. AFP.

Exercise 2

First they overpowered the woman. Then they charged her with armed robbery.

After overpowering the woman, they charged her with armed robbery.

1 First she refused to pay the fare. Then she hit the driver. . . . . .

. . . . . .

Bài tập 2

Trước tiên họ áp đảo bà lão. Rồi họ buộc tội bà cướp có vũ khí.

Sau khi áp đảo được bà lão, họ buộc tội bà cướp có vũ khí.

2 First she hit the driver. Then she fought the police who came to his aid.

. . . . . .

3 First she got home. Then she had a large whisky. . . . . .

. . . . . .

Daily Mail 5th Nov. 1980

Piranha bites a baby's hand

A FAMILY'S pet piranha fish was up for sale last night after it took a bite at their baby daughter.

The 15-inch long, flesh-eating fish named Jaws leapt clear of its tank and bit Catherine Pellegrine's finger as she trailed her hand near the water.

Her horrified mother Margaret, 36, said : 'I was shaking with fear afterwards. I just want it out of the house.'

Piranha cắn tay của một em bé.

Con cá nước ngọt rất được yêu thương của một gia đình đã bị rao bán tối hôm qua sau khi nó cắn đứa con gái nhỏ của họ.

Con cá ăn thịt dài 15 inso có tên gọi là Jaws nhảy chồm lên bồn cắn ngón tay của Catherine Pellegrine khi bé kéo lê bàn tay gần nước. Bà mẹ 36 tuổi của bé tên là Margaret, hoảng hốt nói: "Tôi sợ run lên sau đó. Tôi chỉ muốn tống nó ngay ra khỏi nhà."

Mrs Pellegrine's 40-year-old husband Frank, a keen tropical fish breeder, bought the fish 10 months ago for £10.50.

After the attack 17-month-old Catherine was left with a badly gashed finger. The fish simply dropped back into its tank which stands in the family's lounge at their home in Rotherham, South Yorkshire.

Ông chồng 40 tuổi của bà Pellegrine tên Frank, một người rất say mê nuôi cá miền nhiệt đới đã mua con cá này về cách đây 10 tháng với giá 10,50 pounds.

Em bé Catherine 17 tháng tuổi sau khi bị con cá đớp, ngón tay em bị đứt thật dài và sâu. Con cá chỉ việc thụt lại vào bồn đặt ở phòng khách tại nhà của gia đình ở Rotherham, miền nam Yorkshire.

Exercise 3

Read the passage and complete these sentences in your own words.

1 The fish was so dangerous that . . . . . .

2 It bit her finger while she was . . . . . .

3 Her mother was so terrified that . . . . . .

Bài tập 3

Đọc đoạn văn và hoàn thành các câu sau đây bằng từ của bạn.

4 Frank's hobby is . . . . . .

5 The piranha's teeth were so sharp that . . . . . .

6 The fish was kept in . . . . . .

Exercise 4

A man who is 40 years old is a 40-year-old man.

Continue.

1 A contract which is worth 15 million pounds is a . . . . . .

2 A suit which costs 200 dollars is . . . . . .

3 A journey which takes 2 hours is . . . . . .

4 A working week of 38 hours is . . . . . .

Bài tập 4

Người 40 tuổi là "a 40-year-old man".

Hãy tiếp tục.

5 A lesson of 50 minutes is . . . . . .

6 A fish which is 15 inches long is . . . . . .

7 A bag of potatoes which weighs 5 kilos is . . . . . .

8 A tank which holds 52 litres is . . . . . .

PROVERBS :

- Call a spade a spade = Nói gần nói xa chẳng qua nói thật.
- Eastor West - home is best = Ta về ta tắm ao ta, dù trong dù đục ao nhà vẫn hơn.
- Every man has his faults = Nhân vô thập toàn.
- Evil communications corrupt good manners = Gần mực thì đen, gần đèn thì sáng.
- Many men, many minds = Chín người, mười ý

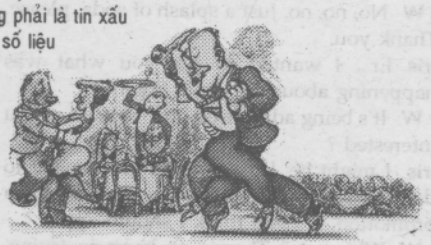
Unit 62 The Annual Dinner And Dance
Buổi tiệc và khiêu vũ hàng năm

VOCABULARY

- **flirt** *(v)* /flɜ:t/ ~ (with sb) behave (towards sb) in a romantic or suggestive way but without serious intentions = lả lơi. *It's embarrassing when they ~ like that in public.*
- **flying saucer** *(n)* /ˌflaɪɪŋ 'sɔ:sə/ (also **unidentified flying object**) spacecraft, shaped like a saucer or disc, that some people claim to have seen and that is believed to have come from another planet = đĩa bay
- **home computer** *(n)* /həʊm kəm'pju:tə/ máy tính gia dụng
- **offend** *(v)* /ə'fend/ (cause sb to) feel upset and angry, hurt the feeling of (sb) = xúc phạm *She may be ~ ed if you don't reply to her invitation.*
  offender *(n)* person who offends, esp by breaking a law. *an ~ against society.*
  offence *(n)* *be charged with a serious ~.*
- **overtime working** *(n)* /'əʊvətaɪm 'wɜ:kɪŋ/ giờ làm thêm
- **pop up** *(v)* /pɒpʌp/ (infml) appear or occur, esp when not expected = xuất hiện, ghé tạt qua *He seems to ~ in the most unlikely places.*
- **promising** *(adj)* /'prɒmɪsɪŋ/ likely to do well; full of promise = đầy vẻ hứa hẹn *a ~ young pianist.*
- **splash** *(n)* /splæʃ/ (dated Brit infml) small quantity of a liquid, esp of soda – water, added to a drink = chút đỉnh, lượng nhỏ nước sô đa.
- **unrecognizable** *(adj)* /ˌʌn'rekənaɪzəbl/ that cannot be recognized = không nhận ra được
- **whisper** *(v)* /'wɪspə/ ~ st (to sb) talk or say softly, esp privately or secretly *He ~ ed a word in my ear.*
  whisper *(n)* whispering sound, speech or remark *He spoke in a ~.*

EXPRESSIONS

there's no harm in trying	cứ thử xem đâu có hại gì
pop up/in and see me	ghé tạt qua thăm tôi
There's no need to get jealous	việc gì mà phải ghen
that's got nothing to do with it	điều đó không liên quan gì đến chuyện này cả
that sounds promising	nghe có vẻ đầy hứa hẹn đấy
We don't want to talk shop	chúng ta không muốn nói về công việc
I wouldn't go out with him if he was the last man on earth.	dù ông ta là người cuối cùng trên đời này tôi cũng chẳng đời nào đi chơi với ông ta.
How did you get on ?	Anh đã tiến hành việc đó ra sao ?
Not bad news, I hope	Tôi hy vọng không phải là tin xấu
all the facts and figures	tất cả dữ kiện và số liệu
No fear !	Đừng sợ, khỏi lo
Go to hell !	Cút đi.



PROPER NAMES

Fiona Johnson	/fɪ'əʊnə 'dʒɒnsn/
Jacky	/'dʒækɪ/
Jacqueline Dibben	/ˌdʒæklɪn 'dɪbən/
Joseph Lennox	/'dʒəʊzɪf 'lenəks/
Martin	/'mɑ:tɪn/
Melanie	/'melənɪ/
Kelly	/'kelɪ/
Teresa	/tə'ri:zə/

USAGE

1/- To have (got) nothing to do with ... : **không liên quan tới**

Ex : Although we are room-mates, what he did *has nothing to do with* me.

2/- To be in charge of/to take charge of/to take something in charge

EX : He *took charge of* the trading business and I *took* financial matters *in charge*.

3/- To run into/to come across/to happen to see

EX : Looking for my pen in the drawer, I *came across* the picture that reminded me of my pretty old girlfriend.

GRAMMAR NOTES

"What + subject + verb" is one end of noun clause. Because it does the work of a noun, it can be used as

+ An object : I don't know *what I can do.*
+ A subject : *What I saw* astonished me
+ A complement : This is *what he left to me*
+ An object of preposition : I was very surprised *at what he did to her.*

In case the two subjects are the same, we can use the structure "What + to infinitive"

Ex : + Instead of "I don't know *what I do* now".
We can say "I don't know *what to do*"
+ In stead of "he could not decide what he had to say first"
We can say "he could not decide *what to say* first".

Notes : When/how/where/which can be used the same way as "what"

EX : He didn't know *where he should go / where to go.*
Find those sentences in the text which have the same structures, and make sentences with "what + subject + verb" and "what + to infinitive".

Every year, 'Continental Computers' holds an annual dinner and dance, to which all employees and their husbands and wives are invited. It is the only time of the year when all the employees get together socially.

Christopher Simpson is a young accounts clerk. He's speaking to Edward Wallis, the Chief Personnel Officer.

Chris Mr Wallis ? Can I buy you a drink ?

Mr W Oh, that's very kind of you, Christopher. I'll have a scotch, a large one.

Chris Ice ?

Mr W No, no, no. Just a splash of soda, please. Thank you.

Chris Er... I wanted to ask you what was happening about the job in Sheffield.

Mr W It's being advertised next week. Are you interested ?

Chris I might be. I really don't know what to do. I'm quite happy here, but it would be a promotion. Do you think I should apply ?

Mr W Why not ? There's no harm in trying. I'll tell you what to do. Pop up and see me on Monday, and I'll tell you what I can about the job.

Hằng năm công ty máy tính "Continental Computers" tổ chức một buổi dạ tiệc và khiêu vũ thường niên, tất cả nhân viên cùng với chồng và vợ đều được mời tham dự. Đây là dịp duy nhất trong năm khi tất cả các nhân viên có cơ hội giao tiếp với nhau.

Christopher Simpson là một nhân viên kế toán trẻ. Anh đang nói với Edward Wallis, trưởng phòng tổ chức.

Chris : Ông Wallis, tôi mời ông một ly nhé ?

Ông W : Ô, anh tốt quá Christopher. Cho tôi rượu whisky Ê-cốt, một ly lớn.

Chris : Có đá chứ ?

Ông W : Không, không, không. Chỉ thêm một ít sô đa thôi. Cám ơn.

Chris : Ơ... tôi muốn hỏi ông về công việc ở Sheffield.

Ông W : Tuần tới công việc này sẽ được đăng rao. Anh có thích không ?

Chris : Có thể. Tôi thực sự không biết phải làm gì đây. Ở chốn này rất vui. Nhưng làm việc đó cũng có nghĩa là một sự thăng tiến. Ông nghĩ là tôi có nên nộp đơn không ?

Ông W : Tại sao không ? Thử thì có hại gì đâu. Xẹt đến gặp tôi vào sáng thứ hai, và tôi sẽ cho anh biết về công việc đó.

Martin Webber is a computer programmer. He's at the dance with his wife, Melanie.

Martin Melanie, do you have to flirt with Philip every time we come to a dance ?

Melanie We were only dancing. There's no need to get jealous.

Martin I saw what he was doing ! He was whispering to you !

Melanie Oh, Martin ! You don't know what you're talking about. He had to speak into my ear because of the music ! How many drinks have you had ?

Martin Oh, come on ! That's got nothing to do with it !

Melanie Do you want to hear what he said ?

Martin I don't care what he said, I...

Melanie He was asking me what he should buy for his wife's birthday, that's all !

Martin Webber là một nhân viên thảo chương máy tính. Anh ta đang cùng với vợ là Melanie có mặt ở buổi khiêu vũ.

Martin : Melanie, em có nhất thiết phải là lơi với Philip mỗi lần chúng ta đến dự khiêu vũ như vậy hay không?

Melanie : Em và hắn chỉ nhảy với nhau thôi mà. Không cần phải ghen.

Martin : Anh thấy rõ hành động của hắn ! Hắn đã thầm thì với em !

Melanie : Ôi Martin ! Anh không biết mình đang nói cái gì. Hắn phải nói vào tai em vì tiếng nhạc ồn quá ! Anh uống bao nhiêu ly rồi ?

Martin : Này, thôi đi ! Chẳng liên quan gì đến chuyện đó cả.

Melanie : Anh muốn nghe những gì hắn nói không ?

Martin : Anh cóc cần biết hắn nói gì, anh...

Melanie : Hắn hỏi em là nên mua cái gì làm quà sinh nhật cho vợ. Thế thôi !

Jacqueline Dibben works in the Marketing Department. She's just met Fiona Johnson, who's in charge of advertising.

Fiona Ah, Jacky ! So you're back from New York.

Jacky Yes, Fiona. I've been doing market research there.

Fiona I know. How did you get on ?

Jacky Well, what I saw in the States astonished me... really ! I think there'll be a lot of demand for our new 2CL home computer.

Fiona That's very interesting.

Jacky Yes. What I heard was very encouraging. We've got just what they're looking for.

Jacqueline Dibben làm việc ở bộ phận tiếp thị. Cô vừa mới gặp Fiona Johnson, chịu trách nhiệm về quảng cáo.

Fiona : A, Jacky ! bồ đã từ New York về rồi.

Jacky : Vâng, Fiona. Mình đã nghiên cứu thị trường ở đó.

Fiona : Mình biết. Công việc như thế nào ?

Jacky : À, những điều mình thấy ở Mỹ thực là đáng ngạc nhiên ! Mình nghĩ nhu cầu đối với loại máy tính gia đình 2 CL kiểu mới của chúng ta sẽ lớn đấy.

Fiona : Thật hấp dẫn.

Jacky : Vâng. Những gì mình nghe được thật đáng khích lệ. Chúng ta có đúng những gì mà họ đang tìm.

Sir Joseph Lennox is the Managing Director. He's just run into Alex Fielding, one of the union representatives.

Sir Joseph Good evening, Mr Fielding.

Alex Good evening, Sir Joseph.

Sir Joseph Did you get my message about the meeting on Monday ?

Alex Yes, I did, but I'm still not absolutely sure what the meeting's about. Not bad news, I hope.

Ngài Joseph Lennox là giám đốc điều hành. Ông vừa mới tình cờ gặp Alex Fielding, một đại diện của Liên đoàn.

Ngài Joseph : Chào ông Fielding.

Alex : Chào ngài Joseph.

Ngài Joseph : Ông có nhận được điện của tôi về cuộc họp ngày thứ hai không ?

Alex : Có nhưng tôi vẫn không chắc lắm về nội dung cuộc họp. Hy vọng rằng không phải tin xấu.

Sir Joseph No, no. Don't worry. It's good news, in fact. What we'd like to do is expand production of the new home computer. Either we'll have to increase overtime working or take on new staff.

Alex That sounds promising. What we'll need to know is exactly how much more work will be created.

Sir Joseph I'll give you all the facts and figures on Monday. But let's forget about all that now. We don't want to talk shop all night, do we ? That's not what this evening's all about. Another drink ?

Alex Please.

Kelly's a secretary and Teresa works in the Data Processing Department.

Kelly Hey, Teresa. Wasn't that Neil Pincher you were dancing with ?

Teresa Yes. Do you know what he asked me ?

Kelly No.

Teresa He invited me out for dinner.

Kelly You're not going, are you ?

Teresa No fear ! I've heard all about him. I wouldn't go out with him if he was the last man on earth.

Kelly So what did you say ?

Teresa What I wanted to say was, 'Go to hell', but I just told him I was busy.

Look at this

I don't know *what* to do.
I'll tell you *what* I can.
What I saw astonished me.

PRACTICE

Language summary

I don't know WHAT to do.
I'll tell you WHAT I can.
WHAT I saw astonished me.
WHAT you need is a holiday.

Exercise 1

What shall I do ?
I don't know what to do.
Rewrite these sentences in the same way.

Ngài Joseph : Không, không đừng lo. Thực sự là tin tốt thôi. Những gì chúng tôi muốn làm là mở rộng sản xuất máy tính điện tử gia dụng kiểu mới. Hoặc là chúng tôi sẽ tăng thêm giờ làm việc phụ trội hoặc là sẽ phải nhận thêm nhân viên.

Alex : Nghe hấp dẫn quá. Điều chúng tôi cần biết là sẽ có thêm đích xác bao nhiêu công việc nữa.

Ngài Joseph : Vào thứ hai tôi sẽ cung cấp cho ông đầy đủ dữ kiện và con số nhưng bây giờ chúng ta hãy quên đi những chuyện đó. Chúng ta đâu có muốn lúc nào cũng nói về công việc, phải không ? Buổi tối hôm nay không phải dành cho chuyện đó. Một ly nữa nhé?

Alex : Vâng, thưa ngài.

Kelly là một thư ký, còn Teresa làm việc ở bộ phận xử lý dữ kiện.

Kelly : Ê, Teresa. Có phải lúc nãy bồ nhảy với Neil Pincher không ?

Teresa : Đúng. Bồ biết hắn yêu cầu mình chuyện gì không ?

Kelly : Không.

Teresa : Hắn mời mình đi ăn tối.

Kelly : Bồ không đi phải không ?

Teresa : Còn lâu. Mình đã nghe tất cả mọi chuyện về hắn. Nếu hắn là người đàn ông cuối cùng trên đời này thì mình cũng chẳng đi.

Kelly : Vậy bồ trả lời thế nào ?

Teresa : Mình đã định nói "Xéo đi", nhưng rồi mình chỉ bảo hắn rằng mình bận.

Bài tập 1

Tôi sẽ làm gì ?
Tôi không biết phải làm gì.
Viết lại các câu này theo cách tương tự.

1 What shall I order for lunch ? . . .
. . . . . .
2 What must I study to become a doctor? . . . . . .
3 What should I say to the President ?
. . . . . .

Exercise 2

I'll tell you everything that I can.
I'll tell you what I can.
Rewrite these sentences in the same way.

1 She answered all the questions that she could.
2 He gave them all the money that they needed.
3 They told him everything that they knew.
4 She packed all the things that she could.
5 They didn't have the things that he wanted.

Exercise 3

I saw something that astonished me.
What I saw astonished me.
Rewrite these sentences in the same way.

1 He said something that offended a lot of people.
2 She ate something that made her sick.
3 He experienced something that was unforgettable.
4 She heard something that was unbelievable.
5 They learned something that would always be useful.

Exercise 4

'What' is sometimes used for emphasis.
You need a holiday.
What you need is a holiday.
They ought to save more money.
What they ought to do is save more money.
Continue.

1 I love the way she talks. . . . . .
. . . . . .
2 I want a nice cup of tea. . . . . .
. . . . . .
3 We must work harder. . . . . .
. . . . . .
4 What shall I buy my nephew for Christmas ? . . . . . .
5 What should I put at the top of the letter ? . . . . . .
6 What should I declare at customs ?
. . . . . .

Bài tập 2

Tôi sẽ kể cho bạn nghe mọi điều tôi biết.
Tôi sẽ nói cho bạn nghe điều tôi biết được.
Viết lại các câu sau theo cách tương tự.

6 He spent all the money that he had saved.
7 She noted down all the information that was necessary.
8 He translated all the words that he knew.
9 They wrote down all the things that they could remember.
10 He stole all the things that he needed to stay alive.

Bài tập 3

Tôi trông thấy điều làm tôi rất kinh ngạc.
Điều tôi trông thấy làm tôi rất kinh ngạc.
Viết lại các câu sau theo cùng cách.

6 They offered him something to eat that was unrecognizable.
7 They gave him something that would help him to escape.
8 She said something that surprised him.
9 He saw something which looked like a flying saucer.
10 They had to do things that seemed a waste of time.

Bài tập 4

"What" đôi khi dùng để nhấn mạnh.
Bạn cần một kỳ nghỉ.
Điều bạn cần là một kỳ nghỉ.
Họ nên để dành thêm tiền.
Điều họ nên làm là để dành thêm tiền.
Hãy tiếp tục.

4 They need a warning. . . . . .
. . . . . .
5 We should practise more. . . . . .
. . . . . .
6 She needs more exercise. . . . . .
. . . . . .

Unit 63 The Apprentice

Người học nghề

VOCABULARY

- **apprentice** *(n)* /ə'prentɪs/ person who has agreed to work for a skilled employer for a fixed period in return for being taught his trade or craft = người học nghề
  apprenticeship *(n)* /-tɪʃɪp/ (time of) being an apprentice *serve an / one's ~ with a carpenter.*
- **bucket** *(n)* /'bʌkɪt/ round open container with a handle for carrying or holding liquids, sand = cái sô, cái thùng
  build sandcastles with a ~ and a spade.
- **fracture** *(v)* /'fræktʃə/ (cause st to) break or crack = (làm) bể, (làm) nứt. *Her leg ~ d in two places; suffer from a ~ d pelvis.*
  fracture *(n)* /'fræktʃə/ instance of breaking (esp a bone) *a ~ of the leg. He had several injuries, including three ~ s.*
- **left – handed** *(adj)* /,left 'hændɪd/ 1. (of a person) using the left hand more easily or usually than the right = thuận tay trái.
  2. (of a tool) designed for use with the left hand = dùng tay trái *left – handed scissors.*
- **locker** *(n)* /'lɒkə/ small cupboard, esp one of several where clothes can be kept, eg at a swimming – pool = tủ khóa
  left – luggage ~ s.
- **numbered space** *(n)* /'nʌmbəd speɪs/ chỗ có đánh số
- **oriental** *(adj)* /,ɔ:rɪ'entl/ of or from the Orient = ở phương đông, đông phương *~ art; a department of ~ studies.*
- **right – handed** *(adj)* /,raɪt 'hændɪd/ 1. (of a person) using the right hand more, or with more ease, than the left hand = thuận tay phải.
  2. (of a tool) designed for use with the right hand = dùng tay phải.
- **storeman** *(n)* /'stɔ:mən/ người chủ tiệm
- **tea – break** *(n)* /'ti:breɪk/ (Brit) (in an office, a factory, etc) short period of time when work is stopped and tea, etc may be taken = giờ nghỉ (để uống trà), giải lao
- **white spirit** *(n)* /waɪt 'spɪrɪt/ cồn

EXPRESSIONS

You can call me Bert	Anh cứ gọi tôi là Bert
Any questions ?	Có câu hỏi nào không ?
I'll give you a tip	Tôi sẽ nói anh biết điều này
know what I mean ?	Hiểu ý tôi chưa ?
Just stop and think	Hãy dừng lại và suy nghĩ đi.

PROPER NAMES

Alain Newman	/,ælən'nju:mən/
Bert Hogg	/bɜ:t'hɒg/
Vaughan	/vɔ:n/

USAGE

+ To introduce s/o *to* s/o else (giới thiệu ai với ai)
introduce s/t *with* something else (mở đầu cái gì bằng cái gì)
EX : I very much like those songs *introduced with* the guitar solos
+ It doesn't matter what / when / how / whether ... + clause
+ It makes no difference whether... or...(cũng vậy thôi, có gì khác đâu)
EX : *It makes no difference* to me whether he will come here today or tomorrow.
+ Apart from + noun / gerund = independently of = expect
EX : Now, tell me the truth, what is it that really makes you want to go away *apart from* these reasons ?
+ To look after : to take care of
To go after : to follow, pursue
To take after : to resemble
To name after : to give a name to

EX : - We are not blood brothers, but we *take after* each other.
- This street is *named after* Tran Hung Dao, a Vietnamese hero.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1/- "Who/what/where/why... + ever + auxiliary + subject + verb... ?"
"Ever" is added to emphasize the speaker's surprise/anger/astonishment...
"Ever" = on earth/in the world

EX : - *Who ever* held you to come and get that ?
- *Who on earth / in the world told* you to come and get that ?
- *Wherever* have you been these days ?
- *Where on earth/in the world* have you been these days ?

2/- Whoever (anyone who). You can give it to *whoever* is there.
Whichever (anyone of them who/which). Take *whichever* (one) you like.
Whatever (anything that...) You can do *whatever* you want to.
Whenever (anytime when...) Take it *whenever* you like.
Wherever (any place where...) Go *wherever* you like.

+ Whoever, whichever, whatever, whenever, wherever, however can mean "No matter. who/which/what..." (cho dù ... chăng nữa)

EX : - Wherever you are, I will be following you (no matter where you are)
- *Whatever* happens, don't forget to write to me (no matter what happens)

Notes : + [However + adjective/adverb]

EX : - *However* hard I worked, she was never pleased (no matter how hard I worked)
- *However* bad the weather may be, I have to fly to Bangkok.

It's Alan Newman's first day in his first job. He's started work in an electrical components factory. The Personnel Officer, Mrs Vaughan, is introducing him to Bert Hogg, who has worked there for thirty years.

Mrs Vaughan Alan, this is Bert, Bert Hogg. You'll be working with him.

Alan Morning, Mr Hogg.

Bert You can call me Bert, son. Don't worry. I'll show you what to do.

Mrs Vaughan Can I leave him with you then, Bert ?

Bert Oh, yes, Mrs Vaughan. I'll look after him. Follow me, son.

Bert Right, son. Any questions ?

Alan Er... yes. Where can I leave my coat and things ?

Bert There's a row of lockers over there. It doesn't matter which one you use. Take whichever one you want.

Alan Oh, thanks. And I've got my National Insurance card here. Who should I give it to?

Bert You should have given it to Mrs Vaughan. I don't suppose she asked you for it. Just take it up to the office. You can give it to whoever is there. They'll pass it on to her.

Hôm nay là ngày đi làm đầu tiên của Alan Newman. Cậu xin làm ở một xưởng sản xuất thiết bị điện. Trưởng phòng nhân sự, bà Vaughan đang giới thiệu cậu với Bert Hogg, người đã làm việc ở đây 30 năm.

Bà Vaughan : Đây là Bert, Bert Hogg. Cháu sẽ làm việc với ông ta.

Alan : Chào ông Hogg.

Bert : Cậu cứ kêu tôi là Bert. Đừng ngại. Tôi sẽ hướng dẫn cho cậu.

Bà V : Vậy tôi giao em này cho ông nhé, Bert ?

Bert : Ồ, được, bà Vaughan. Tôi sẽ chăm sóc thằng bé. Nào, cậu theo tôi.

Bert : Được rồi. Cậu có hỏi gì không ?

Alan : Ơ... có. Cháu để áo ngoài và vật dụng ở đâu ?

Bert : Đằng kia có một dãy hộc tủ. Cậu dùng hộc nào cũng được. Cứ việc chọn hộc nào mà cậu muốn.

Alan : Cảm ơn bác. Và cháu có thẻ Bảo Hiểm Quốc Gia đây. Cháu phải trình cho ai ?

Bert : Đành lẽ cậu phải trình cho bà Vaughan. Chắc bà ta đã không nói với cháu. Bây giờ cứ mang thẻ lên văn phòng. Cậu đưa thẻ cho ai ở đó cũng được. Họ sẽ chuyển lại cho bà ấy.

Alan When can I do that ?

Bert It doesn't matter really. Take it whenever you like, lad, but I'll give you a tip. Don't take it during the tea-break. You know what I mean ?

Alan Right. Thanks.

Alan Oh, another thing. Where can I leave my motor-bike ?

Bert There's plenty of room in the car-park. Just don't put it in a numbered space. They're reserved for the directors' cars. But apart from that, you can leave it wherever there's room. Come on, I'll show you where you'll be working. Right, this is our bench. Just watch me, and do whatever I tell you, OK ?

Alan OK.

Bert First of all, you can clean these tools. There's a bottle of white spirit on the shelf.

Alan All right. Is there any special way of doing it ?

Bert Eh ? Special way ? No, son, no. Clean them however you want. There's no special way.

10.30.

Bert Oi ! Alan, you can stop work for a bit. It's time for the tea-break.

Alan Thanks.

Bert Don't thank me, son. You've done well. You'll need a cup of tea. Oh, look... after the tea-break I want you to go to the stores and get me a few things. It that all right ?

Alan Oh, yes. I'll get whatever you want.

Bert Good lad. Now, I'll need a tin of striped paint, a rubber hammer and a glass nail, a left-handed screw-driver, and a bucket of steam. Oh, and tell them Bert sent you.

At the stores.

Alan Morning.

Storeman Morning.

Alan I've come to get a tin of striped paint.

Storeman A what ? What ever are you talking about, son ?

Alan A tin of striped paint. I want a tin of striped paint.

Storeman Who ever told you to come and get that ?

Alan : Khi nào cháu có thể làm việc đó ?

Bert : Khi nào cũng được. Cậu mang thế lên văn phòng lúc nào tùy cậu, nhưng tôi muốn nhắc cậu một điều. Đừng lên văn phòng vào giờ nhân viên uống trà nghỉ giải lao. Cậu hiểu ý tôi chứ ?

Alan : Dạ, cám ơn bác.

Alan : Ồ, còn một chuyện nữa. Cháu để xe gắn máy ở đâu ?

Bert : Ở bãi đậu xe có thiếu gì chỗ. Chỉ đừng để xe ở nơi có đánh số. Đó là khu vực dành riêng cho xe hơi của các giám đốc. Ngoài ra thì cậu cứ để xe ở bất cứ nơi nào có chỗ trống. Lại đây, tôi sẽ chỉ cho cậu nơi làm việc. Được rồi, đây là ghế ngồi làm việc của chúng ta. Cứ quan sát cách tôi làm, và làm những gì tôi bảo cậu, được chứ ?

Alan : Dạ được

Bert : Trước hết, cậu có thể lau chùi các dụng cụ này. Có một chai cồn trắng trên kệ đấy.

Alan : Được rồi. Có cách lau chùi đặc biệt nào không?

Bert : Hử ? Cách đặc biệt à ? Không, không có đâu cậu bé. Cứ chùi bằng bất cứ cách nào cậu muốn. Không có cách đặc biệt.

10g30

Bert : Ồ, Alan, cậu có thể ngừng tay một lát. Đến giờ uống trà nghỉ giải lao rồi.

Alan : Cám ơn bác.

Bert : Cậu đừng cám ơn tôi. Cậu đã làm rất tốt. Bây giờ uống một tách trà đi. À, này... sau giờ giải lao, tôi muốn cậu ra cửa hàng mua cho tôi vài thứ được không?

Alan : Dạ được. Cháu sẽ mua bất cứ thứ gì bác cần.

Bert : Cậu bé giỏi lắm. Tôi cần một hộp sơn sọc, một cái búa cao su, một cái đinh thủy tinh, một cái vặn vít tay trái, và một thùng hơi nước. Cứ bảo người ta là Bert sai cậu đi.

Ở cửa hàng

Alan : Chào chú

Nhân viên bán hàng : Chào em.

Alan : Cháu đến mua 1 hộp sơn sọc.

Nhân viên : Mua cái gì ? Cậu nói gì thế hả cậu bé ?

Alan : Một hộp sơn sọc. Cháu cần một hộp sơn sọc.

Nhân viên : Ai bảo cậu đến đây mua thứ đó ?

Alan Bert... er, Bert Hogg.

Storeman Oh, Bert Hogg ! What colour stripes would you like, son ?

Alan I'm not sure. Perhaps I'd better ask him.

Storeman I suppose he asked you to get a right-handed screw-driver, as well.

Alan No, he wants a left-handed one.

Storeman Just stop and think for a minute, lad! Just stop and think !

Exercise 1

A What do you fancy doing this evening ?
B *I don't mind. Whatever you like.*
1 Well where shall we go then ?
2 How shall we go there ?
3 Which would you prefer, bus or taxi ?
4 When do you think we should leave ?
5 Which pub would you like to go to ?
6 What shall we have to drink ?
7 Where shall we go for a meal ?
8 Who shall we invite to the party ?
9 What shall we give them to eat ?

Alan : Bert... à, Bert Hogg.

Nhân viên : Hóa ra là Bert Hogg ! Cậu cần sọc màu gì ?

Alan : Cháu không biết. Có lẽ cháu phải hỏi lại ông ấy.

Nhân viên : Chắc ông ấy có bảo cậu mua một cái vặn vít tay phải nữa đấy.

Alan : Không, ông ấy muốn cái vặn vít tay trái cơ.

Nhân viên : Này, cậu bé, hãy suy nghĩ một tí đi. Hãy thử suy nghĩ xem.

Exercise 2

A What shall I do with these old newspapers?
B It doesn't matter. Do whatever you want.
1 Which of these books can I borrow ?
2 Who shall I give my ticket to ?
3 When can I come to see you ?
4 How should I do it ?
5 Where can I park my car ?

Exercise 3

A He's talking about something. Nobody knows what !
B *What ever is he talking about ?*
1 They found out about it. Nobody knows how !
2 She's been somewhere. Nobody knows where !
3 He gave it to someone. Nobody knows who!
4 She found time to do it. Nobody knows when !
5 They jumped in the river. Nobody knows why !

PRACTICE

Language summary

whatever, whichever, whoever, whenever, wherever, however

What shall I do ?	*I don't mind.*	*Do whatever you want.*	*Whatever you want.*
Which shall I take ?	*It doesn't matter.*	*Take whichever you like.*	*Whichever you like.*
Who shall I ask ?	*I don't know.*	*Ask whoever is there.*	*Whoever is there.*
When shall I do it ?	*I don't care.*	*Do it whenever you like.*	*Whenever you like.*
Where shall I go ?	*I'm not sure.*	*Go wherever you want.*	*Wherever you want.*
How shall I do it ?	*It isn't important.*	*Do it however you like.*	*However you like.*

When the speaker is emotional (angry, surprised, etc.) ever can be used as a separate word with the question words: who/what/when/where/why/how/which.

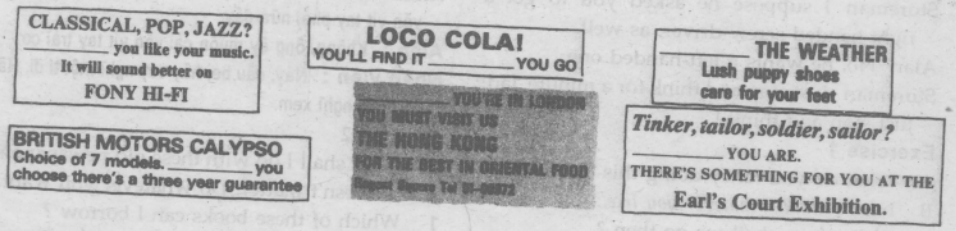
e.g. *What ever are you talking about ?*
Why ever did he do that ?

Exercise 1

Complete these 'ads' using : whatever/whichever/whoever/whenever/ wherever/however.

Bài tập 1

Hoàn thành các mẫu quảng cáo này dùng các từ cho trên.



Exercise 2

Where shall I put my coat ?
It doesn't matter. Wherever you like.

Continue.

1 When shall I take my holiday ?
. . . . . .

2 Who shall I invite to the party ?
. . . . . .

3 How shall I cook the chicken ?
. . . . . .

Exercise 3

He said he was Julius Caesar.
Who ever said that ?
or *Why ever did he say that ?*
Respond to these statements using a question word : what/ which/ who/ why/ how/when/where, + ever.

1 They said the world would end next Tuesday. . . . . .
. . . . . .

2 England once beat Brazil 8-0 at football. . . . . .
. . . . . .

3 He jumped off the Eiffel Tower and tried to fly. . . . . .
. . . . . .

4 He painted a moustache on the Mona Lisa. . . . . .

Bài tập 2

Tôi để áo khoác ở đâu ?
Không thành vấn đề. Bất cứ chỗ nào bạn thích.
Hãy tiếp tục.

4 What shall I wear for the dance ?
. . . . . .

5 Which colour shall I choose ?
. . . . . .

6 Where shall I park the car ?
. . . . . .

Bài tập 3

Anh ta nói anh ta là Julius Caesar.
Ai đã từng nói điều đó ?
hay *Tại sao anh ta lại nói điều đó ?*
Hỏi đáp cho các câu trên dùng từ hỏi : what/ which/who/why/how/when/where + ever.

5 They both proposed marriage to her on the same day. . . . . .

6 She broke one arm, two legs and fractured her skull. . . . . .

7 I saw a ghost once. . . . . .
. . . . . .

8 She said I could have the Rolls, the Cadillac or the Ferrari. . . . . .

9 She left all her money to her dog. . . . .
. . . . . .

Unit 64 A Change For The Better

Thay đổi theo chiều hướng tốt hơn

VOCABULARY

- **apparently** *(adv)* /ə'pærəntli/ according to appearances; as it seems = rõ ràng ~ *(ie I have heard that) they're getting divorced.*
  apparent *(adj)* /ə'pærənt/ clearly seen or understood; obvious = hiển hiện, rõ ràng
  Certain problems were ~ from the outlet.
- **bald patch** *(n)* /bɔ:ld pætʃ/ mảng hói đầu
- **birthmark** *(n)* /'bɜ:θmɑ:k/ vết chàm, vết bớt
- **blush** *(v)* /blʌʃ/ ~ (with st) (at st) become red in the face (because of st) = đỏ mặt ~ *with shame, embarrassment.*
  blush *(n)* reddening of the face (from shame, embarrassment,
  She turned away to hide her ~ es.
- **booklet** *(n)* /'buklɪt/ thin book, usu in paper covers = quyển sách nhỏ, cẩm nang
- **brownstone** *(n)* /'braunstəʊn/ reddish – brown sandstone used for building = đá cát kết nâu
- **client** *(n)* /'klaɪənt/ customer in a shop = khách hàng
- **confide** *(v)* /kən'faɪd/ 1. ~ st to sb = tell (a secret) to sb = nói điều gì cho ai nghe. *She ~ d her troubles to a friend.*
  2. *(phr v)* ~ in sb = trust sb enough to tell a secret to him = tâm sự. *There's no one here I can confide in.*
  confidence *(n)* /'kɒnfɪdəns/ 1. ~ (in sb / st) firm trust = lòng tin *to have / lose ~ in sb. I have little ~ in him.*
  2. (idm) in (strict) confidence = as a secret = giữ bí mật, không ai biết. *I'm telling you this in (strict) confidence – so don't breathe a word of it.*
- **consultation** *(n)* /,kɒnsl'teɪʃn/ meeting to discuss or seek advice about, a sick person = buổi tư vấn (về sức khỏe)
  con'sulting room *(n)* room where a doctor talks to and examines patients
- **contouring** *(n)* /'kɒntʊərɪŋ/ sự uốn, sửa lại
  contour *(n)* /'kɒntʊə/ outward curve of st / sb (coast, body) thought of as defining its shape = nét, đường nét.
- **contact lens** *(n)* /,kɒntækt 'lenz/ lens made of thin plastic placed on the surface of the eye to improve vision = tròng kính gắn vào mắt = kính tiếp xúc.
- **cosmetic surgery** *(n)* /kɒz,metɪk 'sɜ:dʒərɪ/ surgery performed to restore or improve one's outward appearance (rather than restore health) = giải phẫu thẩm mỹ.
- **crippled** *(adj)* /'krɪpld/ unable to walk or move properly because of disease or injury to the spine or legs = tàn tật
  ~ by polio; ~ with rheumatism.
  cripple *(n)* = người tàn tật.
- **crutch** *(n)* /krʌtʃ/ support in the form of a pole, placed under the armpit to help a lame person to walk = cái nạng *a pair of crutches, go about on ~ es.*
- **custom – made** *(adj)* /,kʌstəm 'meɪd/ (also *custom – built*) made or built as the buyer specifies = làm theo ý khách hàng ~ *shoes, clothes; a custom – built car.*
- **defect** *(n)* /'dɪfekt - dɪ'fekt/ khuyết tật
- **dietary** *(adj)* /'daɪətərɪ/ về việc ăn uống, dinh dưỡng ~ *habits; ~ rules;* eg for bidding certain foods.
- **discoloured** *(adj)* /dɪs'kʌləd/ mất, phai màu
  discolour *(v)* /dɪs'kʌlə/ change or spoil the colour of *Smoking ~ s the teeth.*
- **disfiguring** *(adj)* /dɪs'fɪgərɪŋ/ biến dạng
  disfigure *(v)* /dɪs'fɪgə(r)/ spoil the appearance of (sb / st) = làm biến dạng. *The accident ~ d him for life.*
- **distinctive** *(adj)* /dɪs'tɪŋktɪv/ đặc biệt
- **ensure** *(v)* /ɪn'ʃɔ:(r)/ 1. make sure, guarantee = bảo đảm *The book ~ d his success.*
  2. assure, make (sb) certain to get (st) = chắc chắn được
  These pills should ~ you a good night's sleep.
- **facial** *(adj)* /'feɪʃəl/ thuộc về mặt.
  face *(n) facial expressions*
- **furnish** *(v)* /'fɜ:nɪʃ/ ~ st (with st) provide st with furniture = trang bị đồ đạc (phòng, nhà) *~ a house, a room, an office.*

furnishings = furniture, equipment, fittings, etc in a room or house.

- **gold – rimmed** *(adj)* /ˌgəʊld ˈrɪmd/ with gold edges = gọng vàng
- **greying** *(adj)* /greɪɪŋ/ bạc dần

  grey *(v)* (cause st to) become grey. *Her hair has ~ ed a lot. He was 50 and greying. Worry has ~ ed her hair.*
- **hair restorer** *(n)* /ˈheə rɪ, stɔːrə/ substance used to promote growth of hair = thuốc dùng phục hồi tóc.
- **hygienic** *(adj)* /haɪˈdʒiːnɪk/ hợp vệ sinh
- **inferior** *(adj)* /ɪnˈfɪərɪə/ ~ (to sb / st) low(er) in rank, position, importance, quality, etc = thua kém *be socially ~; make sb feel ~.*
- **lean** *(adj)* /liːn/ (of people and animals) without much flesh; thin and healthy = gầy gò *a ~ athletic body.*
- **maiden** *(n)* /ˈmeɪdn/ ~ sisters = unmarried sisters = chị em chưa chồng.
- **massage** *(n)* /ˈmæsɑːʒ/ sự xoa bóp
- **medical practitioner** *(n)* /ˈmedɪkl prækˈtɪʃənə/ doctor = bác sĩ
- **non–toxic** *(adj)* /nɒnˈtɒksɪk/ không độc hại
- **optical** *(adj)* /ˈɒptɪkl/ of the sense of sight = thuộc về mắt, thị giác

  ~ effects and sound effects.

  optician *(n)* /ɒpˈtɪʃn/ person who makes and sells optical instruments, esp contact lenses and glasses = người bán kính mắt.
- **pattern** *(n)* /ˈpætn/ kiểu, mẫu
- **pierce** *(v)* /pɪəs/ 1. (of sharp – pointed instruments) go into or through st = đâm xuyên qua *The arrow ~ d his shoulders.*

  2. make a hole in or through (st), esp with a sharp – pointed instrument = xỏ lỗ. *She had her ears ~ d so that she could wear ear-rings.*
- **pitch – black** *(adj)* /ˌpɪtʃ ˈblæk/ completely black = tối đen như mực
- **procedure** *(n)* /prəˈsiːdʒə/ order or ways of doing things = phương pháp, cách làm

  Stop arguing about (question of) ~ and let get down to business.
- **relocation** *(n)* /ˌriːləʊˈkeɪʃn/ đưa vào, cấy (tóc)

  relocate *(v)* /ˌriːləʊˈkeɪt/ move (sb / st) to or build (st) in = chuyển, đưa vào *The company is to ~ its headquarters in the Midlands.*
- **reshaping** *(n)* /riːˈʃeɪpɪŋ/ sự sửa lại hình dạng, vóc dáng.
- **rooming – house** *(n)* /ˈrumɪŋhaus/ nhà nhiều phòng có đủ đồ đạc cho thuê
- **sauna** *(n)* /sɔːnə/ /saunə/ phòng tắm hơi
- **scarlet** *(adj) (n)* /ˈskɑːlət/ bright red = đỏ tươi *dressed all in ~; She blushed ~ when I swore.*
- **sealed** *(adj)* /siːld/ dán, niêm phong kín
- **shabby** *(adj)* /ˈʃæbɪ/ (of things) in poor condition through much use or being badly cared for = tồi tàn. *a ~ dress, chair, room (of people) poorly dressed* = ăn mặc lôi thôi. *You look rather ~ in those clothes.*
- **slender** *(adj)* /slendə/ (approv) (of people) slim = mảnh mai *a ~ girl; a ~, graceful ballet – dancer.*
- **solarium** *(n)* /səʊˈleərɪəm/ phòng tắm nắng
- **stammer** *(v)* /ˈstæmə/ (also *stutter*) speak with sudden pauses and a tendency to repeat rapidly the same sound or syllable (because of a speech defect or from fear, excitement, etc) = nói cà lăm, lắp bắp *"G-g-give me that b-b-book", said Henry, unable to stop stammering.*

  stammer *(n)* (usu sing) tendency to stammer.

  Speak with a ~. He's always had a slight ~.
- **stud** *(n)* /stʌd/ piece of jewellery (esp an earring) consisting of a precious stone, etc attached to a small bar = hoa tai *diamond ~ s in her ears.*
- **subdued** *(adj)* /səbˈdjuːd/ 1. not very loud, intense, noticeable = không căng thẳng. *a ~ conversation; a note of ~ excitement in her voice.*

  2. not showing much excitement, interest = không hào hứng *You're very ~. What's wrong?*
- **supplement** *(n)* /ˈsʌplɪmənt/ ~ (to st) thing added to st else to improve or complete it = sự thêm vào *The money I get from teaching the piano is a useful ~ to my ordinary income.*

  supplement *(v)* /ˈsʌplɪment/ ~ st (with st) add to or complete st with st else. *I ~ my grant by working in the evenings.*
- **tattoo** *(n)* /təˈtuː/ sự xăm mình
- **tenant** *(n)* /ˈtenənt/ người thuê nhà, đất
- **therapist** *(n)* /ˈθerəpɪst/ specialist in a particular type of therapy = thầy thuốc nội khoa *a speech ~.*

  therapy *(n)* /ˈθerəpɪ/ any treatment designed to relieve or cure an illness or a disability = sự chẩn trị *have / undergo ~; radio – ~; occupational ~.*

- **thinning** *(adj)* /'θɪnɪŋ/ thưa dần, mỏng dần.
- **three – piece suit** *(n)* /θri: pi:s 'sju:t/ bộ com lê 3 mãnh
- **toupée** *(n)* /'tu:peɪ/ patch of false hair worn to cover a bald spot; small wig = mảng tóc giả.
- **transplant** *(v)* /træns'pla:nt/ cấy
- **tremble** *(v)* /'trembl/ ~ (with st) shake involuntarily (from fear, cold, weakness); quiver = run lẩy bẩy *trembling hands. His voice ~ d with rage.*
- **unique** *(adj)* /ju:'ni:k/ being the only one of its type. *a ~ work of art.*

EXPRESSIONS

a change for the better	thay đổi theo hướng tốt đẹp hơn
No appointment necessary	không cần hẹn trước
the world of entertainment	thế giới ăn chơi
I owe it all to...	tôi mang ơn tất cả...
Do yourself a favour !	Hãy tự dành cho bạn một đặc ân !
in complete confidence	hoàn toàn kín đáo, không ai biết
as used by models	được người mẫu dùng
to suit every pocket	rất hợp túi tiền mọi người
surgeons of international repute	bác sĩ danh tiếng thế giới
in one way or another	bằng cách này hay cách khác
to clear one's throat	đằng hắng giọng
to enquire of s/o	tìm hiểu về ai

PROPER NAMES

Ed Sampson	/ed'sæmpsn/	Sheila Skinner	/ˌʃi:lə'skɪnə/
Gothem	/'gəʊtəm/	Scarborough	/'skɑ:brə/

USAGE

1/- "Look years younger" trông trẻ hơn nhiều tuổi

To look/be (how many) years + younger/older : (+ than + I /he/she...)

EX : He *looks* three years old*er* than I, but in fact he is two years young*er* than I
(Anh ta trông già hơn tôi 3 tuổi nhưng thật ra lại trẻ hơn tôi 2 tuổi)

2/- Subject + used to + bare infinitive (past time habit) : vẫn thường
Subject + be + used to + noun/gerund : quen với

EX : - When we were young, *we used to walk* to the seaside every afternoon to watch the sunset
- Living in the highland pretty long, he is now used to the cold weather

3/- To owe s/o (for) s/t : nợ ai, chịu ơn ai
To owe s/t to s/o : có được cái gì là nhờ ở ai

EX: *- I owe you for your services* *- I owe my success to my teachers*

4/- To do s/o a (big) favor (ban đặc ân cho ai)
- To do the dirt on s/o (dở trò đê tiện với ai)
- To do s/o harm (làm hại ai)
- To do away with (loại bỏ, vứt bỏ)
- To do without (có thể không cần đến)

EX : - He's too bad a guy. He always *does the dirt on* those who have once or twice done him big favors
- Baby, it's not a right thing at all for a man like me to say this, but really *I can not do without* you.

Newspapers and magazines are full of advertisements which try to persuade people to change their appearance in one way or another. Look at these advertisements, and discuss them.

Báo chí đầy những quảng cáo cố thuyết phục người ta thay đổi ngoại hình bằng cách này hay cách khác. Hãy quan sát những quảng cáo dưới đây, và thảo luận.

EARS PIERCED WHILE YOU WAIT
Painless procedure. No appointment necessary. Reasonable rates. Large selection of studs and earrings. Also nose piercing by arrangement.
Pinner Jewellery Centre, Pinner, Middlesex

XỎ LỖ TAI TRONG LÚC CHỜ ĐỢI
Không đau. Không cần hẹn trước.
Giá phải chăng. Nhiều loại bông tai.
Nhận xỏ cả lỗ mũi theo hẹn.
Pinner Jewellery Centre (Trung tâm Trang sức Pinner) Pinner, Middlesex

BE TALLER !
with our custom-made shoes. We can add up to 5cm to your height... and only you will ever know. Our unique design ensures both comfort and confidence.
Platform Two Solihull

TĂNG CHIỀU CAO !
Với loại giầy đóng đặc biệt theo yêu cầu của khách. Bạn có thể cao thêm 5cm... và chỉ có bạn mới biết. Kiểu giầy độc đáo của chúng tôi bảo đảm làm cho bạn vừa thoải mái vừa tự tin. Cửa hàng số 2 Solihull

SPARTA
HEALTH AND SLIMMING CLINIC
* Gymnasium * Programmes of Exercise * Sauna * Massage * Solarium * Dietary Advice * Latest Electronic Slimming Aids
Mrs B of Scarborough writes :
"I lost 15 kilos in 12 weeks. I feel younger, fitter and happier... and I owe it all to my local Sparta Clinic. I am a new woman..."

Sparta Clinics – in 30 cities and towns throughout Britain. Consult your local telephone directory.

SPARTA –
DƯỠNG ĐƯỜNG SỨC KHỎE VÀ LÀM GẦY
* Phòng tập thể dục * Các chương trình tập luyện * Tắm hơi * Xoa bóp * Phòng phơi nắng * Chỉ dẫn về ăn uống * Dụng cụ điện tử giúp làm gầy hiện đại nhất.
Bà B ở Scarborough viết :
"Tôi giảm được 15 ký trong 12 tuần. Tôi cảm thấy trẻ hơn, khỏe hơn và hạnh phúc hơn... tất cả là nhờ dưỡng đường Sparta ở khu vực tôi. Bây giờ tôi là một con người mới...".
Dưỡng đường Sparta – ở 30 thành phố và tỉnh lỵ khắp nước Anh. Địa chỉ có trong sách niên giám điện thoại ở khu vực của bạn.

Leo Rembrandt.
TATTOO ARTIST
18 Victory Street, Portsmouth
Choose from a wide selection of traditional and modern designs and patterns. All kinds of lettering. Variety of colours. Quick, hygienic, almost painless method using an electric needle. Non-toxic dyes.
Anywhere, any size !

Leo Rembrandt.
NGHỆ SĨ XĂM HÌNH
18 Victory, Portsmouth
Nhiều kiểu mẫu truyền thống về hiện đại để chọn. Có tất cả các loại kiểu chữ. Màu sắc đa dạng. Nhanh chóng, vệ sinh, gần như không đau, dùng kim điện. Thuốc nhuộm không độc. Bất cứ chỗ nào trên cơ thể, bất cứ cỡ nào !

"Would you like a body like mine ?"
I used to weigh 50 kilos until I discovered the Dynomatic system of body-building. Three years later I became "Mr Galaxy". Do yourself a favour !
Write now to Ed Sampson, P O Box 40, Gotham USA.

"BẠN MUỐN CÓ MỘT THÂN HÌNH NHƯ TÔI KHÔNG ?"
Trước đây tôi nặng 50 kí-lô cho tới khi khám phá ra hệ thống rèn luyện cơ thể Dynomatic. Ba năm sau, tôi trở thành "Người Thiên Hà" ("Mr. Galaxy") Hãy tự dành cho mình một cơ hội.
Bây giờ hãy viết thư cho Ed Sampson, Hộp thư 40, Gotham, Mỹ.

Bald ? Balding ? Receding ? Bald patches? Premature hair loss ? Greying ?

BEFORE AFTER

Look years younger ! Contact the
BRYNNER HAIR ADVISORY CENTRE
Tel : 327184

Telephone us or call in and arrange an immediate free consultation in complete confidence ! Treatment to suit every pocket.

Hair restorer • Vitamin & mineral supplements • Toupees Hair replacement and addition • Hair transplants (relocation of healthy growing hairs to thinning and bald areas)

Bạn bị hói ? Đang hói ? Tóc thưa dần ? Bị những mảng hói ? Rụng tóc sớm ? Bạc tóc?

Muốn trông trẻ lại nhiều tuổi, hãy liên hệ :
TRUNG TÂM TƯ VẤN VỀ MÁI TÓC
BRYNNER
Điện thoại : 327184

Bạn có thể gọi điện thoại hoặc ghé đến và dàn xếp ngay một buổi tư vấn miễn phí được giữ bí mật hoàn toàn ! Điều trị hợp túi tiền mọi đối tượng.

* Phục hồi tóc * Bổ sung vitamin và chất khoáng * Dùng bím tóc giả * Thay và thêm tóc * Cấy tóc (cấy tóc tốt, đang phát triển vào những vùng tóc bị thưa dần và hói).

New super tooth make – up

Blanche as used by models and T.V. quizmasters ! Discoloured teeth, dentures and fillings can now be given a sparkling white finish with

Blanche Simple to use – brushed on in seconds. Touch up every 2/3 days. Laboratory tested!

Blanche Products, London NW4

Thuốc trang điểm mới, ưu việt dùng cho răng

Blanche - Loại sản phẩm được các người mẫu và người điều khiển cuộc thi đố trên truyền hình dùng ! Răng bị đổi màu, răng giả, các chỗ trám giờ đây có thể có một nước men trắng bóng nhờ.

Blanche - Dễ dùng – thấm đều trong vòng vài giây. Hai / ba ngày dùng một lần. Đã được thử nghiệm.

Blanche - Sản phẩm Blanche, London NW4.

Do you lack confidence ?

Are you afraid of speaking to people ? making dates ? eating out ? going to parties? travelling ?

Do you feel inferior ? Blush ? stammer ? tremble ?

Write for our introductory booklet (sent in a plain, sealed envelope), "The will and the way".

THE ROOKER INSTITUTE,
Conman St., London W1

BẠN THIẾU TỰ TIN ?

Bạn ngại nói chuyện với người lạ ? hẹn hò với người khác phái ? đi ăn tiệm ? đi dự tiệc ? đi du lịch ?

Bạn cảm thấy thua kém người khác ? hay đỏ mặt ? nói lắp bắp ? run rẩy ?

Bạn hãy viết thư yêu cầu có tập sách nhỏ của chúng tôi (được gởi trong bao thơ thường, dán kín) "Ý chí và phương cách".

VIỆN ROOKER – Đường Conman, London W1

Wear glasses ?

Do you play sports ? Are you fed up with wearing spectacles ?

Have you considered contact lenses ?

The new soft lenses are comfortable and easier to wear.

Consult your local optician, or send for information to

British Optical Council,
Newton House, Devizes.

Vẫn còn đeo kính ?

Bạn có chơi thể thao ? Bạn đã chán ngấy việc đeo kính ?

Bạn đã nghĩ đến kính tiếp xúc (contact lens) chưa ?

Loại kính mới, mềm mại, thoải mái và dễ mang. Hãy hỏi ý kiến nhân viên bán kính đeo mắt ở khu vực bạn hoặc viết thư về :

Hội đồng Nhãn khoa Anh
Newton House, Devizes

HARLEY MANOR

Private Clinic

Can arrange cosmetic surgery by plastic surgeons of international repute. Cosmetic surgery can often restore lost confidence.

* DISFIGURING SCARS CAN BE REMOVED * RESHAPING * FACIAL CONTOURING *

Our clients have included leading figures from the worlds of entertainment, politics and business.

You should consult your own medical practitioner before contacting us.

Full details available from Sheila Skinner. Dept. B. Harley Manor, Nazelton.

HARLEY MANOR

Dưỡng đường tư

Thực hiện giải phẫu thẩm mỹ do các bác sĩ giải phẫu tạo hình nổi tiếng thế giới. Giải phẫu thẩm mỹ thường có thể lấy lại niềm tin cho bạn.

* TẨY VẾT SẸO * TÁI TẠO VÓC DÁNG * TẠO NÉT KHUÔN MẶT

Khách hàng của chúng tôi có cả những nhân vật hàng đầu trong giới nghệ sĩ, chính trị gia và doanh gia.

Nên hỏi ý kiến bác sĩ riêng trước khi tiếp xúc chúng tôi.

Muốn có chi tiết đầy đủ, liên hệ với : Sheila Skinner, khu B, Harley Manor, Nazelton.

PRACTICE

Mr Jones

During the winter I lived for several months in a rooming house in Brooklyn. It was not a shabby place, but a pleasantly furnished, elderly brownstone kept hospital-neat by its owners, two maiden sisters.

Mr Jones lived in the room next to mine. My room was the smallest in the house, his the largest, a nice big sunshiny room, which was just as well, for Mr Jones never left it : all his needs, meals, shopping, laundry, were attended to by the middle-aged landladies. Also, he was not without visitors; on the average, a half-dozen various persons, men and women, young, old, in-between, visited his room each day, from early morning until late in the evening. He was not a drug dealer or a fortuneteller; no, they came just to talk to him and apparently they made him small gifts of money for his conversation and advice. If not, he had no obvious means of support.

I never had a conversation with Mr Jones myself, a circumstance I've often since regretted. He was a handsome man, about forty. Slender, black-haired, and with a distinctive face; a pale, lean face, high cheekbones, and with a birthmark on his left cheek, a small scarlet defect shaped like a star. He wore gold-rimmed glasses with pitch-black lenses : he was blind, and crippled, too-according to the sisters, the use of his legs had been denied him by a childhood accident, and he could not move without crutches. He was always dressed in a crisply-pressed dark grey or blue three-piece suit and a subdued tie-as though about to set off for a Wall Street* office.

Ông Jones

Suốt mùa đông tôi sống nhiều tháng trong căn nhà có nhiều phòng cho thuê ở Brooklyn. Đó không phải là một nơi tồi tàn mà là một căn nhà khá cổ được trang trí đẹp, đồ đạc được chưng dọn tươm tất do chủ nhân của nó là hai chị em chưa chồng.

Ông Jones ở trong căn phòng cạnh phòng tôi. Phòng tôi là phòng nhỏ nhất nhà, phòng ông ta lớn nhất, một căn phòng lớn, xinh đẹp lúc nào cũng đầy ánh nắng. Ông Jones không bao giờ rời phòng : tất cả các nhu cầu của ông, ăn uống, mua sắm, giặt giũ đều do hai cô chủ nhà trung niên chăm lo. Ngoài ra, ông ta không bao giờ không có khách khứa, trung bình 6 người khác nhau : đàn ông, đàn bà, già, trẻ, sồn sồn viếng phòng ông ta mỗi ngày từ sáng sớm đến tận khuya. Ông ta không phải là người bán thuốc phiện hay thầy bói, không, họ đến chỉ để được nói chuyện với ông ta và rõ ràng họ đưa cho ông ta những món quà nhỏ bằng tiền vì được nói chuyện và nhận lời khuyên của ông. Nếu không có như vậy, ông ta không có nguồn chu cấp rõ ràng nào cả. Bản thân tôi chưa bao giờ nói chuyện với ông Jones, một việc mà tôi cứ thường ân hận mãi. Ông là người đẹp trai, khoảng 40 tuổi. Mảnh khảnh, tóc đen, gương mặt đặc biệt, gương mặt gầy gò, xanh xao, xương gò má cao và có cái bớt bên gò má trái, một khuyết tật nhỏ màu đỏ tươi có hình dạng như một ngôi sao. Ông đeo kính gọng vàng, hai tròng đen thui, ông bị mù vì tàn tật nữa – theo hai chị em chủ nhà, hai chân ông không đi được do một tai nạn lúc thiếu thời, và ông không thể đi mà không có nạng. Ông luôn luôn mặc bộ com lê 3 mảnh màu xanh dương hay màu xám đậm được ủi sắc sảo và đeo cà vạt màu dịu – dường như để sẵn sàng ra sở làm ở Phố Wall.

* Wall Street = Street in New York City where the New York Stock Exchange and other financial institutions are located.

However, as I've said, he never left the premises. Simply sat in his cheerful room in a comfortable chair and received visitors. I had no notion of why they came to see him, these rather ordinary-looking folk, or what they talked about, and I was far too concerned with my own affairs to much wonder over it. When I did, I imagined that his friends had found in him an intelligent, kindly man, a good listener in whom to confide and consult with over their troubles : a cross between a priest and a therapist.

Mr Jones had a telephone. He was the only tenant with a private line. It rang constantly, often after midnight and as early as six in the morning.

I moved to Manhattan. Several months later I returned to the house to collect a box of books I had stored there. While the landladies offered me tea and cakes in their lace-curtained 'parlour', I enquired of Mr Jones.

The women lowered their eyes. Clearing her throat, one said : 'It's in the hands of the police'.

The other offered : 'We've reported him as a missing person.'

The first added : 'Last month, twenty-six days ago, my sister carried up Mr Jones's breakfast, as usual. He wasn't there. All his belongings were there. But he was gone.'

'It's odd-'

'-how a man totally blind, a helpless cripple-'

Ten years pass.

Now it is a zero-cold December afternoon, and I am in Moscow. I am riding in a subway car. There are only a few other passengers. One of them is a man sitting opposite me, a man wearing boots, a thick long coat and a Russian-style fur cap. He has bright eyes, blue as a peacock's.

After a doubtful instant, I simply stared, for even without the black glasses, there was no mistaking that lean distinctive face, those high cheekbones with the single scarlet star-shaped birthmark.

I was just about to cross the aisle and speak to him when the train pulled into a station, and Mr Jones, on a pair of fine sturdy legs, stood up and strode out of the car. Swiftly, the train door closed behind him.

Tuy nhiên, như tôi đã nói, ông không bao giờ rời nhà, chỉ việc ngồi trong căn phòng vui vẻ của ông, trên cái ghế xoay thoải mái và tiếp khách. Tôi không hề có ý niệm là tại sao họ đến gặp ông, những người trông có vẻ khá bình thường này, hoặc là họ nói về chuyện gì, và tôi cũng quá bận với công việc của mình nên cũng không quan tâm thắc mắc gì chuyện đó. Một khi tôi thắc mắc, tôi tưởng tượng là bạn bè ông đã tìm thấy ở ông một con người thông minh, tốt bụng, một người biết lắng nghe có thể tin tưởng và xin ý kiến về những rắc rối của họ, một cách nối giữa một linh mục và một thầy thuốc.

Ông Jones có điện thoại. Ông là người thuê nhà duy nhất có đường dây điện thoại riêng. Nó reo thường xuyên, thường là sau nửa đêm và sáng sớm khoảng 6 giờ.

Tôi đã chuyển nhà ra Manhattan. Nhiều tháng sau tôi trở lại căn nhà này để lấy một thùng sách tôi đã cất ở đó. Trong lúc hai bà chủ nhà mới tôi dùng trà và bánh ngọt trong căn phòng khách có màn reng của họ, tôi thắc mắc về ông Jones.

Hai người phụ nữ nhìn xuống. Một người đằng hắng giọng nói: "Ông ta đã bị cảnh sát bắt".

Người kia nói : "Chúng tôi đã báo cáo là ông ta mất tích".

Người đầu nói thêm : "Tháng rồi cách đây 26 ngày, chị tôi mang điểm tâm sáng lên cho ông Jones như thường lệ. Ông không có ở đó. Tất cả đồ đạc của ông còn ở đó. Nhưng ông biến mất"

"Kỳ thật"

"- Làm thế nào một người bị mù hoàn toàn, một người tàn tật không tự lực được-"

Mười năm trôi qua.

Bây giờ là một buổi chiều tháng mười hai lạnh 0 độ, và tôi đang ở Mátxcơva. Tôi đang đi trên một toa xe điện ngầm. Chỉ có vài hành khách khác. Một trong số đó là một người đàn ông ngồi đối diện với tôi, người này mang giầy ống, mặc áo khoác dài và đầy và đội cái mũ lông thú kiểu người Nga. Ông ta có đôi mắt sáng, màu xanh như đôi mắt công.

Sau một thoáng nghi ngờ, tôi chỉ còn nhìn chằm chặp, vì mặc dầu không có cặp kính đen vẫn không thể nào lầm được gương mặt gầy gò có vẻ đặc biệt kia, hai xương gò má cao với cái bớt hình sao màu đỏ tươi độc nhất.

Tôi sắp băng qua lối đi; đến hỏi chuyện với ông ta thì xe lửa vào ga, và ông Jones, trong đôi chân rắn chắc khỏe mạnh, đứng lên và bước ra khỏi toa. Nhanh chóng, cửa tàu đóng lại phía sau ông ta.

by Truman Capote in Music for chameleons (1981)

Exercise 1

Find words which mean :

1 a house where you can rent rooms
2 unable to see
3 unable to walk
4 someone who sells drugs
5 unmarried
6 bright red

Bài tập 1

Tìm từ trong bài có nghĩa là :

7 sticks of wood or metal, used to help someone who has difficulty in walking
8 as black as tar
9 curved pieces of glass used in spectacles (glasses)
10 glasses with gold edges

11 a person who pays rent for a room or house
12 a private telephone
13 a person who treats illnesses, either physical or mental
14 softly, quietly, coloured
15 a face with little fat
16 the business centre of New York, particularly for the money market

Exercise 2

Glasses with gold rims are *gold-rimmed* glasses.

A person who tells your fortune is a *fortune-teller*.

Complete the spaces below. All the words you will need are in the story.

1 A sitting-room with lace curtains is a . . . . . room.
2 A suit with trousers, jacket and a waistcoat is a . . . . . suit.
3 People who look ordinary are . . . . . people.
4 A birthmark in the shape of a star is a . . . . . birthmark.
5 A cap in a style which is worn in Russia is a . . . . . cap.
6 A day which is very cold, with temperatures around 0°C, is a. . . . . day.

Exercise 3

1 'the use of his legs had been denied him by a childhood accident' means
☐ A He had been told that a childhood accident was not the cause of the injury.
☐ B Because of a childhood accident, he couldn't walk.
☐ C He had been forbidden to leave the house, after running over a child.

2 'he had no obvious means of support' means
☐ A Not many people seemed to like him.
☐ B You couldn't see his crutches.
☐ C Nobody knew how he got enough money to live on.

17 slim, thin
18 dirty, in bad condition
19 building
20 someone who can tell you about the future
21 walked quickly
22 strong

Bài tập 2

Kính có gọng vàng là "gold-rimmed glasses". Một người nói cho bạn nghe về sự nghiệp của bạn là "a fortune-teller".

Hoàn thành các chỗ trống dưới đây. Tất cả các từ bạn cần đều có trong câu chuyện.

7 A place which is as neat as a hospital is a . . . . . place.
8 Lenses which are as black as pitch are . . . . . lenses.
9 A landlady in her forties or fifties is a . . . . . landlady.
10 A suit which has just been pressed and looks clean and fresh is a . . . . . suit.
11 Instead of 'six persons', you can say 'a . . . . . persons'.
12 You can say that someone who is neither young nor old is . . . . . .

3 'it's in the hands of the police' means
☐ A The police are investigating it.
☐ B The police came and took him away.
☐ C He's in prison.

4 'I had no notion of why they came to see him' means
☐ A I never saw his visitors.
☐ B I had no idea of the reason for their visits.
☐ C He never told me why they came to see him.

5 'clearing her throat' means
☐ A She coughed slightly.
☐ B She touched her throat with her hand.
☐ C She had a drink of water.

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Units 61-64

Dialogue A

Listen

Robin Hmm. [SIGH]
Louise What's wrong, Robin ?
Robin It's this homework. I'm stuck ! I don't know what to do.
Louise You don't know what to do ! Well didn't the teacher tell you what to do ?
Robin Yeah. He said something but it was just confusing.
Louise Can I help ?
Robin I don't know. What can you tell me about Zimbabwe ?
Louise Not much. But I'll tell you what I can.

Listen and repeat

A1 Listen

A : I have to do something but I don't know what.
B : He doesn't know what to do.
C : He doesn't know what to do.
A : I should write something but I can't remember what.
B : He can't remember what to write.
C : He can't remember what to write.

Now you do the same

I have to do something but I don't know what..... He doesn't know what to do.
I should write something but I can't remember what..... He can't remember what to write.
I ought to read something but I've forgotten what..... He's forgotten what to read.
I must study something but I've got no idea what..... He's got no idea what to study.

A2 Listen

A : I don't know what to do.
B : Didn't the teacher tell you what to do ?
C : Didn't the teacher tell you what to do ?
A : I can't remember what to write.
B : Didn't the teacher tell you what to write ?
C : Didn't the teacher tell you what to write ?

Now you do the same ?

I don't know what to do..... Didn't the teacher tell you what to do ?
I can't remember what to write..... Didn't the teacher tell you what to write ?
I've forgotten what to read..... Didn't the teacher tell you what to read ?
I've got no idea what to study..... Didn't the teacher tell you what to study ?

A3 Listen

A : He said something but it was just confusing.
B : What he said was just confusing.
C : What he said was just confusing.
A : He told us something but it wasn't very clear.
B : What he told us wasn't very clear.
C : What he told us wasn't very clear.

Now you do the same

He said something but it was just confusing
..... What he said was just confusing.
He told us something but it wasn't very clear
..... What he told us wasn't very clear.
He wrote something on the blackboard but it was impossible to read..... ..... What he wrote on the blackboard was impossible to read.
He told us something about it but it wasn't very helpful
..... What he told us about it wasn't very helpful.

A4 Listen

A : What can you tell me about Zimbabwe ?
B : Not much. But I'll tell you what I can.

Now you do the same

What can you tell me about Zimbabwe..... Not much. But I'll tell you what I can.
What do you know about uranium ? ..... Not much. But I'll tell you what I know.

C : Not much. But I'll tell you what I can.
A : What do you know about uranium ?
B : Not much. But I'll tell you what I know.
C : Not much. But I'll tell you what I know.

What do you remember about Napoleon ?..... Not much. But I'll tell you what I remember.
What do you think of the President ?..... Not much. But I'll tell you what I think.

Dialogue B

Listen

Louise Have you nearly finished ?
Robin You're joking. I've got to read an article. It's got ten pages.
Louise Oh, well. Never mind.
Robin You know, I sometimes wonder if it's worth it. All these problems.
Louise Oh. I'm sure it is. In spite of the problems.
Robin That's what dad says.
Louise He's probably right. He usually is.
Listen and repeat

B1 Listen

A : I've got to read an article. It's got ten pages.
B : It's a ten-page article.
C : It's a ten-page article.
A : I have to write three hundred words for this composition.
B : It's a three-hundred-word composition.
C : It's a three-hundred-word composition.

Now you do the same

I've got to read an article. It's got ten pages..... It's a ten-page article.
I have to write three hundred words for this composition ..... It's a three-hundred-word composition.
They give us three hours to do the exam.... It's a three-hour exam.
The course lasts four years..... It's a four-year course.

B2 Listen

A : I sometimes wonder if it's worth it. All these problems.
B : I'm sure it is. In spite of the problems.
C : I'm sure it is. In spite of the problems.
A : I don't know if I can carry on. All this worry.
B : I'm sure you can. In spite of the worry.
C : I'm sure you can. In spite of the worry.

Now you do the same

I sometimes wonder if it's worth it. All these problems ..... I'm sure it is. In spite of the problems.
I don't know if I can carry on. All this worry ..... I'm sure you can. In spite of the worry.
I'm not sure I'll pass the exam. All these difficulties ..... I'm sure you will. In spite of the difficulties.
I doubt if I'll do well. The maths is very hard ..... I'm sure you will. In spite of the maths.

Dialogue C

Listen

Robin Right. That's it. I can't do any more. I feel like a break.
Louise Yes. It's time for a break. Shall we have a drink ?
Robin Mmm. Good idea.
Louise What do you want ?
Robin Oh, anything. Whatever you like.
Louise Coffee ?
Robin Fine... Abracadabra !
Louise Why ever did you say that, Robin ?

New words :

- abracadabra *(n) (interj)*

/ˌæbrəkəˈdæbrə/ meaningless word said as a supposedly magic formula esp by *conjurers* (người làm trò ảo thuật) while performing *magic tricks* (trò ảo thuật) *"Abracadabra, said the conjurer as he pulled the rabbit from the hat.*

Robin I don't know. I just like the word, I suppose.
Louise What you need is some fresh air !
Listen and repeat

C1 Listen
A : a break
B : It's time for a break.
C : It's time for a break.
A : a coffee
B : It's time for a coffee.
C : It's time for a coffee.

Now you do the same
a break ..... It's time for a break.
a coffee ..... It's time for a coffee.
a rest ..... It's time for a rest.
bed ..... it's time for bed.

C2 Listen
A : What do you want ?
B : Whatever you like.
C : Whatever you like.
A : Where do you want to go tomorrow ?
B : Wherever you like.
C : Wherever you like.

Now you do the same
What do you want ? ..... Whatever you like.
Where do you want to go tomorrow ? ..... Wherever you like.
Which programme would you like to watch ? .....
Whichever you like.
Who shall we invite to the party on Saturday .....
Whoever you like.
How shall we invite them. By phone or by post ? .....
However you like.
When shall we do it ? ..... Whenever you like.

Listening

Listen
Leo Rembrandt is an unusual kind of artist. He creates his work on people's bodies. Leo is a tattoo artist with an international reputation. I invited him along to the studio to talk to us this morning.

Interviewer Well, thank you for coming, Leo. I know you're very busy. Tattoos have become very fashionable, haven't they ?
Leo Yes that's right, especially with younger people. I've got more work than I can really manage but I could probably do something for you...
Interviewer No. No thank you Leo. Not today. I think I'd rather just talk to you. How long have you been a tattoo artist ?
Leo Oh, about thirty years. Since I left school.
Interviewer And how did you start ? Is there a school for tattooists ?
Leo No. I picked it up from my father. I used to sit and watch him working. He taught me how to use the needles and mix the colours.
Interviewer And what kinds of people come to you?
Leo Oh, all kinds. Young, old, rich poor... a lot of teenagers these days.
Interviewer Teenagers ?
Leo Oh, yes. Of course, if they're under sixteen they need their parents' permission. I wouldn't do it if they didn't have that.
Interviewer Quite. What kinds of things do they ask you to do ?
Leo Oh, all kinds of things. I've got a lot of traditional designs... you know flowers, birds, ships and snakes... snakes are very popular. I'll do whatever the customer wants. Some people bring their own designs.
Interviewer And where do people usually have the tattoo. On the arm... the chest ?
Leo Oh, yeah, the arm, the chest, the back. Wherever the customer wants it. You'd never believe some of the places where people have tattoos.
Interviewer Hmm. I can imagine. Doesn't it hurt ? Aren't the needles sharp ?
Leo It hurts a bit but not as much as in the old days. We use electric needles now.
Interviewer Tattoos are very difficult to remove, aren't they ?
Leo Yes, they are. But I always warn people about that before I start.
Interviewer Tell me Leo. Have you got any tattoos?
Leo Me ? No. Not me. I wouldn't have a tattoo if you paid me.

Now listen again and answer the questions when you hear this sound BELL
1
Interviewer Well, thank you for coming Leo. I know you're very busy. Tattoos have become very fashionable haven't they ?
BELL
Does the interviewer want a tattoo ? .....
No, he doesn't.
What would he rather do ? .....
He'd rather just talk to Leo.

Leo Yes that's right, especially with younger people. I've got more work than I can really manage but I could probably do something for you...

Interviewer No. No thank you Leo. Not today. I think I'd rather just talk to you. How long have you been a tattoo artist ?

Leo Oh, about thirty years. Since I left school.

2

Interviewer And how did you start ? Is there a school for tattooists ?

Leo No. I picked it up from my father. I used to sit and watch him working. He taught me how to use the needles and mix the colours.

Interviewer And what kinds of people come to you?

Leo Oh, all kinds. Young, old, rich, poor... a lot of teenagers these days.

Interviewer Teenagers ?

Leo Oh, yes. Of course, if they're under sixteen they need their parents' permission. I wouldn't do it if they didn't have that.

3

Interviewer Quite. What kinds of things do they ask you to do ?

Leo Oh, all kinds of things. I've got a lot of traditional designs... you know flowers, birds, ships and snakes... snakes are very popular. I'll do whatever the customer wants. Some people bring their own designs.

Interviewer And where do people usually have the tattoo. On the arm... the chest ?

Leo Oh, yeah, the arm, the chest, the back. Wherever the customer wants it. You'd never believe some of the places where people have tattoos.

4

Interviewer Hmm. I can imagine. Doesn't it hurt ? Aren't the needles sharp ?

Leo It hurts a bit but not as much as in the old days. We use electric needles now.

Interviewer Tattoos are very difficult to remove, aren't they ?

Leo Yes, they are. But I always warn people about that before I start.

Interviewer Tell me Leo. Have you got any tattoos?

Leo Me ? No. Not me. I wouldn't have a tattoo if you paid me.

When did Leo leave school ?.....
He left school thirty years ago.

BELL

Who did Leo learn from ?.....
He learned from his father.
What do customers under sixteen need ?.....
They need their parents' permission.

BELL

What designs will Leo do for the customer?
.....Whatever the customer wants
Where on the customer's body will he put the tattoo ? .....Wherever the customer wants it.

BELL

Is having a tattoo more or less painful than it used to be ?.....It's less painful
What kinds of needles are used ?
..... Electric needles are used.
What wouldn't Leo have even if you paid him ?
..... He wouldn't have a tattoo.

Open conversation

Listen and reply

A : Would you like a tattoo ?
B : .....
A : Would you have a tattoo if I paid you ?
B : .....
A : If you were going to have a tattoo what design would you choose ?
B : .....
A : Where on the body would you have it done?
B : .....
A : What colour would you have ?
B : .....
A : Would you want people to see it ?
B : .....
A : That's the end of section sixteen.

Unit 65 Going To The Doctor's Đi khám bác sĩ

VOCABULARY

- **appetite** *(n)* /'æpɪtaɪt/ physical desire, esp for food or pleasure = sự ăn ngon miệng
  When I was ill, I completely lost my ~. Don't spoil your ~ by eating sweets before meals.
- **backbone** *(n)* /'bækbəʊn/ xương sống
- **bruise** *(n)* /bru:z/ injury caused by a blow to the body or to a fruit, discolouring the skin but not breaking it = vết thâm, bầm. *He was covered in ~ s after falling his bicycle.*
  bruise *(v)* cause a bruise or bruises on sb / st. *Her face was badly ~ d in the crash.*
- **dizzy** *(adj)* /'dɪzɪ/ (of a person) feeling as if everything is spinning around; unable to balance; confused = chóng mặt
  After another glass of whisky I began to feel ~.
  dizziness *(n)*
- **feverish** *(adj)* /'fi:vərɪʃ/ having a fever; caused or accompanied by a fever = hơi sốt
  The child's body felt ~.
- **first – aid kit** *(n)* /fɜ:st eɪd kɪt/ bộ dụng cụ sơ cứu.
- **gland** *(n)* /glænd/ organ that separates from the blood those substances that are to be used by or removed from the body = tuyến
  Sweat ~ s; suffer from swollen ~ s.
- **graze** *(n)* /greɪz/ raw place where the skin is scraped = vết trầy, vết đứt can
- **inflamed** *(adj)* /ɪn'fleɪmd/ ~ (by / with st) (of a part of the body) red, hot and sore (eg because of infection) = viêm, sưng đỏ
  ~ eyes; a nose ~ by an infection.
- **legionaires' disease** *(n)* /ˌli:dʒə'neəˌdɪˌzi:z/ (medical) form of bacterial pneumonia = viêm phổi do vi khuẩn
- **measles** *(n)* /'mi:zlz/ bệnh sởi
- **painkiller** *(n)* /'peɪnkɪlə/ drug that reduces pain = thuốc giảm đau *She's on (ie taking) ~s*
- **prescribe** *(v)* /prɪs'kraɪb/ ~ st (for st) advise or order the use of (esp a medicine, remedy, etc) = ghi toa *She ~ d some pills to help me to sleep.*
  prescription *(n)* /prɪ'skɪpʃn/ doctor's written instruction for the composition and use of a medicine = toa thuốc.
- **rash** *(n)* /ræʃ/ patch of tiny red spots on the skin = mẫn đỏ *I break out / come out in a ~ if I eat chocolate*
- **sneeze** *(v)* /sni:z/ nhảy mũi *With all that dust about, he couldn't stop ~ zing. Use a handkerchief when you ~.*
  sneeze *(n)* sự nhảy mũi *coughs and sneezes.*
- **stitches** *(n)* /'stɪtʃɪz/ mủi khâu
- **swollen** *(adj)* /'swəʊlən/ sưng phồng
- **symptom** *(n)* /'sɪmptəm/ triệu chứng
- **thermometer** *(n)* /θə'mɒmɪtə/ nhiệt kế
- **unbutton** *(v)* /ʌn'bʌtn/ mở nút áo ra
- **vomit** *(v)* /'vɒmɪt/ throw up = ói, mửa

EXPRESSIONS

What seems to be the trouble ?	Ông đau làm sao?
I haven't been feeling too well	Hôm nay tôi thấy không được khỏe trong người lắm
There's a lot of it going round at the moment	Hiện giờ bệnh này đang phổ biến mọi nơi
What are the symptoms ?	Triệu chứng thế nào ?
It looks worse than it is	Vết thương thực ra không tệ như vậy đâu
Does it hurt anywhere else ?	Em có còn đau chỗ nào nữa không ?
They don't seem to be doing me any good	Thuốc đó dường như uống chẳng thấy đỡ chút nào cả
You're doing very well	Bà đang khỏe lắm đấy
A touch of flu	Dợm, hơi bị cúm.

PROPER NAMES

Casey	/'keɪsɪ/
Craig Williams	/kreɪg 'wɪljəmz/
Mallard	/'mælərd/
Singh	/sɪŋ/
Wayne	/weɪn/

USAGE :

1/- To live to be a hundred : to live to be old/to a great age

2/- Near (not far from) - nearly (almost) - large (of big size) - largely (to a great extent)
hard (firm, difficult) - hardly (almost not, scarcely)
- late (not punctual) - lately (recently)

3/- Noun + ache : A kind of

EX : backache, heartache, headache, toothache, stomachache...

4/ To have a pain in stomach/back/knee/arm...

5/ To give s/o a pain in the neck/ass : disturb/irritate s/o (*chọc tức*)

GRAMMAR NOTES : Compound Nouns

Formation :

a) [Noun + Noun]

EX : Casualty department, blood pressure, insurance policy, consumer market, raincoat

b) [Noun + gerund]

EX : Blood testing, truck driving, air-cooling, seafood processing, coal-mining.

c) [Gerund + noun]

EX : Driving licence, dining room, swimming pool, waiting list, fishing ground

Notes : - In these combinations, the first noun is usually stressed. EX : 'blood pressure, 'truck driving, 'waiting list, 'driving licence...

- In place - name combinations, both words receive equal stress.

EX : "Waterloo" Bridge, "Lamson" Square, "King's'" Road

- In combinations where the last word is "street" "Street" is unstressed.

EX : Oxford Street, "Bond Street", Lelo i Street...

Exercise 1

List as many words as you can about :

a illness

b medical treatment

c parts of the body.

Wayne fell off his bicycle. He's in the casualty department at the local hospital. Dr Singh is examining him.

Doctor Hello, Wayne, isn't it ? You've had a bit of a fall. What were you doing ? Going too fast ?

Wayne Yes, doctor. I fell off going round a corner.

Doctor You'd better get undressed then, and we'll take a look at you. Mm. That's a nasty cut. I'll have to put a couple of stitches in that.

Wayne I've got a cut here too, doctor.

Doctor It looks worse than it is. It's only a graze. The nurse will clean it up for you. It'll sting, but that's all. Now, does it hurt anywhere else ?

Wayne I've got a pain in my arm. It's very sore, and it feels stiff.

Listen to the conversation and tick any words in your list that are used in the conversation.

Craig Williams has gone to see Dr Casey at the Health Centre. He's in his surgery now.

Wayne bị té xe đạp. Anh ta đang ở trong phòng cấp cứu của bệnh viện khu vực. Bác sĩ Singh đang khám cho anh ta.

BS : Wayne phải không ? Em bị té khá nặng đấy. Lúc đó em làm sao vậy ? Chạy quá nhanh hả ?

W : Vâng, thưa bác sĩ. Em bị té lúc quẹo qua khúc quanh.

BS : Em nên cởi áo ra, chúng tôi khám xem sao. Chà, vết cắt trầm trọng đấy. Tôi phải khâu vài mũi ở đó.

W : Em còn bị một vết cắt ở đây nữa, thưa bác sĩ.

BS : Trông nó tệ hơn thực trạng đấy. Chỉ bị trầy da thôi. Cô y tá sẽ rửa sạch vết thương cho em. Nó sẽ rát đấy, nhưng không sao đâu. Nào, em còn đau chỗ nào nữa không ?

W : Em thấy đau ở cánh tay. Nó nhức lắm và em thấy tê cứng.

Doctor Well, there's nothing broken, but you've bruised your shoulder. It'll be sore for a few days. Now, did you bang your head at all ?

Wayne Yes, I did. I fell onto the bike. But it doesn't hurt now.

Doctor Did you feel dizzy ?

Wayne No, not at all.

Doctor Look up there, I'm just going to shine this light in your eye. No, that's fine. I'll just do the stitches, and the nurse will put a dressing on it. Then you can go home.

BS : À, không bị gãy xương đâu, nhưng vai em đã bị bầm. Nó sẽ nhức trong mấy ngày. Nào, em có bị va đầu vào vật gì không ?

W : Thưa có. Em bị va vào xe đạp, Nhưng bây giờ thì hết đau rồi.

BS : Em có thấy choáng váng không ?

W : Dạ không, hoàn toàn không.

BS : Nhìn lên đây này, tôi sẽ chiếu đèn này vào mắt em. Không sao, tốt cả thôi. Bây giờ tôi sẽ khâu vài mũi, rồi cô y tá sẽ băng lại cho. Sau đó, em có thể ra về.

Mrs Mallard has gone to see Dr Gillespie, her family doctor.

Mrs Mallard Good morning, doctor.

Doctor Ah, good morning, Mrs Mallard. What can I do for you this time ?

Mrs Mallard It's those pills, doctor. They don't seem to be doing me any good.

Doctor Really ? What's wrong ?

Mrs Mallard What isn't wrong with me, doctor! It's old age, I suppose.

Doctor You're doing very well, Mrs Mallard ! You'll live to be a hundred !

Bà Mallard đi khám Bác sĩ Gillespie, là bác sĩ riêng của bà.

Bà M : Chào bác sĩ.

Bác sĩ : A, chào bà Mallard. Lần này tôi có thể giúp được gì cho bà ?

Bà M : Thưa bác sĩ những viên thuốc này dường như không làm tôi cảm thấy đỡ hơn chút nào cả.

BS : Thật chứ ? Bà đau chỗ nào ?

Bà M : Chỗ nào mà lại không đau hả bác sĩ ! Tôi nghĩ là do tuổi già.

BS : Sức khỏe bà rất tốt, bà Mallard. Bà sẽ sống đến một trăm tuổi !

FRIARY INSURANCE Norwich — **CONFIDENTIAL**

Name	Children	Address .....
Marital status	Occupation	.....
Date of birth	.....	.....

Measurements

Height	Chest (a) normal	Waist .....
Weight	(b) expanded	Hips .....
Blood pressure	Pulse rate	Vision .....

Medical history (please give approximate dates where possible)

Measles	Vaccinations and inoculations	Please give details of any
Mumps	Polio	hospital treatment or
Rubella (German measles)	Scarlet fever	operations (not including
Chicken-pox	Diphtheria	normal pregnancy)
Whooping cough	Whooping cough	.....
Other serious illnesses ...	Measles	.....
(give details below)	Tetanus	.....
.....	.....	.....

Mrs Mallard I've got this terrible cough, doctor, and I've still got that rash on my hands. And the backache ! I can hardly walk sometimes. You don't think it's that legionnaire's disease, do you ? I've been reading about it in the paper.

Doctor No, no... no chance of that. You're very fit for your age.

Mrs Mallard Pardon ? Anyway, I've nearly finished the old pills, doctor. Can you give me a different colour next time ?

Exercise 2

Rosemary Key wants to take out a life insurance policy. The insurance company has sent her to see a doctor for a check up. This is part of the form he has to complete.

Practise their conversation. (*Can I take your... ?/ Have you ever had... ?/ Have you been vaccinated against... ?* etc.)

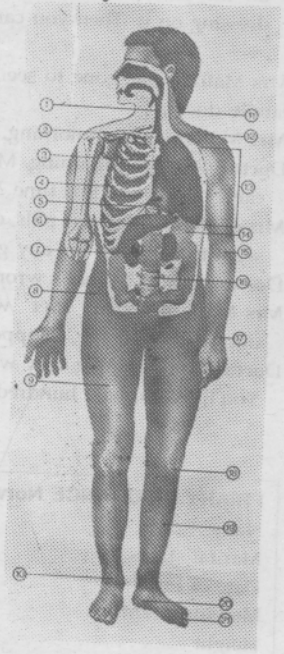
1 throat	11 neck	1. họng
2 collar bone	12 shoulder	2. xương đòn
3 lung	13 chest	3. phổi
4 rib	14 stomach	4. xương sườn
5 heart	15 elbow	5. tim
6 liver	16 spine	6. gan
7 kidney	17 wrist	7. thận
8 hip	18 knee	8. hông
9 thigh	19 shin	9. đùi
10 ankle	20 heel	10. mắt cá chân
	21 toe	

Bà M : Tôi bị ho dữ dội, bác sĩ ạ, và tôi còn bị mẩn ngứa trên hai bàn tay. Lại còn đau lưng nữa ! Có lúc tôi khó lòng mà đi được. Bác sĩ có cho rằng đó là một loại bệnh sưng phổi do vi khuẩn không ? Tôi đã có đọc về bệnh ấy ở trong báo.

BS : Không, không đâu... không có triệu chứng của bệnh đó đâu. Ở tuổi bà như vậy là khỏe lắm đấy.

Bà M : Bác sĩ nói gì vậy ? Dù sao thì tôi cũng đã dùng gần hết số thuốc cũ rồi. Lần tới bác sĩ có thể cho tôi một loại thuốc màu khác không ?

11. cổ
12. vai
13. ngực
14. dạ dày
15. khuỷu tay
16. cột sống
17. cổ tay
18. đầu gối
19. xương ống quyển
20. gót
21. ngón chân



PRACTICE

Exercise 1

Can you list six things which might be found in a first-aid kit ?

1 .....
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....

Exercise 2

This is a page from Dr Finlay's diary. Look at the notes on Mr Cook. Try and imagine why the other patients came to see him. Write notes about them.

FEBRUARY 3rd, Monday WEEK 5

9.00 Mr Cook – backache. Has had it for 3 days. Prescribed painkiller – 2 days off work.

9.15 Mrs Keeping

9.30 Miss Harper

9.45 Mr Casey

10.00 Stephen Henchard (age 3)

10.15 Diane Bennett (age 1)

10.30 Mr Peters

Exercise 3

Clues (for answers, turn to the last page).

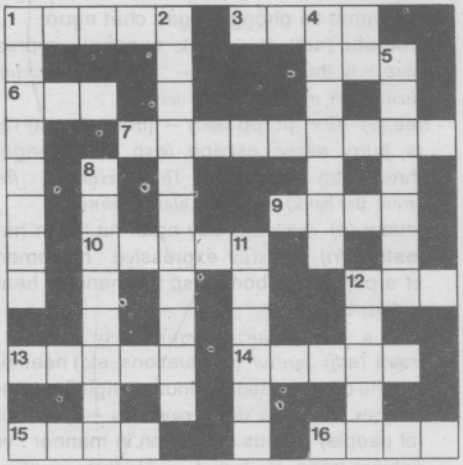
Across

1 It connects the hand to the arm. (5).
3 'You've got a... (4). It might be measles.
6 She left hospital when the baby was six days... (3)
7 'I'm going to... (9) a painkiller for you'.
9 'I stood on a nail. It went into my... (4)
10 You... (5) if you get food poisoning.
12 'It's just a cold. You'd better spend a... (3) in bed.'
13 Another word for your backbone. (5)
14 'You fell over. Well, it's only a.... (5). You won't need a bandage.'
15 A pain. (4)
16 'Look up. I'm going to shine this light in your... " (4)

Down

1 '... (8) cough' is very dangerous for young babies.
2 You take someone's temperature with this... (11)
4 'She was badly cut in the accident. Now her face is... (7)

Medical crossword



5 Sometimes called 'German measles.' (7)
8 His temperature's high. He feels very hot and... (8)
11 'Open your mouth, and stick out your...' (6)
12 'After the blow on the head, I felt... ' (5)

Unit 66 A Message To The Stars

Thông điệp gởi các vì sao

VOCABULARY

- **alien** *(adj)* /'eɪlɪən/ unfamiliar, strange = xa lạ
  an ~ environment; ~ customs.
- **being** *(n)* /'bi:ɪŋ/ living creature = người, sinh vật
  living human ~ s; a strange ~ from another planet
- **billion** *(n)* /'bɪlɪən/ tỉ
- **chilling** *(adj)* /'tʃɪlɪŋ/ frightening = đáng sợ
  a ~ ghost story.
- **death – ray machine** *(n)* /deθ reɪ mə'ʃi:n/ máy phát tia phóng xạ gây chết người
- **dramatic** *(adj)* /drə'mætɪk/ exciting; impressive = lý thú, tuyệt vời
  ~ changes, development. Her opening words were ~.
- **flee** *(v)* /fli:/ (pt, pp *fled*) ~ (from sb / st) run or hurry away; escape (esp from danger, threat, etc) = trốn thoát
  The customers fled (from the bank) when the alarm sounded.
- **galaxy** *(n)* /'gæləksɪ/ dãy ngân hà, thiên hà
- **gesture** *(n)* /'dʒestʃə/ expressive movement of a part of the body, esp the hand or head = điệu bộ
  With a ~ of despair; communicating by ~.
- **grave** *(adj)* /greɪv/ (of situations, etc) needing careful consideration; serious = nghiêm trọng
  ~ news, danger; a sick person in a ~ condition.
  (of people) serious or solemn in manner : vẻ nghiêm trang
  He looked ~. "Is there anything wrong ?" I asked.
- **interpret** *(v)* /ɪn'tɜ:prɪt/ explain (st which is not easily understandable) = diễn giải
  ~ a difficult text, sb's dream
  interpretation *(n)* /ɪn,tɜ:prɪ'teɪʃn/ = sự giải thích.
  What ~ would you put / place on them?
- **light year** *(n)* /laɪt jɪə/ năm ánh sáng
- **man – made** *(adj)* /mæn meɪd/ artificial; not naturally made = nhân tạo
  ~ fibres; chemicals.
- **Mars** *(n)* /mɑ:z/ Sao Hỏa
- **Martian** *(n)* /'mɑ:ʃən/ người sao Hỏa
- **naked** *(adj)* /'neɪkɪd/ without clothes on = trần trụi, khỏa thân
  a ~ body; as ~ as the day he was born.
- **outer space** *(n)* /,aʊtə 'speɪs/ = space = không gian, khoảng không vũ trụ
- **overfly** *(v)* /,əʊvə'flaɪ/ (pt **overflew** /-flu:/, pp **overflown** /-fləʊn/) fly over (a city, country, etc) = bay qua
  The journey back took longer than normal, because the plane could not ~ the war zone.
- **overrun** *(v)* /,əʊvə'rʌn/ (pt **overran** /-'ræn/, pp **overrun**) (esp passive) 1. spread over and occupy (a space) in great numbers = tràn qua
  a country overrun by enemy troops
  2. continue beyond or exceeded (a time allowed, etc) = vượt quá
  The lecturer overran by 10 minutes. The news programme overran the alloted time.
- **oversimplify** *(v)* /,əʊvə'sɪmplɪfaɪ/ (pt, pp – *fied*) (esp passive) state or explain (a problem, fact, etc) too simply for the truth to be told.
  an over – simplified analysis of the problems we face.
  over-simplification *(n)* /,əʊvə,sɪmplɪfɪ'keɪʃn/
- **pictorial** *(adj)* /pɪk'tɔ:rɪəl/ 1. represented in a picture or pictures = có hình ảnh
  a ~ record of the wedding.
  2. having pictures; illustrated = có ảnh minh họa
  a ~ calendar; magazine.
- **plaque** *(n)* /plɑ:k/ flat (usu round) piece of stone, metal or porcelain fixed on a wall as an ornament or a memorial = tấm thẻ
  A simple ~ marks the spot where the martyr died
- **radio frequency** *(n)* /'reɪdɪəʊ 'frɪkwənsɪ/ tần số vô tuyến
- **recall** *(v)* /rɪ'kɔ:l/ ~ sb (from...) (to...) order sb to return (from a place) = gọi trở về
  ~ an ambassador (from his post)
- **resistance** *(n)* /rɪ'zɪstəns/ ~ (to st / sb) (action of) using force to oppose st/sb= sự kháng cự
  break down, overcome, put an end to armed ~.
- **response** *(n)* /rɪ'spɒns/ 1. ~ (to sb / st) answer = sự hồi âm
  She made no ~.
  2. reaction = sự phản ứng
  The tax cuts produced a favourable ~ from the public.
- **revolve** *(v)* /rɪ'vɒlv/ ~ (around / round st) = move in a circular orbit = quay quanh.
  The earth ~ s round the sun.

- **slow – moving** *(adj)* /sləʊ 'mu:vɪŋ/ moving slowly = chậm chạp
- **solemn** *(adj)* /'sɒləm/ done, said, etc in a serious and commited way, after deep thought = nghiêm trọng. *~ voice, promise.*
  solemnness *(n)*
- **state reserve trooper** *(n)* /steɪt,rɪ'zɜ:v tru:pə/ đội quân dự bị nhà nước
- **switchboard** *(n)* /'swɪtʃbɔ:d/ (staff controlling a) central panel with a set of switches for making telephone connections or operating electrical circuits = Tổng đài *on duty at the ~; ~ operators.*
- **strangled** *(adj)* /strægŋgld/ nghẹn ngào, tắt nghẹn
  strangle *(v)* /'strægŋgl/ (passive) restrict the utterance of st = tắt nghẹn *a strangled cry*
- **universe** *(n)* /'ju:nɪvɜ:s/ vũ trụ

EXPRESSIONS

so far without success đến nay vẫn chưa thành công
ranging in style from... to... sắp xếp theo thể loại từ... ... tới
to take over tiếp quản
It could be better spent... tốt hơn nên dùng tiền vào...
to tune in to CBS radio vặn đài CBS
to break off đột ngột dừng lại

PROPER NAMES

- Beatles /'bi:tlz/
- Beethoven /'beɪthəʊvn , 'bi:thəʊvn/
- Cape Kenedy /'keɪp 'kenədɪ/
- Chuck Berry /'tʃʌk 'berɪ/
- Earth /ɜ:(r)θ/
- Jupiter /'dʒu:pɪtə/
- Mars /ma:z/
- Mercury /'mɜ:kjurɪ/
- Mozart /'məuza:t , 'məutsa:t/
- Neptune /'neptju:n/
- Pluto /'plu:təʊ/
- Saturn /'sætə:n/
- Uranus /'juərənəs/
- Venus /'vɪnəs/

GRAMMAR NOTES

Sentence formation : 1. There + to be + no reason why + subject + should (not) + verb + object

EX : - *There is no reason why* I should not do what I want to (không có lý gì mà tôi lại không làm những điều mình thích)

- *There is no reason why* I have to get married to the one that I do not love at all. (Không có lý gì mà tôi phải kết hôn với một người mình không chút yêu thương)

Ought to, Must, Have to... may also be used instead of *Should.*

2. "It would be an interesting, but rather *slow-moving* conversation", and "The first *man-made* object to leave solar system was the Pioneer 10 spacecraft"

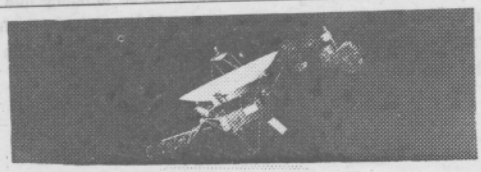
"Slow-moving" and "man-made" are both compound adjectives. Compound adjectives are formed from certain parts of speech.

- "Slow-moving" : Adverb + Present Participle (the adverb here modifies the present participle of an intransitive verb)

Slow-moving conversation : conversation that moves slow.
Hard-beating heart : heart that beats hard
Long-suffering, far-reaching, fast-running... (give some more examples).

- "*Man-made*" : Noun + Past Participle.

Man-made object : object that is made by man
Moss-covered wall : wall that is covered with moss
Smoke-blackened, fur-lined, horse-pulled... (give some more examples)

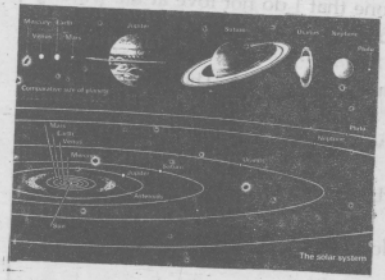


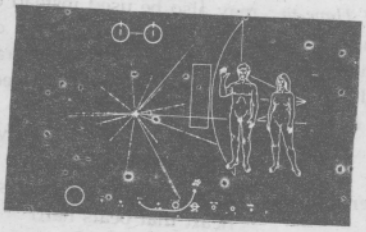
Our planet Earth is one of nine planets revolving around the Sun, a fairly small and ordinary star, which lies in the outer areas of the Milky Way galaxy. There are about 250 billion stars in our galaxy, and billions of galaxies in the universe. People have always wondered about the possibility of intelligent life forms on other planets. In recent years this has become serious scientific speculation. Some scientists believe that there must be large numbers of stars with planets which could support living intelligent beings. Perhaps we shall never know. The nearest star is 4.3 light years away. A light year is the distance covered by light (travelling at almost 300,000 kilometres a second) in one year. It would take the fastest Earth spacecraft about 40,000 years to reach the nearest star.

For a number of years radio telescopes have been trying to pick up signals from outer space, so far without success. There are, however, millions of possible radio frequencies, and there is no reason why a completely alien civilization should not use a different type of communication, such as X-rays or even a type of wave we have not yet discovered. Suppose contact were made with beings 300 light years away. By the time we had sent our reply, and received their response, the earth would be 600 years older. It would be an interesting, but rather slow-moving conversation !

Trái đất của chúng ta là một trong chín hành tinh xoay quanh mặt trời, một ngôi sao bình thường và khá nhỏ, nằm ở vùng ngoài của một thiên hà có tên là Giải Ngân Hà. Có khoảng 250 tỷ ngôi sao trong thiên hà của chúng ta, và hàng tỷ thiên hà trong vũ trụ. Người ta vẫn thường tự hỏi liệu có khả năng có những dạng sống thông minh trên những hành tinh khác hay không. Trong những năm gần đây, vấn đề này đã trở thành một giả đoán khoa học mang tính chất nghiêm túc. Một số khoa học gia tin rằng chắc phải có rất nhiều ngôi sao với những hành tinh có thể đủ điều kiện cho những sinh vật thông minh tồn tại. Có lẽ chúng ta sẽ chẳng bao giờ biết được. Ngôi sao gần nhất cách chúng ta 4, 3 năm ánh sáng. Một năm ánh sáng là khoảng cách mà ánh sáng di chuyển với tốc độ gần 300.000 km trong một giây – trong một năm. Phi thuyền nhanh nhất từ quả đất cũng phải mất khoảng 40.000 năm mới đến được ngôi sao gần nhất.

Trong nhiều năm các viễn vọng kính vô tuyến đã cố gắng thu tín hiệu từ khoảng không bên ngoài, cho đến nay vẫn chưa thành công. Tuy nhiên có hàng triệu tần số vô tuyến khả dĩ, và cũng không có lý do tại sao một nền văn minh hoàn toàn xa lạ lại không dùng một loại phương tiện truyền thông khác hẳn, như tia X, hoặc thậm chí một loại sóng mà chúng ta chưa khám phá được. Giả sử chúng ta có thể tiếp xúc với những sinh vật cách xa ta 300 năm ánh sáng. Vào lúc mà chúng ta gởi đi tín hiệu và nhận được câu trả lời của họ, trái đất đã trải qua 600 năm. Đó sẽ là một cuộc đối thoại thú vị nhưng khá chậm chạp.





Pioneer 10

The first man-made object to leave our solar system was the Pioneer 10 spacecraft. It was launched from Cape Kennedy on March 3rd, 1972. It was designed to pass close to the planet Jupiter and then continue into deep space. A gold plaque, about 15cm by 22cm, was placed on the spacecraft. On the plaque is a diagram

PHI THUYỀN PIONEER 10

Vật thể nhân tạo đầu tiên rời Thái Dương Hệ của chúng ta là phi thuyền Pioneer 10. Nó được phóng đi từ mũi Kennedy vào ngày 3 tháng 3 năm 1972. Phi thuyền được thiết kế để đi ngang qua gần Mộc Tinh. Và rồi tiến vào vùng không gian sâu thẳm. Một thẻ bằng vàng kích thước 15 cm x 22 cm được gắn trên phi thuyền. Trên tấm thẻ

showing the solar system, and its location in the galaxy. There is also a drawing of a naked man and woman, standing in front of a picture of the spacecraft. The man's right hand is raised in a gesture of friendship. It is unlikely, however, that the plaque will ever be seen again. If it were found by an alien civilization it seems improbable that they would be able to interpret it.

The Voyager mission

Every 175 years the large outer planets – Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune – are in such a position that a spacecraft from Earth can fly past all of them. The two Voyager spacecraft were launched in 1977 to photograph and investigate these planets. Voyager I passed Jupiter in December 1978 and reached Saturn in November 1980. It sent back dramatic pictures of the rings of Saturn and discovered previously unknown moons. It then left the solar system. Voyager II was designed to reach Saturn in July 1981, Uranus in January 1986 and Neptune in August 1989 before leaving the solar system to travel silently through space forever.

As well as a pictorial plaque, Voyager II carries a gold sprayed disc. The disc contains greetings in 60 languages, 140 photographs, and one and a half hours of music and songs, ranging in style from Beethoven and Mozart to the Beatles and Chuck Berry.

Exercise 1

Imagine you could send objects, weighing up to five kilos which would give an impression of civilization on Earth. This would include a record and a video tape with photographs and film. What would you choose to send and why?

PRACTICE

The Martians Are Coming

At eight o'clock on the evening of Sunday, October 30th 1938 thousands of Americans tuned in to CBS radio for 'The Mercury Theatre of the Air.' Just after the programme began it was interrupted by what sounded like the weather forecast. A minute or so later it was replaced by a programme of dance music. Suddenly a solemn voice came over the air to warn Americans. 'Ladies and gentlemen, I have a grave announcement to make...'

có sơ đồ Thái Dương Hệ và vị trí của nó trong Thiên Hà. Cũng có hình vẽ một người đàn ông và một người đàn bà khỏa thân đứng trước ảnh một phi thuyền không gian. Bàn tay phải của người đàn ông giơ lên với một cử chỉ thân thiện. Tuy nhiên tấm thẻ này có thể không bao giờ còn được nhìn thấy nữa. Nếu một nền văn minh xa lạ tìm thấy nó, thì dường như họ cũng khó có thể giải đoán được nội dung của nó.

CHUYẾN BAY VOYAGER

Cứ mỗi 175 năm các hành tinh lớn ở xa mặt trời – Mộc tinh, Thổ tinh, Tử vương tinh, và Hải vương tinh – đều nằm trong một vị trí mà một phi thuyền từ trái đất có thể bay ngang qua tất cả. Vào năm 1977, hai phi thuyền Voyager được phóng lên để chụp ảnh và nghiên cứu những hành tinh này. Phi thuyền Voyager I bay ngang qua Mộc tinh vào tháng 12 năm 1978 và đến Thổ tinh tháng 11 năm 1980. Phi thuyền này gởi về những hình ảnh lý thú chụp các vòng chung quanh Thổ tinh và khám phá được những vệ tinh mà trước đây người ta chưa biết tới. Rồi nó rời khỏi Thái Dương Hệ. Phi thuyền Voyager II được thiết kế để đến Thổ tinh vào tháng 7 năm 1981, Tử Vương tinh vào tháng 1 năm 1986 và Hải Vương tinh vào tháng 8 năm 1989, trước khi rời Thái Dương Hệ để lặng lẽ bay vào không gian vĩnh viễn.

Cùng với một tấm thẻ có vẽ hình, phi thuyền Voyager II còn mang theo một đĩa mạ vàng. Đĩa này có ghi những lời chào bằng 60 thứ tiếng, 140 tấm ảnh, cùng với âm nhạc và các bài hát dài một tiếng rưỡi gồm các thể loại từ Beethoven, Mozart, tới nhóm The Beatles và Chuck Berry.

Exercise 2

Space research costs billions of dollars. Some people think that the money would be better spent on more practical projects here on Earth. What do you think ?

NGƯỜI HỎA TINH ĐANG ĐẾN

Lúc 8 giờ buổi tối Chủ nhật ngày 30 tháng 10 năm 1938, hàng ngàn người Mỹ bắt đài CBS truyền thanh để nghe chương trình "The Mercury Theatre of the Air". Ngay sau khi chương trình vừa bắt đầu, chương trình bị gián đoạn với âm thanh nghe có vẻ như là dự báo thời tiết. Một vài phút sau lại thế vào chương trình nhạc khiêu vũ. Thình lình một giọng nói nghiêm trọng cất lên trên không thông báo đến dân Mỹ : "Kính thưa quí vị. Tôi có một thông báo nghiêm trọng..."

The speaker then went on to describe how strange beings from the planet Mars had landed in North America. They were using poisonous gas and death-ray machines to sweep all resistance before them in a series of bloody battles. The USA was being taken over by creatures from outer space!

The broadcast continued with a confusing series of announcements, often broken by long, chilling silences. The voice of the President was heard appealing to people not to panic. An announcer on the top of the CBS skyscraper in New York described how Manhattan was being overrun. His commentary broke off in a horrible, strangled scream.

That was the end of the programme. Its producer, Orson Welles, and the cast of actors left the studio. They had completed their radio play, which had been based on 'War of the Worlds,' a science-fiction novel by HG Wells. They didn't realize what effect their play had had. Thousands of people had fled from their homes. The roads were jammed with cars racing for the hills. Some of the cars were piled high with furniture. State reserve troopers rushed to volunteer to defend the world. Sailors in the US Navy were recalled to their ships in New York harbour. Switchboards were completely jammed with people trying to call relatives and friends. In the South, people were praying in the streets. Some people even claimed that they had seen the Martians. The next morning's newspapers revealed that it had only been a radio play. It had all been a terrible mistake.

Rồi người phát ngôn viên tiếp tục mô tả cách những sinh vật lạ từ Hỏa tinh đã đáp xuống Bắc Mỹ. Họ đang dùng hơi độc và máy phát tia phóng xạ gây chết người để quét sạch tất cả các lực lượng kháng cự trước mặt họ trong hàng loạt những cuộc chiến đẫm máu. Nước Mỹ bị những sinh vật từ ngoài không gian chiếm đóng !

Chương trình phát thanh tiếp diễn với hàng loạt những thông báo rắc rối, thường bị cắt quảng bởi những lúc im lặng kéo dài đến rợn người. Giọng nói của Tổng Thống vang lên kêu gọi dân chúng đừng hốt hoảng. Một thông báo viên trên chót vót của nhà chọc trời đài CBS ở New York mô tả Manhattan bị tràn qua như thế nào. Lời bình luận của ông ta bị cắt ngang trong tiếng thét kinh hoàng nghẹn ngào.

Thế là chấm dứt chương trình. Nhà sản xuất, Orson Welles và đoàn diễn viên rời phòng thu. Họ đã hoàn thành vở kịch truyền thanh của họ, vở kịch dựa trên "Chiến tranh giữa các vì sao", một quyển tiểu thuyết khoa học giả tưởng của HG Wells. Họ không nhận ra được vở kịch của họ đã gây ra một tác dụng như thế nào. Hàng ngàn người đã bỏ nhà đi. Đường phố đầy ứ xe hơi đổ xô chạy về phía vùng đồi. Một số xe chất đồ đạc cao nghệu. Đội quân dự bị nhà nước đổ xô đi tình nguyện bảo vệ thế giới. Các thủy thủ trong lực lượng Hải Quân Hoa Kỳ được gọi trở về tàu của họ ở cảng New York. Các tổng đài chật nich người cố gọi điện cho họ hàng bạn bè. Ở miền Nam, dân chúng đang cầu nguyện ngoài đường phố. Thậm chí một số người còn tuyên bố là họ đã trông thấy người Hỏa tinh. Báo chí sáng hôm sau tiết lộ là đó chỉ là một vở kịch truyền thanh. Quả thật là một sai lầm kinh khủng !

Exercise 1

Find words or phrases which mean :

1 to adjust the controls of a radio or TV to a particular station
2 two words, both of which mean 'serious'
3 machines designed to kill people by using radiation
4 a programme sent out by radio or TV
5 a period without sound, which makes you feel cold with fear
6 a very tall building

Bài tập 1

Tìm từ hay cụm từ có nghĩa là :

7 a noise someone might make when their throat was being squeezed
8 the group of people acting in a play or film
9 tightly filled with...
10 many things placed on top of each other
11 a soldier
12 a panel used for making connections by telephone

Exercise 2

Complete this table.

flee	*fled*	*fled*
.....	.....	begun
.....	swept	.....
.....	overran	.....
oversimplify	.....	.....
undertake	.....	.....

Bài tập 2

Hoàn thành bảng này.

.....	.....	underwritten
.....	.....	fed
.....	meant	.....
underdo	.....	.....
override	.....	.....
overfly	.....	.....

Exercise 3

Write full answers to these questions.

1 What was the name of the programme ?
2 Who was it produced by ?
3 Which novel was it based on ?
4 Who was the novel written by ?
5 What kind of novel was it ?
6 Was the programme really interrupted by the weather forecast ?

Bài tập 3

Viết câu trả lời đầy đủ cho các câu hỏi này.

7 Do you think it was really the President's voice ?
8 Where was the announcer ?
9 What might listeners have thought had happened to him ?
10 What did state reserve troopers do ?
11 What happened to the switchboards ?
12 Had any people actually seen Martians ?

PROVERBS

- An idle brain is the devil's workshop = Nhàn cư vi bất thiện.
- Anger and haste hinder good council = No mất ngon giận mất khôn.
- Bad news has wings = Tiếng dữ đồn xa.
- Before you make a friend eat a bushel of salt with him = Thức đêm mới biết đêm dài, ở lâu mới biết lòng người dở hay.
- Beggars' bags are bottomless = Túi tham không đáy.

Unit 67 It's About Time

Đã đến lúc

VOCABULARY

- **delay** *(v)* /dɪ'leɪ/ put (st) off until later; postpone = hoãn lại. *We must ~ our journey until the weather improves.*
  delay *(n)* delaying or being delayed. *We must leave without ~.* amount of time for which sb / st is delayed. *There was a ~ (of two hours) before the plane took off.*
- **fetch** *(v)* /fetʃ/ ~ sb / st (for sb) go for and bring back sb / st = đi đón (lấy) về. *~ a doctor at once. Please fetch the children from school.*
- **ignore** *(v)* /ɪg'nɔ:/ 1. take no notice of (sb / st) = bỏ qua, phớ mặc. *You've been ~ ring me. I can't ~ his rudeness any longer.*
  2. deliberately refuse to greet or acknowledge (sb) = phớt lờ *I said hello to her, but she ~ d me completely !*
- **lie** *(v)* /laɪ/ (pt *lay* /leɪ/, pp *lain* /leɪn/, pre.p *lying*) put one's body in a flat or resting position on a horizontal surface = nằm. *~ on one's back / side / front*
  lie in = nằm nhà
- **otherwise** *(conj)* /'ʌðəwaɪz/ if conditions were different; if not = nếu không *We must run, ~ we'll be too late.*
- **trombone** *(n)* /trɒm'bəun/ large brass musical instrument with a sliding tube used to raise or lower the note = kèn trombone.
  trombonist *(n)* /trɒm'bəunɪst/ person who plays a trombone.

EXPRESSIONS

There's no need to hurry	Không cần phải vội đâu
There's plenty of time	Còn rộng thời giờ
I make it 8.40	Đồng hồ em chỉ 8g40 rồi
Your watch must be slow	Đồng hồ anh chắc chạy chậm đó
I'd sooner/rather we were too early than too late	Em thấy là thà sớm còn hơn là quá trễ
It always takes ages	Luôn luôn phải lâu lắm, mất thì giờ lắm
It'll take her a while to do it	Cô ấy làm chuyện đó phải mất 1 lúc.
have a long wait	chờ đợi lâu
Don't bother to do it	Đừng bận tâm làm điều đó
Not at this time of night	Không thể nào được vào giờ khuya khoắt này
to do the washing up	rửa bát đĩa
to take a message	nhắn tin lại
to hold on	chờ một chút, khoan đã
to take ages	mất thời giờ, rất lâu

PROPER NAMES

Bruce	/bru:s/
Edinburgh	/'edɪnbərə/
Janet	/'dʒænɪt/
Kensington	/'kenzɪŋtən/
Pam	/pæm/

USAGE

1/- To be on one's way : to be engaged in going or coming
EX : 1. I'm *on the way* home
2. He's *on his way to* success
2/- In time : not late, early enough
On time : punctual, more specific than "in time"

EX : 1. We arrived at the airport *in time* to eat before the plane left.
2. In spite of the bad weather, our plane left *on time.*

3/- There is no need + (for + object pronoun) + to infinitive

- *There is no need* for us *to look* into this matter Chúng ta không cần phải nghiên cứu kỹ vấn đề này.

4/- To leave some place for some other place : rời khỏi một nơi đến một nơi khác

Eight years ago he *left* his home town *for* Saigon to earn his living.

GRAMMAR NOTES

A. Expressing personal preference with I'd rather / I'd sooner (See Unit 17, Unit 22)

1. WOULD RATHER, WOULD SOONER expresses preference.

• present or future : **S + would rather / sooner + bare Infinitive**

I'd rather / I'd sooner be a builder *than* an architect.

• past : **S + would rather / sooner + have + past participle.**

If I could choose again, *I'd rather / sooner have been* a builder than an architect.

2. We can omit the verb in negative short answers.

Are you coming with us ? - No, *I'd rather / sooner not.*

Would you rather have been a builder ? - No, **I'd rather / sooner not (have been).**

B. Expressing preferences about other people's actions.

1. We can refer to other people after **I'd rather or I'd sooner.**

I'd rather leave on an earlier train (= I'm referring to myself).

I'd rather Jack left on an earlier train

2. **Present or future : S_1 + would rather / sooner + S_2 + past**

I'd rather she were / was happy (= now) **I'd rather she didn't sit** next to me (= now)

3. **past = S_1 + would rather / sooner + S_2 + past perfect.**

I'd rather you had been present (then). **I'd rather you hadn't told** me about it (then).

4. We can omit the main part of the verb in short responses.

- negative responses : Frank *is going to buy* a motorbike. – I'd rather *he didn't.*

I've told everyone about it. – I'd rather *you hadn't.*

• affirmative responses :

Frank *won't give up* his present job. – I'd rather *he did.*

I *haven't told* anyone about it. – I'd rather *you had.*

C. It's time to + V = This clause indicates that the correct time has arrived.

It's time to go now (Đến giờ phải đi đây).

It's (high / about) time + S + V past = this clause expresses present or future wishes or expresses our impatience about things that haven't happened yet.

Kim can't even boil an egg. – I know. *It's time / high time / about time she learnt* to cook.
(Đã tới lúc chị ta phải học nấu ăn rồi đấy).

D. AS IF / AS THOUGH

indicates something unreal or contrary to the present or future fact :

It is / isn't *as if / as though* S + V past.

It isn't *as if this were* my first visit.

Janet and Bruce live in London. Janet's younger sister, Pam, who lives in Edinburgh, is flying down to spend the weekend with them.

Janet Bruce, I think it's time to go and meet Pam at the airport.

Bruce Oh, no, we've no need to hurry. There's plenty of time. It's only half past eight. There won't be much traffic at this time of night.

Janet và Bruce sống ở London. Pam em gái của Janet sống ở Edinburgh đi máy bay đến nghỉ cuối tuần với họ.

Janet : Bruce này, em nghĩ đã tới giờ đón Pam ở phi trường.

Bruce : Ồ, chưa. Chúng ta không cần phải vội. Còn nhiều thì giờ mà. Mới 8g30. Vào giờ này ban đêm không có nhiều xe cộ đâu.

Janet You never know, and I think your watch must be slow. I make it 8.40, and you'll have to stop for petrol. I'd sooner we were too early than too late !

Bruce It'll take her a while to get her luggage.

Janet Oh, come on, Bruce ! It's time we were leaving. We can always have a coffee at the airport. Anyway, I like watching people at the airport.

Bruce I'd rather see the end of the football match, but never mind, we'd better go.

Bruce Janet ! Hold on a minute, there's the phone.

Janet You haven't got time to answer it now. Ignore it

Bruce No, I'd better see who it is. It might be important. Bruce McGregor speaking... oh, Pam, we were just on our way to fetch you. Oh, no ! Hold on, I'll get Janet.

Janet Pam ! Where are you ?

Pam I'm still in Edinburgh. The flight's been delayed.

Janet You caught us just in time. We were about to leave for the airport.

Pam I know, Bruce said so. I'm glad I phoned. You'd have had a long wait otherwise.

Janet When will you be leaving, do you think?

Pam Oh, not for an hour at least. Look, don't bother to come out to the airport.

Janet It's no trouble. We'll meet you.

Pam No, I'd rather you didn't. Honestly.

Janet Now, don't be silly, Pam. We'll collect you.

Pam No, Janet, I'd rather get a taxi.

Janet We'll be there, Pam ! See you later.

Bruce It's nearly 12.30.

Janet Well, we couldn't let her find her own way. Not at this time of night !

Bruce She knows how to look after herself. That plane landed half an hour ago. It's about time she was here.

Janet It always takes ages to get your luggage.

Bruce I know. It's about time they did something about it. Last time, it took me longer than the flight !

Janet Oh, Bruce, there she is !

Bruce About time, too.

J : Làm sao mà biết được. Em nghĩ đồng hồ của anh chậm đấy. Đồng hồ của em là 8g40, và anh còn phải ngừng lại đổ xăng nữa. Em muốn thà sớm một chút còn hơn là quá trễ.

B : Cô ấy còn mất thời gian nhận hành lý nữa mà.

J : Ô, thôi đi Bruce ! Đã đến lúc chúng ta phải đi. Tụi mình còn có thể uống cà phê ở phi trường mà. Dù sao em cũng thích xem người ta ở phi trường.

B : Anh lại thích xem đoạn cuối của trận bóng đá hơn, nhưng không sao, chúng ta đi nào.

B : Janet, đợi một phút, có điện thoại.

J : Anh không có thì giờ trả lời đâu. Mặc kệ nó.

B : Không được, anh phải xem ai gọi đã. Có thể là quan trọng. Bruce Mc Gregor đang nghe đây... Ô, Pam, bọn mình vừa định đi đón cô đấy. Ô không ! Cứ giữ máy anh sẽ gọi Janet.

J : Pam ! Em hiện ở đâu ?

Pam : Em vẫn ở Edinburgh. Chuyến bay đã bị hoãn.

J : Em gọi cho anh chị vừa đúng lúc. Anh chị vừa định ra phi trường đây.

P : Em biết, Bruce có nói. Em mừng vì đã gọi được anh chị. Nếu không thì anh chị phải đợi lâu đấy.

J : Vậy theo em chừng nào máy bay mới cất cánh ?

P : Ô, ít nhất phải một giờ nữa. Này, anh chị đừng mất công ra phi trường nữa.

J : Có gì đâu mà mất công. Anh chị sẽ đón em.

P : Thôi, em thích anh chị đừng đón thì hơn. Nói thực đấy.

J : Thôi đừng lẩn thẩn nữa Pam. Anh chị sẽ đón em.

P : Thôi Janet. Em đi taxi thì hơn.

J : Pam, anh chị sẽ có mặt ở phi trường ! Hẹn gặp em.

B : Gần 12g30 rồi.

J : Chúng ta không thể để cô ấy tự tìm đường được. Nhất là vào lúc khuya khoắt này.

B : Cô ấy biết tự lo cho mình mà. Máy bay hạ cánh cách đây nửa tiếng. Gần đến lúc cô ấy có mặt ở đây rồi.

J : Lúc nào cũng phải mất cả thế kỷ mới nhận được hành lý.

B : Anh biết. Đã gần đến lúc người ta phải làm một cái gì đó về chuyện này. Lần trước thời gian anh nhận hành lý còn lâu hơn cả thời gian bay !

J : Ô, Bruce. Cô ấy kia !

B : Cũng gần đúng lúc.

Janet Pam ! Pam ! Over here !

Bruce I'll go and bring the car round. I won't be long.

Janet Well, Pam, what would you rather do tomorrow morning, lie in or go shopping ?

Pam This morning, you mean ! I'd rather go shopping, but there's no need for you to get up and come with me. I'd rather you had a lie in. You must be tired out !

Janet I am a bit tired. But I'll meet you for lunch. There's a new restaurant just off Kensington High Street. Do you think you'll be able to find your way there ?

Pam Oh, Janet ! It isn't as if this were my first visit to London ! You can tell me where it is in the morning.

J : Pam ! Pam ! Đây này.

B : Để anh đi mang xe tới. Không lâu đâu.

J : Này Pam, sáng mai em thích làm gì, nằm nhà hay đi mua sắm ?

P : Chị muốn nói sáng nay hả ! Em thích đi mua sắm nhưng chị không cần phải dậy và đi với em đâu. Em thích chị nằm nhà hơn. Chắc chị mệt phờ rồi !

J : Chị hơi mệt. Nhưng chị sẽ gặp em để cùng ăn trưa. Có một nhà hàng mới khai trương ở gần xa lộ Kensington. Liệu em có biết đường đến đó không ?

P : Ô, Janet ! Chị cứ làm như em mới đến London lần đầu. Sáng mai chị cứ cho em biết nó ở đâu.

Look at this

I'd	rather sooner	go there.	
I'd	rather sooner	you he she we they	went there. didn't go there.

It's time to go.

It's (about) time		we left. we were leaving.
It isn't as	if though	this were my first visit. he didn't know.

Exercise 1

The baggage handling is slow. They should do something about it.

It's about time they did something about it.

Continue.

1 It's late. We should go to the airport.
2 She's getting tired. She should go to bed.
3 He coughs a lot. He should stop smoking.
4 The windows are dirty. We should clean them.
5 The bus is late. It should be here.
6 He's bored. He should find an interesting job.

Exercise 2

Are you going to do it ?

No, I'd rather not do it. I'd rather you did it.

Continue.

1 Are you going to write to her ?
2 Would you like to drive ?
3 Do you want to ask him ?
4 Would you like to choose ?
5 Do you want to arrange it ?
6 Are you going to see the manager ?

PRACTICE

Language summary

I'd	*rather* *sooner*	*go there.*	
I'd	*rather* *sooner*	*you, he* *she, we* *they*	*went there.* *didn't go there.*

It's time | *to go.*

It's (about) time | *we left.*
were leaving.

It isn't | *as* | *if*
though | *this were my first visit.*
he didn't know.

Exercise 1

A Let's go out tonight.
(B doesn't want to, so he says he'd rather do something else.)

B *I'd rather we didn't. I'd rather we*

watched television.
stayed in.
went to bed early.

Continue.

1 A Let's go for a walk.
B . . . . . .

2 A Why don't we have a Chinese meal tonight ?
B . . . . . .

Exercise 2

I'm not a child, you know.

It isn't as if I were a child, you know.

Continue.

1 I didn't do it deliberately. . . . . .

2 I'm not stupid, you know. . . . . .

Exercise 3

Read all the sentences carefully. Read all the responses below. Put the letter for the most appropriate response in the spaces provided.

1 Shall we run ? . . . . . .
2 I make it 9.38. . . . . .
3 Bye ! . . . . . .
4 Can you take a message ? . . .
5 Shall we stop for coffee ? . . . .
6 Are you ready yet ? . . . . . .
7 You're late. . . . . .

A Oh, not for an hour at least.
B Yes, it's about time we left.
C No, I'm afraid we haven't got time.
D I make it 9.40.
E Oh, no, not at this time of night.
F Hold on. I'll just get a pencil.
G About time too !
H No, there's no need to hurry.
I See you later.
J I was just about to do it, dear.
K Almost. I won't be long.
L No, we were just in time.
M Yes, we had a long wait at the station.
N Well, it'll take me a long time to save it.
O It always takes ages during the rush hour.

Bài tập 1

A Tối nay chúng ta đi chơi đi.
(B không muốn đi nên anh nói anh thích làm việc gì khác hơn).

B Tôi thích chúng ta không đi thì hơn

Mình	xem Tivi hơn vậy.
	ở nhà hơn vậy.
	đi ngủ sớm hơn vậy.

Hãy tiếp tục

3 A We've won £5,000. We can buy a new car !
B . . . . . .

4 A Shall we go to France for our holiday ?
B . . . . . .

Bài tập 2

Tôi không còn là đứa trẻ nữa, anh biết không.
Tôi không còn như là trẻ con nữa, anh biết chứ.
Hãy tiếp tục.

3 I'm not a millionaire, you know. . . . . .

4 I don't come late every day ! . . . . . .

Bài tập 3

Đọc tất cả các câu này cẩn thận. Đọc tất cả các câu trả lời bên dưới. Đặt chữ cái cho câu trả lời thích hợp nhất vào chỗ trống cho sẵn.

8 Mark's just arrived. . . . . .
9 Do the washing up. . . . . .
10 Did you miss the beginning ? . . .
11 Is it time to go ? . . . . . .
12 When will you have the money ? . . .
13 He's playing the trombone. . . .
14 What time's dinner ? . . . . . .
15 What's the delay ? . . . . . .

Unit 68 The Police

Cảnh sát

VOCABULARY

- **anomymous** *(adj)* /ə'nɒnɪməs/ written or given by sb who does not reveal his name = nặc danh *an ~ letter, gift, phone call.*
- **anti – theft device** *(n)* /ˌæntɪ θeft dɪ'vaɪs/ dụng cụ chống trộm
- **arson** *(n)* /'ɑ:sn/ criminal and deliberate act of setting fire to a house or other building, either from malice or in order to claim insurance money = Vụ cố ý đốt nhà.
  arsonist *(n)* /'ɑ:sənɪst/ person who is guilty of arson.
- **brutal** *(adj)* /'bru:tl/ cruel, savage, merciless = ác độc, thô bạo. *a ~ murderer. a ~ attack, punishment.*
  the brutal *(n)* = kẻ thô bạo
  brutality *(n)* /ˌbru:'tælətɪ/ = cruelty, savagery
- **calling** *(n)* /'kɔ:lɪŋ/ profession, trade = nghề nghiệp
- **chastize** *(v)* /tʃæ'staɪz/ (fml) punish sb severly, esp by beating = trừng phạt nặng bằng cách đánh đập
- **chastisement** *(n)* /tʃæ'staɪzmənt ; 'tʃæstɪzmənt/ (fml) severe punishment.
- **christening** *(n)* /'krɪsənɪŋ/ lễ đặt tên Thánh
- **conservation** *(n)* /ˌkɒnsə'veɪʃn/ sự bảo quản
- **contraception** *(n)* /ˌkɒntrə'sepʃn/ preventing of conception = sự ngừa thai.
  contraceptive *(n)* /ˌkɒntrə'septɪv/ device or drug for preventing conception
  (adj) preventing conception. *a ~ pill, device, drug.*
- **cos** *(conj)* /kɒz/ (also 'cos) (infml) (esp in spoken English) = because
- **cowardly** *(adj)* /'kaʊədlɪ/ (derog) lacking courage = hèn nhát.
  the cowardly = kẻ hèn nhát
  cowardice *(n)* /'kaʊədɪs/ =fearfulness *abject ~.*
  coward *(n)* /'kaʊəd/ person who lacks courage = kẻ hèn
- **criminal** *(n)* /'krɪmɪnl/ person who commits a crime or crimes = phạm nhân
  crime *(n)* /kraɪm/ = tội ác.
- **demo** *(n)* /'deməʊ/ (pl ~ s) (infml esp Brit) demonstration = cuộc biểu tình.
- **dim** *(v)* /dɪm/ (cause st to) become dim = làm mờ nhạt, sút giảm *Old age hasn't ~ med her memory.*
- **enthusiasm** *(n)* /ɪn'θju:zɪæzəm/ ~ (for / about st) great eagerness = nhiệt tình. *feel no ~ for / about an idea.*
  enthusiast *(n)* /-'θju:zɪæst/ person filled with enthusiasm.
  enthusiastic *(adj)* (~ about / over st / sb)
- **errant** *(adj)* /'erənt/ (arch or joc) doing wrong; misbehaving = hư đốn *an ~ husband / wife.*
- **external door** *(n)* /eks'tɜ:nl dɔ:/ cửa ngoài
- **false alarm** *(n)* /fɔ:ls ə'lɑ:m/ cuộc báo động giả
- **handicap** *(n)* /'hændɪkæp/ thing that makes progress or success difficult = điều trở ngại
- **ignition key** *(n)* /ɪg'nɪʃn kɪ:/ khóa công tắc xe
- **incident** *(n)* /'ɪnsɪdənt/ event or happening, often of minor importance = sự cố nhỏ. *He could rember every trivial ~ in great detail*
- **indifferent** *(adj)* /ɪn'dɪfrənt/ not caring about sb / st = thờ ơ, lãnh đạm *How can you be ~ to the sufferings of starving people ?*
  indifference *(n)* /-frəns/ absence of interest, feeling or reaction.
- **involved** *(adj)* /ɪn'vɒlvd/ có liên can
- **loneliness** *(n)* /'ləʊnlɪnɪs/ sự cô đơn *suffer from ~.*
  lonely *(adj)* /'ləʊnlɪ/ sad because one lacks friends or companions = cô đơn
- **lurk** *(v)* /lɜ:k/ wait near a place trying not to attract attention = rình mò *He's usually ~ ing near the bar.*
- **mortice = mortise** *(n)* /'mɔ:tɪs/ lỗ mộng
  mortice lock = khóa chìm.
- **obstinate** *(adj)* /'ɒbstənət/ refusing to change one's opinion or chosen course of action; stubborn = bướng bỉnh, ương ngạnh *The ~ old man refused to go to hospital.*
  obstinacy *(n)* /'ɒbstənəsɪ/ stubbornness
- **paperback** *(n)* /'peɪpəbæk/ book bound in a flexible paper cover = sách bìa mỏng.
  When is the novel coming out in ~ ? a ~ book, edition.

- **pay packet** *(n)* /'peɪpækɪt/ envelope containing an employee's wages.
- **quote** *(n)* /kwəʊt/ (infml) quotation = đoạn trích dẫn
- **random** *(adj)* /'rændəm/ done, chosen without method or conscious choice; haphazard = ngẫu nhiên, bất chợt. *a few ~ remarks, a ~ selection.*
- **regardless** *(adv)* /rɪ'gɑ:dlɪs/ (infml) paying no attention to sb / st = bất chấp. *I protested, but she carried on ~.*
  regardless of *(prep)* heedless of = bất kể *He continued speaking, ~ of my feelings on the matter.*
- **serial** *(adj)* /'sɪərɪəl/ in or forming a series = theo từng chuỗi *number files in ~ order. a ~ murderer = one who kills several people one after another.*
- **side door** *(n)* /'saɪddɔ:/ cửa hông
- **snatch** *(v)* /snætʃ/ grab; seize sb / st quickly and sometimes rudely = tóm, giật. *He ~ ed up his gun and fired.*
- **stale** *(adj)* /steɪl/ (esp of food) smelling or tasting unpleasant; mouldy or dry because no longer fresh = có mùi, mốc hôi. *~ biscuits, cake, beer, bread.*
- **stature** *(n)* /'stætʃə/ natural height of the body = vóc dáng, cỡ. *Short of ~.*
- **villain** *(n)* /'vɪlən/ person guilty or capable of great wickedness = tên côn đồ.
  (Brit slang) (used by the police) criminal = tên tội phạm
- **wallpapering** *(n)* /'wɔ:l,peɪpərɪŋ/ việc dán giấy tường.
  wallpaper *(v)* /'wɔ:lpeɪpə/ put wallpaper on (the wall of a room)
  wallpaper *(n)* = paper usually with a coloured design, for covering the walls of a room.
- **wayward** *(adj)* /'weɪwəd/ not easily controlled or guided; childishly strong or capricious = ngỗ nghịch, cứng đầu *a ~ child*
  waywardness *(n)*

EXPRESSIONS

only too happy to do it	chỉ là quá mừng để làm gì
It's no bed of roses	không phải là giường hoa hồng, không là điều lý tưởng
It isn't fit to print	in ra không tiện
to measure up to a job	đáp ứng được công việc
the stature for the job	tầm cỡ cho công việc đó
earn every penny	kiếm được từng đồng xu một
Thank god !	Cảm ơn chúa, đội ơn trời phật
Clear off !	cút đi
Watch it !	coi chừng đây, xem đây
For a start	khởi đầu
what's more	hơn nữa, ngoài ra
seconds count	khẩn trương, từng giây từng phút đều quan trọng
to be fitted with	được gắn

PROPER NAMES

Harry Cole /'hærɪ kəʊl/ Victoria /vɪk'tɔ:rɪə/

USAGE

1. **To have no idea** (of) + noun clause : to be ignorant of, to know little or nothing of
EX : You have no idea how hard I have to work to support you
2. **Regardless of** : paying no attention to
EX : Regardless of the bad weather, he went a long distance to see his lover
3. **To provide s/o with s/t** = to provide s/t for s/o = to supply s/o with s/t
4. **To call on/upon s/o (to do s/t)** : to invite, require s/o to do s/t
EX : I will call on him to make a speech at the meeting
5. **To put up with** : To bear patiently
EX : Sometimes life is too terrible to put up with
6. **To pick up with** : to make acquaintance with (đánh bạn với)
7. **To keep up with** : to go forward at the same speed as
8. **To catch up with** : to come up to s/o who is going in the same direction

GRAMMAR NOTES

a/- "Any police officer in London could tell you a similar story. But the question it would raise is the same"

\+ **"Would"** : Besides its use in conditional sentences, it can also mean a habit in the past

EX : When she was young, she would swim once a day

\+ **"Could / may / might"** : When could/may/might are used to mean possibility, they mean the same... And the speaker is not sure of the statement when using these verbs.

EX : It could / may / might rain tomorrow (maybe it will rain tomorrow)

Give some examples using "could" and "would"

b/- "You only stop me" cos I'm black "Cos" here is a colloquial word of "because".

In ordinary and very informal conversations, the native speakers, esp those who are not very much educated, often use "cos" "coz" or "cause" instead of "because"

Ghi chú : Những câu phát biểu của các nhân vật trong hình (theo thứ tự ngược chiều kim đồng hồ).

"Clear off fuzz. This is a private quarrel".

"Thank god you've arrived officer. The driver is losing blood."

"You only stop me cos I'm black".

"My handbag has been snatched."

"Two men have just broken into my shop."

"Watch it copper, I've got a knife".

"Officer, you did not see me go through a red light".

"She's only 3 years old. She's been missing for 3 hours".

1. "Xéo đi cớm, đây là chuyện riêng".
2. "Lạy Chúa, ông đã đến. Tài xế bị mất máu".
3. "Mày bắt tao chỉ vì tao là da đen".
4. "Túi xách của tôi đã bị chúng giật mất rồi".
5. "Hai tên vừa mới đột nhập vào cướp cửa hiệu của tôi".
6. "Nhìn đây cớm, tao có dao nè".
7. "Ông không thấy tôi vượt đèn đỏ".
8. "Cháu gái mới có 3 tuổi. Cháu đã mất tích 3 giờ rồi".

COULD YOU PUT UP WITH A CALLING LIKE OURS ?

1. It's no bed of roses being a police officer in London.

   When people need help they're only too happy to call you. But just you turn up when it doesn't suit them and what you can get called isn't fit to print.

   After a while, however, the experience can become very printable indeed.

   Published recently was a paperback written by a south London copper called "Policeman's Progress."

BẠN CÓ THỂ CHỊU ĐƯỢC MỘT NGHỀ NHƯ NGHỀ CỦA CHÚNG TÔI KHÔNG ?

1. Làm cảnh sát ở London không phải là chuyện cưỡi ngựa xem hoa (nguyên văn : không phải là một luống hoa hồng).

   Khi người ta cần, người ta hết sức vui mừng được gặp bạn. Nhưng chỉ cần bạn xuất hiện khi người ta không cần thì những lời bạn phải nghe nói ra đây chẳng hay ho tí nào.

   Tuy nhiên, sau một thời gian, kinh nghiệm của nghề này lại rất đáng được kể ra.

   Mới đây một cảnh sát viên ở nam London đã cho xuất bản một cuốn sách bìa mỏng có tựa đề "Tiến bộ của Người Cảnh Sát".

2 Here are some random quotes, by Police Constable Harry Cole :

"It is one of the few occupations left in present day society where a person can arrive for work... and have no idea what the day will bring. It could be an accident, a murder... an armed robbery, arson or a request for directions. It could be an explosion, a false alarm or a drunk."

"I was asked about holidays, treatment for budgies, wallpapering,social security, conservation, contraception, politics and prison visits. I was called upon to chastise drunken husbands (occasional success), errant wives (hundred percent failure), wayward kids and obstinate grandparents."

"I received anonymous threatening letters (I recognised the writing), anonymous threatening phone calls (I recognised the voice), and an anonymous cake for my... birthday (it was stale)."

"I was invited to christenings, weddings and divorces (often in that order, particularly with the very young)."

"I rarely completed a Christmas duty without having to report a suicide, usually caused by loneliness."

"The bodies, dogs, demos, drunks and fights; the villains and the victims; the brutal, the gentle, the cowardly and the brave; the haters, the lovers and the just plain indifferent... One day I shall have to live without them; it won't be easy."

3 Any police officer in London could tell you a similar story. But the question it would raise is the same.

What kind of person measures up to such a job?

It isn't enough for a man to reach the required minimum height of 172 cm (5'8"). Or for a woman to make 162 cm (5'4").

Regardless of your height you're obviously no good if you don't have the stature for the job.

This means having a real concern for people.

A real sense of fair play.

And a real sense of humour.

2. Dưới đây là vài đoạn trích của cảnh sát viên Harry Cole:

"Đây là một trong số ít nghề còn lại trong xã hội ngày nay mà con người khi đi làm... lại không biết ngày hôm đó sẽ mang lại cho mình những gì. Có thể là một tai nạn, một vụ giết người... một vụ cướp có vũ trang, một vụ hỏa hoạn cố ý hoặc một lời hỏi thăm đường. Có thể là một vụ nổ, một vụ báo động giả hoặc một vụ nhậu nhẹt say bí tỉ.

" Người ta hỏi tôi về ngày nghỉ, cách chữa bệnh cho vẹt, giấy dán tường, an ninh xã hội, bảo vệ môi trường, ngừa thai, chính trị, và đi thăm tù. Người ta mời tôi đến để trừng phạt những ông chồng rượu chè be bét (thỉnh thoảng có thành công), những bà vợ hư đốn (thất bại 100%), những đứa con ngỗ nghịch, những ông bà ngoại ngang ngạnh".

"Tôi nhận được những lá thư hăm dọa nặc danh (tôi nhận ra tuồng chữ), những cú điện thoại hăm dọa nặc danh (tôi nhận ra giọng nói), và một ổ bánh lâm... quà sinh nhật cho tôi (đã có mùi).

"Tôi được mời dự lễ rửa tội, lễ cưới và ly dị (thường theo trình tự như thế, đặc biệt đối với những cặp vợ chồng còn rất trẻ)".

"Hiếm khi tôi qua một ca trực vào dịp Giáng Sinh mà không phải báo cáo về một vụ tự tử, mà thường nguyên nhân là do cô đơn".

"Những xác người, những con chó, những cuộc biểu tình những vụ nhậu nhẹt say sưa và rồi ẩu đả, những thằng côn đồ và những nạn nhân, kẻ thô bạo, người hiền dịu, kẻ hèn nhát và người dũng cảm; kẻ ghét, người thương và những người lãnh đạm, thờ ơ... Một ngày nào đó tôi sẽ phải sống không có những cái đó, không dễ dàng đâu.

3. Bất cứ nhân viên cảnh sát nào ở London cũng có thể kể cho bạn nghe một câu chuyện tương tự. Nhưng vấn đề đặt ra đều giống nhau.

Loại người nào đủ tiêu chuẩn cho một công việc như thế ?

Một người đàn ông đạt chiều cao đòi hỏi tối thiểu là 172 cm (5 feet 8 inches) hoặc một phụ nữ cao tối thiểu 162 cm (5 feet 4 inches), như thế vẫn chưa đủ.

Cho dù chiều cao thế nào đi nữa, bạn cũng không hội đủ tiêu chuẩn nếu không có dáng vẻ phù hợp với công việc.

Điều này có nghĩa là bạn còn phải có mối quan tâm thực sự đối với con người. Phải có ý thức hành xử công bằng thực sự. Và phải có óc hài hước nữa.

Qualities more valuable, in our view, than qualifications.
(If you have a few 'O' levels, fine. A university degree is no handicap either.
But best of all is a degree of common sense.)
If you're under 22 you'll earn £4,956 a year the day you join us.
If you're older you'll start at £5,919.
(What's more you'll pick up London Allowances of £1,482.)
You'll also get somewhere to live for free, if you need it.
Or we'll provide you with a tax-paid Rent Allowance up to £1,457 a year.
Believe us, you'll earn every penny of your pay.

Violent criminals, nasty accidents and freezing weather will all turn up when you least expect them.
But the reward you get as a human being for handling it all is compensation greater than any pay packet.
Still interested in being a Metropolitan Police Officer ? You'll have to be over 18 1/2 for a start.
If we haven't dimmed your enthusiasm, why not drop round our Careers Information Centre at New Scotland Yard in Victoria Street ?
Or let us know your name, your age and your address and we'll send you the information you need.
The man to write to is The Chief Inspector, Metropolitan Police Careers Information Centre, Department OUP 15, New Scotland Yard, London SW1H 0BG.
Or you can phone us. Our number is 01-230 5215 and 5146.
Yours is one call we'll be especially pleased to get.

London needs people like you in the Metropolitan Police.

PRACTICE

HELP THE POLICE TO HELP YOU
Your police force needs your help in beating the criminal. They can't do their job without it. You can help best by reporting at once anything that strikes you as suspicious.

Theo quan điểm của chúng tôi, phẩm chất còn đáng quý hơn cả bằng cấp chuyên môn nữa.
(Nếu bạn có qua các kỳ thi O (*), tốt. Có bằng tốt nghiệp Đại học cũng hay.
Nhưng tốt nhất là tấm bằng lương trí).
Nếu bạn dưới 22 tuổi, lương của bạn là 4.956 pounds một năm, tính từ ngày tham gia đội ngũ chúng tôi.
Nếu bạn trên mức tuổi đó, lương khởi điểm là 5.919 pound (Bạn còn được thêm các khoản phụ cấp làm việc ở London là 1.482 pounds nữa).
Bạn cũng sẽ được sống tự do ở một nơi nào đó, nếu bạn cần.
Còn không, chúng tôi sẽ cấp cho bạn một phụ cấp thuê nhà lên tới 1.457 pounds một năm (phụ cấp này đã được khấu trừ thuế). Hãy tin chúng tôi, bạn sẽ được trả công sức xứng đáng với từng đồng lương của bạn.
Những tên tội phạm hung hãn, những vụ tai nạn khủng khiếp, và thời tiết lạnh thấu xương, tất cả sẽ ập đến vào thời điểm mà bạn ít mong đợi nhất.
Nhưng phần thưởng mà bạn dành được với tư cách là một con người đã giải quyết tốt mọi chuyện như thế là sự đền bù lớn hơn bất cứ khoản lương nào.
Bạn vẫn còn quan tâm đến việc trở thành Nhân viên Cảnh sát Thủ đô ? Muốn vào nghề bạn phải trên 18 tuổi rưỡi.
Nếu chúng tôi không làm giảm nhiệt tình của bạn sao bạn không thử ghé Trung tâm Thông tin Nghề nghiệp của chúng tôi tại sở Cảnh sát London đường Victoria ?
Hay là cứ cho chúng tôi biết tên tuổi và địa chỉ của bạn chúng tôi sẽ gởi đến những thông tin mà bạn cần.
Hãy viết thư cho Chánh Thanh tra, Trung tâm Thông tin Nghề nghiệp Cảnh sát Thành phố, Phòng OUP 15, Sở Cảnh sát London, London SW 1H.0BG.

Hoặc bạn có thể điện thoại cho chúng tôi. Quay số 01-230.5215 và 5146.
Cú điện thoại của bạn là cú điện thoại mà chúng tôi sẽ đặc biệt vui mừng khi nhận.

London cần những con người như bạn trong lực lượng cảnh sát thủ đô

GIÚP CẢNH SÁT ĐỂ TỰ GIÚP MÌNH
Lực lượng cảnh sát cần sự góp sức của bạn trong việc truy lùng tội phạm. Họ không làm tròn phận sự nếu không có sự tiếp sức này. Bạn có thể giúp tốt nhất bằng cách báo cáo ngay bất cứ điều gì bạn thấy khả nghi.

(*) "O" levels = kỳ thi tuyển quốc gia. Thí sinh thường dự thi năm 16 tuổi.

If you saw someone being attacked or robbing a shop you would naturally phone the police. But ring them just the same if you see someone lurking around your neighbour's side door or trying car doors. The police won't mind if you are wrong. And ring at once – seconds count!

What you should do :
Dial 999. Ask for police : and tell them as much as you can :
1. Where the incident happened.
2. The number of people involved.
3. Descriptions of the suspects.
4. Description of the scene.
5. Registration number of any vehicles involved.

6. Your name and address will help, but they are not essential.

Anti theft check

You should be able to answer 'yes' to all these questions. If you can't, take immediate steps to put things right. **And remember, when in doubt, ask at your police station for your Crime Prevention Officer. His advice is free.**

General precautions

	yes	no
1. Do you tell your newsagent and milkman when you're going to be away ?	☐	☐
2. Do you always lock the garage door when you take the car out?	☐	☐
3. When you're out for the evening, do you lock all external doors and leave a light on in a front room?	☐	☐
4. When you go out, do you fasten all the windows ?	☐	☐
5. If you go on holiday, do you ask a neighbour to keep an eye on the house ?	☐	☐
6. Do you tell the police when you're going to be away and who has the spare key ?	☐	☐
7. Do you lock the garden shed when you're not using it ?	☐	☐
8. Do you lock up or secure all ladders?	☐	☐

Locks and catches

9. Are all external doors fitted with good quality rim or mortice locks?	☐	☐
10. Are there bolts at top and bottom of all external doors ?	☐	☐

Nếu bạn thấy người nào đó bị tấn công hay đang cướp cửa hàng chắc chắn bạn nên gọi điện cho cảnh sát. Nhưng cứ gọi điện cho họ nếu bạn thấy có người lảng vảng quanh cửa hông nhà người hàng xóm của bạn hay thử các cửa xe hơi. Cảnh sát sẽ không phiền nếu bạn lầm. Và gọi ngay lập tức – thật khẩn trương!

Điều bạn nên làm :
Quay số 999. Gọi cảnh sát : và báo cho họ càng nhiều càng tốt :
1. Chuyện xảy ra ở đâu.
2. Số người có liên can.
3. Mô tả kẻ tình nghi.
4. Mô tả hiện trường.
5. Số đăng bộ của bất cứ loại xe nào có liên can.
6. Tên và địa chỉ của bạn cũng cần, nhưng không thiết yếu.

Kiểm tra chống trộm

Bạn nên có thể trả lời "Yes" cho tất cả các câu hỏi này. Nếu không, phải có các bước điều chỉnh ngay lập tức. Và cũng nhớ, khi nghi ngờ, hỏi xin gặp sĩ quan phụ trách ngăn ngừa tội phạm ở trạm cảnh sát địa phương. Lời khuyên của ông ta là miễn phí.

Ngăn ngừa chung

1. Bạn có nói với người đưa báo hay đưa sữa của bạn khi bạn sắp đi vắng không ?	☐	☐
2. Bạn có luôn khóa cửa nhà xe lại khi bạn đưa xe ra không ?	☐	☐
3. Khi bạn đi ra ngoài vào buổi tối, bạn có khóa tất cả cửa ngoài và để đèn sáng ở phòng trước không?	☐	☐
4. Khi bạn ra ngoài, bạn có đóng chặt các cửa sổ không ?	☐	☐
5. Nếu bạn đi nghỉ mát, bạn có nhờ hàng xóm để ý coi chừng nhà bạn không ?	☐	☐
6. Bạn có báo với cảnh sát khi bạn sắp đi xa và ai sẽ giữ chìa khóa phụ ?	☐	☐
7. Bạn có khóa nhà kho ngoài vườn khi bạn không sử dụng nó không?	☐	☐
8. Bạn có khóa hay giữ gìn kỹ tất cả các thang không ?	☐	☐

Ổ khóa và các chốt cửa

9. Tất cả cửa ngoài có được gắn khung có chất lượng hay có khóa chìm không ?	☐	☐
10. Có bù loong ở đầu và cuối tất cả cửa ngoài không ?	☐	☐

11. Are all your windows fitted with suitable anti-theft devices ? ☐ ☐

Your property

12. Have you photographed all your valuable ornaments or jewellery ? ☐ ☐

13. Have you a note of the serial numbers of TV set, radio, camera, etc. ? ☐ ☐

14. Do you always lock your bicycle when you leave it ? ☐ ☐

Your car

15. Is your car fitted with an anti-theft device ? ☐ ☐

16. Do you always remove the ignition key when you leave the car ? ☐ ☐

17. Do you lock the boot and the doors and fasten the windows when you leave the car ? ☐ ☐

18. Do you remove all valuables before you leave the car ? ☐ ☐

Exercise 1

Read the text and the questionnaire. Ask another student the questions, and complete the questionnaire.

Exercise 2

Read the text again. Imagine you have just walked past a neighbour's house. You know your neighbour is on holiday. There's a ladder against the wall, and an upstairs window is open. As you came along the street, you saw a man and a woman get into a van outside the house, and drive away. You have just phoned the police. Look at the instructions, and report the incident to them.

. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .

11. Tất cả các cửa sổ của bạn có được lắp dụng cụ phòng chống trộm thích hợp không ? ☐ ☐

Tài sản của bạn

12. Bạn có chụp ảnh tất cả những đồ trang sức hay nữ trang qui của bạn không ? ☐ ☐

13. Bạn có ghi lại các số của máy truyền hình, radiô, máy ảnh... của bạn không ? ☐ ☐

14. Bạn có luôn luôn khóa xe đạp của bạn khi bạn để nó ở đâu đó không ? ☐ ☐

Xe hơi của bạn

15. Xe hơi của bạn có được lắp dụng cụ chống trộm không ? ☐ ☐

16. Bạn có luôn lấy ra chìa khóa công tắc khi bạn để xe ở đâu đó không ? ☐ ☐

17. Bạn có khóa ngăn đựng hành lý (cốp xe), các cửa và quay chặt các cửa kính khi bạn để xe ở đâu đó không ? ☐ ☐

18. Bạn có lấy ra tất cả đồ đạc qui trước khi bạn rời khỏi xe không? ☐ ☐

Bài tập 1

Đọc bài khóa và bảng câu hỏi. Hỏi một học sinh khác các câu hỏi này và điền vào bảng câu hỏi.

Bài tập 2

Đọc lại bài khóa lần nữa. Hãy tưởng tượng bạn vừa đi qua nhà của người hàng xóm. Bạn biết người hàng xóm của bạn đang đi nghỉ. Có một cái thang tựa vào tường, và cửa sổ trên lầu mở. Khi bạn đi dọc đường, bạn thấy một người đàn ông và 1 người đàn bà leo lên chiếc xe tải ngoài căn nhà này, và lái đi. Bạn vừa gọi điện cho cảnh sát. Xem các lời chỉ dẫn này và tường trình sự việc với cảnh sát.

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Units 65-68

Dialogue A

Listen

Nigel Brenda ?
Brenda Yes.
Nigel Do you know what the date is ? March 5th.
Brenda What about it ?
Nigel Well, I think we'd better decide on our summer holiday.
Brenda Yes, I suppose we had, hadn't we ?
Nigel Have you got any ideas ?
Brenda No, not really. Except that I'd rather have a British holiday this year.
Nigel Yes. I think I would too. I don't feel like going abroad again.
Listen and repeat

A1 Listen

A : We'd better decide on our summer holiday.
B : Yes, I suppose we had, hadn't we ?
C : Yes, I suppose we had, hadn't we ?
A : You'd better look at some brochures.
B : Yes, I suppose I had, hadn't I ?
C : Yes, I suppose I had, hadn't I ?

Now you do the same

We'd better decide on our summer holiday
..... Yes, I suppose we had, hadn't we ?
You'd better look at some brochures
..... Yes, I suppose I had, hadn't I ?
We'd better discuss it with the children
..... Yes, I suppose we had, hadn't we ?
You'd better make up your mind
..... Yes, I suppose I had, hadn't I ?

A2 Listen

A : I'd rather have a British holiday this year.
B : Yes, I think I would too.
C : Yes, I think I would too.
A : I'd rather not go abroad again.
B : No, I don't think I would either.
C : No, I don't think I would either.

Now you do the same

I'd rather have a British holiday this year
..... Yes, I think I would too.
I'd rather not go abroad again
..... No, I don't think I would either.
I'd rather see more of England
..... Yes, I think I would too.
I'd rather not go too far
..... No, I don't think I would either.

Dialogue B

Listen

Brenda Mmm. There are so many beautiful places in Britain. We've never seen Scotland.
Nigel Yes. It's about time we saw Scotland. People say it's beautiful.
Brenda If the weather's OK.
Nigel Yes, it does rain a lot up there. Maybe we should go south.
Brenda Mmm. I'd rather we went south. Cornwall perhaps.
Nigel Yes. I like the idea of Cornwall. And it's not as far as Scotland.
Listen and repeat

B1 Listen

A : We've never seen Scotland.
B : It's about time we saw Scotland.
C : It's about time we saw Scotland.
A : We've never been to Ireland.

Now you do the same

We've never seen Scotland.....It's about time we saw Scotland.
We've never been to Ireland.....It's about time we went to Ireland
We've never visited London.....It's about time we visited London.
We've never had a real English holiday
..... It's about time we had a real English holiday.

B : It's about time we went to Ireland.
C : It's about time we went to Ireland.

B2 Listen

A : Maybe we should go south.
B : Mmm. I'd rather we went south.
C : Mmm. I'd rather we went south.
A : Maybe we shouldn't go to Scotland.
B : Mmm. I'd rather we didn't go to Scotland.
C : Mmm. I'd rather we didn't go to Scotland.

Now you do the same

Maybe we should go south..... Mmm. I'd rather we went south.
Maybe we shouldn't go to Scotland..... Mmm. I'd rather we didn't go to Scotland.
Maybe we should go to Cornwall..... Mmm. I'd rather we went to Cornwall.
Maybe we shouldn't go abroad..... Mmm. I'd rather we didn't go abroad.

Dialogue C

Listen

Nigel Should we book a hotel, do you think ?
Brenda No. There's no need to book. And anyway I'd rather not stay in just one place.
Nigel We'll drive then.
Brenda No. I didn't mean that. I'd rather we didn't drive. It's so far.
Nigel Oh come on. It isn't as if it were that far. I don't mind driving.
Brenda Sure ?
Nigel Sure. I rather like driving on holiday.
Brenda Right. That's that. We'll ask the kids what they think. When they come in.
Nigel Aren't they in yet ?
Brenda No. They went to town.
Nigel Well it's about time they were. It's nearly ten o'clock.

Listen and repeat

C1 Listen

A : Should we book a hotel, do you think ?
B : No, there's no need to book.
C : No, there's no need to book.
A : Shall we make reservations ?
B : No, there's no need to make reservations.
C : No, there's no need to make reservations.

Now you do the same

Should we book a hotel, do you think ?
..... No, there's no need to book
Shall we make reservations ?
..... No, there's no need to make reservations.
Ought we to make arrangements ?
..... No, there's no need to make arrangements.
Do we need to plan ahead ?
..... No, there's no need to plan ahead.

C2 Listen

A : We'll drive then.
B : No, I'd rather we didn't drive.
C : No, I'd rather we didn't drive.
A : Shall we go by train ?
B : No, I'd rather we didn't go by train.
C : No, I'd rather we didn't go by train.

Now you do the same

We'll drive then
..... No, I'd rather we didn't drive.
Shall we go by train ?
..... No, I'd rather we didn't go by train.
How about taking the bus ?
..... No, I'd rather we didn't take the bus.
Let's fly ..... No, I'd rather we didn't fly.

C3 Listen

A : It's so far.
B : Oh, come on. It isn't as if it were that far.
C : Oh, come on. It isn't as if it were that far.
A : It's very tiring.

Now you do the same

It's so far ..... Oh, come on. It isn't as if it were that far.
It's very tiring ..... Oh, come on. It isn't as if it were that tiring.
The roads are very dangerous ..... Oh, come on. It isn't as if they were that dangerous.

B : Oh, come on. It isn't as if it were that tiring.
C : Oh, come on. It isn't as if it were that tiring.

C4 Listen
A : Sure ?
B : Sure.
C : Sure.
A : OK ?
B : OK.
C : OK.

C5 Listen
A : The kids aren't in yet.
B : Well, it's about time they were.
C : Well, it's about time they were.
A : They haven't come back yet.
B : Well, it's about time they had.
C : Well, it's about time they had.

The hotels are very busy.....Oh, come on. It isn't as if they were that busy.

Now you do the same
Sure ?.....Sure.
OK ?.....OK.
Right ?.....Right.
Certain ?.....Certain.
Absolutely sure ?.....Absolutely sure.

Now you do the same
The kids aren't in yet.....Well, it's about time they were.
They haven't come back yet.....Well, it's about time they had.
They haven't finished their homework.....Well, it's about time they had.
They aren't in bed yet.....Well, it's about time they were.

Listening

Listen

Reporter Sister. Can we have a word with you ? CTS News.
Nurse All right.
Reporter Tell me. How do you like being on strike ?
Nurse Well, that's a stupid question for a start. Of course I don't like being on strike. I'd rather not be standing here. I'd much rather be attending to my patients.
Reporter Why are you striking then ?
Nurse For more money of course. We don't get enough to live on. They've been promising to do something about our salaries for years now. And it's about time they did. It isn't as if we were asking for the moon. All we want is enough to keep pace with inflation.
Reporter Aren't you worried about your patients ?
Nurse Of course we're worried. And we've made arrangements to deal with emergencies.
Reporter The Government say they can't afford to give you any more money.
Nurse Of course they can afford it. They spend billions on guns and rockets. The Health Service is breaking down and they'd better do something about it or it'll collapse altogether.

Vocabulary
- to ask for the moon = đòi chuyện trên trời, chuyện không thực tế.
- to keep pace with = theo kịp

Now listen again and answer the questions when you hear this sound BELL

1

Reporter Sister. Can we have a word with you ? CTS News.
Nurse All right.
Reporter Tell me. How do you like being on strike ?
Nurse Well, that's a stupid question for a start. Of course I don't like being on strike. I'd rather not be standing here. I'd much rather be attending to my patients.

BELL
What doesn't she like doing ?
.....She doesn't like being on strike.
What would she rather not be doing ?
.....She'd rather not be standing there.
What would she rather be doing ?
.....She'd rather be attending to her patients.

2

Reporter Why are you striking then ?

Nurse For more money of course. We don't get enough to live on. They've been promising to do something about our salaries for years now. And it's about time they did. It isn't as if we were asking for the moon. All we want is enough to keep pace with inflation.

3

Reporter Aren't you worried about your patients ?

Nurse Of course we're worried. And we've made arrangements to deal with emergencies.

Reporter The Government say they can't afford to give you any more money.

Nurse Of course they can afford it. They spend billions on guns and rockets. The Health Service is breaking down and they'd better do something about it or it'll collapse altogether.

BELL

What are the nurses striking for ?

..... They're striking for more money.

What have the Government been promising to do ?.....

They've been promising to do something about their salaries.

How much money do the nurses want ?.....

They want enough to keep pace with inflation.

BELL

What have they made arrangements to do ?

.....They've made arrangements to deal with emergencies.

What do the government say ?

.....They say they can't afford to give them any more money.

What's happening to the Health Service ?

.....It's breaking down.

If the government doesn't do anything what will happen to the Health Service ?.....It'll collapse.

Open conversation

Listen and reply

A : Would you rather have a winter holiday or a summer holiday ?

B : .....

A : Would you rather have a mountain holiday or a beach holiday ?

B : .....

A : Where do you usually go on holiday ?

B : .....

A : What time of year do you usually go ?

B : .....

A : How do you prefer to travel ?

B : .....

A : Would you rather I stopped asking you questions now ?

B : .....

A : Sure ?

B : .....

A : Absolutely sure ?

B : .....

A : That's the end of section seventeen.

We must increase our ~ to meet demand.

- **process** *(n)* /'prəʊses/ qui trình, quá trình
- **reflective** *(adj)* /rɪ'flektɪv/ (of a surface, etc) reflecting (esp light) = phản quang ~ *number plate,* eg on cars (biển số xe)
- **solid** *(adj)* /'sɒlɪd/ firm = rắn, cứng *When water freezes, it becomes ~ and we call it ice.*
- **stuffed** *(adj)* /stʌft/ được nhồi *a ~ life – size gorilla* = *con khỉ đột nhồi bông to như thật.*
- **tarnish** *(v)* /'tɑ:nɪʃ/ (cause st to) lose its brightness by being exposed to air or damp = hoen ố, lu mờ *mirrors that have ~ ed with age. The brasswork needs polishing – it's badly tarnished.*
- **tie – pin** *(n)* /taɪ pɪn/ (US *stickpin, tie – tack*) or namental pin for holding a tie in place = trâm cài cà vạt
- **troy ounce** *(n)* /'trɔɪ aʊns/ đơn vị đo lường vàng
  troy weight /'trɔɪ weɪt/ British system of weights used for gold, silver and jewels, in which 1 pound = 12 ounces or 5760 grains.
- **ultimate** *(adj)* /'ʌltɪmət/ (infml) that cannot be surpassed or improved upon; greatest = tối cao. *the ~ luxury of the trip was flying by Concorde.*
- **untarnishable** *(adj)* /ʌn'tɑ:nɪʃəbl/ that cannot tanish or be tanished = không ố.
- **workable** *(adj)* /'wɜ:kəbl/ that can be or is worth working = dễ dùng *The silver mine is no longer ~* = because it is flooded or because the ore is exhausted.

EXPRESSIONS

since time immemorial	từ thời xa xưa
the ultimate status symbol	biểu tượng của địa vị tối cao
gold fever	cơn sốt vàng
to drive someone mad	làm ai trở thành điên loạn
a system which dates back... to	hệ thống có từ thời
to play a part in	đóng một vai trò trong

PRONUNCIATION

Africa	/'æfrɪkə/	Concorde	/kɒŋ'kɔ:d/
Birmingham	/'bɜ:mɪŋəm/	Croesus	/'kri:səs/
Canada	/'kænədə/	Lydia	/'lɪdɪə/

USAGE

1. Consumer goods : hàng tiêu dùng
   Consumer resistance : sự thờ ơ của khách hàng
   EX : The growing *consumer resistance* is one of the major problems that have posed terrible headaches to the goods manufacturers and suppliers.(Việc khách hàng càng lúc càng thờ ơ là một trong những vấn đề chính đã khiến những nhà sản xuất và cung cấp hàng hóa phải điên đầu)
2. In exchange for : in barter for : (để) đổi lấy
   In respect of : về, đối với (In respect of political affairs)
   In reply to : để phúc đáp... (In reply to your letter)
3. To drive s/b mad (crazy) : làm ai phát điên lên
   To drive s/b to despair : đẩy ai vào tình trạng tuyệt vọng
   EX : Those who are *driven to despair* often become risky
   Những kẻ bị dồn vào thế bí thường trở nên liều mạng
4. It is likely that + clause : có thể là...
   It is possible that... It is impossible that... It may be that...
   EX : It is likely that she doesn't love me any more.
5. To play a part (role) in... : đóng một vai trò trong...
   EX : He is somebody to be reckoned with. He has *played an important part* in the administrative management of this city

(Ông ấy là một người đáng lưu ý tới, ông ta giữ một vai trò quan trọng trong bộ máy quản lý hành chính ở thành phố này)

GRAMMAR NOTES

a/ "This gold is *impossible to exploit* at the moment" (hiện nay người ta không thể khai thác số vàng này được)

Although the verb is in active form, the sentence has a passive meaning. It means "It is impossible for us to exploit this gold at the moment"

Formation : Noun + to be + adjective + to infinitive

EX : This work is *easy to do* (it's easy (for us) to do this work)

- That man *is* always *difficult to convince* (It's always difficult (for us) to convince that man)

Give some examples using the above formation

Gold (Au) is a metallic chemical element. Atomic number 79. Atomic weight 197.2.

Since civilization began gold has been regarded as a symbol of power and wealth. In many societies gold was seen as a magic substance which could protect people against illness or evil spirits. It is the one material that has always been accepted in exchange for goods or services. Mankind never seems to have enough gold and the search for it has driven men mad. The need to search for gold has been compared to a disease, and is called 'gold fever'. In the Middle Ages men called 'alchemists' tried to manufacture gold from other metals. In spite of man's constant search for gold, the amount which has been produced since the beginning of time is only enough to make a solid block of eighteen cubic metres, the size of a large house.

Industrial uses

Because gold is untarnishable, workable, almost indestructible, durable, reflective and conductive, it has a number of industrial uses. About 10% of the annual production is used for industrial processes.

Gold is measured in troy ounces (31.1 grams). One ounce can be drawn into 80 kilometres of wire.

A single grain (0.065 grams) can be beaten down to make a sheet which would cover this page.

Between 20 and 30 ounces are needed for every jet engine.

Gold coatings, 0.000024 mm thick, are used to reflect heat from jet engine exhausts.

The windscreens of Concorde, other high speed aircraft, and some express trains have a gold electric heating element, 0.000005 mm thick, which is used to prevent icing.

Vàng (Au) là một nguyên tố kim loại. Số nguyên tử 79. Trọng lượng nguyên tử 197,2.

Từ khi có văn minh, vàng đã được xem như là một biểu tượng của quyền lực và của cải. Trong nhiều xã hội, vàng được xem như một chất thần kỳ có khả năng bảo vệ con người tránh được bệnh tật hoặc tà ma. Nó là loại nguyên liệu duy nhất luôn luôn được chấp nhận để đổi lấy hàng hóa hoặc các dịch vụ. Dường như nhân loại không bao giờ có đủ vàng, và việc tìm vàng đã làm con người trở nên điên loạn. Nhu cầu tìm vàng đã được ví như một căn bệnh, và được gọi là "cơn sốt vàng". Vào thời Trung cổ, những người được mệnh danh là các nhà "giả kim thuật" đã cố gắng chế tạo vàng từ những kim loại khác. Mặc dù con người liên tục tìm vàng, số lượng vàng được sản xuất từ khi có thời gian đến nay chỉ đủ để đúc một khối đặc $18m^3$, bằng cỡ một căn nhà lớn.

Các công dụng trong kỹ nghệ

Vì vàng không bị xỉn màu, gia công được, gần như không thể bị hủy hoại, bền, có tính chất phản chiếu và dẫn điện nên nó có một số công dụng trong kỹ nghệ. Khoảng 10% sản lượng hàng năm được dùng vào các qui trình công nghiệp.

Vàng được tính bằng đơn vị troy ounce (31,1 gam)

1 ounce có thể được kéo thành 80 ki-lô-mét sợi.

1 grain (0,065 gam) có thể được dát mỏng thành một tờ phủ kín trang giấy này.

Một động cơ phản lực cần từ 20 đến 30 ounce vàng.

Các lớp mạ vàng dày 0,000024 mm được dùng để phản xạ nhiệt từ các ống thoát của động cơ phản lực.

Kính chắn gió của phi cơ Concorde, các loại phi cơ có tốc độ cao khác, và một vài loại xe lửa tốc hành có bộ phận nhiệt điện bằng vàng dài 0,000005 mm dùng để chống đóng băng.

Spacecraft are protected against radiation by a thin layer of the metal.
As it conducts electricity well and does not tarnish, gold is used extensively in computers and electric consumer goods.
For many years it has been blended with oils and applied as decoration to china and glass.
Because it is so reflective, it is employed in the manufacture of some roof tiles and glass.
Gold has always been prescribed for various ailments, and is used today to treat cancer and arthritis. It is used extensively in dentistry.

Decorative purposes

Because gold is valuable, bright, rare, attractive, durable and untarnishable it has always been used for decorative purposes.
Gold works of art were created by many of the great civilizations of the past, and may be seen in museums all over the world.

Since time immemorial gold has been coveted and desired. Until recent years it was worn only by the very rich and was considered the ultimate status symbol.
Gold jewellery is made to four standards, 22, 18, 14 and 9 carats. 18 carat gold is 18 parts gold out of 24, which is pure gold. That is, 18 carats is 75% pure gold. 24 carat gold is too soft for most purposes.
Gold jewellery includes rings, earrings, necklaces, bracelets, chains, pendants, armlets, anklets, medals, cuff-links, tie-pins, spectacle-frames and watches. It is also used to decorate pens, lighters, glasses, and books.
In traditional Indian cooking, gold flakes are used to decorate food and are consumed.

In Britain, gold is hallmarked, using a system which dates back to the twelfth century. There are five marks on gold which has been tested for quality in Britain.
The manufacturer's name is shown by a mark like this.
The crown shows that the article is gold, and has been hallmarked in the UK.
This shows the gold content. '375' is 9 carats (i.e. 37.5% pure gold).

Phi thuyền không gian được bảo vệ chống lại các tia phóng xạ nhờ một lớp vàng mỏng.
Vì vàng dẫn điện tốt và không bị xỉn màu nên nó đã được sử dụng rộng rãi trong các máy vi tính và những sản phẩm tiêu thụ điện.
Trong nhiều năm vàng đã được pha với dầu và dùng để vẽ hoa văn trên đồ sứ và thủy tinh.
Vì có tính phản quang tốt, vàng đã được sử dụng trong việc chế tạo một số ngói lợp nhà và thủy tinh.
Vàng đã luôn luôn được chỉ định làm thuốc trị nhiều loại bệnh khác nhau, và ngày nay được sử dụng để điều trị bệnh ung thư và viêm khớp. Nó cũng được sử dụng rộng rãi trong nha khoa.

Những công dụng trang trí

Vì vàng quí, sáng, hiếm, hấp dẫn, bền và không xỉn màu, người ta đã luôn luôn dùng vàng vào các mục đích trang trí.
Các tác phẩm nghệ thuật bằng vàng đã được sáng tạo bởi nhiều nền văn minh lớn trong quá khứ. Và bây giờ vẫn còn có thể thấy được trong các viện bảo tàng khắp thế giới.
Từ thời xa xưa vàng đã được con người thèm thuồng và ao ước. Cho tới những năm gần đây chỉ có những người thật giàu có mới đeo vàng và vàng được coi là biểu tượng của địa vị tối cao.
Đồ trang sức bằng vàng được chế tạo theo 4 tiêu chuẩn 22, 18, 14 và 9 cara. Vàng 18 cara là 18 phần vàng ròng trên 24 phần vàng. Nghĩa là 18 cara tương đương với 75% vàng ròng. Vàng 24 cara thì quá mềm đối với phần lớn các công dụng.
Đồ trang sức bằng vàng gồm có nhẫn, bông tai, vòng cổ, vòng đeo tay, dây chuyền, mặt đeo, vàng đeo trên cánh tay, vàng đeo ở mắt cá chân, huy chương, khuy manchette, trâm cài cà vạt, gọng kính và đồng hồ. Nó còn được dùng để trang trí trên bút máy, bật lửa, ly uống nước và sách.
Trong nghệ thuật nấu nướng cổ truyền của Ấn Độ các bông vàng được dùng để trang trí trên các món ăn và được ăn luôn.
Ở Anh, vàng được xác nhận tiêu chuẩn bằng nhãn cầu chứng. Người ta dùng một hệ thống có từ thế kỷ 12. Vàng đã được kiểm tra chất lượng ở Anh mang 5 dấu :

Tên của nhà sản xuất được biểu thị bằng dấu như thế này.
Vương miện cho biết món đồ bằng vàng và đã được cấp nhãn cầu chứng ở Anh.
Số như thế này cho biết hàm lượng vàng. "375" có nghĩa là 9 cara (nghĩa là 37,5% vàng ròng).

The assay mark shows where it was tested. A leopard for London, an anchor for Birmingham, a rose for Sheffield, and a castle for Edinburgh.

A different letter is used for each year. 'J' was 1980.

Financial uses

The first gold coin was issued by King Croesus of Lydia in the sixth century BC. Today gold still plays an important part in the international monetary system.

About thirty years' production of gold is being held by central banks and monetary authorities, in spite of efforts to reduce its importance.

New deposits of gold are being found, and old mines are being reopened and it is likely that gold will always be valued as protection against inflation.

Gold can be bought by private investors in the forms of bars, coins and medals, as well as jewellery.

Gold production

Gold is found on all five continents, but 85% of the annual output of gold is produced by four countries :

South Africa	30 million oz
USSR	5½ million oz
Canada	4 million oz
USA	1½ million oz

In South Africa about three tonnes of gold-bearing rock have to be mined to produce each ounce of gold. Billions of tonnes of gold are suspended in the seas, but this gold is impossible to exploit at the moment.

Look at this

Gold *is used* for many purposes.
It *was produced* in ancient times.
Gold *has been used* for 6000 years.
New deposits *are being* found.
It *will be valued* in the future.
It *can be used* in industrial processes.

It *may be seen* in museums.
Three tonnes of rock *have to be mined* to produce an ounce of gold.

Dấu phân tích này cho biết vàng đã được thử ở đâu. Hình con báo là thử ở London, hình mỏ neo là thử ở Birmingham, hình hoa hồng là thử ở Sheffield, hình lâu đài là thử ở Edinburgh.

Mỗi năm người ta dùng một mẫu tự khác nhau. "J" là năm 1980.

Những công dụng về tài chính

Đồng tiền vàng đầu tiên do Vua Croesus xứ Lydia phát hành vào thế kỷ thứ 6 trước Công nguyên. Ngày nay vàng vẫn còn giữ một vai trò quan trọng trong hệ thống tiền tệ quốc tế.

Các ngân hàng trung ương và các giới chức tài chánh đang giữ số lượng vàng tương đương với vàng sản xuất được trong 30 năm, mặc dù đã có các cố gắng làm giảm tầm quan trọng của nó.

Những mỏ vàng mới đang được khám phá, và những mỏ cũ đang được tái khai thác có thể vàng sẽ luôn luôn được đánh giá là biện pháp bảo vệ chống lạm phát.

Các nhà đầu tư tư nhân có thể mua vàng dưới dạng thỏi, đồng xu và mề đay, cũng như đồ trang sức.

Sản xuất vàng

Vàng được tìm thấy ở khắp năm châu, nhưng 85% lượng vàng hàng năm được sản xuất từ 4 nước :

Nam Phi	30 triệu ounce
Liên Xô (cũ)	5,5 triệu ounce
Canada	4 triệu ounce
Mỹ	1,5 triệu ounce

Ở Nam Phi, người ta phải khai thác khoảng 3 tấn đá quặng mới lấy được một ounce vàng. Hàng tỷ tấn vàng đang lơ lửng trong các đại dương, nhưng hiện nay người ta chưa thể khai thác được số vàng này.

Hãy quan sát

Vàng được sử dụng với nhiều mục đích.
Nó được sản xuất từ thời xa xưa.
Vàng đã được sử dụng từ 6000 năm nay.
Những mỏ vàng mới đang được khám phá.
Nó sẽ được định giá trị trong tương lai.
Nó có thể được dùng trong các qui trình công nghiệp.
Nó có thể được thấy trong các viện bảo tàng.
Ba tấn đá phải được khai thác để sản xuất một ounce vàng.

PRACTICE

Language summary

It/They	is/are was/were has/have been is/are being will be can be may be has/have to be	done

Exercise 1

Complete the spaces in this text.

Thousands of objects are left . . London Transport vehicles every year. . . . . of them are handed in . . . . . are kept at London Transport . . . . . Property Office. Some of the . . . . . items are claimed and those . . . . . are not are auctioned. Umbrellas, ... and toys are the most . . . . . items, but some very strange . . . . . have been found. A stuffed life-size gorilla . . . . . left sitting in an underground . . . . . An invalid's chair was left . . . . . a bus. Human bones, which . . . . . wrapped in brown paper, were . . . . . in to an astonished bus . . . . . Spectacles and false teeth are . . . . . found and this can create . . . . . problem when the owner comes . . . . . collect them. One man arrived . . . . . claim a top set of . . . . . teeth. Hundreds of sets were . . . . before he found the set . . . . . matched his bottom set.

Bài tập 1

Điền vào chỗ trống trong bài này.

Exercise 2

The Prime Minister spoke on television last night. These are some of the things that were said. Transform them into the passive. You elected us two years ago.

We were elected two years ago.

1 We have achieved many things since then. . . . . .

2 We reduced personal taxes a year ago. . . . . .

3 We are conquering inflation. . . . . .

4 However, we can't do everything at once. . . . . .

Bài tập 2

Thủ tướng phát biểu trên truyền hình tối qua. Đây là một số điều được phát biểu. Chuyển các câu đó ra dạng bị động.

Đồng bào đã bầu chúng tôi cách đây 2 năm

Chúng tôi đã được bầu cách đây 2 năm.

5 We have to make some difficult choices. . . . . .

6 We hold regular meetings with employers and trades unions. . . . . .

7 We will increase pensions next year. . . . . .

8 We may achieve a 3% growth rate next year. . . . . .

Exercise 3

When the people of London wake up, they find letters behind the door, milk on the doorstep and the rubbish bins empty. When they go to work the streets are clean, newspapers are on the stands and there is fresh fruit and vegetables in the shops. All these things are done during the night.

Letters have been delivered.

Write five more sentences.

1 . . . . . .

2 . . . . . .

3 . . . . . .

Bài tập 3

Khi dân chúng ở London thức dậy họ thấy thư từ dưới cửa, sữa ở ngạch cửa và thùng rác trống không. Khi họ đi làm đường xá sạch sẽ, báo chí ở trên sạp và có trái cây và rau tươi trong các cửa hàng. Tất cả những thứ này được làm trong đêm.

Thư từ đã được phát.

Viết thêm 5 câu nữa.

4 . . . . . .

5 . . . . . .

Unit 70 Gold Rush

Đổ xô đi tìm vàng

VOCABULARY

- **anchor** *(v)* /'æŋkə/ lower an anchor; make st secure with an anchor = cắm neo *We ~ ed (our boat) close to the shore.*
- **assemble** *(v)* /ə'sembl/ 1. (cause people or things to) come together; collect = tập hợp *The whole school (was) ~ d in the main hall; ~ material, evidence* 2. fit together (the part of st) = lắp ráp. *~ the parts of a watch.*
- **colonization** *(n)* /ˌkɒlənaɪ'zeɪʃn/ sự chiếm làm thuộc địa *The ~ of N America by the British and French.*
  colonize *(v)* /'kɒlənaɪz/ establish a colony in (an area); establish (an area) as a colony = lập thuộc địa *Britain ~ d many parts of Africa.*
- **creek** *(n)* /kri:k/ (Brit) inlet (US) small river or stream, esp as a tributary = suối
- **fabulously** *(adv)* /'fæbjʊləsli/ incredibly = khó tin. *~ rich.*
- **gravel** *(n)* /grævl/ sỏi
- **hysterical** *(adj)* /hɪ'sterɪkl/ suffering from hysteria = chịu đựng sự cuồng loạn *~ fans at a rock concert* = những người hâm mộ cuồng loạn trong một buổi nhạc rốc.
  hysterically *(adv) laugh ~* = cười một cách cuồng loạn
- **irrational** *(adj)* /ɪ'ræʃənl/ illogical, absurd = bất hợp lý *~ fears, behaviour, arguments.*
- **leak** *(v)* /li:k/ ~ out (phr. v) = (of information) become known = lọt ra ngoài (tin). *The details were supposed to be secret but somehow leaked out.*
- **mountain pass** *(n)* /'maʊntɪn pa:s/ đèo
- **nugget** *(n)* /'nʌgɪt/ lump of (esp valuable) metal, eg gold, found in the earth = vàng cục thiên nhiên
- **outlaw** *(n)* /'aʊtlɔ:/ (esp formerly) person who has broken the law and is hiding to avoid being caught = kẻ sống ngoài vòng pháp luật *Bands of ~ s lived in the forest.*
- **preacher** *(n)* /'pri:tʃə/ person who preaches, esp a clergyman who preaches sermons = người giảng đạo. *a ~ famous for his inspiring sermons.*
- **prospector** *(n)* /prə'spektə/ person who explores a region looking for gold, ores, etc = người thăm dò (quặng, mỏ)
  prospect *(v)* /prə'spekt/ ~ (for st) search for minerals, gold oil, etc. *The company are ~ ing for gold in that area.*
- **schedule** /'ʃedju:l/ timetable = biểu thời gian
- **soar** *(v)* /sɔ:/ go up high in the air quickly = vọt lên không, tăng vọt *The jet ~ ed into the air.* (fig) *Prices are ~ ing* = ie rising rapidly
- **squeeze** *(v)* /skwi:z/ ~ st (from st / out of st) get (water, juice, etc) out of st by pressing it hard = vắt, gạn lấy ra.
- **trap** *(n)* /træp/ device for catching animals = cái bẫy *a mouse ~, a fly ~; caught in ~.*
  trapper *(n)* /'træpə/ person who traps animals, esp for their fur = người bẫy thú
  trap *(v)* catch (a creature) in a trap = bẫy.
- *It's cruel to ~ birds.*
- **tributary** *(n)* /'trɪbjʊtrɪ/ river or stream that flows into a larger one or into a lake = phụ lưu. *The Avon is a ~ of The Severn.*
- **speculation** *(n)* /ˌspekjʊ'leɪʃn/ activity of speculating = sự đầu cơ tích trữ. *dishonest ~ in property development; buy many shares as a ~*
  speculate *(v)* /'spekjʊleɪt/ ~ (in st) buy and sell goods or stocks and shares in the hope of making a profit through changes in their value, but with the risk of losing money = đầu cơ tích trữ. *~ in oil shares; ~ ing on the stock market.*
- **stampede** /stæm'pi:d/ sudden wild rush or mass movement of people = cuộc đổ xô đi *There was a ~ towards the stage when the singer appeared.*
- **uncertainty** *(n)* /ʌn'sɜ:tənti/ state of being uncertain = sự bất ổn, không chắc chắn *the ~ is unbearable !*

EXPRESSIONS

by whatever means they could bằng mọi cách có thể được

to strike it rich đào trúng mỏ giàu to

to brave the winter chịu đựng qua mùa đông

They kept on going Họ cứ đi
£500 worth of gold vàng trị giá 500 pounds
to lay the foundation for đặt nền tảng cho
in progress đang tiến hành

PROPER NAMES

Australia	/ɒs'treɪljə/	New York	/nju: 'jɔ:k/
Bonanze	/bəu'nænzə/	San Francisco	/ˌsænfrən'sɪskəu/
California	/kælɪ'fɔ:njə/	South Wales	/sauθ 'weɪlz/
Dawson	/'dɔ:sn/	Soviet Union	/səuvɪet 'ju:njən/
Eldorado	/eldɒ'ra:dəu/	Sutter's Mill	/sʌtəz'mɪl/
Kalgoorlie	/kæl'guəlɪ/	United States	/ju:'naɪtɪd 'steɪts/
Klondike	/'klɒndaɪk/	Yukon	/'ju:kɒn/
Midas	/'maɪdæs/	Zurich	/'zjuərɪk/

USAGE

1 By sea : many people came by sea
By land, by air, by rail
By car/ship/ train/ bus. But on a bus/plane/ ship/ train...
EX : I come to school this morning *on a bus* (by bus)
. On foot : to go *on foot* (đi bộ), on horseback : to go on horseback

2 *On* a date, but *in* month
EX : *On* August 16th, 1896
In July

3 To *set out for* some place : to start leaving for some place
EX : We have to set out for Hanoi at 5:30 sharp next morning

4. To account for + ?% = to occupy ?% (*chiếm bao nhiêu phần trăm*)
EX : Today South Africa *accounts* for 70% of world gold production

5 - "$800 worth of gold" : số vàng trị giá 800 dollars
"$80 million worth of gold" : số vàng trị giá 80 triệu dollars
[Sum of money's worth + of + noun]
EX : US$ 20,000's worth of goods
£350's worth of seafood products
- Give me a shilling's worth of flowers (bán cho tôi 1 siling hoa)

GRAMMAR NOTES :

1/ Some other passive structures

- "It is estimated that of the 100,000 men who set out for the Klondike fewer than 40,000 actually arrived". This is equivalent to "people estimate that"... usually sentences of the type people think/ believe... have 2 possible passive forms : Ex :

a/- Active sentence "People believe that the whole mountain contains at least $80 million's worth of gold".

b/ passive sentences : It is believed that the whole mountain contains at least $80 million's worth of gold.
[It is + past part. + that + S + V + O]
- The whole mountain *is believed to contain* at least $80 million worth of gold.
[S + to be + past part.+ to infinitive]

2/ Some common verbs for these passive structures : acknowledge, assume, believe, consider, estimate, feel, know, report, say, think, understand...

EX : +Active form : They said that he was jealous of her
Passive form : *It is said th*at he was jealous of her
- *He was said to* be jealous of her

Make five sentences with the above passive structures

CALIFORNIA

In 1848 gold was discovered at Sutter's Mill, about 100 miles east of San Francisco, and the first great goldrush began. When the news leaked out, farmers, trappers, lawyers, preachers, sailors, soldiers and school teachers rushed to California by whatever means they

CALIFORNIA

Năm 1848 vàng được tìm thấy ở Sutter's Mill, khoảng 100 miles về phía đông San Francisco, và cuộc đổ xô đi tìm vàng vĩ đại bắt đầu. Khi tin này lọt ra ngoài, các chủ trại, người bẫy thú, luật sư, nhà thuyết giáo, thủy thủ, lính, và giáo viên đều đổ xô về California bằng bất cứ phương tiện nào có thể được. Trong vòng một năm, 100 ngàn

could. Within a year 100,000 people, only 8,000 of whom were women, had reached the coast of California. More than half of them had travelled overland across the American continent. 'Gold fever' began to spread. Settlements throughout the United States were deserted. Homes, farms and stores were abandoned as everybody raced for California. Many came by sea, and in July 1850 more than 500 ships were anchored in San Francisco Bay, many of which had been deserted by gold-hungry sailors. A few people became fabulously rich, but it was a risky business. Law and order broke down. Even if a miner 'struck it rich' there were always those who would try to take it away : gamblers, outlaws, thieves and saloon keepers. Gold and silver were discovered in Nevada a few years later, and 'gold fever' was an important part of the colonization of the western United States.

AUSTRALIA

The next major gold-rush occurred in 1851, when gold was struck in New South Wales, Australia. This led to another stampede and many rich finds were made. Other discoveries were made in Victoria and Kalgoorlie, Western Australia. In some places massive nuggets of gold were found accidentally, just lying about on the ground. The 'Welcome Stranger' nugget, which was found in 1869, weighed 78.37 kilos

The Yukon

Perhaps the most difficult conditions were experienced by those prospectors who braved the Canadian winters to win gold from the Yukon and Klondike rivers. On August 16th 1896 three prospectors struck gold in Bonanza Creek, a tributary of the Klondike River, and then in a second creek which was named 'Eldorado'. In the Yukon, gold was obtained by washing gravel from river-beds, and soon as much as $800 worth of gold was being taken from a single pan of dirt. Within a year, Dawson had grown from nothing to a town of 30,000 people. Every man who entered the country had to carry a year's supply of food and mining

người, trong số đó chỉ có 8.000 là phụ nữ, đã tới bờ biển California. Hơn phân nửa số người này đã di chuyển trên đất liền bằng qua châu Mỹ. "Cơn sốt vàng" bắt đầu lan rộng. Các vùng định cư khắp nước Mỹ đều vắng người. Nhà cửa, nông trại và cửa hàng bị bỏ hoang khi ai ai cũng chạy đua về California. Nhiều người đến bằng đường biển, và tới tháng 7/1850 hơn 500 tàu đã bỏ neo ở vịnh San Francisco, trong số đó có nhiều tàu bị bỏ trống do các thủy thủ đói vàng đã bỏ đi. Một số người trở nên vô-cùng giàu có, nhưng đây là một cuộc làm ăn nhiều may rủi. Luật pháp và trật tự bị phá vỡ. Cho dù một người khai thác mỏ có "phất lên giàu có" vẫn luôn luôn có những kẻ tìm cách tước đoạt : bọn cờ bạc, những kẻ sống ngoài vòng pháp luật, những tên trộm cắp và các chủ quán. Vài năm sau vàng và bạc được tìm thấy ở Nevada, và "cơn sốt vàng" là một nhân tố quan trọng trong cuộc định cư ở miền Tây nước Mỹ.

ÚC ĐẠI LỢI

Vụ đổ xô đi tìm vàng lớn kế tiếp xảy ra năm 1851 khi vàng được khám phá ở vùng New South Wales nước Úc. Điều này đã đến đến một phong trào tự phát khác và người ta đã tậu được nhiều khoản tài sản lớn. Những phát hiện khác xảy ra ở Victoria và Kalgoorlie miền Tây nước Úc. Ở một vài nơi người ta tình cờ tìm thấy những cục vàng lớn chỉ nằm đâu đó trên mặt đất. Cục vàng "chào mừng khách lạ" tìm thấy năm 1869 cân nặng 78,37 kilô.

VÙNG SÔNG YUKON

Có lẽ những người tìm vàng dũng cảm chịu đựng các mùa đông xứ Canada ở vùng sông Yukon và Klondike là những người đã trải qua những điều kiện gian khổ nhất. Ngày 16-8-1896 ba người đã tìm thấy vàng ở suối Bonanza, một nhánh của con sông Klondike và rồi ở một con suối thứ hai có tên là "Eldorado". Ở sông Yukon vàng được đãi từ lớp sỏi lấy ở lòng sông, và chẳng bao lâu từ một mẻ bụi vàng người ta đã bán được một số vàng trị giá tới 800 đô la. Trong vòng một năm, từ con số không Dawson đã phát triển thành một thị trấn có 30.000 dân. Ai đến xứ này cũng phải mang theo một năm lương thực dự trữ và trang thiết bị khai thác mỏ trên những đèo dốc lạnh giá. Để làm việc này, mỗi người đi tìm vàng phải mang 25 kí lô hàng hóa đi khoảng 10 cây số, đổ hàng

equipment over steep and frozen mountain passes. To do this, each man had to carry 25 kilos of stores about 10 kilometres, leave it there, and return for another load. Therefore to move all his stores less than 80 kilometres, each man had to walk nearly 1500 kilometres. Horses and donkeys died in the ice and snow, but the men kept on going. It is estimated that of the 100,000 men who set out for the Klondike, fewer than 40,000 actually arrived. Only 4000 ever found gold, and very few of these became rich.

The rising price of gold in the late 1970s started a new rush to the Klondike. Dawson is still there, and 'Diamond Tooth Gertie's', the only legal gambling hall in Canada, remains in business. Just outside Dawson a mountain is actually being moved to find gold. The whole mountain is being washed down for gold-dust. It is believed to contain at least $80 million worth of gold.

SOUTH AFRICA

By the turn of the century gold had been found in South Africa and this laid the foundation for the world's largest goldmining industry. Today South Africa accounts for 70% of world gold production. Vast sums of money are being invested, and modern mining technology is being used to squeeze gold from the rock.

Twentieth-century gold-rush

New finds are being made in the Soviet Union, Saudi Arabia and the United States. The largest single mine in the world was discovered in Uzbekistan, USSR, in 1958. However, in spite of recent finds, modern day 'gold-rushes' are usually confined to speculation on the gold markets of Zurich, London and New York. At times of economic uncertainty investors rush hysterically to buy gold, and the price soars, often only to fall back again. Gold fever is in many ways irrational, but historically gold has always held its value, and it is likely that in an uncertain world, it will continue to do so.

xuống rồi trở lại mang chuyến khác. Vì thế để di chuyên tất cả số hàng hóa đi chưa tới 80 kilomet mỗi người phải đi bộ chừng 1500 kilomet. Ngựa và lừa chết trong băng tuyết nhưng con người vẫn tiếp tục đi. Người ta ước tính rằng trong số 100.000 người đi về sông Klondike chưa tới 40.000 người đến nơi thực sự. Chỉ có 4.000 người tìm được vàng và rất ít trong số người này trở nên giàu có. Vàng lên giá vào cuối thập niên 1970 đã dấy lên một cuộc đổ xô đi tìm vàng mới ở vùng Klondike. Thị trấn Dawson vẫn còn đó và "Diamond Tooth Gertie's" sòng bạc hợp pháp duy nhất ở Canada vẫn hoạt động. Ngay bên ngoài thị trấn Dawson người ta đang thực sự dời một ngọn núi để tìm vàng. Toàn bộ ngọn núi bị san lở để tìm bụi vàng. Người ta tin là ngọn núi này có chứa số vàng trị giá ít nhất là 80 triệu Mỹ kim.

NAM PHI

Vào đầu thế kỷ vàng đã được tìm thấy ở Nam Phi và điều này đã làm nền tảng cho ngành công nghiệp khai thác vàng lớn nhất thế giới. Ngày nay Nam Phi chiếm tới 70% sản lượng vàng thế giới. Người ta đang đầu tư vào đây những khoản tiền khổng lồ cũng như sử dụng kỹ thuật khai thác mỏ hiện đại để gạn vàng từ đá.

Cuộc đổ xô đi tìm vàng ở thế kỷ 20

Những mỏ vàng mới đang được tìm thấy ở Liên Xô (cũ) Ả Rập Saudi và Hoa Kỳ. Mỏ lớn nhất thế giới được phat hiện ở Uzbekistan, Liên Xô, vào năm 1958. Tuy nhiên, mặc dù có những phát hiện gần đây, các cuộc đổ xô đi tìm vàng hiện đại thường giới hạn vào sự đầu cơ ở các thị trường vàng tại Zurich, London và New York. Vào những lúc tình hình kinh tế bất ổn, các nhà đầu tư đã đổ xô đi mua vàng một cách điên cuồng và giá vàng tăng vọt lên để rồi sau đó lại hạ thấp trở lại. Và nhiều phương diện cơn sốt vàng là điều phi lý nhưng về mặt lịch sử mà nói thì vàng vẫn luôn luôn giữ được giá trị của nó và có khả năng là trong một thế giới bất ổn, vàng vẫn còn tiếp tục có giá.

Look at these expressions. What do you think they might mean ?

A golden handshake.

The golden rule.

A golden age.

The golden gates.

A golden wedding.

A golden opportunity.

As good as gold.

Everything he touches turns to gold (or He's got the Midas touch).

Mọi thứ anh ta đụng tay vào đều biến thành vàng (Chỉ một người luôn may mắn và thành công. Chuyện vua Midas trong thần thoại Hy Lạp kể về một ông vua được ban cho một điều ước. Ông ta ước mọi thứ ông ta đụng tay vào đều biến thành vàng. Theo như chuyện kể, cả con cái của vị vua này cũng bị biến thành vàng - ND.).

All that glitters is not gold. Mọi cái lấp lánh chưa chắc đã là vàng.

Hãy quan sát những thành ngữ này. Theo bạn, chúng có nghĩa gì ?

Món tiền tặng cho người nghỉ việc.

Khuôn vàng thước ngọc.

Thời hoàng kim.

cổng thiên đàng.

Lễ cưới vàng (kỷ niệm 50 năm ngày cưới).

Cơ hội bằng vàng, cơ hội ngàn năm có một.

Có hạnh kiểm tốt, có giáo dục.

Don't kill the goose that lays the golden eggs.

Đừng giết con ngỗng đẻ trứng vàng (Chỉ con ngỗng đẻ trứng vàng trong truyện ngụ ngôn của Aesop. Người chủ, do tham lam và muốn nhiều vàng hơn nữa, đã giết nó – ND.).

A heart of gold. Tấm lòng vàng.

A gold digger. Kẻ đào mỏ.

A gold disc. Đĩa hát vàng (tặng cho ca sĩ đã bán được một triệu đĩa hát Single – đĩa 45) hoặc một triệu đô la tiền đĩa hát loại LP (Long Playing – đĩa 33) – ND).

PRACTICE

Language summary

It was being done./It had been done.

Westwood Productions, Hollywood, Ca.

Film 'Bandito' Producer : Samuel Goldheim

Director Charles Orson Chief Cameraman : P. Entacks

DATE : Tuesday 27th July SCENE : #37 (interior "Silver Dollar' Saloon)

FILMING BEGINS AT : 08.45

PRE-FILMING SCHEDULE

TIME			NOTES
5.30	Assemble set	✔	completed 7.00
5.45	Set up lighting	✗	not yet completed
6.15	Make-up Miss Montrose	✔	completed 7.15
	Make-up Jason Douglas	✔	done by 6.30
6.45	Put beard on Marvin Lee	✗	not yet finished
7.00	Dress, make-up 'extras'		IN PROGRESS
7.20	Style Miss Montrose's hair		IN PROGRESS
7:30	Check furniture		IN PROGRESS
8.15	Put bottles and glasses on tables	✗	
8.20	Set up microphones	✗	
8.30	Check camera positions	✗	

Exercise 1

It's 7.30. Charles Orson has just arrived on the set of 'Bandito', his new western. The assistant director has just shown him the check-list above, and is explaining it to him.

Orson Has Miss Montrose's hair been styled yet ?

Assistant I'm afraid not. It's being done at the moment.

Write ten more exchanges like this.

Exercise 2

Later that day, Charles Orson went to the producer to complain about the morning's arrangements.

'When I got there, Miss Montrose was still being made up. The camera positions hadn't been checked.'

Write six more sentences.

1 . . . . . .

. . . . . .

2 . . . . . .

. . . . . .

3 . . . . . .

. . . . . .

The producer said, *'Well, what had been done ?'*

Write three sentences.

7 . . . . . .

8 . . . . . .

Bài tập 1

Bây giờ là 7g30. Charles Orson vừa đến để thực hiện bộ phim "Bandito", bộ phim cao bồi mới của ông. Trợ lý giám đốc vừa trình cho ông danh sách kiểm tra trên đây, và đang giải thích bảng kê này với ông.

Orson : Tóc của cô Montrose được chải kiểu chưa ?

Trợ lý : E là chưa. Hiện đang được chải ạ.

Viết thêm 10 câu trao đổi như thế này.

Bài tập 2

Xế chiều cùng ngày, Charles Orson tới nhà sản xuất phàn nàn về việc sắp xếp của buổi sáng.

"Lúc tôi đến đó, cô Montrose vẫn còn đang được trang điểm. Chỗ quay phim chưa được kiểm tra".

Viết thêm 6 câu nữa.

4 . . . . . .

. . . . . .

5 . . . . . .

. . . . . .

6 . . . . . .

. . . . . .

Nhà sản xuất nói : "Nào, cái gì đã được làm xong ?"

Hãy viết 3 câu trả lời.

9 . . . . . .

COMMON ABBREVIATIONS :

FAO	Food and Agricultural Organization - Tổ chức lương nông (của Liên Hiệp Quốc)
HCR	High Commission for Refugees - Cao ủy về người tị nạn (của Liên Hiệp Quốc)
IMF	International Monetary Fund - Quỹ tiền tệ thế giới
MA	Master of Arts - Cao học khoa học xã hội
ODP	Orderly Departure Program - Chương trình ra đi có trật tự
OPEC	Organization of Petroleum - Tổ chức các nước xuất khẩu dầu hỏa

Unit 71 The Circus Is Coming — Đoàn xiếc sắp tới

VOCABULARY

- **acrobat** *(n)* /'ækrəbæt/ person, esp at a circus, who performs difficult or unusual physical act (eg somersaults, walking on the hands or walking on a rope) = người nhảo lộn
  acrobatic *(adj)* /ækrə'bætɪk/ of or like an acrobat ~ *feats, skills.*
  acrobatics *(n)* acrobatic acts
  perform / do ~. *Her ~ were greeted with loud applause.*
- **amplifier** *(n)* /'æmplɪfaɪə/ device for amplifying (esp sounds or radio signals)
- **bandstand** *(n)* /'bændstænd/ covered platform for a band playing outdoors = bục có mái che để đội nhạc chơi ngoài trời
- **big top** *(n)* /bɪg'tɒp/ main tent at circus = lều chính ở rạp xiếc
- **box office** *(n)* /bɒks'ɒfɪs/ phòng vé
- **campus** *(n)* /'kæmpəs/ grounds and buildings of a university or college = khuôn viên đại học hay cao đẳng
  He lives on (the) ~ = in a building within the university grounds.
- **caravan** *(n)* /'kærəvæn/ (Brit) (US *trailer*) large vehicles on wheels, equipped for living in and usu towed by a motor vehicles = xe moóc nhà lưu động
- **casual labour** *(n)* /'kæʒuəl 'leɪbə/ lao động tạm thời, ngắn hạn
- **commence** *(v)* /kə'mens/ (fml) begin (st); start = bắt đầu *Shall we ~ (the ceremony) ?*
  commencement *(n)* (fml) beginning
- **erect** *(v)* /ɪ'rekt/ (fml) build, set up, establish = dựng lên ~ *a monument. A statue was ~ ed to (ie to honour the memory of) Queen Victoria.*
  erection *(n)* *The ~ of the building took several months.*
- **foundation** *(n)* /faun'deɪʃn/ layer of bricks, concrete, etc forming the solid base of a building underground = nền, móng *lay the ~ of a building*
- **generator** *(n)* /'dʒenəreɪtə/ máy phát điện
- **highwire** *(n)* /ˌhaɪ'waɪə/ high tightrope = dây căng cao (làm xiếc)
- **horse troupe** *(n)* /hɔ:s tru:p/ đoàn ngựa
- **invasion** *(n)* /ɪn'veɪʒn/ invading or being invaded = cuộc tấn công, xâm chiếm *suffer ~ by enemy forces.*
  invade *(v)* (fig) enter (st) in large numbers; crowd into = tràn vào *a city ~ d with tourists.*
- **llama** *(n)* /'lɑ:mə/ lạc đà không bướu
- **pier** *(n)* /pɪə/ structure of wood, iron, etc built out into the sea, a lake so that boats can stop and take on or put down passengers or goods = cầu tàu, bến cảng
- **pony** *(n)* /'pəunɪ/ small type of horse = loài ngựa nhỏ
- **precisely** *(adv)* /prɪ'saɪslɪ/ exactly = chính xác *I can't remember ~ what happened.*
- **promenade** *(n)* /ˌprɒmə'nɑ:d/ (Brit infml *prom*) public place for walking, esp a paved area along the waterfront at the seaside = lối đi
- **residential area** *(n)* /rezɪ'denʃəl eərɪə/ khu dân cư
- **safety net** *(n)* /'seɪftɪ net/ net placed to catch an acrobat, etc if he should fall = lưới an toàn
- **seal** *(n)* /si:l/ hải cẩu
- **straw** *(n)* /strɔ:/ rơm
- **trapeze artist** *(n)* /trə'pi:z 'ɑ:tɪst/ diễn viên đu xà treo
  trapeze *(n)* /trə'pi:z/ horizontal bar hung from ropes, used as a swing by acrobats and gymnasts = xà treo *the daring young man on the flying ~.*
- **unload** *(v)* /ʌn'ləud/ ~ st (from st) remove a load from = tháo, đưa xuống ~ *shopping from a car.*
- **zebra** *(n)* /'zebrə, 'zi:brə/ ngựa vằn

EXPRESSIONS

and so on = etcetera = etc. = vân vân

fingers crossed hai ngón tay làm dấu thánh giá để cầu may

folks qui vị khán giả (thân mật)

PROPER NAMES

Bertie	/'bə:tɪ/	Sally Farnham	/ˌsælɪ 'fa:nəm/
Jubilee	/'dʒu:bili:/	Wessex	/'wesɪks/

USAGE

1. In the next hour or so : in the next hour or about that time (khoảng chừng một giờ nữa)

EX : We will be arriving there *in a week or so.*
He must be fifty years old *or so*
The distance is 15 kilometres long *or so*

2. "By tomorrow morning, everything will have been set up"
By + specific time (about that time but before, not after, it)

EX : By 1999, the world will have been more than crowded
By then : (before a time in the past or future)
- About + specific time (either before or after that time)

EX : About night fall I will go to your room

GRAMMAR NOTES

a/ Passive infinitive construction :

[To + be + past participle] (present)

[To + have + been + past participle] (perfect)

(seldom used)

EX : I want this work *to be done* right now
(Tôi muốn công việc này phải được làm ngay)
I want this work *to have been done* yesterday
(Tôi muốn công việc này phải được làm hồi hôm qua)
He was said *to have been killed* long ago
(Người ta nói anh ta đã bị giết cách đây lâu rồi)
There + to be + noun/ pronoun + passive infinitive]
(Có việc gì cần phải được làm)

EX : There is a lot *to be done* (có nhiều chuyện phải làm)
- There are posters *to be put up*, newspaper ads *to be arranged*, casual labour *to be hired*.
(See Exercise 3)

b/ Passive structure of future perfect/future perfect continuous tense

- Future perfect : S + will/ shall + have + been + past participle
- Future perfect continuous : S + will/shall + have + been + being + past participle (almost never used)

(See Exercise 3)

Announcer This is RW2, Watermouth's own independent radio station. In the studio with me this morning is Sally Farnham, the daugher of circus owner, Bertie Farnham. Farnham's circus will be here in Watermouth for two weeks. That's right, isn't it, Sally ?

Sally Yes, that's right. We open tomorrow for two weeks.

Announcer Has the circus arrived yet, Sally ?

Sally No, no. Not yet. It's on the road somewhere between Sandpool and here.

Xướng ngôn viên : Đây là RW2 trạm truyền thanh độc lập của Watermouth. Sáng nay, trong phòng ghi âm cùng với tôi là Sally Farnham con gái của chủ nhân đoàn xiếc, Bertie Farnham. Đoàn xiếc Farnham sẽ lưu diễn ở Watermouth trong 2 tuần, phải không cô Sally?

Sally : Vâng, đúng. Chúng tôi sẽ khai mạc vào ngày mai và lưu diễn trong hai tuần.

Xướng ngôn viên : Đoàn xiếc đã tới chưa cô Sally?

Sally : Chưa, chưa. Hiện đoàn đang trên đường đến đây, giữa Sandpool và Watermouth.

Announcer I suppose there's a lot to be done between now and the first show.

Sally Yes, that's right. I've already been here for three days. There were all the advance arrangements to be made. It's like preparing for a small invasion.

Announcer What sort of things have you done?

Sally Oh, there are so many things to be done, you know. There are posters to be put up, newspaper ads to be arranged, casual labour to be hired and so on.

Announcer When will the circus actually arrive?

Sally In the next hour or so. The first trucks should be arriving any time now, and then the hard work really begins.

Announcer Most people love the circus, don't they ? But not many realize how much work there is, do they ?

Sally That's right. We'll be working all day and half the night. It's a bit like moving a small army. But, fingers crossed, by tomorrow morning everything will have been set up in time for the afternoon performance. Oh, there's the grand parade through the town centre at 11.30, so don't forget to come and see us.

Announcer Thank you, Sally, for coming in to talk to us. Now don't forget, folks. The grand circus parade will start from the pier at 11.30, go along the promenade, through the gardens and finish in Jubilee Park. Farnham's Circus will be in town for two weeks until 28th August. Now for some music.

XNV : Chắc phải có nhiều việc cần làm từ bây giờ cho đến buổi trình diễn đầu tiên.

S : Vâng, đúng. Tôi đã có mặt ở đây được 3 ngày. Có nhiều việc phải xếp đặt trước. Giống như chuẩn bị cho một cuộc tấn công nhỏ vậy.

XNV : Cô đã làm những loại việc gì ?

S : Ồ, có rất nhiều việc phải làm. Nào là dán bích chương, đăng quảng cáo trên báo, mướn nhân công v.v...

XNV : Khi nào đoàn xiếc mới tới ?

S : Trong khoảng một giờ nữa thôi. Bây giờ những chuyến xe tải đầu tiên sẽ đến vào bất kỳ lúc nào, và rồi công việc nặng nhọc thực sự bắt đầu.

XNV : Phần lớn mọi người đều thích xiếc phải không? Nhưng ít người hiểu được có bao nhiêu công việc phải làm, đúng không ?

S : Đúng. Chúng tôi sẽ làm việc cả ngày và đến nửa đêm gần giống như di chuyển một đoàn quân nhỏ vậy. Nhưng cầu trời khoảng sáng mai tất cả mọi việc sẽ được sắp đặt sẵn sàng cho buổi trình diễn ban chiều. Ồ, còn có một cuộc diễu hành lớn qua trung tâm thị trấn vào lúc 11g30. Nhớ đến xem chúng tôi.

XNV : Cám ơn cô Sally đã đến nói chuyện với chúng tôi. Nào bây giờ quí thính giả đừng quên nhé. Cuộc diễn hành lớn của đoàn xiếc sẽ bắt đầu từ bến cảng lúc 11g30 đi xuôi theo lối đi dạo qua các vườn hoa và dừng lại ở công viên Jubilee. Đoàn xiếc Farnham sẽ lưu diễn ở thị trấn trong 2 tuần cho đến ngày 28-8. Bây giờ mời quí thính giả thưởng thức vài phút âm nhạc.

Exercise 1

This is Sally's checklist of arrangements :

1 consult police about car parking (Wessex police)
2 arrange telephone lines (British Telecom)
3 connect water supply (Wessex Water Authority)
4 place ads (Watermouth Echo, Wessex Advertiser, Radio Watermouth)
5 order food supplies for animals (Wessex Meat Company)
6 arrange for fire inspection (Wessex Fire Brigade)

All of these things will have been done before the circus arrives. Make sentences.

A telephone line will have been arranged.
She'll have asked British Telecom.

Exercise 2

Sally's brother, Freddie Farnham, is in charge of the menagerie. This is his checklist :

1 unload animals
2 collect meat supplies
3 water animals
4 feed animals
5 check sanitary arrangements for animals
6 provide straw for animals

The animals have to be unloaded.

Make sentences.

PRACTICE

Language summary

(There's a lot) to be (done).

(It) will have to be done	*by September.* *in two years time.* *before the end of the year.*

The Republic of Wibanya is building a new capital, Wibanya City. It's being built on the banks of the River Banya. It was started five years ago, and three projects have already been finished. The government hope that it will be finished in about ten years time. They hope to move to Wibanya City in about five years time, although many buildings won't have been completed by that time. There will still be a lot to be done.

Exercise 3

It's eleven o'clock on Sunday morning. There's a lot to be done. Sally's father, Bertie Farnham, is in charge of the arrangements.

1 erect big top
2 set up ticket office
3 park caravans
4 put up seating
5 erect cages
6 connect generators
7 put up safety net
8 set up high wire
9 put up trapezes
10 set up bandstand
11 place loudspeakers in tent
12 connect amplifiers
13 set up and connect lights
14 connect microphones
15 check everything

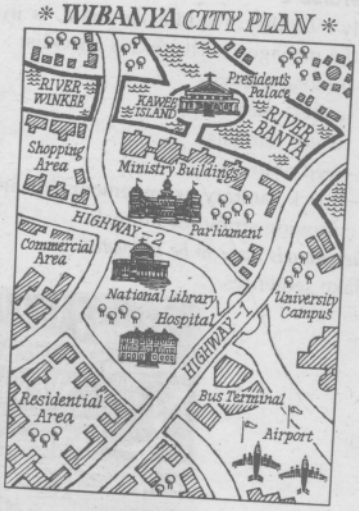
There's the big top to be erected.

Make sentences.

Nước cộng hòa Wibanya đang xây một thủ đô mới, Thành phố Wibanya. Nó đang được xây bên bờ con sông Banya. Việc xây dựng đã khởi đầu cách đây 5 năm và 3 dự án đã hoàn tất rồi. Chính phủ hy vọng là sẽ xây xong trong 10 năm nữa. Họ hy vọng chuyển sang thành phố Wibanya trong vòng 5 năm nữa, mặc dầu nhiều tòa nhà chưa được xây xong vào khoảng đó. Vẫn còn rất nhiều việc phải được làm.

WIBANYA CITY - BUILDING SCHEDULE

Highway one – completed 3 yrs. ago
Banya Bridge – " " " "
Highway two – finished before rainy season this year
Airport – one runway open. Completion 3 yrs.
Parliament Building – Foundations laid last yr. Completion 2 yrs.
National Library – commences next yr. Compl. 4 yrs.
University – Building underway. Opens 5 yrs time
National Hospital – Compl. next month.
Bus Terminal – bldg. comm. last yr. Finished in Sept.
M. of Education – compl. 4 yrs.
M. of Interior – compl. 7 mnths.
M. of Foreign Affairs – begins next week. Fin. 18 months.
President's Palace – building comm. next year. Completion ??
Kawee Bridge – completion Jan. next yr.
Winkee Bridge – opens next month.



Exercise 1

Answer these questions in full.

1 Where is the capital being built ?
2 When was it started ?
3 How many projects have been finished?

Exercise 2

Highway 1

Highway 1 was completed three years ago.

Write sentences in the past about :

1 The Banya Bridge . . . . . .

Exercise 3

Write six sentences using 'to be (done)'.

Exercise 4

The Ministry of Education will have been completed in four years time.

Write sentences using 'will have been (done)', about :

1 Highway 2
2 The airport
3 The National Hospital
4 The bus terminal
5 The Foreign Ministry

Bài tập 1

Trả lời đầy đủ cho các câu hỏi sau đây

4 When will it all be finished ?
5 When will the government move there ?
6 Will everything have been completed ?
7 How much will there be to be done ?

Bài tập 2

Xa lộ 1

Xa lộ 1 được hoàn thành cách đây 3 năm.

Viết các câu trong thì quá khứ về :

2 The Parliament Building . . . . . .
3 The bus terminal . . . . . .

Bài tập 3

Viết 6 câu dùng "to be (done)".

Bài tập 4

Bộ Giáo dục sẽ được xây xong trong 4 năm tới.

Viết các câu dùng "will have been (done)", về :

6 The Kawee Bridge
7 The Winkee Bridge
8 The National Library
9 The Ministry of the Interior
10 The President's Palace

Unit 72 Getting Things Done — Nhờ người làm hộ

VOCABULARY

- **adjust** *(v)* /ə'dʒʌst/ alter (st) by a small amount so that it will fit or be right for use; regulate = điều chỉnh *The brakes need ~ ing; ~ the rear mirror.*
- **aerial** *(n)* /'eəriəl/ (US **antenna**) one or more wires or rods for sending or receiving radio waves = ăng ten trời
- **bulb holder** *(n)* /bʌlb 'həuldə/ chuôi đèn
- **clinic** *(n)* /'klɪnɪk/ place or session at which specialized medical treatment or advice is given to visiting patients = trạm y tế
- **confirm** *(v)* /kən'fɜ:m/ establish the truth of = xác nhận *The rumours of an attack were later ~ ed.*
  confirmed *(adj)* settled in a particular habit or state *a ~ drunkard, gambler.*
  confirmation *(n)* /ˌkɒnfə'meɪʃn/ confirming or being confirmed *We are waiting for ~ of our onward reservations* = waiting to be told that our further travel bookings are still valid.
- **copy – shop** *(n)* /'kɒpɪ ʃɒp/ tiệm phô tô copi
- **document** *(n)* /'dɒkjumənt/ paper, form, book, etc giving information about st, evidence or proof of st = tài liệu, văn kiện *The spy stole secret government ~s.*
- **double – glaze** *(v)* /ˌdʌbl 'gleɪz/ fit two layers of glass to (the windows of a room, etc) to reduce heat loss, noise, etc = lắp kính đôi *The house is double – glazed back and front.*
- **embassy** *(n)* /'embəsɪ/ official residence of an ambassador and his staff = sứ quán *the American ~ in London*
- **enthusiast** *(n)* /ɪn'θju:zɪæst/ ~ (for/ about st) person filled with enthusiasm = người nhiệt tình
  enthusiastic *(adj)* ~ (about / over st / sb) full of enthusiasm = nhiệt tình
  enthusiasm *(n)* strong feeling of admiration or interest; great eagerness *His ~ made everyone else interested.*
- **grant** *(n)* /gra:nt/ ~ (to do st / towards st) thing given for a particular purpose, esp money from the government = tài trợ, trợ cấp *student ~s* ie to pay for their education = học bổng
- **kitchen unit** *(n)* /kɪtʃn 'ju:nɪt/ đồ đạc nhà bếp
- **manuscript** *(n)* /'mænjuskrɪpt/ 1. thing written by hand, not typed or printed = bản viết tay 2. author's work when written or typed (not yet a printed book) = bản thảo *submit a ~ to an editor.*
- **neglect** *(v)* /nɪ'glekt/ give no or not enough care or attention to sb / st = xao lãng *~ one's studies, children, health.*
- **perm** *(v)* /pɜ:m/ give sb's hair a permanent wave = uốn quăn *Her hair has been ~ed.*
- **plumber** *(n)* /'plʌmə/ person whose job is to fit and repair water – pipes, water – tanks, etc in building = thợ sửa ống nước
- **redecorate** *(v)* /rɪ'dekəreɪt/ trang hoàng lại
- **renew** *(v)* /rɪ'nju:/ replace (st) with st new of the same kind = thay mới *~ new tyres, bearings; ~ the water in the goldfish bowl.*
- **restyle** *(v)* /ri:'staɪl/ làm lại kiểu tóc
- **shampoo** *(n)* /ʃæm'pu:/ soapy liquid, cream, etc for washing the hair = dầu gội đầu *a new perfumed ~; Don't use too much ~.*
- **tap** *(n)* /tæp/ vòi nước
- **tile** *(v)* /taɪl/ cover (a surface) with tiles = lát gạch
- **washer** *(n)* /'wɒʃə/ small flat ring made of rubber, metal, plastic, etc placed between two surfaces (eg under a nut) to make a screw or joint tight, prevent leakage = vòng đệm ở vòi nước
- **witness** *(v)* /'wɪtnɪs/ be present at (st) and see it = chứng kiến, làm chứng *~ an accident, a murder*

EXPRESSIONS

It's getting on my nerves nó làm tôi khó chịu quá
I'm not very good with my hands tôi không khéo tay lắm
Oh, my god ! Ô, trời ơi
The sooner, the better, if you ask me nếu anh hỏi tôi thì càng sớm càng tốt
to give somebody a lift cho ai đó đi nhờ xe
to pick somebody up đón ai
to drop somebody off cho xuống xe, thả xuống

PROPER NAMES

Andrian	/ˈændrɪən/
France	/fra:ns/
Jean Harvey	/dʒi:n ˈha:vɪ/
Robin	/ˈrɒbin/
Susannah	/suˈzænə , su:-/
Tim	/tɪm/

USAGE

1. To give s/o a lift cho ai đi nhờ
   To give someone much trouble gây phiền hà cho ai
   To give s/o to understand that... làm cho ai hiểu rằng
   To give one's life to one's country cống hiến cả đời cho tổ quốc
   To give one's mind to study chuyên cần học tập
   Would give the world for s/t (to get s/t) sẵn sàng hy sinh hết để được cái gì

EX : I would give the whole world to get her close to me

2. Had better (nên, tốt hơn là)
   Had best (tốt nhất là – informal English)

EX : We'd better go now, I'm sure he'll never come here (Tốt hơn là bây giờ ta đi thôi, tôi biết chắc nó không bao giờ đến đây đâu)

GRAMMAR NOTES

THE CAUSATIVE = HAVE ST DONE

Form = Have + noun / pronoun object / + past participle

Compare : - Sadie decorated the room (= She did the work herself)
- Sadie *had* the room *decorated* (= A decorator did the work)

Use 1. We use the *Causative* to stress the fact that we are "causing" someone to do a job for us.

EX : - I'm *having* the car *serviced.*
- You ought to *have* that radio *repaired.*

2. We sometimes use *get* in place of *have* in the causative to say st is urgent.
Have that car repaired ! (causative) Get that car repaired ! (more urgent causative).

3. We often use the causative with verbs that have to do with services = *build, clean, decorate, develop* (a film), *mend, photocopy, press, print, repair, service.*

NEED + V-ing

Active forms with a passive meaning.

The active form after NEED has a passive meaning :

Ex : - The bicycle *needs oiling* (= The bicycle needs *to be oiled*)
- The windows *need cleaning* (= The windows need *to be cleaned*).

Anne Tim ! That bathroom tap's still dripping. It's getting on my nerves ! I thought you said you were going to fix it.

Tim Oh, yes... the washer needs replacing.

Anne Why don't you replace it then ?

Tim It's not as easy as that. I'll try and do it next week.

Anne But you said that last week.

Tim I know. I think you'd better phone for a plumber and get it done. I'm not really quite sure how to do it.

Anne : Tim ! Vòi nước trong phòng tắm cứ nhỏ giọt hoài. Nó làm tao phát khùng lên mất ! Tao nghĩ mày có nói là mày sẽ sửa nó mà.

Tim : Ồ, đúng... cái vòng đệm cần phải thay.

Anne : Thế sao mày không thay ?

Tim : Không có dễ vậy đâu. Tuần sau em sẽ cố gắng thay.

Anne : Nhưng mày nói tuần trước mà.

Tim : Em biết. Em nghĩ chị nên gọi điện thoại cho một ông thợ sửa ống nước đến làm thì hơn. Em không biết chắc phải sửa như thế nào.

Exercise 1

Make conversations using the following :

1 That light's still broken/bulb holder/electrician

2 The stop light on my car's not working/bulb/take it to the garage

3 The record-player sounds terrible/ stylus/ take it to the shop

4 One of the rings on the cooker isn't working/element/electrician

5 The television reception's very poor/aerial/TV engineer

Adrian and Susannah are going on a touring holiday of France next week. They're taking their own car. Adrian always gives Susannah a lift to work. He's dropping her off outside her office.

Adrian Oh, Susannah ! I won't be able to pick you up from work tonight. I'm having the car serviced. I thought we'd better have it done before we go.

Susannah That's all right. When are you collecting it ?

Adrian Not till quarter to six. Why ?

Susannah Well, I want to have my hair done before the holiday. I'll try and make an appointment to get it done after work. Then you can pick me up from the hairdresser's.

Adrian OK. Can you ring me at work and let me know what time ?

Susannah Right, I'll call you later. Bye.

Adrian và Susannah sẽ đi du lịch nước Pháp vào tuần sau. Họ định đi xe hơi riêng. Adrian luôn luôn đưa Susannah đi làm. Anh đang cho cô xuống bên ngoài cơ quan.

Adrian : Ô, Susannah ! Tối nay anh không thể đến đón em được. Anh sẽ giao xe cho thợ tu bổ. Anh nghĩ là mình nên làm việc đó trước đi.

Susannah : Đúng đấy. Khi nào anh lấy xe về ?

A : Phải tới 5g45. Mà sao ?

S : À, em muốn nhờ thợ làm tóc trước khi đi nghỉ. Em sẽ cố gắng hẹn trước với người ta và nhờ họ làm đầu sau giờ làm việc. Vậy anh có thể đón em ở hiệu uốn tóc.

A : Được. Vậy em gọi điện thoại cho anh ở sở làm và cho anh biết giờ nhé ?

S : Vâng, em sẽ gọi cho anh. Tạm biệt.

Exercise 2

Adrian hasn't got time to do any of these things himself.

HOLIDAY ADVICE

Before taking your car abroad, don't forget to :

- ☐ have a thorough service
- ☐ change the oil
- ☐ check the battery
- ☐ test the brakes
- ☐ check the tyres carefully and change if necessary
- ☐ have the lights adjusted for driving on the right

He's going to have the car serviced.

Make five more sentences.

Exercise 3

Susannah's going to have her hair done.

Make sentences with :

wash/shampoo/re-style/dye/cut/perm

Exercise 4

HOUSES FOR SALE

TERRACED house. Built 1872. 3 bedrooms. Needs some attention. Ideal for keen do-it-yourself enthusiast. Very reasonable price. Gatsby & Stahr, Estate Agents.

Look at the advertisement. This house is old, and is in very bad condition. Imagine you were interested in buying it. What do you think might need to be done to the house ?

The house might need repainting.

Make a list.

Exercise 5

Listen to the conversation between an estate agent and Robin and Jean Harvey, who are looking at the house. Tick any items on your list that are mentioned in the conversation.

Exercise 6

When Robin and Jean are talking about the house, they mention some things that they could do themselves, and some things they would have to have done. Look at the chart below, and the example : *they would have to have kitchen units put in*. Listen to the conversation again, and complete the chart.

	Do it themselves	Have it done by someone else
Put in kitchen units		✔
Do kitchen ceiling		
Paint kitchen		
Rewire house		
Put in more power-points		
Redecorate lounge		

	Do it themselves	Have it done by someone else
Convert small bedroom into bathroom		✔
Put toilet in bathroom		
Repair roof		
Put in central heating		
Double-glaze windows		

What could you do yourself, and what would you have done by someone else ?

PRACTICE

Language summary

To have/get something done.
It needs doing.
It needs to be done.

Exercise 1

Look at the words in the box. Read them all carefully. Make ten sentences like this. *(His) tooth needed filling so (he) went to the dentist's to get it filled.*

1 .....
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....
7 .....
8 .....
9 .....
10 .....

Exercise 2

Look at the words in the box. Make eight sentences like this.
(She's) going to the dry cleaner's to have (her) cardigan cleaned.

1 .....
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....
7 .....
8 .....

Bài tập 1

Xem các từ trong khung. Đọc tất cả thật kỹ. Đặt 10 câu như thế này :
Răng (anh ấy) cần được trám, nên (anh ấy) đến nha sĩ để được trám răng.

embassy	*tooth*	service
garage	watch	renew
travel agent's	passport	type
clinic	hair	wash
laundry	baggage	*fill*
jeweller's	signature	change
secretarial agency	shirts	repair
dentist's	flight	clear
customs	bandage	witness
hairdresser's	manuscript	cut
lawyer	car	confirm

Bài tập 2

Xem các từ trong khung. Đặt 8 câu như thế này :
(Chị ấy) sắp đến tiệm hấp tẩy để nhờ hấp tẩy áo len (của chị).

teacher	*cardigan*	take
photogra-pher's	suit	make
optician's	house	X-ray
clinic	portrait	photo-copy
dry cleaner's	chest	correct
an architect	homework	test
copy-shop	eyes	design
an artist	documents	*clean*
tailor's	photo	paint

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Units 69 – 72

Dialogue A

Listen

Manager Right gentlemen. As you know, the Prime Minister's staying here tomorrow night and we want everything to be perfect. So there's a lot to be done. Now George, have the outside fences been painted ?

George Yes, sir. They were painted yesterday. The paint's nearly dry.

Manager And what about the grass. Has that been cut ?

George The grass is being cut now, sir. Can't you hear the machines ?

Listen and repeat

A1

Listen

A : Have the fences been painted?
B : Yes, sir. They were painted yesterday.
C : Yes, sir. They were painted yesterday.
A : Has the swimming pool been cleaned ?
B : Yes, sir. It was cleaned yesterday.
C : Yes, sir. It was cleaned yesterday.

Now you do the same

Have the fences been painted ? ..... Yes, sir. They were painted yesterday.
Has the swimming pool been cleaned ? ..... Yes, sir. It was cleaned yesterday.
Have the new signs been put up ? ..... Yes, sir. They were put up yesterday.
Has the gate been mended ? ..... Yes, sir. It was mended yesterday.

A2 Listen

A : Has the grass been cut ?
B : It's being cut now, sir.
C : It's being cut now, sir.
A : Have the windows been cleaned ?
B : They're being cleaned now, sir.
C : They're being cleaned now, sir.

Now you do the same

Has the grass been cut ? ..... It's being cut now, sir.
Have the windows been cleaned ? ..... They're being cleaned now, sir.
Has the floor been polished ? ..... It's being polished now, sir.
Have the broken chairs been mended ? ..... They're being mended now, sir.

Dialogue B

Listen

Manager Now Margaret,what about the Prime Minister's room ? What's being done about that ?

Margaret We're completely redecorating it.

Manager You mean, it isn't finished yet ?

Margaret Don't worry, sir. It will have been done by tomorrow afternoon.

Manager I thought it had been done already. It was being done when I was in there on Tuesday.

Margaret It takes longer than you think, sir.

Listen and repeat

B1 Listen

A : We're redecorating it.
B : It will have been redecorated by tomorrow.
C : It will have been redecorated by tomorrow.

Now you do the same

We're redecorating it. ..... It will have been redecorated by tomorrow.
We're installing a new bathroom suite. ..... It will have been installed by tomorrow.
We're changing all the furniture. ..... It will have been changed by tomorrow.

A : We are installing a new bathroom suite.
B : It will have been installed by tomorrow.
C : It will have been installed by tomorrow.

B2 Listen
A : The room will have been redecorated by tomorrow.
B : I thought it had been redecorated already.
C : I thought it had been redecorated already.
A : A new bathroom suite will have been installed by tomorrow.
B : I thought it had been installed already.
C : I thought it had been installed already.

B3 Listen
A : The room is being redecorated.
B : It was being redecorated on Tuesday.
C : It was being redecorated on Tuesday.
A : The bathroom suite is being installed.
B : It was being installed on Tuesday.
C : It was being installed on Tuesday.

We're fitting new carpets. .....They will have been fitted by tomorrow.

Now you do the same
The room will have been redecorated by tomorrow.
..... I thought it had been redecorated already.
A new bathroom suite will have been installed by tomorrow.
..... I thought it had been installed already.
All the furniture will have been changed by tomorrow.
..... I thought it had been changed already.
New carpets will have been fitted by tomorrow.
..... I thought they had been fitted already.

Now you do the same
The room is being redecorated. .....
It was being redecorated on Tuesday.
The bathroom suite is being installed. .....
It was being installed on Tuesday.
The furniture is being changed. .....
It was being changed on Tuesday.
New carpets are being fitted. .....
They were being fitted on Tuesday.

Dialogue C

Listen

Manager Right. Can you think of anything else that needs doing ?
George What about informing the police ? Do they need to be informed ?
Manager No, no. They're informed automatically.
George Well. I can't think of anything else, can you ?
Manager No, George. I can't. I think that's all.
George Right. I'll go and check that everything's being done that should be done. If there are any problems, I'll let you know.
Manager Fine. I'll see you later ... Oh, George ?
George Mmm.
Manager Andrew's suit needs pressing. Tell him to get it pressed will you ? It looks awful.

New words
- press *(v)* /prɛs/ shape or remove creases from (clothes) by applying pressure with an iron. = ủi cho thẳng. *That suit ought to be ~ed; Press the pleats flat.*

Listen and repeat

C1 Listen
A : What about informing the police ?
B : Do they need to be informed?
C : Do they need to be informed?

Now you do the same
What about informing the police ?
..... Do they need to be informed ?
What about arranging transport ?
..... Does that need to be arranged ?
What about organizing security ?
..... Does that need to be organized ?

A : What about arranging transport?
B : Does that need to be arranged?
C : Does that need to be arranged?

C2 Listen

A : Do the police need to be informed ?
B : No, no. They're informed automatically.
C : No, no. They're informed automatically.
A : Dose transport need to be arranged ?
B : No, no. That's arranged automatically.
C : No, no. That's arranged automatically.

C3 Listen

A : Andrew's suit needs pressing.
B : Tell him to get it pressed, will you ?
C : Tell him to get it pressed, will you ?
A : Andrew's hair needs cutting.
B : Tell him to get it cut, will you ?
C : Tell him to get it cut, will you ?

What about telling the newspapers ?
..... Do they need to be told ?

Now you do the same

Do the police need to be informed ?
..... No, no. They're informed automatically.
Dose transport need to be arranged ?
..... No, no. That's arranged automatically.
Dose security need to be organized ?
..... No, no. That's organized automatically.
Do the newspapers need to be told ?
..... No, no. They're told automatically.

Now you do the same

Andrew's suit needs pressing. .....Tell him to get it pressed, will you ?
Andrew's hair needs cutting. .....Tell him to get it cut, will you ?
Andrew's shoes need polishing. .....Tell him to get them polished, will you ?
Andrew's tie needs cleaning. .....Tell him to get it cleaned, will you ?

Listening

Listen Mrs Mavis Roberts has just won 1,000,000 on the football pools

Dave Well Mrs Roberts. How dose it feel to be rich ?
Mavis Oh, marvellous ... but I still can't believe it.
Dave When did you first know you'd won ?
Mavis This morning. There was a telegram. I'm not on the phone, see.
Dave Hadn't you checked your coupon ?
Mavis No ! It never gets checked till Monday. That's when my brother comes. He does that.
Dave I see, I see. Have you ever won before ?
Mavis Only once. Just a few pounds. I use the same numbers every week. They're my lucky numbers, see.
Dave Now, have you thought about what you're going to do with the money ?
Mavis Spend it, of course. That's what money's for, isn't it ? I'm going to stop working for a start.
Dave And then ?
Mavis I'm going to have a week in London. I've always wanted to do that and never had the money. I'm going to have the best room at the Ritz and breakfast served in bed. I'm going to be driven about by a chauffeur in a uniform.
Dave A Rolls-Royce, of course.
Mavis Oh yes. A new one. A yellow one. I saw one in a film once.
Dave Now, do you think it's going to change your life ?
Mavis I hope so ... I'm going to move to the Lake District. I think I'll have a house built. I've always wanted to live there.
Dave Now then, Mrs R, you aren't going to spend it all, are you ?
Mavis I wasn't born yesterday, you know. No, no. Most of the money will be invested so as I never have to work again.

Now listen again and answer the questions when you hear this sound BELL

1

Dave Well Mrs Roberts. How does it feel to be rich ?

Mavis Oh, marvellous ... but I still can't believe it.

Dave When did you first know you'd won ?

Mavis This morning. There was a telegram. I'm not on the phone, see.

Dave Hadn't you checked your coupon ?

Mavis No ! It never gets checked till Monday. That's when my brother comes. He does that.

Dave I see, I see. Have you ever won before ?

Mavis Only once. Just a few pounds. I use the same numbers every week. They're my lucky numbers, see.

2

Dave Now, have you thought about what you're going to do with the money ?

Mavis Spend it, of course. That's what money's for, isn't it ? I'm going to stop working for a start.

Dave And then ?

Mavis I'm going to have a week in London. I've always wanted to do that and never had the money. I'm going to have the best room at the Ritz and breakfast served in bed.

3

Mavis I'm going to be driven about by a chauffeur in a uniform.

Dave A Rolls-Royce, of course.

Mavis Oh yes. A new one. A yellow one. I saw one in a film once.

4

Dave Now, do you think it's going to change your life ?

Mavis I hope so ... I'm going to move to the Lake District. I think I'll have a house built. I've always wanted to live there.

Dave Now then, Mrs R, you aren't going to spend it all, are you ?

Mavis I wasn't born yesterday, you know. No, no. Most of the money will be invested so as I never have to work again.

BELL

Why wasn't she told by telephone ?
.....Because she isn't on the phone.
Who usually checks her coupon ?
.....Her brother usually checks her coupon.
Why does she use the same numbers every week ? .....Because they are her lucky numbers.

BELL

What's she going to stop doing ?
..... She's going to stop working.
Why has she never spent a week in London before ?
.....Because she's never had the money.

BELL

Where does she want her breakfast served ?
.....She wants it served in bed.
Why does she want a yellow Rolls-Royce ?
.....Because she saw one in a film.

BELL

What is she going to have done in the Lake District ?
.....She's going to have a house built.
What's going to happen to most of the money?.....It's going to be invested.
What does she never want to do again ?
..... She never wants to work again.

Open conversation

Listen and reply

A : Where do you live, in a house or a flat ?
B : .....
A : Has it been redecorated recently ?
B : .....
A : When do you think it will be redecorated ?
B : .....
A : What else needs doing there ?
B : .....
A : When did you last have your hair cut ?
B : .....
A : When will you next have it cut ?
B : .....
A : When did you last have your teeth checked?
B : .....
A : What needed doing ?
B : .....
A : That's the end of section eighteen.

Unit 73 Keeping Fit — Giữ cho cơ thể cường tráng

VOCABULARY

- **amateur** *(n)* /'æmətə/ person who practised a sport or artistic skill without receiving money for it = người chơi nghiệp dư
  [attrib] an ~ photographer, boxer; ~ wrestling.
- **ankle** *(n)* /'æŋkl/ mắt cá chân
- **cameraderie** *(n)* /ˌkæmə'rɑ:dərɪ/ friendship and mutual trust; comradeship = tình đồng đội, đồng chí
- **casualty** *(n)* /'kæʒʊəltɪ/ person who is killed or injured in war or in an accident = số người tử vong hay bị thương *Heavy ~ ties were reported in the fighting.*
- **causeway** *(n)* /'kɔ:zweɪ/ raised road or path, esp low or wet ground = đường đắp cao
- **channel** *(v)* /'tʃænl/ 1. form a channel or channels in st = đào rãnh *Deep grooves ~ ed the soft rock.* 2. carry (st) in a channel; direct = chở cái gì trên kênh; hướng. *Water is ~ led through a series of irrigation canals* = Nước được dưa qua một loạt kênh thủy lợi.
- **closely – knit** *(adj)* /'klʊslɪ nɪt/ có cấu trúc chặt chẽ, liên kết
- **coral** *(adj)* /'kɒrəl/ thuộc san hô
- **desalination plant** *(n)* /ˌdi:ˌsælɪ'neɪʃn plɑ:nt/ nhà máy lọc muối
- **drizzly** *(adj)* /'drɪzlɪ/ có mưa phùn
  a cold ~ day.
  drizzle *(n)* fine misty rain = mưa phùn.
  drizzle *(v)* rain in many fine drops = mưa phùn *It had been ~ ling all day.*
- **exertion** *(n)* /ɪg'zɜ:ʃn/ = sự nỗ lực, dốc sức
- **halt** *(n)* /hɔ:lt/ stop = sự dừng lại
  come to a ~.
- **humidity** *(n)* /hju'mɪdətɪ/ degree of moisture, esp in the air; dampness = độ ẩm
  humid *(adj)* /'hju:mɪd/ (of the air or climate) damp = ẩm ướt *~ heat, atmosphere.*
- **importation** *(n)* /ɪmpɔ:'teɪʃn/ sự nhập khẩu
  a ban on the ~ of drugs.
  importer *(n)* person, company that imports goods or services *the country's largest ~ of tobacco.*
  import *(v)* /ɪm'pɔ:t/ ~ st (from...); ~ st (into...) bring (goods, ideas, etc) from a foreign country into one's own country = nhập khẩu.
- **infected** *(adj)* /ɪn'fektɪd/ lây, nhiễm
- **jog** *(v)* /dʒɒg/ (usu *go jogging*) run slowly and steadily for a time, for physical exercise = chạy bộ chậm *He goes jogging every evening.*
  jogger *(n)* *person who jogs for exercise.*
  jogging *(n)* /'dʒɒgɪŋ/
- **keep fit exercise** *(n)* /ki:p fɪt 'eksəsaɪz/ tập thể dục dưỡng sinh
- **marathon** *(n)* /'mærəθən/ long – distance running race (of about 42 km) = cuộc chạy mara tông *I've never run a ~.*
- **marijuana** *(n)* /mærɪjʊ'ɑ:nə/ thuốc phiện
- **outstretched** *(adj)* /ˌaʊt'stretʃt/ (with limbs) stretched or spread out as far as possible = duỗi thẳng ra
  He lay ~ on the grass; with arms ~.
- **PE** *(abbr)* /ˌpi:'i:/ physical education = môn thể dục *do ~ at school; a ~ lesson.*
- **palm** *(n)* /pɑ:m/ lòng bàn tay
- **physical fitness** *(n)* /'fɪzɪkl fɪtnɪs/ thể chất khỏe
- **polio** *(n)* /'pəʊlɪəʊ/ infectious disease caused by a virus in which the spiral cord becomes inflamed, often resulting paralysis = bệnh bại liệt *~ vaccine; anti ~ infections.*
- **profitable** *(adj)* /'prɒfɪtəbl/ beneficial = có lợi *~ investments*
  profitability *(n)*
- **quit** *(v)* /kwɪt/ (pt, pp *quit*, (Brit) *quitted*)
  1. (infml) stop (doing st) = dừng lại *~ work for five minutes; ~ fooling around.*
  2. leave = bỏ *If I don't get a pay rise, I'll ~.*
- **rainfall** *(n)* /'reɪnfɔ:l/ total amount of rain falling within a given area in a given time = lượng mưa *an annual ~ of 10 cm.*
- **reef** *(n)* /ri:f/ ridge of rock, shingle, sand, etc at or near the surface of the sea = đá ngầm *The ship was wrecked on a coral ~.*
- **resemble** *(v)* /rɪ'zembl/ be like or similar to = giống, tương tự *She ~ s her brother in looks.*
- **revenue** *(n)* /'revənju:/ income, esp the total annual income of the State from taxes, etc = nguồn thu nhập *public / private ~.*
- **scorpion** *(n)* /'skɔ:pjən/ con bọ cạp, loại có mũi sắt
- **scuba diver** *(n)* /'sku:bə 'daɪvə/ thợ lặn có bình khí ép

- **self – governing** *(adj)* /self ˈgʌvənɪŋ/ tự trị
- **small pox** *(n)* /ˈsmɔːlpɒks/ bệnh đậu mùa
- **snorkeller** *(n)* /ˈsnɔːkələ/ người bơi có ống thông khí
- **spokesman** *(n)* /ˈspəuksmən/ person who speaks or is chosen to speak on behalf of a group = phát ngôn viên
- **stumble** *(v)* /ˈstʌmbl/ ~ (over st) strike one's foot against st and almost fall = vấp *I ~ d over a tree root*
- **sum up** *(v)* /sʌmʌp/ summarize = tóm tắt ~ *the text in your own words.*
- **symbolize** *(v)* /ˈsɪmbəlaɪz/ be a symbol of (st) = tiêu biểu, đặc trưng *a picture of red disc with rays coming from it, ~ zing the sun.*
- **toe** *(n)* /təu/ ngón chân

EXPRESSIONS

It's great to be alive thật là tuyệt khi biết mình vẫn còn sống

It went like a dream ! cuộc đua diễn ra như một giấc mơ

They gave me the heart to go on khán giả đã làm tôi thêm sức mạnh, nghị lực để chạy tiếp

- **unfit** *(adj)* /ʌnˈfɪt/ not well = không đủ sức khỏe
- **vaccination** *(n)* /væksɪˈneɪʃn/ sự tiêm chủng
- **warm-up** *(n)* /ˈwɔːmʌp/ act or period of preparing for a game, performance, etc by practising gently = giai đoạn khởi động

  warm up *(v)* = prepare for athletic exercise, dancing, playing the piano... by practising gently beforehand.
- **yell** *(v)* /jel/ utter a loud, sharp cry as of pain, excitement = hét to ~ *out in anguish, terror, pain.*
- **yoga** *(n)* /ˈjəugə/ system of exercises for the body and the control of breathing for those practising yoga or wanting to become fitter = môn joga ~ *classes.*

a dead heat việc cùng tới đích bằng nhau

out of breath khó thở

to be subject to change có thể thay đổi, khó tránh khỏi thay đổi

to be on a par with ngang hàng với

PROPER NAMES

Bob Wiseman	/bɒb ˈwaɪzmən/
Chris Brasher	/krɪs ˈbræʃə/
Dick Beardsley	/dɪkˈbɪədzlɪ/
Inge Simonsen	/ɪndʒˈsaɪmənsɪn/
Norway	/ˈnɔːweɪ/
Ron Crowley	/rɒn ˈkrəulɪ/

USAGE

1- To keep fit : to keep one's figure : giữ thân hình thon thả, khỏe mạnh

2- To symbolize (vt) Symbolic (at) (adj). Symbolism (n) Symbolist (n) Symbolization (n)

EX : - Apples are *the symbol* of friendship, and roses *symbolize* love.

3- To take part (in) : to participate (in) (tham gia)

To take chance (phó mặc số phận)

To take one's life in one's hand (liều mạng)

To take advantage of (lợi dụng)

To take a joke in earnest (coi đùa làm thật)

EX : - It's hard to know what will become of, I can do nothing but *take my chance* .

(Khó mà biết được điều gì sẽ xảy tới, tôi không thể làm gì ngoài phó mặc cho số phận)

- How can I do now to make her see ? She has taken a joke in earnest.

4- To be *on the point of* : sắp sửa

EX : We were on the point of seeing him when he arrived.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. + "The first, the second... the last, the only one + to infinitive"

EX : - He was always *the first to come* and *the last to go.*

- She is *the only one to survive* the shipwreck.

Give some examples of your own

2. [Verbs of sensation + object + present participle].
The action in this structure may be either complete or incomplete.
EX : He heard the crowd yelling out his number
- [Verbs of sensation + object bare infinitive]
The action here is complete.
EX : He saw her leave the house (He saw the whole action)
* Verbs of sensation : see, hear, feel, smell... The verbs "listen to", "notice" "watch" can also be followed by "object + present participle" and "object + bare infinitive"

QUESTIONNAIRE

1 Would you describe yourself as :
☐ Very fit ☐ Average
☐ Quite. fit ☐ Unfit

Do you think physical fitness is important ?
☐ Yes ☐ No

2 ☐ Do you ever get out of breath ?
☐ Can you touch your toes (without bending your knees) ?
☐ Can you run for 1 km ?
☐ Can you hang from a bar, supporting your own weight for 20 seconds ?

3 Does your daily routine involve any physical exertion ?
☐ Yes ☐ No

4 Do you take regular exercise ?
☐ Yes ☐ No

5 If you take regular exercise, how often do you take it ?
☐ Every day ☐ More than once a week
☐ Every other day ☐ Once a week
☐ Less

6 If you take regular exercise, in which of the following ways do you take it ?
☐ Sport ☐ Dance ☐ Yoga
☐ Jogging ☐ Cycling ☐ Walking
☐ Swimming ☐ Keep-fit exercises
☐ Other (What other ways?.....)

7 If you play a sport, is it :
☐ A team game ☐ Amateur
☐ Competitive ☐ Professional
☐ Organised

8 Do you possess any sports equipment ?
☐ Yes ☐ No
If so, what ? .....

9 Do you/Did you have to play any sports at school ?
☐ Yes ☐ No
If so, which ones ?.....
How often ? .....

BẢNG CÂU HỎI

1. Bạn có cho mình là
☐ Rất khỏe ☐ Khá khỏe
☐ Trung bình ☐ Yếu

Bạn có cho sức khỏe thể chất là điều quan trọng.
☐ Có ☐ Không

2. ☐ Bạn có bao giờ thấy khó thở không ?
☐ Bạn có thể với tay đụng đầu ngón chân (mà không cần gập đầu gối) ?
☐ Bạn có thể chạy 1 ki lô mét không ?
☐ Bạn có thể đu trên xà ngang và chịu đựng sức nặng của mình trong 20 giây không ?

3. Công việc hàng ngày của bạn có bao gồm lao động chân tay không ?
☐ Có ☐ Không

4. Bạn có tập luyện thường xuyên không ?
☐ Có ☐ Không

5. Nếu bạn tập luyện thường xuyên, sự thường xuyên đó là như thế nào ?
☐ Mỗi ngày ☐ Hơn một lần một tuần
☐ Cách ngày
☐ Một lần ☐ Một tuần ☐ Ít hơn

6 Nếu bạn tập luyện thường xuyên thì bạn tập môn nào ?
☐ Thể thao ☐ Khiêu vũ ☐ Tập Yoga
☐ Chạy bộ ☐ Đi xe đạp ☐ Đi bộ
☐ Bơi ☐ Bài tập TD
☐ Môn khác (môn gì.....) ?

7. Nếu bạn chơi một môn thể thao, môn đó là:
☐ Trò chơi đồng đội
☐ Trò chơi có tính cạnh tranh
☐ Trò chơi có tổ chức
☐ Nghiệp dư ☐ Chuyên nghiệp

8. Bạn có một dụng cụ thể thao nào không ?
☐ Có ☐ Không
Nếu có dụng cụ gì ?.....

9. Bạn phải (đã phải) chơi môn thể thao nào ở trường không ?
☐ Có ☐ Không
Nếu có chơi những môn nào ?.....
Chơi thường xuyên như thế nào ?.....

10 Do you/Did you have P.E. (Physical Education) classes at school ?

☐ Yes ☐ No

If so, how often ?.....

11 Do you think sports or P.E. should be a compulsory part of the school curriculum ?

☐ Yes ☐ No

12 Why ?/Why not ?.....

Here are instructions for two keep-fit exercises:

Warming up exercise

Raise hands above head, feet apart. Bend forward slowly and touch ground in front of toes, then between feet. Don't worry if you can't reach the floor at first. Repeat 10 times the first day, and build up over 5 days to 20.

Exercise for bottom and hips

Sit on floor, legs outstretched, ankles crossed. Lean back slightly supporting weight on palms of hands. Lifting right arm above head, bend to left, keeping knees straight. Roll over until upper knee touches floor. Repeat to the right. Do it ten times in each direction. Cross ankles other way and repeat whole procedure.

If you do exercises, describe how to do them in detail. Get someone to follow your instructions. If you play a sport, describe the sport and briefly explain the rules, without mentioning the name of the sport. See if people can guess which sport you have described.

MONDAY MARCH 30, 1981

5,300 WIN MARATHON

One million people turned out to watch Britain's biggest-ever sporting event. The most amazing sporting event Britain has ever seen turned out to have 5,300 winners yesterday.

Around that number finished out of 6,700 who officially started in the first London Marathon and were cheered by a million people as they ran through the streets.

10. Bạn có (đã có) học những lớp huấn luyện thể chất ở trường không ?

☐ Có ☐ Không.

Nếu có, bao nhiêu lần ?.....

11. Bạn có cho rằng thể thao hay huấn luyện thể chất là phần bắt buộc trong chương trình học của nhà trường không ?

☐ Có ☐ Không

12. Tạo sao/ Tại sao không ?.....

Dưới đây là lời chỉ dẫn cho hai bài thể dục giữ sức khỏe:

Bài tập làm nóng người.

Đưa hai tay lên khỏi đầu, hai chân đứng dạng ra từ từ cúi mình về phía trước và chạm tay xuống mặt đất, trước đầu các ngón chân, rồi giữa 2 bàn chân. Nếu bạn không thể chạm tay xuống sàn nhà lần đầu tiên thì cũng không sao. Lặp lại 10 lần ngày đầu tiên và tăng dần lên 20 lần trong 5 ngày.

Bài tập Mông - Đùi.

Ngồi trên sàn, chân duỗi ra. Hai cổ chân bắt chéo, người hơi nghiêng về phía sau sức nặng dồn lên hai lòng bàn tay. Nhấc cánh tay phải lên khỏi đầu. Nghiêng mình về bên trái, giữ đầu gối thẳng. Nghiêng tiếp cho đến khi đầu gối chân phía trên chạm sàn. Đổi bên, thực hiện lại động tác. Mỗi bên 10 lần. Thay đổi vị trí bắt chéo của hai cổ chân theo hướng ngược lại và thực hiện lại toàn bộ động tác.

Nếu bạn tập thể dục hãy mô tả chi tiết là tập như thế nào. Nhờ ai đó làm theo lời hướng dẫn của bạn. Nếu bạn chơi một môn thể thao, hãy tả môn thể thao đó và giải thích vắn tắt luật chơi, mà không cần phải nói tên môn thể thao. Hãy thử xem người ta có đoán được bạn đang tả môn thể thao nào không.

THỨ HAI 30 THÁNG 3 NĂM 1981

5.300 NGƯỜI THẮNG CUỘC CHẠY ĐUA MARATHON

Một triệu người đã theo dõi sự kiện thể thao lớn nhất của nước Anh. Hôm qua đã có 5.300 người thắng trong sự kiện thể thao kỳ diệu nhất mà nước Anh chưa bao giờ chứng kiến.

Đây là con số ước tính đã về đến mức trong tổng số 6.700 người chính thức tham dự cuộc đua Marathon London lần thứ nhất, và một triệu người đã reo hò cổ vũ khi họ chạy qua các đường phố.

The first and last to complete the 26 miles and 385 yards symbolized in their different ways the spirit of the occasion.

At the front, Dick Beardsley from the United States and Inge Simonsen from Norway linked hands to run the last few yards and staged a dead heat for first place.

'What does it matter who wins ?' said 24-year-old Beardsley. 'Every runner who finishes this race is a winner.' Some four hours later, last man home was the oldest competitor 78-year-old Bob Wiseman. 'I feel good. It's great to be alive.' he said.

The leaders made it an event of the highest athletic quality. At 2 hours, 11 minutes, 48 seconds, the joint winners ran the fastest marathon ever in Britain – and 142 runners finished under 2 hours 30 minutes.

Race director Chris Brasher, said : 'It went like a dream.'

St John Ambulance crews treated hundreds of runners for exhaustion, but the worst damage reported was a broken leg. 'We are surprised there weren't more casualties – everyone was very fit,' a spokesman said.

The drizzly conditions were ideal for marathon running – and competitors praised the cameraderie of those taking part and the encouragement given them by the spectators.

This aspect was summed up by 29-year-old jogger Ron Crowley, from Liverpool. Four miles from the finish he was on the point of quitting after stumbling to a halt.

Then, he said, he heard the crowd yelling out his number. 'No one has ever cheered like that for me before,' he said. 'They gave me heart to go on.'

PRACTICE

Bermuda

Bermuda lies in the Western Atlantic Ocean some 600 miles east of North Carolina and 3000 miles west of Europe. It consists of a group of approximately 150 closely-knit islands of which the seven largest are linked together by bridges and causeways forming 'Mainland' Bermuda, roughly 22

Người về đầu và về chót trong cuộc chạy 26 dặm 385 mã (*) đã thể hiện tinh thần của cuộc đua bằng nhiều cách khác nhau.

Dẫn đầu, Dick Beardsley từ Mỹ và Inge Simonsen từ Na Uy đã nắm tay nhau để cùng chạy vài mã cuối và cùng về đích bằng nhau, chiếm hạng nhất.

"Ai thắng thì có hề gì ?". Beardsley, 24 tuổi, nói. "Mỗi tay đua về đích đều là người thắng cuộc". Khoảng 4 giờ sau, người về cuối cùng là tay đua lớn tuổi nhất, Bob Wiseman, 78 tuổi. "Tôi cảm thấy khỏe. Thật tuyệt vời là mình vẫn còn sống", cụ nói.

Những người dẫn đầu đã biến cuộc đua thành 1 sự kiện điền kinh có chất lượng thi đấu cao nhất. Hai tay đua cùng về đích trước nhất đã đạt thành tích chưa từng có lịch sử chạy Marathon của Anh quốc : 2 giờ 11 phút 48 giây. Có 142 tay đua về đích dưới 2 giờ 30 phút.

Trưởng ban tổ chức cuộc đua Chris Brasher nói : "Cứ y như là một giấc mơ".

Toán nhân viên y tế St. John đã chăm sóc hàng trăm người chạy bị kiệt sức, nhưng trường hợp nghiêm trọng nhất ghi nhận được là một người bị gãy chân. "Chúng tôi ngạc nhiên vì không có trường hợp thương tích nào khác – tất cả mọi người có thể lực rất tốt".

Điều kiện thời tiết có mưa phùn là lý tưởng cho cuộc chạy Marathon – và các tay đua đều hoan nghênh tinh thần đồng đội của những người tham dự và sự cổ vũ của khán giả dành cho họ.

Khía cạnh này được tổng kết qua trường hợp của tay chạy Ron Crowley, 29 tuổi, từ Liverpool. Còn cách đích 4 dặm, anh suýt phải bỏ cuộc vì bị vấp và phải dừng lại. Rồi, anh nói, anh nghe đám đông reo hò cổ vũ của anh. "Trước đây chưa có ai reo hò cổ vũ tôi như thế", anh nói. "Họ đã cho tôi thêm dũng khí để tiếp tục cuộc đua".

(*) 26 miles 385yards (42.195 mét)

BERMUDA

Bermuda nằm ở phía tây biển Đại tây Dương, khoảng 600 dặm về phía đông của Bắc Carolina và 3000 dặm về phía tây Châu Âu. Nó gồm một nhóm gần khoảng 150 hòn đảo liên kết chặc chẽ với nhau trong đó 7 hòn đảo lớn nhất được nối nhau bằng những cây cầu và đường đắp cao tạo thành "đất liền". Bermuda dài khoảng 22

miles long, with an average width of half to one mile. On the map, Bermuda resembles a scorpion or a fish hook.

Bermuda is the summit of a sub-marine volcano which exploded into life some 100 million years ago. Coral reefs almost entirely surround the islands, proving treacherous to shipping during the last three hundred years, but creating beautifully calm inshore waters for bathers, snorkellers and scuba divers as well as a paradise for fishing enthusiasts.

There are no freshwater streams in Bermuda so that Bermudians are forced to rely on rainwater or, in times of drought, imported water. Every house on the island has a white lime-washed roof on which the rain is caught and channelled into a tank. The government and some of the larger hotels operate desalination plants. In the late 19th century the tourist trade came to Bermuda – since when it has grown increasingly profitable and today tourism is the island's single most important revenue earner.

Bermuda is the oldest self-governing colony of Britain with the third oldest parliament in the world.

GENERAL INFORMATION

☐ Entry Requirements *Passports and visas* As these requirements are subject to change, please consult your British Airways office or travel agent. *Health* A vaccination certificate against smallpox is required for visitors arriving from an infected area; vaccination against typhoid and polio recommended. (Current requirements should be checked when buying your ticket.)

☐ Drugs and Firearms. The importation of illegal drugs (including marijuana) and firearms is strictly prohibited and persons convicted of these offences are liable to heavy fines and/or imprisonment.

☐ Currency 100 cents = 1 Bermudian dollar. *Notes* 1, 5, 10, 20 and 50 dollars. *Coins* 1, 5, 10, 25 and 50 cents. The Bermudian dollar is on a par with the US dollar. US and Canadian currency are readily accepted (Canadian currency is liable to a discount), as are US and Canadian travellers cheques. Credit cards are accepted by a number of hotels and in most shops and restaurants.

☐ Electric Current 110 volts 60 cycle AC.

☐ Tipping The following are customary rates. *Airport*: porters 25c per suitcase. *Hotel* : 10% or $4.50 per person per day is added to your bill. *Restaurants and nightclubs* : 15% of bill. *Hairdresser*:

dặm, với chiều ngang trung bình từ nửa tới 1 dặm. Trên bản đồ, Bermuda trông giống như hình rơi có mũi sắt hay lưỡi câu.

Bermuda là chóp của 1 ngọn núi lửa ngầm dưới biển đã phun cách đây khoảng 100 triệu năm. Đá ngầm san hô gần như bao hoàn toàn các đảo này, nên rõ ràng là không an toàn cho tàu đậu suốt 300 năm qua, nhưng nó tạo ra vùng biển gần bờ rất lặng, thơ mộng đối với những người đi tắm biển, những người bơi sâu có ống thông khí và những thợ lặn có bình khí cũng như là thiên đường cho những người thích đi câu.

Ở Bermuda không có nước ngọt nên người Bermuda buộc phải dựa vào nguồn nước mưa, hay lúc trời hạn hán, phải nhập nước. Mỗi nhà ở đảo có mái nhà quét vôi trắng để hứng nước mưa và có rãnh chảy vào bồn chứa. Chính quyền và một số các khách sạn lớn điều hành các nhà máy lọc muối.

Vào cuối thế kỷ thứ 19, dịch vụ du lịch xuất hiện ở Bermuda – kể từ đó lợi tức càng ngày càng tăng và ngày nay du lịch là nguồn lợi tức duy nhất có tầm quan trọng bậc nhất ở đảo.

Bermuda là thuộc địa tự trị lâu đời nhất của Anh có nghị viện cổ thứ ba trên thế giới.

THÔNG TIN TỔNG QUÁT.

☐ Những yêu cầu về *Hộ chiếu* và *Thị thực* vì các yêu cầu này có thể thay đổi, xin liên hệ với cơ quan Hàng không Anh hay công ty du lịch. *Sức khỏe* : Giấy chứng nhận tiêm chủng đậu mùa phải có đối với du khách đến từ vùng có nhiễm bệnh; chủng ngừa bệnh thương hàn và bại liệt cũng cần có. (Các yêu cầu hiện hành nên được kiểm tra khi bạn mua vé.)

☐ Thuốc mơn và súng ống. Việc đưa vào các loại thuốc bất hợp pháp (gồm thuốc phiện) và súng ống bị cấm nghiêm ngặt và những người vi phạm sẽ bị phạt nặng và / hay bị bỏ tù.

☐ Tiền tệ 100 xu = 1 đô Bermuda. Giấy bạc 1, 5, 10, 20 và 50 đô la. Tiền xu 1, 5, 10, 25 và 50 xu. Đô la Bermuda ngang với đô Mỹ và tiền Canada cũng được chấp nhận (tiền Canada rất có thể bị giảm giá), cũng như ngân phiếu du lịch Mỹ và Canada. Phiếu tín dụng cũng được một số khách sạn, hầu hết các cửa hàng và nhà hàng chấp nhận.

☐ Dòng điện : 110 vôn 60 chu kỳ AC

☐ Tiền trà nước: các số sau đây là giá thông thường: *Ở sân bay* : người khuân vác : 25 xu cho mỗi va li – *Khách sạn* : 10% hay 4,5 đô mỗi người mỗi ngày được tính vào hóa đơn của bạn. *Nhà hàng và hộp đêm* : 15% trên hóa đơn. *Tiệm uốn tóc* : 10-15% trên

10-15% of bill. *Bars* : Barmen 15% of bill. *Taxi-drivers*, etc : 10-15% of bill (for full-day tour a minimum of $2.00). *Note* There is an airport departure tax of $5.00.

☐ National Holidays New Year's Day, Good Friday, Bermuda Day (May); The Queen's Birthday (June), Annual Cup Match (2 days in July), Remembrance Day (November), Christmas Day, Boxing Day.

hóa đơn. *Quán rượu*: người phục vụ rượu 15% trên hóa đơn. Tài xế taxi, v.v... 10-15% trên hóa đơn (chuyến đi cả ngày tối thiểu là 2 đô). *Chú ý* : Có thuế khởi hành ở sân bay là 5 đô.

☐ Các ngày quốc lễ : Năm mới, Ngày thứ Sáu tốt lành, Ngày Bermuda (tháng 5), sinh nhật Nữ hoàng (tháng 6), Giải tranh cúp hàng năm (2 ngày tháng 7), Ngày tưởng niệm (tháng 11), Ngày Giáng sinh, Ngày thi đấu quyền Anh.

☐ Climate : average temperatures

☐ Khí hậu : nhiệt độ trung bình

	winter					summer						
	Nov.	Dec.	Jan.	Feb.	Mar.	Apr.	May	Jun.	Jul.	Aug.	Sep.	Oct.
	F C	F C	F C	F C	F C	F C	F C	F C	F C	F C	F C	F C
Max.	74 23	70 21	68 20	67 19	68 20	70 21	75 24	79 26	84 29	86 30	84 30	80 27
Min.	64 18	60 16	60 16	56 14	59 15	62 17	67 19	72 22	76 24	77 25	75 24	71 22
Humidity	74%	76%	75%	73%	71%	73%	77%	81%	79%	78%	77%	77%
Rainfall (in.)	6.4	5.1	5.3	4.1	4.0	3.9	3.6	6.0	4.2	5.3	5.6	6.1

☐ Handicapped Visitors. For information about the appropriate hotels and the many facilities for handicapped visitors to Bermuda, write to the Society for Advancement of Travel for the Handicapped, PO Box 449, Hamilton 5.

[British Airways, 1980]

☐ Du khách bị khuyết tật : để có thông tin về các khách sạn thích hợp và nhiều tiện nghi cho du khách bị khuyết tật đến Bermuda, xin viết thư về Hội hướng dẫn Du lịch cho người khuyết tật. Hợp thư 449, Halmiton 5.

Exercise 1

Read the text and answer these questions.

1 What is the chief industry ? . . . .
. . . . . .
2 How far is it from Europe ? . . . .
. . . . . .
3 How many islands are there ? . . .
. . . . . .
4 How long is the 'mainland' ? . . . .
5 Which vaccination must you have had?
. . . . . .
6 Which ones should you have had ?
. . . . . .
7 How many Bermudian dollars are equal to US $5 ? . . . . . .
8 If you spent $20 in a restaurant, what tip would you leave ? . . . . . .
9 Which are the hottest months ?
. . . . . .
10 Which is the coldest month ?
. . . . . .
11 Which is the wettest month ?
. . . . . .
12 Which is the driest month ? . . . . . .
13 How many countries have parliaments older than Bermuda ?
. . . . . .
14 Why do Bermudians have to rely on rainwater ? . . . . . .
15 Why has Bermuda always been dangerous for shipping ? . . . . . .
16 Would electrical appliances from your country work in Bermuda ? . . . . . .
17 Does your country have more or fewer national holidays ? . . . . . .
18 Which town would disabled people write to for information ? . . . . . .

Exercise 2

Read the text, and describe your country in a similar way. (About 300 words.)

Bài tập 1

Đọc bài khóa và trả lời các câu hỏi sau đây.

Bài tập 2

Đọc bài khóa và mô tả nước bạn theo cách tương tự (khoảng 300 từ).

Unit 74 Don't Panic !

Đừng hoảng hốt !

VOCABULARY

- **chute** *(n)* /ʃu:t/ sloping or vertical passage down which things can slide or be dropped = đường trượt *a rubbish ~* = ag from the upper storeys of a high building.
- **definitely** *(adv)* /'definitli/ certainly, undoubtedly = chắc chắn *That's ~ correct; ~ not = no*
- **duty – free** *(adj) (adv)* /,dju:ti 'fri:/ (of goods) that can be imported without payment of customs duties = miễn thuế *You're allowed 1½ litres of spirits ~. There's a good ~ shop on the ferry. Buy cigarettes ~.*
- **emergency** *(n)* /i'mə:dʒənsi/ sudden serious event or situation requiring immediate action = trường hợp khẩn cấp *You should only use this door in an ~.*

  emergency procedures *(n)* những việc cần làm, những bước cần tiến hành trong trường hợp nguy cấp.
- **gear** *(n)* /giə/ particular position or setting of the gear mechanism = số (xe)

EXPRESSIONS

You can make it ! Bà làm được mà

Don't panic Đừng hốt hoảng

The car is in / out of ~; low / bottom / first ~.
- **headset** *(n)* /'hedset/ headphones = ống nghe
- **plug** *(v)* /plʌg/ ~ st in = connect st to the electricity supply with a plug = cắm điện vào *~ in the radio, please; The recorder wasn't ~ ged in*
- **proceed** *(v)* /prə, prəu 'si:d/ 1. ~ (to st) go to a further or the next stage; go on = tiến hành *Work is ~ ing slowly.* 2. (fml) make one's way; go = tiến tới, đi *I was ~ ing doing the High Street in a northly direction when...*
- **record button** *(n)* /'reko:d bʌtn/ nút thu âm
- **salute** *(v)* /sə'lu:t/ greet sb = chào *The guard ~ d (the general) smartly.*
- **turbulence** *(n)* /'tə:bjuləns/ violent or uneven movement of air or water = vùng không khí hỗn loạn *We experienced some slight ~ flying over the Atlantic.*
- **warning light** *(n)* /'wo:niŋ lait/ đèn báo động

Whatever you do, don't... Dầu có chuyện gì đi nữa cũng đừng...

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Verb + Object + to – infinitive.

These verbs always have an object before the to – infinitive = *advise* (khuyên), *allow* (cho phép) *entitle* (cho quyền), *forbid* (cấm), *invite, order* (ra lệnh), *remind* (nhắc), *(it) takes, teach, tell, want.*

Ex : - You didn't *tell* her *to peel* the potatoes.
- This certificates *entitles* you *to apply* for free travel.

To help : We can either use *to* or not

We *helped* Karen *(to) look* for her purse.

2. Commands, requests, advice in reported speech :

General formation : Verb + object + (not) to infinitive. The following verbs can be used : *advise, ask, beg, command, encourage, forbid (cấm), invite, order, refuse, remind, request, tell, urge, warn..*

EX : + He said, "No, no... please don't shoot me"
He *begged* them /us *not to shoot*
+ He said, "If I were you, I would stop doing it at once"
He *advised* me /her ... *to stop* doing it at once"
+ He said, "Would you like to have some tea ?"
He *invited* me to *have* some tea
+ He said, "Of course not, I won't go with her"
He *promised* (me) *not to go* with her /that he wouldn't go with her
+ She said, "Would you mind shutting the door ?"

She requested me to shut the door
See Exercises 2 and 3 for practice

Notes : The above verbs require "object + to infinitive". When reporting such commands/advice/requests, we have to add a noun or pronoun

EX : He said, "Go away"
He *told me/her/them/us/some person to go* away

1 Don't forget to fasten your seat-belts !
2 Please do not leave your seat while the warning light is on.
3 May we remind passengers to read the emergency procedures.
4 Please do not smoke in the aisles or in the toilets.
5 Would you like to see the flight deck ?
6 I'm busy now but I'll bring you a drink in a minute.
7 I'm afraid I can't give you another drink, sir.
8 Here's the headset. Let me help you.
9 Please keep your belts fastened. We're going through turbulence.
10 Don't panic !
11 Remove your shoes and proceed at once to the emergency exits.
12 Come on, dear... you can make it ! Just slide down the chute.
13 I'll have to push you.

1. Đừng quên buộc dây đai an toàn !
2. Xin đừng rời chỗ ngồi trong khi đèn báo còn bật sáng.
3. Chúng tôi xin nhắc quí khách đọc các qui định về trường hợp khẩn cấp.
4. Xin đừng hút thuốc trên lối đi hoặc trong nhà vệ sinh.
5. Cháu muốn xem khoang lái không ?
6. Tôi đang bận, nhưng tôi sẽ mang thức uống cho ông ngay.
7. Tôi e rằng, tôi không thể mang thêm rượu cho ông.
8. Đây là ống nghe. Để con giúp bác.
9. Xin cột chặt đai an toàn. Chúng ta sắp bay qua vùng không khí hỗn loạn.
10. Xin đừng sợ !
11. Xin vui lòng cởi giày ra và đi ngay ra cửa cấp cứu.
12. Đừng ngại... chị làm được mà ! Chỉ tuột xuống đường trượt thôi.
13. Tôi phải đẩy chị xuống

Exercise 1

1 remind

She reminded them to fasten their seat-belts.

2 warn

She warned them not to leave their seats.

Continue.

3 remind
4 tell
5 invite
6 promise
7 help
8 ask
9 refuse
10 warn
11 tell
12 instruct
13 order
14 urge
15 force

Exercise 2

Look at these sentences.

1 He said, 'No, no... please don't shoot me.'
2 She said, 'Whatever you do, don't go to that dentist.'
3 He said, 'If I were you, I'd travel by train.'
4 He said, 'Would you like to come to a party on Saturday ?
5 She said, 'Don't forget to go to the bank today.'
6 The policeman said, 'Switch off the engine, and get out of the car.'
7 The old man said, 'Certainly not, I won't sell it at that price.'
8 She said, 'Don't worry, I'll definitely meet you at six o'clock.'
9 The attendant said, 'Would you mind moving your car ?'
10 She said, 'I'm too busy now. Come back later.'
1 *He begged them not to shoot him.*

Continue, using these words : refuse/ask/tell/warn/order/remind/advise/promise/invite.

Exercise 3

Practise with a partner (one is Student A, the other is Student B).

Student A	Student B
Ask B to meet you tonight.	Promise to meet A.
Advise B not to smoke so much.	Tell A to mind his own business.
Ask B to write a letter from your dictation.	Ask A to speak more slowly.
Invite B to a party.	Refuse politely.
Order B to be quiet.	Tell A not to talk to you like that.
Remind B to repay the money you lent him.	Promise to pay tomorrow.
Threaten to kill B.	Beg A not to do it.
Order B to jump out of the window.	Tell A not to be so silly.
Warn B not to exceed the speed-limit.	Tell A to watch out for police cars !

PRACTICE

Language summary

ask, remind invite, advise, promise, offer, refuse, warn, instruct, order, force, beg, threaten,	*(someone)*	*to do (something). not to do (something).*	

Exercise 1

'If I were you, I'd go to the dentist.'
He/She advised me/him/her to go to the dentist.

Look at the Language summary. Use each of the reporting verbs once only.

1 'If I were you, I wouldn't carry so much money.' . . . . . .
. . . . . .
2 'I'll definitely pay you back on Friday.'
. . . . . .
3 'Change gear, signal and turn right.'
. . . . . .
4 'Would you wait outside for a few minutes ?' . . . . . .
5 'Don't forget to turn off the lights and lock the door.' . . . . . .
. . . . . .
6 'If you don't leave immediately I'll call the police.' . . . . . .
. . . . . .

Exercise 2

He reminded her to go to the post office.
'Don't forget to go to the post office.'

1 She reminded him to set the alarm.
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
2 He refused to lend him any more money. . . . . .
. . . . . .
3 They begged her to help them.
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
4 She invited him to visit the school.
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
5 He instructed her to switch on and press the record button. . . . . .
. . . . . .

Bài tập 1

"Giá tôi là anh, tôi sẽ đi nha sĩ."
Anh ấy/ chị ấy khuyên tôi/ anh ấy/ chị ấy đi nha sĩ.

Xem bảng tóm tắt ngôn ngữ. Dùng mỗi động từ tường thuật chỉ một lần.

7 'You'd better not park here. It's dangerous.' . . . . . .
8 'No, I won't do the washing up. It's your turn.' . . . . . .
9 'Would you like to join us for coffee ?'
. . . . . .
10 'Oh please, don't leave me ! I need you !' . . . . . .
11 'Show me your driving licence. I'm a police officer.' . . . . . .
. . . . . .
12 'This is a gun. Give me the money, slowly. That's right.' . . . . . .
. . . . . .
13 'Shall I put that case on the rack for you ?' . . . . . .

Bài tập 2

Anh ấy nhắc chị ấy đi ra bưu điện.
"Đừng quên ra bưu điện nhé."

6 She promised to send them a postcard. . . . . .
. . . . . .
7 He warned them not to eat it because it was poisonous. . . .
. . . . . .
8 He ordered the soldier to salute when he met an officer. . . . . .
. . . . . .
9 They asked her to explain it again. .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
10 They forced him to open the safe.
. . . . . .
. . . . . .

COMMON ABBREVIATIONS		
PhD	Doctor of Philosophy	- Tiến sĩ
POW	Prisoner of War	- Tù nhân chiến tranh.
RSVP	Répondez S'il vous plait	- Xin vui lòng trả lời
UK	United Kingdom	- Vương quốc Anh.

Unit 75 Messages

Lời nhắn gởi

VOCABULARY

- **chief** *(adj)* /tʃi:f/ most important, main = chính yếu *Smoking is one of the ~ causes of lung cancer.*
- **denim** *(n)* /'denim/ hard – wearing twilled cotton cloth (used for jeans, overalls...) vải bông chéo
  denims *(infml)* jeans made from this cloth.
- **dividend** *(n)* /'dividend/ (commerce) share of profits paid to shareholders in a company = tiền lãi tính theo cổ phần.
  declare a ~; an annual ~ of 8%.
- **enormously** *(adv)* /i'nɔ:məsli/ very much. *They enjoyed themselves ~.*
- **fashion buyer** *(n)* /'fæʃn 'baiə/ người mua hàng thời trang
- **overall** *(adj)* /,əuvər'ɔ:l/ total = toàn bộ *the ~ cost of the carpet including sales tax and fitting.*
- **shipment** *(n)* /'ʃipmənt/ 1. transport of goods by any means = sự chở hàng
  2. items shipped = hàng được chở *a ~ of grain for west Africa; safe ~ by air; immediate ~ of the cargo.*
- **trade fair** *(n)* /treid fea/ hội chợ thương mại

EXPRESSIONS

Something important's come up	điều quan trọng đã xảy ra
Can you put me through to... ?	xin cô cho tôi liên lạc với
Shall I just run through them ?	tôi báo lại những lời nhắn này nhé
Why on earth not ?	trời ơi, sao lại chưa xong ?
Pity !	tiếc quá !
I hope he can make it	tôi hy vọng ông ta sẽ đến thăm (làm như đã nói)
I wonder what she wants	tôi thắc mắc cô ấy cần gì
out of stock	gần cạn, hết trong kho
at full capacity	hết công suất

PROPER NAMES

Amanda Hayward	/ə,mændə 'heiwəd/		
Berry	/'beri/	Godfrey	/'gɔdfri/
Dobson	/'dɔbsn/	Manchester	/'mæntʃistə/
Lyon	/'laiən/	Peter	/'pi:tə/
Jenny	/'dʒeni/	Wadly	/'wɔdli/
Janice Taylor	/dʒænis 'teilə/	Watkins	/'wɔtkinz/

USAGE

1/ + A few : a small number
Quite a few /not a few/ some few /a good few : a considerable number
Ex : A good few people died in the crash
2/+ To be away on business : đi công tác xa
3/+ To change one' s mind : thay đổi ý kiến
To make up one's mind : quyết định
To speak one's mind : nghĩ gì nói nấy
To bear (have,keep) s/t in mind : ghi nhớ điều gì
To have a good mind to do s/t : có ý muốn làm gì
4/+ How / why /where /who /what ..on earth ...?
(Dùng để nhấn mạnh thêm)

5/ + Subject + not + verb + until/till + clause/ phrase = mãi tới....tới

EX : He could not return till midnight

(Cho tới nửa đêm nó mới về được)

- She won't go to bed until she has finished all the housework

(Chừng nào xong mọi việc trong nhà cô ta mới đi ngủ)

- Emphatic form : It is not until she has finished all the housework that she will go to bed

Formation : It is not until/till + clause/phrase + that + Subject + verb

GRAMMAR NOTES

REPORTED SPEECH (**Revision**, see *look at this* on page.....)

Look at the table in the text for **changes in tenses and some adverbs of time and place**

1/+ "Used to "and" had better" remain unchanged in reported speech

EX : Tom said, "The children had bettter go to bed early".

Tom said that the children *had better* go to bed early.

- He said, "I know this house well for I *used to live* here".

He said that he knew that house well for he used to live there

+ Pronouns usually change *from first person or second person to third person* except the speaker is reporting his own words.

EX : - He said "I am happy"

He said that *he* was happy.

He said, "You can not do that well".	He said that he/ they could not do that well.
He told me "You are happier than I".	He told me that I was happier than him.
I said, "I like my new house".	I said that *I* liked my new house

Amanda Hayward is a secretary at Standard Security Systems. Her boss, Peter Dawson, was away on business on Monday. She took several messages for him. Listen to the conversations and look at the notes.

Amanda Hayward là một thư ký của công ty Hệ thống An ninh Tiêu chuẩn. Chủ của cô, Peter Dawson đi công tác vào thứ hai. Cô ghi lại một số lời nhắn cho ông. Hãy nghe các cuộc đối thoại và nhìn bản ghi chú.

MESSAGES FOR MR DAWSON – MONDAY

9.00 Jenny phoned. Won't be in till Friday – flu.

9.40 Mr Watkins. Can't make the meeting Tues. pm. Will ring Wed.

11.30 Godfrey wants Fri. off. Grandmother died Sun. Will have to go to funeral.

12.15 Wadley's Garage called. New car not ready yet. Strike at factory.

2.10 Miss Dobson (Western Video) must cancel order. Customers have changed their minds.

3.20 Mr. Gonzalez. May be in London 21st-25th. Wants to see you then.

4.35 Samantha Ellis. Please. Phone her as soon as possible. Very urgent.

4.55 Mr Berry rang. Don't supply Mason and Co! Will explain later

Lời nhắn cho ông Dawson – ngày thứ hai –

9g00 : Jenny gọi điện thoại. Sẽ nghỉ cho tới thứ sáu – Cúm

9g40 : Ông Watkins. Không thể thu xếp họp ngày thứ ba, chiều. Sẽ gọi thứ tư.

11g30 : Godfrey cần nghỉ thứ sáu. Bà nội chết ngày chủ nhật. Sẽ phải dự đám tang.

12g15 : Wadley's Garage gọi. Xe hơi mới chưa xong. Đình công ở xưởng

2g10 : Cô Dobson (Western Video) phải hủy đơn đặt hàng – Khách hàng đã đổi ý.

3g20 : Ông Gonzalez. Có thể ở London từ ngày 21-25. Muốn gặp ông vào dịp đó.

4g35 : Samantha Ellis. Xin gọi điện cho cô càng sớm càng tốt. Rất khẩn.

4g55 : Ông Berry gọi. Ngưng cung cấp cho Mason và Co ! Sẽ giải thích sau.

It's Tuesday morning. Peter Dawson has just returned to the office after his business trip to Lyon. Look at the notes and listen to her report.

Peter Good morning, Amanda. Could you come in for a minute, please ?

Amanda Good morning, Mr Dawson. Did you have a good trip ?

Peter Yes, thank you. Were there any messages for me yesterday ?

Amanda Yes, quite a few. Shall I just run through them ?

Peter Please.

Amanda Jenny phoned. She said she wouldn't be in till Friday.

Peter Oh. Why's that ?

Amanda She said she had 'flu. She'd seen the doctor.

Peter Right. Go on.

Amanda Then Mr Watkins called. He said he couldn't make the meeting this afternoon but would ring you on Wednesday.

Peter OK.

Amanda Godfrey came in looking for you. He said he wanted Friday off.

Peter Did he ?

Amanda Yes. He told me his grandmother had died and he'd have to go to the funeral.

Peter Oh dear. I'd better see him later.

Amanda And Wadley's Garage called. They said your new car wasn't ready.

Peter Oh, no... why on earth not ?

Amanda They said there was a strike at the factory yesterday.

Peter Again !

Amanda After lunch Miss Dobson phoned. She said that Western Video Systems had to cancel their last order because their customers had changed their minds.

Peter Pity !

Amanda Mr Gonzalez called from Mexico to say he might be in London from 21st - 25th. He said he wanted to see you then.

Peter Oh, good. I hope he can make it.

Amanda Then a lady phoned. Samantha Ellis. She asked you to phone her as soon as possible. She said it was urgent.

Sáng thứ ba Peter Dawson vừa mới về văn phòng sau chuyến công tác ở Lyon. Hãy nhìn bản ghi chú và nghe cô thư ký báo cáo.

Peter : Chào Amanda. Mời cô vào đây một lát.

Amanda : Chào ông Dawson. Chuyến đi của ông tốt đẹp chứ.

P : Vâng, cám ơn cô. Hôm qua có điện nhắn lại cho tôi không ?

A : Có, nhiều lắm. Tôi duyệt lại cho ông nghe nhé ?

P : Vâng.

A : Jenny gọi điện đến. Cô ấy nói sẽ không đi làm cho đến ngày thứ sáu.

P : Ồ, sao thế ?

A : Cô ấy nói là bị cúm. Cô ấy đã đi bác sĩ.

P : Được. Tiếp tục.

A : Rồi ông Watkins gọi đến. Ông ấy nói không thể thu xếp họp vào chiều nay được. Nhưng sẽ gọi điện thoại cho ông vào thứ tư.

P : Được.

A : Godfrey có đến tìm ông. Anh ấy nói muốn nghỉ vào thứ sáu.

P : Vậy sao ?

A : Dạ. Anh ấy nói là bà nội anh đã qua đời. Và anh ấy phải dự đám tang.

P : Ôi. Lát nữa tôi phải gặp anh ta mới được.

A : Và xưởng bảo dưỡng Wadley's Garage có gọi đến. Họ nói xe hơi mới của ông chưa xong.

P : Ồ, không... sao lại chưa xong nhỉ ?

A : Họ nói là có đình công ở xưởng hôm qua.

P : Lại thế !

A : Sau giờ ăn trưa cô Dobson có gọi đến. Cô ấy nói công ty Western Video Systems phải hủy đơn đặt hàng của họ vì khách hàng đã đổi ý.

P : Tiếc thật !

A : Ông Gonzalez từ Mêhicô gọi đến nói là ông ta có thể có mặt ở London từ ngày 21 đến 25. Ông ấy nói muốn gặp ông vào dịp đó.

P : Ồ, tốt. Tôi hy vọng là ông ta có thể đến được.

A : Rồi một phụ nữ gọi đến, Samantha Ellis. Cô ấy yêu cầu ông gọi điện cho cô ấy càng sớm càng tốt. Cô ấy nói khẩn lắm.

Peter Ah, Samantha. I wonder what she wants.

Amanda Oh and just before five, Mr Berry phoned. He told us not to supply Mason & Co. until further notice. He said it was important and that he would explain later.

Peter Anything else ?

Amanda No. That's it. Coffee ?

Peter Please. That would be nice.

Exercise

Janice Taylor is personal assistant to Heather Bates, who is the chief fashion buyer for Sparks & Fraser, a chain of department stores. Heather was away yesterday visiting a supplier in Manchester. Janice took these messages.

Janice reported the messages to Heather.

9.10 *Mr Foster called. He said he wanted to see you on Wednesday and that he would be here at ten o'clock.*

Report the other messages.

P : A, Samantha. Không biết cô ta muốn gì đây.

A : À, vào lúc gần 5 giờ, ông Berry gọi đến. Ông ấy bảo chúng ta ngưng cung cấp hàng cho công ty Mason & Co. cho tới khi có thông báo mới. Ông ấy nói vấn đề quan trọng lắm và ông ấy sẽ giải thích sau.

P : Còn gì nữa không ?

A : Không. Chỉ vậy thôi. Ông dùng cà phê ?

P : Vâng. Tốt quá.

Messages

9.10 Mr. Foster, Wants to see you Wed. Will be here at 10' am.

10.25 Alan Mook, International Denim. Can't supply order for jeans. Their shipment from Hong Kong hasn't arrived.

11.05 Madame Bourvil called from Paris. She's sending photos of spring collection

12.10 Miss Noris, Brighton store, rang. Monogram blouses are selling very well. Has nearly run out of stock. Wants 1000 as soon as possible.

13.45 Angela called. Got back from Florence yesterday. Saw lots of interesting things. Will discuss possible purchases.

14.50 Mr. Collins Wigan Textiles. May be able to supply new pullover range. Can't confirm order yet. Must discuss prices.

Look at this : **Chú ý cách đổi từ Direct Speech sang Indirect Speech**

am/is → was	"It's important." She said (that) it was important.
are → were	"They're going to be late." She said (that) they were going to be late.
have/has → had	"I've done the letters." She said (that) she had done the letters.
don't→didn't	"I don't know." She said (that) she didn't know.
want→wanted	"I want a day off." She said (that) she wanted a day off.
didn't do→hadn't done	"I didn't finish it." She said (that) she hadn't finished it.
saw→had seen	"I saw him." She said (that) she had seen him.
was/were→had been	"I wasn't there." She said (that) she hadn't been there.
will/won't→would/wouldn't	"I won't do it". She said (that) she wouldn't do it.
can/can't→could couldn't	"I can't do it." She said (that) she couldn't do it.
may→might	"I may do it" She said (that) she might do it.
had done/would could/should/ ought/might	No change.

When you are reporting, you may also need to change these words:

this→ that	these → those	here → there
now → then	yesterday → the day before	tomorrow → the next day
this (week) → that (week)		last (month) → the (month) before
next (year) → the next (year)		

PRACTICE

Language summary

Reporting statements.

Exercise 1

Mr and Mrs N. said that they had enjoyed themselves enormously.

Continue.

1 .....
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....
7 .....
8 .....
9 .....

Bài tập 1

Ông và bà N. nói là họ vui vô cùng.

Hãy tiếp tục.

Exercise 2

Continental Computers Ltd.

1982 Chairman's Report

'I am pleased to announce that 1982 has been a very good year for the company in spite of the world recession. Overall sales have increased 20% and most of the increase has been in exports. There is great demand for our TX range of computers and we will be developing a larger version next year. Our two main factories are working at full capacity and our Manchester factory is being enlarged.

We are fairly optimistic about the future although much will depend on the value of sterling and world trading conditions. We have repaid most of the money borrowed from the banks last year. However, we are still able to announce increased profits and an increased dividend of 12p per share. We are also offering one free share for every four held.'

	1981	1982
Sales	£319.8m	£383m
Trading Profit	£30.1m	£34.2m
Profit before tax	£26.1m	£28.6m
Earnings per share	13.4p	17.2p
Dividend	10.0p	12p

Bài tập 2

Công ty hữu hạn máy điện toán Đại lục

Báo cáo 1982 của Giám đốc,

Tôi rất vui mừng thông báo là năm 1982 là một năm vô cùng tốt đẹp cho công ty mặc dù có vụ suy thoái thế giới. Sức bán toàn bộ đã tăng 20% và phần lớn sự gia tăng này là ở khâu xuất khẩu. Có sức mua lớn cho các loại máy điện toán của chúng ta và chúng ta sẽ phát triển một con số lớn hơn nữa vào năm tới. Hai nhà máy chính của chúng ta đang hoạt động hết công suất và nhà máy Manchester của chúng ta đang được mở rộng.

Chúng ta khá lạc quan về tương lai mặc dầu còn phải lệ thuộc rất nhiều vào giá trị đồng Sterling và điều kiện mậu dịch của thế giới. Chúng ta đã trả phần lớn số tiền vay từ ngân hàng năm ngoái. Tuy nhiên, chúng ta vẫn có thể công bố những phần lợi được tăng thêm và tăng thêm tiền lãi cổ phần 12 pence mỗi cổ phần. Chúng ta cũng đang cho 1 cổ phần miễn phí cho mỗi 4 cổ phần đang có.

Report the Chairman's statement, beginning :

The Chairman said that he was pleased...

Kể lại lời phát biểu của vị giám đốc, bắt đầu :

Giám đốc nói là ông rất vui mừng...

Unit 76 A Few Questions

Một vài câu hỏi

VOCABULARY

- **charter** *(n)* /'tʃɑ:tə/ hiring of a ship, an aircraft or a vehicle for a particular purpose or group of people = hợp đồng thuê xe, tầu. *a – plane* = máy bay thuê.
- **detail** *(n)* /'di:teɪl/ small, particular fact or item = chi tiết *Please give me all the –s.*
- **mate** *(n)* /meɪt/ (infml) (male) friend, companion or fellow – worker = bạn bè *He's an old – of mine.*
- **remission** *(n)* /rɪ'mɪʃn/ shortening of a prison sentence because of good behaviour = sự giảm án tù vì hạnh kiểm tốt. *get (a) – of six months / six months' –.*
- **search – warrant** *(n)* /sɜ:tʃ wɔ:rənt/ official document allowing a building, etc to be searched, eg for stolen property = lệnh khám nhà.
- **self – catering** *(n)* /self 'keɪtərɪŋ/ việc tự túc ăn ở.
- **standby ticket** *(n)* /'stændbaɪ 'tɪkɪt/ a cheaper type of airline ticket available when not all the tickets for a flight have been sold = vé máy bay phụ dự phòng.

EXPRESSIONS

in case /ɪn keɪs/	trong trường hợp
open up !	mở cửa ra !
inside (= in prison)	ngồi tù
fire away	làm nhanh lên
Bloody hell !	Mẹ kiếp ! Khốn nạn thật !
closing time	giờ đóng cửa
Think before you drink before you drive	phải suy nghĩ trước khi uống rượu, trước khi lái xe
That's what I always say	tôi luôn luôn nói như vậy
Fair enough	tốt thôi
They've just been round	Họ vừa mới tới

PROPER NAMES

Albert Bloggs	/ˌælbət 'blɒgz/	Parker	/'pa:kə/
Granada	/grə'na:də/	Tommy Ferrett	/ˌtɒmɪ'ferɪt/
Grimes	/graɪmz/		

USAGE

1-	+ To hold on a minute	(chờ 1 phút, giữ máy (điện thoại) 1 phút)
	hold someone/something back	(ngăn lại/ giữ bí mật chuyện gì)
	hold back from doing s/t	(cố ngăn làm điều gì)
	hold one's breath	(nín thở)
	hold s/o in contempt/high esteem	(coi khinh ai / coi trọng ai)
2-	+ To accuse someone of something	(kết tội ai về việc gì)
3-	+ "Must have + past participle"	(ắt hẳn đã...)

EX : It's too late now, she *must have been* at home.

4-	+ By the way	(nhân tiện, tiện đây)
	In the way	(làm trở ngại, ngáng lối)
	in someone's way :	ngáng trở ai
	To lose one's way	(lạc đường)
	To go on one's way	(làm theo cách của mình)
	To get under way	(lên đường, khởi hành)
	By way of	(đi qua, bằng con đường)

EX : - Please don't *be in my way* any more : I have decided to *go on my way*
(Xin đừng ngáng trở tôi nữa, tôi đã quyết định làm theo cách của mình)
- He went to Thailand *by way of* Cambodia

GRAMMAR NOTES

REPORTED QUESTIONS = Wh-and Yes/No Questions.

1- Pay attention to changes in tenses, pronouns, possessive adjectives, adverbs of time and place when we turn direct questions into reported speech. (The same way as in statements)

2- *"Say" must be changed into "ask", "wonder", "want to know"*

- In case of wh-questions or how - questions :

EX : * He said, "Where is your new house ?"
He asked me where my new house was.
* He said, "How did you get here ?"
He asked her how she had gotten there.

- In case of Yes-No questions, if and **whether** must be used

Ex : * He said "Did you know where she was ?"
He asked me if I had known where she had been.
She said, "Do you know who I am ?"
She asked me whether I knew who she was.

Notes : Question mark must be omitted in reported speech.

- Some examples of mixed types :

He said, "Thank you !" — *He thanked me.*
He said, "Good afternoon !" — *He greeted me / wished me a good afternoon.*
He said, "Happy new year". — *He wished me a happy new year.*
He said, "Congratulations ?" — *He congratulated me.*
He said, "Don't walk on the ice, it isn't safe"
He *told me not to walk on the ice and said that it wasn't safe.*
He said, "Could you show me how to work it ? I'm not used to electric typewriters".
He *asked me to show him how to work the electric typewriter, and said that he was not used to those ones/electric typewriters.*

Harry Who's there ?
Grimes The police. Open up !
Harry Er... hold on a minute. I'm in the bathroom.
Grimes Come on ! Open up !
Harry Oh, Sergeant Grimes. What can I do for you ? Is this a social call ?
Grimes Very funny, Harry. I've got a few questions to ask you. Can I come in for a minute ?
Harry Have you got a search-warrant ?
Grimes No. Why ? Do I need one ? Have you got anything to hide then, Harry ?
Harry No, no. Nothing at all. Come in. Questions, you said. Well... fire away.

Harry : Ai đó ?
Grimes : Cảnh sát. Mở cửa !
H : Ơ... đợi một phút. Tôi đang tắm.

G : Thôi đi ! Mở cửa !
H : Ô, hạ sĩ Grimes. Tôi giúp gì được cho ông đây? Đây có phải là thăm viếng xã giao không ?
G : Tếu nhỉ, Harry. Tôi cần hỏi anh một số câu. Tôi vào nhà một lát có được không ?

H : Ông có lệnh lục soát không ?
G : Không. Tại sao ? Tôi cần có à ? Anh có gì giấu giếm à, Harry ?
H : Không, không. Không có gì cả. Vào đi. Ông nói là hỏi vài câu. À... khai hỏa đi.

Grimes Just a routine check, Harry. That's all. Just a routine check. Were you in the Mile End Road last night ?

Harry No.

Grimes Mm, hm... have you been there recently?

Harry No, no, I haven't. Why ? Has there been any trouble ?

Grimes I think I'll ask the questions, Harry. Where were you last night ?

Harry I was in the pub, the 'Pig and Whistle'.

Grimes Did anybody see you ?

Harry Oh, yes. I've got plenty of witnesses.

Grimes Witnesses, Harry ? You haven't been accused of anything... yet. Why do you need witnesses ?

Harry I don't, Sergeant. I don't. Er, I was with some of my mates.

Grimes I didn't know you had any, Harry. Who were they ?

Harry Er, let me think... Tommy Ferrett, Albert Bloggs, and...

Grimes What, Albert 'the boot' Bloggs ? I thought he was still inside.

Harry No, they let him out last week. He got two years' remission for good behaviour. Oh, yes, Sid Parker was there too.

Grimes What time did you get there, and what time did you leave ?

Harry I suppose I got there about seven, and left at closing time.

Grimes Did you come straight home ?

Harry Yeah.

Grimes How did you get here ? Did you drive?

Harry Oh, no. I'd had a few drinks. I'd never drive under the influence of alcohol, Mr Grimes, you know me. 'Think before you drink before you drive'. That's what I always say.

Grimes Very good, Harry. Very good. By the way, is that your car outside ? The red Granada ?

Harry That's right. I've got all the papers. I can prove it's mine.

Grimes Nice car. Especially as you're out of work.

G : Chỉ kiểm tra thường lệ thôi, Harry. Thế thôi. Chỉ kiểm tra thường lệ thôi. Đêm qua anh có ở Mile End Road không ?

H : Không.

G : Hm... gần đây anh có đến đó không ?

H : Không, không, không có. Tại sao ? Bộ có lộn xộn ở đó hả ?

G : Tôi là người đặt câu hỏi thôi Harry. Tối hôm qua anh ở đâu ?

H : Tôi ở quán "Con Heo và Cái Còi".

G : Có ai thấy anh không ?

H : Ổ, có chứ. Tôi có nhiều người làm chứng.

G : Làm chứng hả, Harry ? Anh không... à, chưa bị kết tội gì cả. Thế sao anh cần người làm chứng ?

H : Tôi không cần hạ sĩ à. Tôi không cần, ơ... Tôi đi với vài người bạn.

G : Tôi không biết rằng anh có bạn, Harry. Ai thế ?

H : Ơ, để tôi nhớ coi... Tommy, Ferrett, Albert Bloggs, và...

G : Cái gì, Albert "Giày ống" hả ? Tôi nghĩ hắn còn trong tù mà.

H : Không, hắn được thả tuần trước. Hắn được ân xá 2 năm vì hạnh kiểm tốt. Ổ, đúng rồi. Sid Parker cũng có mặt ở đó.

G : Anh đến đó lúc mấy giờ ? Và mấy giờ thì anh rời quán ?

H : Tôi nghĩ tôi tới khoảng 7 giờ và về lúc quán đóng cửa.

G : Anh có về thẳng nhà không ?

H : Có.

G : Anh về đây bằng gì ? Lái xe hả ?

H : Ổ, không. Tôi có làm mấy ly. Tôi không bao giờ lái xe sau khi uống rượu, ông Grimes ạ. Ông biết tôi mà. "Hãy suy nghĩ trước khi bạn uống rượu trước khi bạn lái xe". Đó là câu tôi thường nói.

G : Tốt lắm, Harry. Tốt lắm. Tiện đây tôi hỏi luôn, có phải xe của anh bên ngoài không. Chiếc Granada đỏ đấy ?

H : Đúng. Tôi có đầy đủ giấy tờ. Tôi có thể chứng minh đó là xe tôi.

G : Xe đẹp đấy. Nhất là khi anh đang thất nghiệp.

Harry Oh, yeah. Well, my grandmother died. Left me some money.

Grimes I see. You don't mind my asking, do you ?

Harry Not at all. I mean, it's your job, isn't it?

Grimes Well, how did you get that dent in the front wing, then ?

Harry Oh. It happened in a car park. I wasn't there. Someone must have run into it.

Grimes Fair enough, Harry. Well, I'll be seeing you. That's all for now.

Tommy Tommy, here.

Harry Tommy, listen. It's me, Harry. The police have just been round. It was Grimes, again. I don't think he knows anything, but he asked a lot of questions. Er... I told him I was with you.

Tommy Bloody hell ! Harry ! Did you have to mention me ?

Harry I'm sorry, Tommy, really I am. Look we'd better check the details in case they come to see you.

Tommy What do you mean, 'in case they come to see me' ? If I know Grimes, he'll be here any minute. Come on, Harry. Tell me exactly what he asked you, and what you told him.

Exercise 1

'Can I come in for a minute ?'

He asked if he could come in, so I asked him if he'd got a search-warrant.

'Where were you last night ?'

He asked me where I'd been, and I told him I'd been in the pub.

Look at the conversation between Harry and Sergeant Grimes. Report all the questions and answers.

Look at this

'What's your name ?'

She asked me what my name was.

'Are you married ?'

She asked me if I was married.

H : Ồ đúng. Bà tôi chết có để lại cho tôi ít tiền.

G : Tôi hiểu. Tôi hỏi anh không phiền chứ ?

H : Không đâu. Đó là nghề của ông mà, phải không ?

G : Này, vậy thì tại sao xe anh bị một vết móp ở chắn bùn trước vậy ?

H : Ô, chuyện xảy ra tại một bãi đậu xe. Lúc đó tôi không có mặt. Chắc xe ai đã va vào nó.

G : Được rồi, Harry. Tôi sẽ gặp lại anh. Bây giờ thế là đủ.

Tommy : Tommy đây.

Harry : Tommy, nghe đây. Harry đây. Cảnh sát đã xuất hiện. Lại thằng Grimes. Tao không cho rằng hắn đã biết điều gì nhưng hắn quay tao dữ lắm. À... tao có bảo hắn là tao đi với mày.

Tommy : Tiên sư cha nhà mày, Harry. Bộ mày phải nêu tên tao sao ?

H : Tommy, tao xin lỗi, thực đó. Này tốt hơn là ta nên bàn lại chi tiết cho ăn khớp trong trường hợp bọn nó đến gặp mày.

T : "Trong trường hợp bọn nó đến gặp mày", mày nói gì thế ? Nếu tao hiểu đúng về thằng cha Grimes thì hắn sẽ có mặt ở đây ngay. Nhanh lên Harry. Cho tao biết đích xác hắn đã hỏi mày cái gì và mày đã khai những gì.

Exercise 2

At Watermouth College of Education, students who wish to follow an examination preparation course have to have a short interview, to satisfy the college authorities that their English is good enough to follow the course. These are the notes which the examiner uses during the interview. Practise with a partner; one is a student, the other is the examiner.

Examiner What's your name ?

Student My name's...

Watermouth College of Education

Department of English

Exam English as a Foreign Language (*Pre-course entry questionnaire*)

1 Name ?
2 Nationality ?
3 Home town ?
4 Marital status ?
5 Brothers and sisters ?
6 Years of English ?
7 Length of time spent in England ?
8 Occupation ? Tell me about it.
9 Hobbies ? Tell me about them.
10 Reason for learning English ?
11 Exams passed (if any) ?
12 Accommodation-flat, landlady or hotel ?
13 What would you do if you won £10,000 ?
14 Other languages ?
15 What do you think about England ?
16 What major differences have you noticed between England and your country ?

Exercise 3

Imagine you are a student who has just had the interview. Report to a friend.

Friend What did they ask you ?

Student *They asked me if I had any brothers or sisters. I told them I had one brother and two sisters.*

PRACTICE

Language summary

Reporting questions

'What time is it ?' *(He) asked (me) what time it was.*

'Did you enjoy yourself. *(She) asked (me) if I had enjoyed (myself).*

Exercise

When Roy Porter arrived at Heathrow Airport, he was stopped by a market researcher who asked him some questions. Look at the completed form, and report the questions and answers.

1 What's your name ?

A *She asked him what his name was.*

B *He said it was Roy Porter.*

2 Are you British ?

A .....

B .....

3 How old are you ?

A .....

B .....

4 Which airport did you fly from ?

A .....

B .....

Bài tập

Khi Roy Porter đến sân bay Heathrow, ông ta bị một nhà nghiên cứu thị trường chặn lại hỏi ông vài câu hỏi. Xem mẫu khai đã được điền xong và tường thuật lại các câu hỏi và trả lời.

1. Ông tên chi ?

A Bà ấy hỏi tên ông ta là gì.

B Ông ta trả lời là Roy Porter.

5 Did you fly British Airways ?

A .....

B .....

6 Can you tell me the flight number ?

A .....

B .....

7 Did you travel first class ?

A .....

B .....

8 Have you been on holiday or business?
A .....
B .....

9 How long will you be in the UK ?
A .....
B .....

10 Will you be staying in a hotel ?
A .....
B .....

11 How will you get home ?
A .....
B .....

MARKET RESEARCH — **Heathrow Airport : Passenger Survey**

1. NAME : Roy Porter 2. NATIONALITY : British
3. AGE : 38 4. AIRPORT OF DEPARTURE : Brussels
5. AIRLINE : British Airways 6. FLIGHT No : BA 387
7. FARE BASIS : 1st class ☐ Full fare ☑ Tourist ☐
   Charter ☐ Standby ☐
8. PURPOSE OF TRAVEL : Holiday ☐ Business ☑
   Family reasons ☐ Educational ☐ Immigration ☐
   Other ☐
9. LENGTH OF STAY IN U.K :
   Returning home ☑ Overnight ☐ Less than one week ☐
   Less than one month ☐ More than one month ☐
10. WHERE WILL YOU BE STAYING :
   Home ☑ Hotel ☐ Self-catering ☐
   Camping ☐ With friends ☐ Private family ☐
11. MEANS OF TRANSPORT : Airport bus ☐
   Underground ☐ Coach ☐ Hire car ☐
   Taxi ☐ Private car ☑

COMMON ABBREVIATIONS :

UNESCO	United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization - Tổ chức Văn hóa, Khoa học và giáo dục (của Liên Hiệp Quốc)
UNICEF	United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund - Qũy nhi đồng quốc tế (của Liên Hiệp Quốc)
UNO	United Nations Organization - Tổ chức Liên Hiệp Quốc
UNTAC	United Nations Temporary Authorities in Cambodia - Cơ quan quyền lực lâm thời của LHQ tại Cambodia.
USA	United States of America - Hợp chủng quốc Hoa Kỳ
VAT	Value Added Tax - Thuế phụ thu
VOA	Voice of America - Đài tiếng nói Hoa Kỳ
WHO	World Health Organization - Tổ chức y tế thế giới
Xmas	Christmas - Lễ Giáng sinh

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Units 73-76

Dialogue A

Listen Gina is taking an oral examination in English
Examiner [KNOCK] Come in. Now don't be nervous. Sit down.
Gina Thank you.
Examiner Don't look so worried. I'm not going to bite you. Now, what's your name ?
Gina My name's Gina. Gina Castelli.
Examiner Can you spell Castelli ?
Gina Yes. C-A-S-T-E-Double L-I
Examiner Is it an Italian name ?
Gina Yes, it is.
Examiner Mmm. I thought so. Where are you from in Italy ?
Gina I live in Rome.
Listen and repeat

A1 Listen
A : Come in !
B : He told her to come in.
C : He told her to come in.
A : Don't be nervous.
B : He told her not to be nervous.
C : He told her not to be nervous.

Now you do the same
Come in !.....He told her to come in.
Don't be nervous.....He told her not to be nervous.
Sit down.....He told her to sit down.
Don't look so worried.....He told her not to look so worried.

A2 Listen
A : What's your name ?
B : He asked her what her name was.
C : He asked her what her name was.
A : Can you spell it ?
B : He asked her if she could spell it.
C : He asked her if she could spell it.

Now you do the same
What's your name ?.....He asked her what her name was.
Can you spell it ?.....He asked her if she could spell it.
Is it an Italian name ?.....He asked her if it was an Italian name.
Where are you from in Italy ?.....He asked her where she was from in Italy.

A3 Listen
A : My name's Gina Castelli.
B : She said her name was Gina Castelli.
C : She said her name was Gina Castelli.
A : I can spell it.
B : She said she could spell it.
C : She said she could spell it.

Now you do the same
My name's Gina Castelli
..... She said her name was Gina Castelli.
I can spell it.....She said she could spell it.
It's an Italian name.....She said it was an Italian name.
I live in Rome.....She said she lived in Rome.

Dialogue B

Listen
Examiner Do you like being in London, Gina ?
Gina Yes. I do. Very much.
Examiner And how long have you been here ?
Gina Six months. I came in January.
Examiner What do you do in Italy ?
Gina Well, I've never worked but I hope to become a teacher next year.
Examiner Do you ? Why ?
Gina I like being with young children.
Listen and repeat

B1 Listen

A : Do you like being in London?
B : He asked her if she liked being in London.
C : He asked her if she liked being in London.
A : How long have you been here?
B : He asked her how long she'd been there.
C : He asked her how long she'd been there.

Now you do the same

Do you like being in London ?.....He asked her if she liked being in London.
How long have you been here ?.....He asked her how long she'd been there.
What do you do in Italy ?.....He asked her what she did in Italy.
Why do you hope to become a teacher ?.....He asked her why she hoped to become a teacher.

B2 Listen

A : I like being in London.
B : She said she liked being in London.
C : She said she liked being in London.
A : I've been here for six months.
B : She said she'd been there for six months.
C : She said she'd been there for six months.

Now you do the same

I like being in London.....She said she liked being in London.
I've been here for six months.....She said she'd been there for six months.
I came in January.....She said she'd come in January.
I hope to become a teacher.....She said she hoped to become a teacher.

B3 Listen

A : I like being in London.
B : Do you ?
C : Do you ?
A : I've never worked.
B : Haven't you ?
C : Haven't you ?

Now you do the same

I like being in London .....Do you ?
I've never worked .....Haven't you ?
I came in January.....Did you ?
I've been here for six months.....Have you ?

Dialogue C

Listen

Examiner Why are you learning English ? Will it help you to become a teacher ?
Gina Yes. I think it will. I may have to teach some English.
Examiner When are you going back to Italy ?
Gina I'm not sure. I may go back next month.
Examiner What's the first thing you'll do when you get home ?
Gina Oh, I don't know. I've never really thought about it.
Examiner OK, Gina. Thanh you... Oh, and Gina. Don't worry.

Listen and repeat

C1 Listen

A : Why are you learning English?
B : He asked her why she was learning English.
C : He asked her why she was learning English.
A : Will it help you to become a teacher ?
B : He asked her if it would help her to become a teacher.
C : He asked her if it would help her to become a teacher.

Now you do the same

Why are you learning English ?.....He asked her why she was learning English.
Will it help you to become a teacher ?..... He asked her if it would help her to become a teacher.
When are you going back to Italy ? .....He asked her when she was going back to Italy.
What's the first thing you'll do when you get home ?.....
He asked her what was the first thing she'd do when she got home.

C2 Listen

A : I think it will help.
B : She said she thought it would help.
C : She said she thought it would help.
A : I may have to teach some English.
B : She said she might have to teach some English.
C : She said she might have to teach some English.

Now you do the same

I think it will help.....She said she thought it would help.
I may have to teach some English.....She said she might have to teach some English.
I may go back next month.....She said she might go back the next month.
I've never really thought about it.....She said she'd never really thought about it.

Listening

Listen [SIREN]

Policeman Good evening, sir.
Driver Good evening, officer. Is there anything wrong ?
Policeman Would you mind getting out of the car, sir ?
Driver No, not at all. But what have I done ?
Policeman Just get out of the car, sir.
Driver OK. OK.
Policeman Now, sir. Have you had anything to drink sir ?
Driver Oh. I had a couple of glasses of wine with dinner.
Policeman Is that all, sir ?
Driver Yes.
Policeman Do you usually drive through red lights, sir ?
Driver Did I drive through a red light ?
Policeman Yes, sir. You did... and very fast too. You were doing at least 60.
Driver I'm terribly sorry. Are you sure, officer ?
Policeman Yes, sir. Very sure. You almost hit me. I had to swerve.
Driver Oh dear.
Policeman Would you mind blowing into the bag, sir ?
Driver What will happen if I refuse ?
Policeman I wouldn't advise you to do that, sir.
Driver All right. Give it here. [PUFF, PUFF]
Policeman Blow a bit harder, sir.
Driver [PUFF, PUFF] There.
Policeman Hmm. I'm afraid it's positive. I'll have to ask you to come to the station.

New words

- owerve *(v)* /swɜ:v/ change direction suddenly. The lorry — d sharply to avoid the child.

Now listen again and answer the questions when you hear this sound BELL

1
Policeman Good evening, sir.
Driver Good evening, officer. Is there anything wrong ?

BELL
What did he ask ?.....He asked if there was anything wrong.

2
Policeman Would you mind getting out of the car, sir ?
Driver No, not at all. But what have I done ?

BELL
What did he ask ?.....He asked what he had done.

3
Policeman Just get out of the car, sir.

BELL
What did he tell him to do ?.....He told him to get out of the car.

4
Driver OK. OK.
Policeman Now, sir. Have you had anything to drink.

BELL
What did he ask ?.....He asked if he had had anything to drink.

5
Driver Oh. I had a couple of glasses of wine with dinner.
6
Policeman Is that all, sir ?
Driver Yes.
Policeman Do you usually drive through red lights, sir ?
7
Driver Did I drive through a red light ?
8
Policeman Yes, sir. You did... and very fast too. You were doing at least 60.
Driver I'm terribly sorry. Are you sure, officer ?
Policeman Yes, sir. Very sure. You almost hit me. I had to swerve.
Driver Oh dear.
Policeman Would you mind blowing into the bag, sir ?
9
Driver What will happen if I refuse?
10
Policeman I wouldn't advise you to do that, sir.
Driver All right. Give it here. [PUFF, PUFF]
Policeman Blow a bit harder, sir.
11
Driver [PUFF, PUFF] There.
Policeman Hmm. I'm afraid it's positive. I'll have to ask you to come to the station.

BELL
What did he say ?.....He said he'd had a couple of glasses of wine with dinner.
BELL
What did he ask ?.....He asked if he usually drove through red lights.

BELL
What did he ask ?.....He asked if he had driven through a red light.
BELL
What did he ask him to do ?.....He asked him to blow into the bag.

BELL
What did he ask ?.....He asked what would happen if he refused.
BELL
What did he tell him to do ?.....He told him to blow a bit harder.

BELL
What did he ask ?.....He asked him to go to the station.

Open conversation

Listen and reply

A : What's your name ?
B : .....
A : What did I ask you ?
B : .....
A : And what did you say ?
B : .....
A : Have you ever been to London ?
B : .....
A : What did I ask you ?
B : .....
A : And what did you say ?
B : .....

A : Do you smoke ?
B : .....
A : What did I ask you ?
B : .....
A : And what did you say ?
B : .....
A : Will your English ever be perfect ?
B : .....
A : What did I ask you ?
B : .....
A : And what did you say ?
B : .....
A : That's the end of section nineteen.

Unit 77 Trust The Heart

Hãy tin tưởng con tim

VOCABULARY

- **chill** *(adj)* /tʃɪl/ = chilly = unpleasantly cold = giá buốt *a chill wind; a chilly day, morning, room; feel chilly.*
- **compliment** *(v)* /'kɒmplɪment/ ~ sb (on st) express praise or admiration of sb = khen ngợi *I ~ ed her on her skillful performance.*
  compliment *(n)* /'kɒmplɪmənt/ (on st) expression of praise, admiration, approval = sự khen ngợi *She paid me a very charming ~ on my paintings.*
- **contract** *(n)* /'kɒntrækt/ ~ (with sb) (for st / to do st) (document setting out a) legally binding agreement = bản hợp đồng
  You shouldn't enter into / make a ~ until you have studied its provisions carefully.
- **crunch** *(n)* /krʌntʃ/ (also *scrunch*) (usu sing) noise made by crunching = tiếng xột xoạt
  There was a ~ as he bit the apple.
  crunch *(v)* (cause st to) make a harsh grating noise = (làm) kêu xột xoạt. *The wheels ~ ed the gravel.*
- **forgiveness** *(n)* /fə'gɪvnɪs/ willingness to forgive, forgiving or state of being forgiven = sự tha thứ *He asked ~ for what he had done wrong.*
  forgivable *(adj)* /-əbl/ that can be forgiven
  His harshness is ~.
  forgiving *(adj)* ready and willing to forgive
  kind and ~ parents.
- **grasp** *(n)* /grɑ:sp/ (usu sing) hold, grip = sự nắm, giữ *Take a firm ~ of the handle and pull.*
- **gravel path** *(n)* /'grævl pɑ:θ/ đường rải sỏi
- **harsh** *(adj)* /hɑ:ʃ/ ~ (to sb / st) unpleasantly rough or sharp, esp to the senses = cộc cằn, cay cú *a ~ voice, light, colour; be ~ to the ear / eye / touch.*
- **illuminate** *(v)* /ɪ'lu:mɪneɪt/ provide (st) with light = chiếu sáng *a football pitch ~ ed with floodlights.*
- **laughter** *(n)* /'lɑ:ftə/ (act), sound (or manner) of laughing = tiếng cười *a house full of ~* = ie with a happy relaxed atmosphere.

EXPRESSIONS

Blast ! khổ thân tôi !

you silly boy ! anh chàng ngớ ngẩn !

- **lean** *(v)* /li:n/ (pt, pp leant /lent/ or leaned /li:nd/) be in a sloping position, bend = cúi mình *Just ~ forward for a moment please.*
- **liar** *(n)* /'laɪə/ person who tells lies, esp habitually = người nói láo *She regretted calling him a ~.*
- **murmur** *(v)* /'mɜ:mə/ 1. make a low continuous indistinct sound = thì thầm *The wind ~ ed in the trees; a ~ ing brook.*
  2. ~ about st = say st in a low voice = nói thầm *murmuring words of love into her ear.*
  murmur *(n)* quietly spoken word(s) = tiếng thì thầm *a ~ of conversation, of voices from the next room*
- **orchard** *(n)* /'ɔ:tʃəd/ piece of land in which fruit trees are grown = vườn cây ăn trái *apple ~s.*
- **peal** *(v)* /pi:l/ ~ (out) sound in a peal = vang dội *The bells ~ ed (out) over the countryside.*
  peal *(n)* loud burst of sound *a ~ of thunder; break into ~ s of laughter.*
- **ray** *(n)* /reɪ/ tia (nắng) *the last rays of the setting sun.*
- **sigh** *(v)* /saɪ/ take a long deep breath that can be heard, expressing sadness, tiredness, relief etc = thở dài *She ~ ed as she lay back on the bed.*
- **slip** *(v)* /slɪp/ (of an object) slide accidentally out of its proper position = tuột; sút *The razor ~ ped and cut my cheek.*
- **tightly** *(adv)* /'taɪtlɪ/ in a tight manner = chặc *Squeeze sb ~; She took his hands ~ in hers.*
- **tread** *(v)* /tred/ (pt *trod* /trɒd/, pp *trodden* /'trɒdn/ or *trod*) ~ (on st / sb) set one's foot down; walk or step = dẫm lên. *~ on sb's toe; she trod lightly so as not to wake the baby.*
- **unjust** *(adj)* /ʌn'dʒʌst/ not just; not fair or deserved = không công bằng *an ~ accusation.*
- **whisper** *(v)* /'wɪspə/ ~ st (to sb) talk or say st softly = thầm thì *He ~ ed a word in my ear.*

my darling Anh, em, mình ơi (tiếng người yêu hoặc vợ chồng gọi nhau)

PROPER NAMES

Damian	/deɪmɪən/
Melinda	/melɪndə/
Tamsin	/tæmsɪn/

USAGE

1. At the end of : ở cuối... cuối...
   In the end/beginning : cuối cùng
   On end : liền tù tì, liên tục
   To put an end to : chấm dứt, bãi bỏ

EX : People seem unfriendly *in the beginning*, but *in the end* people make friends.

2. To make out : - to see, realize (nhận ra)
   - To understand (hiểu)
   To make up : (hóa trang, trang điểm)
   (Dàn hòa)

EX : They are like dog and cat, quarelling all day long. But they will soon *make it up*.

To make up for (to compensate) : đền bù

To make ends meet : sống tằn tiện qua ngày

EX : It's hard to get rich nowadays, people try to *make ends meet* to keep living on and that's just enough.

To make oneself at home : tự nhiên như ở nhà

To make friends with : đánh bạn với

3. That is why + clause : chính vậy mà

Ex : You are too innocent, too silly, *that's why* I love you.

GRAMMAR NOTES

See Exercise for practice of changing reported speech into direct speech. What the direct sentence will be like depends on the meaning of the indirect one.

EX : They greeted each other - "Good morning, Mr...", he said. "Good morning!" Mr... answered

- He asked her if she would like to dance, and she accepted.
He said, "Would you like to dance with me ?" "Sure !" she replied.

- He advised me to find another job.
"If I were you, I would find another job", said he.

- He suggested "The Old Stable" restaurant and explained that the owner was an old school friend".
He said, "Let's go to 'The old stable' restaurant. The owner, you know, is my old schoolfriend".

- He swore "Confound it !" said he.
He said he could hardly hear the radio and asked her to turn it up.
"I can hardly hear the radio, "he said. "Could you turn it up ?"

Melinda stood at the end of the garden, watching the sun begin to set behind the orchard into the sea beyond. She stood as she had done so many times thinking of that last quarrel two weeks before. She remembered how Damian had at first denied the affair with Tamsin, but then when she had forced him to admit it, how he had apologized and begged her for forgiveness. She sobbed a little as she thought of her harsh words, and how Damian, the only man she had ever really loved, had broken down and cried like a baby when she had refused to see him again. That was two weeks ago and she had heard nothing from him since. She had tried to telephone. She wanted to admit that she had

Melinda đứng ở cuối vườn, ngắm nhìn mặt trời bắt đầu lặn xuống vùng biển bên kia, sau hàng cây ăn trái. Cô đứng đó như nhiều lần đã từng đứng đó, suy nghĩ về lần cãi nhau sau cùng cách đây 2 tuần. Cô nhớ là lúc đầu Damian đã chối việc có quan hệ với Tamsin, nhưng rồi khi cô bắt anh phải nhận, anh đã xin lỗi và nằn nì cô tha thứ. Cô bật khóc khi nghĩ lại những lời lẽ cộc cằn của mình, và Damian người đàn ông duy nhất cô thực sự yêu thương, đã khóc lên như một đứa trẻ khi cô từ chối sẽ không gặp anh nữa. Đó là chuyện cách đây 2 tuần và từ đó đến nay cô đã bặt tin anh. Cô đã cố gọi điện thoại. Cô muốn thú nhận là cô đã thiếu công bằng, muốn nói

been unjust, to tell him how much she regretted calling him a liar, she wanted to explain that she hadn't meant to hurt him.

Suddenly the noise of the garden gate opening startled her. She turned and through the gloom she thought she could make out the familiar figure of Damian. Was it him... ? Could it possibly be... ? The approaching figure stepped into the last patch of sunlight and the last rays of the setting sun illuminated his long, dark, curly hair. He stopped, unsure of himself. 'Oh, Damian,' she called softly. 'Damian,is it really you ?'

'Melinda,' he murmured, 'My Melinda !'

She sighed deeply and ran to greet him.

She took his hands tightly in hers. 'My darling,' she whispered, 'Can you ever forgive me ?'

'We must never speak of it again,' he replied.

'But Damian, I never meant...'

He interrupted her, 'It's all right. I know that now. My darling, promise me something ?'

'Anything !' she cried.

'Here, this is for you. Please, please accept it, and wear it forever.' He drew a small leather box from his pocket and leaned forward to give it to her. Suddenly the box fell from his grasp. He bent to pick it up and at that moment his glasses slipped from his nose.

'Blast ! Now where have they gone ? I can't see a thing without them,' he explained. Melinda went to help him. There was a crunch as his foot crushed the glasses into the gravel path. 'Oh, no, now I've trodden on them !' he exclaimed. 'Why can't I do anything right ? Why do I always ruin everything ?'

Her laughter pealed round the garden. 'Oh, Damian, you silly boy, that's why I love you so much !'

Exercise

Here are some notes about what happened when Melinda and Damian met for the first time at a party. Read the notes and construct their conversation.

Mrs Blaze introduced her to Damian.

với anh là cô đã hối hận biết bao khi gọi anh là thằng dối trá, cô muốn giải thích là cô đã không có ý định xúc phạm đến anh.

Tiếng cổng vườn mở đột ngột làm cô giật nẩy mình. Cô quay lại và trong bóng chiều ảm đạm cô tưởng chừng có thể hình dung ra dáng vẻ quen thuộc của Damian. Phải anh không... ? Có thể là... ? Dáng người đang tiến lại gần bước vào mảng ánh sáng cuối cùng và những tia nắng tàn của hoàng hôn tạo viền sáng trên mái tóc đen, dài, dợn sóng của anh. Anh dừng lại, không tin ở mình. "Ô Damian", cô khẽ thốt lên "Damian, có thực là anh không?".

"Melinda", anh thì thầm, "Melinda của anh !".

Cô thở sâu và chạy lại chào anh.

Cô nắm chặt đôi tay anh. "Anh yêu", cô thì thầm, "Anh có tha thứ cho em không ?".

"Chúng ta đừng bao giờ nhắc đến chuyện đó nữa", anh nói.

"Nhưng Damian, em không hề...".

Anh ngắt lời cô, "Không sao mà. Anh hiểu rồi. Em yêu hãy hứa với anh một điều ?".

"Bất cứ điều gì !" Cô thốt lên.

"Đây, tặng em. Hãy nhận, nhận nó và đeo nó mãi mãi. Anh lấy từ trong túi mình một cái hộp da nhỏ và cúi mình về phía trước để trao cho cô. Đột nhiên cái hộp tuột khỏi tay anh. Anh cúi xuống nhặt nó lên và cùng lúc đó cặp kính cận cũng trượt khỏi sống mũi anh.

"Thật khổ ! Cặp kính đâu rồi ! Anh chẳng thấy gì cả", anh giải thích. Melinda tiến lại giúp anh. Có tiếng vỡ lạo xạo khi chân anh dẫm phải cặp kính trên nền đá sỏi. "Trời ơi, anh đã dẫm lên kính rồi !" Anh kêu lên "Tại sao anh không làm được điều gì ra hồn cả ? Tại sao anh luôn làm hỏng tất cả mọi chuyện ?".

Tiếng cười của cô vang dội cả khu vườn. "Ôi Damian, anh chàng ngốc nghếch của em. Đó là lý do tại sao em yêu anh tha thiết đến thế !".

'Oh, Melinda... I'd like you to meet Damian'.

Continue.

1 They greeted each other.
2 He offered to get her a drink.

3 She thanked him, and asked him to get her a dry sherry.
4 He brought her a martini, and apologized because they'd run out of sherry.
5 She replied that it didn't matter, and told him not to worry about it.
6 He asked her if she would like to dance, and she accepted.
7 He said how much he liked the music and she agreed.
8 He complimented her on her dress, and she thanked him, and added that she had made it herself.
9 He invited her to watch the sunset on the terrace, and she accepted.
10 He suggested dinner the next evening.
11 She agreed and promised to meet him.
12 He suggested 'The Old Stable' restaurant and explained that the owner was an old school friend.
13 He arranged to collect her at eight o'clock.

PRACTICE

Language summary

Reporting conversations.

The use of reporting verbs other than 'say', 'ask', and 'tell'.

Exercise 1

She invited him to a party.
Would you like to come to a party next weekend ?
or *We're having a party tomorrow. Can you come ?*
or *I hope you'll be able to come to my party on Friday.*
Write sentences like these for the following:

1 He agreed to sign the contract.
2 She greeted them formally.
3 She arranged to meet her at midnight.
4 He complimented her on her cooking.
5 The motorist wanted the tank filled and the oil checked.
6 She thanked them warmly for their presents.
7 He admitted that he hadn't been telling the truth.
8 The prisoner refused to answer any more questions.
9 She offered to drive him to the station.
10 He explained that he had lost his way.

Bài tập 1

Chị ấy mời anh ấy đến dự tiệc.
Mời anh đến dự tiệc cuối tuần tới nhé ?

hay Chúng tôi có tiệc ngày mai. Anh đến được chứ ?
hay Tôi hy vọng anh có thể đến dự tiệc với tôi vào ngày thứ sáu.

Exercise 2

Report these sentences. Use each of the verbs in the box below once.

remember apologize suggest hear	deny invite beg	admit add exclaim

1 Would you like to go for a walk ?
2 We could go to that new Italian restaurant.
3 Oh, my God ! It's you !
4 Oh yes, the little hotel overlooking the bay.

Bài tập 2

Kể lại các câu này. Dùng mỗi động từ trong khung dưới đây chỉ 1 lần.

nhớ xin lỗi đề nghị nghe	từ chối mời xin, nài nỉ	thừa nhận thêm vào kêu lên

5 And another thing. I think you're selfish.
6 Please, please. Don't switch the light off.
7 I'm terribly sorry I'm late.
8 I really didn't do anything wrong.
9 There will be an election next month. It was on the radio.
10 All right. It was me. I did it.

Exercise 3

This is an extract of 'Trust the heart'. Complete the spaces using one each of these verbs.

enquired	promised	whispered
shouted	said	replied
sighed	exclaimed	murmured
interrupted		

Bài tập 3

Đây là đoạn trích từ bài "Hãy tin trường con tim". Điền vào chỗ trống dùng mỗi động từ sau đây 1 lần.

thắc mắc	hứa	thì thầm
la lên	nói	đáp
thở dài	kêu lên	thì thầm
cắt ngang		

Damian stood in the chill morning air, gazing at the dirty glass roof of the railway station. Where was Melinda ? She had ..... to say 'goodbye'. The train was due in a few moments. Then he saw her, the morning sunlight dancing in her hair.

'Damian !' she ... . 'Damian !'
'Melinda...!' he .....softly, 'I thought that...'
She .....him. 'You thought I wouldn't come. I know that.'
'Oh, no. I was just afraid that..... ' His voice shook with emotion.
'I had to come', she ..... 'In spite of everything, I had to.'
'I'm so glad. But is this goodbye forever ?' he .....
'You know what my father said', she .....
'So, it is goodbye, then', he .....firmly.
'No, Damian... no', she .....'I've brought my suitcase. We can get married in London, that is, if you'll have me.'
'Melinda ! My darling !" he ..... 'Why, this is the most wonderful...

Unit 78 Weddings

Đám cưới

VOCABULARY

- **bridesmaid** *(n)* /'braɪzmeɪd/ young woman or girl (usu unmarried and often one of several) attending a bride at her wedding = phụ dâu ≠ best man = phụ rể
- **bumper** *(n)* /'bʌmpə/ bar fixed to the front and back of a motor vehicle to lessen the effect of a collision = cái cản ô tô.
- **ceremony** *(n)* /'serɪmənɪ/ formal act or series of formal acts performed on a religious or public occasion = lễ. *a marriage / wedding ~.*
- **elaborate** *(adj)* /ɪ'læbərət/ very detailed and complicated; carefully prepared and finished = rất cụ thể và phức tạp; được chuẩn bị chu đáo. *~ plans; an ~ hairstyle* = kiểu tóc cầu kỳ. *an ~ wedding* = tiệc cưới linh đình, rình rang.
- **hangover** *(n)* /'hæŋəʊvə/ unpleasant after effects of drinking too much alcohol = cảm giác ngây ngây sau khi uống quá nhiều rượu *The next morning he was suffering from / had a ~.*
- **lipstick** *(n)* /'lɪpstɪk/ cosmetic for colouring the lips = son tô môi.
- **page** *(n)* /peɪdʒ/ boy attendant of a bride = thằng bé theo phụ cô dâu.
- **somehow** *(adv)* /'sʌmhaʊ/ in some way; by some means = bằng cách nào đó *We must stop him from seeing her ~.*
- **vulgar** *(adj)* /'vʌlgə/ lacking in good taste or refinement = vô vị, nhạt nhẽo. *a ~ speech; a loud and ~ laugh.*

EXPRESSIONS

the whole works có đủ mọi thứ
at my best khỏe
stag party buổi liệc dành cho phái nam
well off giàu có, khá giả
cost a packet rất tốn kém
our place tại nhà

PROPER NAMES

Gina Castelli	/'dʒɪnə kæ'stelɪ/
Jacques	/dʒeɪks/
Jenkins	/'dʒeŋkɪnz/
Sharples	/'ʃa:plz/

USAGE

1/- Making arrangements :

- I would like to book (tickets, cars, seats)
- What do you think of/about ... ?
- Is it possible that... ?
- What time/how long.... ?
- Can I have your (address/name/passport...) ?
- How about / what about ...?
- Would it be okayed if I/you ... ?
- I want to know if there is...
- Could you let me know .... ?

2/- Expressing thanks, saying goodbye

* Thanks	* Response
More formal :	
+ I'm very/so grateful for...	You're welcome
+ Thank you very much for...	Don't mention it/it was my pleasure
+ That was nice of you, thank you	Don't mention it/you're welcome
+ Thank you. But you really shouldn't have	Well, I just wanted to show my appreciation for...
+ I really appreciate...	(Response : Sure)
+ Thanks !	(Response : It was nothing. What are friends for ?)
* Less formal	
+ Thanks a million	Don't worry about it/forget it
+ Thanks for a failed attempt	
* Formal :	
+ Thank you for trying	I'm sorry it didn't work out
+ I appreciate your help, anyway	Perhaps you'll have better luck next time

* Less formal :
  + Thanks, anyway — Sorry it didn't work out
  + Thanks a lot for trying, at least — Sure. Too bad it didn't work
* Saying good bye
  + Goodbye and thanks for everything
  + Maybe we could get together sometime
  + Have a nice trip
  + Goodbye then
  + Talk to you later
  + Got to go now
  + Great seeing you
  + See you later
  + It was nice to meet you
* Response

My pleasure	See you again
Sounds good	Same here
Thank you. Byebye	So long, take care
Good bye...	It was good to meet you
Bye. Take it easy.	

Listen to two people talking about their weddings.
Adrian had a traditional church wedding. Ann was married in a registry office.
Compare their weddings with customs and traditions in your country. Tell the story of the wedding in the pictures.

Hãy nghe hai người này nói về đám cưới của họ.
Adrian tổ chức đám cưới cổ truyền tại nhà thờ. Anh làm lễ kết hôn ở phòng hộ tịch.
Hãy so sánh lễ cưới của họ với phong tục và truyền thống ở nước bạn.
Hãy kể câu chuyện về đám cưới trong ảnh.

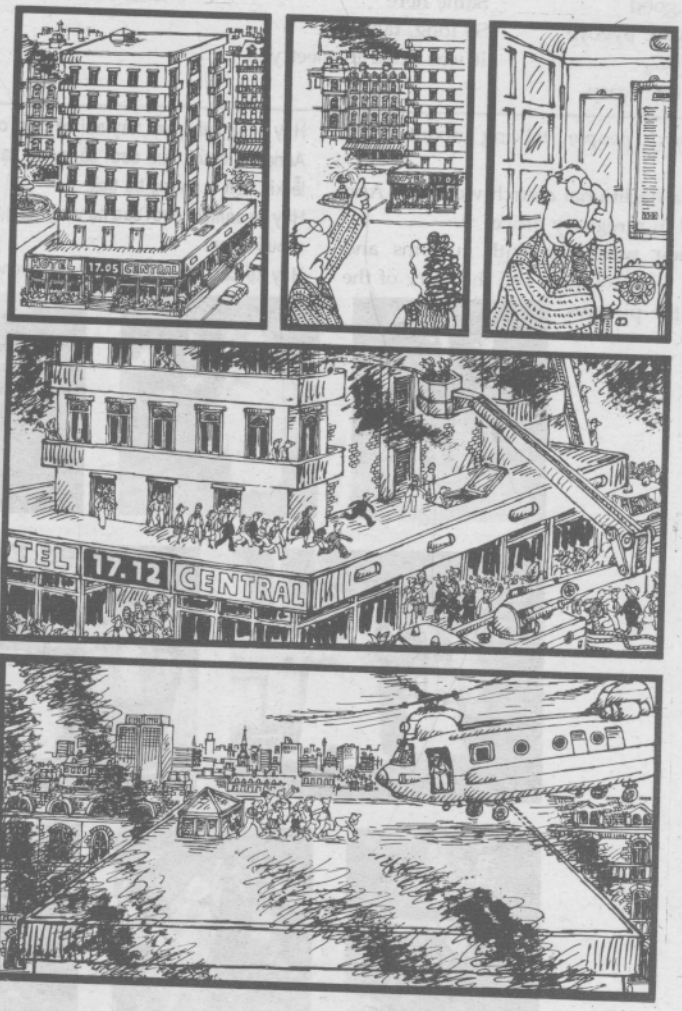
Listen to the recording and be prepared to answer these questions :

1. Why was the wedding "a pretty typical one?"
2. What does "the whole works" mean ?
3. What about "the full treatment"?
4. What does "I didn't feel at my best" mean?
5. What do you think 'a stag party' is ?
6. What does "cost a packet" mean ?
7. What about "a bit vulgar" ?
8. What happened to their car ?

Listen to the next recording and answer these questions :

1. Why did they choose a registry office ?
2. What does "an elaborate wedding" mean ?
3. What about "not particularly well off"?
4. What about "all very simple" ?
5. What does "our place" mean ?
6. Why couldn't they afford the time ?

PRACTICE



Picture 1

How do you think the fire might have started?
Suggest six possibilities.

1 .....
2 .....
3 .....

Bạn nghĩ ngọn lửa đã bắt đầu như thế nào?
Đề nghị 6 khả năng.

4 .....
5 .....
6 .....

Picture 2

Imagine the conversation between the man and the woman.
(You may make the conversation longer if you wish.)

Man .....
Woman .....
Man .....
Woman .....

Tưởng tượng mẩu đàm thoại giữa người đàn ông và đàn bà.
(Bạn có thể làm bài nói chuyện dài hơn nếu bạn muốn).

Man .....
Woman .....

Picture 3

Write the conversation between the man, the operator and the fire service.
(You may make the conversation longer if you wish.)

Operator .....
Man .....
Operator .....
Fire Service .....
Man .....

Viết bài đàm thoại giữa người đàn ông, điện thoại viên và công ty cứu hỏa.
(Bạn có thể làm dài hơn nếu bạn muốn).

Fire Service .....
Man .....
Fire Service .....
Man .....
Fire Service .....

Picture 4

Describe what's happening in the picture.

Mô tả điều đang diễn ra trong bức tranh.

Picture 5

There were 250 people in the hotel. Only a few died. Say how you think the others escaped, and how they managed to do it. Say how the victims of the fire died. Complete the story.

Có 250 người trong khách sạn. Chỉ vài người chết. Nói suy nghĩ của bạn về cách những người kia thoát chết cháy, và cách họ xoay xở để thoát được. Nói những nạn nhân của đám cháy chết ra sao. Hoàn tất câu chuyện.

Unit 79 The English Language

Tiếng Anh

VOCABULARY

- **aristocracy** *(n)* /ˌærɪˈstɒkrəsɪ/ highest social class; the nobility = giới quí tộc.
  members of the ~.
- **assimilation** *(n)* /əˌsɪməˈleɪʃn/ process of assimilating or being assimilated = sự đồng hóa
- **aviation** *(n)* /ˌeɪvɪˈeɪʃn/ science or practice of flying aircraft = kỹ thuật hàng không.
- **bridge** *(v)* /brɪdʒ/ reduce the distance = làm giảm sự ngăn cách. *How can we ~ the gap between rich and poor ?*
- **co – exist** *(v)* /ˌkəʊɪgˈzɪst/ ~ (with sb / st) exist together at the same time or in the same place = cùng tồn tại.
  co - existence *(n) peaceful ~.*
- **conquer** *(v)* /ˈkɒŋkə/ take possession of st by force = chinh phục. *The Normans ~ed England in 1066.*
- **considerable** *(adj)* /kənˈsɪdərəbl/ great in amount or size = đáng kể.
  a ~ quantity; sum; distance.
- **creation** *(n)* /kriːˈeɪʃn/ action of creating = sự tạo ra *Economic conditions may be responsible for the ~ of social unrest.*
- **culture** *(n)* /ˈkʌltʃə/ nền văn hóa.
  cultural *(adj)* /ˈkʌltʃərəl/ ~ *differences; activities.*
- **depot** *(n)* /ˈdepəʊ/ (US) railway or bus station = ga xe lửa; bến xe buýt.
- **dialect** *(n)* /ˈdaɪəlekt/ tiếng địa phương.
- **drape** *(n)* /dreɪp/ (US) curtain.
- **enrich** *(v)* /ɪnˈrɪtʃ/ improve the quality, flavour, etc of st = làm phong phú thêm *Reading ~ es the mind.*
- **equivalent** *(adj)* /ɪˈkwɪvələnt/ ~ (to st) equal in value, amount, meaning, importance = tương đương. *What is £5 ~ to in French francs?*
- **evolve** *(v)* /ɪˈvɒlv/ (fml) (cause to) develop naturally and (usu) gradually = phát triển, tiến hóa *He has ~d a new theory after many years of research.*
- **faucet** *(n)* /ˈfɔːsɪt/ (US) any kind of tap = vòi nước (nước, rượu...)
- **flexibility** /ˌfleksəˈbɪlətɪ/ sự linh động, uyển chuyển
  flexible *(adj)* easily changed to suit new conditions *Our plans are quite ~.*
- **function** *(n)* /ˈfʌŋkʃn/ special activity or purpose of a person or thing = chức năng *The ~ of the heart is to bump blood through the body.*
- **inflected** *(adj)* /ɪnˈflektɪd/ có biến thái.
  a highly ~ language.
- **inhabit** *(v)* /ɪnˈhæbɪt/ live in (st); occupy = cư ngụ *an island ~ ed only by birds.*
  inhabitable *(adj)* = that can be lived in.
  inhabitant *(n)* person or thing living in a place *The oldest ~ s of the island.*
- **invader** *(n)* /ɪnˈveɪdə/ person or thing that invades = kẻ xâm lăng.
- **irate** *(adj)* /aɪˈreɪt/ (fml) angry
- **mingling** *(n)* /ˈmɪŋglɪŋ/ = sự pha trộn
  mingle *(v)* /ˈmɪŋgl/ combine *The waters of the two rivers ~d (together) to form one river.*
- **modify** *(v)* /ˈmɒdɪfaɪ/ change (st) slightly, esp to make it less extreme or to improve it = sửa đổi, thay đổi. *The heating system has recently ~ fied to make it more efficient.*
- **nomad** *(n)* /ˈnəʊmæd/ member of a tribe that wanders from place to place looking for pasture for its animals and having no fixed homes = dân du mục.
  nomadic *(adj)* /nəʊˈmædɪk/ *a ~ society; existence.*
- **occupy** *(v)* /ˈɒkjʊpaɪ/ (pt, pp – *pied*) live in or take possession of (a house, land, etc) chiếm đóng *The Anglo – Saxons occupied most of England.*
- **periodical** *(n)* /ˌpɪərɪˈɒdɪkl/ magazine or other publication that is published at regular intervals = tập san định kỳ.
- **plain** *(adj)* /pleɪn/ easy to see, hear or understand; clear *in ~ English.*
- **roam** *(v)* /rəʊm/ walk or travel without any definite aim or destination = lang thang.
  ~ through the deserted village.
  roam *(n)* walk of this kind
  roamer *(n)* person or animal who does this.
- **Scandinavian** *(adj)* /ˌskændɪˈneɪvjən/ thuộc xứ Bắc Âu (Đan Mạch, Na Uy, Thụy Điển, Aixơlen).
- **separate** *(v)* /ˈsepəreɪt/ come apart, divide = chia cắt *The land has been ~ ed into small plots.*
- **simplicity** *(n)* /sɪmˈplɪsətɪ/ sự đơn giản

- **spontaneous** *(adj)* /spɒn'teɪnɪəs/ done, happening, said because of a voluntary impulse from within, not caused or suggested by st/sb outside = tự phát. *a ~ offer of help; ~ applause.*
- **technology** *(n)* /tek'nɒlədʒɪ/ kỹ thuật
- **tongue** *(n)* /tʌŋ/ (fml or rhet) language = ngôn ngữ *He speaks English but his mother ~ is German.*
- **trend** *(n)* /trend/ general tendency or direction = khuynh hướng. *The ~ of prices is till upwards.*
- **unified** *(adj)* /'ju:nɪfaɪd/ thống nhất
  unify *(v)* /'ju:nɪfaɪ/ form st into a single unit or make uniform. *Vietnam was unified in 1975.*
- **unphonetic** *(adj)* /ʌnfə'netɪk/ không theo hệ thống ngữ âm

PROPER NAMES

Aborigine	/ˌæbə'rɪdʒɪn/	Czech	/tʃek/	Holland	/'hɒlənd/
Anglo - Saxons	/ˌæŋglə 'sæksnz/	Denmark	/'denma:k/	Ireland	/'aɪələnd/
		Dutch	/dʌtʃ/	Malay	/mə'leɪ/
Arabic	/'ærəbɪk/	Farsi	/'fa:sɪ/	Portugnese	/ˌpɔ:tju'gi:z/
Basque	/bæsk/	Gaelic	/'geɪlɪk/	Romans	/'raʊmənz/
Carib	/'kærɪb/	Germany	/'dʒə:mənɪ/	Scandinavian	/skændɪ'neɪvɪən/
Celtic	/'seltɪk/	Hindi	/'hɪndi:/		

USAGE

1- Some noun + preposition combinations :

+ Borrowing from	(vay mượn từ...)
+ relationship to/between... and....	(mối quan hệ với/ giữa... và...)
+ Trend/tendency towards	(khuynh hướng thiên về...)
+ Difference in	(khác nhau về...)

Ex : - Their *differences in age* could not stop them from getting close to each other
- His work is undoubtedly nothing but a well - hidden *borrowing from* famous masterpieces

2- Some commonly used affixes :

- co + noun/adjective/verb = another noun/adjective/verb (co = together with)

EX : Co - author. Co-exist (ent), co-educational, co-operate...

- en + adj. or noun = a transitive verb

EX : Enrich, enlarge, endanger, endear, enable...

- noun + ship = an abstract noun

EX : relationship, ownership, friendship, citizenship, leadership

- noun/adjective + ize = a transitive verb

EX : Minimize, realize, criticize, nationalize, symbolize

History

Two thousand years ago the British Isles were inhabited by speakers of Celtic languages. These languages still survive in parts of Wales, Scotland, Ireland, and Brittany in France. The Celts were conquered by the Romans, and from 43 BC to about AD 410 the areas which are now England and Wales were part of the Roman Empire, and Latin was the language of government. Between the fourth and seventh centuries A.D., the Anglo-Saxons arrived from what is now northern Germany, Holland and Denmark, and occupied most of England, and

LỊCH SỬ

Cách đây 2000 năm, cư dân trên đảo Anh là những người nói tiếng Celtic. Các ngôn ngữ này vẫn còn được sử dụng ở một số vùng ở Wales, Scotland, Ireland và vùng Brittany ở Pháp. Người Celt bị người La Mã chinh phục và từ năm 43 trước Công nguyên đến năm 410 sau Công nguyên những vùng đất mà bây giờ là nước Anh và xứ Wales là một phần của Đế quốc La Mã, và tiếng La tinh là ngôn ngữ thống trị. Giữa thế kỷ thứ 4 và thứ 7 sau Công nguyên, người Anglo-Saxon đến từ những vùng mà bây giờ là miền Bắc nước Đức, Hòa Lan và Đan Mạch, họ chiếm cứ phần lớn nước Anh và những vùng miền Nam Scotland. Ở một số vùng của xứ Wales, Scotland và Ireland, người ta vẫn

parts of southern Scotland. In some parts of Wales, Scotland and Ireland, people still speak Celtic languages. The Anglo-Saxons spoke a Germanic language which forms the basis of modern English. This language was modified by the arrival of Viking invaders in the north and east of the country, who came from Norway and Denmark between the eighth and eleventh centuries. These Scandinavian settlers spoke Old Norse, which was related to Anglo-Saxon, and which is the parent language of modern Danish. The mixing of the two languages greatly enriched the vocabulary of English. By the middle of the tenth century England had become a unified country under one king.

In 1066 England was conquered by the French-speaking Normans, and French became the language of government. For the next three hundred years three languages co-existed. The aristocracy spoke French, the ordinary people spoke English, while Latin was used in the church. Modern English evolved from the mingling of the three tongues. Today English vocabulary is approximately half Germanic (from the Saxons and Vikings) and half Romance (from French and Latin). There are however considerable borrowings from other languages.

Some derived words

Old English shirt, life, death, heaven, earth, love, hate

Old Norse skirt, birth, window, ugly, wrong, they, their, them

French boil, roast, veal, beef, pork, village, painter, tailor

Latin index, item, major, memorandum

Features of the English language

English has changed so much in the last 1500 years that it would now be hardly recognizable to the Anglo-Saxons who brought the language across the North Sea. Although they would be able to recognize many individual words, they

còn nói tiếng Celtic. Người Anglo-Saxon sử dụng một ngôn ngữ thuộc nhóm Nhật Nhĩ Man (Germanic) là nền tảng của tiếng Anh hiện nay. Ngôn ngữ này bị thay đổi do cuộc xâm lăng của người Viking ở mạn bắc và mạn đông của xứ này. Họ đến từ Na Uy và Đan Mạch giữa thế kỷ 8 và 11. Dân định cư từ Scandinavia này nói tiếng Norse cổ, có liên quan với tiếng Anglo-Saxon và là mẹ đẻ của tiếng Đan Mạch ngày nay. Sự pha trộn giữa hai ngôn ngữ này đã làm phong phú rất nhiều cho vốn từ vựng của tiếng Anh. Tới giữa thế kỷ thứ 10, Anh quốc đã trở thành một nước thống nhất có vua cai trị.

Vào năm 1066, người Norman nói tiếng Pháp xâm lăng nước Anh, và tiếng Pháp trở thành ngôn ngữ thống trị. Trong 300 năm kế tiếp, có 3 ngôn ngữ cùng song song tồn tại. Giới quý tộc nói tiếng Pháp, giới bình dân nói tiếng Anh, trong khi đó tiếng La tinh được sử dụng trong nhà thờ. Tiếng Anh ngày nay đã tiến hóa từ sự pha trộn ba ngôn ngữ này. Ngày nay, ngữ vựng tiếng Anh gần phân nửa có nguồn gốc từ tiếng Nhật-Nhĩ-Man (gồm yếu tố Saxon và Viking) và phân nửa từ nhóm Romance (gồm yếu tố Pháp và La tinh). Tuy nhiên cũng có những vay mượn đáng kể từ những ngôn ngữ khác.

Một số từ phái sinh :

Tiếng Anh cổ : Shirt (sơ mi), life (cuộc sống), death (cái chết), heaven (thiên đường), earth (đất), love (yêu), hate (ghét).

Tiếng Norse cổ : Skirt (váy), birth (sự sinh sản), window (cửa sổ), ugly (xấu), wrong (sai), they, their, them (họ, của họ, chúng nó).

Tiếng Pháp : Boil (đun sôi), roast (rô tí), veal (thịt bê), beef (thịt bò), pork (thịt heo), village (làng), painter (họa sĩ), tailor (thợ may).

La tinh : Index (mục lục), item (món đồ), major (chính yếu), memorandum (bị vong lục).

Những nét đặc trưng của tiếng Anh

Tiếng Anh đã thay đổi nhiều từ 1500 qua đến nỗi ngày nay chính người Anglo-Saxon, những người đã mang ngôn ngữ này qua Biển Bắc, cũng khó mà nhận ra được. Dù họ có thể nhận ra nhiều từ riêng biệt, nhưng họ sẽ không nhận ra cách những từ đó được kết hợp với nhau để tạo

would not recognize the way those words are put together to make sentences. Old English, like modern German, was a highly inflected language, i.e. most words changed their endings or forms to show their relationship to other words in the sentence according to number (singular, plural), gender (masculine, feminine, neuter), case (subject, object), tense (past, future) etc. Some modern English words still inflect, but much less so than in other European languages. The English verb 'to ride' inflects into five forms (ride, rides, riding, rode, ridden) whereas the equivalent German verb has sixteen forms. The English word 'the' has only one form, whereas other European languages would have several different forms. The trend towards simplicity of form is considered to be a strength to English. Another strength is the flexibility of function of individual words. Look at these uses of the word 'round' :

There was a *round* table. (adjective)
He bought a *round* of drinks. (noun)
He turned *round*. (adverb)
He ran *round* the field. (preposition)
The car tried to *round* the bend too quickly. (verb)

This flexibility, together with a flexibility towards the assimilation of words borrowed from other languages and the spontaneous creation of new words have made English what it is today, an effective medium of international communication. English has achieved this in spite of the difficulties caused by written English, which is not systematically phonetic.

Some loan words

Arabic *admiral, algebra, mattress*

Spanish *mosquito, cigar, canyon*

Italian *piano, violin, spaghetti*
Dutch *yacht, boss, deck*

Hindi *pyjamas, shampoo, bungalow*

thành các câu. Tiếng Anh cổ, giống như tiếng Đức ngày nay là một ngôn ngữ mang tính biến thái cao, nghĩa là đa số các từ thay đổi các thành phần cuối hoặc các thể để cho thấy mối liên hệ giữa chúng với những từ khác trong câu theo số (số ít, số nhiều), giống (đực, cái, trung), cách (chủ từ, túc từ), thì (quá khứ, tương lai) v.v... Một số từ tiếng Anh ngày nay vẫn còn thay đổi hình thái, nhưng ít hơn nhiều so với các ngôn ngữ Âu châu khác. Động từ "to ride" (cưỡi) trong tiếng Anh biến thái theo 5 thể (ride, rides, riding, rode, ridden), trong khi đó động từ tương đương trong tiếng Đức có 16 thể. Từ "the" trong tiếng Anh chỉ có 1 thể, còn các ngôn ngữ châu Âu khác thường có tới vài thể. Khuynh hướng tiến đến sự đơn giản về thể được xem là một ưu điểm của tiếng Anh. Một ưu điểm khác là tính linh hoạt trong chức năng của các từ. Hãy quan sát những cách dùng của từ "round".

Có một cái bàn tròn
Anh ấy thết một chầu rượu
Nó quay lại
Nó chạy quanh sân cỏ
Chiếc xe hơi cố gắng vòng qua khúc quanh quá nhanh (động từ)

Tính linh hoạt này cùng với tính linh hoạt trong việc đồng hóa các từ mượn những ngôn ngữ khác và trong việc sáng tạo đột phát những từ mới đã tạo nên một thứ tiếng Anh như ngày nay, một phương tiện giao tiếp quốc tế đầy hiệu quả. Tiếng Anh đã đạt được điều này mặc dù còn có những khó khăn trong văn viết, vì mặt ngữ âm không mang tính hệ thống.

Một vài từ vay mượn.

Ả Rập : admiral (đề đốc), algebra (đại số), mattress (nệm).

Tây Ban Nha : mosquito (muỗi), cigar (xì-gà), canyon (thung lũng).

Ý : piano (dương cầm), violon (vĩ cầm) spagheti (mì ống).

Hà Lan : yatch (du thuyền), boss (ông chủ), deck (boong tàu).

Hin-di : pyjamas (đồ ngủ), shampoo (thuốc gội đầu), bungalow (nhà gỗ một tầng).

Turkish *yoghurt, kiosk*
Japanese *tycoon, karate*
Malay *bamboo, compound*
Nahuatl (Aztec) *tomato, chocolate*

Quechua (Inca) *coca, quinine*

Hungarian *coach, paprika*
Classical Greek *theatre, astronomy, logic*

Gaelic *whisky*
Russian *vodka, sputnik*
Finnish *sauna*
Chinese *tea, silk*
Portuguese *marmalade*
Eskimo *anorak*
Czech *robot*
Farsi (Iranian) *lilac*
Basque *bizarre*
Carib *canoe*
Australian Aborigine *kangaroo, boomerang*

Modern French *rendezvous, café*

Modern German *kindergarten*

Some 'created' words

xerox, to xerox, xeroxed, a hoover, to hoover, hoovered, mackintosh, sandwich, submarine, helicopter, pop, rock'n roll, x-ray, astronaut, hot dog.

Thổ Nhĩ Kỳ yoghurt (sữa chua), kiosk (gian hàng nhỏ)
Nhật : tycoon (đại phú gia), karate (không thủ đạo).
Mã Lai : bamboo (tre), compound (hợp chất).
Nahuatl (Aztec) : tomato (cà chua), chocolate (sô-cô-la).
Quechua (Inca) : coca (cô-ca), quinine (thuốc kỳ ninh).
Hung-ga-ri : coach (xe khách), paprika (cây ớt Hung).
Cổ Hy Lạp : theatre (rạp hát), astronomy (thiên văn học), logic (luận lý học).
Gaelic : whisky (rượu whisky).
Nga : Vodka (rượu vốt ka), sputnik (vệ tinh nhân tạo).
Phần Lan : sauna (phòng tắm hơi).
Trung Quốc : tea (trà), silk (lụa).
Bồ Đào Nha : marmalade (mứt cam).
Eskimo : anorak (áo ngoài có mũ trùm đầu).
Tiệp : robot (người máy).
Farsi (thổ ngữ Iran) : lilac (hoa lan).
Basque : bizarre (kỳ quặc).
Carib : canoe (xuồng độc mộc).
Thổ dân Úc : kangaroo (chuột túi), boomerang (vũ khí bum-mơ-răng)
Pháp hiện đại : rendezvous (cuộc hẹn), café (quán cà phê).
Đức hiện đại : kindergarten (mẫu giáo).

*** Một số từ "sáng tạo" :**

Xerox, to xerox, xeroxed (máy chụp bản sao, chụp bản sao, được sao lại), a hoover, to hoover, hoovered (một loại máy hút bụi, hút bụi, được hút bụi) mackintosh (một loại áo mưa), sandwich (bánh mì kẹp), submarine (tàu ngầm), helicopter (trực thăng), pop, rock'n roll (nhạc pop, nhạc rock'n-roll), X-ray (tia X) astronaut (phi hành gia), hot dog (xúc xích nóng kẹp vào bánh mì)

English today

Approximately 350 million people speak English as their first language. About the same number use it as a second language. It is the language of aviation, international sport and pop music. 75% of the world's mail is in English, 60% of the world's radio stations broadcast in English and more than half of the world's periodicals are printed in English. It is an official language in 44 countries. In many others it is the language of business, commerce and

Tiếng Anh ngày nay

Khoảng 350 triệu người dùng tiếng Anh làm ngôn ngữ thứ nhất. Cũng khoảng chừng ấy người dùng tiếng Anh làm ngôn ngữ thứ hai. Tiếng Anh là ngôn ngữ của kỹ thuật hàng không, thể thao quốc tế và nhạc pop. 75% thư tín của thế giới viết bằng tiếng Anh, 60% đài truyền thanh của thế giới phát bằng tiếng Anh và hơn phân nửa số tạp chí xuất bản định kỳ của thế giới được in bằng tiếng Anh. Đây là ngôn ngữ chính thức của 44 nước. Ở nhiều nước khác, tiếng Anh là ngôn ngữ của kinh doanh, thương mại và kỹ thuật. Có nhiều dạng tiếng Anh như tiếng Anh của

technology. There are many varieties of English, but Scottish, Texan, Australian, Indian and Jamaican speakers of English, in spite of the differences in pronunciation, structure and vocabulary, would recognize that they are all speaking the same basic language.

người Scotland, dân Texas, người Úc, Ấn Độ và Jamaica. Mặc dù có những khác biệt về cách phát âm, cấu trúc câu và ngữ vựng, những người nói tiếng Anh này đều nhận ra rằng họ đang sử dụng chung một ngôn ngữ cơ bản.

PRACTICE

BRITISH AND AMERICAN ENGLISH

It has been said that the British and Americans are two peoples *separated* by a common language.' However the differences between British and American English are comparatively small. Although British newspapers occassionally publish letters from irate elderly citizens complaining that they are unable to understand a word of the latest American TV series, it is clear that few people have serious problems. In fact people on both sides of the Atlantic might have much more difficulty in understanding the stronger regional dialects of their own country than in understanding an average speaker from the other country. Television, films, and pop music have helped to bridge the Atlantic and those minor difficulties which might occur in comprehension are probably much fewer than 40 or 50 years ago. It is quite normal to find four or five American programmes in an evening on British television, and to find that 6 or 7 of the American Top 20 LP records are by British artists. It is true that most Americans would say :

'Pardon me, Do you have... ?'
while in Britain it would be more common to say:
'Excuse me, Have you got... ?'
However both forms would be understood in both countries. One of the most obvious areas of difference would relate to words connected with motoring, for example :

Tiếng Anh của Anh và tiếng Anh của Mỹ

Người ta nói là người Anh và người Mỹ là "hai dân tộc bị tách rời bằng một thứ tiếng chung". Tuy nhiên, sự khác nhau giữa tiếng Anh của Anh và tiếng Anh của Mỹ thì tương đối nhỏ. Mặc dầu báo chí Anh thỉnh thoảng in những lá thư của một số công dân đứng tuổi giận dữ phàn nàn là họ không thể hiểu được một lời nào trong loạt chương trình truyền hình mới nhất của Mỹ, rõ ràng là hiếm có ai gặp các vấn đề nghiêm trọng. Sự thực dân chúng ở hai bên bờ Đại tây Dương có thể gặp nhiều khó khăn trong việc hiểu những đặc ngữ đậm nét địa phương của nước họ hơn là khó khăn trong việc hiểu được một người nói bình thường từ nước kia. Truyền hình, phim ảnh, nhạc phổ thông đã giúp thu bớt khoảng cách hai bờ Đại tây dương và những khó khăn nhỏ có thể có trong việc hiểu có lẽ ít hơn nhiều so với 40 hay 50 năm về trước. Hoàn toàn là chuyện bình thường khi thấy 4 hay 5 chương trình của Mỹ trong một buổi tối trên đài truyền hình Anh, và thấy 6 hay 7 bài trong 20 bài của đĩa nhạc 33 được ưa chuộng nhất ở Mỹ được ca sĩ Anh biểu diễn. Thực tế là đa số người Mỹ thường nói :
"Pardon me. Do you have... ?" trong khi ở Anh nói : "Excuse me. Have you got... ?" thì thông dụng hơn. Tuy nhiên cả hai câu trên đều được hiểu ở cả 2 nước. Một trong những lãnh vực khác nhau rõ ràng nhất là các từ liên quan tới xe cộ, chẳng hạn :

British (Anh)	**American** (Mỹ)	
motor car	automobile	xe hơi,
saloon	sedan	xe hơi mui kín
bumper	fender	cái cản ô tô
bonnet	hood	mui xe
boot	trunk	cốp xe
estate car	station wagon	xe hơi (thường chỗ để hành lý và máy riêng biệt với chỗ ghế ngồi)
petrol	gas (or gasoline)	xăng
accelerator	gas pedal	chân ga
gear change	gear shift	cần số
silencer	muffler	cái giảm âm

This is probably because cars were developed separately in each country in the early years of this century, before Hollywood exposed the British to American culture ! Of course, an American who asked for 'gas' in a British 'filling station' would get what he wanted, and in the same way an Englishman who asked for 'petrol' in a 'gas station' would drive away with a full tank. The British talk about 'postmen', but the 'post' is carried in 'mail bags', on 'mail vans', to 'mail trains'. The Americans usually say 'mail men', but still talk about 'postage stamps', 'postcards' and 'post offices'.

Điều này có lẽ vì xe hơi được phát triển riêng lẻ ở mỗi nước vào những năm đầu của thế kỷ này, trước khi Hollywood đưa nền văn hóa Anh vào nền văn hóa Mỹ. Tất nhiên, một người Mỹ hỏi mua "gas" ở "filling station" Anh sẽ nhận được thứ người ấy cần, và tương tự như vậy, một người Anh hỏi mua "petrol" ở "gas station" sẽ chạy xe đi với bình xăng đầy. Người Anh nói về "postmen" (người đưa thư), nhưng "post" (thư từ) được mang đi trong "mail bags" (những túi đựng thư), trên "mail vans" (xe thư), đến "mail trains" (tàu đưa thư). Người Mỹ thường nói "mail men" (người đưa thư), nhưng vẫn nói về "postage stamps" (tem thư), "postcards" (bưu thiếp) và "post offices" (bưu điện).

Exercise 1

Read the text, and put these words in the correct columns below :

Bài tập 1

Đọc bài khóa, đặt các từ này vào đúng cột dưới đây :

gas/mailman/hood/gear shift/ boot/ filling station/ petrol/ postman/ accelerator/ sedan/ station wagon/gas station.

British	American
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

Exercise 3

Look at the following examples of American English and rewrite them in British English.

Bài tập 3

Xem các thí dụ sau đây của tiếng Anh Mỹ và viết lại theo tiếng Anh Anh.

1 Did you take your vacation yet ?
. . . . . .
2 Do you have a pen ? . . . . . .
3 He could have gotten killed
. . . . . .
4 He visited with his friends. . . . . .
. . . . . .
5 I saw him Friday. . . . . .
6 I stayed home last night. . . . . .
7 It's a quarter after six. . . . . .

Exercise 2

Here are some pairs of words. One of each pair is more common in British English, the other in American English. Try and find out which one is British, and which is American. Put them in the correct columns :

Bài tập 2

Đây là 1 số cặp từ. Một từ trong mỗi cặp thì thông dụng hơn trong tiếng Anh của Anh, từ kia thì thông dụng trong tiếng Anh của Mỹ. Thử tìm xem từ nào là Anh và từ nào là Mỹ. Đặt vào cột thích hợp.

curtains/drapes	faucet/tap
depot/station	autumn/fall
movies/films	conductor/guard
pharmacy/chemist's	ill/sick
lift/elevator	mad/angry
pavement/sidewalk	center/centre
apartment/flat	theatre/theater
motorway/highway	high school/secondary school

British	American
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

Unit 80 Departures

Khởi hành

VOCABULARY

- **available** *(adj)* /ə'veɪləbl/ that can be used or obtained = sẵn có *Tickets are ~ at the box office.*
- **course** *(n)* /kɔ:s/ series of lessons, lectures, etc = khóa học *A French, a chemistry, an art ~*
- **reservation** *(n)* /ˌrezə'veɪʃn/ reserved seat or accomodation = sự giữ chỗ trước *a coach, hotel ~; make / hold ~ s.*
- **share** *(v)* /ʃeə/ ~ st (out) (among/ between sb) give a share of st to others = chia ~ *£100 equally between 5 people.* ~ st with sb = 1. have a share of (st) with another or others = cùng chia *Let's ~ the last cake; you'll have half and I'll have half.* 2. have st in common = chung nhau *There's only one bedroom; so we'll have to ~.*

EXPRESSIONS

take a seat	mời ngồi
It sounds ok	nghe được đó
I'll pay cash	tôi trả tiền mặt
that's all together	tất cả có vậy thôi
we'll be sorry to lose you	không có anh bọn này tiếc lắm
Call in and see us	Hãy ghé thăm chúng tôi
Have a safe journey	Đi đường bình yên nha
Thanks for everything	Xin cảm ơn về mọi thứ ở đây
I'm glad I haven't missed you	Rất mừng là gặp được anh
Give me a call	Nhớ gọi điện thoại nhá !
you can be sure of that	Xin đảm bảo với anh như vậy
Look after yourself	Ráng gin giữ sức khỏe
It was nice meeting you	Rất hân hạnh được gặp lại anh
keep in touch	Liên hệ, liên lạc
£35 between us	35 pounds cho chung cả bọn
fully booked	đã được đăng ký sạch
check-in time	giờ làm thủ tục (chuyến bay)
half eleven	11 giờ rưỡi
to hit traffic	bị kẹt xe

GRAMMAR NOTES

CONJUNCTIONS vs PREPOSITIONS

1. Because (conj)/ because of (prep)
He stayed home *because* it was raining heavily
He stayed home *because of* the heavy rain

2. Although (conj) / in spite of (prep)
He always succeeds *although* he is lazy
He always succeeds *in spite of* his laziness

3. In case (conj) / in case of (prep)
Use these extinguishers *in case* there is fire
Use these extinguishers *in case of* fire.

Gina has been studying English at a language school in England. Her course finishes at the end of this week and she's returning home on Saturday. She's in a travel agency now.

Gina đã học tiếng Anh tại một trường ngôn ngữ ở Anh. Khóa học sẽ kết thúc vào cuối tuần này và cô sẽ về nước vào thứ bảy. Cô đang ở một công ty du lịch.

Travel agent Take a seat, please. I'll be with you in a minute. Yes, what can I do for you?

Gina I want to fly to Rome. Are there any seats available on Saturday ?

Travel agent Just a moment and I'll check... Rome... what time of day are you thinking of going ?

Gina Well, I'd rather not arrive too late. How about late morning or early afternoon ?

Travel agent The 12.10's fully booked, I'm afraid. There are seats available on the 14.55 or the 16.30. Is that too late for you ?

Gina The 14.55 sounds OK. What time does that get in ?

Travel agent 18.15 local time; there's a one hour time difference, you know.

Gina OK. That'll be fine. I'll pay cash but I'll have to go to the bank and come back.

Travel agent That's all right. I'll hold the reservation for you.

Streamline Taxis Streamline Taxis.

Gina I'd like to book a taxi for Saturday morning, please.

Streamline Taxis Where are you going ?

Gina London Airport, Heathrow. There'll be three of us sharing. How much will it be ?

Streamline Taxis £35.

Gina £35 ! Each or between us ?

Streamline Taxis Oh, that's all together. What time do you want to leave ?

Gina The check-in time is five to two but I don't know how long it takes to get there.

Streamline Taxis Well we'd better pick you up about half eleven, in case we hit traffic. Can I have your name and address ?

Gina Yes. It's Gina Castelli... two 'l's. 32, Seaport Road.

Streamline Taxis 32, Seaport Road. OK. 11.30 Saturday morning. Thank you.

Mr Jenkins Come in !

Gina Oh, hello, Mr Jenkins.

Mr Jenkins Hello, Gina. What can I do for you?

Gina I've just come to say goodbye.

Nhân viên du lịch : Mời ngồi. Tôi sẽ tiếp cô ngay. Được rồi. Tôi có thể giúp gì cho cô ?

Gina : Tôi muốn bay về Rome. Còn chỗ vào thứ bảy không ?

NVDL : Xin chờ một lát để tôi xem... Rome... Cô định đi vào giờ nào trong ngày ?

G : À, tôi không muốn về quá trễ. Khoảng trưa hay đầu giờ chiều có được không ?

NVDL : Chuyến 12g10 phút đã đầy cứng rồi. Chuyến 14g55 hoặc 16g30 còn chỗ. Như thế có quá trễ không?

G : Chuyến 14g55 được đấy. Mấy giờ thì tới nơi ?

NVDL : 18g15 giờ địa phương; có chênh nhau 1 giờ cô biết đấy.

G : Tốt. Tốt lắm. Tôi sẽ trả bằng tiền mặt, nhưng tôi phải ra nhà băng rút tiền rồi mới trở lại được.

NVDL : Được thôi. Tôi sẽ giữ chỗ cho cô.

Streamline Taxis (ST) : Streamline Taxis đây.

Gina : Tôi muốn đặt trước một taxi cho sáng thứ bảy.

ST : Cô định đi đâu ?

G : Phi trường London, Heathrow. Sẽ có 3 người đi chung. Tiền xe là bao nhiêu ?

ST : 35 pounds.

G : 35 pounds ! Mỗi người hay cả nhóm ?

ST : Ô, tính luôn cả nhóm. Cô muốn đi mấy giờ ?

G : Giờ làm thủ tục cho chuyến bay là 1g55 nhưng tôi không biết từ đây đến đó mất bao lâu.

ST : Vậy chúng tôi sẽ đón cô khoảng 11g30, phòng trường hợp đường đông xe. Cô vui lòng cho biết tên và địa chỉ ?

G : Vâng, tôi tên là Gina Castelli... hai chữ "l". Số 32 đường Seaport.

ST : 32 đường Seaport. Được rồi. 11g30 sáng thứ bảy. Cám ơn cô.

Ông Jenkins : Vào đi.

Gina : Chào ông Jenkins.

Ông J : Tôi giúp gì được cho cô ?

G : Em chỉ đến tạm biệt.

Mr Jenkins Oh yes, of course. You're leaving, aren't you ? When ?

Gina I'm flying tomorrow morning. I'm back at work on Monday morning.

Mr Jenkins Well, I must say Gina, we'll be sorry to lose you.

Gina I don't really want to go but... well, I just wanted to thank you and all the other teachers.

Mr Jenkins Oh, that's all right, Gina.

Gina I've really learnt a lot. I hope to come back next year... for a holiday.

Mr Jenkins Don't forget to send us a card, and if you do come back, call in and see us.

Gina No, I won't forget.

Mr Jenkins Well, there's the bell. Goodbye then, and have a safe journey.

Gina Goodbye and thanks for everything.

Gina Jacques ! I'm glad I haven't missed you.

Jacques Hello, Gina. When are you leaving ?

Gina Tomorrow morning. I don't suppose I'll see you again. So, goodbye. It was nice meeting you.

Jacques And you. But you will keep in touch, won't you ?

Gina Yes, I will. You've got my address, haven't you ?

Jacques Yes, and remember, if you're ever in Cherbourg, give me a call. I'd be so pleased to see you again.

Gina Oh, I will. You can be sure of that. And you must do the same if you're ever in Rome.

Jacques Well, Goodbye then.

Gina Goodbye... and look after yourself.

Mrs Sharples Gina ! The taxi's outside. Are you ready ? Have you got everything ?

Gina Yes, thank you, Mrs Sharples. And... thank you again.

Mrs Sharples Thank you, Gina, for the flowers. Now don't forget to phone us when you get home. Just to let us know that you've arrived safely.

Ông J : Vâng, đương nhiên. Cô sắp về nước phải không ? Khi nào ?

G : Sáng mai em sẽ bay. Em sẽ trở về làm việc vào sáng thứ hai.

Ông J : Tôi phải nói, Gina, chúng tôi sẽ rất buồn vì vắng cô.

G : Em thực sự không muốn đi nhưng... à, em muốn cám ơn thầy và tất cả các thầy cô khác.

Ông J : Được rồi, Gina.

G : Em đã thực sự học hỏi được rất nhiều. Em hy vọng sang năm sẽ trở lại... để đi nghỉ.

Ông J : Đừng quên gởi bưu thiếp cho chúng tôi, và nếu cô có trở lại hãy đến thăm chúng tôi.

G : Vâng, em không quên đâu.

Ông J : Chuông reo rồi. Tạm biệt. Chúc thượng lộ bình an.

G : Tạm biệt. Cám ơn thầy về tất cả mọi điều.

Gina : Jacques ! Em sung sướng là đã không quên anh.

Jacques : Chào Gina. Khi nào em đi ?

G : Sáng mai. Em không nghĩ là sẽ gặp lại anh. Tạm biệt. Thật vui vì đã được quen biết anh.

J : Anh cũng thế. Nhưng em sẽ viết thư cho anh chứ ?

G : Vâng. Anh có địa chỉ của em phải không ?

J : Có, và nhớ nếu có đến Cherbourg, hãy phôn cho anh. Anh sẽ rất vui nếu được gặp lại em.

G : Vâng, em nhớ. Anh yên tâm đi. Và anh cũng phải làm như vậy nếu anh có dịp đến Rome.

J : Thôi tạm biệt em.

G : Tạm biệt anh... Nhớ giữ sức khỏe nhé.

Bà Sharples : Gina ! Taxi chờ bên ngoài kia. Xong chưa ? Cháu đã có đủ mọi thứ chưa ?

Gina : Dạ rồi, cám ơn bác Sharples... cám ơn bác.

Bà S : Cám ơn Gina đã tặng hoa cho bác. Này, khi cháu về nước nhớ đừng quên gọi điện cho hai bác. Chỉ để hai bác biết cháu đến bình an là được rồi.

Gina No, I won't forget. I don't know whether I'll be able to phone tonight or not, but in any case, I'll ring you in the morning whatever happens.

Mrs Sharples Well, goodbye then, dear. You'd better not keep the taxi waiting. Have a nice trip. Bye-bye.

Gina Bye. And look after yourselves. And thank Mr Sharples for me.

PRACTICE

Exercise 1

Read Unit 80. Write a postcard from Gina to Mr Jenkins at the Hamlet School of English, Durham House, St Wilfred's Road, Bournemouth, BH38 7DU, England. Thank him and all the other teachers for all the help they gave you. Say that with your improved English you will be able to get a good job. Promise to call in and see them when you are in England next year.

Exercise 2

Write a postcard from Gina to Jacques. Tell him where you are and tell him that you've got a job. Inquire about the other students in the class. Ask him if he passed his exam and invite him to visit you if ever he's in Rome. Remind him that he's got your address and phone number.

Exercise 3

Write a letter from Gina to her hostess, Mrs Sharples. Tell her that you had a pleasant flight and arrived safely. Apologize for not phoning. Thank her for everything she did and enquire about Mr Sharples and 'Woodhouse', the dog. Send your regards to one or two other people. Promise to visit them next summer when you will be in England on holiday. Invite them to come and visit you in Rome. Assure them that they would be welcome. Promise to show them all the sights and say that you'll cook them a real Italian dinner. Say that you very much hope they'll be able to come.

G : Dạ cháu không quên đâu. Cháu không biết có thể gọi điện cho bác tối nay được hay không. Nhưng dù gì đi nữa cháu cũng sẽ gọi cho bác vào sáng mai.

Bà S : Tạm biệt cháu yêu dấu của bác. Cháu không nên để taxi chờ. Lên đường vui nhé. Tạm biệt.

G : Tạm biệt. Bác nhớ giữ sức khỏe. Và nhớ bác cảm ơn bác trai giúp cháu.

Bài tập 1

Đọc bài 80. Viết một bưu thiếp của Gina gửi ông Jenkins ở trường tiếng Anh Hamlet, Durham House, St. Wilfred's Road, Bournemouth, BH38 7DU, England. Ở vai trò Gina, bạn cảm ơn ông ấy và tất cả giáo viên khác về những giúp đỡ của họ dành cho bạn. Hãy nói là với vốn tiếng Anh được cải tiến của bạn sẽ giúp bạn tìm được việc làm tốt. Hứa sẽ ghé lại thăm họ khi bạn về Anh năm tới.

Bài tập 2

Viết một bưu thiếp từ Gina đến Jacques. Kể cho anh ấy nghe bạn ở đâu và nói với anh ấy là bạn đã có việc làm. Hỏi về các học sinh khác trong lớp. Hỏi anh ấy đậu kỳ thi chưa và mời anh đến thăm bạn nếu có khi nào anh ấy đến Rome. Nhắc anh ấy nhớ là anh ấy đã có địa chỉ và số điện thoại của bạn.

Bài tập 3

Viết một lá thư từ Gina đến bà chủ của cô ta, Bà Sharples. Nói với bà ấy là bạn đã đi chuyến bay tốt đẹp, và đến nơi an toàn. Xin lỗi vì đã không gọi điện. Cảm ơn bà mọi thứ bà đã giúp và hỏi thăm về ông Sharples và Woodhouse, con chó của nhà. Gửi lời hỏi thăm của bạn đến 1 hay 2 người khác. Hứa sẽ đến thăm họ mùa hè tới khi bạn đi nghỉ ở Anh. Mời họ đến thăm bạn ở Rome. Nói chắc với họ là họ sẽ được đón tiếp. Hứa đưa họ đi xem tất cả phong cảnh và nói là bạn sẽ nấu cho họ một bữa ăn tối đúng kiểu Ý. Nói là bạn rất hy vọng họ sẽ đến được.

LISTENING CONSOLIDATION — Units 77-80

Dialogue A

Listen

James Oh, Pam.
Pam Hi, James.
James What are you doing tonight ?
Pam Nothing special. I was going to wash my hair. Why ?
James Well, er... would you like to have dinner tonight ?
Pam I'd love to James. Thank you very much.
James Where would you like to go ?
Pam Oh, I'd rather leave that up to you, James.
James Well. How about going to Romano's. It's supposed to be very good.
Pam That sounds fine.
James I'll pick you up at eight. OK ?
Pam OK.

Listen and repeat

A1 Listen
A : Would you like to have dinner?
B : He invited her to have dinner.
C : He invited her to have dinner.
A : Would you like to go dancing?
B : He invited her to go dancing?
C : He invited her to go dancing.

Now you do the same
Would you like to have dinner ?.....He invited her to have dinner.
Would you like to go dancing ?.....He invited her to go dancing.
Would you like to go out for a drink ?..... He invited her to go out for a drink.
Would you like to see a film ?.....He invited her to see a film.

A2 Listen
A : How about going to Romano's?
B : He suggested going to Romano's.
C : He suggested going to Romano's
A : Let's try the new disco.
B : He suggested trying the new disco.
C : He suggested trying the new disco.

Now you do the same
How about going to Romano's ?.....He suggested going to Romano's.
Let's try the new disco .....He suggested going to the new disco.
Shall we drive out to a pub ?.....He suggested driving out to a pub.
Why don't we see that French film ?..... He suggested seeing that French film.

A3 Listen
A : I'll pick you up at eight.
B : He arranged to pick her up at eight.
C : He arranged to pick her up at eight.
A : I'll meet you on the corner.
B : He arranged to meet her on the corner.
C : He arranged to meet her on the corner.

Now you do the same
I'll pick you up at eight.....He arranged to pick her up at eight.
I'll meet you on the corner.....He arranged to meet her on the corner.
I'll ring you later.....He arranged to ring her later.
I'll see you there.....He arranged to see her there.

Dialogue B

Listen

James Sorry I'm late. I had trouble with the car.
Pam That's all right. I haven't been waiting long.
James You know I'm really annoyed. I wish I'd never bought this car.
Pam What's wrong with it ?
James What isn't wrong with it ! It's given me nothing but trouble.
Pam Well, forget it now. It's going OK now.
James Yes... You look great tonight. That dress is terrific.
Pam Thanks. I made it myself.

Listen and repeat

B1 Listen

A : Sorry I'm late.
B : He apologized for being late.
C : He apologized for being late.
A : I'm sorry I didn't phone.
B : He apologized for not phoning.
C : He apologized for not phoning.

B2 Listen

A : I had trouble with the car.
B : He explained that he'd had trouble with the car.
C : He explained that he'd had trouble with the car.
A : It refused to start.
B : He explained that it had refused to start.
C : He explained that it had refused to start.

B3 Listen

A : I wish I'd never bought the car.
B : He regrets buying the car.
C : He regrets buying the car.
A : I wish I'd taken a taxi.
B : He regrets not taking a taxi.
C : He regrets not taking a taxi.

B4 Listen

A : That dress is terrific.
B : He complimented her on her dress.
C : He complimented her on her dress.
A : That's a nice necklace.
B : He complimented her on her necklace.
C : He complimented her on her necklace.

Now you do the same

Sorry I'm late.....He apologized for being late.
I'm sorry I didn't phone.....He apologized for not phoning.
I'm terribly sorry I'm not on time.....He apologized for not being on time.
Sorry I made you wait.....He apologized for making her wait.

Now you do the same

I had trouble with the car.....He explained that he'd had trouble with the car.
It refused to start.....He explained that it had refused to start.
I hit a lot of traffic.....He explained that he'd hit a lot of traffic.
I couldn't find a phone box.....He explained that he hadn't been able to find a phone box.

Now you do the same

I wish I'd never bought the car.....He regrets buying the car.
I wish I'd taken a taxi.....He regrets not taking a taxi.
I wish I'd avoided the town centre.....He regrets not avoiding the town centre.
I wish I'd started earlier.....He regrets not starting earlier.

Now you do the same

That dress is terrific.....He complimented her on her dress.
That's a nice necklace.....He complimented her on her necklace.
I like the way you've done your hair.....He complimented her on her hair.
I like your perfume.....He complimented her on her perfume.

Dialogue C

Listen

Pam Would you like some more salad ?
James No thanks, I'm fine.
Pam It's very good, isn't it ?
James Mmm. Excellent. Especially the wine.
Pam It must be terribly expensive. Is it ?
James Average.
Pam Well look, you must let me pay half.
James Don't be silly. I invited you. Remember ?
Pam Sure ?
James Sure I'm sure. Have some more wine.

Listen and repeat

C1 Listen

A : Would you like some more salad ?
B : She offered him more salad.
C : She offered him more salad.
A : Some more wine ?

Now you do the same

Would you like some more salad ?.....She offered him more salad.
Some more wine.....She offered him more wine.
Cigarette ?.....She offered him a cigarette.
Shall I pour you some water ?.....She offered him some water.

B : She offered him more wine.
C : She offered him more wine.

C2 Listen

A : You must let me pay half.
B : She offered to pay half.
C : She offered to pay half.
A : You must let me cook you dinner.
B : She offered to cook him dinner.
C : She offered to cook him dinner.

Now you do the same

You must let me pay half.....She offered to pay half.
You must let me cook you dinner.....She offered to cook him dinner.
I'll pay next time.....She offered to pay next time.
I'll drive if you like.....She offered to drive.

Listening

Listen

This is a news broadcast on June 22nd 1982.
The Princess of Wales gave birth to a son last night. The new Prince weighed 71b 1 1/2 oz, has blue eyes, fair hair and cried loudly. Mother and child are both doing well. The baby was born at 9.03 just about 16 hours after labour started, which is not exceptionally long for a first child. Yesterday, June 21st, was the longest day of the year. The baby, which will be second in line to the throne after Prince Charles will probably be King in the 21st century.
Buckingham Palace announced on November 6th that the Princess was expecting a child. The baby was early. Princess Diana had reckoned the birth was due on July 1st, her own 21st birthday. The baby will share the Princess's birth sign 'Cancer the Crab'. Astrologers say the sign is associated with home-loving sensitive people.
Crowds, who had been waiting in the pouring rain outside St Mary's Hospital, cheered and waved flags when the announcement was made. Champagne corks began to pop and the crowd began to chant 'We want Charlie'. When Prince Charles emerged from the front entrance, the crowd rushed forward and he had to be protected by policemen. One woman managed to get through to plant a kiss on the Prince's cheek which left a large lipstick mark.
Newspapermen tried to get the Prince to reveal the chosen names for the baby but he told them, 'Wait and see'. People are already trying to guess and George seems to be most people's favourite. Others have suggested James, Charles, Albert, Arthur and Louis.

Vocabulary

- labour *(n)* /'leɪbə/ contractions of the womb during the process of childbirth = sự đau đẻ. *begin / go into / be in* —.
- second in line to the throne = sẽ kế tục, nối ngôi.
- be expecting (a baby / child) (idm) (infml euph) be pregnant = mang thai.
- chant *(v)* /tʃɑ:nt/ sing rhythmically and repeatedly = hát có nhịp điệu và lập đi lập lại.
- to plant a kiss on =. đặt 1 cái hôn lên

Now listen again and answer the questions when you hear this sound BELL

1

The Princess of Wales gave birth to a son last night. The new Prince weighed 71b 1 1/2 oz, has blue eyes, fair hair and cried loudly. Mother and child are both doing well. The baby was born at 9.03 just about 16 hours after labour started, which is not exceptionally long for a first child. Yesterday, June 21st, was the longest day of the year. The baby, which will be second in line to the throne after Prince Charles, will probably be King in the 21st century.

BELL

What time was the baby born ?.....The baby was born at 9.03
Why is June 21st always a special day ?..... It's the longest day.
Who is first in line to the throne ?..... Prince Charles.

2

Buckingham Palace announced on November 6th that the Princess was expecting a child. The baby was early. Princess Diana had reckoned the birth was due on July 1st, her own 21st birthday. The baby will share the Princess's birth sign 'Cancer the Crab'. Astrologers say the sign is associated with home-loving sensitive people.

BELL

How old is the Princess ?.....She's twenty.
When was the baby expected ?.....It was expected on July 1st.

3

Crowds, who had been waiting in the pouring rain outside St Mary's Hospital, cheered and waved flags when the announcement was made. Champagne corks began to pop and the crowd began to chant 'We want Charlie'. When Prince Charles emerged from the front entrace, the crowd rushed forward and he had to be protected by policemen. One woman managed to get through to plant a kiss on the Prince's cheek which left a large lipstick mark.

BELL

What was the weather like ?.....It was raining.
What did people drink to celebrate ?.....They drank champagne.
Why did Prince Charles have a red mark on his face ?
.....Because a woman kissed him.

4

Newspapermen tried to get the Prince to reveal the chosen names for the baby but he told them, 'Wait and see'. People are already trying to guess and George seems to be most people's favourite. Others have suggested James, Charles, Albert, Arthur and Louis.

BELL

How did Prince Charles answer the journalists' questions ?
.....He told them to wait and see.
What do most people think the name will be ?
.....George.

Exercise

Listen

He asked her to dance.
He might have said, 'Would you like to dance ?'
or 'May I have the next dance ?'
or 'Could I have the next dance?'
or something else.

What do you think these people actually said ? Listen

1 He greeted her formally .....
2 She invited them to a party .....
3 He arranged to meet her at the airport .....
4 She agreed to take the job .....
5 He admitted that he hadn't done the work ...
6 She offered to help him .....
7 The boy refused to go to school .....
8 He explained that his car had broken down .....
9 She thanked them warmly for inviting her ...
10 He apologized for being late .....
11 He denied breaking the window .....
12 She suggested going for a walk .....
13 He begged him not to shoot .....
14 She enquired if the last bus had gone ....
15 They promised to write when they got there .....

Learning Points from Units 60 – 80

Unit 60 : 1. Expressing reason and contrast.
2. *due to*
The explosion was *due to* leaking gas.
The closure is *due to* a sharp decline in orders.

Unit 61 : 1. Reading comprehension.
2. It's worth fifteen million pounds.
It's a fifteen million pound contract.

Unit 62 : Structure with *WHAT.*
I don't know what to do.
I'll tell you what I can.
What I saw astonished me.

Unit 63 :
1. Whatever, whichever, whoever, whenever, wherever, however.
When shall I do it ? Do it whenever you like/whenever you like.
How shall I do it ? It isn't important. Do it however you like.
2. Expressing surprise with *What ever*; Which ever, Who ever, Where ever, When ever, Why ever, How ever.
What ever are you talking about ?
3. It's time for tea-break.

Unit 64. 1 Guided discussion
2. Revision and consolidation.

Unit 65 .: 1. Listening
2. Vocabulary and expressions associated with medical treatment.

Unit 66 : 1. Revision and consolidation.
2. Guided discussion.

Unit 67 : 1. Expressions with *rather/sooner.*
I'd rather/sooner go there.
I'd rather/sooner you/he/she/we, they went/didn't go there.
2. Time expressions
It's time to go.
It's about time we left/we were leaving.
3. It isn't *as if/as though* this were my first visit.

Unit 68 : Reading comprehension.

Unit 69 : Review of passives.

Unit 70 : Review of passives (continued) to include.
It was being done/It had been done.

Unit 71 : Extensions of passives.
There's a lot to be done.
It will have been done before the circus arrives.

Unit 72 : 1. Listening
2. To have/get something done.
3. It needs doing.
4. It *needs to be done.*

Unit 73 : 1. Revision and consolidation.
2. Reading comprehension.
3. Oral practice.
4. Giving and following intructions.
5. Do you do this ? If so, when ?

Unit 74 : 1. Reporting (1)
2. Verb + someone + infinitive
Tell, ask, remind, invite, advise, promise, help, refuse, warn, instruct, order, urge, force, beg, threaten someone to do/not to do something.

Unit 75 : Reporting (2), Listening, Notetaking.

Unit 76 : Reporting (3)
He asked me *if* he could come in.
He asked me *where* I was last night.

Unit 77 : Reporting (4) – conversations.
The use of reporting verbs other than *say, ask, tell, e.g. think, remember, deny, admit, apologize, beg, refuse, hear, want, regret, explain, mean, call, murmur, whisper, reply, interrupt, cry, exclaim greet, offer, thank, accept, agree, compliment, add, invite, suggest, promise, arrange.*

Unit 78 : Listening comprehension; Describing events.

Unit 79 : Reading comprehension; Revision and consolidation.

Unit 80 : Making arrangements; Expressing thanks; Saying goodbye; Expressions with *case: in case/in case of/ in any case.*

TEST 4 UNITS 61 – 80

SECTION 1

Put a ring around the best word or pharase to complete the sentance.

1. I didn't have any small change so I gave him a five (*pounds/pound/pound's/pounds'*) note.
2. I looked through the telescope and (*what/when/which/that*) I saw amazed me.
3. The buiding is on fire and he doesn't know (*which/how/the way/what*) to do.
4. What time shall I begin ? I don't know. Begin (*whatever/whyever/whenever/whichever*) you want.
5. It's eleven o'clock. It's time (*of/for/from/to*) coffee.
6. I'm not feeling very well, doctor. What (*is/seem/is seeming/seems*) to be the trouble ?
7. He says he (*had/will/would/could*) rather be happy than rich.
8. Shall we walk ? No, I'd much sooner we (*went/go/going/will go*) by taxi.
9. I'm very tired. It's time (*I go/going/to go/-*) to bed.
10. It's about time the government (*doing/did/do/will do*) something about unemployment.
11. Has anybody done the washing up yet ? No, it's (*been/-/be/being*) done now.
12. By the time we got into the shop, the best bargains (*had/was/has/will*) already been sold.
13. Before the plane takes off, all the boarding passes (*had been/are being/will have been/were being*) collected.

14. She went to the embassy (*have/to get/get/because*) her visa renewed.
15. The house is in very bad condition. It needs completely (*redecorating/redecoration/to redecorate/redecorated*).
16. She warned them (*being/be/to be/been*) more careful.
17. When the police questioned him he denied (*to steal/stealing/have stolen/-*) the watch.
18. All the guests complimented her (*for/because/over/on*) her cooking.
19. I'd take your umbrella (*in any case/of course/in case of*) it rains.
20. He admitted (*for/from/at/-*) his mistake.

Mark : Out of : 20.

SECTION 2

Read the following news items carefully and complete the spaces with the appropriate word : **who/whom/which/whose/where/when.**

HARROD'S SALE GETS OFF TO A GOOD START

There were scenes of chaos this morning .. Harrod's Department Store opened its doors at 9.00 am for the annual January sale. Hundreds of people, some of..... had been queuing outside since last night, had to be controlled by police. The people ..... got in first managed to find some real bargain items many of .....were being sold at half price. One woman .... arm was broken in the rush, had to be taken to hospital but not before she had bought a fur coat for .....she had been queuing all night.

QUEEN VISITS DORSET

The Queen spent the day visiting Poole and Bournemouth. She arrived by helicopter in Poole..... she was met by the mayor. Thousands of schoolchildren.....had been given the day off school, turned out to see the Queen. The Queen went first to open the new port facilities .....will make Poole one of the most modern ports in the country. The Queen then went on to Bournemouth..... she visited the new pier complex and conference centre. The Queen..... was wearing her favourite peach colour, seemed to enjoy the unusual winter sunshine.

KENNETH ROSE SPOTTED IN ATLANTIC

Kenneth Rose, the round-the world yachtsman, is safe and well. The single-handed sailor.....had not been in radio contact for three weeks, was spotted by a Greek tanker about 300 miles east of Land's End. Rose.....voyage has caught the imagination of the nation, is likely to break the world record. The captain of the Greek tanker to..... we spoke by radio this morning said that Rose was on course and making good speed. Rose's yacht, "My Bonny".....he designed himself, will become the only yacht to have completed the round the world trip in both directions in world record times.

Mark : Out of : 15

SECTION 3

Combine the following pairs of sentences into single sentences beginning each in the way suggested.

1. The sea was too cold. *She decided not to go for a swim.*
   The sea was so .....
2. The hill was very steep. *They had to rest several times.*
   It was such .....
3. He had to climb through a window. *He had forgotten his key.*
   Because .....
4. They didn't want to burn their hands. *They wore special gloves.*
   To avoid .....
5. They locked the door. *They didn't want people to come in.*
   To prevent .....
6. There was a "No Parking" sign. *He parked his car there.*
   In spite of .....
7. He knew it was dangerous. *He jumped into the water, nevertheless.*
   Although .....
8. There was a speed limit. *She drove fast.*
   Despite .....
9. She spoke French. *She spoke Russian.*
   She spoke not only .....
10. He finished work early. *He wanted to see the football match.*
    In order to .....

Mark : Out of : 10.

SECTION 4

Read these sentences carefully and complete the spaces.

1. We can't go out yet. It's pouring ..... rain.
2. If I could make a wish, I'd wish ..... a long life.
3. The house was in a bad state ..... repair.
4. The house is surrounded ....a beautiful garden.
5. It's a dark blue pullover ..... a hole in the sleeve.
6. Can you translate that from Spanish ..... English ?
7. He had to learn the story ..... heart.
8. As soon as he saw her he fell ..... love with her.
9. The little boy was .....his way home from school when the accident happened.
10. Rescue workers are still searching ..... survivors of the earthquake.

Mark : Out of : 5

TOTAL MARKS :

Section 1 ..... Section 3 .....
Section 2 ..... Section 4 .....
TOTAL ..... x 2 = ... %

APPENDIX

Material recorded on cassette but not included in the text of the units is printed below.

UNIT 1

1. The train now standing at Platform 5 will be the 10.25 to Exeter St David's, calling at Reading, Pewsey, Westbury and Taunton.
2. The train now standing at Platform 3 is the 10.20 Inter-City service to Bristol.
3. The train now arriving at Platform 2 is the 9.12 from Oxford.
4. The next train leaving from Platform 9 will be the 10.25 Inter-City service to Plymouth and Penzance. The train will be divided at Plymouth. Passengers for stations to Penzance should take the front six carriages.
5. The train now arriving at Platform 12 is the 7.10 from Swansea. Trains from Swansea are running approximately 15 minutes late due to maintenance work between Swansea and Cardiff.

UNIT 13

A - Airport announcements

1. This is the last call for the twelve o'clock British Airways flight BA 412 to Amsterdam. Would passengers for this flight please proceed without delay to Gate 17.
2. Scandinavian Airlines announce the departure of the 12.05 flight SK 526 to Stockholm. This flight is now boarding at Gate 8.
3. Would passengers for the 12.10 Iberia flight IB 341 to Madrid please go at once to Gate 16 where this flight is now boarding.
4. Alitalia regret to announce that their 12.15 flight AZ 281 to Rome will be delayed for approximately 30 minutes.
5. Olympic Airways announce the departure of the 12.30 flight OA 260 to Athens. Would passengers on this flight please proceed to Gate 19.
6. This is a call for Mr Gaston Meyer. Would Mr Gaston Meyer travelling on the 12.45 Sabena flight SN 604 to Brussels report to the airport information desk, please.

B- In-flight announcements

1. Good afternoon, ladies and gentlemen. Captain Perez and his crew welcome you aboard Iberia flight IB 341 to Madrid. I am sorry to announce a slight delay. We are still waiting for clearance from Air Traffic Control. The delay won't be too long and we hope to arrive in Madrid on time.
2. This is your captain speaking. We are now passing over the English coast. Our Boeing 727 is cruising at a height of 30,000 feet and our speed is approximately 560 miles per hour. The temperature in Madrid is 18°C and it is a clear and sunny day. We expect to pass through some slight turbulence and would recommend passengers to remain in their seats and keep their belts fastened.
3. We are now beginning our descent to Madrid. Would passengers please make sure that their seat-belts are fastened and extinguish all smoking materials. We would like to remind passengers that smoking is not permitted until you are in the airport building.
4. We hope you had a pleasant and enjoyable flight. We would like to thank you for travelling on Iberia, and we hope to see you again soon. Would passengers please remain seated until the plane has come to a complete stop and the doors have been opened.

UNIT 15

Bargaining

Lucy Excuse me.

Stallholder Yes, miss ?

Lucy How much do you want for this plate?

Stallholder Let me see. Oh, yes... that's a lovely example of Victorian brass. It's worth twenty quid.

Lucy Twenty pounds ! Oh, that's too much for me. It's a pity. It's really nice.

Stallholder Ah, I said it's worth twenty quid. I'm only asking fifteen for it.

Lucy Fifteen pounds ?

Stallholder Yes. It's a real bargain.

Lucy Oh, I'm sure it is... but I can't afford that !

Stallholder Well, look... just for you... I'll make it fourteen quid. I can't go any lower than that

Lucy I'll give you ten.

Stallholder Ten ! Come on, love. You must be joking ! I paid more than that for it myself ! Fourteen. It's worth every penny.

Lucy Well, perhaps I could give you eleven.

Stallholder Thirteen. That's my final offer.

Lucy Twelve.

Stallholder Twelve fifty ?

Lucy All right, twelve fifty.

Stallholder There you are, love. You've got a real bargain there !

Lucy Yes, thank you very much.

UNIT 44

1. Our six finalists are No 14 Miss Lancashire, No 13 Miss Dorset, Miss Norfolk No 50, Miss Gwent No 6, No 30 Miss Strathclyde and Miss Warwickshire No 40. Would the first contestant please come forward.

2.

Announcer This is 17-year-old Grace Field from Lancashire. Just stand there, Grace. You're a shop-assistant, aren't you ?

Grace Field Yes, I am.

Announcer What kind of shop is it ?

Grace Field It's a clothes shop. We sell children's clothes. It's only a temporary job, actually.

Announcer Now, first of all : what do you do in your spare time ?

Grace Field Well, I like dressmaking, I make all my own clothes... and cooking. I do a lot of cooking.

Announcer That's a beautiful dress you're wearing, did you make it ?

Grace Field Yes, with a little help from my mother.

Announcer Now, Grace. You said your job was a temporary one. What would you really like to do ?

Grace Field Oh, to work with children. Definitely.

Announcer Uh huh. Last question. If you could have one wish, what would it be ?

Grace Field I've thought about that a lot... world peace.

Announcer Thank you, Grace

3

Announcer Our next contestant is a beauty consultant from Dorset, Victoria Hardy. Victoria's 25. Hello, Victoria.

Victoria Hardy Good evening, Terry, it's lovely to meet you.

Announcer Mmm. Thank you. Have you got any great ambitions, Victoria?

Victoria Hardy Yes. I'd like to sail across the Atlantic.

Announcer The Atlantic ! Alone ?

Victoria Hardy No, no.

Announcer Have you any experience of sailing ?

Victoria Hardy Yes, I go sailing every weekend.

Announcer Is that your only hobby ?

Victoria Hardy It's my favourite one, but I like horseriding too.

Announcer Good. Good. What about one wish ?

Victoria Hardy I'd wish for a long life.

Announcer Very nice. Thank you very much, Victoria.

4

Announcer The third finalist is Lynn King, a primary school teacher from Norfolk. You look too young to be a teacher, Lynn. None of my teachers looked like you.

Lynn King I'm 21, this is my first year.

Announcer I see. Tell me about your hobbies.

Lynn King I'm very interested in astronomy... and playing the piano.

Announcer Ah, music and the stars ! How very interesting ! Have you got any great ambitions ?

Lynn King You'll laugh... but my

ambition is to go to the moon... seriously.

Announcer Do you think you ever will?

Lynn King Who knows ?

Announcer And if you could make a wish?

Lynn King I'd just wish for happiness.

5

Announcer Next we have Myfanwy Lloyd, a nineteen year old brunette from Gwent in Wales. What do you do, Myfanwy ?

Myfanwy Lloyd No, Myfanwy. We pronounce it "Myfanwy". I'm still at university.

Announcer What are you studying ?

Myfanwy Lloyd Drama... it's also my hobby.

Announcer Any other hobbies, Myfanwy ?

Myfanwy Lloyd Well, I'm a black belt in judo.

Announcer Oh, dear... I'd better pronounce your name correctly, hadn't I ?

Myfanwy Lloyd It's all right.

Announcer What do you hope to do when you leave university ?

Myfanwy Lloyd To be an actress.

Announcer I'm sure you'll be successful. Would you like to make a wish ?

Myfanwy Lloyd Yes. I'd wish for health... I think it's the most important thing in life.

6.

Announcer Our next finalist, from Scotland, is Miss Strathclyde, a twenty-three year old fashion model... Dawn Munro. Hello, Dawn.

Dawn Munro Hello, Terry.

Announcer What are your interests ?

Dawn Munro Er... dancing... and... er... photographic work.

Announcer So you're a keen amateur photographer ?

Dawn Munro No, no... I'm more interested in modelling.

Announcer I see. What about your ambitions ?

Dawn Munro I'd like to become Miss World.

Announcer Really ? You are ambitious, aren't you ? And your wish ?

Dawn Munro I've always wanted one thing... fame... I'd like to see my face on magazine covers.

Announcer Well, it's certainly pretty enough. Thank you, Dawn.

7.

Announcer Finally, Kerry Talbot... Miss Warwickshire. How old are you, Kerry ?

Kerry Talbot Eighteen.

Announcer Don't be nervous. Speak up a bit. And do you work ?

Kerry Talbot I'm a typist.

What do you like doing in your free time ?

Kerry Talbot Reading... I like reading ... and swimming.

Announcer What's your ambition ?

Kerry Talbot To have a large family. I love children.

Announcer And if you had one wish, what would you ask for ?

Kerry Talbot It sounds silly, but I'd ask for good luck. I'm very superstitious. Look... my fingers are crossed.

Announcer Thank you, Kerry. Now while our judges are making their final decision, we'll take a short break.

8.

Announcer Now, here to announce the results of our contest is Mr Derek Chorley, the Chairman of EBC. Mr Chorley...

Derek Chorley Thank you. Terry. I'm going to read the results in reverse order. Third, for a prize of £5,000 and a weekend in Paris, is Number 13, Victoria Hardy from Dorset ! Second, with a prize of £10,000 and a holiday in Spain, is Number 6... Myfanwy Lloyd ! And now... Miss Britain... with a holiday in California and £20,000... yes, £20,000 is... Number 30... Dawn Munro from Strathclyde !

UNIT 52

Donna

Well, she's quite a lively, talkative person in her... in her late teens. She's fairly tall with a... a good figure. She's got a heart-shaped face with a small, sort of turned-up nose. It's very attractive really. She's got long, black wavy hair and er... blue eyes with very long eyelashes. Her complexion is.. well, she's olive-skinned. Her lips are very full... and she's got dimples... dimples in her cheeks.

Colin

He's a very big guy, you know, well-built with very broad shoulders. Not fat, really, really... just, well-build. He's in his early thirties. He's got a long face with thin lips. Oh, and a small scar on his chin. He's got very short, fair hair but with long sideburns and a moustache. Eyes... I haven't really noticed the colour, he wears glasses. He's got thick eyebrows and a kind of a long, straight nose. He's fairly reserved, thoughtful, sometimes even moody.

Janet

She's sophisticated. Well-dressed, expensive hairstyle and so on. I'd say she was in her late thirties or early forties, but she looks younger. She's about average height and very slim. Her hair's very blonde, dyed, I think, but I'm not sure about that. It's always very neat, not long. She's got pale grey eyes with thin eyebrows. Her face is always sunburned and very well made up. It's an attractive face... not really beautiful, but very attractive, you know what I mean. High cheekbones, small chin... oh and yes, there's a beauty spot on her left cheek. She's a very calm and reliable sort of person, very sociable and always very, very polite.

Robert

Robert's a wonderful person really. He's elderly but not old... still very lively and amusing. He's probably in his early seventies. He's got white hair, receding a bit, and a small white beard. He's medium build, a little overweight perhaps. He's got very nice, large, brown eyes and he always seems to be smiling... lots of wrinkles round the eyes, laughter lines I think you call them. He's got a very high, lined forehead which makes him look very intelligent, which he is, of course.

UNIT 65

Mr Williams Good morning, doctor.

Doctor Hello, Mr Williams. Take a seat. What seems to be the trouble ?

Mr Williams I'm not sure, doctor. But I haven't been feeling too well. I think I must have a touch of flu.

Doctor Mm. There's a lot of it going round at the moment. What are the symptoms ?

Mr Williams I'm feeling very tired, and I'm aching all over. I've been sneezing a lot, and feeling pretty feverish, hot and cold all the time. Oh, and I've got a sore throat.

Doctor Any vomiting ?

Mr Williams No, but I don't feel very hungry. I've got no appetite at all.

Doctor Well, let's have a look at you. Open your mouth. "Aah". Yes, your throat's a bit inflamed, and the glands in your neck are swollen. Can you just unbutton your shirt? I want to listen to your chest. Breathe deeply. Right. I'll just take your temperature. Don't say anything for a minute, just keep the thermometer under your tongue. I'll write out a prescription for you, but you know the best thing is just to go home, go to bed, and take plenty of fluids.

UNIT 72

Estate Agent I'm afraid it's been rather neglected. The present owner is in his eighties. He's just gone into an old people's home.

Robin Yes. It looks as though a lot needs doing to it.

Estate Agent That's true, but the price is very reasonable. It would be ideal for a do-it-yourself man.

Robin Mm. I'm not very good with my hands, I'm afraid. We'd have to get most things done for us, wouldn't we, Jean ?

Jean Oh, I don't know. Could we see inside ?

Estate Agent Of course. I'll show you

the kitchen first.

Jean Oh dear ! Just look at that sink. It must have been there since the house was built.

Robin It's a nice large room, though, and there's plenty of light. We'd have to have kitchen units put in, and we'd need to get it tiled.

Jean But you could do the ceiling yourself, couldn't you ? And the painting.

Robin Is that the only power-point there ?

Estate Agent I'm afraid so.

Robin It looks pretty old. I'm sure the whole place would need rewiring. We certainly couldn't do that ourselves and we'd need to have more points put in at the same time.

Estate Agent Would you like to see the lounge ? It's through here.

Jean Oh my God ! It'd certainly need redecorating. I suppose we could do the painting and wallpapering. What's it like upstairs ?

Estate Agent Pretty bad, really. It obviously hasn't been decorated for years, and as I told you on the phone, it hasn't got a bathroom. But you could have the small bedroom converted into a bathroom and get a grant towards the cost. All the other houses in the street have had that done.

Robin What about the toilet ?

Estate Agent I'm afraid that's outside, but you could get one put in the new bathroom. And of course, you'd get a grant for that as well.

Jean Is there anything else that needs doing ?

Estate Agent Well, you'd probably have to get the roof repaired pretty soon.

Robin The sooner the better if you ask me. It looks as though water's been coming in over there. And, of course, we'd want to have central heating put in, and the windows double glazed, it's a very noisy street. I couldn't do any of that myself.

Estate Agent Of course not.

Robin Anyway, thank you for showing us around. But really I think the best thing would be to knock it down and start all over again.

UNIT 75

9.00

Amanda Mr Dawson's office.

Jenny Oh, it's Jenny. Can you give Mr Dawson a message ? I won't be in till Friday, I've got flu. I saw the doctor this morning.

Amanda OK, Jenny. I'll pass the message on. I hope you feel better soon.

9.40

Amanda Mr Dawson's office. Can I help you?

Mr Watkins May I speak to Mr Dawson, please ?

Amanda I'm afraid he's away on business. He'll be back tomorrow. Can I take a message ?

Mr Watkins Please. It's Tom Watkins here. Look, I can't make the meeting on Tuesday afternoon. Something important's come up. I'll ring Peter on Wednesday.

11.30

Amanda Hello, Godfrey. What can I do for you ?

Godfrey Mr Dawson isn't here, is he?

Amanda No, not till tomorrow.

Godfrey Ah... it's just that I want Friday off. You see, my grandmother died yesterday. I'll have to go to the funeral.

Amanda Oh, I am sorry. How old was she?

Godfrey 92

12.15

Amanda Mr Dawson's office.

Salesman Can you put me through to Mr Dawson ?

Amanda I'm afraid he isn't here today. Would you like to leave a message?

Salesman Oh, right. Wadley's Garage here. It's about his new car. It isn't ready yet. There's a strike at the factory today.

2.10

Amanda Good afternoon. Mr Dawson's office.

Miss Dobson Good afternoon. This is Juliet Dobson from Western Video Systems. Mr Dawson's at the trade fair in Lyon, isn't he?

Amanda Yes, that's right. He should be here tomorrow.

Miss Dobson Well, can you give him this message first thing in the morning ? I'm afraid we must cancel our last order. The customers have changed their minds, again!

3.20

Amanda Good afternoon. Mr Dawson's office.

Mr Gonzalez Hello, this is Miguel Gonzalez speaking. Is Peter there ?

Amanda No, I'm afraid he's away on business today. Can I pass on a message, Señor Gonzalez ?

Mr Gonzalez Yes. I may be in London from the 21st to the 25th. I want to see Peter then, if possible. It's about the agency in Mexico.

4.35

Amanda Mr Dawson's office.

Mrs Ellis My name's Samantha Ellis. Can you get Mr Dawson to phone me as soon as he gets back from Lyon ? It really is very urgent.

4.55

Amanda Mr Dawson's office.

Mr Berry Ah, Miss Hayward. This is Charles Berry.

Amanda Oh, good afternoon, sir.

Mr Berry I've got an important message for Mr Dawson. Give it to him the minute he comes in. Just say, "Don't supply Mason and Company until further notice". I'll explain later.

UNIT 78

A church wedding

Adrian and Caroline were married recently. "Our wedding was a pretty typical one, really. Caroline and I met about three years ago, and we got engaged last summer. We both wanted a traditional wedding. I suppose it's expensive, and some people say it's a waste of money, but it is a day to remember all your life. Anyway, we wanted to please our parents, and we both wanted to get married in church. Caroline's father hired a white Rolls-Royce to bring her to the church, we wanted the whole works ! You know, top hat, tails, champagne-the full treatment. The men rented their morning suits for the day. Caroline had three bridesmaids-her sister and two of her cousins, and a page. The page was her nephew. He's only three and he made a lot of noise during the ceremony. I didn't feel my best that day because my stag party went on until five o'clock in the morning. I do remember the photographs, though. We seemed to be waiting around for ages. Although it was a very sunny Saturday-it was in May-there was a pretty cold wind. The reception was at the Carlton Hotel, it must have cost Caroline's dad a packet. The speeches went on a bit too long, I think... and of course some of them were a bit vulgar, but I suppose that's a tradition. It took twenty minutes just to read out all the telegrams. I'd been very careful, and I'd parked my car round the corner, but of course they somehow managed to find out where it was. You should have seen what they'd done to it ! It was covered with lipstick, and they'd tied cans to the bumper. But anyway, they didn't find out where we were having our honeymoon. We went to Scotland".

A registry office wedding

Stuart and Ann were married in a registry office.

"Stuart and I met last year. We were both working in Birmingham, although Stuart comes from Leeds and I'm from London. We didn't want an elaborate wedding and neither of us are particularly religious, so we got married in the registry office. Another thing is that neither of our families are very well off, and it seemed silly to go to all the expense, when you need the money to set up a new home. We just invited our parents and a couple of friends, who were the witnesses. It was all very simple. We didn't have a reception or anything. We just had a few drinks round at our place. We didn't even bother with a cake. We didn't have a honeymoon, because Stuart's just started his own business and we couldn't afford the time".

Streamline
ENGLISH
DESTINATIONS
(tái bản)

BERNARD HARTLEY & PETER VINEY

Dịch và chú giải

TRẦN VĂN THÀNH - NGUYỄN THANH YẾN

Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản
TRẦN ĐÌNH VIỆT

Biên tập ĐỨC NHÂN
Trình bày sách PHẠM VĂN VINH
Sửa bản in DUY LINH

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN TỔNG HỢP THÀNH PHỐ HỒ CHÍ MINH
62 Nguyễn Thị Minh Khai - Quận 1
ĐT: 8225340 - 8296764 - 8222726 - 8296713 - 8223637
Fax: 8222726
E-mail: nxbtphcm@bdvn.vnd.net

Thực hiện liên doanh
PHẠM THỊ THANH TÂM

In 5.000 cuốn khổ 14,5x20,5cm tại Nhà in Thanh niên - 62 Trần Huy Liệu - Quận Phú Nhuận - Thành phố Hồ Chí Minh. Số xuất bản 507-205 / XB-QLXB cấp ngày 8-4-2005. In xong và nộp lưu chiểu tháng 10-2005.

VIVACO
STREAMLINE E3-DESTIN
S003650
20.000 đ